21/pt.800-1299/989

code of federal regulations

Food and Drugs

21

PARTS 800 TO 1299
Revised as of April 1, 1989

NATIONAL ARCHIVES AND RECORDS ADMINISTRATION
1985

READEX FICHE best copy available

AE 2.106/3:

code of
federal regulations

Food and Drugs

21

PARTS 800 TO 1299

Revised as of April 1, 1989

CONTAINING
A CODIFICATION OF DOCUMENTS
OF GENERAL APPLICABILITY
AND FUTURE EFFECT

AS OF APRIL 1, 1989

With Ancillaries

Published by
the Office of the Federal Register
National Archives and Records
Administration

as a Special Edition of
the Federal Register

1985

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON : 1989

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402

Table of Contents

Page

Explanation v

Title 21:

Chapter I—Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Continued) 3

Finding Aids:

Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference 549

Table of CFR Titles and Chapters 551

Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR 567

Redesignation Tables 575

List of CFR Sections Affected 579

Cite this Code: CFR

To cite the regulations in this volume use title, part and section number. Thus, 21 CFR 800.10 *refers to Title 21, Part 800, section 10.*

Explanation

The Code of Federal Regulations is a codification of the general and permanent rules published in the Federal Register by the Executive departments and agencies of the Federal Government. The Code is divided into 50 titles which represent broad areas subject to Federal regulation. Each title is divided into chapters which usually bear the name of the issuing agency. Each chapter is further subdivided into parts covering specific regulatory areas.

ISSUE DATES

Each volume of the Code is revised at least once each calendar year and issued on a quarterly basis approximately as follows:

Title 1 through Title 16	as of January 1
Title 17 through Title 27	as of April 1
Title 28 through Title 41	as of July 1
Title 42 through Title 50	as of October 1

The appropriate revision date is printed on the cover of each volume.

LEGAL STATUS

The contents of the Federal Register are required to be judicially noticed (44 U.S.C. 1507). The Code of Federal Regulations is prima facie evidence of the text of the original documents (44 U.S.C. 1510).

HOW TO USE THE CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS

The Code of Federal Regulations is kept up to date by the individual issues of the Federal Register. These two publications must be used together to determine the latest version of any given rule.

To determine whether a Code volume has been amended since its revision date (in this case, January 1, 1989), consult the "List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA)," which is issued monthly, and the "Cumulative List of Parts Affected," which appears in the Reader Aids section of the daily Federal Register. These two lists will identify the Federal Register page number of the latest amendment of any given rule.

EFFECTIVE AND EXPIRATION DATES

Each volume of the Code contains amendments published in the Federal Register since the last revision of that volume of the Code. Source citations for the regulations are referred to by volume number and page number of the Federal Register and date of publication. Publication dates and effective dates are usually not the same and care must be exercised by the user in determining the actual effective date. In instances where the effective date is beyond the cut-off date for the Code a note has been inserted to reflect the future effective date. In those instances where a regulation published in the Federal Register states a date certain for expiration, an appropriate note will be inserted following the text.

OMB CONTROL NUMBERS

The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96-511) requires Federal agencies to display an OMB control number with their information collection request. Many agencies have begun publishing numerous OMB control numbers as amendments to existing regulations in the CFR. These OMB numbers are placed as close as possible to the applicable recordkeeping or reporting requirements.

OBSOLETE PROVISIONS

Provisions that become obsolete before the revision date stated on the cover of each volume are not carried. Code users may find the text of provisions in effect on a given date in the past by using the appropriate numerical list of sections affected. For the period before January 1, 1973, consult either the List of CFR Sections Affected, 1949-1963, or 1964-1972, published in three separate volumes. For the period beginning January 1, 1973, a "List of CFR Sections Affected" is published at the end of each CFR volume.

INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

What is incorporation by reference? Incorporation by reference was established by statute and allows Federal agencies to meet the requirement to publish regulations in the Federal Register by referring to materials already published elsewhere. For an incorporation to be valid, the Director of the Federal Register must approve it. The legal effect of incorporation by reference is that the material is treated as if it were published in full in the Federal Register (5 U.S.C. 552(a)). This material, like any other properly issued regulation, has the force of law.

What is a proper incorporation by reference? The Director of the Federal Register will approve an incorporation by reference only when the requirements of 1 CFR Part 51 are met. Some of the elements on which approval is based are:

(a) The incorporation will substantially reduce the volume of material published in the Federal Register.

(b) The matter incorporated is in fact available to the extent necessary to afford fairness and uniformity in the administrative process.

(c) The incorporating document is drafted and submitted for publication in accordance with 1 CFR Part 51.

Properly approved incorporations by reference in this volume are listed in the Finding Aids at the end of this volume.

What if the material incorporated by reference cannot be found? If you have any problem locating or obtaining a copy of material listed in the Finding Aids of this volume as an approved incorporation by reference, please contact the agency that issued the regulation containing that incorporation. If, after contacting the agency, you find the material is not available, please notify the Director of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington DC 20408, or call (202) 523-4534.

CFR INDEXES AND TABULAR GUIDES

A subject index to the Code of Federal Regulations is contained in a separate volume, revised annually as of January 1, entitled CFR Index and Finding Aids. This volume contains the Parallel Table of Statutory Authorities and Agency Rules (Table I), and Acts Requiring Publication in the Federal Register (Table

III). A list of CFR Titles, Chapters, and Parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are also included in this volume.

An index to the text of "Title 3—The President" is carried within that volume.

The Federal Register Index is issued monthly in cumulative form. This index is based on a consolidation of the "Contents" entries in the daily Federal Register.

A List of CFR Sections Affected (LSA) is published monthly, keyed to the revision dates of the 50 CFR titles.

REPUBLICATION OF MATERIAL

There are no restrictions on the republication of material appearing in the Code of Federal Regulations.

INQUIRIES AND SALES

For a summary, legal interpretation, or other explanation of any regulation in this volume, contact the issuing agency. Inquiries concerning editing procedures and reference assistance with respect to the Code of Federal Regulations may be addressed to the Director, Office of the Federal Register, National Archives and Records Administration, Washington, D.C. 20408 (telephone 202-523-3517). Sales are handled exclusively by the Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, D.C. 20402 (telephone 202-783-3238).

Martha L. Girard
Acting Director,
Office of the Federal Register.

January 1, 1989.

THIS TITLE

Title 21—Food and Drugs is composed of nine volumes. The parts in these volumes are arranged in the following order: Parts 1-99, 100-169, 170-199, 200-299, 300-499, 500-599, 600-799, 800-1299, and 1300-end. The first eight volumes, containing Parts 1-1299, comprise Chapter I—Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services. The ninth volume, containing Part 1300 to end, includes Chapter II—Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice. The contents of these volumes represent all current regulations codified under this title of the CFR as of April 1, 1989.

The Table of Excepted Prescription Drugs to Part 1308 appears in the volume containing Part 1300-end.

Redesignation tables for Chapter I—Food and Drug Administration appear in the Finding Aids section of the first eight volumes.

For this volume, Suzanne L. Meyer was Chief Editor. The Code of Federal Regulations publication program is under the direction of Richard L. Claypoole, assisted by Robert E. Jordan.

Would you like to know...

if any changes have been made to the Code of Federal Regulations or what documents have been published in the Federal Register without reading the Federal Register every day? If so, you may wish to subscribe to the *LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected)*, the *Federal Register Index*, or both.

LSA • List of CFR Sections Affected

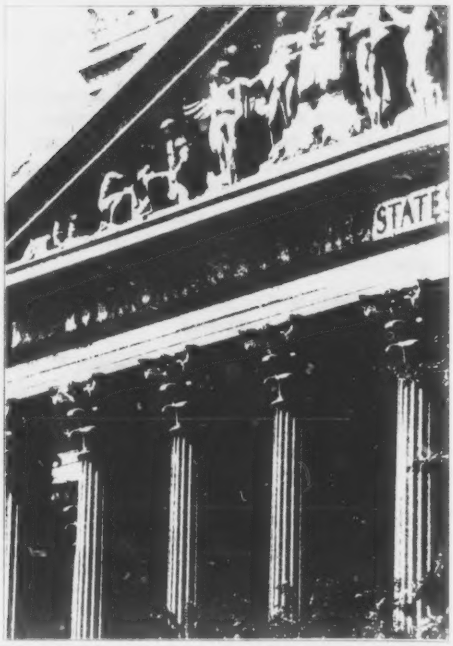
The LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected) is designed to lead users of the Code of Federal Regulations to amendatory actions published in the Federal Register. The LSA is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries indicate the nature of the changes—such as revised, removed, or corrected.
$21.00 per year

Federal Register Index

The index, covering the contents of the daily Federal Register, is issued monthly in cumulative form. Entries are carried primarily under the names of the issuing agencies. Significant subjects are carried as cross-references.
$19.00 per year

A finding aid is included in each publication which lists Federal Register page numbers with the date of publication in the Federal Register.

Note to FR Subscribers:
FR Indexes and the LSA (List of CFR Sections Affected) are mailed automatically to regular FR subscribers.



Superintendent of Documents Subscriptions Order Form

Order Processing Code:
*6483

Charge your order. It's easy! VISA

Charge orders may be telephoned to the GPO order desk at (202) 783-3238 from 8:00 a.m. to 4:00 p.m. eastern time, Monday-Friday (except holidays)

☐ **YES,** please send me the following indicated subscriptions:

- ☐ LSA • List of CFR Sections Affected—one year as issued—$21.00 (LCS)
- ☐ Federal Register Index—one year as issued—$19.00 (FRSU)

1. The total cost of my order is $ ______ All prices include regular domestic postage and handling and are subject to change. International customers please add 25%

Please Type or Print

2. ______________________
(Company or personal name)
____
(Additional address/attention line)
____
(Street address)
____
(City, State, ZIP Code)
(   ) ______________________
(Daytime phone including area code)

3. **Please choose method of payment:**
☐ Check payable to the Superintendent of Documents
☐ GPO Deposit Account ☐☐☐☐☐☐☐–☐
☐ VISA or MasterCard Account
☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐☐
____
(Credit card expiration date)

Thank you for your order!

____
(Signature)

4. **Mail To:** Superintendent of Documents, Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402-9371

Title 21—Food and Drugs

(This book contains Parts 800 to 1299)

Part

CHAPTER I—Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Continued) 800

CROSS REFERENCES: Food Safety and Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture: See Meat and Poultry Inspection, 9 CFR Chapter III.

Federal Trade Commission: See Commercial Practices, 16 CFR Chapter I.

U.S. Customs Service, Department of the Treasury: See Customs Duties, 19 CFR Chapter I.

Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury: See Internal Revenue, 26 CFR Chapter I. Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, and Firearms, Department of the Treasury: See Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms, 27 CFR Chapter I.

CHAPTER I—FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION, DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES—(Continued)

(Parts 800 to 1299)

EDITORIAL NOTES: 1. Nomenclature changes affecting Chapter I of this title appear at 45 FR 40976, June 17, 1980, and 46 FR 8454, Jan. 27, 1981.

2. The Food and Drug Administration published a document at 49 FR 41019, Oct. 19, 1984, establishing July 1, 1987, as a uniform effective date for compliance for regulations affecting the labeling of food products. At 51 FR 34085, Sept. 25, 1986, FDA established January 1, 1989, as a new uniform effective date for compliance. The new uniform effective date will apply only to final FDA food labeling regulations after July 1, 1986, and before January 1, 1988.

SUBCHAPTER H—MEDICAL DEVICES

Part		Page
800	General	5
801	Labeling	11
803	Medical device reporting	35
805	Cardiac pacemaker registry	40
807	Establishment registration and device listing for manufacturers of devices	42
808	Exemptions from Federal preemption of State and local medical device requirements	54
809	In vitro diagnostic products for human use	64
812	Investigational device exemptions	70
813	Investigational exemptions for intraocular lenses	84
814	Premarket approval of medical devices	106
820	Good manufacturing practice for medical devices: General	120
860	Medical device classification procedures	130
861	Procedures for performance standards development	141
862	Clinical chemistry and clinical devices	148
864	Hematology and pathology devices	179
866	Immunology and microbiology devices	196
868	Anesthesiology devices	228
870	Cardiovascular devices	244

Part		Page
872	Dental devices	263
874	Ear, nose, and throat devices	279
876	Gastroenterology-urology devices	288
878	General and Plastic Surgery Devices	301
880	General hospital and personal use devices	309
882	Neurological devices	324
884	Obstetrical and gynecological devices	337
886	Opthalmic devices	351
888	Orthopedic devices	370
890	Physical medicine devices	387
892	Radiology devices	401
895	Banned devices	409

SUBCHAPTER I—[RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER J—RADIOLOGICAL HEALTH

Part		Page
1000	General	415
1002	Records and reports	424
1003	Notification of defects or failure to comply	430
1004	Repurchase, repairs, or replacement of electronic products	434
1005	Importation of electronic products	436
1010	Performance standards for electronic products: General	440
1020	Performance standards for ionizing radiation emitting products	445
1030	Performance standards for microwave and radio frequency emitting products	475
1040	Performance standards for light-emitting products	478
1050	Performance standards for sonic, infrasonic, and ultrasonic radiation-emitting products	503

SUBCHAPTER K—[RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER L—REGULATIONS UNDER CERTAIN OTHER ACTS ADMINISTERED BY THE FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

Part		Page
1210	Regulations under the Federal Import Milk Act	508
1220	Regulations under the Tea Importation Act	511
1230	Regulations under the Federal Caustic Poison Act	520
1240	Control of communicable diseases	526
1250	Interstate conveyance sanitation	534
1251—1299	[Reserved]	

SUBCHAPTER H—MEDICAL DEVICES

PART 800—GENERAL

Subpart A—[Reserved]

Subpart B—Requirements for Specific Medical Devices

Sec.
800.10 Contact lens solution; sterility.
800.12 Contact lens solutions and tablets; tamper-resistant packaging.

Subpart C—Administrative Practices and Procedures

800.55 Administrative detention.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 201(n), 304, 501, 502, 505, 506, 507, 515, 519, 521, 601, 602, 701 (21 U.S.C. 321(n), 334, 351, 352, 355, 356, 357, 360e, 360i, 360k, 361, 362, 371).

Subpart A—[Reserved]

Subpart B—Requirements for Specific Medical Devices

§ 800.10 Contact lens solutions; sterility.

(a)(1) Informed medical opinion is in agreement that all preparations offered or intended for ophthalmic use, including contact lens solutions, should be sterile. It is further evident that such preparations purport to be of such purity and quality as to be suitable for safe use in the eye.

(2) The Food and Drug Administration concludes that all such preparations, if they are not sterile, fall below their professed standard of purity or quality and may be unsafe. In a statement of policy issued on September 1, 1964, the Food and Drug Administration ruled that liquid preparations offered or intended for ophthalmic use that are not sterile may be regarded as adulterated within the meaning of section 501(c) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), and, further, may be deemed misbranded within the meaning of section 502(j) of the act. By this regulation, this ruling is applicable to all preparations for ophthalmic use that are regulated as medical devices, i.e., contact lens solutions. By the regulation in § 200.50 of this chapter, this ruling is applicable to ophthalmic preparations that are regulated as drugs.

(3) The containers shall be sterile at the time of filling and closing, and the container or individual carton shall be so sealed that the contents cannot be used without destroying the seal. The packaging and labeling of these solutions shall also comply with § 800.12 on tamper-resistant packaging requirements.

(b) Liquid ophthalmic preparations packed in multiple-dose containers should:

(1) Contain one or more suitable and harmless substances that will inhibit the growth of microorganisms; or

(2) Be so packaged as to volume and type of container and so labeled as to duration of use and with such necessary warnings as to afford adequate protection and minimize the hazard of injury resulting from contamination during use.

(c) Eye cups, eye droppers, and other dispensers intended for ophthalmic use should be sterile, and may be regarded as falling below their professed standard of purity or quality if they are not sterile. These articles, which are regulated as medical devices unless packaged with the drugs with which they are to be used, should be packaged so as to maintain sterility until the package is opened and be labeled, on or within the retail package, so as to afford adequate directions and necessary warnings to minimize the hazard of injury resulting from contamination during use.

[47 FR 50455, Nov. 5, 1982]

§ 800.12 Contact lens solutions and tablets; tamper-resistant packaging.

(a) *General.* Unless contact lens solutions used, for example, to clean, disinfect, wet, lubricate, rinse, soak, or store contact lenses and salt tablets or other dosage forms to be used to make any such solutions are packaged in tamper-resistant retail packages, there is the opportunity for the malicious adulteration of these products with risks both to individuals who unknowingly purchase adulterated products and with loss of consumer confidence in the security of the packages of over-the-counter (OTC) health care products. The Food and Drug Administration has the authority and responsibility under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act) to establish a uniform national standard for tamper-resistant packaging of those OTC products vulnerable to malicious adulteration that will improve the security of OTC packaging and help assure the safety and effectiveness of the products contained therein. A contact lens solution or tablet or other dosage form to be used to make such a solution for retail sale that is not packaged in a tamper-resistant package and labeled in accordance with this section is adulterated under section 501 of the act or misbranded under section 502 of the act, or both.

(b) *Requirement for tamper-resistant package.* Each manufacturer and packer who packages for retail sale a product regulated as a medical device that is a solution intended for use with contact lenses, e.g., for cleaning, disinfecting, wetting, lubricating, rinsing, soaking, or storing contact lenses or tablets or other dosage forms to be used to make any such solution shall package the product in a tamper-resistant package, if this product is accessible to the public while held for sale. A tamper-resistant package is one having an indicator or barrier to entry which, if breached or missing, can reasonably be expected to provide visible evidence to consumers that tampering has occurred. To reduce the likelihood of substitution of a tamper-resistant feature after tampering, the indicator or barrier to entry is required to be distinctive by design or by the use of an identifying characteristic (e.g., a pattern, name, registered trademark, logo, or picture). For purposes of this section, the term "distinctive by design" means the package cannot be duplicated with commonly available material or through commonly available processes. A tamper-resistant package may involve an immediate-container and closure system or secondary-container or carton system or any combination of systems intended to provide a visual indication of package integrity. The tamper-resistant feature shall be designed to and shall remain intact when handled in a reasonable manner during manufacture, distribution, and retail display.

(c) *Labeling.* Each retail package of a product covered by this section is required to bear a statement that is prominently placed so that consumers are alerted to the tamper-resistant feature of the package. The labeling statement is also required to be so placed that it will be unaffected if the tamper-resistant feature of the package is breached or missing. If the tamper-resistant feature chosen to meet the requirement in paragraph (b) of this section is one that uses an identifying characteristic, that characteristic is required to be referred to in the labeling statement. For example, the labeling statement on a bottle with a shrink band could say "For your protection, this bottle has an imprinted seal around the neck."

(d) *Requests for exemptions from packaging and labeling requirements.* A manufacturer or packer may request an exemption from the packaging and labeling requirements of this section. A request for an exemption is required to be submitted in the form of a citizen petition under § 10.30 of this chapter and should be clearly identified on the envelope as a "Request for Exemption from Tamper-resistant Rule." A petition for an exemption from a requirement of this section is required to contain the same kind of information about the product as is specified for OTC drugs in § 211.132(d) of this chapter. This information collection requirement has been approved by the Office of Management and Budget under number 0910-0150.

(e) *Products subject to approved premarket approval applications.* Holders of approved premarket approval applications for products subject to this section are required to submit supplements to provide for changes in packaging to comply with the requirement of paragraph (b) of this section unless these changes do not affect the composition of the container, the torque (tightness) of the container, or the composition of the closure component in contact with the contents (cap liner or innerseal) as these features are described in the approved premarket approval application. Any supplemental premarket approval application under this paragraph is required to include data sufficient to show that these changes do not adversely affect the product.

(f) *Effective date.* Each product subject to this section is required to comply with the requirements of this section on the dates listed below except to the extent that a product's manufacturer or packer has obtained an exemption from a packaging or labeling requirement:

(1) *Initial effective date for packaging requirements.* (i) The packaging requirement in paragraph (b) of this section is effective on February 7, 1983 for each contact lens solution packaged for retail sale on or after that date, except for the requirement in paragraph (b) of this section for a distinctive indicator or barrier to entry.

(ii) The packaging requirement in paragraph (b) of this section is effective on May 5, 1983 for each tablet that is to be used to make a contact lens solution and that is packaged for retail sale on or after that date.

(2) *Initial effective date for labeling requirements.* The requirement in paragraph (b) of this section that the indicator or barrier to entry be distinctive by design and the requirement in paragraph (c) of this section for a labeling statement are effective on May 5, 1983 for each product subject to this section packaged for retail sale on or after that date, except that the requirement for a specific label reference to any identifying characteristic is effective on February 6, 1984 for each affected product subject to this section packaged for retail sale on or after that date.

(3) *Retail level effective date.* The tamper-resistant packaging requirement of paragraph (b) of this section is effective on February 6, 1984 for each product subject to this section that is held for sale at retail level on or after that date that was packaged for retail sale before May 5, 1983. This does not include the requirement in paragraph (b) of this section that the indicator or barrier to entry be distinctive by design. Products packaged for retail sale after May 5, 1983, are required to be in compliance with all aspects of the regulations without regard to the retail level effective date.

[47 FR 50455, Nov. 5, 1982; 48 FR 1706, Jan. 14, 1983, as amended at 48 FR 16666, Apr. 19, 1983; 48 FR 37625, Aug. 19, 1983; 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: A document published at 48 FR 41579, Sept. 16, 1983, stayed the effective date of § 800.12(f)(3) until further notice.

Subpart C—Administrative Practices and Procedures

§ 800.55 Administrative detention.

(a) *General.* This section sets forth the procedures for detention of medical devices intended for human use believed to be adulterated or misbranded. Administrative detention is intended to protect the public by preventing distribution or use of devices encountered during inspections that may be adulterated or misbranded, until the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has had time to consider what action it should take concerning the devices, and to initiate legal action, if appropriate. Devices that FDA orders detained may not be used, moved, altered, or tampered with in any manner by any person during the detention period, except as authorized under paragraph (h) of this section, until FDA terminates the detention order under paragraph (j) of this section, or the detention period expires, whichever occurs first.

(b) *Criteria for ordering detention.* Administrative detention of devices may be ordered in accordance with this section when an authorized FDA representative, during an inspection under section 704 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), has reason to believe that a device, as defined in section 201(h) of the act, is adulterated or misbranded.

(c) *Detention period.* The detention is to be for a reasonable period that may not exceed 20 calendar days after the detention order is issued, unless the FDA District Director in whose district the devices are located determines that a greater period is required to seize the devices, to institute injuction proceedings, or to evaluate the need for legal action, in which case the

District Director may authorize detention for 10 additional calendar days. The additional 10-calendar-day detention period may be ordered at the time the detention order is issued or at any time thereafter. The entire detention period may not exceed 30 calendar days, except when the detention period is extended under paragraph (g)(6) of this section. An authorized FDA representative may, in accordance with paragraph (j) of this section, terminate a detention before the expiration of the detention period.

(d) *Issuance of detention order.* (1) The detention order shall be issued in writing, in the form of a detention notice, signed by the authorized FDA representative who has reason to believe that the devices are adulterated or misbranded, and issued to the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the place where the devices are located. If the owner or the user of the devices is different from the owner, operator, or agent in charge of the place where the devices are detained, a copy of the detention order shall be provided to the owner or user of the devices if the owner's or user's identity can be readily determined.

(2) If detention of devices in a vehicle or other carrier is ordered, a copy of the detention order shall be provided to the shipper of record and the owner of the vehicle or other carrier, if their identities can be readily determined.

(3) The detention order shall include the following information: (i) A statement that the devices identified in the order are detained for the period shown; (ii) a brief, general statement of the reasons for the detention; (iii) the location of the devices; (iv) a statement that these devices are not to be used, moved, altered, or tampered with in any manner during that period, except as permitted under paragraph (h) of this section, without the written permission of an authorized FDA representative; (v) identification of the detained devices; (vi) the detention order number; (vii) the date and hour of the detention order; (viii) the period of the detention; (ix) the text of section 304(g) of the act and paragraph (g) (1) and (2) of this section; (x) a statement that any informal hearing on an appeal of a detention order shall be conducted as a regulatory hearing under Part 16 of this chapter, with certain exceptions described in paragraph (g)(3) of this section; and (xi) the location and telephone number of the FDA district office and the name of the FDA District Director.

(e) *Approval of detention order.* A detention order, before issuance, shall be approved by the FDA District Director in whose district the devices are located. If prior written approval is not feasible, prior oral approval shall be obtained and confirmed by written memorandum within FDA as soon as possible.

(f) *Labeling or marking a detained device.* An FDA representative issuing a detention order under paragraph (d) of this section shall label or mark the devices with official FDA tags that include the following information:

(1) A statement that the devices are detained by the United States Government in accordance with section 304(g) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. 334(g)).

(2) A statement that the devices shall not be used, moved, altered, or tampered with in any manner for the period shown, without the written permission of an authorized FDA representative, except as authorized in paragraph (h) of this section.

(3) A statement that the violation of a detention order or the removal or alteration of the tag is punishable by fine or imprisonment or both (section 303 of the act, 21 U.S.C. 333).

(4) The detention order number, the date and hour of the detention order, the detention period, and the name of the FDA representative who issued the detention order.

(g) *Appeal of a detention order.* (1) A person who would be entitled to claim the devices, if seized, may appeal a detention order. Any appeal shall be submitted in writing to the FDA District Director in whose district the devices are located within 5 working days of receipt of a detention order. If the appeal includes a request for an informal hearing, as defined in section 201(y) of the act, the appellant shall request either that a hearing be held within 5 working days after the appeal is filed or that the hearing be held at a later date, which shall not be later than 20 calendar days after receipt of a detention order.

(2) The appellant of a detention order shall state the ownership or proprietary interest the appellant has in the detained devices. If the detained devices are located at a place other than an establishment owned or operated by the appellant, the appellant shall include documents showing that the appellant would have legitimate authority to claim the devices if seized.

(3) Any informal hearing on an appeal of a detention order shall be conducted as a regulatory hearing pursuant to regulation in accordance with Part 16 of this chapter, except that:

(i) The detention order under paragraph (d) of this section, rather than the notice under § 16.22(a) of this chapter, provides notice of opportunity for a hearing under this section and is part of the administrative record of the regulatory hearing under § 16.80(a) of this chapter.

(ii) A request for a hearing under this section should be addressed to the FDA District Director.

(iii) The last sentence of § 16.24(e) of this chapter, stating that a hearing may not be required to be held at a time less than 2 working days after receipt of the request for a hearing, does not apply to a hearing under this section.

(iv) Paragraph (g)(4) of this section, rather than § 16.42(a) of this chapter, describes the FDA employees, i.e., regional food and drug directors, who preside at hearings under this section.

(4) The presiding officer of a regulatory hearing on an appeal of a detention order, who also shall decide the appeal, shall be a regional food and drug director (i.e., a director of an FDA regional office listed in § 5.115 of this chapter) who is permitted by § 16.42(a) of this chapter to preside over the hearing.

(5) If the appellant requests a regulatory hearing and requests that the hearing be held within 5 working days after the appeal is filed, the presiding officer shall, within 5 working days, hold the hearing and render a decision affirming or revoking the detention.

(6) If the appellant requests a regulatory hearing and requests that the hearing be held at a date later than within 5 working days after the appeal is filed, but not later than 20 calendar days after receipt of a detention order, the presiding officer shall hold the hearing at a date agreed upon by FDA and the appellant. The presiding officer shall decide whether to affirm or revoke the detention within 5 working days after the conclusion of the hearing. The detention period extends to the date of the decision even if the 5-working-day period for making the decision extends beyond the otherwise applicable 20-calendar-day or 30-calendar-day detention period.

(7) If the appellant appeals the detention order but does not request a regulatory hearing, the presiding officer shall render a decision on the appeal affirming or revoking the detention within 5 working days after the filing of the appeal.

(8) If the presiding officer affirms a detention order, the devices continue to be detained until FDA terminates the detention under paragraph (j) of this section or the detention period expires, whichever occurs first.

(9) If the presiding officer revokes a detention order, FDA shall terminate the detention under paragraph (j) of this section.

(h)(1) *Movement of detained devices.* Except as provided in this paragraph, no person shall move detained devices within or from the place where they have been ordered detained until FDA terminates the detention under paragraph (j) of this section or the detention period expires, whichever occurs first.

(2) If detained devices are not in final form for shipment, the manufacturer may move them within the establishment where they are detained to complete the work needed to put them in final form. As soon as the devices are moved for this purpose, the individual responsible for their movement shall orally notify the FDA representative who issued the detention order, or another responsible district office official, of the movement of the devices. As soon as the devices are put in final form, they shall be segregated from other devices, and the individual

responsible for their movement shall orally notify the FDA representative who issued the detention order, or another responsible district office official, of their new location. The devices put in final form shall not be moved further without FDA approval.

(3) The FDA representative who issued the detention order, or another responsible district office official, may approve, in writing, the movement of detained devices for any of the following purposes:

(i) To prevent interference with an establishment's operations or harm to the devices.

(ii) To destroy the devices.

(iii) To bring the devices into compliance.

(iv) For any other purpose that the FDA representative who issued the detention order, or other responsible district office official, believes is appropriate in the case.

(4) If an FDA representative approves the movement of detained devices under paragraph (h)(3) of this section, the detained devices shall remain segregated from other devices and the person responsible for their movement shall immediately orally notify the official who approved the movement of the devices, or another responsible FDA district office official, of the new location of the detained devices.

(5) Unless otherwise permitted by the FDA representative who is notified of, or who approves, the movement of devices under this paragraph, the required tags shall accompany the devices during and after movement and shall remain with the devices until FDA terminates the detention or the detention period expires, whichever occurs first.

(i) *Actions involving adulterated or misbranded devices.* If FDA determines that the detained devices, including any that have been put in final form, are adulterated or misbranded, or both, it may initiate legal action against the devices or the responsible individuals, or both, or request that the devices be destroyed or otherwise brought into compliance with the act under FDA's supervision.

(j) *Detention termination.* If FDA decides to terminate a detention or when the detention period expires, whichever occurs first, an FDA representative authorized to terminate a detention will issue a detention termination notice releasing the devices to any person who received the original detention order or that person's representative and will remove, or authorize in writing the removal of, the required labels or tags.

(k) *Recordkeeping requirements.* (1) After issuance of a detention order under paragraph (d) of this section, the owner, operator, or agent is charge of any factory, warehouse, other establishment, or consulting laboratory where detained devices are manufactured, processed, packed, or held shall have, or establish, and maintain adequate records relating to how the detained devices may have become adulterated or misbranded, records on any distribution of the devices before and after the detention period, records on the correlation of any in-process detained devices that are put in final form under paragraph (h) of this section to the completed devices, records of any changes in, or processing of, the devices permitted under the detention order, and records of any other movement under paragraph (h) of this section. Records required under this paragraph shall be provided to the FDA on request for review and copying. Any FDA request for access to records required under this paragraph shall be made at a reasonable time, shall state the reason or purpose for the request, and shall identify to the fullest extent practicable the information or type of information sought in the records to which access is requested.

(2) Records required under this paragraph shall be maintained for a maximum period of 2 years after the issuance of the detention order or for such other shorter period as FDA directs. When FDA terminates the detention or when the detention period expires, whichever occurs first, FDA will advise all persons required under this paragraph to keep records concerning that detention whether further recordkeeping is required for the remainder of the 2-year, or shorter, period. FDA ordinarily will not require further recordkeeping if the agency

determines that the devices are not adulterated or misbranded or that recordkeeping is not necessary to protect the public health, unless the records are required under other regulations in this chapter (e.g., the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 of this chapter).

[44 FR 13239, Mar. 9, 1979, as amended at 49 FR 3174, Jan. 26, 1984]

PART 801—LABELING

Subpart A—General Labeling Provisions

Sec.
801.1 Medical devices; name and place of business of manufacturer, packer or distributor.
801.4 Meaning of "intended uses."
801.5 Medical devices; adequate directions for use.
801.6 Medical devices; misleading statements.
801.15 Medical devices; prominence of required label statements.
801.16 Medical devices; Spanish-language version of certain required statements.

Subpart B—[Reserved]

Subpart C—Labeling Requirements for Over-the-Counter Devices

801.60 Principal display panel.
801.61 Statement of identity.
801.62 Declaration of net quantity of contents.

Subpart D—Exemptions From Adequate Directions for Use

801.109 Prescription devices.
801.110 Retail exemption for prescription devices.
801.116 Medical devices having commonly known directions.
801.119 In vitro diagnostic products.
801.122 Medical devices for processing, repacking, or manufacturing.
801.125 Medical devices for use in teaching, law enforcement, research, and analysis.
801.127 Medical devices; expiration of exemptions.

Subpart E—Other Exemptions

801.150 Medical devices; processing, labeling, or repacking.

Sec.

Subparts F-G—[Reserved]

Subpart H—Special Requirements for Specific Devices

801.403 Specific medical devices; recommended warning and caution statements.
801.405 Labeling of articles intended for lay use in the repairing and/or refitting of dentures.
801.408 Pessaries for intracervical and intrauterine use.
801.410 Use of impact-resistant lenses in eyeglasses and sunglasses.
801.415 Maximum acceptable level of ozone.
800.417 Chlorofluorocarbon propellants.
801.420 Hearing aid devices; professional and patient labeling.
801.421 Hearing aid devices; conditions for sale.
801.425 Nonrestricted devices in self-pressurized containers with chlorofluorocarbon propellants.
801.427 Professional and patient labeling for intrauterine contraceptive devices.
801.430 User labeling for menstrual tampons.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 701, 52 Stat. 1055-1056 as amended (21 U.S.C. 371); 21 CFR 5.10. § 801.420 also is issued under secs. 201(h), (k), (m), and (n), 502, 519, 520(e), 704, 52 Stat. 1041 as amended, 1050-1051 as amended, 67 Stat. 477 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-565, 567, 575 (21 U.S.C. 321(h), (k), (m), and (n), 352, 360i, 360j(e), 374).

SOURCE: 41 FR 6896, Feb. 13, 1976, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Labeling Provisions

§ 801.1 Medical devices; name and place of business of manufacturer, packer or distributor.

(a) The label of a device in package form shall specify conspicuously the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

(b) The requirement for declaration of the name of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor shall be deemed to be satisfied, in the case of a corporation, only by the actual corporate name which may be preceded or followed by the name of the particular division of the corporation. Abbreviations for "Company," "Incorporated," etc., may be used and "The" may be omitted. In the case of an individual, partnership, or association, the name under which the business is conducted shall be used.

(c) Where a device is not manufactured by the person whose name appears on the label, the name shall be qualified by a phrase that reveals the connection such person has with such device; such as, "Manufactured for ———", "Distributed by ———", or any other wording that expresses the facts.

(d) The statement of the place of business shall include the street address, city, State, and Zip Code; however, the street address may be omitted if it is shown in a current city directory or telephone directory. The requirement for inclusion of the ZIP Code shall apply only to consumer commodity labels developed or revised after the effective date of this section. In the case of nonconsumer packages, the ZIP Code shall appear on either the label or the labeling (including the invoice).

(e) If a person manufactures, packs, or distributes a device at a place other than his principal place of business, the label may state the principal place of business in lieu of the actual place where such device was manufactured or packed or is to be distributed, unless such statement would be misleading.

§ 801.4 Meaning of "intended uses."

The words "intended uses" or words of similar import in §§ 801.5, 801.119, and 801.122 refer to the objective intent of the persons legally responsible for the labeling of devices. The intent is determined by such persons' expressions or may be shown by the circumstances surrounding the distribution of the article. This objective intent may, for example, be shown by labeling claims, advertising matter, or oral or written statements by such persons or their representatives. It may be shown by the circumstances that the article is, with the knowledge of such persons or their representatives, offered and used for a purpose for which it is neither labeled nor advertised. The intended uses of an article may change after it has been introduced into interstate commerce by its manufacturer. If, for example, a packer, distributor, or seller intends an article for different uses than those intended by the person from whom he received the devices, such packer, distributor, or seller is required to supply adequate labeling in accordance with the new intended uses. But if a manufacturer knows, or has knowledge of facts that would give him notice that a device introduced into interstate commerce by him is to be used for conditions, purposes, or uses other than the ones for which he offers it, he is required to provide adequate labeling for such a device which accords with such other uses to which the article is to be put.

§ 801.5 Medical devices; adequate directions for use.

"Adequate directions for use" means directions under which the layman can use a device safely and for the purposes for which it is intended. Section 801.4 defines "intended use". Directions for use may be inadequate because, among other reasons, of omission, in whole or in part, or incorrect specification of:

(a) Statements of all conditions, purposes, or uses for which such device is intended, including conditions, purposes, or uses for which it is prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its oral, written, printed, or graphic advertising, and conditions, purposes, or uses for which the device is commonly used; except that such statements shall not refer to conditions, uses, or purposes for which the device can be safely used only under the supervision of a practitioner licensed by law and for which it is advertised solely to such practitioner.

(b) Quantity of dose, including usual quantities for each of the uses for which it is intended and usual quantities for persons of different ages and different physical conditions.

(c) Frequency of administration or application.

(d) Duration of administration or application.

(e) Time of administration or application, in relation to time of meals, time of onset of symptoms, or other time factors.

(f) Route or method of administration or application.

(g) Preparation for use, i.e., adjustment of temperature, or other manipulation or process.

§ 801.6 Medical devices; misleading statements.

Among representations in the labeling of a device which render such device misbranded is a false or misleading representation with respect to another device or a drug or food or cosmetic.

§ 801.15 Medical devices; prominence of required label statements.

(a) A word, statement, or other information required by or under authority of the act to appear on the label may lack that prominence and conspicuousness required by section 502(c) of the act by reason, among other reasons, of:

(1) The failure of such word, statement, or information to appear on the part or panel of the label which is presented or displayed under customary conditions of purchase;

(2) The failure of such word, statement, or information to appear on two or more parts or panels of the label, each of which has sufficient space therefor, and each of which is so designed as to render it likely to be, under customary conditions of purchase, the part or panel displayed;

(3) The failure of the label to extend over the area of the container or package available for such extension, so as to provide sufficient label space for the prominent placing of such word, statement, or information;

(4) Insufficiency of label space for the prominent placing of such word, statement, or information, resulting from the use of label space for any word, statement, design, or device which is not required by or under authority of the act to appear on the label;

(5) Insufficiency of label space for the placing of such word, statement, or information, resulting from the use of label space to give materially greater conspicuousness to any other word, statement, or information, or to any design or device; or

(6) Smallness or style of type in which such word, statement, or information appears, insufficient background contrast, obscuring designs or vignettes, or crowding with other written, printed, or graphic matter.

(b) No exemption depending on insufficiency of label space, as prescribed in regulations promulgated under section 502(b) of the act, shall apply if such insufficiency is caused by:

(1) The use of label space for any word, statement, design, or device which is not required by or under authority of the act to appear on the label;

(2) The use of label space to give greater conspicuousness to any word, statement, or other information than is required by section 502(c) of the act; or

(3) The use of label space for any representation in a foreign language.

(c)(1) All words, statements, and other information required by or under authority of the act to appear on the label or labeling shall appear thereon in the English language: *Provided, however,* That in the case of articles distributed solely in the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico or in a Territory where the predominant language is one other than English, the predominant language may be substituted for English.

(2) If the label contains any representation in a foreign language, all words, statements, and other information required by or under authority of the act to appear on the label shall appear thereon in the foreign language.

(3) If the labeling contains any representation in a foreign language, all words, statements, and other information required by or under authority of the act to appear on the label or labeling shall appear on the labeling in the foreign language.

§ 801.16 Medical devices; Spanish-language version of certain required statements.

If devices restricted to prescription use only are labeled solely in Spanish for distribution in the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico where Spanish is the predominant language, such labeling is authorized under § 801.15(c).

Subpart B—[Reserved]

Subpart C—Labeling Requirements for Over-the-Counter Devices

§ 801.60 Principal display panel.

The term "principal display panel," as it applies to over-the-counter devices in package form and as used in this part, means the part of a label that is most likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under customary conditions of display for retail sale. The principal display panel shall be large enough to accommodate all the mandatory label information required to be placed thereon by this part with clarity and conspicuousness and without obscuring designs, vignettes, or crowding. Where packages bear alternate principal display panels, information required to be placed on the principal display panel shall be duplicated on each principal display panel. For the purpose of obtaining uniform type size in declaring the quantity of contents for all packages of substantially the same size, the term "area of the principal display panel" means the area of the side or surface that bears the principal display panel, which area shall be:

(a) In the case of a rectangular package where one entire side properly can be considered to be the principal display panel side, the product of the height times the width of that side;

(b) In the case of a cylindrical or nearly cylindrical container, 40 percent of the product of the height of the container times the circumference; and

(c) In the case of any other shape of container, 40 percent of the total surface of the container: *Provided, however,* That where such container presents an obvious "principal display panel" such as the top of a triangular or circular package, the area shall consist of the entire top surface.

In determining the area of the principal display panel, exclude tops, bottoms, flanges at the tops and bottoms of cans, and shoulders and necks of bottles or jars. In the case of cylindrical or nearly cylindrical containers, information required by this part to appear on the principal display panel shall appear within that 40 percent of the circumference which is most likely to be displayed, presented, shown, or examined under customary conditions of display for retail sale.

§ 801.61 Statement of identity.

(a) The principal display panel of an over-the-counter device in package form shall bear as one of its principal features a statement of the identity of the commodity.

(b) Such statement of identity shall be in terms of the common name of the device followed by an accurate statement of the principal intended action(s) of the device. Such statement shall be placed in direct conjunction with the most prominent display of the name and shall employ terms descriptive of the principal intended action(s). The indications for use shall be included in the directions for use of the device, as required by section 502(f)(1) of the act and by the regulations in this part.

(c) The statement of identity shall be presented in bold face type on the principal display panel, shall be in a size reasonably related to the most prominent printed matter on such panel, and shall be in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package rests as it is designed to be displayed.

§ 801.62 Declaration of net quantity of contents.

(a) The label of an over-the-counter device in package form shall bear a declaration of the net quantity of contents. This shall be expressed in the terms of weight, measure, numerical count, or a combination of numerical count and weight, measure, or size: *Provided,* That:

(1) In the case of a firmly established general consumer usage and trade custom of declaring the quantity of a device in terms of linear measure or measure of area, such respective term may be used. Such term shall be augmented when necessary for accuracy of information by a statement of

the weight, measure, or size of the individual units or of the entire device.

(2) If the declaration of contents for a device by numerical count does not give accurate information as to the quantity of the device in the package, it shall be augmented by such statement of weight, measure, or size of the individual units or of the total weight, measure, or size of the device as will give such information; for example, "100 tongue depressors, adult size", "1 rectal syringe, adult size", etc. Whenever the Commissioner determines for a specific packaged device that an existing practice of declaring net quantity of contents by weight, measure, numerical count, or a combination of these does not facilitate value comparisions by consumers, he shall by regulation designate the appropriate term or terms to be used for such article.

(b) Statements of weight of the contents shall be expressed in terms of avoirdupois pound and ounce. A statement of liquid measure of the contents shall be expressed in terms of the U.S. gallon of 231 cubic inches and quart, pint, and fluid-ounce subdivisions thereof, and shall express the volume at 68° F (20° C). See also paragraph (p) of this section.

(c) The declaration may contain common or decimal fractions. A common fraction shall be in terms of halves, quarters, eighths, sixteenths, or thirty-seconds; except that if there exists a firmly established, general consumer usage and trade custom of employing different common fractions in the net quantity declaration of a particular commodity, they may be employed. A common fraction shall be reduced to its lowest terms; a decimal fraction shall not be carried out to more than two places. A statement that includes small fractions of an ounce shall be deemed to permit smaller variations than one which does not include such fractions.

(d) The declaration shall be located on the principal display panel of the label, and with respect to packages bearing alternate principal panels it shall be duplicated on each principal display panel.

(e) The declaration shall appear as a distinct item on the principal display panel, shall be separated, by at least a space equal to the height of the lettering used in the declaration, from other printed label information appearing above or below the declaration and, by at least a space equal to twice the width of the letter "N" of the style of type used in the quantity of contents statement, from other printed label information appearing to the left or right of the declaration. It shall not include any term qualifying a unit of weight, measure, or count, such as "giant pint" and "full quart", that tends to exaggerate. It shall be placed on the principal display panel within the bottom 30 percent of the area of the label panel in lines generally parallel to the base on which the package rests as it is designed to be displayed: *Provided*, That:

(1) On packages having a principal display panel of 5 square inches or less the requirement for placement within the bottom 30 percent of the area of the label panel shall not apply when the declaration of net quantity of contents meets the other requirements of this part; and

(2) In the case of a device that is marketed with both outer and inner retail containers bearing the mandatory label information required by this part and the inner container is not intended to be sold separately, the net quantity of contents placement requirement of this section applicable to such inner container is waived.

(3) The principal display panel of a device marketed on a display card to which the immediate container is affixed may be considered to be the display panel of the card, and the type size of the net quantity of contents statement is governed by the dimensions of the display card.

(f) The declaration shall accurately reveal the quantity of device in the package exclusive of wrappers and other material packed therewith.

(g) The declaration shall appear in conspicuous and easily legible boldface print or type in distinct contrast (by typography, layout, color, embossing, or molding) to other matter on the package; except that a declaration of net quantity blown, embossed, or molded on a glass or plastic surface is permissible when all label information is so formed on the surface. Requirements of conspicuousness and legibility shall include the specifications that:

(1) The ratio of height to width of the letter shall not exceed a differential of 3 units to 1 unit, i.e., no more than 3 times as high as it is wide.

(2) Letter heights pertain to upper case or capital letters. When upper and lower case or all lower case letters are used, it is the lower case letter "o" or its equivalent that shall meet the minimum standards.

(3) When fractions are used, each component numeral shall meet one-half the minimum height standards.

(h) The declaration shall be in letters and numerals in a type size established in relationship to the area of the principal display panel of the package and shall be uniform for all packages of substantially the same size by complying with the following type specifications:

(1) Not less than one-sixteenth inch in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of 5 square inches or less.

(2) Not less than one-eighth inch in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 5 but not more than 25 square inches.

(3) Not less than three-sixteenths inch in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 25 but not more than 100 square inches.

(4) Not less than one-fourth inch in height on packages the principal display panel of which has an area of more than 100 square inches, except not less than one-half inch in height if the area is more than 400 square inches.

Where the declaration is blown, embossed, or molded on a glass or plastic surface rather than by printing, typing, or coloring, the lettering sizes specified in paragraphs (h)(1) through (4) of this section shall be increased by one-sixteenth of an inch.

(i) On packages containing less than 4 pounds or 1 gallon and labeled in terms of weight or fluid measure:

(1) The declaration shall be expressed both in ounces, with identification by weight or by liquid measure and, if applicable (1 pound or 1 pint or more) followed in parentheses by a declaration in pounds for weight units, with any remainder in terms of ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pound (see examples set forth in paragraphs (k) (1) and (2) of this section), or in the case of liquid measure, in the largest whole units (quarts, quarts and pints, or pints, as appropriate) with any remainder in terms of fluid ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pint or quart (see examples set forth in paragraphs (k) (3) and (4) of this section). If the net weight of the package is less than 1 ounce avoirdupois or the net fluid measure is less than 1 fluid ounce, the declaration shall be in terms of common or decimal fractions of the respective ounce and not in terms of drams.

(2) The declaration may appear in more than one line. The term "net weight" shall be used when stating the net quantity of contents in terms of weight. Use of the terms "net" or "net contents" in terms of fluid measure or numerical count is optional. It is sufficient to distinguish avoirdupois ounce from fluid ounce through association of terms; for example, "Net wt. 6 oz" or "6 oz net wt.," and "6 fl oz" or "net contents 6 fl oz."

(j) On packages containing 4 pounds or 1 gallon or more and labeled in terms of weight or fluid measure, the declaration shall be expressed in pounds for weight units with any remainder in terms of ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pound; in the case of fluid measure, it shall be expressed in the largest whole unit, i.e., gallons, followed by common or decimal fractions of a gallon or by the next smaller whole unit or units (quarts or quarts and pints), with any remainder in terms of fluid ounces or common or decimal fractions of the pint or quart; see paragraph (k) (5) of this section.

(k) *Examples*: (1) A declaration of 1½ pounds weight shall be expressed as "net wt. 24 oz (1 lb 8 oz)," or "Net wt. 24 oz (1½ lb)" or "Net wt. 24 oz (1.5 lb)."

(2) A declaration of three-fourths pound avoirdupois weight shall be expressed as "Net wt. 12 oz.".

(3) A declaration of 1 quart liquid measure shall be expressed as "Net contents 32 fl oz (1 qt)" or "32 fl oz (1 qt)."

(4) A declaration of 1¾ quarts liquid measure shall be expressed as, "Net contents 56 fl oz (1 qt 1 pt 8 oz)" or "Net contents 56 fl oz (1 qt 1.5 pt)," but not in terms of quart and ounce such as "Net contents 56 fl oz (1 qt 24 oz)."

(5) A declaration of 2½ gallons liquid measure shall be expressed as "Net contents 2 gal 2 qt", "Net contents 2.5 gallons," or "Net contents 2½ gal" but not as "2 gal 4 pt".

(l) For quantities, the following abbreviations and none other may be employed. Periods and plural forms are optional:

gallon gal
quart qt
pint pt
ounce oz
pound lb
grain gr
kilogram kg
gram g
milligram mg
microgram mcg
liter l
milliliter ml
cubic centimeter cc
yard yd
feet or foot ft
inch in
meter m
centimeter cm
millimeter mm
fluid fl
square sq
weight wt

(m) On packages labeled in terms of linear measure, the declaration shall be expressed both in terms of inches and, if applicable (1 foot or more), the largest whole units (yards, yards and feet, feet). The declaration in terms of the largest whole units shall be in parentheses following the declaration in terms of inches and any remainder shall be in terms of inches or common or decimal fractions of the foot or yard; if applicable, as in the case of adhesive tape, the initial declaration in linear inches shall be preceded by a statement of the width. Examples of linear measure are "86 inches (2 yd 1 ft 2 in)", "90 inches (2½ yd)", "30 inches (2.5 ft)", "¾ inch by 36 in (1 yd)", etc.

(n) On packages labeled in terms of area measure, the declaration shall be expressed both in terms of square inches and, if applicable (1 square foot or more), the largest whole square unit (square yards, square yards and square feet, square feet). The declaration in terms of the largest whole units shall be in parentheses following the declaration in terms of square inches and any remainder shall be in terms of square inches or common or decimal fractions of the square foot or square yard; for example, "158 sq inches (1 sq ft 14 sq in)".

(o) Nothing in this section shall prohibit supplemental statements at locations other than the principal display panel(s) describing in nondeceptive terms the net quantity of contents, provided that such supplemental statements of net quantity of contents shall not include any term qualifying a unit of weight, measure, or count that tends to exaggerate the amount of the device contained in the package; for example, "giant pint" and "full quart". Dual or combination declarations of net quantity of contents as provided for in paragraphs (a) and (i) of this section are not regarded as supplemental net quantity statements and shall be located on the principal display panel.

(p) A separate statement of net quantity of contents in terms of the metric system of weight or measure is not regarded as a supplemental statement and an accurate statement of the net quantity of contents in terms of the metric system of weight or measure may also appear on the principal display panel or on other panels.

(q) The declaration of net quantity of contents shall express an accurate statement of the quantity of contents of the package. Reasonable variations caused by loss or gain of moisture during the course of good distribution practice or by unavoidable deviations in good manufacturing practice will be recognized. Variations from stated quantity of contents shall not be unreasonably large.

Subpart D—Exemptions From Adequate Directions for Use

§ 801.109 Prescription devices.

A device which, because of any potentiality for harmful effect, or the method of its use, or the collateral measures necessary to its use is not safe except under the supervision of a practitioner licensed by law to direct the use of such device, and hence for which "adequate directions for use" cannot be prepared, shall be exempt from section 502(f)(1) of the act if all the following conditions are met:

(a) The device is:

(1) (i) In the possession of a person, or his agents or employees, regularly and lawfully engaged in the manufacture, transportation, storage, or wholesale or retail distribution of such device; or

(ii) In the possession of a practitioner, such as physicians, dentists, and veterinarians, licensed by law to use or order the use of such device; and

(2) Is to be sold only to or on the prescription or other order of such practitioner for use in the course of his professional practice.

(b) The label of the device, other than surgical instruments, bears:

(1) The statement "Caution: Federal law restricts this device to sale by or on the order of a ————", the blank to be filled with the word "physician", "dentist", "veterinarian", or with the descriptive designation of any other practitioner licensed by the law of the State in which he practices to use or order the use of the device; and

(2) The method of its application or use.

(c) Labeling on or within the package from which the device is to be dispensed bears information for use, including indications, effects, routes, methods, and frequency and duration of administration, and any relevant hazards, contraindications, side effects, and precautions under which practitioners licensed by law to administer the device can use the device safely and for the purpose for which it is intended, including all purposes for which it is advertised or represented: *Provided, however,* That such information may be omitted from the dispensing package if, but only if, the article is a device for which directions, hazards, warnings, and other information are commonly known to practitioners licensed by law to use the device. Upon written request, stating reasonable grounds therefor, the Commissioner will offer an opinion on a proposal to omit such information from the dispensing package under this proviso.

(d) Any labeling, as defined in section 201(m) of the act, whether or not it is on or within a package from which the device is to be dispensed, distributed by or on behalf of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor of the device, that furnishes or purports to furnish information for use of the device contains adequate information for such use, including indications, effects, routes, methods, and frequency and duration of administration and any relevant hazards, contraindications, side effects, and precautions, under which practitioners licensed by law to employ the device can use the device safely and for the purposes for which it is intended, including all purposes for which it is advertised or represented. This information will not be required on so-called reminder—piece labeling which calls attention to the name of the device but does not include indications or other use information.

(e) All labeling, except labels and cartons, bearing information for use of the device also bears the date of the issuance or the date of the latest revision of such labeling.

§ 801.110 Retail exemption for prescription devices.

A device subject to § 801.109 shall be exempt at the time of delivery to the ultimate purchaser or user from section 502(f)(1) of the act if it is delivered by a licensed practitioner in the course of his professional practice or upon a prescription or other order lawfully issued in the course of his professional practice, with labeling bearing the name and address of such licensed practitioner and the directions for use and cautionary statements, if any, contained in such order.

§ 801.116 Medical devices having commonly known directions.

A device shall be exempt from section 502(f)(1) of the act insofar as adequate directions for common uses thereof are known to the ordinary individual.

§ 801.119 In vitro diagnostic products.

A product intended for use in the diagnosis of disease and which is an in vitro diagnostic product as defined in § 809.3(a) of this chapter shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of this section and section 502(f)(1) of the act if it meets the requirements of § 809.10 of this chapter.

§ 801.122 Medical devices for processing, repacking, or manufacturing.

A device intended for processing, repacking, or use in the manufacture of another drug or device shall be exempt from section 502(f)(1) of the act if its label bears the statement "Caution: For manufacturing, processing, or repacking".

§ 801.125 Medical devices for use in teaching, law enforcement, research, and analysis.

A device subject to § 801.109 shall be exempt from section 502(f)(1) of this act if shipped or sold to, or in the possession of, persons regularly and lawfully engaged in instruction in pharmacy, chemistry, or medicine not involving clinical use, or engaged in law enforcement, or in research not involving clinical use, or in chemical analysis, or physical testing, and is to be used only for such instruction, law enforcement, research, analysis, or testing.

§ 801.127 Medical devices; expiration of exemptions.

(a) If a shipment or delivery, or any part thereof, of a device which is exempt under the regulations in this section is made to a person in whose possession the article is not exempt, or is made for any purpose other than those specified, such exemption shall expire, with respect to such shipment or delivery or part thereof, at the beginning of that shipment or delivery. The causing of an exemption to expire shall be considered an act which results in such device being misbranded unless it is disposed of under circumstances in which it ceases to be a drug or device.

(b) The exemptions conferred by §§ 801.119, 801.122, and 801.125 shall continue until the devices are used for the purposes for which they are exempted, or until they are relabeled to comply with section 502(f)(1) of the act. If, however, the device is converted, or manufactured into a form limited to prescription dispensing, no exemption shall thereafter apply to the article unless the device is labeled as required by § 801.109.

Subpart E—Other Exemptions

§ 801.150 Medical devices; processing, labeling, or repacking.

(a) Except as provided by paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, a shipment or other delivery of a device which is, in accordance with the practice of the trade, to be processed, labeled, or repacked, in substantial quantity at an establishment other than that where originally processed or packed, shall be exempt, during the time of introduction into and movement in interstate commerce and the time of holding in such establishment, from compliance with the labeling and packaging requirements of section 502(b) and (f) of the act if:

(1) The person who introduced such shipment or delivery into interstate commerce is the operator of the establishment where such device is to be processed, labeled, or repacked; or

(2) In case such person is not such operator, such shipment or delivery is made to such establishment under a written agreement, signed by and containing the post office addresses of such person and such operator, and containing such specifications for the processing, labeling, or repacking, as the case may be, of such device in such establishment as will insure, if such specifications are followed, that such device will not be adulterated or misbranded within the meaning of the act upon completion of such processing, labeling, or repacking. Such person and such operator shall each keep a copy of such agreement until 2 years after the final shipment or delivery of such device from such establishment, and shall make such copies available for inspection at any reasonable hour to any officer or employee of the Department who requests them.

(b) An exemption of a shipment or other delivery of a device under paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall, at the beginning of the act of removing such shipment or delivery, or any part thereof, from such establishment, become void ab initio if the device comprising such shipment, delivery, or part is adulterated or misbranded within the meaning of the act when so removed.

(c) An exemption of a shipment or other delivery of a device under paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall become void ab initio with respect to the person who introduced such shipment or delivery into interstate commerce upon refusal by such person to make available for inspection a copy of the agreement, as required by such paragraph (a)(2).

(d) An exemption of a shipment or other delivery of a device under paragraph (a)(2) of this section shall expire:

(1) At the beginning of the act of removing such shipment or delivery, or any part thereof, from such establishment if the device comprising such shipment, delivery, or part is adulterated or misbranded within the meaning of the act when so removed; or

(2) Upon refusal by the operator of the establishment where such device is to be processed, labeled, or repacked, to make available for inspection a copy of the agreement, as required by such clause.

(e) As it is a common industry practice to manufacture and/or assemble, package, and fully label a device as sterile at one establishment and then ship such device in interstate commerce to another establishment or to a contract sterilizer for sterilization, the Food and Drug Administration will initiate no regulatory action against the device as misbranded or adulterated when the nonsterile device is labeled sterile, provided all the following conditions are met:

(1) There is in effect a written agreement which:

(i) Contains the names and post office addresses of the firms involved and is signed by the person authorizing such shipment and the operator or person in charge of the establishment receiving the devices for sterilization.

(ii) Provides instructions for maintaining proper records or otherwise accounting for the number of units in each shipment to insure that the number of units shipped is the same as the number received and sterilized.

(iii) Acknowledges that the device is nonsterile and is being shipped for further processing, and

(iv) States in detail the sterilization process, the gaseous mixture or other media, the equipment, and the testing method or quality controls to be used by the contract sterilizer to assure that the device will be brought into full compliance with the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(2) Each pallet, carton, or other designated unit is conspicuously marked to show its nonsterile nature when it is introduced into and is moving in interstate commerce, and while it is being held prior to sterilization. Following sterilization, and until such time as it is established that the device is sterile and can be released from quarantine, each pallet, carton, or other designated unit is conspicuously marked to show that it has not been released from quarantine, e.g., "sterilized—awaiting test results" or an equivalent designation.

Subparts F–G—[Reserved]

Subpart H—Special Requirements for Specific Devices

§ 801.403 Specific medical devices; recommended warning and caution statements.

DENTURE RELINERS, PADS, AND CUSHIONS.

Warning—For temporary use only. Long term use of this product may lead to faster bone loss, continuing irritation, sores, and tumors. For Use Only Until A Dentist Can Be Seen.

DENTURE REPAIR KITS.

Warning—For emergency repairs only. Long term use of home-repaired dentures may cause faster bone loss, continuing irritation, sores, and tumors. This kit for emergency use only. See Dentist Without Delay.

INFRARED GENERATORS (INCLUDING HEATING PADS).

Warning—Use carefully. May cause serious burns. Do not use over insensitive skin areas or in the presence of poor circulation. The unattended use of infrared heat by children or incapacitated persons may be dangerous.

INSULIN SYRINGES.

Warning—For patients who mix two types of insulin: Do not change: (a) The order of mixing that the physician has prescribed or (b) the model and brand of the syringe or needle without first consulting your physician or pharmacist. Failure to heed this warning can result in dosage error.

MECHANICAL MASSAGERS AND VIBRATORS.

Warning—This device should not be used over swollen or inflamed areas or skin eruptions. Do not use in unexplained calf pain. Consult physician.

STEAM OR TURKISH BATH.

Warning—Elderly persons or those suffering from heart disease or high blood pressure should not use this device unless directed by physician.

ULTRAVIOLET GENERATORS.

Warning—Wear protective goggles during use to avoid eye injury. Serious burns may be caused by exposure in excess of recommended dosage. Do not use over skin eruptions unless directed by physician.

§ 801.405 Labeling of articles intended for lay use in the repairing and/or refitting of dentures.

(a) The American Dental Association and leading dental authorities have advised the Food and Drug Administration of their concern regarding the safety of denture reliners, repair kits, pads, cushions, and other articles marketed and labeled for lay use in the repairing, refitting, or cushioning of ill-fitting, broken, or irritating dentures. It is the opinion of dental authorities and the Food and Drug Administration that to properly repair and properly refit dentures a person must have professional knowledge and specialized technical skill. Laymen cannot be expected to maintain the original vertical dimension of occlusion and the centric relation essential in the proper repairing or refitting of dentures. The continued wearing of improperly repaired or refitted dentures may cause acceleration of bone resorption, soft tissue hyperplasia, and other irreparable damage to the oral cavity. Such articles designed for lay use should be limited to emergency or temporary situations pending the services of a licensed dentist.

(b) The Food and Drug Administration therefore regards such articles as unsafe and misbranded under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, unless the labeling:

(1) (i) Limits directions for use for denture repair kits to emergency repairing pending unavoidable delay in obtaining professional reconstruction of the denture;

(ii) Limits directions for use for denture reliners, pads, and cushions to temporary refitting pending unavoidable delay in obtaining professional reconstruction of the denture;

(2) Contains in a conspicuous manner the word "emergency" preceding and modifying each indication-for-use statement for denture repair kits and the word "temporary" preceding and modifying each indication-for-use statement for reliners, pads, and cushions; and

(3) Includes a conspicuous warning statement to the effect:

(i) For denture repair kits: "*Warning—For emergency repairs only.* Long term use of home-repaired dentures may cause faster bone loss, continuing irritation, sores, and tumors. This kit for emergency use only. See Dentist Without Delay."

(ii) For denture reliners, pads, and cushions: "*Warning—For temporary use only.* Longterm use of this product may lead to faster bone loss, continuing irritation, sores, and tumors. For Use Only Until a Dentist Can Be Seen."

(c) Adequate directions for use require full information of the temporary and emergency use recommended in order for the layman to understand the limitations of usefulness, the reasons therefor, and the importance of adhering to the warnings. Accordingly, the labeling should contain substantially the following information:

(1) For denture repair kits: Special training and tools are needed to repair dentures to fit properly. Home-repaired dentures may cause irritation to the gums and discomfort and tired-

ness while eating. Long term use may lead to more troubles, even permanent changes in bones, teeth, and gums, which may make it impossible to wear dentures in the future. For these reasons, dentures repaired with this kit should be used only in an emergency until a dentist can be seen. Dentures that don't fit properly cause irritation and injury to the gums and faster bone loss, which is permanent. Dentures that don't fit properly cause gum changes that may require surgery for correction. Continuing irritation and injury may lead to cancer in the mouth. You must see your dentist as soon as possible.

(2) For denture reliners, pads, and cushions: Use of these preparations or devices may temporarily decrease the discomfort; however, their use will not make the denture fit properly. Special training and tools are needed to repair a denture to fit properly. Dentures that do not fit properly cause irritation and injury to the gums and faster bone loss, which is permanent and may require a completely new denture. Changes in the gums caused by dentures that do not fit properly may require surgery for correction. Continuing irritation and injury may lead to cancer in the mouth. You must see your dentist as soon as possible.

(3) If the denture relining or repairing material forms a permanent bond with the denture, a warning statement to the following effect should be included: "This reliner becomes fixed to the denture and a completely new denture may be required because of its use."

(d) Labeling claims exaggerating the usefulness or the safety of the material or failing to disclose all facts relevant to the claims of usefulness will be regarded as false and misleading under sections 201(n) and 502(a) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(e) Regulatory action may be initiated with respect to any article found within the jurisdiction of the act contrary to the provisions of this policy statement after 90 days following the date of publication of this section in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 801.408 Pessaries for intracervical and intrauterine use.

(a) Because of the limited evidence previously available concerning the hazards attending the use of intracervical and intrauterine pessaries, the shipment of such devices within the jurisdiction of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act with labeling limiting them to sale only on prescription, has not been subjected to regulatory proceedings. A recent survey shows that it is now the consensus of medical opinion among experts qualified by scientific training and experience to evaluate the safety of such devices that stem-type and wing-type intercervical and intrauterine pessaries are too dangerous for use under any form of labeling and serve no useful purpose. This opinion is particularly applicable to pessaries offered or intended for contraceptive use. These views do not apply to those pessaries, made with hollow tubes, intended solely for use when necessary to maintain drainage from the uterine cavity.

(b) On the basis of this consensus of expert opinion and the supporting evidence of many known injuries, the Food and Drug Administration concludes that stem-type and wing-type intracervical and intrauterine pessaries are dangerous to health, and regardless of their labeling, may be shown to be misbranded within the meaning of sections 502(f) (1) and (2) and 502(j) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. It is recommended that distributors of these devices remove them from the interstate market at once. Regulatory action may be instituted in connection with any such devices found within the jurisdiction of the act.

§ 801.410 Use of impact-resistant lenses in eyeglasses and sunglasses.

(a) Examination of data available on the frequency of eye injuries resulting from the shattering of ordinary crown glass lenses indicates that the use of such lenses constitutes an avoidable hazard to the eye of the wearer.

(b) The consensus of the ophthalmic community is that the number of eye injuries would be substantially reduced by the use in eyeglasses and sunglasses of impact-resistant lenses.

(c)(1) To protect the public more adequately from potential eye injury, eyeglasses and sunglasses must be fitted with impact-resistant lenses, except in those cases where the physician or optometrist finds that such lenses will not fulfill the visual requirements of the particular patient, directs in writing the use of other lenses, and gives written notification thereof to the patient.

(2) The physician or optometrist shall have the option of ordering glass lenses, plastic lenses, or laminated glass lenses made impact resistant by any method; however, all such lenses shall be capable of withstanding the impact test described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(3) Each finished impact-resistant glass lens for prescription use shall be individually tested for impact resistance and shall be capable of withstanding the impact test described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section. Raised multifocal lenses shall be impact resistant but need not be tested beyond initial design testing. Prism segment multifocal, slab-off prism, lenticular cataract, iseikonic, depressed segment one-piece multifocal, bioconcave, myodisc and minus lenticular, custom laminate and cemented assembly lenses shall be impact resistant but need not be subjected to impact testing. To demonstrate that all other types of impact-resistant lenses, including impact-resistant laminated glass lenses (i.e., lenses other than those described in the three preceding sentences of this paragraph (c)(3)), are capable of withstanding the impact test described in this regulation, the manufacturer of these lenses shall subject to an impact test a statistically significant sampling of lenses from each production batch, and the lenses so tested shall be representative of the finished forms as worn by the wearer, including finished forms that are of minimal lens thickness and have been subjected to any treatment used to impart impact resistance. All nonprescription lenses and plastic prescription lenses tested on the basis of statistical significance shall be tested in uncut-finished or finished form.

(d)(1) For the purpose of this regulation, the impact test described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section shall be the "referee test," defined as "one which will be utilized to determine compliance with a regulation." The referee test provides the Food and Drug Administration with the means of examining a medical device for performance and does not inhibit the manufacturer from using equal or superior test methods. A lens manufacturer shall conduct tests of lenses using the impact test described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section or any equal or superior test. Whatever test is used, the lenses shall be capable of withstanding the impact test described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section if the Food and Drug Administration examines them for performance.

(2) In the impact test, a ⅝-inch steel ball weighing approximately 0.56 ounce is dropped from a height of 50 inches upon the horizontal upper surface of the lens. The ball shall strike within a ⅝-inch diameter circle located at the geometric center of the lens. The ball may be guided but not restricted in its fall by being dropped through a tube extending to within approximately 4 inches of the lens. To pass the test, the lens must not fracture; for the purpose of this section, a lens will be considered to have fractured if it cracks through its entire thickness, including a laminar layer, if any, and across a complete diameter into two or more separate pieces, or if any lens material visible to the naked eyes becomes detached from the ocular surface. The test shall be conducted with the lens supported by a tube (1-inch inside diameter, 1¼-inch outside diameter, and approximately 1-inch high) affixed to a rigid iron or steel base plate. The total weight of the base plate and its rigidly attached fixtures shall be not less than 27 pounds. For lenses of small minimum diameter, a support tube having an outside diameter of less than 1¼ inches may be used. The support tube shall be made of rigid acrylic plastic, steel, or other suitable substance and shall have securely bonded on the top edge a ⅛- by ⅛-inch neoprene gasket

having a hardness of 40±5, as determined by ASTM Method D 1415-68 "Test for International Hardness of Vulcanized Rubber," a minimum tensile strength of 1,200 pounds, as determined by ASTM Method D 412-68 "Tension Test of Vulcanized Rubber," and a minimum ultimate elongation of 400 percent, as determined by ASTM Method D 412-68 (Both methods are incorporated by reference and are available from the American Society for Testing Materials, 1916 Race St., Philadelphia, PA 19103, or available for inspection at the Office of the Federal Register, 1100 L St. NW., Washington, DC 20408). The diameter or contour of the lens support may be modified as necessary so that the ⅛- by ⅛-inch neoprene gasket supports the lens at its periphery.

(e) Copies of invoice(s), shipping document(s), and records of sale or distribution of all impact resistant lenses, including finished eyeglasses and sunglasses, shall be kept and maintained for a period of 3 years; however, the names and addresses of individuals purchasing nonprescription eyeglasses and sunglasses at the retail level need not be kept and maintained by the retailer. The records kept in compliance with this paragraph shall be made available upon request at all reasonable hours by any officer or employee of the Food and Drug Administration or by any other officer or employee acting on behalf of the Secretary of Health and Human Services and such officer or employee shall be permitted to inspect and copy such records, to make such inventories of stock as he deems necessary, and otherwise to check the correctness of such inventories.

(f) In addition, those persons conducting tests in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section shall maintain the results thereof and a description of the test method and of the test apparatus for a period of 3 years. These records shall be made available upon request at any reasonable hour by any officer or employee acting on behalf of the Secretary of Health and Human Services. The persons conducting tests shall permit the officer or employee to inspect and copy the records, to make such inventories of stock as the officer or employee deems necessary, and otherwise to check the correctness of the inventories.

(g) For the purpose of this section, the term "manufacturer" includes an importer for resale. Such importer may have the tests required by paragraph (d) of this section conducted in the country of origin but must make the results thereof available, upon request, to the Food and Drug Administration, as soon as practicable.

(h) All lenses must be impact-resistant except when the physician or optometrist finds that impact-resistant lenses will not fulfill the visual requirements for a particular patient.

(i) This statement of policy does not apply to contact lenses.

(Secs. 201, 501, 502, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1040-1042 as amended, 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 90 Stat. 564-565 (21 U.S.C. 321, 351, 352, 360i, 371(a)))

[41 FR 6896, Feb. 13, 1976, as amended at 44 FR 20678, Apr. 6, 1979; 47 FR 9397, Mar. 5, 1982]

§ 801.415 Maximum acceptable level of ozone.

(a) Ozone is a toxic gas with no known useful medical application in specific, adjunctive, or preventive therapy. In order for ozone to be effective as a germicide, it must be present in a concentration far greater than that which can be safely tolerated by man and animals.

(b) Although undesirable physiological effects on the central nervous system, heart, and vision have been reported, the predominant physiological effect of ozone is primary irritation of the mucous membranes. Inhalation of ozone can cause sufficient irritation to the lungs to result in pulmonary edema. The onset of pulmonary edema is usually delayed for some hours after exposure; thus, symptomatic response is not a reliable warning of exposure to toxic concentrations of ozone. Since olfactory fatigue develops readily, the odor of ozone is not a reliable index of atmospheric ozone concentration.

(c) A number of devices currently on the market generate ozone by design or as a byproduct. Since exposure to ozone above a certain concentration can be injurious to health, any such device will be considered adulterated and/or misbranded within the meaning of sections 501 and 502 of the act if it is used or intended for use under the following conditions:

(1) In such a manner that it generates ozone at a level in excess of 0.05 part per million by volume of air circulating through the device or causes an accumulation of ozone in excess of 0.05 part per million by volume of air (when measured under standard conditions at 25° C (77° F) and 760 millimeters of mercury) in the atmosphere of enclosed space intended to be occupied by people for extended periods of time, e.g., houses, apartments, hospitals, and offices. This applies to any such device, whether portable or permanent or part of any system, which generates ozone by design or as an inadvertent or incidental product.

(2) To generate ozone and release it into the atmosphere in hospitals or other establishments occupied by the ill or infirm.

(3) To generate ozone and release it into the atmosphere and does not indicate in its labeling the maximum acceptable concentration of ozone which may be generated (not to exceed 0.05 part per million by volume of air circulating through the device) as established herein and the smallest area in which such device can be used so as not to produce an ozone accumulation in excess of 0.05 part per million.

(4) In any medical condition for which there is no proof of safety and effectiveness.

(5) To generate ozone at a level less than 0.05 part per million by volume of air circulating through the device and it is labeled for use as a germicide or deodorizer.

(d) This section does not affect the present threshold limit value of 0.10 part per million (0.2 milligram per cubic meter) of ozone exposure for an 8-hour-day exposure of industrial workers as recommended by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists.

(e) The method and apparatus specified in 40 CFR Part 50, or any other equally sensitive and accurate method, may be employed in measuring ozone pursuant to this section.

§ 801.417 Chlorofluorocarbon propellants.

The use of chlorofluorocarbon in devices as propellants in self-pressurized containers is generally prohibited except as provided in § 2.125 of this chapter.

(Secs. 301, 402, 409, 501, 502, 505, 507, 512, 601, 52 Stat. 1042–1043 as amended, 1046–1047 as amended, 1049–1054 as amended, 1055, 57 Stat. 463 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785–1788 as amended, 82 Stat. 343–351 (21 U.S.C. 331, 342, 348, 351, 352, 355, 357, 360b, 361) sec. 102(2), 83 Stat. 853 (42 U.S.C. 4332))

[43 FR 11318, Mar. 17, 1978]

§ 801.420 Hearing aid devices; professional and patient labeling.

(a) *Definitions for the purposes of this section and § 801.421.* (1) "Hearing aid" means any wearable instrument or device designed for, offered for the purpose of, or represented as aiding persons with or compensating for, impaired hearing.

(2) "Ear specialist" means any licensed physician who specializes in diseases of the ear and is medically trained to identify the symptoms of deafness in the context of the total health of the patient, and is qualified by special training to diagnose and treat hearing loss. Such physicians are also known as otolaryngologists, otologists, and otorhinolaryngologists.

(3) "Dispenser" means any person, partnership, corporation, or association engaged in the sale, lease, or rental of hearing aids to any member of the consuming public or any employee, agent, sales person, and/or representative of such a person, partnership, corporation, or association.

(4) "Audiologist" means any person qualified by training and experience to specialize in the evaluation and rehabilitation of individuals whose communication disorders center in whole or in part in the hearing function. In some states audiologists must satisfy specific requirements for licensure.

(5) "Sale" or "purchase" includes any lease or rental of a hearing aid to a member of the consuming public who is a user or prospective user of a hearing aid.

(6) "Used hearing aid" means any hearing aid that has been worn for any period of time by a user. However,

a hearing aid shall not be considered "used" merely because it has been worn by a prospective user as a part of a bona fide hearing aid evaluation conducted to determine whether to select that particular hearing aid for that prospective user, if such evaluation has been conducted in the presence of the dispenser or a hearing aid health professional selected by the dispenser to assist the buyer in making such a determination.

(b) *Label requirements for hearing aids.* Hearing aids shall be clearly and permanently marked with:

(1) The name of the manufacturer or distributor, the model name or number, the serial number, and the year of manufacture.

(2) A "+" symbol to indicate the positive connection for battery insertion, unless it is physically impossible to insert the battery in the reversed position.

(c) *Labeling requirements for hearing aids*—(1) *General.* All labeling information required by this paragraph shall be included in a User Instructional Brochure that shall be developed by the manufacturer or distributor, shall accompany the hearing aid, and shall be provided to the prospective user by the dispenser of the hearing aid in accordance with § 801.421(c). The User Instructional Brochure accompanying each hearing aid shall contain the following information and instructions for use, to the extent applicable to the particular requirements and characteristics of the hearing aid:

(i) An illustration(s) of the hearing aid, indicating operating controls, user adjustments, and battery compartment.

(ii) Information on the function of all controls intended for user adjustment.

(iii) A description of any accessory that may accompany the hearing aid, e.g., accessories for use with a television or telephone.

(iv) Specific instructions for:

(*a*) Use of the hearing aid.

(*b*) Maintenance and care of the hearing aid, including the procedure to follow in washing the earmold, when replacing tubing on those hearing aids that use tubing, and in storing the hearing aid when it will not be used for an extended period of time.

(*c*) Replacing or recharging the batteries, including a generic designation of replacement batteries.

(v) Information on how and where to obtain repair service, including at least one specific address where the user can go, or send the hearing aid to, to obtain such repair service.

(vi) A description of commonly occurring avoidable conditions that could adversely affect or damage the hearing aid, such as dropping, immersing, or exposing the hearing aid to excessive heat.

(vii) Identification of any known side effects associated with the use of a hearing aid that may warrant consultation with a physician, e.g., skin irritation and accelerated accumulation of cerumen (ear wax).

(viii) A statement that a hearing aid will not restore normal hearing and will not prevent or improve a hearing impairment resulting from organic conditions.

(ix) A statement that in most cases infrequent use of a hearing aid does not permit a user to attain full benefit from it.

(x) A statement that the use of a hearing aid is only part of hearing habilitation and may need to be supplemented by auditory training and instruction in lipreading.

(xi) The warning statement required by paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(xii) The notice for prospective hearing aid users required by paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(xiii) The technical data required by paragraph (c)(4) of this section, unless such data is provided in separate labeling accompanying the device.

(2) *Warning statement.* The User Instructional Brochure shall contain the following warning statement:

WARNING TO HEARING AID DISPENSERS

A hearing aid dispenser should advise a prospective hearing aid user to consult promptly with a licensed physician (preferably an ear specialist) before dispensing a hearing aid if the hearing aid dispenser determines through inquiry, actual observation, or review of any other available information concerning the prospective user, that the prospective user has any of the following conditions:

(i) Visible congenital or traumatic deformity of the ear.

(ii) History of active drainage from the ear within the previous 90 days.

(iii) History of sudden or rapidly progressive hearing loss within the previous 90 days.

(iv) Acute or chronic dizziness.

(v) Unilateral hearing loss of sudden or recent onset within the previous 90 days.

(vi) Audiometric air-bone gap equal to or greater than 15 decibels at 500 hertz (Hz), 1,000 Hz, and 2,000 Hz.

(vii) Visible evidence of significant cerumen accumulation or a foreign body in the ear canal.

(viii) Pain or discomfort in the ear.

Special care should be exercised in selecting and fitting a hearing aid whose maximum sound pressure level exceeds 132 decibels because there may be risk of impairing the remaining hearing of the hearing aid user. (This provision is required only for those hearing aids with a maximum sound pressure capability greater than 132 decibels (dB).)

(3) *Notice for prospective hearing aid users.* The User Instructional Brochure shall contain the following notice:

Important Notice for Prospective Hearing Aid Users

Good health practice requires that a person with a hearing loss have a medical evaluation by a licensed physician (preferably a physician who specializes in diseases of the ear) before purchasing a hearing aid. Licensed physicians who specialize in diseases of the ear are often referred to as otolaryngologists, otologists or otorhinolaryngologists. The purpose of medical evaluation is to assure that all medically treatable conditions that may affect hearing are identified and treated before the hearing aid is purchased.

Following the medical evaluation, the physician will give you a written statement that states that your hearing loss has been medically evaluated and that you may be considered a candidate for a hearing aid. The physician will refer you to an audiologist or a hearing aid dispenser, as appropriate, for a hearing aid evaluation.

The audiologist or hearing aid dispenser will conduct a hearing aid evaluation to assess your ability to hear with and without a hearing aid. The hearing aid evaluation will enable the audiologist or dispenser to select and fit a hearing aid to your individual needs.

If you have reservations about your ability to adapt to amplification, you should inquire about the availability of a trial-rental or purchase-option program. Many hearing aid dispensers now offer programs that permit you to wear a hearing aid for a period of time for a nominal fee after which you may decide if you want to purchase the hearing aid.

Federal law restricts the sale of hearing aids to those individuals who have obtained a medical evaluation from a licensed physician. Federal law permits a fully informed adult to sign a waiver statement declining the medical evaluation for religious or personal beliefs that preclude consultation with a physician. The exercise of such a waiver is not in your best health interest and its use is strongly discouraged.

CHILDREN WITH HEARING LOSS

In addition to seeing a physician for a medical evaluation, a child with a hearing loss should be directed to an audiologist for evaluation and rehabilitation since hearing loss may cause problems in language development and the educational and social growth of a child. An audiologist is qualified by training and experience to assist in the evaluation and rehabilitation of a child with a hearing loss.

(4) *Technical data.* Technical data useful in selecting, fitting, and checking the performance of a hearing aid shall be provided in the User Instructional Brochure or in separate labeling that accompanies the device. The determination of technical data values for the hearing aid labeling shall be conducted in accordance with the test procedures of the American National Standard Specification of Hearing Aid Characteristics, ANSI S3.22-1982 (Revision of S3.22-1976) (ASA 7-1982), which is incorporated by reference. Copies are available from the American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018, or are available for inspection at the Office of the Federal Register, 1100 L St. NW., Washington, DC 20408. As a minimum, the User Instructional Brochure or such other labeling shall include the appropriate values or information for the following technical data elements as these elements are defined or used in such standard:

(i) Saturation output curve (SSPL 90 curve).

(ii) Frequency response curve.

(iii) Average saturation output (HF-Average SSPL 90).

(iv) Average full-on gain (HF-Average full-on gain).

(v) Reference test gain.

(vi) Frequency range.

(vii) Total harmonic distortion.

(viii) Equivalent input noise.

(ix) Battery current drain.

(x) Induction coil sensitivity (telephone coil aids only).

(xi) Input-output curve (ACG aids only).

(xii) Attack and release times (ACG aids only).

(5) *Statement if hearing aid is used or rebuilt.* If a hearing aid has been used or rebuilt, this fact shall be declared on the container in which the hearing aid is packaged and on a tag that is physically attached to such hearing aid. Such fact may also be stated in the User Instructional Brochure.

(6) *Statements in User Instructional Brochure other than those required.* A User Instructional Brochure may contain statements or illustrations in addition to those required by paragraph (c) of this section if the additional statements:

(i) Are not false or misleading in any particular, e.g., diminishing the impact of the required statements; and

(ii) Are not prohibited by this chapter or by regulations of the Federal Trade Commission.

(d) *Submission of all labeling for each type of hearing aid.* Any manufacturer of a hearing aid described in paragraph (a) of this section shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration, Bureau of Medical Devices and Diagnostic Products, Division of Compliance, HFK-116, 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20910, a copy of the User Instructional Brochure described in paragraph (c) of this section and all other labeling for each type of hearing aid on or before August 15, 1977.

[42 FR 9294, Feb. 15, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 9398, Mar. 5, 1982; 50 FR 30154, July 24, 1985]

§ 801.421 Hearing aid devices; conditions for sale.

(a) *Medical evaluation requirements*—(1) *General.* Except as provided in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, a hearing aid dispenser shall not sell a hearing aid unless the prospective user has presented to the hearing aid dispenser a written statement signed by a licensed physician that states that the patient's hearing loss has been medically evaluated and the patient may be considered a candidate for a hearing aid. The medical evaluation must have taken place within the preceding 6 months.

(2) *Waiver to the medical evaluation requirements.* If the prospective hearing aid user is 18 years of age or older, the hearing aid dispenser may afford the prospective user an opportunity to waive the medical evaluation requirement of paragraph (a)(1) of this section provided that the hearing aid dispenser:

(i) Informs the prospective user that the exercise of the waiver is not in the user's best health interest;

(ii) Does not in any way actively encourage the prospective user to waive such a medical evaluation; and

(iii) Affords the prospective user the opportunity to sign the following statement:

I have been advised by ————————————————(Hearing aid dispenser's name) that the Food and Drug Administration has determined that my best health interest would be served if I had a medical evaluation by a licensed physician (preferably a physician who specializes in diseases of the ear) before purchasing a hearing aid. I do not wish a medical evaluation before purchasing a hearing aid.

(b) *Opportunity to review User Instructional Brochure.* Before signing any statement under paragraph (a)(2)(iii) of this section and before the sale of a hearing aid to a prospective user, the hearing aid dispenser shall:

(1) Provide the prospective user a copy of the User Instructional Brochure for a hearing aid that has been, or may be selected for the prospective user;

(2) Review the content of the User Instructional Brochure with the prospective user orally, or in the predominate method of communication used during the sale;

(3) Afford the prospective user an opportunity to read the User Instructional Brochure.

(c) *Availability of User Instructional Brochure.* (1) Upon request by an individual who is considering purchase of a hearing aid, a dispenser shall, with respect to any hearing aid that he dispenses, provide a copy of the User Instructional Brochure for the hearing aid or the name and address of the manufacturer or distributor from whom a User Instructional Brochure for the hearing aid may be obtained.

(2) In addition to assuring that a User Instructional Brochure accompanies each hearing aid, a manufacturer or distributor shall with respect to any hearing aid that he manufactures or distributes:

(i) Provide sufficient copies of the User Instructional Brochure to sellers for distribution to users and prospective users;

(ii) Provide a copy of the User Instructional Brochure to any hearing aid professional, user, or prospective user who requests a copy in writing.

(d) *Recordkeeping.* The dispenser shall retain for 3 years after the dispensing of a hearing aid a copy of any written statement from a physician required under paragraph (a)(1) of this section or any written statement waiving medical evaluation required under paragraph (a)(2)(iii) of this section.

(e) *Exemption for group auditory trainers.* Group auditory trainers, defined as a group amplification system purchased by a qualified school or institution for the purpose of communicating with and educating individuals with hearing impairments, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

[42 FR 9296, Feb. 15, 1977]

§ 801.425 Nonrestricted devices in self-pressurized containers with chlorofluorocarbon propellants.

(a) The label on each package of a nonrestricted device in a self-pressurized container in which the propellant consists in whole or in part of a fully halogenated chlorofluoroalkane (chlorofluorocarbon) shall bear the following warning:

Warning—Contain a chlorofluorocarbon that may harm the public health and environment by reducing ozone in the upper atmosphere.

(b) The warning required by paragraph (a) of this section shall appear on an appropriate panel with such prominence and conspicuousness as to render it likely to be read and understood by ordinary individuals under normal conditions of purchase. The warning may appear on a firmly affixed tag, tape, card, sticker or similar overlabeling attached to the package. The warning shall appear prominent and conspicuously as compared to other words, statements, designs, or devices and in bold type on contrasting background, but in no case may the letter be less than 1/16 inch in height.

(c) The warning in paragraph (a) of this section is not required and should not be used for products intended for metered-dose adrenergic bronchodilators for oral inhalation, and for cytology fixative uses.

(d) The warning required by paragraph (a) of this section is applicable only to self-pressurized containers that use a chlorofluorocarbon in whole or in part as a propellant to expel from the container liquid or solid material different from the propellant.

(Secs. 201(n), 301, 402, 403, 501, 502, 505, 507, 512, 601, 602, 52 Stat. 1041-1043 as amended, 1046-1048 as amended, 1049, 1051-1053 as amended, 1054, 57 Stat. 463 as amended, 82 Stat. 343-351 (21 U.S.C. 321(n), 331, 342, 343, 351, 352, 355, 357, 360b, 361, 362); sec. 101(2), 83 Stat. 853 (42 U.S.C. 4332))

[42 FR 22034, Apr. 29, 1977]

§ 801.427 Professional and patient labeling for intrauterine contraceptive devices.

(a) This section applies to intrauterine devices (IUD's) that are not subject to new drug requirements under § 310.502 of this chapter. IUD's subject to this section (device IUD's) include:

(1) IUD's fabricated solely from inactive materials, e.g., inactive plastics or metals.

(2) IUD's with substances added to improve the physical characteristics if such substances do not contribute to contraception through chemical action on or within the body and are not dependent upon being metabolized for the achievement of the contraceptive purpose.

(3) IUD's that contain a component, such as barium, added exclusively for the purpose of visualization by x-ray.

(b) The intrauterine contraceptive device (IUD) is a popular method of contraception used by several million women in the United States. Although this method of contraception is generally safe and effective, certain complications and side effects may result from its use. A Food and Drug Administration review of the labeling of IUD's currently marketed in the United States reveals that information necessary for the safe and effective use of these products is not uniformly available to either the practitioner or the patient. Based on the review of the labeling and on the recommendations of the Ad Hoc Obstetric-Gynecology Advisory Committee, the Commissioner has concluded that in the interest of safe and effective use, and prevention of misleading labeling, there is a need to establish uniform physician and patient labeling for such devices.

(1) Labeling accompanying each IUD and directed to the physician shall be substantially as follows adjusted where appropriate to the requirements of a particular device IUD:

DESCRIPTION

(TO BE SUPPLIED BY MANUFACTURER)

Description shall include the following information:

1. Proprietary or established name of the IUD.
2. Major ingredients or composition.
3. Model.
4. Physical dimensions (size and shape).
5. Description of components in package or system.
6. A statement that the product is sterile.
7. Other characteristics.

MODE OF ACTION OR PRINCIPLES OF IUD DESIGN

(TO BE SUPPLIED BY THE MANUFACTURER)

The manufacturer shall include information on the mode of action or principles of the IUD's design. At a minimum, the statement should provide that IUD's seem to interfere in some manner with nidation in the endometrium, probably through foreign body reaction in the uterus.

INDICATIONS AND USAGE

The labeling may include indications and usages other than those stated below, provided that an approved premarket approval application is in effect. (Name of IUD) is indicated for contraception.

CONTRAINDICATIONS

IUD's should not be inserted when the following conditions exist:

1. Pregnancy or suspicion of pregnancy.
2. Abnormalities of the uterus resulting in distortion of the uterine cavity.
3. Acute pelvic inflammatory disease or a history of repeated pelvic inflammatory disease.
4. Post partum endometritis or infected abortion in the past 3 months.
5. Known or suspected uterine or cervical malignancy including unresolved, abnormal "Pap" smear.
6. Genital bleeding of unknown etiology.
7. Untreated acute cervicitis until infection is controlled.

WARNINGS

1. *Pregnancy*—a. *Long-term effects.* Long-term effects on the offspring when pregnancy occurs with (name of IUD) in place are unknown.

b. *Septic abortion.* Reports have indicated an increased incidence of septic abortion associated in some instances with septicemia, septic shock, and death in patients becoming pregnant with an IUD in place. Most of these reports have been associated with the mid-trimester of pregnancy. In some cases, the initial symptoms have been insidious and not easily recognized. If pregnancy should occur with an IUD in place, the IUD should be removed if the string is visible or, if removal proves to be or would be difficult, termination of the pregnancy should be considered and offered the patient as an option bearing in mind that the risks associated with an elective abortion increase with gestational age.

c. *Continuation of pregnancy.* If the patient chooses to continue the pregnancy, she must be warned of the increased risk of spontaneous abortion and of the increased risk of sepsis, including death if the pregnancy continues with the IUD in place. The patient must be closely observed and she must be advised to report all abnormal symptoms, such as flu-like syndrome, fever, abdominal cramping and pain, bleeding, or vaginal discharge, immediately because generalized symptoms of septicemia may be insidious.

2. *Ectopic pregnancy.* a. A pregnancy that occurs with an IUD in place is more likely to be ectopic than a pregnancy occurring without an IUD in place. Accordingly, patients who become pregnant while using the IUD should be carefully evaluated for the possibility of an ectopic pregnancy.

b. Special attention should be directed to patients with delayed menses, slight metorrhagia and/or unilateral pelvic pain and to those patients who wish to terminate a pregnancy because of IUD failure to determine whether ectopic pregnancy has occurred.

3. *Pelvic infection.* Pelvic infection may occur with the IUD in place and at times

result in the development of tubo-ovarian abscesses or general peritonitis. Appropriate aerobic and anaerobic bacteriological studies should be done and antibiotic therapy initiated. If the infection does not show a marked clinical improvement within 24 to 48 hours, the IUD should be removed and the continuing treatment reassessed based upon the results of culture and sensitivity tests.

4. *Embedment.* Partial penetration or lodging of the IUD in the endometrium can result in difficult removals.

5. *Perforation.* Partial or total perforation of the uterine wall or cervix may occur with the use of IUD's. The possibility of performation must be kept in mind during insertion and at the time of any subsequent examination. If perforation occurs, the IUD should be removed. Adhesions, foreign body reactions, and intestinal obstruction may result if an IUD is left in the peritoneal cavity.

PRECAUTIONS

1. *Patient counseling.* Prior to insertion the physician, nurse, or other trained health professional must provide the patient with the Patient Brochure. The patient should be given the opportunity to read the brochure and discuss fully any questions she may have concerning the IUD as well as other methods of contraception.

2. *Patient evaluation and clinical considerations.* a. A complete medical history should be obtained to determine conditions that might influence the selection of an IUD. Physical examination should include a pelvic examination, "Pap" smear, gonorrhea culture and, if indicated, appropriate tests for other forms of venereal disease.

b. The uterus should be carefully sounded prior to insertion to determine the degree of patency of the endocervical canal and the internal os, and the direction and depth of the uterine cavity. In occasional cases, severe cervical stenosis may be encountered. Do not use excessive force to overcome this resistance.

c. The uterus should sound to a depth of 6 to 8 centimeters (cm). Insertion of an IUD into a uterine cavity measuring less than 6.5 cm by sounding may increase the incidence of expulsion, bleeding, and pain.

d. The possibility of insertion in the presence of an existing undetermined pregnancy is reduced if insertion is performed during or shortly following a menstrual period. The IUD should not be inserted post partum or postabortion until involution of the uterus is completed. The incidence of perforation and expulsion is greater if involution is not completed.

e. IUD's should be used with caution in those patients who have anemia or a history of menorrhagia or hypermenorrhea. Patients experiencing menorrhagia and/or metrorrhagia following IUD insertion may be at risk for the development of hypochromic microcytic anemia. Also, IUD's should be used with caution in patients receiving anticoagulants or having a coagulopathy.

f. Syncope, bradycardia, or other neurovascular episodes may occur during insertion or removal of IUD's, especially in patients with a previous disposition to these conditions.

g. Patients with valvular or congenital heart disease are more prone to develop subacute bacterial endocarditis than patients who do not have valvular or congenital heart disease. Use of an IUD in these patients may represent a potential source of septic emboli.

h. Use of an IUD in those patients with acute cervicitis should be postponed until proper treatment has cleared up the infection.

i. Since an IUD may be expelled or displaced, patients should be reexamined and evaluated shortly after the first postinsertion menses, but definitely within 3 months after insertion. Thereafter annual examination with appropriate medical and laboratory examination should be carried out.

j. The patient should be told that some bleeding and cramps may occur during the first few weeks after insertion, but if these symptoms continue or are severe she should report them to her physician. She should be instructed on how to check after each menstrual period to make certain that the thread still protrudes from the cervix, and she should be cautioned that there is no contraceptive protection if the IUD is expelled. She should be cautioned not to pull on the thread and displace the IUD. If partial expulsion occurs, removal is indicated and a new IUD may be inserted.

k. The use of medical diathermy (shortwave and microwave) in patients with metal-containing IUD's may cause heat injury to the surrounding tissue. Therefore, medical diathermy to the abdominal and sacral areas should not be used.

ADVERSE REACTIONS

These adverse reactions are not listed in any order of frequency or severity.

Reported adverse reactions include: endometritis, spontaneous abortion, septic abortion, septicemia, perforation of the uterus and cervix, embedment, fragmentation of the IUD, pelvic infection, vaginitis, leukorrhea, cervical erosion, pregnancy, ectopic pregnancy, difficult removal, complete or partial expultion of the IUD, intermenstrual spotting, prolongation of menstrual flow, anemia, pain and cramping, dysmenorrhea, backaches, dyspareunia, neurovascular episodes including bradycardia and syncope secondary to insertion. Perforation into the abdomen has been followed by abdominal adhesions, intestinal penetration, intestinal obstruction, and cystic masses in the pelvis.

Directions For Use

(TO BE SUPPLIED BY MANUFACTURER)

Directions for use shall include the following:

1. Insertion technique.
2. Requirements for replacement and removal, if applicable.

Clinical Studies

Different event rates have been recorded with the use of diffferent IUD's. Inasmuch as these rates are usually derived from separate studies conducted by different investigators in several population groups, they cannot be compared with precision. Furthermore, event rates tend to be lower as clinical experience is expanded, possibly due to retention in the clinical study of those patients who accept the treatment regimen and do not discontinue due to adverse reactions or pregnancy. In clinical trials conducted by (name of sponsor) with the (name of IUD), use effectiveness was determined as follows for parous and nulliparous women, as tabulated by the life table method. (Rates are expressed as events per 100 women through 12 and 24 months of use.) This experience is based on (number) women/months of use including (number) women who completed 12 months of use and (number) women who completed 24 months of use.

	12 mo		24 mo	
	Parous	Nulliparous	Parous	Nulliparous
Pregnancy				
Expulsion				
Medical removal				
Continuation rate				

(2) Labeling, in sufficient quantities to be available to patients who express interest in IUD's shall accompany each IUD (packaged separately from the sterile packaging), be made available to the patient, and contain the following information:

Patient Information

This brochure provides information on the use of Intrauterine Contraceptive Devices (IUD's). There are other birth control methods that may be suitable. Before deciding which type of birth control method to use, you should read this brochure and have the opportunity to discuss fully with your doctor any questions you may have about the IUD and other methods of contraception.

Preinsertion Information

WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT THE IUD

IUD's are small articles of various sizes and shapes which are inserted into the uterus (womb). The purpose of the IUD is to prevent pregnancy.

How the IUD prevents pregnancy is not completely understood. Several theories have been suggested. IUD's seem to interfere in some manner with the implantation of the fertilized egg in the lining of the uterine cavity. The IUD does not prevent ovulation.

The effectiveness of the IUD is measured by the pregnancy rate of women who use it and the rate of adverse reactions and side effects requiring removal of the IUD.

Use-Effectiveness

Different pregnancy and adverse reaction rates have been reported with the use of different IUD's. Because these rates are usually derived from separate studies conducted by different investigators in several population groups, they cannot be compared with precision.

In Clinical trials with (name of IUD), —— patients completed —— cycles or months in use. The incidence of unplanned pregnancies was —— per 100 woman years or —— women out of 100 became pregnant in a year while using an IUD. The incidence of adverse reactions requiring medical removal of the IUD is —— per 100 woman years or —— women out of 100 discontinued using the IUD for medical reasons.

What You Should Tell Your Doctor

Before you have an IUD inserted, you should tell you doctor if you have ever had, or suspect you have ever had, any of the following conditions which might make the IUD unsuitable as a method of contraception for you:

Abnormalities of the uterus (womb).
Allergy to copper.
Anemia.
Bleeding between periods.

Cancer of the uterus (womb) or cervix.
Fainting attacks.
Heart disease.
Heart murmur.
Heavy menstrual flow.
Infection of the uterus (womb) or cervix.
Pelvic infection (pus in fallopian tubes).
Prior IUD use.
Prior uterine surgery.
Recent abortion or miscarriage.
Recent pregnancy.
Severe menstrual cramps.
Suspected or possible pregnancy.
Suspicious or abnormal "Pap" smear.
Unexplained genital bleeding.
Vaginal discharge or infection.
Venereal disease.

Adverse Reactions

The following adverse reactions and side effects have been reported and may occur after the IUD is inserted:

Anemia.
Backache.
Blood poisoning (septicemia).
Bowel obstruction.
Cervical infection.
Complete or partial expulsion.
Cysts on ovaries and tubes.
Delayed menstruation.
Difficult removal.
Embedment.
Fainting at the time of insertion or removal.
Fragmentation of the IUD.
Intermenstrual spotting.
Internal abdominal adhesions.
Pain and cramps.
Painful intercourse.
Pelvic infection.
Perforation of the uterus (womb) or cervix.
Pregnancy.
Pregnancy outside the uterus (womb) (tubal or ovarian).
Prolonged or heavy menstrual flow.
Septic abortion (infected miscarriage) followed in some cases by blood poisoning (septicemia) which can lead to death.
Spontaneous abortion (miscarriage).
Vaginal discharge and infection.

If you decide on the IUD as your method of birth control, read the following information and instructions carefully. Please keep this brochure so that you may refer to it. If you have any questions, consult your doctor.

Postinsertion Information

DESCRIPTION

(TO BE SUPPLIED BY MANUFACTURER)

Description shall include the following information.

1. Proprietary or established name of the IUD.
2. Model.
3. Physical dimensions (size and shape).
4. Composition (metal or plastic).
5. Color and number of the tail or threads.
6. Other characteristics.

Directions For Use

1. *Checking your IUD.* A tail or thread is attached to the IUD so that you can check to see if it is still in place since the IUD can come out of the uterus (womb) without your knowing it. This occurs most often during or right after a menstrual period.

Follow these steps to make sure your IUD is in place:

a. Wash your hands.

b. Assume the squatting position or seat yourself on the toilet.

c. Insert the index or middle finger high in vagina and locate the cervix (mouth of the uterus (womb)). The cervix feels firm like the tip of your nose.

d. Feel for the tail or thread of the IUD, which should be in the cervix high in your vagina.

e. If you can feel the tail or thread it is likely that the IUD is in place and working. You should not pull on the tail or thread. This may displace the IUD.

f. After each menstrual period, you should check to make sure the tail or thread is in place in the cervix. You may check for the tail or thread more often if you wish.

g. If you think the IUD has come out or has been displaced (i.e., you cannot feel the tail or thread or you can feel the IUD itself), use another birth control method, such as contraceptive vaginal foam, cream, or jelly, or condoms (rubbers), until you can be checked. (These alternative methods are not as effective as IUD's.) Call your doctor for an examination.

h. You should return to see your doctor as soon as possible after your next menstrual period, after insertion of your IUD, but no later than 3 months after insertion. This will allow the doctor to make sure that the IUD is in the correct position.

i. After your first checkup, you should be checked at least once a year by your doctor.

2. *Continuation and removal.* While you are wearing the IUD, you may use tampons and take douches, if this is your usual practice. With some IUD's, you may wear the IUD until you wish to become pregnant. Check with your doctor concerning this. You should return to your doctor if you wish to have the IUD removed.

Side Effects

The following may occur during or after the IUD is inserted:

1. Some bleeding occurs following insertion in most women. Because of this, your doctor may choose to insert your IUD during or at the end of your menstrual period. This also reduces the possibility that

you are pregnant at the time of IUD insertion.

2. Bleeding between menstrual periods usually in the form of spotting, may occur during the first 2 or 3 months after insertion. The first few menstrual periods after the insertion may be heavier and longer. If these conditions continue for longer than 2 or 3 months, consult your doctor.

3. Pain, usually in the form of uterine cramps or low backache, may occur at the time of insertion and last for a few days. Simple pain medication usually relieves the cramping.

4. Fainting may occur at the time of insertion or removal of an IUD. This passes quickly and is not usually serious.

5. The IUD may be expelled during the first two or three menstrual cycles following insertion. Expulsion increases the risk of an unplanned pregnancy. Although not as effective as the IUD, the use of a second contraceptive method, such as a contraceptive vaginal foam, cream, or jelly, or condoms (rubbers), is recommended.

WARNINGS

1. Call your doctor for any of the following reasons:

a. *Severe or prolonged bleeding.* If the flow is heavier and lasts much longer than your usual menstrual flow, you may need to have the IUD removed to prevent the development of anemia.

b. *Pelvic pain and cramps.* This could mean an infection has developed requiring treatment.

c. *Exposure to venereal disease (VD).* If exposure to venereal disease is suspected, report for examination and treatment promptly. Failure to do so could result in serious pelvic infection because use of an IUD in itself does not prevent venereal disease.

d. *Tail or thread disappearance.* If you cannot feel the tail or thread coming through the cervix, it is possible that the IUD has been expelled or displaced or that perforation has occurred. If any of these has occurred you are no longer protected from becoming pregnant. Use another birth control method, such as contraceptive vaginal foam, cream, or jelly, or condoms (rubbers), until you can be checked. (These alternative methods are not as effective as the IUD).

2. Do not undergo medical diathermy (including shortwave or microwave) treatments to the abdomen or lower back areas if you are wearing a metal IUD. these treatments may cause heat injury to the surrounding tissues.

SPECIAL WARNING ABOUT PREGNANCY WITH AN IUD IN PLACE

Some women become pregnant while using an IUD. If you miss your menstrual period, or if you have a scanty flow during your period, or if you suspect that you might be pregnant, see your doctor right away. Serious complication of sepsis (severe infection), septic abortion (infected miscarriage), and death have occurred when a pregnancy continues with an IUD in place. Most of the occurrences of these serious complications have been reported in the middle third of pregnancy.

If your doctor confirms that you are pregnant, he should remove the IUD if the tail is visible. Removal of an IUD in pregnancy decreases the likelihood of serious complications.

If removal of your IUD proves to be difficult, you and your doctor should discuss at that time the question of continuing the pregnancy in view of the serious complications that may occur. In reaching a decision as to whether or not to have an abortion, it should be remembered that the risks associated with terminating a pregnancy increase with the length of time you are pregnant.

(3) Any device IUD that is not labeled as required by this section and that is either introduced or delivered for introduction into interstate commerce, or held for sale after shipment in interstate commerce after November 7, 1977 is misbranded pursuant to section 502 of the act. However, an IUD in the possession of an independent wholesaler, a retailer, or a licensed practitioner before November 7, 1977 is not misbranded if labeling required by paragraph (b)(2) of this section is furnished to such independent wholesalers, retailers, or licensed practitioners in sufficient quantities to accompany each device in their possession.

(Secs. 201(g), (h), 502, 505, 520(e), 52 Stat. 1041 as amended, 1050-1053 as amended, 90 Stat. 567 (21 U.S.C. 321(g), (h), 352, 355, 360j(e)))

[42 FR 23780, May 10, 1977; 42 FR 35155, July 8, 1977]

§ 801.430 User labeling for menstrual tampons.

(a) This section applies to scented or scented deodorized menstrual tampons as identified in § 884.5460 and unscented menstrual tampons as identified in § 884.5470 of this chapter.

(b) Available data show that toxic shock syndrome (TSS), a rare but serious and sometimes fatal disease, is associated with the use of menstrual tampons. To protect the public and to minimize the serious adverse effects of

TSS, menstrual tampons shall be labeled as set forth in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section.

(c) If the information specified in paragraph (d) of this section is to be included as a package insert, the following alert statement shall appear prominently and legibly on the package label:

ATTENTION: Tampons are associated with Toxic Shock Syndrome (TSS). TSS is a rare but serious disease that may cause death. Read and save the enclosed information.

(d) The consumer information required by this section shall appear prominently and legibly, in a package insert or on the package, in terms understandable by the layperson and shall include statements concerning:

(1)(i) Warning signs of TSS, e.g., sudden fever (usually 102° or more) and vomiting, diarrhea, fainting or near fainting when standing up, dizziness, or a rash that looks like a sunburn;

(ii) What to do if these or other signs of TSS appear, including the need to remove the tampon at once and seek medical attention immediately;

(2) The risk of TSS to all women using tampons during their menstrual period, especially the reported higher risks to women under 30 years of age and teenage girls, the estimated incidence of TSS of 6 to 17 per 100,000 menstruating women and girls per year, and the risk of death from contracting TSS;

(3) The advisability of using tampons with the minimum absorbency needed to control menstrual flow;

(4) Avoiding the risk of getting tampon-associated TSS by not using tampons, and possibly reducing the risk of getting TSS by alternating tampon use with sanitary napkin use during menstrual periods; and

(5) The need to seek medical attention before again using tampons if TSS warning signs have occurred in the past, or if women have any questions about TSS or tampon use.

(e) Any menstrual tampon dispensed by a vending machine is exempt from the requirements of this section.

(f) Any menstrual tampon that is not labeled as required by this section and that is initially introduced or initially delivered for introduction into commerce after December 20, 1982, is misbranded pursuant to sections 502(a) and 201(n) of the act.

(Secs. 201(n), 502, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1041 as amended, 1050-1051 as amended, 1055 (21 U.S.C. 321(n), 352, 371(a)))

[47 FR 26989, June 22, 1982]

PART 803—MEDICAL DEVICE REPORTING

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

803.1 Scope.
803.3 Definitions.
803.9 Public availability of reports.

Subpart B—Reports and Records

803.24 Reports by manufacturers and importers.
803.31 Complaint files.
803.33 Where to submit a report.
803.36 Exemptions from reporting.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 502(t), 510, 519, 701(a), 704 (a) and (e), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 792-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-565, 578, 581 (21 U.S.C. 352(t), 360, 360i, 371(a), 374 (a) and (e)).

SOURCE: 49 FR 36348, Sept. 14, 1984, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 803.1 Scope.

(a) FDA is requiring a device manufacturer or importer to report to FDA whenever the manufacturer or importer receives or otherwise becomes aware of information that reasonably suggests that one of its marketed devices (1) may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or (2) has malfunctioned and that the device or any other device marketed by the manufacturer or importer would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur. These reports will enable FDA to protect the public health by helping to ensure that devices are not adulterated or misbranded and are otherwise safe and effective for their intended use. In addition, a device importer is required to establish and maintain a complaint file and to permit any authorized FDA employee at all reasonable times to have access to and to copy and verify the records contained in this file.

(b) This part supplements, and does not supersede, other provisions of this subchapter, including the provisions of Part 820, such as the requirements under § 820.162 that a manufacturer investigate the failure of a device or any of its components to meet its performance specifications and to establish and maintain a written record of the investigation, including the manufacturer's conclusions and followup, the requirements under § 820.198 that a manufacturer establish and maintain a complaint file, and the requirements under § 820.180 that a manufacturer allow access to, and copying of, these files by any authorized FDA representative.

(c) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

§ 803.3 Definitions.

(a) "FDA" means the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) "Importer" means any person who imports a device into the United States and is required to register under Part 807.

(c) "Malfunction" means the failure of a device to meet any of its performance specifications or otherwise to perform as intended. Performance specifications include all claims made in the labeling for the device. The intended performance of a device refers to the objective intent of the person legally responsible for the labeling of the device. The intent is determined by such persons' expressions or may be shown by the circumstances surrounding the distribution of the device. This objective intent may, for example, be shown by labeling claims, advertising matter, or oral or written statements by such persons or their representatives. It also may be shown by the circumstances that the device is, with the knowledge of such persons or their representatives, offered and used to perform a function for which it is neither labeled nor advertised.

(d) "Manufacturer" means any person who is required to register under Part 807, other than a person who initially distributes a device imported into the United States.

(e) "Person" includes any individual, partnership, corporation, association, scientific or academic establishment, Government agency, or organizational unit thereof, or any other legal entity.

(f) "Information that reasonably suggests" a conclusion means: (1) Information (such as professional, scientific, or medical facts or opinions) from which a reasonable person would reach the conclusion, and (2) a statement to a manufacturer or importer by a health care professional (e.g., a doctor of medicine, osteopathy, dental surgery, podiatry, or chiropractic, or an optometrist, pharmacist, or a registered nurse, or a hospital administrator), reaching the conclusion.

(g) A "remedial action" is any recall, repair, modification, adjustment, relabeling, destruction, inspection (including patient monitoring), notification, or any other action that is initiated by a manufacturer or importer in response to information that it receives or otherwise becomes aware of and that reasonably suggests that one of its marketed devices (1) may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or (2) has malfunctioned and that the device or any other device marketed by the manufacturer or importer would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur.

(h) A "serious injury" is an injury that (1) is life threatening, (2) results in permanent impairment of a body function or permanent damage to body structure, or (3) necessitates medical or surgical intervention by a health care professional to (i) preclude permanent impairment of a body function or permanent damage to body structure or (ii) relieve unanticipated temporary impairment of a body function or unanticipated temporary damage to body structure. Temporary impairment of a body function or temporary damage to body structure is unanticipated if reference to such impairment or damage is not made in the labeling for the device or, if such reference is made in the labeling for the device, the manufacturer or importer of the device determines that such impairment or damage has occurred or is occurring more frequently or with greater severity than is stated in the labeling for the device or, if there is not any pertinent statement in the labeling, than is usual for the device.

(i) Any term defined in section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act shall have that meaning, unless otherwise defined in this part.

§ 803.9 Public availability of reports.

(a) Any report, including any FDA record of a telephone report, submitted under this part is available for public disclosure in accordance with Part 20.

(b) Before public disclosure of a report, FDA will delete from the report (1) any information that constitutes trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information under § 20.61; and (2) any personnel, medical, and similar information disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy under § 20.63; *Provided*, However, that except for the information that constitutes trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information under § 20.61, FDA will disclose to a patient who requests a report all the information in the report concerning that patient.

Subpart B—Reports and Records

§ 803.24 Reports by manufacturers and importers.

(a) A manufacturer or importer shall submit to FDA a report containing the information listed in paragraph (c) of this section whenever the manufacturer or importer:

(1) Receives or otherwise becomes aware of oral or written information that reasonably suggests that:

(i) A death or serious injury has occurred and that one of the manufacturer's or importer's marketed devices may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury; or

(ii) One of the manufacturer's or importer's marketed devices has malfunctioned and that the device or any other device marketed by the manufacturer or importer would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur.

(2) Receives or otherwise becomes aware of information:

(i) In the medical or scientific literature, whether published or unpublished, that reasonably suggests that one of its marketed devices (A) may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or (B) has malfunctioned and that the device or any other device marketed by the manufacturer or importer would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur; or

(ii) Through its own research, testing, evaluation, servicing, or maintenance of one of its devices, that reasonably suggests that one of its marketed devices malfunctions and that the device or any other device marketed by the manufacturer or importer would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur.

(b)(1) Whenever a manufacturer or importer receives or otherwise becomes aware of information that reasonably suggests that one of its marketed devices may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury, the manufacturer or importer shall report to FDA by telephone as soon as possible, but no later than within 5 calendar days of initial receipt of the information. The manufacturer or importer shall include in the telephone report the information listed in paragraph (c) of this section. The manufacturer or importer shall follow the telephone report with a written report submitted to FDA within 15 working days of initial receipt of the information.

(2) Whenever a manufacturer or importer receives or otherwise becomes aware of information that reasonably suggests that one of its marketed devices has malfunctioned and that the device or any other device marketed by the manufacturer or importer would be likely to cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur, the manufacturer or importer shall report in writing or by telephone to FDA as soon as the information listed in paragraph (c) of this section has been obtained, but in no event later than 15 working days after initial receipt of the information.

The manufacturer or importer shall follow any report made by telephone with a written report submitted to FDA within 15 working days of initial receipt of the information.

(c) A medical device telephone report or written report is required to:

(1) Identify the device, including its brand name and common or usual name and, to the extent known, the model, catalog, or other identification number or code of the device, and the manufacturing lot or serial number of the device.

(2) Identify the manufacturer or, in the case of an imported device, identify the importer and the foreign manufacturer;

(3) Identify, by name, address, and telephone number, the individual making the report to FDA;

(4) Describe, to the extent known, the event giving rise to the information received by the manufacturer or importer, including (i) whether any deaths or serious injuries have occurred and (ii) the number of persons who died or were seriously injured. (If the report is required under paragraph (a)(2)(i) of this section, the description of the event shall include a copy of the article.);

(5) Identify, by name and address, the person submitting the information to the manufacturer or importer;

(6) State whether the manufacturer or importer intends to submit additional information, and, if so, when such information will be submitted; and

(7) State whether the reported event has occurred or is occurring more frequently or with greater severity than is stated in the labeling for the device or, if there is not any pertinent statement in the labeling, than is usual for the device, if such information is available.

(d)(1) A manufacturer or importer shall report to FDA as required under this part each time it receives or otherwise becomes aware of information described in paragraph (a) of this section, even if an event of the same or a similar nature has been reported previously to FDA. A medical device report is required under paragraph (a) of this section even if the manufacturer or importer believes that the event that requires a report is due to user error, the failure to service or maintain the device properly, the use of the device beyond its labeled useful life, or any other reason not listed under paragraph (d) (2) or (3) of this section.

(2) Only one medical device report is required under paragraph (a) of this section if the manufacturer or importer becomes aware, from more than one source, of information concerning the same patient and the same event.

(3) A medical device report is not required if within the time period specified under paragraph (b) of this section, the manufacturer or importer determines that:

(i) The information received under paragraph (a)(1)(i) of this section is erroneous in that a death or serious injury has not occurred; or

(ii) The information received under paragraph (a)(1)(i) or (ii) of this section is erroneous in that the device that is the subject of the information was manufactured or imported by another manufacturer or importer; or

(iii) Although the manufacturer or importer has received or otherwise became aware of information that reasonably suggests that a malfunction has occurred, each of the following applies:

(A) A death or serious injury has not occurred;

(B) The device's labeling sets forth information concerning the potential for death or the type of serious injury that the malfunction may cause or contribute to;

(C) The device's labeling describes the malfunction, and the routine service, repair, or maintenance instructions to correct the malfunction;

(D) The malfunction has occurred or is occurring at or below the frequency and severity stated in the labeling for the device or, if there is not any pertinent statement in the labeling, at or below the frequency and severity that are usual for the device; and

(E) The malfunction does not lead the manufacturer or importer to undertake a remedial action involving any device other than the device product in which the malfunction occurred.

(4) FDA may notify a manufacturer or importer, in writing, that medical

device reports of a particular type of event are no longer required.

(e) If FDA determines that the protection of the public health requires information in addition to that included in the medical device report submitted to FDA under paragraph (b) of this section, a manufacturer or importer shall, upon FDA's request, submit such additional information. Any request by FDA under this paragraph will be in writing, state the reason or purpose for which the information is being requested, and specify a due date for the submission of such information. Additional items that may be requested include:

(1) Model, catalog, or other identification number or code of the device.

(2) Manufacturing lot or serial number of the device.

(3) A complete description of the event giving rise to the information received by the manufacturer or importer, including (i) whether any deaths or serious injuries have occurred and (ii) the number of persons who died or were seriously injured. If a complete description is unavailable, the manufacturer or importer shall explain the reason for the unavailability of such description.

(4) Any evaluation of the risk of death or serious injury, including failure analysis, and copies of any laboratory testing or analyses available to or used by the manufacturer or importer.

(5) Any available evaluation by a practitioner, such as a physician or dentist, licensed by law to use or order the use of the device, of the event described in the medical device report.

(6) Any evaluation or other determination available to or used by the manufacturer or importer as to whether the event described in the medical device report is or is not attributable to the device and the basis for such determination.

(7)(i) All the information on the basis of which the manufacturer or importer determined that the reported event has occurred or is occurring more frequently or with greater severity than is stated in the labeling for the device or, if there is not any pertinent statement in the labeling, than is usual for the device; and

(ii) any evaluation or analysis available to or used by the manufacturer or importer in making this determination.

(8) If the manufacturer or importer determines that the event described in the medical device report is attributable to the device, an outline of the plan for remedial action or, if the manufacturer or importer determines that a remedial action is unnecessary, the basis for such determination.

(9) A copy of any proposed remedial action communication and the names and addresses of recipients of the communication.

(10) Information concerning the device's manufacture, e.g., the total number manufactured or the number in the same batch, lot, or equivalent unit of production, the location and date of manufacture, and the device's expiration date, if any.

(11) Information concerning the device's distribution, e.g., the location and number of devices in inventory stock and distribution channels, a list of all consignees, and the dates of distribution.

(f) A report or information submitted by a manufacturer or importer under this section (and any release by FDA of that report or information) does not necessarily reflect a conclusion by the manufacturer, importer, or FDA that the report or information constitutes an admission that the device caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or malfunctioned. A manufacturer or importer need not admit, and may deny, that the report or information submitted under this section constitutes an admission that the device caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or malfunctioned.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0910-0201)

[49 FR 36348, Sept. 14, 1984, as amended at 49 FR 48273, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 803.31 Complaint files.

(a) An importer shall establish a complaint file and maintain a record of any information, including any written or oral communication, received by the importer concerning a death, serious injury, or device malfunction that requires a report under § 803.24. The file also is required to contain a copy of any medical device report submitted to FDA under § 803.24(b) and any additional information submitted to FDA under § 803.24(e).

(b) An importer shall retain copies of records maintained under paragraph (a) of this section for a period of 2 years from the date that the medical device report or additional information is submitted to FDA under § 803.24 (b) or (e), even if the importer has ceased importing the device that is the subject of the report or the additional information.

(c) An importer shall maintain the complaint file established under this section at the importer's principal business establishment. An importer that also is a manufacturer may maintain the file at the same location as the manufacturer maintains its complaint file under §§ 820.180 and 820.198. An importer shall permit any authorized FDA employee at all reasonable times to have access to and to copy and verify the records contained in the complaint file.

(d) A manufacturer shall retain copies of records of any information, including any written or oral communication, received by the manufacturer concerning a death, serious injury, or device malfunction that requires a report under § 803.24. The manufacturer also shall retain a copy of any medical device report submitted to FDA under § 803.24(b) and any additional information submitted to FDA under § 803.24(e). The manufacturer shall retain the records referred to in this paragraph for a period of 2 years from the date that the report or additional information is submitted to FDA under § 803.24 (b) or (e) or for a period of time equivalent to the design and expected life of the device, whichever is greater. The manufacturer may maintain as part of its complaint file under § 820.198 the records referred to in this paragraph. The manufacturer shall permit any authorized FDA employee at all reasonable times to have access to and to copy and verify the records referred to in this paragraph.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control no. 0910-0201)

[49 FR 36348, Sept. 14, 1984, as amended at 49 FR 48273, Dec. 12, 1984]

§ 803.33 Where to submit a report.

(a) Any telephone report required under this part shall be provided to 301-427-7500.

(b) Any written report or additional information required under this part shall be submitted to the Product Monitoring Branch (HFZ-343), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20910.

[49 FR 36348, Sept. 14, 1984, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 803.36 Exemptions from reporting.

A manufacturer or importer otherwise subject to this part is exempt from reporting as required under this part, if the manufacturer or importer:

(a) Is a practitioner who is licensed by law to prescribe or administer devices intended for use in humans and who manufactures or imports devices solely for use in the course of that individual's professional practice.

(b) Is a person who manufactures or imports devices intended for use in humans solely for such person's use in research or teaching and not for sale or under an investigational device exemption granted under Part 812 or Part 813.

PART 805—CARDIAC PACEMAKER REGISTRY

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

805.1 Scope.
805.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Submission of Information

805.10 Submission of information by physicians and providers.
805.20 How to submit information.
805.25 Confidentiality.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 1862(h) of the Social Security Act and sec. 2304(d) of the Deficit Reduction Act, 98 Stat. 1068-1069 (42 U.S.C. 1395y(h), 1395y note); 21 CFR 5.10 and 5.11.

SOURCE: 52 FR 27763, July 23, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 805.1 Scope.

(a) This part provides for a nationwide cardiac pacemaker registry and requires any physician and any provider of services who requests or receives payment from Medicare for the implantation, removal, or replacement of permanent cardiac pacemakers and pacemaker leads to submit certain information to the registry. If the physician or the provider of services does not submit the information according to this part and 42 CFR 409.19(a) and 410.64(a), HCFA, which administers the Medicare program, will deny payment to the physician or the provider. FDA will use the information submitted to the registry to track the performance of permanent pacemakers and pacemaker leads and to perform studies and analyses regarding the use of the devices, and to transmit data to HCFA to assist HCFA in administering the Medicare program and to other Department of Health and Human Services' components to carry out statutory responsibilities.

(b) Information submitted to the registry by a physician or a provider of services (and any release by FDA or HCFA of that information) does not necessarily reflect a conclusion by the submitter, FDA, or HCFA that the information constitutes an admission that a pacemaker device or lead failed to operate within its performance specifications. A submitter need not admit, and may deny, that the information submitted to the registry constitutes an admission that the pacemaker device or lead failed to operate within its performance specifications.

(c) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

§ 805.3 Definitions.

(a) "FDA" means the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) "HCFA" means the Health Care Financing Administration.

(c) A "pacemaker" or "pacemaker device" is a device that produces periodic electrical impulses to stimulate the heart. It consists of two basic components: a pulse generator and one or more leads. See § 870.3610 for a more detailed definition.

(d) A "pacemaker lead" is a flexible, insulated wire connected at one end to a pacemaker's pulse generator and at the other end to the heart. It transmits electrical stimuli to and from the heart. See § 870.3680(b) for a more detailed definition.

(e) A "physician" is a doctor of medicine or osteopathy legally authorized to practice medicine and surgery by applicable laws of the State in which he or she performs such function or actions. (This definition includes an osteopathic practitioner.)

(f) A "PRO" is a Utilization and Quality Control Peer Review Organization that contracts with the Secretary of Health and Human Services to review health care services funded by the Medicare program to determine whether those services are reasonable, medically necessary, furnished in the appropriate setting, and are of a quality which meets professionally recognized standards.

(g) A "provider" is a hospital, skilled nursing facility, comprehensive outpatient rehabilitation facility, home health agency, or a hospice that has in effect an agreement to participate in Medicare.

(h) A "warranty" is an express or implied guarantee, under contract or State law, of the integrity of a pacemaker device or pacemaker lead and of the manufacturer's responsibility for the repair or replacement of defective parts of a pacemaker device or pacemaker lead.

(i) Any terms defined in section 201 of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act will have that definition.

Subpart B—Submission of Information

§ 805.10 Submission of information by physicians and providers.

A physician or a provider of services that requests or receives payment from Medicare for the implantation, removal, or replacement of a permanent cardiac pacemaker device or pacemaker lead shall submit the following information on a specified form to HCFA for inclusion in the pacemaker registry provided for by FDA under § 805.1:

(a) Provider number.

(b) Patient's health insurance claim number (HICN).

(c) Patient's name.

(d) Date of the procedure.

(e) Identification number (used by PRO's) and name of the physician who ordered the procedure.

(f) Identification number (used by PRO's) and name of the operating physician.

(g) For each device (pulse generator, atrial lead, ventricular lead) implanted during the procedure about which the report is being made: the name of the manufacturer, model number, serial number, and the warranty expiration date.

(h) For each device (pulse generator, atrial lead, ventricular lead) removed or replaced during the procedure about which the report is being made: the name of the manufacturer; model number; serial number; the warranty expiration date, if known; the date the device was initially implanted, if known; whether a device that was replaced was left in the body; if the device was not left in the body, whether it was returned to the manufacturer.

(Information collection requirements approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0910-0234)

§ 805.20 How to submit information.

Information shall be submitted to the registry in the form and manner required under general instructions of the Medicare program (see 42 CFR 409.19(a) and 410.64(a)).

§ 805.25 Confidentiality.

(a) FDA and HCFA will keep confidential, and will not reveal to the public, any specific information that identifies by name a recipient of any pacemaker device or lead or that would otherwise identify a specific recipient.

(b) Public disclosure of all other information under this part will be governed by the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552), the Privacy Act of 1974 (5 U.S.C. 552a), the Department of Health and Human Services' public information regulations (45 CFR Part 5), FDA's public information regulations (21 CFR Part 20), and HCFA's public information regulations (Subpart B of 42 CFR Part 401).

PART 807—ESTABLISHMENT REGISTRATION AND DEVICE LISTING FOR MANUFACTURERS OF DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
807.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Procedures for Domestic Device Establishments

807.20 Who must register and submit a device list.
807.21 Times for establishment registration and device listing.
807.22 How and where to register establishments and list devices.
807.25 Information required or requested for establishment registration and device listing.
807.26 Amendments to establishment registration.
807.30 Updating device listing information.
807.31 Additional listing information.
807.35 Notification of registrant.
807.37 Inspection of establishment registration and device listings.
807.39 Misbranding by reference to establishment registration or to registration number.

Subpart C—Registration Procedures for Foreign Device Establishments

807.40 Establishment registration and device listing for foreign manufacturers of devices.

Subpart D—Exemptions

807.65 Exemptions for device establishments.

Subpart E—Premarket Notification Procedures

807.81 When a premarket notification submission is required.
807.85 Exemption from premarket notification.
807.87 Information required in a premarket notification submission.
807.90 Format of a premarket notification submission.
807.95 Confidentiality of information.
807.97 Misbranding by reference to premarket notification.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 301(p), 501, 502, 510, 513, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 86 Stat. 462 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546 (21 U.S.C. 331(p), 351, 352, 360, 360c, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 807.3 Definitions.

(a) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(b) "Commercial distribution" means any distribution of a device intended for human use which is held or offered for sale but does not include the following:

(1) Internal or interplant transfer of a device between establishments within the same parent, subsidiary, and/or affiliate company;

(2) Any distribution of a device intended for human use which has in effect an approved exemption for investigational use pursuant to section 520(g) of the act and Part 812 of this chapter; or

(3) Any distribution of a device, before the effective date of Part 812 of this chapter, that was not introduced or delivered for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, and that is classified into class III under section 513(f) of the act: *Provided*, That the device is intended solely for investigational use, and under section 501(f)(2)(A) of the act the device is not required to have an approved premarket approval application as provided in section 515 of the act.

(c) "Establishment" means a place of business under one management at one general physical location at which a device is manufactured, assembled, or otherwise processed.

(d) "Manufacture, preparation, propagation, compounding, assembly, or processing" of a device means the making by chemical, physical, biological, or other procedures of any article that meets the definition of device in section 201(h) of the act. These terms include the following activities:

(1) Repackaging or otherwise changing the container, wrapper, or labeling of any device package in furtherance of the distribution of the device from the original place of manufacture to the person who makes final delivery or sale to the ultimate consumer;

(2) Initial distribution of imported devices; or

(3) Initiation of specifications for devices that are manufactured by a second party for subsequent commercial distribution by the person initiating specifications.

(e) "Official correspondent" means the person designated by the owner or operator of an establishment as responsible for the following:

(1) The annual registration of the establishment;

(2) Contact with the Food and Drug Administration for device listing;

(3) Maintenance and submission of a current list of officers and directors to the Food and Drug Administration upon the request of the Commissioner; and

(4) The receipt of pertinent correspondence from the Food and Drug Administration directed to and involving the owner or operator and/or any of the firm's establishments.

(f)"Owner or operator" means the corporation, subsidiary, affiliated company, partnership, or proprietor directly responsible for the activities of the registering establishment.

(g) "Distributor" means any person who furthers the marketing of a device from the original place of manufacture to the person who makes final delivery or sale to the ultimate consumer or user but who does not repackage or otherwise change the container, wrapper, or labeling of the device or device package.

(h) Any term defined in section 201 of the act shall have that meaning.

(i) "Restricted device" means a device for which the Commissioner, by regulation under § 801.109 of this chapter or otherwise under section 520(e) of the act, has restricted sale, distribution, or use only upon the written or oral authorization of a practitioner licensed by law to administer or use the device or upon such other conditions as the Commissioner may prescribe.

(j) "Classification name" means the term used by the Food and Drug Administration and its classification panels to describe a device or class of devices for purposes of classifying devices under section 513 of the act.

(k) "Representative sampling of advertisements" means typical advertising material that gives the promotional claims made for the device.

(l) "Representative sampling of any other labeling" means typical labeling material (excluding labels and package inserts) that gives the promotional claims made for the device.

(m) "Material change" includes any change or modification in the labeling or advertisements that affects the identity or safety and effectiveness of the device. These changes may include, but are not limited to, changes in the common or usual or proprietary name, declared ingredients or components, intended use, contraindications, warnings, or instructions for use. Changes that are not material may include graphic layouts, grammar, or correction of typographical errors which do not change the content of the labeling, changes in lot number, and, for devices where the biological activity or known composition differs with each lot produced, the labeling containing the actual values for each lot.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, as amended at 43 FR 37997, Aug. 25, 1978]

Subpart B—Procedures for Domestic Device Establishments

§ 807.20 Who must register and submit a device list.

(a) An owner or operator of an establishment not exempt under section 510(g) of the act or Subpart D of this part who is engaged in the manufacture, preparation, propagation, compounding, assembly, or processing of a device intended for human use is required to register and to submit listing information for those devices in commercial distribution, except that listing information may be submitted by the parent, subsidiary, or affiliate company for all the domestic or foreign establishments under the control of one of these organizations when operations are conducted at more than one establishment and there exists joint ownership and control among all the establishments. The term "device" includes all in vitro diagnostic products and in vitro diagnostic biological products not subject to licensing under section 351 of the Public Health Service Act. An owner or operator is required to register its name, places of business, and all establishments and to list the devices whether or not the output of the establishments or any particular device so listed enters interstate commerce. The registration and listing requirements shall pertain to any person who:

(1) Initiates or develops specifications for a device that is to be manufactured by a second party for commercial distribution by the person initiating specifications;

(2) Manufactures for commercial distribution a device either for itself or for another person. However, a person who only manufactures devices according to another person's specifications, for commercial distribution by the person initiating specifications, is not required to list those devices.

(3) Repackages or relabels a device;

(4) Initially distributes a device imported into the United States; or

(5) Manufactures components or accessories which are ready to be used for any intended health-related purpose and are packaged or labeled for commercial distribution for such health-related purpose, e.g., blood filters, hemodialysis tubing, or devices which of necessity must be further processed by a licensed practitioner or other qualified person to meet the needs of a particular patient, e.g., a manufacturer of ophthalmic lens blanks.

(b) No registration or listing fee is required. Registration or listing does not constitute an admission or agreement or determination that a product is a device within the meaning of section 201(h) of the act.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, as amended at 43 FR 37997, Aug. 25, 1978]

§ 807.21 Times for establishment registration and device listing.

An owner or operator of an establishment entering into, or currently engaged in, an operation defined in § 807.3(c) and not currently registered shall register the establishment by October 22, 1977, and submit device listing by October 10, 1978. An owner or operator of an establishment who has not previously entered into an operation defined in § 807.3(c) shall register within 30 days after entering into such an operation and submit device listing information at that time. An owner or operator of an establishment shall update its registration information annually between November 15 and December 31 and shall update its device listing information every June and December or, at its discretion, at the time the change occurs.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[43 FR 37997, Aug. 25, 1978]

§ 807.22 How and where to register establishments and list devices.

(a) The first registration of a device establishment shall be on form FD-2891 (Initial Registration of Device Establishments). Forms are obtainable on request from the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (HFZ-342), Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services, 8757 Georgia Avenue, Silver Spring, MD 20910, or from the Food and Drug Administration district offices. Subsequent annual registration shall be accomplished on form FD-2891a (Registration of Device Establishment), which will be furnished by the Food and Drug Administration before November 15 of each year to establishments whose registration for that year was validated under § 807.35(a). The completed form shall be mailed to the above-designated address before December 31 of that year.

(b) The initial listing of devices and subsequent June and December updatings shall be on form FD-2892 (Medical Device Listing). Forms are obtainable upon request as described in paragraph (a) of this section. A separate form FD-2892 shall be submitted for each device or device class listed with the Food and Drug Administration. Devices having variations in physical characteristics such as size, package, shape, color, or composition should be considered to be one device: *Provided*, The variation does not change the function or intended use of the device. In lieu of form FD-2892, tapes for computer input or hard copy computer output may by submitted if equivalent in all elements of information as specified in form FD-2892. All formats proposed for use in lieu of form FD-2892 require initial review and approval by the Food and Drug Administration.

(c) The listing obligations of the initial distributor within the United States of an imported device are satisfied as follows:

(1) For those imported devices for which the initial distributor has also initiated or developed the specifications, form FD-2892 shall be submitted and the historical file maintained by the initial distributor.

(2) For those imported devices for which the initial distributor repackages or relabels the device, form FD-2892 shall be submitted and the historical file maintained by the initial distributor.

(3) The initial distributor is not required to submit a form FD-2892 for those imported devices for which such distributor did not initiate or develop the specifications for the device or repackage or relabel the device. However, the initial distributor shall submit, for each device, the name and address of the foreign manufacturer. Initial distributors shall also be prepared to submit, when requested by the Food and Drug Administration, the proprietary name, if any, and the common or usual name of each device for which they are the initial distributors.

(4) The initial distributor shall update the information required by paragraphs (c) (1), (2), and (3) of this section at the intervals specified in § 807.30.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[43 FR 37997, Aug. 25, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 807.25 Information required or requested for establishment registration and device listing.

(a) Form FD-2891 and Form FD-2891(a) are the approved forms for initially providing the information required by the act and for providing annual registration, respectively. The required information includes the name and street address of the device establishment, including post office ZIP Code, all trade names used by the establishment, and the business trading name of the owner or operator of such establishment.

(b) The owner or operator shall identify the device activities of the establishment such as manufacturing, repackaging, or distributing of imported devices and identify any other FDA registries in which the establishment is registered.

(c) Each owner or operator is required to maintain a listing of all officers, directors, and partners for each establishment he registers and to furnish this information to the Food and Drug Administration upon request.

(d) Each owner or operator shall provide the name of an official correspondent who will serve as a point of contact between the Food and Drug Administration and the establishment for matters relating to the registration of device establishments and the listing of device products. All future correspondence relating to registration, including requests for the names of partners, officers, and directors, will be directed to this official correspondent. In the event no person is designated by the owner or operator, the owner or operator of the establishment will be the official correspondent.

(e) The designation of an official correspondent does not in any manner affect the liability of the owner or operator of the establishment or any other individual under section 301(p) or any other provision of the act.

(f) Form FD-2892 is the approved form for providing the device listing information required by the act. This required information includes the following:

(1) The identification by classification name and number, proprietary name, and common or usual name of each device being manufactured, prepared, propagated, compounded, or processed for commercial distribution that has not been included in any list of devices previously submitted on form FD-2892.

(2) The Code of Federal Regulations citation for any applicable standard for the device under section 514 of the act or section 358 of the Public Health Service Act.

(3) The assigned Food and Drug Administration number of the approved application for each device listed that is subject to section 505, 507, or 515 of the act.

(4) The name, registration number, and establishment type of every domestic or foreign device establishment under joint ownership and control of the owner or operator at which the device is manufactured, repackaged, or relabeled.

(5) Whether the device, as labeled, is intended for distribution to and use by the general public.

(6) Other general information requested on form FD-2892, i.e., (i) if the submission refers to a previously listed device, as in the case of an update, the document number from the initial listing document for the device, (ii) the reason for submission, (iii) the date on which the reason for submission occurred, (iv) the date that the form FD-2892 was completed, (v) the owner's or operator's name and identification number.

(7) Labeling or other descriptive information (e.g., specification sheets or catalogs) adequate to describe the intended use of a device when the owner or operator is unable to find on the Food and Drug Administration list in the device listing package, an appropriate classification name for the device.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, as amended at 43 FR 37998, Aug. 25, 1978]

§ 807.26 Amendments to establishment registration.

Changes in individual ownership, corporate or partnership structure, or location of an operation defined in § 807.3(c) shall be submitted on Form FD-2891(a). This information shall be submitted within 30 days of such changes. Changes in the names of officers and/or directors of the corporation(s) shall be filed with the establishment's official correspondent and shall be provided to the Food and Drug Administration upon receipt of a written request for this information.

§ 807.30 Updating device listing information.

(a) Form FD-2892 shall be used to update device listing information. The preprinted original document number of each form FD-2892 on which the device was initially listed shall appear in block 2 on the form subsequently used to update the listing information for the device and on any correspondence related to the device.

(b) An owner or operator shall update the device listing information during each June and December or, at its discretion, at the time the change occurs. Conditions that require updating and information to be submitted for each of these updates are as follows:

(1) If an owner or operator introduces into commercial distribution a device identified with a classification name not currently listed by the owner or operator, then the owner or operator must submit form FD-2892 containing all the information required by § 807.25(f).

(2) If an owner or operator discontinues commercial distribution of all devices in the same device class, i.e., with the same classification name, the owner or operator must submit form FD-2892 containing the original document number of the form FD-2892 on which the device class was initially listed, the reason for submission, the date of discontinuance, the owner or operator's name and identification number, the classification name and number, the proprietary name, and the common or usual name of the discontinued device.

(3) If commercial distribution of a discontinued device identified on a form FD-2892 filed under paragraph (b)(2) of this section is resumed, the owner or operator must submit on form FD-2892 a notice of resumption containing: the original document number of the form initially used to list that device class, the reason for submission, date of resumption, and all other information required by § 807.25(f).

(4) If one or more classification names for a previously listed device with multiple classification names has been added or deleted, the owner or operator must supply the original document number from the form FD-2892 on which the device was initially listed and a supplemental sheet identifying the names of any new or deleted classification names.

(5) Other changes to information on form FD-2892 will be updated as follows:

(i) Whenever a change occurs only in the owner or operator name (block 6) or number (block 7), e.g., whenever one company's device line is purchased by another owner or operator, it will not be necessary to supply a separate form FD-2892 for each device. In such cases, the new owner or operator must follow the procedures in § 807.26 and submit a letter informing the Food and Drug Administration of the original document number from form FD-2892 on which each device was initially listed for those devices affected by the change in ownership.

(ii) The owner or operator must also submit update information whenever changes occur to the responses to the questions in blocks 12, 12a, 13, 13a, and 14 on form FD-2892, or whenever establishment registration numbers, establishment names, and/or activities are added to or deleted from blocks 15, 16, and 17 of form FD-2892. The owner or operator must supply the original document number from the form FD-2892 on which the device was initially listed, the reason for submission, and all other information required by § 807.25(f).

(6) Updating is not required if the above information has not changed since the previously submitted list. Also, updating is not required if changes occur in proprietary names, in common or usual names (blocks 10 and 11 of form FD-2892), or to supplemental lists of unclassified components or accessories.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[43 FR 37998, Aug. 25, 1978]

§ 807.31 Additional listing information.

(a) Each owner or operator shall maintain a historical file containing the labeling and advertisements in use on the date of initial listing, and in use after October 10, 1978, but before the date of initial listing, as follows:

(1) For each device subject to section 514 or 515 of the act that is not a restricted device, a copy of all labeling for the device;

(2) For each restricted device, a copy of all labeling and advertisements for the device;

(3) For each device that is neither restricted nor subject to section 514 or 515 of the act, a copy of all labels, package inserts, and a representative sampling of any other labeling.

(b) In addition to the requirements set forth in paragraph (a) of this section, each owner or operator shall maintain in the historical file any labeling or advertisements in which a material change has been made anytime after initial listing.

(c) Each owner or operator may discard labeling and advertisements from the historical file 3 years after the date of the last shipment of a discontinued device by an owner or operator.

(d) Location of the file:

(1) Currently existing systems for maintenance of labeling and advertising may be used for the purpose of maintaining the historical file as long as the information included in the systems fulfills the requirements of this section, but only if the labeling and advertisements are retrievable in a timely manner.

(2) The contents of the historical file may be physically located in more than one place in the establishment or in more than one establishment provided there exists joint ownership and control among all the establishments maintaining the historical file. If no joint ownership and control exists, the registered establishment must provide the Food and Drug Administration with a letter authorizing the establishment outside its control to maintain the historical file.

(e) Each owner or operator shall be prepared to submit to the Food and Drug Administration, only upon specific request, the following information:

(1) For a device subject to section 514 or 515 of the act that is not a restricted device, a copy of all labeling for the device.

(2) For a device that is a restricted device, a copy of all labeling for the device, a representative sampling of advertisements for the device, and for good cause, a copy of all advertisements for a particular device. A request for all advertisements will, where feasible, be accompanied by an explanation of the basis for such request.

(3) For a device that is neither a restricted device, nor subject to section 514 of 515 of the act, the label and package insert for the device and a representative sampling of any other labeling for the device.

(4) For a particular device, a statement of the basis upon which the registrant has determined that the device is not subject to section 514 or 515 of the act.

(5) For a particular device, a statement of the basis upon which the registrant has determined the device is not a restricted device.

(6) For a particular device, a statement of the basis for determining that the product is a device rather than a drug.

(7) For a device that the owner or operator has manufactured for distribution under a label other than its own, the names of all distributors for whom it has been manufactured.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[43 FR 37999, Aug. 25, 1978, as amended at 51 FR 33033, Sept. 18, 1986]

§ 807.35 Notification of registrant.

(a) The Commissioner will provide to the official correspondent, at the address listed on the form, a validated copy of Form FD-2891 or Form FD-2891(a) (whichever is applicable) as evidence of registration. A permanent registration number will be assigned to each device establishment registered in accordance with these regulations.

(b) Owners and operators of device establishments who also manufacture or process blood or drug products at the same establishment shall also register with the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research and Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, as appropriate. Blood products shall be listed with the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, pursuant to Part 607 of this chapter; drug products shall be listed with the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Food and Drug Administration, pursuant to Part 207 of this chapter.

(c) Although establishment registration and device listing are required to engage in the device activities described in § 807.20, validation of registration and the assignment of a device listing number in itself does not establish that the holder of the registration is legally qualified to deal in such devices and does not represent a determination by the Food and Drug Administration as to the status of any device.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, as amended at 43 FR 37999, Aug. 25, 1978; 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 807.37 Inspection of establishment registration and device listings.

(a) A copy of the forms FD-2891 and FD-2891a filed by the registrant will be available for inspection in accordance with section 510(f) of the act, at the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (HFZ-342), Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services, 8757 Georgia Avenue, Silver Spring, Md. 20910. In addition, there will be available for inspection at each of the Food and Drug Administration district offices the same information for firms within the geographical area of such district office. Upon request, verification of registration number or location of a registered establishment will be provided.

(b)(1) The following information filed under the device listing requirements will be available for public disclosure:

(i) Each form FD-2892 submitted;

(ii) All labels submitted;

(iii) All labeling submitted;

(iv) All advertisements submitted;

(v) All data or information that has already become a matter of public knowledge.

(2) Requests for device listing information identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section should be directed to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (HFZ-342), Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services, 8757 Georgia Avenue, Silver Spring, Md. 20910.

(3) Requests for device listing information not identified in paragraph (b)(1) of this section shall be submitted and handled in accordance with Part 20 of this chapter.

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[43 FR 37999, Aug. 25, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 807.39 Misbranding by reference to establishment registration or to registration number.

Registration of a device establishment or assignment of a registration number does not in any way denote approval of the establishment or its products. Any representation that creates an impression of official approval because of registration or possession of a registration number is misleading and constitutes misbranding.

Subpart C—Registration Procedures for Foreign Device Establishments

§ 807.40 Establishment registration and device listing for foreign manufacturers of devices.

(a) Foreign device establishments that export devices into the United States are requested to register in accordance with the procedures of Subpart B of this part, unless exempt under Subpart D of this part.

(b) Foreign device establishments that export devices into the United States, whether or not the establishment is registered, shall comply with the device listing requirements unless exempt from registration as stated in § 807.65. Those foreign owners or operators for which there exists joint ownership and control with a domestic establishment may have the domestic establishment submit listing information and maintain the historical file. A foreign owner or operator may authorize a domestic initial distributor to submit listing information when joint ownership and control does not exist, only if:

(1) The domestic distributor is the sole initial distributor for the foreign owner or operator's device; and

(2) The foreign owner or operator submits a letter to the Food and Drug Administration authorizing the initial distributor to list on its behalf and maintain the historical file.

(c) Except for a device imported or offered for import that has in effect an approved exemption for investigational use under section 520(g) of the act, a device may not be imported from a foreign device establishment into the United States unless it is listed at the interval specified for updating device listing information in § 807.30(b). The device listing information shall be in the English language.

(d) Foreign device establishments shall submit, as part of the device listing, the name and address of the establishment and the name of the individual responsible for submitting device listing information. Any changes in this information shall be reported to the Food and Drug Administration at the intervals specified for updating device listing information in § 807.30(b).

(Secs. 301 (p) and (q)(2), 501, 502, 508, 510, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1050 as amended, 1055, 76 Stat. 789, 794 as amended, 86 Stat. 562 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-580 (21 U.S.C. 331 (p) and (q)(2), 351, 352, 358, 360, 360i, 371(a)))

[43 FR 37999, Aug. 25, 1978]

Subpart D—Exemptions

§ 807.65 Exemptions for device establishments.

The following classes of persons are exempt from registration in accordance with § 807.20 under the provisions of section 510(g) (1), (2), and (3) of the act, or because the Commissioner has found, under section 510(g)(4) of the act, that such registration is not necessary for the protection of the public health:

(a) A manufacturer of raw materials or components to be used in the manufacture or assembly of a device who would otherwise not be required to register under the provisions of this part.

(b) A manufacturer of devices to be used solely for veterinary purposes.

(c) A manufacturer of general purpose articles such as chemical reagents or laboratory equipment whose uses are generally known by persons trained in their use and which are not labeled or promoted for medical uses.

(d) Licensed practitioners, including physicians, dentists, and optometrists, who manufacture or otherwise alter devices solely for use in their practice.

(e) Pharmacies, surgical supply outlets, or other similar retail establishments dispensing or selling devices in the regular course of business at the retail level. This exemption also applies to a pharmacy or other similar retail establishment that purchases a device for subsequent distribution under its own name, e.g., a properly labeled health aid such as an elastic bandage or crutch, indicating "distributed by" or "manufactured for" followed by the name of the pharmacy.

(f) Persons who manufacture, prepare, propagate, compound, or process devices solely for use in research, teaching, or analysis and do not introduce such devices into commercial distribution.

(g) Persons who handle devices but make no revisions to such devices or their immediate containers, such as wholesalers or warehousers.

(h) Carriers by reason of their receipt, carriage, holding or delivery of devices in the usual course of business as carriers.

(i) Persons who dispense devices to the ultimate consumer or whose major responsibility is to render a service necessary to provide the consumer (i.e., patient, physician, layman, etc.) with a device or the benefits to be derived from the use of a device; for example, a hearing aid dispenser, optician, clinical laboratory, assembler of diagnostic X-ray systems, and personnel from a hospital, clinic, dental laboratory, orthotic or prosthetic retail facility, whose primary responsibility to the ultimate consumer is to dispense or provide a service through the use of a previously manufactured device.

Subpart E—Premarket Notification Procedures

§ 807.81 When a premarket notification submission is required.

(a) Except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, each person who is required to register his establishment pursuant to § 807.20 must submit a premarket notification submission to the Food and Drug Administration at least 90 days before he proposes to begin the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution of a device intended for human use which meets any of the following criteria:

(1) The device is being introduced into commercial distribution for the first time; that is, the device is not of the same type as, or is not substantially equivalent to, (i) a device in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or (ii) a device introduced for commercial distribution after May 28, 1976, that has subsequently been reclassified into class I or II.

(2) The device is being introduced into commercial distribution for the first time by a person required to register, whether or not the device meets the criteria in paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(3) The device is one that the person currently has in commercial distribution or is reintroducing into commercial distribution, but that is about to be significantly changed or modified in design, components, method of manufacture, or intended use. The following constitute significant changes or modifications that require a premarket notification:

(i) A change or modification in the device that could significantly affect the safety or effectiveness of the device, e.g., a significant change or modification in design, material, chemical composition, energy source, or manufacturing process.

(ii) A major change or modification in the intended use of the device.

(b) A premarket notification under this subpart is not required for a device for which a premarket approval application under section 515 of the act, or for which a petition to reclassify under section 513(f)(2) of the act, is pending before the Food and Drug Administration.

(c) In addition to complying with the requirements of this part, owners or operators of device establishments that manufacture radiation-emitting electronic products, as defined in § 1000.3 of this chapter, shall comply with the reporting requirements of Part 1002 of this chapter.

§ 807.85 Exemption from premarket notification.

(a) A device is exempt from the premarket notification requirements of this subpart if the device intended for introduction into commercial distribution is not generally available in finished form for purchase and is not offered through labeling or advertising by the manufacturer, importer, or distributor thereof for commercial distribution, and the device meets one of the following conditions:

(1) It is intended for use by a patient named in the order of the physician or dentist (or other specially qualified person); or

(2) It is intended solely for use by a physician or dentist (or other specially qualified person) and is not generally

available to, or generally used by, other physicians or dentists (or other specially qualified persons).

(b) A distributor who places a device into commercial distribution for the first time under his own name and a repackager who places his own name on a device and does not change any other labeling or otherwise affect the device shall be exempted from the premarket notification requirements of this subpart if:

(1) The device was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976; or

(2) A premarket notification submission was filed by another person.

§ 807.87 Information required in a premarket notification submission.

Each premarket notification submission shall contain the following information:

(a) The device name, including both the trade or proprietary name and the common or usual name or classification name of the device.

(b) The establishment registration number, if applicable, of the owner or operator submitting the premarket notification submission.

(c) The class in which the device has been put under section 513 of the act and, if known, its appropriate panel; or, if the owner or operator determines that the device has not been classified under such section, a statement of that determination and the basis for the person's determination that the device is not so classified.

(d) Action taken by the person required to register to comply with the requirements of the act under section 514 for performance standards.

(e) Proposed labels, labeling, and advertisements sufficient to describe the device, its intended use, and the directions for its use. Where applicable, photographs or engineering drawings should be supplied.

(f) A statement indicating the device is similar to and/or different from other products of comparable type in commercial distribution, accompanied by data to support the statement. This information may include an identification of similar products, materials, design considerations, energy expected to be used or delivered by the device, and a description of the operational principles of the device.

(g) Where a person required to register intends to introduce into commercial distribution a device that has undergone a significant change or modification that could significantly affect the safety or effectiveness of the device, or the device is to be marketed for a new or different indication for use, the premarket notification submission must include appropriate supporting data to show that the manufacturer has considered what consequences and effects the change or modification or new use might have on the safety and effectiveness of the device.

(h) Any additional information regarding the device requested by the Commissioner that is necessary for the Commissioner to make a finding as to whether or not the device is substantially equivalent to a device in commercial distribution. A request for additional information will advise the owner or operator that there is insufficient information contained in the original premarket notification submission for the Commissioner to make this determination and that the owner or operator may either submit the requested data or a new premarket notification containing the requested information at least 90 days before the owner or operator intends to market the device, or submit a premarket approval application in accordance with section 515 of the act. If the additional information is not submitted within 30 days following the date of the request, the Commissioner will consider the premarket notification to be withdrawn.

§ 807.90 Format of a premarket notification submission.

Each premarket notification submission pursuant to this part shall be submitted in accordance with this section. Each submission shall:

(a) Be addressed to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health (HFZ-401), 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, Md. 20910. All inquiries regarding a premarket notification submission should be in writing and sent to the above address.

(b) Be bound into a volume or volumes, where necessary.

(c) Be submitted in duplicate on standard size paper, including the original and two copies of the cover letter.

(d) Be submitted separately for each product the manufacturer intends to market.

(e) Designated "510(k) Notification" in the cover letter.

[42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 807.95 Confidentiality of information.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will disclose publicly whether there exists a premarket notification submission under this part:

(1) Where the device is on the market, i.e., introduced or delivered for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution;

(2) Where the person submitting the premarket notification submission has disclosed, through advertising or any other manner, his intent to market the device to scientists, market analysts, exporters, or other individuals who are not employees of, or paid consultants to, the establishment and who are not in an advertising or law firm pursuant to commercial arrangements with appropriate safeguards for secrecy; or

(3) Where the device is not on the market and the intent to market the device has not been so disclosed, except where the submission is subject to an exception under paragraph (b) or (c) of this section.

(b) The Food and Drug Administration will not disclose publicly the existence of a premarket notification submission for a device that is not on the market and where the intent to market the device has not been disclosed for 90 days from the date of receipt of the submission, if:

(1) The person submitting the premarket notification submission requests in the submission that the Food and Drug Administration hold as confidential commercial information the intent to market the device and submits a written certification to the Commissioner:

(i) That the person considers his intent to market the device to be confidential commercial information;

(ii) That neither the person nor, to the best of his knowledge, anyone else, has disclosed through advertising or any other manner, his intent to market the device to scientists, market analysts, exporters, or other individuals, except employees of, or paid consultants to, the establishment or individuals in an advertising or law firm pursuant to commercial arrangements with appropriate safeguards for secrecy;

(iii) That the person will immediately notify the Food and Drug Administration if he discloses the intent to market the device to anyone, except employees of, or paid consultants to, the establishment or individuals in an advertising or law firm pursuant to commercial arrangements with appropriate safeguards for secrecy;

(iv) That the person has taken precautions to protect the confidentiality of the intent to market the device; and

(v) That the person understands that the submission to the government of false information is prohibited by 18 U.S.C. 1001 and 21 U.S.C. 331(q); and

(2) The Commissioner agrees that the intent to market the device is confidential commercial information.

(c) Where the Commissioner determines that the person has complied with the procedures described in paragraph (b) of this section with respect to a device that is not on the market and where the intent to market the device has not been disclosed, and the Commissioner agrees that the intent to market the device is confidential commercial information, the Commissioner will not disclose the existence of the submission for 90 days from the date of its receipt by the agency. In addition, the Commissioner will continue not to disclose the existence of such a submission for the device for an additional time when any of the following occurs:

(1) The Commissioner requests in writing additional information regarding the device pursuant to § 807.87(h), in which case the Commissioner will not disclose the existence of the submission until 90 days after the Food

and Drug Administration's receipt of a complete premarket notification submission;

(2) The Commissioner determines that the device intended to be introduced is a class III device and cannot be marketed without premarket approval or reclassification, in which case the Commissioner will not disclose the existence of the submission unless a petition for reclassification is submitted under section 513(f)(2) of the act and its existence can be disclosed under § 860.5(d) of this chapter; or

(3) The person has requested in the premarket notification submission that the Commissioner protect the confidentiality of the intent to market a device for more than 90 days from the date of receipt of the premarket notification submission by the Food and Drug Administration, and the Commissioner determines that the person has reason to believe that the actual introduction of the device to the market may take longer than 90 days, and the person agrees in a written certification to provide the Commissioner with written notification immediately if the device is put on the market or the intent to market is disclosed. In this case the Commissioner will not disclose the existence of the submission until the Food and Drug Administration's receipt of notification by the person that the device has been put on the market or that the intent to market the device has been disclosed.

(d) Data or information submitted with, or incorporated by reference in, a premarket notification submission (other than safety and effectiveness data that have not been disclosed to the public) shall be available for disclosure by the Food and Drug Administration when the intent to market the device is no longer confidential in accordance with this section, unless exempt from public disclosure in accordance with Part 20 of this chapter. Upon final classification, date and information relating to safety and effectiveness of a device classified in class I (general controls) or class II (performance standards) shall be available for public disclosure. Data and information relating to safety and effectiveness of a device classified in class III (premarket approval) that have not been released to the public shall be retained as confidential unless such data and information become available for release to the public under § 860.5(d) or other provisions of this chapter.

[42 FR 42526, Aug. 23, 1977, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 807.97 Misbranding by reference to premarket notification.

Submission of a premarket notification in accordance with this subpart, and a subsequent determination by the Commissioner that the device intended for introduction into commercial distribution is substantially equivalent to a device in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or is substantially equivalent to a device introduced into commercial distribution after May 28, 1976, that has subsequently been reclassified into class I or II, does not in any way denote official approval of the device. Any representation that creates an impression of official approval of a device because of complying with the premarket notification regulations is misleading and constitutes misbranding.

PART 808—EXEMPTIONS FROM FEDERAL PREEMPTION OF STATE AND LOCAL MEDICAL DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
808.1 Scope.
808.3 Definitions.
808.5 Advisory opinions.

Subpart B—Exemption Procedures

808.20 Application.
808.25 Procedures for processing an application.
808.35 Revocation of an exemption.

Subpart C—Listing of Specific State and Local Exemptions

808.53 Arizona.
808.55 California.
808.57 Connecticut.
808.59 Florida.
808.61 Hawaii.
808.67 Kentucky.
808.69 Maine.

Sec.	
808.71	Massachusetts.
808.73	Minnesota.
808.74	Mississippi.
808.77	Nebraska.
808.80	New Jersey.
808.81	New Mexico.
808.82	New York.
808.85	Ohio.
808.87	Oregon.
808.88	Pennsylvania.
808.89	Rhode Island.
808.93	Texas.
808.97	Washington.
808.98	West Virginia.
808.101	District of Columbia.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 521, 701, 52 Stat. 1055-1056 as amended, 90 Stat. 574 (21 U.S.C. 360k, 371); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 43 FR 18665, May 2, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 808.1 Scope

(a) This part prescribes procedures for the submission, review, and approval of applications for exemption from Federal preemption of State and local requirements applicable to medical devices under section 521 of the act.

(b) Section 521(a) of the act contains special provisions governing the regulation of devices by States and localities. That section prescribes a general rule that after May 28, 1976, no State or political subdivision of a State may establish or continue in effect any requirement with respect to a medical device intended for human use having the force and effect of law (whether established by statute, ordinance, regulation, or court decision), which is different from, or in addition to, any requirement applicable to such device under any provision of the act and which relates to the safety or effectiveness of the device or to any other matter included in a requirement applicable to the device under the act.

(c) Section 521(b) of the act contains a provision whereby the Commissioner of Food and Drugs may, upon application by a State or political subdivision, allow imposition of a requirement which is different from, or in addition to, any requirement applicable under the act to the device (and which is thereby preempted) by promulgating a regulation in accordance with this part exempting the State or local requirement from preemption. The granting of an exemption does not affect the applicability to the device of any requirements under the act. The Commissioner may promulgate an exemption regulation for the preempted requirement if he makes either of the following findings:

(1) That the requirement is more stringent than a requirement under the act applicable to the device; or

(2) That the requirement is required by compelling local conditions and compliance with the requirement would not cause the device to be in violation of any applicable requirement under the act.

(d) State or local requirements are preempted only when the Food and Drug Administration has established specific counterpart regulations or there are other specific requirements applicable to a particular device under the act, thereby making any existing divergent State or local requirements applicable to the device different from, or in addition to, the specific Food and Drug Administration requirements. There are other State or local requirements that affect devices that are not preempted by section 521(a) of the act because they are not "requirements applicable to a device" within the meaning of section 521(a) of the act. The following are examples of State or local requirements that are not regarded as preempted by section 521 of the act:

(1) Section 521(a) does not preempt State or local requirements of general applicability where the purpose of the requirement relates either to other products in addition to devices (e.g., requirements such as general electrical codes, and the Uniform Commercial Code (warranty of fitness)), or to unfair trade practices in which the requirements are not limited to devices.

(2) Section 521(a) does not preempt State or local requirements that are equal to, or substantially identical to, requirements imposed by or under the act.

(3) Section 521(a) does not preempt State or local permits, licensing, registration, certification, or other requirements relating to the approval or sanction of the practice of medicine, den-

tistry, optometry, pharmacy, nursing, podiatry, or any other of the healing arts or allied medical sciences or related professions or occupations that administer, dispense, or sell devices. However, regulations issued under section 520(e) or (g) of the act may impose restrictions on the sale, distribution, or use of a device beyond those prescribed in State or local requirements. If there is a conflict between such restrictions and State or local requirements, the Federal regulations shall prevail.

(4) Section 521(a) does not preempt specifications in contracts entered into by States or localities for procurement of devices.

(5) Section 521(a) does not preempt criteria for payment of State or local obligations under Medicaid and similar Federal, State or local health-care programs.

(6)(i) Section 521(a) does not preempt State or local requirements respecting general enforcement, e.g., requirements that State inspection be permitted of factory records concerning all devices, registration, and licensing requirements for manufacturers and others, and prohibition of manufacture of devices in unlicensed establishments. However, Federal regulations issued under sections 519 and 520(f) of the act may impose requirements for records and reports and good manufacturing practices beyond those prescribed in State or local requirements. If there is a conflict between such regulations and State or local requirements, the Federal regulations shall prevail.

(ii) Generally, section 521(a) does not preempt a State or local requirement prohibiting the manufacture of adulterated or misbranded devices. Where, however, such a prohibition has the effect of establishing a substantive requirement for a specific device, e.g., a specific labeling requirement, then the prohibition will be preempted if the requirement is different from, or in addition to, a Federal requirement established under the act. In determining whether such a requirement is preempted, the determinative factor is how the requirement is interpreted and enforced by the State or local government and not the literal language of the statute, which may be identical to a provision in the act.

(7) Section 521(a) does not preempt State or local provisions respecting delegations of authority and related administrative matters relating to devices.

(8) Section 521(a) does not preempt a State or local requirement whose sole purpose is raising revenue or charging fees for services, registration, or regulatory programs.

(9) Section 521(a) does not preempt State or local requirements of the types that have been developed under the Atomic Energy act of 1954 (42 U.S.C. 2011 note), as amended, the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968 (Pub. L. 90-602 (42 U.S.C. 263b et seq.)) and other Federal statutes, until such time as the Food and Drug Administration issues specific requirements under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act applicable to these types of devices.

(e) It is the responsibility of the Food and Drug Administration, subject to review by Federal courts, to determine whether a State or local requirement is equal to, or substantially identical to, requirements imposed by or under the act, or is different from, or in addition to, such requirements, in accordance with the procedures provided by this part. However, it is the responsibility of States and political subdivisions to determine initially whether to seek exemptions from preemption. Any State or political subdivision whose requirements relating to devices are preempted by section 521(a) may petition the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for exemption from preemption, in accordance with the procedures provided by this part.

(f) The Federal requirement with respect to a device applies whether or not a corresponding State or local requirement is preempted or exempted from preemption. As a result, if a State or local requirement that the Food and Drug Administration has exempted from preemption is not as broad in its application as the Federal requirement, the Federal requirement applies to all circumstances not covered by the State or local requirement.

[[illegible] FR 18665, May 2, 1978, as amended at 45 FR [illegible]36, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.3 Definitions.

(a) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(b) "Compelling local conditions" includes any factors, considerations, or circumstances prevailing in, or characteristic of, the geographic area or population of the State or political subdivision that justify exemption from preemption.

(c) "More stringent" refers to a requirement of greater restrictiveness or one that is expected to afford to those who may be exposed to a risk of injury from a device a higher degree of protection than is afforded by a requirement applicable to the device under the act.

(d) "Political subdivision" or "locality" means any lawfully established local governmental unit within a State which unit has the authority to establish or continue in effect any requirement having the force and effect of law with respect to a device intended for human use.

(e) "State" means a State, American Samoa, the Canal Zone, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the District of Columbia, Guam, Johnston Island, Kingman Reef, Midway Island, the Trust Territory of the Pacific Islands, the Virgin Islands, and Wake Island.

(f) "Substantially identical to" refers to the fact that a State or local requirement does not significantly differ in effect from a Federal requirement.

§ 808.5 Advisory opinions.

(a) Any State, political subdivision, or other interested person may request an advisory opinion from the Commissioner with respect to any general matter concerning preemption of State or local device requirements or with respect to whether the Food and Drug Administration regards particular State or local requirements, or proposed requirements, as preempted.

(1) Such an advisory opinion may be requested and may be granted in accordance with § 10.85 of this chapter.

(2) The Food and Drug Administration, in its discretion and after consultation with the State or political subdivision, may treat a request by a State or political subdivision for an advisory opinion as an application for exemption from preemption under § 808.20.

(b) The Commissioner may issue an advisory opinion relating to a State or local requirement on his own initiative when he makes one of the following determinations:

(1) A requirement with respect to a device for which an application for exemption from preemption has been submitted under § 808.20 is not preempted by section 521(a) of the act because it is: (i) Equal to or substantially identical to a requirement under the act applicable to the device, or (ii) is not a requirement within the meaning of section 521 of the act and therefore is not preempted;

(2) A proposed State or local requirement with respect to a device is not eligible for exemption from preemption because the State or local requirement has not been issued in final form. In such a case, the advisory opinion may indicate whether the proposed requirement would be preempted and, if it would be preempted, whether the Food and Drug Administration would propose to grant an exemption from preemption;

(3) Issuance of such an advisory opinion is in the public interest.

Subpart B—Exemption Procedures

§ 808.20 Application.

(a) Any State or political subdivision may apply to the Food and Drug Administration for an exemption from preemption for any requirement that it has enacted and that is preempted. An exemption may only be granted for a requirement that has been enacted, promulgated, or issued in final form by the authorized body or official of the State or political subdivision so as to have the force and effect of law. However, an application for exemption may be submitted before the effective date of the requirement.

(b) An application for exemption shall be in the form of a letter to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs and shall be signed by an individual who is authorized to request the exemption on behalf of the State or political subdivision. An original and two copies of the letter and any accompanying material, as well as any subsequent reports or correspondence concerning an application, shall be submitted to the Dockets Management Branch (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, Rm. 4-62, Parklawn Building, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. The outside wrapper of any application, report, or correspondence should indicate that it concerns an application for exemption from preemption of device requirements.

(c) For each requirement for which an exemption is sought, the application shall include the following information to the fullest extent possible, or an explanation of why such information has not been included:

(1) Identification and a current copy of any statute, rule, regulation, or ordinance of the State or political subdivision considered by the State or political subdivision to be a requirement which is preempted, with a reference to the date of enactment, promulgation, or issuance in final form. The application shall also include, where available, copies of any legislative history or background materials pertinent to enactment, promulgation, or issuance of the requirement, including hearing reports or studies concerning development or consideration of the requirement. If the requirement has been subject to any judicial or administrative interpretations, the State or political subdivision shall furnish copies of such judicial or administrative interpretations.

(2) A comparison of the requirement of the State or political subdivision and any applicable Federal requirements to show similarities and differences.

(3) Information on the nature of the problem addressed by the requirement of the State or political subdivision.

(4) Identification of which (or both) of the following bases is relied upon for seeking an exemption from preemption:

(i) The requirement is more stringent than a requirement applicable to a device under the act. If the State or political subdivision relies upon this basis for exemption from preemption, the application shall include information, data, or material showing how and why the requirement of the State or political subdivision is more stringent than requirements under the act.

(ii) The requirement is required by compelling local conditions, and compliance with the requirement would not cause the device to be in violation of any applicable requirement under the act. If the State or political subdivision relies upon this basis for exemption from preemption, the application shall include information, data, or material showing why compliance with the requirement of the State or political subdivision would not cause a device to be in violation of any applicable requirement under the act and why the requirement is required by compelling local conditions. The application shall also explain in detail the compelling local conditions that justify the requirement.

(5) The title of the chief administrative or legal officers of that State or local agency that has primary responsibility for administration of the requirement.

(6) When requested by the Food and Drug Administration, any records concerning administration of any requirement which is the subject of an exemption or an application for an exemption from preemption.

(7) Information on how the public health may be benefitted and how interstate commerce may be affected, if an exemption is granted.

(8) Any other pertinent information respecting the requirement voluntarily submitted by the applicant.

(d) If litigation regarding applicability of the requirement is pending, the State or political subdivision may so indicate in its application and request expedited action on such application.

[43 FR 18665, May 2, 1978; 43 FR 22010, May 23, 1978, as amended at 49 FR 3646, Jan. 30, 1984]

§ 808.25 Procedures for processing an application.

(a) Upon receipt of an application for an exemption from preemption submitted in accordance with § 808.20, the Commissioner shall notify the State or political subdivision of the date of such receipt.

(b) If the Commissioner finds that an application does not meet the requirements of § 808.20, he shall notify the State or political subdivision of the deficiencies in the application and of the opportunity to correct such deficiencies. A deficient application may be corrected at any time.

(c) After receipt of an application meeting the requirements of § 808.20, the Commissioner shall review such application and determine whether to grant or deny an exemption from preemption for each requirement which is the subject of the application. The Commissioner shall then issue in the FEDERAL REGISTER a proposed regulation either to grant or to deny an exemption from preemption. The Commissioner shall also issue in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of opportunity to request an oral hearing before the Commissioner or the Commissioner's designee.

(d) A request for an oral hearing may be made by the State or political subdivision or any other interested person. Such request shall be submitted to the Dockets Management Branch within the period of time prescribed in the notice and shall include an explanation of why an oral hearing, rather than submission of written comments only, is essential to the presentation of views on the application for exemption from preemption and the proposed regulation.

(e) If a timely request for an oral hearing is made, the Commissioner shall review such a request and may grant a legislative-type informal oral hearing pursuant to Part 15 of this chapter by publishing in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of the hearing in accordance with § 15.20 of this chapter. The scope of the oral hearing shall be limited to matters relevant to the application for exemption from preemption and the proposed regulation. Oral or written presentations at the oral hearing which are not relevant to the application shall be excluded from the administrative record of the hearing.

(f) If a request for hearing is not timely made or a notice of appearance is not filed pursuant to § 15.21 of this chapter, the Commissioner shall consider all written comments submitted and publish a final rule in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.

(g)(1) The Commissioner shall review all written comments submitted on the proposed rule and the administrative record of the oral hearing, if an oral hearing has been granted, and shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a final rule in Subpart C of this part identifying any requirement in the application for which exemption from preemption is granted, or conditionally granted, and any requirement in the application for which exemption from preemption is not granted.

(2) The Commissioner may issue a regulation granting or conditionally granting an application for an exemption from preemption for any requirement if the Commissioner makes either of the following findings:

(i) The requirement is more stringent than a requirement applicable to the device under the act;

(ii) The requirement is required by compelling local conditions, and compliance with the requirement would not cause the device to be in violation of any requirement applicable to the device under the act.

(3) The Commissioner may not grant an application for an exemption from preemption for any requirement with respect to a device if the Commissioner determines that the granting of an exemption would not be in the best interest of public health, taking into account the potential burden on interstate commerce.

(h) An advisory opinion pursuant to § 808.5 or a regulation pursuant to paragraph (g) of this section constitutes final agency action.

§ 808.35 Revocation of an exemption.

(a) An exemption from preemption pursuant to a regulation under this part shall remain effective until the Commissioner revokes such exemption.

(b) The Commissioner may by regulation, in accordance with § 808.25, revoke an exemption from preemption for any of the following reasons:

(1) An exemption may be revoked upon the effective date of a newly established requirement under the act which, in the Commissioner's view, ad-

dresses the objectives of an exempt requirement and which is described, when issued, as preempting a previously exempt State or local requirement.

(2) An exemption may be revoked upon a finding that there has occurred a change in the bases listed in § 808.20(c)(4) upon which the exemption was granted.

(3) An exemption may be revoked if it is determined that a condition placed on the exemption by the regulation under which the exemption was granted has not been met or is no longer being met.

(4) An exemption may be revoked if a State or local jurisdiction fails to submit records as provided in § 808.20(c)(6).

(5) An exemption may be revoked if a State or local jurisdiction to whom the exemption was originally granted requests revocation.

(6) An exemption may be revoked if it is determined that it is no longer in the best interests of the public health to continue the exemption.

(c) An exemption that has been revoked may be reinstated, upon request from the State or political subdivision, if the Commissioner, in accordance with the procedures in § 808.25, determines that the grounds for revocation are no longer applicable except that the Commissioner may permit abbreviated submissions of the documents and materials normally required for an application for exemption under § 808.20.

Subpart C—Listing of Specific State and Local Exemptions

§ 808.53 Arizona.

The following Arizona medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them exemptions from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(a) Arizona Revised Statutes, Chapter 17, sections 36-1901.7(s) and 36-1901.7(t).

(b) Arizona Code of Revised Regulations, Title 9, Article 3, sections R9-16-303 and R9-16-304.

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.55 California.

(a) The following California medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521 of the act because the Food and Drug Administration exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Business and Professions Code sections 3365 and 3365.6.

(b) The following California medical device requirements are preempted by section 521 of the act, and FDA has denied them an exemption from preemption:

(1) Sherman Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Law (Division 21 of the California Health and Safety Code), sections 26207, 26607, 26614, 26615, 26618, 26631, 26640, and 26641, to the extent that they apply to devices.

(2) Sherman Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Law, section 26463(m) to the extent that it applies to hearing aids.

(3) Business and Professions Code section 2541.3, to the extent that it requires adoption of American National Standards Institute standards Z-80.1 and Z-80.2.

[45 FR 67324, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.57 Connecticut.

The following Connecticut medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Connecticut General Statutes, sections 20-403 and 20-404.

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.59 Florida.

The following Florida medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(a) Florida Statutes, section 468.135(5).

(b) Florida Administrative Code, section 10D-48.25(26).

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.61 Hawaii.

(a) The following Hawaii medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521 of the act, because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Hawaii Revised Statutes, chapter 451A, § 14.1, subsection (a) with respect to medical examination of a child 10 years of age or under, and subsection (c).

(b) The following Hawaii medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them exemption from preemption: Hawaii Revised Statutes, chapter 451A, § 14.1, subsection (a) to the extent that it requires a written authorization by a physician and does not allow adults to waive this requirement for personal, as well as religious reasons, and subsection (b).

[50 FR 30699, July 29, 1985; 50 FR 32694, Aug. 14, 1985]

§ 808.67 Kentucky.

The following Kentucky medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Kentucky Revised Statutes, section 334.200(1).

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.69 Maine.

(a) The following Maine medical device requirement is enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted it from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Maine Revised Statutes Annotated, Title 32, section 1658-C, on the condition that, in enforcing this requirement, Maine apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following Maine medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Maine Revised Statutes Annotated, Title 32, section 1658-D and the last sentence of section 1658-E.

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.71 Massachusetts.

(a) The following Massachusetts medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521 of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(1) Massachusetts General Laws, Chapter 93, Section 72, to the extent that it requires a hearing test evaluation for a child under the age of 18.

(2) Massachusetts General Laws, Chapter 93, Section 74, except as provided in paragraph (6) of the Section, on the condition that, in enforcing this requirement, Massachusetts apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following Massachusetts medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them exemptions from preemption under section 521(b) of the act.

(1) Massachusetts General Laws, Chapter 93, Section 72, except as provided in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) Massachusetts General Laws, Chapter 93, Section 74, to the extent that it requires that the sales receipt contain a statement that State law requires a medical examination and a hearing test evaluation before the sale of a hearing aid.

[45 FR 67326, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.73 Minnesota.

The following Minnesota medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Minnesota Statutes, sections 145.43 and 145.44.

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.74 Mississippi.

The following Mississippi medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Mississippi Code, section 73-14-3(g)(9).

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.77 Nebraska.

(a) The following Nebraska medical device requirement is enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted it from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Nebraska Revised Statutes, section 71-4712(2)(c)(vi).

(b) The following Nebraska medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Nebraska Revised Statutes, section 71-4712(2)(c)(vii).

[45 FR 67336, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.80 New Jersey.

(a) The following New Jersey medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(1) New Jersey Statutes Annotated, section 45:9A-23 on the condition that, in enforcing this requirement, New Jersey apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter;

(2) New Jersey Statutes Annotated, sections 45:9A-24 and 45:9A-25;

(3) Chapter 3, Section 5 of the Rules and Regulations adopted pursuant to New Jersey Statutes Annotated 45:9A-1 et seq. except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) The following New Jersey medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Chapter 3, Section 5 of the Rules and Regulations adopted pursuant to New Jersey Statutes Annotated 45:9A-1 et seq. to the extent that it requires testing to be conducted in an environment which meets or exceeds the American National Standards Institute S3.1 Standard.

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.81 New Mexico.

The following New Mexico medical device requirement is enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted it from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: New Mexico Statutes Annotated, section 67-36-16(F).

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.82 New York.

(a) The following New York medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(1) General Business Law, Article 37, sections 784(3) and (4).

(2) Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York, Chapter V, Title 19, Subchapter G, section 191.10 and section 191.11(a) on the condition that, in enforcing these requirements, New York apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter and section 191.11(b), (c), (d), and (e).

(b) The following New York medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them an exemptions from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(1) General Business Law, Article 37, section 784.1.

(2) Official Compilation of Codes, Rules and Regulations of the State of New York, Chapter V, Title 19, Subchapter G, sections 191.6, 191.7, 191.8, and 191.9.

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.85 Ohio.

(a) The following Ohio medical device requirement is enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted it from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Ohio Revised Code, section 4747.09, the first two sentences with respect to disclosure of information to purchasers on the condition that, in enforcing these requirements, Ohio apply the

definition of "used hearing aid" in
§ 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following Ohio medical
device requirement is preempted by
section 521(a) of the act, and the Food
and Drug Administration has denied it
an exemption from preemption under
section 521(b) of the act: Ohio Revised
Code, section 4747.09, the last two sen-
ences with respect to medical exami-
nation of children.

45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

808.87 Oregon.

(a) The following Oregon medical
levice requriements are enforceable
notwithstanding section 521(a) of the
act because the Food and Drug Ad-
ministration has exempted them from
preemption under section 521(b) of
he act: Oregon Revised Statutes, sec-
ion 694.036 on the condition that, in
enforcing this requirement, Oregon
apply the definition of "used hearing
id" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following Oregon medical
levice requirements are preempted by
ection 521(a) of the act, and the Food
nd Drug Administration has denied
hem exemptions from preemption
nder section 521(b) of the act:
Oregon Revised Statutes, sections
94.136(6) and (7).

5 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980, as amended at
3 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

808.88 Pennsylvania.

(a) The following Pennsylvania med-
cal device requirements are enforcea-
le notwithstanding section 521(a) of
he act because the Food and Drug
dministration has exempted them
rom preemption under section 521(b)
f the act: 35 Purdon's Statutes 6700,
ection 504(4) on the condition that, in
nforcing this requirement, Pennsyl-
ania apply the definition of "used
earing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this
hapter; section 506; and, section
07(2).

(b) The following Pennsylvania med-
cal device requirement is preempted
y section 521(a) of the act and the
ood and Drug Administration has
enied it an exemption from preemp-
on under section 521(b) of the act: 35
urdon's Statutes 6700, section 402.

5 FR 67326, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.89 Rhode Island.

The following Rhode Island medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Rhode Island General Laws, Section 5-49-2.1, and Section 2.2, to the extent that Section 2.2 requires hearing aid dispensers to keep copies of the certificates of need.

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.93 Texas.

(a) The following Texas medical device requirement is enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted it from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Vernon's Civil Statutes, Article 4566, section 14(b) on the condition that, in enforcing this requirement, Texas apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following Texas medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Vernon's Civil Statutes, Article 4566, section 14(d).

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.97 Washington.

(a) The following Washington medical device requirement is enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted it from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Revised Code of Washington 18.35.110(2)(e) (i) and (iii) on the condition that it is enforced in addition to the applicable requirements of this chapter.

(b) The following Washington medical device requirements are preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied them an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Revised Code of Washington 18.35.110(2)(e)(ii).

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980]

§ 808.98 West Virginia.

(a) The following West Virginia medical device requirements are enforceable notwithstanding section 521(a) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption: West Virginia Code, sections 30-26-14 (b) and (c) and section 30-26-15(a) on the condition that in enforcing section 30-26-15(a) West Virginia apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following West Virginia medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: West Virginia Code, section 30-26-14(a).

[45 FR 67337, Oct. 10, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 35314, Sept. 13, 1988]

§ 808.101 District of Columbia.

(a) The following District of Columbia medical device requirements are enforceable, notwithstanding section 521 of the act, because the Food and Drug Administration has exempted them from preemption under section 521(b) of the act:

(1) Act 2-79, section 5, to the extent that it requires an audiological evaluation for children under the age of 18.

(2) Act 2-79, section 6, on the condition that in enforcing section 6(a)(5), the District of Columbia apply the definition of "used hearing aid" in § 801.420(a)(6) of this chapter.

(b) The following District of Columbia medical device requirement is preempted by section 521(a) of the act, and the Food and Drug Administration has denied it an exemption from preemption under section 521(b) of the act: Act 2-79, section 5, except as provided in paragraph (a) of this section.

[46 FR 59236, Dec. 4, 1981]

PART 809—IN VITRO DIAGNOSTIC PRODUCTS FOR HUMAN USE

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

809.3 Definitions.

809.4 Confidentiality of submitted information.

809.5 Exemption from batch certification requirements for in vitro antibiotic susceptibility devices subject to section 507 of the act.

809.6 Conditions on the effectiveness of exemptions of antibiotic susceptibility devices from batch certification requirements.

Subpart B—Labeling

809.10 Labeling for in vitro diagnostic products.

Subpart C—Requirements for Manufacturers and Producers

809.20 General requirements for manufacturers and producers of in vitro diagnostic products.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 701, 52 Stat. 1055-1056 as amended (21 U.S.C. 371).

SOURCE: 41 FR 6903, Feb. 13, 1976, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 809.3 Definitions.

(a) "In vitro diagnostic products" are those reagents, instruments, and systems intended for use in the diagnosis of disease or other conditions, including a determination of the state of health, in order to cure, mitigate, treat, or prevent disease or its sequelae. Such products are intended for use in the collection, preparation, and examination of specimens taken from the human body. These products are devices as defined in section 201(h) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (the act), and may also be biological products subject to section 351 of the Public Health Service Act.

(b) A "product class" is all those products intended for use for a particular determination or for a related group of determinations or products with common or related characteristics or those intended for common or related uses. A class may be further divided into subclasses when appropriate.

(c) [Reserved]

(d) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

[41 FR 6903, Feb. 13, 1976, as amended at 45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980]

§ 809.4 Confidentiality of submitted information.

Data and information submitted under § 809.10(c) that are shown to fall within the exemption established in § 20.61 of this chapter shall be treated as confidential by the Food and Drug Administration and any person to whom the data and information are referred. The Food and Drug Administration will determine whether information submitted will be treated as confidential in accordance with the provisions of Part 20 of this chapter.

[45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980]

§ 809.5 Exemption from batch certification requirements for in vitro antibiotic susceptibility devices subject to section 507 of the act.

(a) Antibiotic susceptibility devices subject to section 507 of the act are exempt from the batch certification requirements of Part 431 of this chapter if the following conditions are met:

(1) The antibiotic susceptibility device is approved for marketing under an appropriate antibiotic application.

(2) The antibiotic susceptibility device is packaged and labeled for dispensing in accordance with the applicable regulation (monograph) in this chapter except where other labeling has been approved in an applicable antibiotic application.

(3) The bulk antibiotic drug used in preparing the antibiotic susceptibility device meets the standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity specified in the applicable regulation (monograph) in this chapter except where other standards have been approved in an applicable antibiotic application.

(4) The antibiotic susceptibility device meets the standards of identity, strength, quality, and purity specified in the applicable regulation (monograph) in this chapter except where other standards have been approved in an applicable antibiotic application.

(b) For each antibiotic susceptibility device subject to an exemption under this section, an approved antibiotic application is regarded to be an approved premarket approval application under section 515 of the act.

(c) Nothing in this section prevents a manufacturer from applying for batch certification of an antibiotic susceptibility device as provided in section 507(c) of the act.

(d) All exemptions from batch certification requirements for antibiotic susceptibility devices under this section are subject to the conditions of effectiveness under § 809.6.

(Secs. 505, 507, 512(n), 701(f) and (g), 52 Stat. 1050-1053 as amended, 1055-1056 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 82 Stat. 350-351 (21 U.S.C. 355, 357, 360b(n), 371(f) and (g)))

[47 FR 39160, Sept. 7, 1982, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 809.6 Conditions on the effectiveness of exemptions of antibiotic susceptibility devices from batch certification requirements.

(a) If at any time after an exemption from batch certification requirements for an antibiotic susceptibility device has been granted, the Commissioner finds on the basis of new information before the agency with respect to such exempted device evaluated together with the evidence available to the agency when such exemption was granted, that certification of each batch is necessary to ensure its safety and efficacy of use, the Commissioner shall act immediately to revoke all exemptions from batch certification requirements granted for such device.

(b) If the Commissioner finds that the person granted an exemption from batch certification requirements for an antibiotic susceptibility device has failed to comply with the requirements of section 507 of the act and the regulations promulgated thereunder; or if the Commissioner finds that the requirements of § 809.5 have not been met; or if the Commissioner finds that the petition for exemption from batch certification contains any false statements of fact, the Commissioner may revoke the exemption from batch certification requirements immediately and require batch certification of the device until such person shows adequate cause why the exemption from batch certification requirements should be reinstated.

(c) If the Commissioner repeals or suspends an exemption from batch certification requirements for an antibiotic susceptibility device, a notice to that effect and the reasons therefor will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(d) Any person who contests the revocation or suspension or denial of reinstatement of an exemption from batch certification requirements for an antibiotic susceptibility device shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before the Food and Drug Administration under Part 16 of this chapter.

(Secs. 505, 507, 512(n), 701(f) and (g), 52 Stat. 1050-1053 as amended, 1055-1056 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 82 Stat. 350-351 (21 U.S.C. 355, 357, 360b(n), 371(f) and (g)))

[47 FR 39160, Sept. 7, 1982]

Subpart B—Labeling

§ 809.10 Labeling for in vitro diagnostic products.

(a) The label for an in vitro diagnostic product shall state the following information, except where such information is not applicable, or as otherwise specified in a standard for a particular product class. Section 201(k) of the act provides that "a requirement made by or under authority of this act that any word, statement, or other information appear on the label shall not be considered to be complied with unless such word, statement, or other information also appears on the outside container or wrapper, if any there be, of the retail package of such article, or is easily legible through the outside container or wrapper."

(1) The proprietary name and established name (common or usual name), if any.

(2) The intended use or uses of the product.

(3) For a reagent, a declaration of the established name (common or usual name), if any, and quantity, proportion or concentration of each reactive ingredient; and for a reagent derived from biological material, the source and a measure of its activity. The quantity, proportion, concentration, or activity shall be stated in the system generally used and recognized by the intended user, e.g., metric, international units, etc.

(4) A statement of warnings or precautions for users as established in the regulations contained in 16 CFR Part 1500 and any other warnings appropriate to the hazard presented by the product; and a statement "For In Vitro Diagnostic Use" and any other limiting statements appropriate to the intended use of the product.

(5) For a reagent, appropriate storage instructions adequate to protect the stability of the product. When applicable, these instructions shall include such information as conditions of temperature, light, humidity, and other pertinent factors. For products requiring manipulation, such as reconstitution and/or mixing before use, appropriate storage instructions shall be provided for the reconstituted or mixed product which is to be stored in the original container. The basis for such instructions shall be determined by reliable, meaningful, and specific test methods such as those described in § 211.166 of this chapter.

(6) For a reagent, a means by which the user may be assured that the product meets appropriate standards of identity, strength, quality and purity at the time of use. This shall be provided, both for the product as provided and for any resultant reconstituted or mixed product, by including on the label one or more of the following:

(i) An expiration date based upon the stated storage instructions.

(ii) A statement of an observable indication of an alteration of the product, e.g., turbidity, color change, precipitate, beyond its appropriate standards.

(iii) Instructions for a simple method by which the user can reasonably determine that the product meets its appropriate standards.

(7) For a reagent, a declaration of the net quantity of contents, expressed in terms of weight or volume, numerical count, or any combination of these or other terms which accu-

rately reflect the contents of the package. The use of metric designations is encouraged, wherever appropriate. If more than a single determination may be performed using the product, any statement of the number of tests shall be consistent with instructions for use and amount of material provided.

(8) Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

(9) A lot or control number, identified as such, from which it is possible to determine the complete manufacturing history of the product.

(i) If it is a multiple unit product, the lot or control number shall permit tracing the identity of the individual units.

(ii) For an instrument, the lot or control number shall permit tracing the identity of all functional subassemblies.

(iii) For multiple unit products which require the use of included units together as a system, all units should bear the same lot or control number, if appropriate, or other suitable uniform identification should be used.

(10) Except that for items in paragraphs (a) (1) through (9) of this section: (i) In the case of immediate containers too small or otherwise unable to accommodate a label with sufficient space to bear all such information and which are packaged within an outer container from which they are removed for use, the information required by paragraphs (a) (2), (3), (4), (5), (6) (ii), (iii) and (7) of this section may appear in the outer container labeling only.

(ii) In any case in which the presence of this information on the immediate container will interfere with the test, the information may appear on the outside container or wrapper rather than on the immediate container label.

(b) Labeling accompanying each product, e.g., a package insert, shall state in one place the following information in the format and order specified below, except where such information is not applicable, or as specified in a standard for a particular product class. The labeling for a multiple-purpose instrument used for diagnostic purposes, and not committed to specific diagnostic procedures or systems, may bear only the information indicated in paragraphs (b) (1), (2), (6), (14), and (15) of this section. The labeling for a reagent intended for use as a replacement in a diagnostic system may be limited to that information necessary to identify the reagent adequately and to describe its proper use in the system.

(1) The proprietary name and established name, i.e., common or usual name, if any.

(2) The intended use or uses of the product and the type of procedure, e.g., qualitative or quantitative.

(3) Summary and explanation of the test. Include a short history of the methodology, with pertinent references and a balanced statement of the special merits and limitations of this method or product. If the product labeling refers to any other procedure, appropriate literature citations shall be included and the labeling shall explain the nature of any differences from the original and their effect on the results.

(4) The chemical, physical, physiological, or biological principles of the procedure. Explain concisely, with chemical reactions and techniques involved, if applicable.

(5) Reagents: (i) A declaration of the established name (common or usual name), if any, and quantity, proportion or concentration or each reactive ingredient; and for biological material, the source and a measure of its activity. The quantity, proportion, concentration or activity shall be stated in the system generally used and recognized by the intended user, e.g., metric, international units, etc. A statement indicating the presence of and characterizing any catalytic or nonreactive ingredients, e.g., buffers, preservatives, stabilizers.

(ii) A statement of warnings or precautions for users as established in the regulations contained in 16 CFR Part 1500 and any other warnings appropriate to the hazard presented by the product; and a statement "For In Vitro Diagnostic Use" and any other limiting statements appropriate to the intended use of the product.

(iii) Adequate instructions for reconstitution, mixing, dilution, etc.

(iv) Appropriate storage instructions adequate to protect the stability of the product. When applicable, these instructions shall include such information as conditions of temperature, light, humidity, and other pertinent factors. For products requiring manipulation, such as reconstitution and/or mixing before use, appropriate storage instructions shall be provided for the reconstituted or mixed product. The basis for such instructions shall be determined by reliable, meaningful, and specific test methods such as those described in § 211.166 of this chapter.

(v) A statement of any purification or treatment required for use.

(vi) Physical, biological, or chemical indications of instability or deterioration.

(6) Instruments: (i) Use or function.

(ii) Installation procedures and special requirements.

(iii) Principles of operation.

(iv) Performance characteristics and specifications.

(v) Operating instructions.

(vi) Calibration procedures including materials and/or equipment to be used.

(vii) Operational precautions and limitations.

(viii) Hazards.

(ix) Service and maintenance information.

(7) Specimen collection and preparation for analysis, including a description of: (i) Special precautions regarding specimen collection including special preparation of the patient as it bears on the validity of the test.

(ii) Additives, preservatives, etc., necessary to maintain the integrity of the specimen.

(iii) Known interfering substances.

(iv) Recommended storage, handling or shipping instructions for the protection and maintenance of stability of the specimen.

(8) Procedure: A step-by-step outline of recommended procedures from reception of the specimen to obtaining results. List any points that may be useful in improving precision and accuracy.

(i) A list of all materials provided, e.g., reagents, instruments and equipment, with instructions for their use.

(ii) A list of all materials required but not provided. Include such details as sizes, numbers, types, and quality.

(iii) A description of the amounts of reagents necessary, times required for specific steps, proper temperatures, wavelengths, etc.

(iv) A statement describing the stability of the final reaction material to be measured and the time within which it shall be measured to assure accurate results.

(v) Details of calibration: Identify reference material. Describe preparation of reference sample(s), use of blanks, preparation of the standard curve, etc. The description of the range of calibration should include the highest and the lowest values measurable by the procedure.

(vi) Details of kinds of quality control procedures and materials required. If there is need for both positive and negative controls, this should be stated. State what are considered satisfactory limits of performance.

(9) Results: Explain the procedure for calculating the value of the unknown. Give an explanation for each component of the formula used for the calculation of the unknown. Include a sample calculation, step-by-step, explaining the answer. The values shall be expressed to the appropriate number of significant figures. If the test provides other than quantitative results, provide an adequate description of expected results.

(10) Limitation of the procedure: Include a statement of limitations of the procedure. State known extrinsic factors or interfering substances affecting results. If further testing, either more specific or more sensitive, is indicated in all cases where certain results are obtained, the need for the additional test shall be stated.

(11) Expected values: State the range(s) of expected values as obtained with the product from studies of various populations. Indicate how the range(s) was established and identify the population(s) on which it was established.

(12) Specific performance characteristics: Include, as appropriate, information describing such things as accuracy, precision, specificity, and sensitivity. These shall be related to a gen-

erally accepted method using biological specimens from normal and abnormal populations. Include a statement summarizing the data upon which the specific performance characteristics are based.

(13) Bibliography: Include pertinent references keyed to the text.

(14) Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

(15) Date of issuance of the last revision of the labeling identified as such.

(c) A shipment or other delivery of an in vitro diagnostic product shall be exempt from the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section and from a standard promulgated under Part 861 provided that the following conditions are met:

(1) In the case of a shipment or delivery for an investigation subject to Part 812, if there has been compliance with Part 812; or

(2) In the case of a shipment or delivery for an investigation that is not subject to Part 812 (see § 812.2(c)), if the following conditions are met:

(i) For a product in the laboratory research phase of development, and not represented as an effective in vitro diagnostic product, all labeling bears the statement, prominently placed: "For Research Use Only. Not for use in diagnostic procedures."

(ii) For a product being shipped or delivered for product testing prior to full commercial marketing (for example, for use on specimens derived from humans to compare the usefulness of the product with other products or procedures which are in current use or recognized as useful), all labeling bears the statement, prominently placed: "For Investigational Use Only. The performance characteristics of this product have not been established."

(d) The labeling of general purpose laboratory reagents (e.g., hydrochloric acid) and equipment (e.g., test tubes and pipettes) whose uses are generally known by persons trained in their use need not bear the directions for use required by § 809.10 (a) and (b), if their labeling meets the requirements of this paragraph.

(1) The label of a reagent shall bear the following information:

(i) The proprietary name and established name (common or usual name), if any, of the reagent.

(ii) A declaration of the established name (common or usual name), if any, and quantity, proportion or concentration of the reagent ingredient (e.g., hydrochloric acid: Formula weight 36.46, assay 37.9 percent, specific gravity 1.192 at 60° F); and for a reagent derived from biological material, the source and where applicable a measure of its activity. The quantity, proportion, concentration or activity shall be stated in the system generally used and recognized by the intended user, e.g., metric, international units, etc.

(iii) A statement of the purity and quality of the reagent, including a quantitative declaration of any impurities present. The requirement for this information may be met by a statement of conformity with a generally recognized and generally available standard which contains the same information, e.g., those established by the American Chemical Society, U.S. Pharmacopeia, National Formulary, National Research Council.

(iv) A statement of warnings or precautions for users as established in the regulations contained in 16 CFR Part 1500 and any other warnings appropriate to the hazard presented by the product; and a statement "For Laboratory Use."

(v) Appropriate storage instructions adequate to protect the stability of the product. When applicable, these instructions shall include such information as conditions of temperature, light, humidity, and other pertinent factors. The basis for such information shall be determined by reliable, meaningful, and specific test methods such as those described in § 211.166 of this chapter.

(vi) A declaration of the net quantity of contents, expressed in terms of weight or volume, numerical count, or any combination of these or other terms which accurately reflect the contents of the package. The use of metric designations is encouraged, wherever appropriate.

(vii) Name and place of business of manufacturer, packer, or distributor.

(viii) A lot or control number, identified as such, from which it is possible to determine the complete manufacturing history of the product.

(ix) In the case of immediate containers too small or otherwise unable to accommodate a label with sufficient space to bear all such information, and which are packaged within an outer container from which they are removed for use, the information required by paragraphs (d)(1)(ii), (iii), (iv), (v), and (vi) of this section may appear in the outer container labeling only.

(2) The label of general purpose laboratory equipment, e.g., a beaker or a pipette, shall bear a statement adequately describing the product, its composition, and physical characteristics if necessary for its proper use.

(Secs. 301, 501, 502, 520, 701(a), 702, 704, 801, 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 1056-1058 as amended, 67 Stat. 476-477 as amended, 90 Stat. 565-574, (21 U.S.C. 331, 351, 352, 360, 371(a), 372, 374, 381); secs. 501, 502, 513, 514, 701, 52 Stat. 1049-1051 as amended, 1055-1056 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-552 (21 U.S.C. 351, 352, 360c, 360d, 371))

[41 FR 6903, Feb. 13, 1976, as amended at 45 FR 3750, Jan. 18, 1980; 45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980; 47 FR 41107, Sept. 17, 1982; 47 FR 51109, Nov. 12, 1982; 48 FR 34470, July 29, 1983]

Subpart C—Requirements for Manufacturers and Producers

§ 809.20 General requirements for manufacturers and producers of in vitro diagnostic products.

(a) [Reserved]

(b) *Compliance with good manufacturing practices.* In vitro diagnostic products shall be manufactured in accordance with the good manufacturing practices requirements found in Part 820 of this chapter.

(Secs. 501, 502, 518, 519, 520(f), and 701(a) as amended, 52 Stat. 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 90 Stat. 562-569 (21 U.S.C. 351, 352, 360h, 360i, 360j(f), 371(a)))

[41 FR 6903, Feb. 13, 1976, as amended at 42 FR 42530, Aug. 23, 1977; 43 FR 31527, July 21, 1978]

PART 812—INVESTIGATIONAL DEVICE EXEMPTIONS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
812.1 Scope.
812.2 Applicability.
812.3 Definitions.
812.5 Labeling of investigational devices.
812.7 Prohibition of promotion and other practices.
812.10 Waivers.
812.18 Import and export requirements.
812.19 Address for IDE correspondence.

Subpart B—Application and Administrative Action

812.20 Application.
812.25 Investigational plan.
812.27 Report of prior investigations.
812.30 FDA action on applications.
812.35 Supplemental applications.
812.38 Confidentiality of data and information.

Subpart C—Responsibilities of Sponsors

812.40 General responsibilities of sponsors.
812.42 FDA and IRB approval.
812.43 Selecting investigators and monitors.
812.45 Informing investigators.
812.46 Monitoring investigations.

Subpart D—IRB Review and Approval

812.60 IRB composition, duties, and functions.
812.62 IRB approval.
812.64 IRB's continuing review.
812.65 [Reserved]
812.66 Significant risk device determinations.

Subpart E—Responsibilities of Investigators

812.100 General responsibilities of investigators.
812.110 Specific responsibilities of investigators.

Subpart F—[Reserved]

Subpart G—Records and Reports

812.140 Records.
812.145 Inspections.
812.150 Reports.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 301, 501, 502, 520, 701(a), 702, 704, 801, 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 1056-1058 as amended, 67 Stat. 476-477 as amended, 90 Stat. 565-574 (21 U.S.C. 331, 351, 352, 360j, 371(a), 372, 374, 381); 21 CFR 5.10.

Source: 45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, unless
herwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

312.1 Scope.

(a) The purpose of this part is to en-
urage, to the extent consistent with
e protection of public health and
fety and with ethical standards, the
scovery and development of useful
vices intended for human use, and
that end to maintain optimum free-
om for scientific investigators in
eir pursuit of this purpose. This
rt provides procedures for the con-
ict of clinical investigations of de-
ces. An approved investigational
vice exemption (IDE) permits a
vice that otherwise would be re-
ired to comply with a performance
andard or to have premarket approv-
to be shipped lawfully for the pur-
se of conducting investigations of
at device. An IDE approved under
312.30 or considered approved under
312.2(b) exempts a device from the
quirements of the following sections
the act and regulations issued
ereunder: Misbranding under sec-
n 502, registration, listing, and pre-
arket notification under section 510,
rformance standards under section
4, premarket approval under section
5, a banned device regulation under
ction 516, records and reports under
ction 519, restricted device require-
ents under section 520(e), good man-
acturing practice requirements
der section 520(f) (unless the spon-
r states an intention to comply with
ese requirements under
12.20(b)(3) or § 812.140(b)(4)(v)) and
lor additive requirements under sec-
n 706.

b) References in this part to regula-
ry sections of the Code of Federal
gulations are to Chapter I of Title
, unless otherwise noted.

12.2 Applicability.

a) *General.* This part applies to all
nical investigations of devices to de-
rmine safety and effectiveness,
cept as provided in paragraph (c) of
is section.

b) *Abbreviated requirements.* The
lowing categories of investigations
considered to have approved applications for IDE's, unless FDA has notified a sponsor under § 812.20(a) that approval of an application is required:

(1) An investigation of a device other than a significant risk device, if the device is not a banned device and the sponsor:

(i) Labels the device in accordance with § 812.5;

(ii) Obtains IRB approval of the investigation after presenting the reviewing IRB with a brief explanation of why the device is not a significant risk device, and maintains such approval;

(iii) Ensures that each investigator participating in an investigation of the device obtains from each subject under the investigator's care, informed consent under Part 50 and documents it, unless documentation is waived by an IRB under § 56.109(c).

(iv) Complies with the requirements of § 812.46 with respect to monitoring investigations;

(v) Maintains the records required under § 812.140(b) (4) and (5) and makes the reports required under § 812.150(b) (1) through (3) and (5) through (10);

(vi) Ensures that participating investigators maintain the records required by § 812.140(a)(3)(i) and make the reports required under § 812.150(a) (1), (2), (5), and (7); and

(vii) Complies with the prohibitions in § 812.7 against promotion and other practices.

(2) An investigation of a device other than one subject to paragraph (e) of this section, if the investigation was begun on or before July 16, 1980, and to be completed, and is completed, on or before January 19, 1981.

(c) *Exempted investigations.* This part does not apply to investigations of the following categories of devices:

(1) A device, other than a transitional device, in commercial distribution immediately before May 28, 1976, when used or investigated in accordance with the indications in labeling in effect at that time.

(2) A device, other than a transitional device, introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, that FDA has determined to be substantially equivalent to a device in commercial distribution immediately

before May 28, 1976, and that is used or investigated in accordance with the indications in the labeling FDA reviewed under Subpart E of Part 807 in determining substantial equivalence.

(3) A diagnostic device, if the sponsor complies with applicable requirements in § 809.10(c) and if the testing:

(i) Is noninvasive,

(ii) Does not require an invasive sampling procedure that presents significant risk,

(iii) Does not by design or intention introduce energy into a subject, and

(iv) Is not used as a diagnostic procedure without confirmation of the diagnosis by another, medically established diagnostic product or procedure.

(4) A device undergoing consumer preference testing, testing of a modification, or testing of a combination of two or more devices in commercial distribution, if the testing is not for the purpose of determining safety or effectiveness and does not put subjects at risk.

(5) A device intended solely for veterinary use.

(6) A device shiped solely for research on or with laboratory animals and labeled in accordance with § 812.5(c).

(7) A custom device as defined in § 812.3(b), unless the device is being used to determine safety or effectiveness for commercial distribution.

(8) An intraocular lens. An intraocular lens shall not be used unless it is subject to an approved IDE under Part 813 or an approved application for premarket approval under section 515 of the act.

(d) *Limit on certain exemptions.* In the case of class II or class III device described in paragraph (c)(1) or (2) of this section, this part applies beginning on the date stipulated in an FDA regulation or order that calls for the submission of premarket approval applications for an unapproved class III device, or establishes a performance standard for a class II device.

(e) *Investigations subject to IND's.* A sponsor that, on July 16, 1980, has an effective investigational new drug application (IND) for an investigation of a device shall continue to comply with the requirements of Part 312 until 90 days after that date. To continue the investigation after that date, a sponsor shall comply with paragraph (b)(1) of this section, if the device is not a significant risk device, or shall have obtained FDA approval under § 812.30 of an IDE application for the investigation of the device.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 8956, Jan. 27, 1981; 46 FR 14340, Feb. 27, 1981; 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 812.3 Definitions.

(a) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (sections 201-901, 52 Stat. 1040 et seq., as amended (21 U.S.C. 301-392)).

(b) "Custom device" means a device that:

(1) Necessarily deviates from devices generally available or from an applicable performance standard or premarket approval requirement in order to comply with the order of an individual physician or dentist;

(2) Is not generally available to, or generally used by, other physicians or dentists;

(3) Is not generally available in finished form for purchase or for dispensing upon prescription;

(4) Is not offered for commercial distribution through labeling or advertising; and

(5) Is intended for use by an individual patient named in the order of a physician or dentist, and is to be made in a specific form for that patient, or is intended to meet the special needs of the physician or dentist in the course of professional practice.

(c) "FDA" means the Food and Drug Administration.

(d) "Implant" means a device that is placed into a surgically or naturally formed cavity of the human body if it is intended to remain there for a period of 30 days or more. FDA may, in order to protect public health, determine that devices placed in subjects for shorter periods are also "implants" for purposes of this part.

(e) "Institution" means a person, other than an individual, who engages in the conduct of research on subjects or in the delivery of medical services to individuals as a primary activity or as an adjunct to providing residential or custodial care to humans. The term includes, for example, a hospital, retirement home, confinement facility, academic establishment, and device manufacturer. The term has the same meaning as "facility" in section 520(g) of the act.

(f) "Institutional review board" (IRB) means any board, committee, or other group formally designated by an institution to review biomedical research involving subjects and established, operated, and functioning in conformance with Part 56. The term has the same meaning as "institutional review committee" in section 520(g) of the act.

(g) "Investigational device" means a device, including a transitional device, that is the object of an investigation.

(h) "Investigation" means a clinical investigation or research involving one or more subjects to determine the safety or effectiveness of a device.

(i) "Investigator" means an individual who actually conducts a clinical investigation, i.e., under whose immediate direction the test article is administered or dispensed to, or used involving, a subject, or, in the event of an investigation conducted by a team of individuals, is the responsible leader of that team.

(j) "Monitor," when used as a noun, means an individual designated by a sponsor or contract research organization to oversee the progress of an investigation. The monitor may be an employee of a sponsor or a consultant to the sponsor, or an employee of or consultant to a contract research organization. "Monitor," when used as a verb, means to oversee an investigation.

(k) "Noninvasive," when applied to a diagnostic device or procedure, means one that does not by design or intention: (1) Penetrate or pierce the skin or mucous membranes of the body, the ocular cavity, or the urethra, or (2) enter the ear beyond the external auditory canal, the nose beyond the nares, the mouth beyond the pharynx, the anal canal beyond the rectum, or the vagina beyond the cervical os. For purposes of this part, blood sampling that involves simple venipuncture is considered noninvasive, and the use of surplus samples of body fluids or tissues that are left over from samples taken for noninvestigational purposes is also considered noninvasive.

(l) "Person" includes any individual, partnership, corporation, association, scientific or academic establishment, Government agency or organizational unit of a Government agency, and any other legal entity.

(m) "Significant risk device" means an investigational device that:

(1) Is intended as an implant and presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety, or welfare of a subject;

(2) Is purported or represented to be for a use in supporting or sustaining human life and presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety, or welfare of a subject;

(3) Is for a use of substantial importance in diagnosing, curing, mitigating, or treating disease, or otherwise preventing impairment of human health and presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety, or welfare of a subject; or

(4) Otherwise presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety, or welfare of a subject.

(n) "Sponsor" means a person who initiates, but who does not actually conduct, the investigation, that is, the investigational device is administered, dispensed, or used under the immediate direction of another individual. A person other than an individual that uses one or more of its own employees to conduct an investigation that it has initiated is a sponsor, not a sponsor-investigator, and the employees are investigators.

(o) "Sponsor-investigator" means an individual who both initiates and actually conducts, alone or with others, an investigation, that is, under whose immediate direction the investigational device is administered, dispensed, or used. The term does not include any person other than an individual. The obligations of a sponsor-investigator under this part include those of an investigator and those of a sponsor.

(p) "Subject" means a human who participates in an investigation, either as an individual on whom or on whose specimen an investigational device is used or as a control. A subject may be in normal health or may have a medical condition or disease.

(q) "Termination" means a discontinuance, by sponsor or by withdrawal of IRB or FDA approval, of an investigation before completion.

(r) "Transitional device" means a device subject to section 520(l) of the act, that is, a device that FDA considered to be a new drug or an antibiotic drug before May 28, 1976.

(s) "Unanticipated adverse device effect" means any serious adverse effect on health or safety or any life-threatening problem or death caused by, or associated with, a device, if that effect, problem, or death was not previously identified in nature, severity, or degree of incidence in the investigational plan or application (including a supplementary plan or application), or any other unanticipated serious problem associated with a device that relates to the rights, safety, or welfare of subjects.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 8956, Jan. 27, 1981; 48 FR 15622, Apr. 12, 1983]

§ 812.5 Labeling of investigational devices.

(a) *Contents.* An investigational device or its immediate package shall bear a label with the following information: the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor (in accordance with § 801.1), the quantity of contents, if appropriate, and the following statement: "CAUTION—Investigational device. Limited by Federal (or United States) law to investigational use." The label or other labeling shall describe all relevant contraindications, hazards, adverse effects, interfering substances or devices, warnings, and precautions.

(b) *Prohibitions.* The labeling of an investigational device shall not bear any statement that is false or misleading in any particular and shall not represent that the device is safe or effective for the purposes for which it is being investigated.

(c) *Animal research.* An investigational device shipped solely for research on or with laboratory animals shall bear on its label the following statement: "CAUTION—Device for investigational use in laboratory animals or other tests that do not involve human subjects."

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 58842, Sept. 5, 1980]

§ 812.7 Prohibition of promotion and other practices.

A sponsor, investigator, or any person acting for or on behalf of a sponsor or investigator shall not:

(a) Promote or test market an investigational device, until after FDA has approved the device for commercial distribution.

(b) Commercialize an investigational device by charging the subjects or investigators for a device a price larger than that necessary to recover costs of manufacture, research, development, and handling.

(c) Unduly prolong an investigation. If data developed by the investigation indicate in the case of a class III device that premarket approval cannot be justified or in the case of a class II device that it will not comply with an applicable performance standard or an amendment to that standard, the sponsor shall promptly terminate the investigation.

(d) Represent that an investigational device is safe or effective for the purposes for which it is being investigated.

§ 812.10 Waivers.

(a) *Request.* A sponsor may request FDA to waive any requirement of this part. A waiver request, with supporting documentation, may be submitted separately or as part of an application to the address in § 812.19.

(b) *FDA action.* FDA may by letter grant a waiver of any requirement that FDA finds is not required by the act and is unnecessary to protect the rights, safety, or welfare of human subjects.

(c) *Effect of request.* Any requirement shall continue to apply unless and until FDA waives it.

§ 812.18 Import and export requirements.

(a) *Imports.* In addition to complying with other requirements of this part, a person who imports or offers for importation an investigational device subject to this part shall be the agent of the foreign exporter with respect to investigations of the device and shall act as the sponsor of the clinical investigation, or ensure that another person acts as the agent of the foreign exporter and the sponsor of the investigation.

(b) *Exports.* A person exporting an investigational device subject to this part shall obtain FDA's prior approval, as required by section 801(d) of the act.

§ 812.19 Address for IDE correspondence.

All applications, supplemental applications, reports, requests for waivers, requests for import or export approval, and other correspondence relating to matters covered by this part shall be addressed to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Document Mail Center (HFZ-401), Food and Drug Administration, 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20910. The outside wrapper of each submission shall state what the submission is, for example an "IDE application," a "supplemental IDE application," or "correspondence concerning an IDE (or an IDE application)."

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart B—Application and Administrative Action

§ 812.20 Application.

(a) *Submission.* (1) A sponsor shall submit an application to FDA if the sponsor intends to use a significant risk device in an investigation or if FDA notifies the sponsor that an application is required for an investigation.

(2) A sponsor shall not begin an investigation for which FDA's approval of an application is required until FDA has approved the application.

(3) A sponsor shall submit three copies of a signed "Application for an Investigational Device Exemption" (IDE application), together with accompanying materials, by registered mail or by hand to the address in § 812.19. Subsequent correspondence concerning an application or a supplemental application shall be submitted by registered mail or by hand.

(b) *Contents.* An IDE application shall include, in the following order:

(1) The name and address of the sponsor.

(2) A complete report of prior investigations of the device and an accurate summary of those sections of the investigational plan described in § 812.25(a) through (e) or, in lieu of the summary, the complete plan. The sponsor shall submit to FDA a complete investigational plan and a complete report of prior investigations of the device if no IRB has reviewed them, if FDA has found an IRB's review inadequate, or if FDA requests them.

(3) A description of the methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacture, processing, packing, storage, and, where appropriate, installation of the device, in sufficient detail so that a person generally familiar with good manufacturing practices can make a knowledgeable judgment about the quality control used in the manufacture of the device.

(4) An example of the agreements to be entered into by all investigators to comply with investigator obligations under this part, and a list of the names and addresses of all investigators who have signed the agreement.

(5) A certification that all investigators who will participate in the investigation have signed the agreement, that the list of investigators includes all the investigators participating in the investigation, and that no investigators will be added to the investigation until they have signed the agreement.

(6) A list of the name, address, and chairperson of each IRB that has been or will be asked to review the investigation and a certification of the action concerning the investigation taken by each such IRB.

(7) The name and address of any institution at which a part of the investigation may be conducted that has not been identified in accordance with paragraph (b)(6) of this section.

(8) If the device is to be sold, the amount to be charged and an explanation of why sale does not constitute commercialization of the device.

(9) A claim for categorical exclusion under § 25.24 or an environmental assessment under § 25.31.

(10) Copies of all labeling for the device.

(11) Copies of all forms and informational materials to be provided to subjects to obtain informed consent.

(12) Any other relevant information FDA requests for review of the application.

(c) *Additional information.* FDA may request additional information concerning an investigation or revision in the investigational plan. The sponsor may treat such a request as a disapproval of the application for purposes of requesting a hearing under Part 16.

(d) *Information previously submitted.* Information previously submitted to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health in accordance with this chapter ordinarily need not be resubmitted, but may be incorporated by reference.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat. 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 46 FR 8956, Jan. 27, 1981; 50 FR 16669, Apr. 26, 1985; 53 FR 11252, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 812.25 Investigational plan.

The investigational plan shall include, in the following order:

(a) *Purpose.* The name and intended use of the device and the objectives and duration of the investigation.

(b) *Protocol.* A written protocol describing the methodology to be used and an analysis of the protocol demonstrating that the investigation is scientifically sound.

(c) *Risk analysis.* A description and analysis of all increased risks to which subjects will be exposed by the investigation; the manner in which these risks will be minimized; a justification for the investigation; and a description of the patient population, including the number, age, sex, and condition.

(d) *Description of device.* A description of each important component, ingredient, property, and principle of operation of the device and of each anticipated change in the device during the course of the investigation.

(e) *Monitoring procedures.* The sponsor's written procedures for monitoring the investigation and the name and address of any monitor.

(f) *Labeling.* Copies of all labeling for the device.

(g) *Consent materials.* Copies of all forms and informational materials to be provided to subjects to obtain informed consent.

(h) *IRB information.* A list of the names, locations, and chairpersons of all IRB's that have been or will be asked to review the investigation, and a certification of any action taken by any of those IRB's with respect to the investigation.

(i) *Other institutions.* The name and address of each institution at which a part of the investigation may be conducted that has not been identified in paragraph (h) of this section.

(j) *Additional records and reports.* A description of records and reports that will be maintained on the investigation in addition to those prescribed in Subpart G.

§ 812.27 Report of prior investigations.

(a) *General.* The report of prior investigations shall include reports of all prior clinical, animal, and laboratory testing of the device and shall be comprehensive and adequate to justify the proposed investigation.

(b) *Specific contents.* The report also shall include:

(1) A bibliography of all publications, whether adverse or supportive, that are relevant to an evaluation of the safety or effectiveness of the device, copies of all published and unpublished adverse information, and, if requested by an IRB or FDA, copies of other significant publications.

(2) A summary of all other unpublished information (whether adverse or supportive) in the possession of, or reasonably obtainable by, the sponsor that is relevant to an evaluation of the safety or effectiveness of the device.

(3) If information on nonclinical laboratory studies is provided, a statement that all such studies have been conducted in compliance with applicable requirements in the good laboratory practice regulations in Part 58, or if any such study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance. Failure or inability to comply with this requirement does not justify failure to provide information on a relevant nonclinical test study.

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 50 FR 7518, Feb. 22, 1985]

§ 812.30 FDA action on applications.

(a) *Approval or disapproval.* FDA will notify the sponsor in writing of the date it receives an application. FDA may approve an investigation as proposed, approve it with modifications, or disapprove it. An investigation may not begin until:

(1) Thirty days after FDA receives the application at the address in § 812.19 for the investigation of a device other than a banned device, unless FDA notifies the sponsor that the investigation may not begin; or

(2) FDA approves, by order, an IDE for the investigation.

(b) *Grounds for disapproval or withdrawal.* FDA may disapprove or withdraw approval of an application if FDA finds that:

(1) There has been a failure to comply with any requirement of this part or the act, any other applicable regulation or statute, or any condition of approval imposed by an IRB or FDA.

(2) The application or a report contains an untrue statement of a material fact, or omits material information required by this part.

(3) The sponsor fails to respond to a request for additional information within the time prescribed by FDA.

(4) There is reason to believe that the risks to the subjects are not outweighed by the anticipated benefits to the subjects and the importance of the knowledge to be gained, or informed consent is inadquate, or the investigation is scientifically unsound, or there is reason to believe that the device as used is ineffective.

(5) It is otherwise unreasonable to begin or to continue the investigation owing to the way in which the device is used or the inadequacy of:

(i) The report of prior investigations or the investigational plan;

(ii) The methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacturing, processing, packaging, storage, and, where appropriate, installation of the device; or

(iii) Monitoring and review of the investigation.

(c) *Notice of disapproval or withdrawal.* If FDA disapproves an application or proposes to withdraw approval of an application, FDA will notify the sponsor in writing.

(1) A disapproval order will contain a complete statement of the reasons for disapproval and a statement that the sponsor has an opportunity to request a hearing under Part 16.

(2) A notice of a proposed withdrawal of approval will contain a complete statement of the reasons for withdrawal and a statement that the sponsor has an opportunity to request a hearing under Part 16. FDA will provide the opportunity for hearing before withdrawal of approval, unless FDA determines in the notice that continuation of testing under the ex-

emption will result in an unreasonble risk to the public health and orders withdrawal of approval before any hearing.

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 58842, Sept. 5, 1980]

§ 812.35 Supplemental applications.

(a) *Changes in investigational plan.* A sponsor shall: (1) Submit to FDA a supplemental application if the sponsor or an investigator proposes a change in the investigational plan that may affect its scientific soundness or the rights, safety, or welfare of subjects, and (2) obtain FDA approval under § 812.30(a) of any such change, and IRB approval when the change involves the rights, safety, or welfare of subjects (see §§ 56.110 and 56.111), before implementation. These requirements do not apply in the case of a deviation from the investigational plan to protect the life or physical well-being of a subject in an emergency, which deviation shall be reported to FDA within 5 working days after the sponsor learns of it (see § 812.150(a)(4)).

(b) *IRB approval for new facilities.* A sponsor shall submit to FDA a certification of any IRB approval of an investigation or a part of an investigation not included in the IDE application. If the investigation is otherwise unchanged, the supplemental application shall consist of an updating of the information required by § 812.20(b) and (c) and a description of any modifications in the investigational plan required by the IRB as a condition of approval. A certification of IRB approval need not be included in the initial submission of the supplemental application, and such certification is not a precondition for agency consideration of the application. Nevertheless, a sponsor may not begin a part of an investigation at a facility until the IRB has approved the investigation, FDA has received the certification of IRB approval, and FDA, under § 812.30(a), has approved the supplemental application relating to that part of the investigation (see § 56.103(a)).

[50 FR 25909, June 24, 1985; 50 FR 28932, July 17, 1985]

§ 812.38 Confidentiality of data and information.

(a) *Existence of IDE.* FDA will not disclose the existence of an IDE unless its existence has previously been publicly disclosed or acknowledged, until FDA approves an application for premarket approval of the device subject to the IDE; or a notice of completion of a product development protocol for the device has become effective.

(b) *Availability of summaries or data.* (1) FDA will make publicly available, upon request, a detailed summary of information concerning the safety and effectiveness of the device that was the basis for an order approving, disapproving, or withdrawing approval of an application for an IDE for a banned device. The summary shall include information on any adverse effect on health caused by the device.

(2) If a device is a banned device or if the existence of an IDE has been publicly disclosed or acknowledged, data or information contained in the file is not available for public disclosure before approval of an application for premarket approval or the effective date of a notice of completion of a product development protocol except as provided in this section. FDA may, in its discretion, disclose a summary of selected portions of the safety and effectiveness data, that is, clinical, animal, or laboratory studies and tests of the device, for public consideration of a specific pending issue.

(3) If the existence of an IDE file has not been publicly disclosed or acknowledged, no data or information in the file are available for public disclosure except as provided in paragraphs (b)(1) and (c) of this section.

(c) *Reports of adverse effects.* Upon request or on its own initiative, FDA shall disclose to an individual on whom an investigational device has been used a copy of a report of adverse device effects relating to that use.

(d) *Other rules.* Except as otherwise provided in this section, the availability for public disclosure of data and information in an IDE file shall be handled in accordance with § 814.9.

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart C—Responsibilities of Sponsors

§ 812.40 General responsibilities of sponsors.

Sponsors are responsible for selecting qualified investigators and providing them with the information they need to conduct the investigation properly, ensuring proper monitoring of the investigation, ensuring that IRB review and approval are obtained, submitting an IDE application to FDA, and ensuring that any reviewing IRB and FDA are promptly informed of significant new information about an investigation. Additional responsibilities of sponsors are described in Subparts B and G.

§ 812.42 FDA and IRB approval.

A sponsor shall not begin an investigation or part of an investigation until
n IRB and FDA have both approved
he application or supplemental appli-
ation relating to the investigation or
art of an investigation.

Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507,
10, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801,
2 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as
mended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat.
63 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amend-
d, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat.
99-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as
mended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21
.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357,
60, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and
81); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat.
90, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as
mended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-
33n))

6 FR 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

812.43 Selecting investigators and monitors.

(a) *Selecting investigators.* A sponsor
iall select investigators qualified by
aining and experience to investigate
ie device.

(b) *Control of device.* A sponsor shall
ip investigational devices only to
ialified investigators participating in
ie investigation.

(c) *Obtaining agreements.* A sponsor
iall obtain from each participating
vestigator a signed agreement that
cludes:

(1) The investigator's curriculum
tae.

(2) Where applicable, a statement of the investigator's relevant experience, including the dates, location, extent, and type of experience.

(3) If the investigator was involved in an investigation or other research that was terminated, an explanation of the circumstances that led to termination.

(4) A statement of the investigator's commitment to:

(i) Conduct the investigation in accordance with the agreement, the investigational plan, this part and other applicable FDA regulations, and conditions of approval imposed by the reviewing IRB or FDA;

(ii) Supervise all testing of the device involving human subjects; and

(iii) Ensure that the requirements for obtaining informed consent are met.

(d) *Selecting monitors.* A sponsor shall select monitors qualified by training and experience to monitor the investigational study in accordance with this part and other applicable FDA regulations.

§ 812.45 Informing investigators.

A sponsor shall supply all investigators participating in the investigation with copies of the investigational plan and the report of prior investigations of the device.

§ 812.46 Monitoring investigations.

(a) *Securing compliance.* A sponsor who discovers that an investigator is not complying with the signed agreement, the investigational plan, the requirements of this part or other applicable FDA regulations, or any conditions of approval imposed by the reviewing IRB or FDA shall promptly either secure compliance, or discontinue shipments of the device to the investigator and terminate the investigator's participation in the investigation. A sponsor shall also require such an investigator to dispose of or return the device, unless this action would jeopardize the rights, safety, or welfare of a subject.

(b) *Unanticipated adverse device effects.* (1) A sponsor shall immediately conduct an evaluation of any unanticipated adverse device effect.

(2) A sponsor who determines that an unanticipated adverse device effect presents an unreasonable risk to subjects shall terminate all investigations or parts of investigations presenting that risk as soon as possible. Termination shall occur not later than 5 working days after the sponsor makes this determination and not later than 15 working days after the sponsor first received notice of the effect.

(c) *Resumption of terminated studies.* If the device is a significant risk device, a sponsor may not resume a terminated investigation without IRB and FDA approval. If the device is not a significant risk device, a sponsor may not resume a terminated investigation without IRB approval and, if the investigation was terminated under paragraph (b)(2) of this section, FDA approval.

Subpart D—IRB Review and Approval

§ 812.60 IRB composition, duties, and functions.

An IRB reviewing and approving investigations under this part shall comply with the requirements of Part 56 in all respects, including its composition, duties, and functions.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[46 FR 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

§ 812.62 IRB approval.

(a) An IRB shall review and have authority to approve, require modifications in (to secure approval), or disapprove all investigations covered by this part.

(b) If no IRB exists or if FDA finds that an IRB's review is inadequate, a sponsor may submit an application to FDA.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[46 FR 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

§ 812.64 IRB's continuing review.

The IRB shall conduct its continuing review of an investigation in accordance with Part 56.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[46 FR 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

§ 812.65 [Reserved]

§ 812.66 Significant risk device determinations.

If an IRB determines that an investigation, presented for approval under § 812.2(b)(1)(ii), involves a significant risk device, it shall so notify the investigator and, where appropriate, the sponsor. A sponsor may not begin the investigation except as provided in § 812.30(a).

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[46 FR 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

Subpart E—Responsibilities of Investigators

§ 812.100 General responsibilities of investigators.

An investigator is responsible for ensuring that an investigation is conducted according to the signed agreement, the investigational plan and applicable FDA regulations, for protecting the rights, safety, and welfare of subjects under the investigator's care, and for the control of devices under nvestigation. An investigator also is esponsible for ensuring that informed onsent is obtained in accordance with 'art 50 of this chapter. Additional responsibilities of investigators are described in Subpart G.

Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 10, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 2 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as mended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 63 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 99-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as mended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 .S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 60, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 81); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 90, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as mended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-63n))

5 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 46 R 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

812.110 Specific responsibilities of investigators.

(a) *Awaiting approval.* An investigator may determine whether potential ubjects would be interested in participating in an investigation, but shall ot request the written informed consent of any subject to participate, and hall not allow any subject to participate before obtaining IRB and FDA approval.

(b) *Compliance.* An investigator hall conduct an investigation in accordance with the signed agreement ith the sponsor, the investigational an, this part and other applicable DA regulations, and any conditions approval imposed by an IRB or DA.

(c) *Supervising device use.* An investigator shall permit an investigational device to be used only with subjects under the investigator's supervision. An investigator shall not supply an investigational device to any person not authorized under this part to receive it.

(d) *Disposing of device.* Upon completion or termination of a clinical investigation or the investigator's part of an investigation, or at the sponsor's request, an investigator shall return to the sponsor any remaining supply of the device or otherwise dispose of the device as the sponsor directs.

Subpart F—[Reserved]

Subpart G—Records and Reports

§ 812.140 Records.

(a) *Investigator records.* A participating investigator shall maintain the following accurate, complete, and current records relating to the investigator's participation in an investigation:

(1) All correspondence with another investigator, an IRB, the sponsor, a monitor, or FDA, including required reports.

(2) Records of receipt, use or disposition of a device that relate to:

(i) The type and quantity of the device, the dates of its receipt, and the batch number or code mark.

(ii) The names of all persons who received, used, or disposed of each device.

(iii) Why and how many units of the device have been returned to the sponsor, repaired, or otherwise disposed of.

(3) Records of each subject's case history and exposure to the device. Such records shall include:

(i) Documents evidencing informed consent and, for any use of a device by the investigator without informed consent, any written concurrence of a licensed physician and a brief description of the circumstances justifying the failure to obtain informed consent.

(ii) All relevant observations, including records concerning adverse device effects (whether anticipated or unanticipated), information and data on the condition of each subject upon entering, and during the course of, the investigation, including information about relevant previous medical history and the results of all diagnostic tests.

(iii) A record of the exposure of each subject to the investigational device, including the date and time of each use, and any other therapy.

(4) The protocol, with documents showing the dates of and reasons for each deviation from the protocol.

(5) Any other records that FDA requires to be maintained by regulation or by specific requirement for a category of investigations or a particular investigation.

(b) *Sponsor records.* A sponsor shall maintain the following accurate, complete, and current records relating to an investigation:

(1) All correspondence with another sponsor, a monitor, an investigator, an IRB, or FDA, including required reports.

(2) Records of shipment and disposition. Records of shipment shall include the name and address of the consignee, type and quantity of device, date of shipment, and batch number or code mark. Records of disposition shall describe the batch number or code marks of any devices returned to the sponsor, repaired, or disposed of in other ways by the investigator or another person, and the reasons for and method of disposal.

(3) Signed investigator agreements.

(4) For each investigation subject to § 812.2(b)(1) of a device other than a significant risk device, the records described in paragraph (b)(5) of this section and the following records, consolidated in one location and available for FDA inspection and copying:

(i) The name and intended use of the device and the objectives of the investigation;

(ii) A brief explanation of why the device is not a significant risk device:

(iii) The name and address of each investigator:

(iv) The name and address of each IRB that has reviewed the investigation:

(v) A statement of the extent to which the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 will be followed in manufacturing the device; and

(vi) Any other information required by FDA.

(5) Records concerning adverse device effects (whether anticipated or unanticipated) and complaints and

(6) Any other records that FDA requires to be maintained by regulation or by specific requirement for a category of investigation or a particular investigation.

(c) *IRB records.* An IRB shall maintain records in accordance with Part 56 of this chapter.

(d) *Retention period.* An investigator or sponsor shall maintain the records required by this subpart during the investigation and for a period of 2 years after the latter of the following two dates: The date on which the investigation is terminated or completed, or the date that the records are no longer required for purposes of supporting a premarket approval application or a notice of completion of a product development protocol.

(e) *Records custody.* An investigator or sponsor may withdraw from the responsibility to maintain records for the period required in paragraph (d) of this section and transfer custody of the records to any other person who will accept responsibility for them under this part, including the requirements of § 812.145. Notice of a transfer shall be given to FDA not later than 10 working days after transfer occurs.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 58843, Sept. 5, 1980; 46 FR 8957, Jan. 27, 1981]

§ 812.145 Inspections.

(a) *Entry and inspection.* A sponsor or an investigator who has authority to grant access shall permit authorized FDA employees, at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner, to enter and inspect any establishment where devices are held (including any establishment where devices are manufactured, processed, packed, installed, used, or implanted or where records of results from use of devices are kept).

(b) *Records inspection.* A sponsor, IRB, or investigator, or any other person acting on behalf of such a person with respect to an investigation, shall permit authorized FDA employees, at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner, to inspect and copy all records relating to an investigation.

(c) *Records identifying subjects.* An investigator shall permit authorized FDA employees to inspect and copy records that identify subjects, upon notice that FDA has reason to suspect that adequate informed consent was not obtained, or that reports required to be submitted by the investigator to the sponsor or IRB have not been submitted or are incomplete, inaccurate, false, or misleading.

§ 812.150 Reports.

(a) *Investigator reports.* An investigator shall prepare and submit the following complete, accurate, and timely reports:

(1) *Unanticipated adverse device effects.* An investigator shall submit to the sponsor and to the reviewing IRB a report of any unanticipated adverse device effect occurring during an investigation as soon as possible, but in no event later than 10 working days after the investigator first learns of the effect.

(2) *Withdrawal of IRB approval.* An investigator shall report to the sponsor, within 5 working days, a withdrawal of approval by the reviewing IRB of the investigator's part of an investigation.

(3) *Progress.* An investigator shall submit progress reports on the investigation to the sponsor, the monitor, and the reviewing IRB at regular intervals, but in no event less often than yearly.

(4) *Deviations from the investigational plan.* An investigator shall notify the sponsor and the reviewing IRB (see § 56.108(a) (3) and (4)) of any deviation from the investigational plan to protect the life or physical well-being of a subject in an emergency. Such notice shall be given as soon as possible, but in no event later than 5 working days after the emergency occurred. Except in such an emergency, prior approval by the sponsor is required for changes in or deviations from a plan, and if these changes or deviations may affect the scientific soundness of the plan or the rights, safety, or welfare of human subjects, FDA and IRB in accordance with § 812.35(a) also is required.

(5) *Informed consent.* If an investigator uses a device without obtaining informed consent, the investigator shall report such use to the sponsor and the reviewing IRB within 5 working days after the use occurs.

(6) *Final report.* An investigator shall, within 3 months after termination or completion of the investigation or the investigator's part of the investigation, submit a final report to the sponsor and the reviewing IRB.

(7) *Other.* An investigator shall, upon request by a reviewing IRB or FDA, provide accurate, complete, and current information about any aspect of the investigation.

(b) *Sponsor reports.* A sponsor shall prepare and submit the following complete, accurate, and timely reports:

(1) *Unanticipated adverse device effects.* A sponsor who conducts an evaluation of an unanticipated adverse device effect under § 812.46(b) shall report the results of such evaluation to FDA and to all reviewing IRB's and participating investigators within 10 working days after the sponsor first receives notice of the effect. Thereafter the sponsor shall submit such additional reports concerning the effect as FDA requests.

(2) *Withdrawal of IRB approval.* A sponsor shall notify FDA and all reviewing IRB's and participating investigators of any withdrawal of approval of an investigation or a part of an investigation by a reviewing IRB within 5 working days after receipt of the withdrawal of approval.

(3) *Withdrawal of FDA approval.* A sponsor shall notify all reviewing IRB's and participating investigators of any withdrawal of FDA approval of the investigation, and shall do so

within 5 working days after receipt of notice of the withdrawal of approval.

(4) *Current investigator list.* A sponsor shall submit to FDA, at 6-month intervals, a current list of the names and addresses of all investigators participating in the investigation. The sponsor shall submit the first such list 6 months after FDA approval.

(5) *Progress reports.* At regular intervals, and at least yearly, a sponsor shall submit progress reports to all reviewing IRB's. In the case of a significant risk device, the sponsor shall also submit progress reports to FDA.

(6) *Recall and device disposition.* A sponsor shall notify FDA and all reviewing IRB's of any request that an investigator return, repair, or otherwise dispose of any units of a device. Such notice shall occur within 30 working days after the request is made and shall state why the request was made.

(7) *Final report.* In the case of a significant risk device, the sponsor shall notify FDA within 30 working days of the completion or termination of the investigation and shall submit a final report to FDA and all reviewing the IRB's and participating investigators within 6 months after completion or termination. In the case of a device that is not a significant risk device, the sponsor shall submit a final report to all reviewing IRB's within 6 months after termination or completion.

(8) *Informed consent.* A sponsor shall submit to FDA a copy of any report by an investigator under paragraph (a)(5) of this section of use of a device without obtaining informed consent, within 5 working days of receipt of notice of such use.

(9) *Significant risk device determinations.* If an IRB determines that a device is a significant risk device, and the sponsor had proposed that the IRB consider the device not to be a significant risk device, the sponsor shall submit to FDA a report of the IRB's determination within 5 working days after the sponsor first learns of the IRB's determination.

(10) *Other.* A sponsor shall, upon request by a reviewing IRB or FDA, provide accurate, complete, and current information about any aspect of the investigation.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[45 FR 3751, Jan. 18, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 58843, Sept. 5, 1980; 48 FR 15622, Apr. 12, 1983]

PART 813—INVESTIGATIONAL EXEMPTIONS FOR INTRAOCULAR LENSES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

813.1 Scope.
813.2 Applicability.
813.3 Definitions.
813.5 General qualifications for an exemption.
813.10 Petitions for waiver of requirements.
813.12 Information previously submitted.
813.19 Requirements applicable to importers and exporters of intraocular lenses.

Subpart B—Applications for Exemption for Investigational Studies Involving Human Subjects

813.20 Application.
813.25 Investigational plan.
813.27 Report of prior experience with the lens.
813.30 Food and Drug Administration review of and action on an application.
813.35 Withdrawal of an exemption.
813.38 Confidentiality of data and information in an application.
813.39 Supplemental applications and submissions concerning applications.

Subpart C—Sponser Responsibilities in Investigational Studies of Intraocular Lenses

813.40 General.
813.42 Review of the investigational study by the Food and Drug Administration and the institutional review committee.
813.43 Selection of investigators.
813.45 Control over the intraocular lens.
813.46 Monitoring the investigational study.

best copy available

Sec.
813.47 Submitting information to investigators.
813.50 Promotion and sale of intraocular lenses.

Subpart D—Institutional Review Committee

813.60 Requirement of institutional review committee.
813.62 Membership of an institutional review committee.
813.65 Procedures for review and monitoring of investigational studies by an institutional review committee.
813.66 Procedures and criteria for review of investigational studies by an institutional review committee.
813.70 Review by institution.
813.79 Actions where review by an institutional review committee is inadequate.

Subpart E—Investigator Responsibilities in Investigational Studies of Intraocular Lenses

813.100 General.
813.101 Review of investigational study by the Food and Drug Administration.
813.103 Review of investigational study by institutional review committee.
813.105 Conformity to investigational plan.
813.107 Control over intraocular lenses.
813.119 Disqualification of a clinical investigator.

Subpart F—[Reserved]

Subpart G—Inspections, Reports, and Records

813.150 Inspections.
813.153 Reports.
813.155 Records.

Subpart H—Investigational Studies That Do Not Involve Human Subjects

813.160 Condtions of exemption.
813.170 Termination of exemption.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 301, 501, 502, 520, 701, 704, 801, 52 Stat. 1042-1043 as amended, 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 90 Stat. 567, 569-571, 576-578 (21 U.S.C. 331, 351, 352, 360j, 371, 374, 381).

SOURCE: 42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 813.1 Scope.

(a) *General.* This part provides that intraocular lenses may be exempted from any of the requirements of the act enumerated in paragraph (b) of this section that would otherwise be applicable to the device, to permit investigational studies of the device by experts who are qualified by scientific training and experience to investigate the safety and effectiveness of the lenses. This part implements sections 520(g) and 520(1) of the act with respect to intraocular lenses.

(b) *Effect of exemption.* (1) In general, intraocular lenses are exempted from provisions of the following sections of the act and regulations thereunder when an application for exemption applicable to the lenses is in effect under this part: Misbranding under section 502, registration and premarket notification under section 510, performance standards under section 514, premarket approval under section 515, records and reports under section 519, restricted devices under section 520(e), good manufacturing practices under section 520(f), and color additives under section 706.

(2) Intraocular lenses shall not be extempted from a provision of the act listed in paragraph (b)(1) of this section where the Commissioner indicates that the lens is not exempt from such a provision in an order of disapproval, approval, or approval with modifications under § 813.30.

§ 813.2 Applicability.

This part applies to all implantations of intraocular lenses in humans unless a premarket approval application has been approved for these lenses under section 515 of the act.

§ 813.3 Definitions.

(a) "Intraocular lens" means a lens intended to replace surgically the natural lens of the human eye. An intraocular lens is, for purposes of this part, synonymous with "investigational device," lens, or lenses.

(b) "Investigational device" means a device that is used in an investigational study involving human subjects, where the study is for the purpose of determining if the device is safe or effective.

(c) "Investigational plan" means a plan or protocol for using an investigational device in an investigational study. See § 813.25 for requirements applicable to an investigational plan.

(d) "Investigational study" means a study involving human subjects when the study is for the purpose of determining if an investigational device is safe or effective and includes any implantation in a human of an intraocular lens for which there is no approved application for premarket approval under section 515 of the act.

(e) "Investigator" means an individual who actually conducts an investigational study, i.e., under whose immediate direction the investigational device is administered or dispensed to, or used involving, a subject.

(f) "Monitor," when used as a noun, means an individual selected by a sponsor or contract research organization to oversee the progress of an investigational study. The monitor may be a full-time employee of a sponsor or contract research organization or a consultant to the sponsor or contract research organization. ("Monitor," when used as a verb, means the act of reviewing the progress of an investigational study.)

(g) "Sponsor" means a person who initiates an investigational study, but who does not actually conduct the study (i.e., the investigational device is administered or dispensed to, or used involving, a subject under the immediate direction of another individual). A person other than an individual, e.g., corporation or government agency, that uses one or more of its own employees to conduct an investigational study that it has initiated is considered to be a sponsor (not a sponsor-investigator), and the employees are considered to be investigators.

(h) "Sponsor-investigator" means an individual who both initiates and actually conducts, alone or with others, an investigational study (i.e., under whose immediate direction the investigational device is administered or dispensed to, or used involving, a subject). The term does not include any person other than an individual. Any sponsor-investigator shall carry out the responsibilities under this part of a sponsor and of an investigator.

(i) "Institution" means a person (other than an individual) who engages in the conduct of research on human subjects or in the delivery of medical services to human subjects as a primary activity or as an adjunct to providing residential or custodial care to human beings. The term includes a hospital, retirement home, prison, university, or device manufacturer. Facility as used in section 520(g) of the act is deemed to by synonymous with the term institution for purposes of this part.

(j) "Subject" means an individual who is or becomes a paticipant in an investigational study, either as a recipient of the investigational device or as a control. A subject may be either a nonpatient volunteer or a patient on whom the intraocular lens might have a therapeutic effect.

(k) "Person" includes an individual, partnership, corporation, association, scientific establishment, government agency, and any other legal entity.

(l) "Institutional review committee" means a committee (appointed by an institution to review and monitor investigations in which human subjects participate) whose major responsibility is the protection of human subjects from risk to their health, safety, or dignity in accordance with the current professional standards and the requirements of this part. Such a committee may be known as an institutional review board or by other names.

§ 813.5 General qualifications for an exemption.

A shipment of an intraocular lens is exempt from any or all the otherwise applicable requirements of the act enumerated in § 813.1(b)(1) if all the following conditions are met:

(a) The label of the device bears the following: the name and place of business of the manufacturer, packer, or distributor in accordance with § 801.1 of this chapter; the quantity of contents; the sterility shelf life of the lens; and the statement, "Caution—investigational device. Limited by Federal (or United States) law to investigational use".

(b) The labeling of the intraocular lens is not false or misleading in any particular.

(c) (1) An application for investigational device exemption covering that shipment was submitted by the sponsor under Subpart B of this part, and the requisite time has elapsed following the date of receipt of the application by the Food and Drug Administration to permit the investigational study to begin under § 813.30(b).

(2) The Commissioner has not disapproved the application or withdrawn the exemption.

(3) Each shipment of the intraocular lens is made in accordance with the commitments in the application and any conditions imposed in the Commissioner's approval of the application.

(4) The sponsor has complied with the requirements of Subparts B, C, and G of this part, any institutional review committee that is to review and approve the investigational study for which shipment is made has complied with the requirements of Subparts D and G of this part, and the investigator(s) to which the shipment is to be made has complied with the requirements of Subparts E and G of this part and with the requirements for informed consent contained in Part 50 of this chapter.

(d) If the shipment is to be imported into or exported from the United States, the requirements of § 813.19 have been met.

(Secs. 520 (g) and (l), 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 569-571, 572-574 (21 U.S.C. 360j (g) and (l), 371(a)))

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 46079, Oct. 15, 1982]

§ 813.10 Petitions for waiver of requirements.

(a) Any person subject to any requirement under this part may petition the Commissioner for a waiver of such requirement. Such a petition shall be submitted in accordance with § 10.30 of this chapter and shall set forth the basis for the petitioner's belief that compliance with the requirement is not necessary to achieve the objectives of this part and, where appropriate, any alternative means to achieve the objective of the requirement from which the waiver is sought.

(b) The Commissioner may, at his discretion, grant a petition for a waiver submitted under this section if he finds that compliance with the requirement from which the waiver is sought is not necessary to achieve the objectives of this part and, where appropriate, that the proposed alternative means will achieve the objective of the requirement from which the waiver is sought.

(c) The person who submits a petition under this section continues to be subject to the requirement from which the waiver is sought unless and until the Commissioner grants the petition.

§ 813.12 Information previously submitted.

Wherever this part requires the submission to the Food and Drug Administration of information or data that previously had been submitted in accordance with this part or other parts of this chapter, the information or data need not be resubmitted but may be incorporated by reference.

§ 813.19 Requirements applicable to importers and exporters of intraocular lenses.

(a) Any person who imports or offers for importation into the United States an intraocular lens shall assure that all the following requirements are met:

(1) The labeling of such lens complies with § 813.5 (a) and (b).

(2) The importer of such shipment is an agent in the United States of the foreign exporter or is the ultimate consignee, and the foreign exporter or the ultimate consignee has, prior to such shipment, completed and submitted to the Food and Drug Administration an application for an investigational device exemption in accordance with § 813.20 and acts as the sponsor of the investigational study to assure compliance with the procedures, conditions, and requirements of this part.

(3) The requisite time has elapsed after the date of receipt of the application by the Food and Drug Administration to permit the investigational study to begin under § 813.30(b).

(4) The Commissioner has not disapproved the application or withdrawn the exemption.

(b) Any person who exports an intraocular lens from the United States to a foreign country shall comply with all the following requirements:

(1) The lens shall conform to the specifications of the foreign purchaser.

(2) The lens shall comply with the laws of the country to which it is being exported.

(3) The label on the outside of the shipping package shall indicate that the lens is intended for export.

(4) The lens shall not be sold or offered for sale in domestic commerce.

(5) The person shall obtain the approval of the exportation of the lens from the country to which it is intended for export.

(6) The person shall request and obtain from the Commissioner a determination that the exportation of the device is not contrary to the public health and safety and has the approval of the country to which it is intended for export.

Subpart B—Applications for Exemption for Investigational Studies Involving Human Subjects

§ 813.20 Application.

(a) The sponsor of an investigational study shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration a completed application for an investigational device exemption that has been signed by the sponsor or an authorized representative of the sponsor. Three copies of the application and any material required to accompany the application, bound and contained in volumes of reasonable size, shall be sent by registered mail or hand delivered to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health Document Mail Center (HFZ-401), Food and Drug Administration, 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, Md. 20910. Any subsequent reports, correspondence concerning an application, and supplemental application submitted under § 813.39 also shall be submitted in triplicate by registered mail or hand delivered to this address. The outside wrapper of any application or supplemental application should include the statement "Application (or Supplemental Application) for Investigational Device Exemption" and the outside wrapper of any reports or correspondence should include the statement, "Regarding an Investigational Device Exemption".

(b) An application for an investigational device exemption for an intraocular lens shall include the following information:

(1) A brief statement of its intended use(s) and how it is to be administered.

(2) A description of all components, ingredients, and properties and a description of the principle of operation of the device and any anticipated changes in the device that may occur in the course of the study in enough detail so that a scientist or physician familiar with the general type of lens can make a knowledgeable judgment about the anticipated safety and effectiveness of the lens in the proposed investigational study.

(3) A description of those methods, facilities, and controls, used for the manufacture, processing, packing, and storage of the device in enough detail so that a person generally informed in that area can make a knowledgeable judgment about the safety and effectiveness of the device in the proposed investigational study.

(4) A statement of the location(s) of the study and whether an institutional review committee(s) is to monitor the study at such location(s).

(5) A report of prior investigations of the device that meets the requirements of § 813.27 and a summary of the investigational plan.

(6) (i) A statement from the sponsor that an investigational plan that meets the requirements of § 813.25 and a report of prior investigations of the device that meets the requirements of § 813.27 have been submitted to and approved by the institutional review committee, or (ii) if no institutional review committee exists and one cannot be formed, a statement from the head of the institution that such a committee cannot be formed, and copies of the investigational plan and the report of prior investigations.

(7) A statement from any institutional review committee (where a committee is to monitor the study), signed by the chairman, that the committee has approved the investigational plan and has reviewed the report of prior investigations of the lens, that the committee will review the study periodically at intervals appropriate to the degree of risk but not to exceed 1 year,

and that it will review reports of unexpected adverse effects on a timely basis for the purpose of determining if the study should be continued.

(8) A copy of all informational materials to be given to subjects, including all form(s) to be used to obtain informed consent of human subjects as required by Part 50 of this chapter (this material may be appended to the investigational plan or the summary of the investigational plan).

(9) A copy of all informational material, including labels and other labeling, which is to be supplied to investigators as required by § 813.47(a).

(10) A description of the scientific training and experience that the sponsor considers appropriate to qualify individuals as suitable experts to investigate the safety and effectiveness of the intraocular lens. (See § 813.43(a).)

(11) A copy of the agreement signed by investigators who will be participating, to comply with Subparts E and G of this part and Part 50 of this chapter as required by § 813.43(b).

(12) The name and a summary of the training and experience of the individual who is to monitor the progress of the study for the sponsor as required by Subpart C.

(13) A statement as to whether any institutional review committee has ever disapproved any investigational study of the device and the reasons for such disapproval.

(14) A statement that the sponsor will comply with each of the requirements of Subparts C and G of this part.

(15) A statement by a sponsor notifying FDA if he intends to charge investigators and subjects for the device.

(16) A statement by the sponsor of his reasons for any request for a waiver of the requirement of § 813.30(a) that a study shall not begin before the expiration of 30 days after the Food and Drug Administration has received an application meeting the requirements of this subpart, if such waiver is requested.

(17) A claim for categorical exclusion under § 25.24 of this chapter or an environmental assessment under § 25.31 of this chapter.

(18) Any other information relevant to review of the application required by the Food and Drug Administration to be submitted. The sponsor may refuse to provide the information requested under paragraph (b)(18) of this section and treat FDA's request as a final disapproval for purposes of requesting a regulatory hearing under § 813.30. If a sponsor fails to respond to a request for information within the time prescribed in a request, FDA may treat the application as withdrawn.

(Secs. 520 (g) and (l), 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 569-571, 572-574 (21 U.S.C. 360j (g) and (l), 371(a)))

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 46079, Oct. 15, 1982; 50 FR 16669, Apr. 26, 1985; 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 813.25 Investigational plan.

(a) The investigational plan for the investigational study of an intraocular lens shall include the following:

(1) A statement of the intended use of the lens;

(2) A general outline of the plan and any anticipated or forseeable changes or variations in the plan that may be made based on experience gained in the study;

(3) A description of what results are expected from the investigational study;

(4) A justification for beginning the study, taking into account prior experience with the intraocular lens;

(5) the expected duration of the investigational study;

(6) Identification of the investigator or investigators, the facilities where the study will occur, and any institutional review committees that will supervise the study;

(7) The patient population in which the lens will be used (in terms of age, sex, and condition) and the size of each population;

(8) A justification for using such patient population and of the size of each population;

(9) The sponsor's plan for monitoring the study in accordance with § 813.46;

(10) A description of records to be maintained, and the reports to be made, by the investigator(s) and the sponsor to assure compliance with the plan and enable the progress of the in-

vestigation and the safety and effectiveness of the lenses to be reviewed by the sponsor, any institutional review committee, and the Food and Drug Administration;

(11) The plan for obtaining informed consent from subjects and copies of all informational materials to be given to subjects, including all forms and materials to be used in obtaining such consent; and

(12) A description of the scientific training and experience the sponsor considers appropriate to qualify individuals as suitable experts to investigate the safety and effectiveness of the intraocular lens. (See § 813.43(a)).

(b) The procedures and conditions in the investigational plan may vary depending on the following:

(1) The scope and duration of the investigational study;

(2) The number of human subjects who are to be involved in the study;

(3) The need to permit changes to be made in the device during the study conducted in accordance with the plan; and

(4) The purpose of the study, e.g., whether the study is designed for developing data to obtain approval for the commercial distribution of the device.

(c) When an investigational study is to develop data to obtain approval for commercial distribution of the device, the Food and Drug Administration will not ordinarily regard an investigational plan as capable of providing data that will support an application for such approval unless it provides for more than one independent qualified investigator.

(d) The investigational plan may provide for additional animal tests to be made during the investigational study.

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977; 43 FR 1940, Jan. 13, 1978]

§ 813.27 Report of prior experience with the lens.

(a) A report of prior investigations with the lens shall be submitted to an institutional review committee and to the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) The report of prior investigations of a lens shall include:

(1) A bibliography of any publications relevant to the investigational study and copies of significant publications both adverse and supporting.

(2) Any other unpublished information available to the sponsor, both adverse and supporting, information relating to preclinical investigations of the lens, including appropriate tests in animals and tests in vitro, and prior clinical investigations of the device or clinical experience with the device from commercial marketing, whether in the United States or in foreign countries, in sufficient detail so that a scientist or physician familiar with the general type of lens can make a knowledgeable judgment about the anticipated safety and effectiveness of the device in the proposed investigational study.

(c) Prior investigations of a lens shall not be considered adequate to justify an investigational study involving human subjects unless the conditions of the prior investigations of the lens are comparable to the conditions of the proposed investigational study.

§ 813.30 Food and Drug Administration review of and action on an application.

(a) Upon receipt of an application for an investigational device exemption submitted in accordance with this subpart, the Food and Drug Administration will notify the sponsor of the date of such receipt and inform the sponsor that the investigational study may not be begun until 30 days after the date of the agency's receipt of the application, unless the agency has decided to waive the 30-day time requirement and so informs the sponsor.

(b) An application for an investigational device exemption shall be deemed to be approved on the 30th day after the Food and Drug Administration received the application unless, on or before such day, the Commissioner finds that the application does not meet the requirements of this part and by order disapproves the application, stating his reasons therefor, or finds the application deficient and requests additional information or suggests revisions, or approves the application with modifications. If the Commissioner requests additional information or suggests revisions, the sponsor may treat the application as disapproved for purposes of requesting a regulatory hearing under Part 16 of this chapter.

(c) The Commissioner may by order disapprove an application if he makes any of the following findings:

(1) The application contains an untrue statement of a material fact or omits material information required by § 813.20.

(2) The report of prior investigations of the intraocular lens is inadequate to support a conclusion that it is reasonably safe to begin or continue the proposed investigational study.

(3) There is reason to believe that the lens may be unsafe or ineffective when used for the purpose or in the manner for which it is to be investigated.

(4) The investigational plan described in the application is not a reasonable plan, in whole or in part, for a scientific investigation to determine whether the investigational device is safe or effective.

(5) The methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacturing, processing, packing, storage, or implantation of the lens do not assure adequately the safety and effectiveness of the lens.

(6) The sponsor's proposed use of the lens is not intended solely for an investigational study, since it is being or is to be sold or otherwise commercially distributed in a manner not justified by the requirements of the investigational study and not permitted by this part.

(7) The proposed investigational study on which the application is submitted does not conform to procedures, conditions, or requirements prescribed in this part.

(8) The proposed investigational study subjects human subjects to undue risks. In assessing risks, the Commissioner shall consider, among other things, the factors prescribed in § 813.66(f).

(d) The Commissioner shall notify the sponsor of an approval, disapproval, or approval with modifications of an application. The notification shall contain the order of the approval, disapproval, or approval with modifications and a complete statement of the reasons for the order. An order that is a notification of disapproval or approval with modifications shall advise the sponsor that he has recourse to an opportunity for a regulatory hearing pursuant to Part 16 of this chapter.

(e) The Commissioner may in his discretion decide not to disapprove an application for which there are grounds for disapproval if he concludes that risks do not outweigh the benefits to subjects.

§ 813.35 Withdrawal of an exemption.

(a) The Commissioner may by order withdraw an exemption granted under this part if he makes any of the following findings:

(1) The application for such exemption or any subsequent report contains an untrue statement of material fact or omits material information required by §§ 813.20, 813.39, or Subpart C of this part.

(2) The report of prior investigations of the device is inadequate to support a conclusion that it is reasonably safe to continue the investigational study involving human subjects.

(3) There is reason to believe that the investigational device may be unsafe or ineffective when used for the purposes or in the manner for which it is investigated.

(4) The investigational plan described in the application is not a reasonable plan, in whole or in part, for a scientific investigation to determine whether the investigational device is safe or effective.

(5) The methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacturing, processing, packing, storage, or installation of the investigational device do not adequately assure its safety and effectiveness.

(6) The investigational study is not being conducted in accordance with the investigational plan submitted to the Food and Drug Administration or the institutional review committee; or any change in, or deviation from, the investigational plan was not approved as required by § 813.39 and § 813.105.

(7) The sponsor's use of the investigational device is not solely for an investigational study since it is being or

is to be sold or otherwise commercially distributed in a manner not justified by the requirements of the investigational study and not permitted by this part.

(8) The sponsor has failed to submit an application for premarket approval of the device when requested to do so by the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to § 813.46(d).

(9) The investigational study does not conform to procedures, conditions, or requirements prescribed under this part.

(10) The investigational study subjects human subjects to undue risks. In assessing risks, the Commissioner shall consider, among other things, the factors prescribed in § 813.66(f).

(11) The process of review or monitoring undertaken by the institutional review committee that is monitoring the study is inadequate.

(b) The Commissioner may in his discretion decide not to disapprove an application for which there are grounds for disapproval if he concludes that the risks do not outweigh the benefits to subjects.

(c) An order under this section shall include a complete statement of the reasons for the Commissioner's action. Such order shall be issued only after the sponsor has been afforded an opportunity for a regulatory hearing pursuant to Part 16 of the chapter, except that the order may be issued before providing an opportunity for such hearing if the Commissioner determines that the continuation of testing under the exemption with respect to which the order is to be issued will result in an unreasonable risk to the public health or safety.

(d) An exemption that has been withdrawn under section may be reinstated if the sponsor satisfies the Commissioner that the grounds for withdrawal no longer apply.

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977; 43 FR 1940, Jan. 13, 1978]

§ 813.38 Confidentiality of data and information in an application.

(a) The existence of an application for an investigational device exemption will not be disclosed by the Food and Drug Administration unless it has previously been publicly disclosed or acknowledged.

(b) The availability for public disclosure of all data and information in the Food and Drug Administration file concerning the application shall be handled in accordance with the provisions established in § 814.9.

(c) Notwithstanding the provisions of § 814.9 of this chapter, the Food and Drug Administration shall disclose upon request to an individual in whom an intraocular lens has been used a copy of any adverse reaction report relating to such use.

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 813.39 Supplemental applications and submissions concerning applications.

(a) Except as provided in paragraphs (b), (c), and (d) of this section, information contained in an application submitted under § 813.20 may be updated by means of a report to the Food and Drug Administration under § 813.153.

(b) (1) Whenever the sponsor or any investigator participating in an investigational study wishes to implement a change in, or deviation from, the investigational plan submitted to the Food and Drug Administration under § 813.20 that may affect the validity of the study or the rights or safety of the human subjects under the criteria in paragraph (b)(3) of this section, the sponsor shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration a supplemental application describing the proposed change or deviation and the justification therefor. Except as provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, the sponsor shall submit the supplemental application before the change or deviation is implemented, shall obtain the prior review and approval of any institutional review committee pursuant to §§ 813.42(d) and 813.105, shall attach to such supplemental application a copy of the approval of such change or deviation by such committee, and shall not permit the change or deviation to be implemented unless and until the supplemental application is approved or deemed approved under § 813.30(b), except as described in paragraph (b)(2) of this section.

(2) When a change or deviation is necessary to eliminate or reduce an apparent immediate hazard to the safety of a human subject who is already participating in the investigational study, the sponsor is not required to comply with the prior approval requirements of paragraph (b)(1) of this section. The sponsor shall instead notify the Food and Drug Administration and any institutional review committee not notified by the investigator of the change or deviation and the justification therefor as soon as possible but in no event later than 5 days after he learns of such change or deviation.

(3) The following changes in, or deviations from, an investigational plan illustrate some of the situations in which prior review and approval are required under paragraph (a) of this section:

(i) A significant change in the method of administration or use of the lens.

(ii) A significant change in the number of subjects participating in the study at one time or cumulatively.

(iii) The use of subjects with medical conditions unrelated to, but possibly affecting, the scope or validity of the study.

(iv) The use of human subjects who require special consideration or protection and who are not listed specifically in the plan, e.g., children, mentally disabled individuals, or prisoners.

(v) The administration of concomitant or concurrent therapy where it is likely that an interaction with the lens might occur.

(c) The sponsor shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration the signed statements required under § 813.43(b) for any additional investigators and, as required by § 813.42(d), the statement signed by the chairman of any institutional review committee that is added to an investigational study after submission of an application for an investigational device exemption under § 813.20 (b). Any such additional statement shall be submitted before an investigator may begin participation in the investigational study.

(d) The sponsor shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration any additional informational materials to be given to subjects, including forms, or revisions in informational materials or forms, to be used by investigators to obtain informed consent of human subjects and any additional informational materials, or revision in such informational materials, supplied to investigators, which had not been submitted in an application under § 813.20(b) (8) and (9) or any subsequent reports to the Food and Drug Administration. The sponsor shall submit such forms or materials to the Food and Drug Administration at the same time that they are provided to investigators.

[42 FR 58893, Nov. 11, 1977; 43 FR 1940, Jan. 13, 1978]

Subpart C—Sponsor Responsibilities in Investigational Studies of Intraocular Lenses

§ 813.40 General.

The requirements of this subpart are applicable to sponsors of investigational studies, including sponsor-investigators.

§ 813.42 Review of the investigational study by the Food and Drug Administration and the institutional review committee.

(a) The sponsor shall submit for review and approval by the Food and Drug Administration an application for an investigational device exemption in accordance with Subpart B of this part before any human subjects are allowed to participate in the investigational study.

(b) The sponsor shall not permit any human subjects to participate in the study until the study has been approved by an institutional review committee and the application for exemption is approved by the Food and Drug Administration.

(c) The sponsor shall assure that the institutional review committee and the Food and Drug Administration are provided all the information on the proposed investigational study and the lens that they will need to review, approve, and monitor the study.

(d) The sponsor shall obtain from the institutional review committee a statement, signed by the chairman, that the committee has approved the investigational plan and has reviewed the report of prior investigations of the lens and that the committee will monitor the investigation in accordance with Subpart D of this part.

(e) The sponsor shall not implement a change in or deviate from the investigational plan, or permit a change or deviation to be implemented, unless there has been compliance with the requirements of §§ 813.39 and 813.105.

§ 813.43 Selection of investigators.

(a) The sponsor shall select as investigators only individuals who, because of their training or experience, qualify as suitable experts to investigate the safety and effectiveness of the lens. As a minimum, investigators shall have completed successfully a residency in opthalmology or its documented equivalent and be licensed to practice medicine in the State or country in which the investigational study is to take place. Sponsors shall adopt appropriate additional criteria for investigators (bearing in mind the investigational plan, the report of prior investigations of the lens, and what is known about the lens).

(b) The sponsor shall obtain from each investigator who will participate in the investigational study a signed agreement for submission to the Food and Drug Administration that includes the following:

(1) A statement of the investigator's education and experience in sufficient detail to allow determination of the investigator's qualifications for investigating the lens. Such statement shall include specific experience with the intraocular lens to be investigated, including date, amount and description of experience, and the name of the institutions where the lens was investigated or used.

(2) An agreement to comply with the investigational plan and the requirements of Subparts E and G of this part and Part 50 of this chapter.

(3) An agreement that any use of the lens involving human subjects will be under the investigator's supervision or under the supervision of another investigator who is responsible to him and who is named by the investigator in a signed statement under paragraph (b) (5) of this section.

(4) A statement as to whether any investigational study or other research by such investigator has been discontinued on the order of a sponsor, an institutional review committee, or the Food and Drug Administration.

(5) The name of any other investigator who will particpate in the investigator's supervision and responsible to him, with a statement of such other investigator's education and experience in accordance with paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(Secs. 520 (g) and (l), 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 569-571, 572-574 (21 U.S.C. 360j (g) and (l), 371(a)))

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 46079, Oct. 15, 1982]

§ 813.45 Control over the intraocular lens.

(a) The sponsor shall permit the lens to be shipped only to investigators who have signed statements under § 813.43 (b).

(b) If the study is suspended, terminated, completed, discontinued, or the exemption is withdrawn, the sponsor shall require the investigator to dispose of the lens in accordance with the requirements of § 813.107(b).

(c) The sponsor shall assure that the methods, facilities, and controls selected for investigating and implanting the lens are adequate to assure the device will be tested under conditions that adequately assure the safety and effectiveness of the lens in the investigational study and, where the sponsor is a manufacturer, distributor, or importer of the lens, he shall also assure that the methods, facilities, and controls used for the manufacture, processing, and storage of the lens adequately assure the safety and effectiveness of the lens in the investigational study.

§ 813.46 Monitoring the investigational study.

(a) The sponsor shall designate one or more appropriately trained and qualified individuals to monitor the progress of the investigational study on a continuing basis and evaluate the date concerning the safety and effectiveness of the lens on behalf of the sponsor upon receipt of such data from investigators, and shall assure that such monitoring and evaluation occur.

(b) The sponsor shall review the investigational study periodically at intervals appropriate to the degree of risk to assure that the requirements of this part are met.

(c) Upon discovery by the sponsor that the investigator has not complied with the requirements of this subpart and Subpart G of this part or his agreement under § 813.43(b), the sponsor shall secure the investigator's compliance or discontinue shipments to the investigator and may require the investigator to return or otherwise make appropriate disposition of the lens in accordance with the requirements of § 813.107(b), and may suspend or terminate any study being performed by the investigator for the sponsor.

(d) A sponsor shall not unduly prolong an investigational study. Where data are developed in the study that would support submission of an application for premarket approval of the lens pursuant to section 515 of the act, the sponsor shall either submit such an application or discontinue the study.

(e) Where the sponsor learns from an investigation and report of an adverse reaction under § 813.153(b) that a serious adverse reaction is lens related and presents unreasonable risk to subject involved in the study he shall discontinue the study as soon as possible but in no event later than 5 days after sufficient information is available to warrant suspension. For purposes of this section, suspension of the investigational study means that no new subjects may be added to the study. Where the Food and Drug Administration regards an adverse reaction as lens related and as presenting unreasonable risk to subjects, the agency may request or order the sponsor to supend the study and to take appropriate action to protect subjects in whom lenses have been implanted. The sponsor shall suspend the study and take such other action as soon as possible but in no event later than 5 days after such request or order. Once the study has been suspended, the sponsor shall not resume the study without the concurrence of the Food and Drug Administration.

§ 813.47 Submitting information to investigators.

(a) The sponsor shall supply all investigators with copies of the investigational plan required under § 813.25, the report of prior investigations of the lens required under § 813.27, and labeling (including labels) for the lens that describes all relevant hazards, contraindications, adverse reactions, interfering substances, precautions suggested by prior investigations, the sterility shelf life of the lens, and experience with the lens. The labeling shall nor represent that the safety or effectiveness of the lens has been established for the purposes to be investigated.

(b) The sponsor shall notify each investigator of the completion or discontinuance of the investigational study or the withdrawal of the exemption as soon as possible but in no event later than 5 days after such action.

(c) The sponsor shall notify each investigator if an application for premarket approval of the device under section 515 of the act is approved.

§ 813.50 Promotion and sale of intraocular lenses.

(a) Neither the sponsor nor any person acting for or on behalf of the sponsor shall disseminate any promotional material representing that the lens being investigated is safe and effective for the purposes for which it is under investigation. This requirement does not restrict the full exchange of scientific information concerning the device, including dissemination of scientific findings. However, this requirement prohibits promotional claims by the sponsor that the lens is safe and effective while the device is being investigated to establish its safety and effectiveness.

(b) The sponsor of the study of an intraocular lens may distribute the lens only if the sponsor has an effective exemption under this part for all lenses sold, and all patients who receive a lens are included in an investigational study under an exemption.

Subpart D—Institutional Review Committee

§ 813.60 Requirement of institutional review committee.

An institutional review committee shall review and monitor all investigational studies of an intraocular lens, except that where an institutional review committee does not exist and one cannot be established, the sponsor of the study shall submit the investigational plan and report of prior investigations pursuant to § 813.20(b) (5) and (6) for review by the Food and Drug Administration. The Food and Drug Administration may disapprove a study that is not to be reviewed and monitored by an institutional review committee if, in the opinion of the Commissioner, the lack of institutional review committee review may expose human subjects to undue risk.

§ 813.62 Membership of an institutional review committee.

(a) Any institutional review committee that undertakes to participate in the review of a proposed study shall possess the professional competence necessary to review the specific study. An institutional review committee shall be composed of not less than five individuals with varying backgrounds to assure complete and adequate review of the investigational study. Such committee shall include, in addition to persons possessing the professional competence necessary to review scientific activities, persons whose primary concerns are in nonscientific areas, e.g., lawyers, clergymen, ethicists, social scientists, or other lay persons. No such committee shall consist entirely of members of a single professional group.

(b) The records of a committee shall identify each member by name, earned degrees, positions or occupation, representative capacity, and other pertinent indications of experience, such as board certification or licenses, sufficient to describe each member's chief anticipated contributions to such committee's deliberations. The employment or other relationship between each member and the institution and any investigator or sponsor of any investigational study reviewed and monitored by the committee shall be described in the records of the committee, e.g., full-time employee, part-time employee, member of governing panel or board, paid consultant, or unpaid consultant.

(c) No committee shall consist entirely of persons who are officers, employees, or agents of, or are otherwise associated with, the institution, apart from their membership on the committee.

(d) No member of a committee shall participate in the committee's review of monitoring of an investigational study in which he has a conflicting interest. No investigator or sponsor shall participate in the selection of members for a committee that will review his investigational study.

(e) The committee is responsible for determining whether a member has a conflict of interest and, if so, such member shall not participate in the review or monitoring of the study.

(f) An institutional review committee may in its discretion invite persons with competence in particular areas (consultants) to assist in the review of complex issues whose resolution requires expertise beyond or in addition to that available within the committee. Consultants may not vote.

§ 813.65 Procedures for review and monitoring of investigational studies by an institutional review committee.

(a) An institutional review committee shall follow written procedures adopted by either the committee or the institution for conducting its review and monitoring of investigational studies and for reporting its findings to the institution, the sponsor, and the investigator.

(b) A committee shall conduct business by a quorum, which shall be defined by written procedures. In no event shall a quorum be less than a majority of the members of the committee.

(c) A committee participating in the review of an investigational study shall monitor that study until the investigation is completed or discontinued by the sponsor or terminated or suspended by the committee or an exemption is withdrawn by the Food and Drug Administration.

§ 813.66 Procedures and criteria for review of investigational studies by an institutional review committee.

(a) Upon receipt of the proposed investigational study, including an investigational plan and a report of prior investigations of the lens from the sponsor or investigator, a committee that is to participate in the review of the study shall perform the following functions:

(1) Determine that each investigator has sucessfully completed a residency in ophthalmology or its documented equivalent, and is licensed to practice medicine in the State or country in which the investigational study is to take place.

(2) Review the investigational plan and determine that the nature of the investigational study provides a benefit to the proposed subjects such that the risks to the subjects are justified.

(3) Assure that sufficient records will be kept so as to describe clearly the results of the study.

(4) Require the investigator to notify the institutional review committee of any unanticipated side effects or increased hazards, or any changes in the investigational study, actual or proposed, that have resulted or may result from the preliminary findings of the study that could result in modification or reversal of the initial determination to authorize beginning the study.

(5) Monitor the investigational study at intervals appropriate to the degree of risk but in no event exceeding 1 year so as to assure that the study continues to be justified during the course of the study.

(6) Assure that the rights of human subjects are properly protected, that legally effective informed consent is obtained, and that the method of obtaining consent properly informs the human subject of the significant aspects of the study in accordance with Part 50 of this chapter.

(7) Receive, process, and act on complaints relating to any study under review, e.g., from subjects, sponsor, and other members of an institution's staff.

(b) If the committee has any question regarding the proposed investigational study, the committee may request the investigator or sponsor to submit additional information concerning the proposed study.

(c) The committee shall review and approve, approve with modifications, or disapprove a proposed study as soon as possible after receipt thereof.

(d) The committee may disapprove a proposed study for any reason it considers appropriate and shall disapprove a proposed study if it makes any of the following findings:

(1) The information submitted to the committee concerning the study contains an untrue statement of a material fact or omits material information required by this part.

(2) The report of prior investigations of the lens is inadequate to support a conclusion that it is reasonably safe to begin the proposed investigational study.

(3) There is reason to believe that the lens may be unsafe or ineffective when used for the purpose or in the manner for which it is to be investigated.

(4) The investigational plan is not a reasonable plan, in whole or in part, for a scientific investigation to determine whether the lens is safe or effective.

(5) The proposed investigational study does not conform to procedures, conditions, or requirements prescibed in this part.

(6) The investigator does not possess the scientific training and experience appropriate to qualify him as a suitable expert to investigate the safety and, where appropriate, effectiveness of the lens.

(7) The available clinical laboratory facilities and medical support are inadequate to assure that the study will be conducted properly and inconformity with the plan or to assure the safety of the subjects.

(e) A committee participating in the review may suspend or terminate a study after it has begun for any of the following reasons:

(1) Any reason for which the committee shall disapprove a study under paragraph (d) or (f) of this section.

(2) The investigator has disregarded committee recommendations for patient protection or has refused to cooperate with the committee, or to provide information to the committee.

(3) Experience developed during the study, or newly discovered scientific evidence not considered at the time the study was initially approved, indicates that the risks outweigh the potential benefits to the subjects.

(4) The investigator(s) who initiated the study cannot or will not continue to perform as an investigator, and a suitably qualifed replacement is not available.

(5) There is evidence of fraud in the submission of data.

(6) The institutional support available for the study is no longer sufficient in quality or amount to assure the safe continuation of the study.

(7) There has been unethical conduct on the part of the investigator in the course of the study.

(8) Such other reasons as the committee may find appropriate.

In the event the committee terminates or suspends a study, it shall notify the sponsor and the Food and Drug Administration as expenditiously as possible, stating its reasons for the suspension, the duration of the suspension, the conditions, if any, under which the study will be permitted to continue, and its recommendations for the proper care of subjects.

(f) The committee shall disapprove a proposed study as being inadequate to justify commencement of testing involving human subjects if it determines that the proposed investigational study exposes the subjects to undue risks. In assessing risks, the committee shall consider, among other things, whether:

(1) The risks to the subject are so outweighed by the sum of the benefits to the subject and the importance of the knowledge to be gained as to warrant a decision to allow the subject to accept these risks;

(2) The rights, safety, and welfare of any such subjects will be adequately protected;

(3) A legally effective informed consent will be obtained by adequate and appropriate methods in accordance with the provisions of Part 50 of this chapter; and

(4) The conduct of the activity will be reviewed at timely intervals by the institutional review committee and the sponsor.

(g) The committee shall notify the sponsor or investigator who submitted the proposal of its decision on the proposed study. Notification of approval with modifications or of disapproval shall contain a statement of the reasons for the committee's approval with modificaions or disapproval.

(Secs. 520 (g) and (l), 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 569-571, 572-574 (21 U.S.C. 360j (g) and (l), 371(a)))

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 47 FR 46080, Oct. 15, 1982]

§ 813.70 Review by institution.

Approval, including approval with modifications, by an institutional review committee may be subject to further appropriate review and approval or rejection by institutional officials, but disapproval by the committee may not be overruled by such officials.

§ 813.79 Actions where review by an institutional review committee is inadequate.

(a) The Commissioner may determine that the process of review undertaken by an institutional review committee is inadequate if he finds that it failed to meet the requirements of this subpart or Subpart G of this part.

(b) If the commissioner finds that the process of review or monitoring undertaken by the committee is inadequate, he may:

(1) Request the committee to change it process of review or monitoring to meet the requirements of this subpart and Subpart G of this part;

(2) Require the sponsor to obtain review or monitoring by a committee whose process of review or monitoring meets such requirements;

(3) Require that the application be reviewed by the Food and Drug Administration; or

(4) Disapprove the application for an investigational device exemption or withdraw the exemption.

Subpart E—Investigator Responsibilities in Investigational Studies of Intraocular Lenses

§ 813.100 General.

The requirements of this subpart are applicable to investigators of investigational studies, including sponsor investigators.

§ 813.101 Review of investigational study by the Food and Drug Administration.

An investigator shall not allow human subjects to participate in an investigational study until such time as an investigational device exemption has been obtained from the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to Subpart B of this part.

§ 813.103 Review of investigational study by institutional review committee.

Where the investigation of an intraocular lens is subject to an institutional review requirement under § 813.60:

(a) An investigator shall not allow human subjects to participate in an investigational study until the committee has approved the study.

(b) An investigator shall not implement a change in, or deviate from, the investigational plan until he has complied with the requirements of § 813.105.

(c) An investigator shall report to the committee and to the sponsor any serious adverse reaction occurring in the study that may reasonably be regarded as lens related and that was not previously expected in nature or severity or degree of incidence in the investigational plan.

(d) An investigator shall notify the committee within 3 months after completion or discontinuance of, or the withdrawal of the exemption for, the entire investigational study or of his portion of the study, whichever occurs first.

(e) An investigator shall provide accurate and adequate information regarding the investigational study to the committee in response to its request.

§ 813.105 Conformity to investigational plan.

(a) Whenever the investigator desires to implement a change in the investigational study that will result in a deviation from the investigational plan, he shall:

(1) Where such change may reasonably be expected to increase the risks to subjects and/or affect the scientific validity of the study under the criteria in § 813.39(b), notify the sponsor of the proposed change and obtain the sponsor's assent; submit, or assure that the sponsor submits, to the investigational review committee notice of such change and obtain the written approval of the investigational review committee; and submit, or assure that the sponsor submits, to the Food and Drug Administration a supplemental application in accordance with § 813.39(b) and obtain the approval of the Food and Drug Administration before implementing the proposed change.

(2) Where such change may not reasonably be expected to increase the risks to the subjects, and does not affect the scientific validity of the study involved, the investigator may implement the change, but shall notify the sponsor and the institutional review committee involved. The notice of the change shall be reflected in sponsor, investigator, and institutional review committee records and in reports under § 813.153(c) and shall be reviewed by the institutional review committee in the regular course of business.

(b) When a change in or deviation from the investigational plan is necessary to eliminate or reduce an apparent immediate hazard to the safety of a human subject who is already participating in the investigational study, the investigator is not required to comply with the prior approval requirements of paragraph (a) of this section. The investigator shall instead notify any institutional review committee and the sponsor, who shall notify the Food and Drug Administration of the change or deviation and the justification therefor as soon as possible but in no event later than 5 days after such change or deviation is implemented as required by § 813.39(b)(2).

§ 813.107 Control over intraocular lenses.

(a) An investigator shall only permit the lens to be used for administration to, or use involving, subjects who are under his personal supervision or under the supervision of another investigator who is responsible to him and who is named by the investigator in his signed statement undertaking the obligations of an investigator under § 813.43(b). An investigator shall not supply the lens to any other person for administration to, or use involving, subjects or for any other purpose, without the prior authorization of the sponsor.

(b) An investigator shall return to the sponsor any reusable or unused supply of the lens upon direction of the sponsor, or upon suspension, termination, completion, discontinuance of, or withdrawal of the exemption for, the investigational study. The sponsor may direct or agree to alternative disposition of the lens such as destruction or use in animal or in vitro experiments.

§ 813.119 Disqualification of a clinical investigator.

(a) *Purposes.* The purpose(s) of disqualification of an investigator who has violated the regulations set forth in this part may be one or both of the following:

(1) To preclude the investigator from conducting clinical investigations subject to requirements under the act for prior submission to the Food and Drug Administration until such time as it becomes likely that he will abide by such regulations or that such violations will not recur. The determination to disqualify an investigator does not necessarily consitute a finding or recommendation that the investigator is not qualified to practice or teach medicine or should be subject to other sanctions by other persons such as licensing boards or employers.

(2) To exclude the consideration of any clinical investigations or portions thereof in support of applications for an investigational exemption or for premarket approval from the Food and Drug Administration, which investigations have been conducted in whole or in part by the investigator, until such time as it becomes likely that he will abide by such regulations or that such violations will not recur or that it can be adequately demonstrated that such violations did not occur during or affect the validity or acceptability of a particular investigation or investigations. The determinations that a clinical investigation may not be considered in support of an application for exemption or premarket approval does not, however, relieve the applicant for such an application of any obligation under any other applicable regulation to submit the results of the investigation to the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) *Grounds for disqualification.* The Commissioner may disqualify an investigator upon finding all the following:

(1) The investigator violated any of the regulations set forth in this part;

(2) The violation or violations adversely affected the validity of the clinical investigation, the rights of the human subjects, and/or the safety of the subjects; and

(3) Other lesser regulatory actions, e.g., warnings or rejection of data from individual investigations, have not been or will probably not be adequate to assure that the investigator will comply with such regulations in the future.

(c) *Notice of and opportunity for a hearing on proposed disqualification.* (1) Whenever the commissioner has information indicating that grounds exist under paragraph (b) of this section that in his opinion may justify disqualification of an investigator, he may issue to the investigator a written notice proposing that the investigator be disqualifed.

(2) A hearing on the disqualification of an investigator shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements for a regulatory hearing set forth in Part 16 of this chapter.

(d) *Final order on disqualification.* (1) If the Commissioner, after the regulatory hearing or after the time for requesting a hearing expires without a request being made, upon an evaluation of the administrative record of the disqualification proceeding, makes the findings required in paragraph (b) of this section, he shall issue a final order disqualifying the investigator. Such order shall include a statement of the basis for that determination and shall prescribe any actions (set forth in paragraph (e) of this section) to be taken with regard to on going regulated clinical investigations being conducted by the investigator. Upon issuing a final order, the commissioner shall notify (with a copy of the order) the investigator of the action, as well as the sponsor of each clinical investigation subject to requirements for prior submission to the Food and Drug Administration that was being conducted by the investigator and has not been terminated or discontinued or the exemption under which it is being conducted has not been terminated or withdrawn by the Food and Drug Administration.

(2) If the commissioner, after a regulatory hearing or after the time for requesting a hearing expires without a request being made, upon an evaluation of the administative record of the disqualification proceeding does not make the findings required in paragraph (b) of this section, he shall issue a final order terminating the disqualification proceedings. Such order shall include a statement of the basis for the that determination. Upon issuing a final order, the Commissioner shall notify the investigator and provide a copy of the order.

(e) *Actions upon disqualification.* (1) No clinical investigations subject to requirements for prior submission to the Food and Drug Administration will be authorized by the Food and Drug Administration if such investigation is to be conducted, in whole or part, by a disqualified investigator.

(2) The commissioner, after considering the nature of each ongoing clinical investigation that is being performed by the investigator and is subject to requirements for prior submission to the Food and Drug Administration, the number of subjects involved, the risks to them from suspension of the investigation, and the need for involvement of an acceptable investigator, may direct, in the final order disqualifying an investigator under paragraph (d) (1) of this section, that one or more of the following actions be taken with regard to each such investigation:

(i) The investigation may be terminated or suspended in its entirety until the investigator is reinstated under paragraph (k) of this section or another investigator accepts responsiblity for the investigation.

(ii) No new subject shall be allowed to participate, or be requested to participate, in the investigation until the investigator is reinstated under paragraph (k) of this section, or another investigator accepts responsibility for the investigation.

(iii) Any human subject who has previously been allowed to participate in the investigation and who remains under the supervision of the investigator should continue to be monitored by the investigator, but the human subject shall not receive another lens until the investigator is reinstated under paragraph (k) of this section or another investigator accepts responsibility for the investigational study.

(iv) Any human subject who has been allowed to participate in the investigation and who, except for suspension of the investigation, would have received the lens shall not receive it unless another investigator accepts responsiblity for the investigation.

(f) *Disqualified investigators and applications.* Once an investigator has been disqualified, each application for an investigational exemption or for premarket approval, whether approved or not, containing or relying upon any clinical investigation performed by the investigator may be examined to determine whether the investigation was or would be essential to a regulatory decision regarding the application. If it is determined that the investigation was or would be essential, the Food and Drug Administration shall also determine whether the investigation is acceptable notwithstanding the disqualification of the investigator. Any investigation done by an investigator before or after disqualification may be presumed to be unacceptable, and the person relying on the investigation may be required to establish that the investigation was not affected by the circumstances that led to disqualification of the investigator, e.g., by submitting validating information. If the investigation is determined to be unacceptable, such investigation will be elimated from consideration in support of the application, and such elimination may serve as new information justifying the termination or withdrawal of approval of the application.

(g) *Clinical investigations begun by a disqualified investigator.* No clinical investigation begun by an investigator after the date of his disqualification will be considered in support of any application for an exemption or premarket approval application unless the investigator has been reinstated under paragraph (k) of this section. The determination that a clinical investigation may not be considered in support of an application for an exemption or premarket approval application does not, however, relieve the applicant of any obligation under any other applicable regulation to submit the results of the investigation to the Food and Drug Administration.

(h) *Public disclosure of information regarding disqualification.* (1) Upon issuance of a final order disqualifying an investigator, the Commissioner may notify any other person known to have professional relations with the investigator (e.g., other Federal government departments or agencies that support investigations possibly involving the investigator, State and local medical licensing boards and societies where the investigator practices or is licensed, and administrators and institutional or peer review boards in universities, hospitals, and other institutions in which the investigator teaches or practices) that the investigator has been disqualified by the Food and Drug Administration. Such notice may be given in the discretion of the Commissioner whenever he believes that such disclosure would further the public interest or would promote compliance with the regulations set forth in this part. Such notice, if given, shall include a copy of the final order issued under paragraph (d) of this section and shall state that the disqualification consitutues a determination by the Food and Drug Administration that the investigator is not eligible to conduct clinical investigations subject to requirements for prior submission to the Food and Drug Administration and that the results of any clinical investigations conducted by the investigator may not be considered by the Food and Drug Administration in support of any application for an exemption or premarket approval application. The notice shall further state that it is given because of the professional relations between the investigator and the person notified and that the Food and Drug Administration is not advising or recommending that any action be taken by the person notified.

(2) A determination that an investigator has been disqualified and the administrative record regarding such determination are disclosable to the public under Part 20 of this chapter.

(3) Whenever the Commissioner has reason to believe that an investigator may be subject to disqualification, he may, in his discretion, so notify the sponsor of any ongoing clinical investigation in which that investigator is participating simultaneously with or subsequent to proposing disqualification of the investigator under paragraph (c) of this section, unless there are overriding safety considerations that warrant earlier notification of the sponsor.

(i) *Alternative or additional actions to disqualification.* Disqualification of an investigator under this subpart is independent of, and neither in lieu of nor a precondition to, other proceedings or actions authorized by the act. The Food and Drug Administration may, at any time, institute any appropriate judicial proceedings (civil or criminal) and any other appropriate regulatory action in addition to or in lieu of (and prior to, simultaneously with, or subsequent to) disqualification. The Food and Drug Administration may also refer pertinent matters to another Federal, State, or local law enforcement or regulatory agency for such action as that agency deems appropriate.

(j) *Suspension or termination of an investigator by a sponsor.* The sponsor of an investigational study may at any time remove an investigator from further participation in the study, whether or not the Food and Drug Administration has begun any action to disqualify the investigator. The sponsor need not use either the grounds or the procedures for disqualification set forth in this subpart. If a sponsor removes an investigator from a study, the sponsor shall notify the Food and Drug Administration in writing of the reasons for such removal as soon as possible, but in no event later than 5 days after such removal.

(k) *Reinstatement of a disqualified investigator.* An investigator who has been disqualified may be reinstated as eligible to conduct clincial investigations subject to requirements for prior submission to the Food and Drug Administration, or as acceptable to be the source of clinical investigations to be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, if the Commissioner determines, upon an evaluation of a written submission from the investigator, that the investigator can adequately assure that he will conduct such studies in compliance with the requirements set forth in this part. A disqualified investigator who wishes to be so reinstated shall present in writing to the Commissioner reasons why he believes he should be reinstated; the investigator shall also submit a detailed description of the corrective actions he has taken or intends to take to assure that the acts or omissions that led to disqualification will not recur. The Commissioner may condition reinstatement upon the submission of an acceptable protocol for a specific clinical investigation providing for additional corrective actions and/or the submission of special undertakings by a sponsor, an institution, an institutional review committee, or another investigator to review in detail the investigator's compliance with the requirements of this part and/or the investigator's being found in compliance with the applicable regulations upon an inspection. If an investigator is reinstated, the Commissioner shall so notify the investigator and all organizations and all persons who were notified under paragraph (h) of this section of the disqualification of the investigator. A determination that an investigator has been reinstated in disclosable to the public under Part 20 of this chapter.

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart F—[Reserved]

Subpart G—Inspections, Reports, and Records

§ 813.150 Inspections.

(a) Any sponsor, institutional review committee, or investigator shall permit an authorized employee of the Food and Drug Administration, at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner, to inspect and copy any records concerning the investigational study that are required to be kept by this part.

(b) Any sponsor or investigator who has authority to grant access to the facility shall also permit authorized FDA employees, at reasonable times and in a reasonable manner, to inspect any facilities where the intraocular lens is manufactured, processed, held, used, or implanted.

(c) Any investigator shall permit an authorized employee of the Food and Drug Administration to copy records that identify the names of human subjects, upon notice that the Food and Drug Administration has reason to believe that the consent of human subjects was not obtained, that reports submitted by the investigator to the sponsor or to the institutional review committee do not represent actual cases or actual results obtains, or that such reports or other required records appear to be otherwise false or misleading.

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977; 43 FR 1940, Jan. 13, 1978]

§ 813.153 Reports.

(a) *Recall reports.* Any sponsor shall notify the Food and Drug Administration of any request that investigators return, or otherwise dispose of, any supplies of the intraocular lens, or examine any patients that previously received a lens.

(b) *Adverse reaction reports.* If during the study a seriously adverse reaction occurs that may reasonably be regarded as lens related and that was not previously expected in nature, severity, or degree of incidence in the investigational plan (including any incidence of hypopyon, intraocular infection, or acute corneal decompensation), the following actions shall be effected:

(1) The investigator shall investigate the reaction and submit an accurate and adequate report of the investigation to the sponsor and to the committee as soon as possible but in no event later than 5 days after learning of the reaction;

(2) The sponsor shall evaluate any adverse reaction report submitted by the investigator any reports received from other sources and within 5 days after learning of the adverse reaction, shall report the adverse reaction and the results of is evaluation to the Food and Drug Administration, any committee(s) monitoring the study, or part of the study, in which the reaction occurred (if the investigator(s) has not already reported the reaction to the committee(s)), and all other investigators and sponsors participating in the study. In the case of hypopyon, except where the Food and Drug Administration directs otherwise, a sponsor need only report the adverse reaction and results of his evaluation to other investigators and committees particpating in the study where the incidence of the reaction exceeds that which was previously anticipated in materials provided to investigators.

(c) *Progress reports.* (1) Any investigator shall submit accurate progress reports to the investigational review committee and sponsor (or his monitor) at appropriate intervals but in no event at intervals exceeding 1 year.

(2) The sponsor shall make accurate and adequate progress reports to the Food and Drug Administration at appropriate intervals not exceeding 1 year. Such reports shall include any significant findings of the study and any necessary amendments or corrections to previous reports or to the application to keep them accurate.

(d) *Suspension/termination reports.* (1) Any investigator shall report to the sponsor any suspension or termination of the investigational study by a committee within 5 days.

(2) Any institutional review committee shall immediately report any suspension or termination of a study it is reviewing and monitoring under this part to the Food and Drug Administration.

(e) *Final reports.* (1) Within 3 months after the completion or discontinuance of or withdrawal of the exemption for the investigational study (or the investigator's portion of the study), any investigator shall notify the committee and sponsor and make an accurate and adequate final report to the sponsor, and the final report shall include all reports not previously submitted to the sponsor but required by paragraphs (b), (c), or (d) of this section.

(2) Within 30 days after the completion or discontinuance of a study or the suspension or termination of a study by a committee, the sponsor shall notify the Food and Drug Administration of the action.

(3) Within 6 months after the study is completed, discontinued, suspended, or terminated or the exemption is withdrawn, the sponsor shall make a final report to the Food and Drug Adminstration.

§ 813.155 Records.

(a) The sponsor, any investigator, and any committee shall maintain adequate and accurate records concerning the investigational study, including copies of all correspondence, among themselves and with the Food and Drug Administration regarding the study.

(b) (1) The sponsor and any investigator shall maintain adequate and accurate records showing the shipment, receipt, or other disposition of all supplies of all lenses shipped or received.

(2) The sponsor either shall provide to each investigator an identification card that is to be provided to each subject after implantation or shall provide each subject with such a card. The card shall include the following information on each lens: Lens name, manufacturer's name and address, model number, style and serial, batch, lot, or other identification number for each lens. The sponsor and each investigator shall maintain the following

records: identification by name of the investigator who received each unit of the lens and who adminstered the device; the idenfification by code of the subject who received it; and identification of each unit otherwise disposed of (including identification of the person who disposed of it, the person, if any, who received it, and the purpose or reason for its disposal, e.g., because of contamination or return to the sponsor).

(c) An institutional review committee shall prepare and maintain adequate documentation of its activities regarding each investigational study, including records of information submitted to the committee by sponsors or investigators, information compiled on committee members pursuant to § 813.62, minutes of committee meetings on issues involved in the study and their resolution, committee decisions on the study, and dated reports of successive monitoring as it is performed.

(d) Contents of investigator records. An investigator shall maintain an adequate and accurate case report on each subject, which shall include the following:

(1) All relevant observations, information, and data on the condition of the subject at the time the subject enters into the study, including information regarding any relevant previous medical history and the results of all diagnostic tests performed to determine that the subject is appropriate for entry into the study.

(2) All documentation regarding the consent of the human subjects, as required by Part 50 of this chapter.

(3) All relevant observations and data on the condition of the subject throughout the duration of his participation in the study.

(e) The sponsor shall retain a copy of any application, report, or correspondence that he submits to the Food and Drug Administration under this part.

(f) A sponsor, investigator, and institutional review committee shall maintain records required under this part for whichever of the following periods is shortest:

(1) A period of 2 years after the date on which the Food and Drug Administration approves the marketing of the lens for the purposes that were the subject of the study.

(2) A period of 5 years after the date on which the results of the study are submitted to the Food and Drug Administration in support of the marketing of the lens for the purpose that was the subject of the study.

(3) In other situations, e.g., where the investigational study does not result in the submission of an application for marketing the device for the purposes that were the subject of the study, a period of 2 years after the date on which the investigational study (not merely an investigator's portion of a study) is terminated, completed or discontinued, or the exemption is withdrawn.

(g) A Sponsor, investigator, or committee may withdraw from the responsibility for maintaining records for the period of time required in paragraph (f) of this section by transferring custody to any other person who will accept responsibility for the records. Notice of such transfer shall be given to the Food and Drug Administration.

(h) The Food and Drug Administration may require a sponsor to submit any records concerning the investigational study, including any records required to be kept under this part.

(Secs. 520 (g) and (l), 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 569-571, 572-574 (21 U.S.C. 360j (g) and (l), 371(a)))

[42 FR 58899, Nov. 11, 1977; 43 FR 1940, Jan. 13, 1978, as amended at 47 FR 46080, Oct. 15, 1982]

Subpart H—Investigational Studies That Do Not Involve Human Subjects

§ 813.160 Conditions of exemption.

(a) Where an investigational device is intended for use in humans, a shipment of the device that is intended solely for tests in animals used only for laboratory research purposes, or for in vitro or mechanical tests or similar tests that do not involve use of human subjects, shall be exempt from any of the otherwise applicable provisions of the act listed in § 813.1(b) if:

(1) The labeling of the device complies with the requirements of § 813.5

(a) and (b) and bears the following additional statement:

Caution—Device For Investigational Use Only in Laboratory Animals or Other Tests That Do Not Involve Human Subjects

(2) The person who ships the device under this subpart uses due diligence to assure that the consignee is regularly engaged in conducting tests in animals used only for laboratory research, or similar for in vitro or other mechanical tests or tests that do not involve use of human subjects and that the shipment of the investigational device will actually be used only in such tests.

(3) The person who ships the device under this subpart maintains adequate records showing the name and address of the consignee to whom the device is shipped, date, quantity, and batch or code mark of each shipment for a period of 2 years after such shipment and, upon the request of a properly authorized employee of the Department at reasonable times, make such records available for inspection and copying or submits such records to the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) This subpart does not apply to any use of an investigational device that involves use of human subjects.

[42 FR 58889, Nov. 11, 1977, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 813.170 Termination of exemption.

(a) The commissioner shall terminate an exemption under this subpart if he makes either of the following findings:

(1) The person shipping an investigational device under this subpart has failed to comply with any of the conditions for the exemption under this subpart.

(2) Any of the grounds for withdrawal of an investigational device exemption under § 813.35 apply.

(b) The Commissioner shall notify the sponsor of the termination of an exemption under this subpart with a full statement of the reasons for such termination and shall afford an opportunity for a regulatory hearing under Part 16 of this chapter. The person whose exemption is terminated shall recall or otherwise assure the destruction of any unused devices.

PART 814—PREMARKET APPROVAL OF MEDICAL DEVICES

Subpart A—General

Sec.
814.1 Scope.
814.2 Purpose.
814.3 Definitions.
814.9 Confidentiality of data and information in a premarket approval application (PMA) file.
814.15 Research conducted outside the United States.
814.17 Service of orders.
814.19 Product development protocol (PDP).

Subpart B—Premarket Approval Application (PMA)

814.20 Application.
814.37 PMA amendments and resubmitted PMA's.
814.39 PMA supplements.

Subpart C—FDA Action on a PMA

814.40 Time frames for reviewing a PMA.
814.42 Filing a PMA.
814.44 Procedures for review of a PMA.
814.45 Denial of approval of a PMA.
814.46 Withdrawal of approval of a PMA.

Subpart D—Administrative Review [Reserved]

Subpart E—Postapproval Requirements

814.80 General.
814.82 Postapproval requirements.
814.84 Reports.

Authority: Secs. 501-503, 510, 513-520, 701(a), 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 708, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1058 as amended, 67 Stat. 477 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-574, 582-583 (21 U.S.C. 351, 352, 353, 360, 360c-360j, 371(a), 373, 374, 375, 379, 381); Pub. L. 90-23, 81 Stat. 54-56 as amended by 88 Stat. 1561-1565 (5 U.S.C. 552); 21 CFR 5.10, 5.11.

Source: 51 FR 26364, July 22, 1986, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 814.1 Scope.

(a) This part implements section 515 of the act by providing procedures for the premarket approval of medical devices intended for human use.

(b) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

(c) This part applies to any class III medical device, unless exempt under section 520(g) of the act, that:

(1) Was not on the market (introduced or delivered for introduction into commerce for commercial distribution) before May 28, 1976, and is not substantially equivalent to a device on the market before May 28, 1976, or to a device first marketed on, or after that date, which has been classified into class I or class II; or

(2) Is required to have an approved premarket approval application (PMA) or a declared completed product development protocol under a regulation issued under section 515(b) of the act; or

(3) Was regulated by FDA as a new drug or antibiotic drug before May 28, 1976, and therefore is governed by section 520(1) of the act.

(d) This part amends the conditions to approval for any PMA approved before the effective date of this part. Any condition to approval for an approved PMA that is inconsistent with this part is revoked. Any condition to approval for an approved PMA that is consistent with this part remains in effect.

§ 814.2 Purpose.

The purpose of this part is to establish an efficient and thorough device review process—

(a) To facilitate the approval of PMA's for devices that have been shown to be safe and effective and that otherwise meet the statutory criteria for approval; and

(b) To ensure the disapproval of PMA's for devices that have not been shown to be safe and effective or that do not otherwise meet the statutory criteria for approval. This part shall be construed in light of these objectives.

§ 814.3 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part:

(a) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (sections 201-902, 52 Stat. 1040 et seq., as amended (21 U.S.C. 321-392)).

(b) "FDA" means the Food and Drug Administration.

(c) "IDE" means an approved or considered approved investigational device exemption under section 520(g) of the act and Parts 812 and 813.

(d) "Master file" means a reference source that a person submits to FDA. A master file may contain detailed information on a specific manufacturing facility, process, methodology, or component used in the manufacture, processing, or packaging of a medical device.

(e) "PMA" means any premarket approval application for a class III medical device, including all information submitted with or incorporated by reference therein. "PMA" includes a new drug application for a device under section 520(1) of the act.

(f) "PMA amendment" means information an applicant submits to FDA to modify a pending PMA or a pending PMA supplement.

(g) "PMA supplement" means a supplemental application to an approved PMA for approval of a change or modification in a class III medical device, including all information submitted with or incorporated by reference therein.

(h) "Person" includes any individual, partnership, corporation, association, scientific or academic establishment, Government agency, or organizational unit thereof, or any other legal entity.

(i) "Statement of material fact" means a representation that tends to show that the safety or effectiveness of a device is more probable than it would be in the absence of such a representation. A false affirmation or silence or an omission that would lead a reasonable person to draw a particular conclusion as to the safety or effectiveness of a device also may be a false statement of material fact, even if the statement was not intended by the person making it to be misleading or to have any probative effect.

(j) "30-day PMA supplement" means a supplemental application to an approved PMA in accordance with § 814.39(e).

§ 814.9 Confidentiality of data and information in a premarket approval application (PMA) file.

(a) A "PMA file" includes all data and information submitted with or incorporated by reference in the PMA, any IDE incorporated into the PMA, any PMA supplement, any report under § 814.82, any master file, or any other related submission. Any record in the PMA file will be available for public disclosure in accordance with the provisions of this section and Part 20. The confidentiality of information in a color additive petition submitted as part of a PMA is governed by § 71.15.

(b) The existence of a PMA file may not be disclosed by FDA before an approval order is issued to the applicant unless it previously has been publicly disclosed or acknowledged.

(c) If the existence of a PMA file has not been publicly disclosed or acknowledged, data or information in the PMA file are not available for public disclosure.

(d) If the existence of a PMA file has been publicly disclosed or acknowledged before an order approving, or an order denying approval of the PMA is issued, data or information contained in the file are not available for public disclosure before such order issues. FDA may, however, disclose a summary of portions of the safety and effectiveness data before an approval order or an order denying approval of the PMA issues if disclosure is relevant to public consideration of a specific pending issue.

(e) Upon issuance of an order approving, or an order denying approval of any PMA, FDA will make available to the public the fact of the existence of the PMA and a detailed summary of information submitted to FDA respecting the safety and effectiveness of the device that is the subject of the PMA and that is the basis for the order.

(f) After FDA issues an order approving, or an order denying approval of any PMA, the following data and information in the PMA file are immediately available for public disclosure:

(1) All safety and effectiveness data and information previously disclosed to the public, as such disclosure is defined in § 20.81.

(2) Any protocol for a test or study unless the protocol is shown to constitute trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information under § 20.61.

(3) Any adverse reaction report, product experience report, consumer complaint, and other similar data and information, after deletion of:

(i) Any information that constitutes trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information under § 20.61; and

(ii) Any personnel, medical, and similar information disclosure of which would constitute a clearly unwarranted invasion of personal privacy under § 20.63; provided, however, that except for the information that constitutes trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information under § 20.61, FDA will disclose to a patient who requests a report all the information in the report concerning that patient.

(4) A list of components previously disclosed to the public, as such disclosure is defined in § 20.81.

(5) An assay method or other analytical method, unless it does not serve any regulatory purpose and is shown to fall within the exemption in § 20.61 for trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information.

(6) All correspondence and written summaries of oral discussions relating to the PMA file, in accordance with the provisions of §§ 20.103 and 20.104.

(g) All safety and effectiveness data and other information not previously disclosed to the public are available for public disclosure if any one of the following events occurs and the data and information do not constitute trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information under § 20.61:

(1) The PMA has been abandoned. FDA will consider a PMA abandoned if:

(i)(A) The applicant fails to respond to a request for additional information within 180 days after the date FDA issues the request or

(B) Other circumstances indicate that further work is not being undertaken with respect to it, and

(ii) The applicant fails to communicate with FDA within 7 days after the date on which FDA notifies the applicant that the PMA appears to have been abandoned.

(2) An order denying approval of the PMA has issued, and all legal appeals have been exhausted.

(3) An order withdrawing approval of the PMA has issued, and all legal appeals have been exhausted.

(4) The device has been reclassified.

(5) The device has been found to be substantially equivalent to a class I or class II device.

(6) The PMA is considered voluntarily withdrawn under § 814.44(g).

(h) The following data and information in a PMA file are not available for public disclosure unless they have been previously disclosed to the public, as such disclosure is defined in § 20.81, or they relate to a device for which a PMA has been abandoned and they no longer represent a trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information as defined in § 20.61:

(1) Manufacturing methods or processes, including quality control procedures.

(2) Production, sales, distribution, and similar data and information, except that any compilation of such data and information aggregated and prepared in a way that does not reveal data or information which are not available for public disclosure under this provision is available for public disclosure.

(3) Quantitative or semiquantitative formulas.

§ 814.15 Research conducted outside the United States.

(a) A study conducted outside the United States submitted in support of a PMA and conducted under an IDE shall comply with Part 812. A study conducted outside the United States submitted in support of a PMA and not conducted under an IDE shall comply with the provisions in paragraph (b) or (c) of this section, as applicable.

(b) *Research begun on or after effective date.* FDA will accept studies submitted in support of a PMA which have been conducted outside the United States and begun on or after November 19, 1986, if the data are valid and the investigator has conducted the studies in conformance with the "Declaration of Helsinki" or the laws and regulations of the country in which the research is conducted, whichever accords greater protection to the human subjects. If the standards of the country are used, the applicant shall state in detail any differences between those standards and the "Declaration of Helsinki" and explain why they offer greater protection to the human subjects.

(c) Research begun before effective date. FDA will accept studies submitted in support of a PMA which have been conducted outside the United States and begun before November 19, 1986, if FDA is satisfied that the data are scientifically valid and that the rights, safety, and welfare of human subjects have not been violated.

(d) *As sole basis for marketing approval.* A PMA based solely on foreign clinical data and otherwise meeting the criteria for approval under this part may be approved if:

(1) The foreign data are applicable to the U.S. population and U.S. medical practice;

(2) The studies have been performed by clinical investigators of recognized competence; and

(3) The data may be considered valid without the need for an on-site inspection by FDA or, if FDA considers such an inspection to be necessary, FDA can validate the data through an on-site inspection or other appropriate means.

(e) *Consultation between FDA and applicants.* Applicants are encouraged to meet with FDA officials in a "presubmission" meeting when approval based solely on foreign data will be sought.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control no. 0910-0231)

[51 FR 26364, July 22, 1986; 51 FR 40415, Nov. 7, 1986, as amended at 51 FR 43344, Dec. 2, 1986]

§ 814.17 Service of orders.

Orders issued under this part will be served in person by a designated officer or employee of FDA on, or by registered mail to, the applicant or the designated agent at the applicant's or designated agent's last known address in FDA's records.

§ 814.19 Product development protocol (PDP).

A class III device for which a product development protocol has been declared completed by FDA under this chapter will be considered to have an approved PMA.

Subpart B—Premarket Approval Application (PMA)

§ 814.20 Application.

(a) The applicant or an authorized representative shall sign the PMA. If the applicant does not reside or have a place of business within the United States, the PMA shall be countersigned by an authorized representative residing or maintaining a place of business in the United States and shall identify the representative's name and address.

(b) Unless the applicant justifies an omission in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section, a PMA shall include:

(1) The name and address of the applicant.

(2) A table of contents that specifies the volume and page number for each item referred to in the table. A PMA shall include separate sections on nonclinical laboratory studies and on clinical investigations involving human subjects. A PMA shall be submitted in six copies each bound in one or more numbered volumes of reasonable size. The applicant shall include information that it believes to be trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information in all copies of the PMA and identify in at least one copy the information that it believes to be trade secret or confidential commercial or financial information.

(3) A summary in sufficient detail that the reader may gain a general understanding of the data and information in the application. The summary shall contain the following information:

(i) *Indications for use.* A general description of the disease or condition the device will diagnose, treat, prevent, cure, or mitigate, including a description of the patient population for which the device is intended.

(ii) *Device description.* An explanation of how the device functions, the basic scientific concepts that form the basis for the device, and the significant physical and performance characteristics of the device. A brief description of the manufacturing process should be included if it will significantly enhance the reader's understanding of the device. The generic name of the device as well as any proprietary name or trade name should be included.

(iii) *Alternative practices and procedures.* A description of existing alternative practices or procedures for diagnosing, treating, preventing, curing, or mitigating the disease or condition for which the device is intended.

(iv) *Marketing history.* A brief description of the foreign and U.S. marketing history, if any, of the device, including a list of all countries in which the device has been marketed and a list of all countries in which the device has been withdrawn from marketing for any reason related to the safety or effectiveness of the device. The description shall include the history of the marketing of the device by the applicant and, if known, the history of the marketing of the device by any other person.

(v) *Summary of studies.* An abstract of any information or report described in the PMA under paragraph (b)(8)(ii) of this section and a summary of the results of technical data submitted under paragraph (b)(6) of this section. Such summary shall include a description of the objective of the study, a description of the experimental design of the study, a brief description of how the data were collected and analyzed, and a brief description of the results, whether positive, negative, or inconclusive. This section shall include the following:

(A) A summary of the nonclinical laboratory studies submitted in the application;

(B) A summary of the clinical investigations involving human subjects submitted in the application including a discussion of subject selection and exclusion criteria, study population, study period, safety and effectiveness data, adverse reactions and complications, patient discontinuation, patient complaints, device failures and replacements, results of statistical analyses of the clinical investigations, contraindications and precautions for use of the device, and other information from the clinical investigations as appropriate (any investigation conducted under an IDE shall be identified as such).

(vi) *Conclusions drawn from the studies.* A discussion demonstrating that the data and information in the application constitute valid scientific evidence within the meaning of § 860.7 and provide reasonable assurance that the device is safe and effective for its intended use. A concluding discussion shall present benefit and risk considerations related to the device including a discussion of any adverse effects of the device on health and any proposed additional studies or surveillance the applicant intends to conduct following approval of the PMA.

(4) A complete description of:

(i) The device, including pictorial representations;

(ii) Each of the functional components or ingredients of the device if the device consists of more than one physical component or ingredient;

(iii) The properties of the device relevant to the diagnosis, treatment, prevention, cure, or mitigation of a disease or condition;

(iv) The principles of operation of the device; and

(v) The methods used in, and the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, processing, packing, storage, and, where appropriate, installation of the device, in sufficient detail so that a person generally familiar with current good manufacturing practice can make a knowledgeable judgment about the quality control used in the manufacture of the device.

(5) Reference to any performance standard under section 514 of the act or the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 263b et seq.) in effect or proposed at the time of the submission and to any voluntary standard that is relevant to any aspect of the safety or effectiveness of the device and that is known to or that should reasonably be known to the applicant. The applicant shall—

(i) Provide adequate information to demonstrate how the device meets, or justify any deviation from, any performance standard established under section 514 of the act or under the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act, and

(ii) Explain any deviation from a voluntary standard.

(6) The following technical sections which shall contain data and information in sufficient detail to permit FDA to determine whether to approve or deny approval of the application:

(i) A section containing results of the nonclinical laboratory studies with the device including microbiological, toxicological, immunological, biocompatibility, stress, wear, shelf life, and other laboratory or animal tests as appropriate. Information on nonclinical laboratory studies shall include a statement that each such study was conducted in compliance with Part 58, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(ii) A section containing results of the clinical investigations involving human subjects with the device including clinical protocols, number of investigators and subjects per investigator, subject selection and exclusion criteria, study population, study period, safety and effectiveness data, adverse reactions and complications, patient discontinuation, patient complaints, device failures and replacements, tabulations of data from all individual subject report forms and copies of such forms for each subject who died during a clinical investigation or who did not complete the investigation, results of statistical analyses of the clinical investigations, device failures and replacements, contraindications and precautions for use of the device, and any other appropriate information from the clinical investigations. Any investigation conducted under an IDE shall be identified as such. Information on clinical investigations involving human subjects shall include the following:

(A) A statement with respect to each study that it either was conducted in compliance with the institutional review board regulations in Part 56, or was not subject to the regulations under § 56.104 or § 56.105, and that it was conducted in compliance with the informed consent regulations in Part 50; or if the study was not conducted in compliance with those regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(B) A statement that each study was conducted in compliance with Part 812 or Part 813 concerning sponsors of clinical investigations and clinical investigators, or if the study was not conducted in compliance with those regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(7) For a PMA supported solely by data from one investigation, a justification showing that data and other information from a single investigator are sufficient to demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of the device and to ensure reproducibility of test results.

(8)(i) A bibliography of all published reports not submitted under paragraph (b)(6) of this section, whether adverse or supportive, known to or that should reasonably be known to the applicant and that concern the safety or effectiveness of the device.

(ii) An identification, discussion, and analysis of any other data, information, or report relevant to an evaluation of the safety and effectiveness of the device known to or that should reasonably be known to the applicant from any source, foreign or domestic, including information derived from investigations other than those proposed in the application and from commercial marketing experience.

(iii) Copies of such published reports or unpublished information in the possession of or reasonably obtainable by the applicant if an FDA advisory committee or FDA requests.

(9) One or more samples of the device and its components, if requested by FDA. If it is impractical to submit a requested sample of the device, the applicant shall name the location at which FDA may examine and test one or more devices.

(10) Copies of all proposed labeling for the device. Such labeling may include, e.g., instructions for installation and any information, literature, or advertising that constitutes labeling under section 201(m) of the act.

(11) An environmental assessment under § 25.22(a)(18) prepared in the applicable format in § 25.31, unless the action qualifies for exclusion under § 25.24(e) (4) or (5). If the applicant believes that the action qualifies for exclusion, the PMA shall under § 25.23(c) provide information that establishes to FDA's satisfaction that the action requested is included within the excluded category and meets the criteria for the applicable exclusion.

(12) Such other information as FDA may request. If necessary, FDA will obtain the concurrence of the appropriate FDA advisory committee before requesting additional information.

(c) Pertinent information in FDA files specifically referred to by an applicant may be incorporated into a PMA by reference. Information in a master file or other information submitted to FDA by a person other than the applicant will not be considered part of a PMA unless such reference is authorized in writing by the person who submitted the information or the master file. If a master file is not referenced within 5 years after the date that it is submitted to FDA, FDA will return the master file to the person who submitted it.

(d) If the applicant believes that certain information required under paragraph (b) of this section to be in a PMA is not applicable to the device that is the subject of the PMA, and omits any such information from its PMA, the applicant shall submit a statement that identifies the omitted information and justifies the omission. The statement shall be submitted as a separate section in the PMA and identified in the table of contents. If the justification for the omission is not accepted by the agency, FDA will so notify the applicant.

(e) The applicant shall periodically update its pending application with new safety and effectiveness information learned about the device from ongoing or completed studies that may reasonably affect an evaluation of the safety or effectiveness of the device or that may reasonably affect the statement of contraindications, warnings, precautions, and adverse reactions in the draft labeling. The update report shall be consistent with the data reporting provisions of the protocol. The applicant shall submit three copies of any update report and shall include in the report the number assigned by FDA to the PMA. These updates are considered to be amendments to the PMA. The time frame for review of a PMA will not be extended due to the submission of an update report unless the update is a major amendment under § 814.37(c)(1). The applicant shall submit these reports—

(1) 3 months after the filing date,

(2) Following receipt of an approvable letter, and

(3) At any other time as requested by FDA.

(f) If a color additive subject to section 706 of the act is used in or on the device and has not previously been listed for such use, then, in lieu of submitting a color additive petition under Part 71, at the option of the applicant, the information required to be submitted under Part 71 may be submitted as part of the PMA. When submitted as part of the PMA, the information shall be submitted in three copies each bound in one or more numbered volumes of reasonable size. A PMA for a device that contains a color additive that is subject to section 706 of the act will not be approved until the color additive is listed for use in or on the device.

(g) FDA has issued a PMA guideline to assist the applicant in the arrangement and content of a PMA. This guideline is available from the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Office of Standards and Regulations (HFZ-80), Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(h) A PMA, PMA amendment, PMA supplement, or correspondence with respect to a PMA shall be sent to the PMA Document Mail Center (HFZ-401), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20910.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control no. 0910-0231)

[51 FR 26364, July 22, 1986; 51 FR 40415, Nov. 7, 1986, as amended at 51 FR 43344, Dec. 2, 1986]

§ 814.37 PMA amendments and resubmitted PMA's.

(a) An applicant may amend a pending PMA or PMA supplement to revise existing information or provide additional information.

(b) FDA may request the applicant to amend a PMA or PMA supplement with any information regarding the device that is necessary for FDA or the appropriate advisory committee to complete the review of the PMA or PMA supplement.

(c) A PMA amendment submitted to FDA shall include the PMA or PMA supplement number assigned to the original submission and, if submitted on the applicant's own initiative, the reason for submitting the amendment. FDA may extend the time required for its review of the PMA, or PMA supplement, as follows:

(1) If the applicant on its own initiative or at FDA's request submits a major PMA amendment (e.g., an amendment that contains significant new data from a previously unreported study, significant updated data from a previously reported study, detailed new analyses of previously submitted data, or significant required information previously omitted), the review period may be extended up to 180 days.

(2) If an applicant declines to submit a major amendment requested by FDA, the review period may be extended for the number of days that elapse between the date of such request and the date that FDA receives the written response declining to submit the requested amendment.

(d) An applicant may on its own initiative withdraw a PMA or PMA supplement. If FDA requests an applicant to submit a PMA amendment and a written response to FDA's request is not received within 180 days of the date of the request, FDA will consider the pending PMA or PMA supplement to be withdrawn voluntarily by the applicant.

(e) An applicant may resubmit a PMA or PMA supplement after withdrawing it or after it is considered withdrawn under paragraph (d) of this section, or after FDA has refused to accept it for filing, or has denied approval of the PMA or PMA supplement. A resubmitted PMA or PMA supplement shall comply with the requirements of § 814.20 or § 814.39, respectively, and shall include the PMA number assigned to the original submission and the applicant's reasons for resubmission of the PMA or PMA supplement.

§ 814.39 PMA supplements.

(a) After FDA approval of a PMA, an applicant shall submit a PMA supplement for review and approval by FDA before making a change affecting the safety or effectiveness of the device for which the applicant has an approved PMA, unless the change is of a type for which FDA, under paragraph (e) of this section, has advised that an alternate submission is permitted. While the burden for determining whether a supplement is required is primarily on the PMA holder, changes for which an applicant shall submit a PMA supplement include but are not limited to the following types of changes if they affect the safety or effectiveness of the device:

(1) New indications for use of the device.

(2) Labeling changes.

(3) The use of a different facility or establishment to manufacture, process, or package the device.

(4) Changes in manufacturing facilities, methods, or quality control procedures.

(5) Changes in sterilization procedures.

(6) Changes in packaging.

(7) Changes in the performance or design specifications, circuits, components, ingredients, principle of operation, or physical layout of the device.

(8) Extension of the expiration date of the device based on data obtained under a new or revised stability or sterility testing protocol that has not been approved by FDA. If the protocol has been approved, the change shall be reported to FDA under paragraph (b) of this section.

(b) An applicant may make a change in a device after FDA's approval of a PMA for the device without submitting a PMA supplement if the change does not affect the device's safety or effectiveness and the change is reported to FDA in postapproval periodic reports required as a condition to approval of the device, e.g., an editorial change in labeling which does not affect the safety or effectiveness of the device.

(c) All procedures and actions that apply to an application under § 814.20 also apply to PMA supplements except that the information required in a supplement is limited to that needed to support the change. A summary under § 814.20(b)(3) is required for only a supplement submitted for new indications for use of the device, significant changes in the performance or design specifications, circuits, components, ingredients, principles of operation, or physical layout of the device, or when otherwise required by FDA. The applicant shall submit three copies of a PMA supplement and shall include information relevant to the proposed changes in the device. A PMA supplement shall include a separate section that identifies each change for which approval is being requested and explains the reason for each such change. The applicant shall submit additional copies and additional information if requested by FDA. The time frames for review of, and FDA action on, a PMA supplement are the same as those provided in § 814.40 for a PMA.

(d)(1) After FDA approves a PMA, any change described in paragraph (d)(2) of this section that enhances the safety of the device or the safety in the use of the device may be placed into effect by the applicant prior to the receipt under § 814.17 of a written FDA order approving the PMA supplement provided that:

(i) The PMA supplement and its mailing cover are plainly marked "Special PMA Supplement—Changes Being Effected";

(ii) The PMA supplement provides a full explanation of the basis for the changes;

(iii) The applicant has received acknowledgement from FDA of receipt of the supplement; and

(iv) The PMA supplement specifically identifies the date that such changes are being effected.

(2) The following changes are permitted by paragraph (d)(1) of this section:

(i) Labeling changes that add or strengthen a contraindication, warning, precaution, or information about an adverse reaction.

(ii) Labeling changes that add or strengthen an instruction that is intended to enhance the safe use of the device.

(iii) Labeling changes that delete misleading, false, or unsupported indications.

(iv) Changes in quality controls or manufacturing process that add a new specification or test method, or otherwise provide additional assurance of purity, identity, strength, or reliability of the device.

(e) FDA will identify a change to a device for which an applicant has an approved PMA and for which a PMA supplement under paragraph (a) is not required. FDA will identify such a change in an advisory opinion under § 10.85, if the change applies to a generic type of device, or in correspondence to the applicant, if the change applies only to the applicant's device. FDA will require that a change for which a PMA supplement under paragraph (a) is not required be reported to FDA in—

(1) A periodic report under § 814.84 or

(2) A 30-day PMA supplement under this paragraph.

FDA will identify, in the advisory opinion or correspondence, the type of information that is to be included in the report or 30-day PMA supplement. If the change is required to be reported to FDA in a periodic report, the change may be made before it is reported to FDA. If the change is required to be reported in a 30-day PMA supplement, the change may be made 30 days after FDA files the 30-day PMA supplement unless FDA requires the PMA holder to provide additional information, informs the PMA holder that the supplement is not approvable, or disapproves the supplement. The 30-day PMA supplement shall follow the instructions in the correspondence or advisory opinion. Any 30-day PMA supplement that does not meet the requirements of the correspondence or advisory opinion will not be filed and, therefore, will not be deemed approved 30 days after receipt.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control no. 0910-0231)

[51 FR 26364, July 22, 1986, as amended at 51 FR 43344, Dec. 2, 1986]

Subpart C—FDA Action on a PMA

§ 814.40 Time frames for reviewing a PMA.

Within 180 days after receipt of an application that is accepted for filing and to which the applicant does not submit a major amendment, FDA will review the PMA and, after receiving the report and recommendation of the appropriate FDA advisory committee, send the applicant an approval order under § 814.44(d), an approvable letter under § 814.44(e), a not approvable letter under § 814.44(f), or an order denying approval under § 814.45. The approvable letter and the not approvable letter will provide an opportunity for the applicant to amend or withdraw the application, or to consider the letter to be a denial of approval of the PMA under § 814.45 and to request administrative review under section 515 (d)(3) and (g) of the act.

§ 814.42 Filing a PMA.

(a) The filing of an application means that FDA has made a threshold determination that the application is sufficiently complete to permit a substantive review. Within 45 days after a PMA is received by FDA, the agency will notify the applicant whether the application has been filed.

(b) If FDA does not find that any of the reasons in paragraph (e) of this section for refusing to file the PMA applies, the agency will file the PMA and will notify the applicant in writing of the filing. The notice will include the PMA reference number and the date FDA filed the PMA. The date of filing is the date that a PMA accepted for filing was received by the agency. The 180-day period for review of a PMA starts on the date of filing.

(c) If FDA refuses to file a PMA, the agency will notify the applicant of the reasons for the refusal. This notice will identify the deficiencies in the application that prevent filing and will include the PMA reference number.

(d) If FDA refuses to file the PMA, the applicant may:

(1) Resubmit the PMA with additional information necessary to comply with the requirements of section 515(c)(1) (A)-(G) of the act and § 814.20. A resubmitted PMA shall include the PMA reference number of the original submission. If the resubmitted PMA is accepted for filing, the date of filing is the date FDA receives the resubmission;

(2) Request in writing within 10 working days of the date of receipt of the notice refusing to file the PMA, an informal conference with the Director of the Office of Device Evaluation to review FDA's decision not to file the PMA. FDA will hold the informal conference within 10 working days of its receipt of the request and will render its decision on filing within 5 working days after the informal conference. If, after the informal conference, FDA accepts the PMA for filing, the date of filing will be the date of the decision to accept the PMA for filing. If FDA does not reverse its decision not to file the PMA, the applicant may request reconsideration of the decision from the Director of the Center for Devices and Radiological Health. The Director's decision will constitute final administrative action for the purpose of judicial review.

(e) FDA may refuse to file a PMA if any of the following applies:

(1) The application is incomplete because it does not on its face contain all the information required under section 515(c)(1) (A)-(G) of the act;

(2) The PMA does not contain each of the items required under § 814.20 and justification for omission of any item is inadequate;

(3) The applicant has a pending premarket notification under section 510(k) of the act with respect to the same device, and FDA has not determined whether the device falls within the scope of § 814.1(c).

(4) The PMA contains a false statement of material fact.

§ 814.44 Procedures for review of a PMA.

(a) FDA will begin substantive review of a PMA after the PMA is accepted for filing under § 814.42. FDA will forward the PMA, or relevant portions thereof, to each member of the appropriate FDA advisory committee for review. During the review process, FDA may communicate with the applicant as set forth under § 814.37(b), or with the advisory committee to respond to questions that may be posed by committee members or to provide additional information to the committee. FDA will maintain a record of all communications with the applicant and with the advisory committee.

(b) The advisory committee shall submit a report to FDA which includes the committee's recommendation and the basis for such recommendation on the PMA. Before submission of this report, the committee shall hold a public meeting to review the PMA in accordance with Part 14. This meeting may be held by a telephone conference under § 14.22(g). The advisory committee report and recommendation may be in the form of a meeting transcript signed by the chairperson of the committee.

(c) FDA will complete its review of the PMA and the advisory committee report and recommendation and, within the later of 180 days from the date of filing of the PMA under § 814.42 or the number of days after the date of filing as determined under § 814.37(c), issue an approval order under paragraph (d) of this section, an approvable letter under paragraph (e) of this section, a not approvable letter under paragraph (f) of this section, or an order denying approval of the application under § 814.45(a).

(d) FDA will issue to the applicant an order approving a PMA if none of the reasons in § 814.45 for denying approval of the application applies. FDA will approve an application on the basis of draft final labeling if the only deficiencies in the application concern editorial or similar minor deficiencies in the draft final labeling. Such approval will be conditioned upon the applicant incorporating the specified labeling changes exactly as directed and upon the applicant submitting to

FDA a copy of the final printed label- ng before marketing. FDA also will give the public notice of the order, including notice of an opportunity for any interested person to request review under section 515(d)(3) of the act. The notice of approval will be published in the Federal Register and will state that a detailed summary of information respecting the safety and effectiveness of the device which was the basis for the order approving the PMA, including information about any adverse effects of the device on health, has been placed on public display and that copies are available upon request. When a notice of approval is published, data and informa- ion in the PMA file will be available or public disclosure in accordance with § 814.9.

(e) FDA will send the applicant an pprovable letter if the application ubstantially meets the requirements of this part and the agency believes it can approve the application if specific dditional information is submitted or pecific conditions are agreed to by he applicant.

(1) The approvable letter will de- cribe the information FDA requires o be provided by the applicant or the conditions the applicant is required to meet to obtain approval. For example, FDA may require, as a condition to approval:

(i) The submission of certain infor- nation identified in the approvable etter, e.g., final labeling;

(ii) An FDA inspection that finds he manufacturing facilities, methods, and controls in compliance with Part 820 and, if applicable, that verifies records pertinent to the PMA;

(iii) Restrictions imposed on the device under section 515(d)(1)(B)(ii) or 520(e) of the act;

(iv) Postapproval requirements as described in Subpart E of this part.

(2) In response to an approvable etter the applicant may:

(i) Amend the PMA as requested in he approvable letter; or

(ii) Consider the approvable letter to be a denial of approval of the PMA under § 814.45 and request administra- ive review under section 515(d)(3) of he act by filing a petition in the form of a petition for reconsideration under § 10.33; or

(iii) Withdraw the PMA.

(f) FDA will send the applicant a not approvable letter if the agency believes that the application may not be approved for one or more of the reasons given in § 814.45(a). The not approvable letter will describe the deficiencies in the application, including each applicable ground for denial under section 515(d)(2) (A)–(E) of the act, and, where practical, will identify measures required to place the PMA in approvable form. In response to a not approvable letter, the applicant may:

(1) Amend the PMA as requested in the not approvable letter (such an amendment will be considered a major amendment under § 814.37(c)(1)); or

(2) Consider the not approvable letter to be a denial of approval of the PMA under § 814.45 and request administrative review under section 515(d)(3) of the act by filing a petition in the form of a petition for reconsideration under § 10.33; or

(3) Withdraw the PMA.

(g) FDA will consider a PMA to have been withdrawn voluntarily if:

(1) The applicant fails to respond in writing to a written request for an amendment within 180 days after the date FDA issues such request;

(2) The applicant fails to respond in writing to an approvable or not approvable letter within 180 days after the date FDA issues such letter; or

(3) The applicant submits a written notice to FDA that the PMA has been withdrawn.

§ 814.45 Denial of approval of a PMA.

(a) FDA may issue an order denying approval of a PMA if the applicant fails to follow the requirements of this part or if, upon the basis of the information submitted in the PMA or any other information before the agency, FDA determines that any of the grounds for denying approval of a PMA specified in section 515(d)(2) (A)–(E) of the act applies. In addition, FDA may deny approval of a PMA for any of the following reasons:

(1) The PMA contains a false statement of material fact;

(2) The device's proposed labeling does not comply with the requirements in Part 801 or Part 809;

(3) The applicant does not permit an authorized FDA employee an opportunity to inspect at a reasonable time and in a reasonable manner the facilities, controls, and to have access to and to copy and verify all records pertinent to the application;

(4) A nonclinical laboratory study that is described in the PMA and that is essential to show that the device is safe for use under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its proposed labeling, was not conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations in Part 58 and no reason for the noncompliance is provided or, if it is, the differences between the practices used in conducting the study and the good laboratory practice regulations do not support the validity of the study; or

(5) Any clinical investigation involving human subjects described in the PMA, subject to the institutional review board regulations in Part 56 or informed consent regulations in Part 50, was not conducted in compliance with those regulations such that the rights or safety of human subjects were not adequately protected.

(b) FDA will issue any order denying approval of the PMA in accordance with § 814.17. The order will inform the applicant of the deficiencies in the PMA, including each applicable ground for denial under section 515(d)(2) of the act and the regulations under this part, and, where practical, will identify measures required to place the PMA in approvable form. The order will include a notice of an opportunity to request review under section 515(d)(3) of the act.

(c) FDA will use the criteria specified in § 860.7 to determine the safety and effectiveness of a device in deciding whether to approve or deny approval of a PMA. FDA may use information other than that submitted by the applicant in making such determination.

(d) FDA will give the public notice of an order denying approval of the PMA. The notice will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and will state that a detailed summary of information respecting the safety and effectiveness of the device, including information about any adverse effects of the device on health, has been placed on public display and that copies are available upon request. When a notice of denial of approval is made publicly available, data and information in the PMA file will be available for public disclosure in accordance with § 814.9.

(e) FDA will issue an order denying approval of a PMA after an approvable or not approvable letter has been sent and the applicant:

(1) Submits a requested amendment but any ground for denying approval of the application under section 515(d)(2) of the act still applies; or

(2) Notifies FDA in writing that the requested amendment will not be submitted; or

(3) Petitions for review under section 515(d)(3) of the act by filing a petition in the form of a petition for reconsideration under § 10.33.

§ 814.46 Withdrawal of approval of a PMA.

(a) FDA may issue an order withdrawing approval of a PMA if, from any information available to the agency, FDA determines that:

(1) Any of the grounds under section 515(e)(1) (A)-(G) of the act applies.

(2) Any postapproval requirement imposed by the PMA approval order or by regulation has not been met.

(3) A nonclinical laboratory study that is described in the PMA and that is essential to show that the device is safe for use under the conditions prescribed, recommended, or suggested in its proposed labeling, was not conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations in Part 58 and no reason for the noncompliance is provided or, if it is, the differences between the practices used in conducting the study and the good laboratory practice regulations do not support the validity of the study.

(4) Any clinical investigation involving human subjects described in the PMA, subject to the institutional review board regulations in Part 56 or informed consent regulations in Part 50, was not conducted in compliance with those regulations such that the

rights or safety of human subjects were not adequately protected.

(b)(1) FDA may seek advice on scientific matters from any appropriate FDA advisory committee in deciding whether to withdraw approval of a PMA.

(2) FDA may use information other than that submitted by the applicant in deciding whether to withdraw approval of a PMA.

(c) Before issuing an order withdrawing approval of a PMA, FDA will issue the holder of the approved application a notice of opportunity for an informal hearing under Part 16.

(d) If the applicant does not request a hearing or if after the Part 16 hearing is held the agency decides to proceed with the withdrawal, FDA will issue to the holder of the approved application an order withdrawing approval of the application. The order will be issued under § 814.17, will state each ground for withdrawing approval, and will include a notice of an opportunity for administrative review under section 515(e)(2) of the act.

(e) FDA will give the public notice of an order withdrawing approval of a PMA. The notice will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER and will state that a detailed summary of information respecting the safety and effectiveness of the device, including information about any adverse effects of the device on health, has been placed on public display and that copies are available upon request. When a notice of withdrawal of approval is published, data and information in the PMA file will be available for public disclosure in accordance with § 814.9.

Subpart D—Administrative Review [Reserved]

Subpart E—Postapproval Requirements

§ 814.80 General.

A device may not be manufactured, packaged, stored, labeled, distributed, or advertised in a manner that is inconsistent with any conditions to approval specified in the PMA approval order for the device.

§ 814.82 Postapproval requirements.

(a) FDA may impose postapproval requirements in a PMA approval order or by regulation at the time of approval of the PMA or by regulation subsequent to approval. Postapproval requirements may include as a condition to approval of the device:

(1) Restriction of the sale, distribution, or use of the device as provided by section 515(d)(1)(B)(ii) or 520(e) of the act.

(2) Continuing evaluation and periodic reporting on the safety, effectiveness, and reliability of the device for its intended use. FDA will state in the PMA approval order the reason or purpose for such requirement and the number of patients to be evaluated and the reports required to be submitted.

(3) Prominent display in the labeling of a device and in the advertising of any restricted device of warnings, hazards, or precautions important for the device's safe and effective use, including patient information, e.g., information provided to the patient on alternative modes of therapy and on risks and benefits associated with the use of the device.

(4) Inclusion of identification codes on the device or its labeling, or in the case of an implant, on cards given to patients if necessary to protect the public health.

(5) Maintenance of records that will enable the applicant to submit to FDA information needed to trace patients if such information is necessary to protect the public health. Under section 519(a)(4) of the act, FDA will require that the identity of any patient be disclosed in records maintained under this paragraph only to the extent required for the medical welfare of the individual, to determine the safety or effectiveness of the device, or to verify a record, report, or information submitted to the agency.

(6) Maintenance of records for specified periods of time and organization and indexing of records into identifiable files to enable FDA to determine whether there is reasonable assurance of the continued safety and effectiveness of the device.

(7) Submission to FDA at intervals specified in the approval order of periodic reports containing the information required by § 814.84(b).

(8) Batch testing of the device.

(9) Such other requirements as FDA determines are necessary to provide reasonable assurance, or continued reasonable assurance, of the safety and effectiveness of the device.

(b) An applicant shall grant to FDA access to any records and reports required under the provisions of this part, and shall permit authorized FDA employees to copy and verify such records and reports and to inspect at a reasonable time and in a reasonable manner all manufacturing facilities to verify that the device is being manufactured, stored, labeled, and shipped under approved conditions.

(c) Failure to comply with any postapproval requirement constitutes a ground for withdrawal of approval of a PMA.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control no. 0910-0231)

[51 FR 26364, July 22, 1986, as amended at 51 FR 43344, Dec. 2, 1986]

§ 814.84 Reports.

(a) The holder of an approved PMA shall comply with the requirements of Part 803 and with any other requirements applicable to the device by other regulations in this subchapter or by order approving the device.

(b) Unless FDA specifies otherwise, any periodic report shall:

(1) Identify changes described in § 814.39(a) and changes required to be reported to FDA under § 814.39(b).

(2) Contain a summary and bibliography of the following information not previously submitted as part of the PMA:

(i) Unpublished reports of data from any clinical investigations or nonclinical laboratory studies involving the device or related devices and known to or that reasonably should be known to the applicant.

(ii) Reports in the scientific literature concerning the device and known to or that reasonably should be known to the applicant. If, after reviewing the summary and bibliography, FDA concludes that the agency needs a copy of the unpublished or published reports, FDA will notify the applicant that copies of such reports shall be submitted.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control no. 0910-0231)

[51 FR 26364, July 22, 1986, as amended at 51 FR 43344, Dec. 2, 1986]

PART 820—GOOD MANUFACTURING PRACTICE FOR MEDICAL DEVICES: GENERAL

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
820.1 Scope.
820.3 Definitions.
820.5 Quality assurance program.

Subpart B—Organization and Personnel

820.20 Organization.
820.25 Personnel.

Subpart C—Buildings

820.40 Buildings.
820.46 Environmental control.
820.56 Cleaning and sanitation.

Subpart D—Equipment

820.60 Equipment.
820.61 Measurement equipment.

Subpart E—Control of Components

820.80 Components.
820.81 Critical devices, components.

Subpart F—Production and Process Controls

820.100 Manufacturing specifications and processes.
820.101 Critical devices, manufacturing specifications, and processes.
820.115 Reprocessing of devices or components.
820.116 Critical devices, reprocessing of devices or components.

Subpart G—Packaging and Labeling Control

820.120 Device labeling.
820.121 Critical devices, device labeling.
820.130 Device packaging.

Subpart H—Holding, Distribution, and Installation

820.150 Distribution.
820.151 Critical devices, distribution, records.
820.152 Installation.

Sec.

Subpart I—Device Evaluation

820.160 Finished device inspection.
820.161 Critical devices, finished device inspection.
820.162 Failure investigation.

Subpart J—Records

820.180 General requirements.
820.181 Device master record.
820.182 Critical devices, device master record.
820.184 Device history record.
820.185 Critical devices, device history record.
820.195 Critical devices, automated data processing.
820.198 Complaint files.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501, 502, 518, 519, 520(f), 701(a), 52 Stat. 1049-1051 as amended, 1055, 90 Stat. 562-569 (21 U.S.C. 351, 352, 360h, 360i, 360j(f), 371(a)).

SOURCE: 43 FR 31508, July 21, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 820.1 Scope.

The regulation set forth in this part describes current good manufacturing practices for methods used in, and the facilities and controls used for, the manufacture, packing, storage, and installation of all finished devices intended for human use. The regulation is intended to assure that such devices will be safe and effective and otherwise in compliance with the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act. Part 820 establishes basic requirements applicable to finished devices, including additional requirements for critical devices. This regulation is not intended to apply to manufacturers of components or parts of finished devices, but such manufacturers are encouraged to use appropriate provisions of this regulation as guidelines. Manufacturers of human blood and blood components are not subject to this part, but are subject to Part 606 of this chapter.

(a) *Authority.* This Part 820 is established and promulgated under authority of sections 501, 502, 518, 519, 520(f), and 701(a) of the act (21 U.S.C. 351, 352, 360h, 360i, 360j(f), and 371(a)). The failure to comply with any applicable provisions in Part 820 in the manufacture, packing, storage, or installation of a device renders the device adulterated under section 501(h) of the act. Such a device, as well as the person responsible for the failure to comply, is subject to regulatory action.

(b) *Limitations.* The current good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 supplements regulations in other parts of this chapter except where explicitly stated otherwise. In the event it is impossible to comply with applicable regulations both in this part and in other parts of this chapter, the regulations specifically applicable to the device in question shall supersede any other regulations.

(c) *Applicability.* The provisions of Part 820 shall be applicable to any finished device, as defined in this part, intended for human use, that is manufactured, imported, or offered for import in any State or territory of the United States, the District of Columbia, or the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.

(d) *Exemptions or variances.* Any person who wishes to petition for an exemption or variance from any device good manufacturing practice requirement is subject to the requirements of section 520(f)(2) of the act. Petitions for an exemption or variance shall be submitted according to the procedures set forth in § 10.30 of this chapter, the Food and Drug Administration's administrative procedures. Guidance is available from the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Division of Compliance Programs, Manufacturing Quality Assurance Branch (HFZ-332), 8757 Georgia Ave., Silver Spring, MD 20910; telephone 301-427-7194.

[43 FR 31508, July 21, 1978, as amended at 44 FR 75628, Dec. 21, 1979; 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 820.3 Definitions.

(a) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, as amended (secs. 201-902, 52 Stat. 1040 et seq., as amended (21 U.S.C. 321-392)).

(b) "Audit" means a documented activity performed in accordance with written procedures on a periodic basis to verify, by examination and evaluation of objective evidence, compliance with those elements of the quality assurance program under review.

"Audit" does not include surveillance or inspection activities performed for the purpose of conducting a quality assurance program or undertaking complaint investigations or failure analyses of a device.

(c) "Component" means any material, substance, piece, part, or assembly used during device manufacture which is intended to be included in the finished device.

(d) "Control number" means any distinctive combination of letters or numbers, or both, from which the complete history of the manufacture, control, packaging, and distribution of a production run, lot, or batch of finished devices can be determined.

(e) "Critical component" means any component of a critical device whose failure to perform can be reasonably expected to cause the failure of a critical device or to affect its safety or effectiveness.

(f) "Critical device" means a device that is intended for surgical implant into the body or to support or sustain life and whose failure to perform when properly used in accordance with instructions for use provided in the labeling can be reasonably expected to result in a significant injury to the user. Critical devices will be identified by the Commissioner after consultation with the Device Good Manufacturing Practice Advisory Committee authorized under section 520(f) of the act, and an illustrative list of critical devices will be available from the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration.

(g) "Critical operation" means any operation in the manufacture of a critical device which, if improperly performed, can be reasonably expected to cause the failure of a critical device or to affect its safety or effectiveness.

(h) "Device history record" means a compilation of records containing the complete production history of a finished device.

(i) "Device master record" means a compilation of records containing the design, formulation, specifications, complete manufacturing procedures, quality assurance requirements, and labeling of a finished device.

(j) "Finished device" means a device, or any accessory to a device, which is suitable for use, whether or not packaged or labeled for commercial distribution.

(k) "Manufacturer" means any person, including any repacker and/or relabeler, who manufactures, fabricates, assembles, or processes a finished device. The term does not include any person who only distributes a finished device.

(l) "Manufacturing material" means any material such as a cleaning agent, mold-release agent, lubricating oil, or other substance used to facilitate a manufacturing process and which is not intended by the manufacturer to be included in the finished device.

(m) "Noncritical device" means any finished device other than a critical device.

(n) "Quality assurance" means all activities necessary to assure and verify confidence in the quality of the process used to manufacture a finished device.

[43 FR 31508, July 21, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 820.5 Quality assurance program.

Every finished device manufacturer shall prepare and implement a quality assurance program that is appropriate to the specific device manufactured and meets the requirements of this part.

Subpart B—Organization and Personnel

§ 820.20 Organization.

Each manufacturer shall have in place an adequate organizational structure and sufficient personnel to assure that the devices the manufacturer produces are manufactured in accordance with the requirements of this regulation. Each manufacturer shall prepare and implement quality assurance procedures adequate to assure that a formally established and documented quality assurance program is performed. Where possible, a designated individual(s) not having direct responsibility for the performance of a manufacturing operation shall be responsible for the quality assurance program.

(a) *Quality assurance program requirements.* The quality assurance program shall consist of procedures adequate to assure that the following functions are performed:

(1) Review of production records;

(2) Approval or rejection of all components, manufacturing materials, in-process materials, packaging materials, labeling, and finished devices; approval or rejection of devices manufactured, processed, packaged, or held under contract by another company;

(3) Identifying, recommending, or providing solutions for quality assurance problems and verifying the implementation of such solutions; and

(4) Assuring that all quality assurance checks are appropriate and adequate for their purpose and are performed correctly.

(b) *Audit procedures.* Planned and periodic audits of the quality assurance program shall be implemented to verify compliance with the quality assurance program. The audits shall be performed in accordance with written procedures by appropriately trained individuals not having direct responsibilities for the matters being audited. Audit results shall be documented in written audit reports, which shall be reviewed by management having responsibility for the matters audited. Followup corrective action, including reaudit of deficient matters, shall be taken when indicated. An employee of the Food and Drug Administration, designated by the Food and Drug Administration, shall have access to the written procedures established for the audit. Upon request of such an employee, a responsible official of the manufacturer shall certify in writing that the audits of the quality assurance program required under this paragraph have been performed and documented and that any required corrective action has been taken.

§ 820.25 Personnel.

Each manufacturer shall have sufficient personnel with the necessary education, background, training, and experience to assure that all operations are correctly performed.

(a) *Personnel training.* All personnel shall have the necessary training to perform their assigned responsibilities adequately. Where training programs are necessary to assure that personnel have a thorough understanding of their jobs, such programs shall be conducted and documented. All employees shall be made aware of device defects which may occur from the improper performance of their specific jobs. Quality assurance personnel shall be made aware of defects and errors likely to be encountered as part of their quality assurance functions.

(b) *Personnel health and cleanliness.* Personnel in contact with a device or its environment shall be clean, healthy, and suitably attired where lack of cleanliness, good health, or suitable attire could adversely affect the device. Any personnel who, by medical examination or supervisory observation, appear to have a condition which could adversely affect the device shall be excluded from affected operations until the condition is corrected. Personnel shall be instructed to report such conditions to their supervisors.

Subpart C—Buildings

§ 820.40 Buildings.

Buildings in which manufacturing, assembling, packaging, packing, holding, testing, or labeling operations are conducted shall be of suitable design and contain sufficient space to facilitate adequate cleaning, maintenance, and other necessary operations. The facilities shall provide adequate space designed to prevent mixups and to assure orderly handling of the following: Incoming components; rejected or obsolete components; in-process components; finished devices; labeling; devices that have been reprocessed, reworked, or repaired; equipment; molds, patterns, tools, records, drawings, blueprints; testing and laboratory operations; and quarantined products.

§ 820.46 Environmental control.

Where environmental conditions at the manufacturing site could have an adverse effect on a device's fitness for use, these environmental conditions shall be controlled to prevent contamination of the device and to provide proper conditions for each of the operations performed pursuant to § 820.40. Conditions to be considered for control are lighting, ventilation, temperature, humidity, air pressure, filtration, airborne contamination, and other contamination. Any environmental control system shall be periodically inspected to verify that the system is properly functioning. Such inspections shall be documented.

§ 820.56 Cleaning and sanitation.

There shall be adequate written cleaning procedures and schedules to meet manufacturing process specifications. Such procedures shall be provided to appropriate personnel.

(a) *Personnel sanitation.* Washing and toilet facilities shall be clean and adequate. Where special clothing requirements are necessary to assure that a device is fit for its intended use, clean dressing rooms shall be provided for personnel.

(b) *Contamination control.* There shall be procedures designed to prevent contamination of equipment, components, or finished devices by rodenticides, insecticides, fungicides, fumigants, hazardous substances, and other cleaning and sanitizing substances. Such procedures shall be documented.

(c) *Personnel practices.* Where eating, drinking, and smoking by personnel could have an adverse effect on a device's fitness for use, such practices shall be limited to designated areas selected so as to avoid such an adverse effect.

(d) *Sewage and refuse disposal.* Sewage, trash, by-products, chemical effluents, and other refuse shall be disposed of in a timely, safe, and sanitary manner.

Subpart D—Equipment

§ 820.60 Equipment.

Equipment used in the manufacturing process shall be appropriately designed, constructed, placed, and installed to facilitate maintenance, adjustment, and cleaning.

(a) *Maintenance schedule.* Where maintenance of equipment is necessary to assure that manufacturing specifications are met, a written schedule for the maintenance, adjustment, and cleaning of equipment shall be developed and adhered to. Such schedule shall be visibly posted on or near each piece of equipment, or be readily available to personnel performing maintenance activities. A written record shall be maintained documenting when scheduled maintenance activities are performed.

(b) *Inspection.* Periodic documented inspections shall be made to assure adherence to applicable equipment maintenance schedules.

(c) *Adjustment.* Any inherent limitations or allowable tolerances shall be visibly posted on or near equipment requiring periodic adjustments, or be readily available to personnel performing these adjustments.

(d) *Manufacturing material.* Manufacturing material, including a cleaning agent, mold-release agent, lubricating oil, or other substance used on or in the manufacturing equipment or the device, shall be subsequently removed from the device or limited to a specified amount that does not adversely affect the device's fitness for use. There shall be written procedures for the use and removal of such manufacturing material. The removal of such manufacturing material shall be documented.

§ 820.61 Measurement equipment.

All production and quality assurance measurement equipment, such as mechanical, automated, or electronic equipment, shall be suitable for its intended purposes and shall be capable of producing valid results. Such equipment shall be routinely calibrated, inspected, and checked according to written procedures. Records documenting these activities shall be maintained. When computers are used as part of an automated production or quality assurance system, the computer software programs shall be validated by adequate and documented testing. All program changes shall be made by a designated individual(s) through a formal approval procedure.

(a) *Calibration.* Calibration procedures shall include specific directions and limits for accuracy and precision. There shall be provisions for remedial action when accuracy and precision limits are not met. Calibration shall be performed by personnel having the necessary education, training, background, and experience.

(b) *Calibration standards.* Where practical, the calibration standards used for production and quality assurance measurement equipment shall be traceable to the national standards of the National Bureau of Standards, Department of Commerce. If national standards are not practical for the parameter being measured, an independent reproducible standard shall be used. If no applicable standard exists, an in-house standard shall be developed and used.

(c) *Calibration records.* The calibration date, the calibrator, and the next calibration date shall be recorded and displayed, or records containing such information shall be readily available for each piece of equipment requiring calibration. A designated individual(s) shall maintain a record of calibration dates and of the individual performing each calibration.

Subpart E—Control of Components

§ 820.80 Components.

Components used in manufacturing shall be received, stored, and handled in a manner designed to prevent damage, mixup, contamination, and other adverse effects. Components shall be quarantined prior to acceptance or clearly identified as not yet accepted.

(a) *Acceptance of components.* There shall be a written procedure for acceptance of components. A designated individual(s) shall accept or reject components. A record shall be maintained of component acceptance and rejection. Upon receipt, each shipping container of components shall be visually examined for damage. Where deviations from component specifications could result in the device being unfit for its intended use, components shall be inspected, sampled, and tested for conformance to specifications.

(b) *Storage and handling of components.* If the quality or fitness for use of components deteriorates over time, the components shall be stored in a manner to facilitate proper stock rotation. Component control numbers or other identifications shall be easily viewable. All obsolete, rejected, or deteriorated components shall be clearly identified and segregated from accepted components. Records shall be maintained of the disposition of all obsolete, rejected, or deteriorated components.

§ 820.81 Critical devices, components.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.80, the following requirements apply to critical devices:

(a) *Acceptance of critical components.* There shall be written procedures for the accepting, sampling, testing, and inspecting of all lots of critical components to assure that critical components conform to specifications. The number of units sampled from each lot of critical components shall be based upon an acceptable statistical rationale, the past quality history of the supplier, and the quantity needed for analysis and reserve. Each lot of critical components shall be identified with a control number(s) upon receipt. The percentage of defective critical components for each lot and the percentage of lots rejected shall be recorded and identified by supplier name.

(b) *Critical component supplier agreement.* Where possible, the manufacturer shall secure from the critical component supplier a written agreement whereby the supplier agrees to notify the manufacturer of any proposed change in a critical component. Where such an agreement exists, the manufacturer shall not accept such a change until the manufacturer has determined the impact of the change on the finished device.

Subpart F—Production and Process Controls

§ 820.100 Manufacturing specifications and processes.

Written manufacturing specifications and processing procedures shall be established, implemented, and controlled to assure that the device conforms to its original design or any approved changes in that design.

(a) *Specification controls.* (1) Procedures for specification control measures shall be established to assure that the design basis for the device, components, and packaging is correctly translated into approved specifications.

(2) Specification changes shall be subject to controls as stringent as those applied to the original design specifications of the device. Such changes shall be approved and documented by a designated individual(s) and shall include the approval date and the date the change becomes effective.

(b) *Processing controls.* (1) Where deviations from device specifications could occur as a result of the manufacturing process itself, there shall be written procedures describing any processing controls necessary to assure conformance to specifications.

(2) All processing control operations shall be conducted in a manner designed to assure that the device conforms to applicable specifications.

(3) There shall be a formal approval procedure for any change in the manufacturing process of a device. Any approved change shall be communicated to appropriate personnel in a timely manner.

§ 820.101 Critical devices, manufacturing specifications, and processes.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.100, the following requirements apply to critical devices:

(a) *Critical operation performance.* Any critical operation shall be performed by a suitable designated individual(s) or suitable equipment and shall be verified.

(b) *Record of critical operation.* Any individual responsible for the performance of a critical operation shall record or reference that operation in the device history record as required in § 820.185.

§ 820.115 Reprocessing of devices or components.

(a) Reprocessing procedures shall be established, implemented, and controlled to assure that the reprocessed device or component meets the original, or subsequently modified and approved, specifications.

(b) Any device rejected during finished device inspection and later reprocessed shall be subject to another complete final inspection for any characteristic of the device which may be adversely affected by such reprocessing.

§ 820.116 Critical devices, reprocessing of devices or components.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.115, the following requirements apply to critical devices:

(a) *Reprocessing procedures.* There shall be written procedures for any reprocessing associated with the production of a critical device or component. These procedures shall prescribe the equipment to be used in reprocessing and shall include any special quality assurance methods or tests. The procedures shall be designed so that the reprocessed device or component meets the original, or subsequently modified and approved, specifications. The procedures shall be designed to prevent adulteration, e.g., because of material, structural, or molecular change in the device or component due to reprocessing. Special care shall be taken to assure that the device or component to be reprocessed is clearly identified and separated from like devices or components not to be reprocessed. When there is constant reprocessing of a device or component, a determination of the effect of the reprocessing upon the device or component shall be made and documented. There shall be a formal approval procedure for instituting a new, or altering an approved, reprocessing procedure.

(b) *Reprocessing control.* Any critical device or component subject to reprocessing procedures shall conform to the original, or subsequently modified and approved, specifications. Written testing and sampling procedures to assure such comformity shall be contained or referenced in the device master record. Any prior quality assurance check shall be repeated on the reprocessed device or component if the reprocessing could adversely affect any performance characteristic previously inspected.

Subpart G—Packaging and Labeling Control

§ 820.120 Device labeling.

There shall be adequate controls to maintain labeling integrity and to prevent labeling mixups.

(a) *Label integrity.* Labels shall be designed, printed, and applied so as to remain legible during the customary conditions of processing, storage, handling, distribution, and use. Labels and other labeling shall not be released to inventory until a designated individual has proofread samples of the labeling for accuracy.

(b) *Separation of operations.* Each labeling or packaging operation shall be separated physically or spatially in a manner designed to prevent mixups.

(c) *Area inspection.* Prior to the implementation of any labeling or packaging operation, there shall be an inspection of the area where the operation is to occur by a designated individual to assure that devices and labeling materials from prior operations do not remain in the labeling or packaging area. Any such items found shall be destroyed, disposed of, or returned to storage pricr to the onset of a new or different labeling or packaging operation.

(d) *Storage.* Labels and labeling shall be stored and maintained in a manner that provides proper identification and is designed to prevent mixups.

(e) *Labeling materials.* Labeling materials issued for devices shall be examined for identity and, where applicable, the correct expiration date, control number, storage instructions, handling instructions, and additional processing instructions. A record of such examination, including the date and person performing the examination, shall be maintained in the device history record.

§ 820.121 Critical devices, device labeling.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.120, the following requirements apply to critical devices:

(a) *Control number.* Labels issued for critical devices shall contain a control number.

(b) *Labeling check.* The signature of the individual who proofreads the labels and other labeling, and the date of the proofreading, shall be recorded.

(c) *Access restriction.* Access to the labels and other labeling shall be restricted to authorized personnel.

§ 820.130 Device packaging.

The device package and any shipping container for a device shall be designed and constructed to protect the device from alteration or damage during the customary conditions of processing, storage, handling, and distribution.

Subpart H—Holding, Distribution, and Installation

§ 820.150 Distribution.

There shall be written procedures for warehouse control and distribution of finished devices to assure that only those devices approved for release are distributed. Where a device's fitness for use or quality deteriorates over time, there shall be a system to assure that the oldest approved devices are distributed first.

§ 820.151 Critical devices, distribution records.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.150, adequate distribution records for critical devices shall include, or make reference to the location of: the name and address of the consignee, the name and quantity of devices, the date shipped, and the control number used. These records shall be retained as required by § 820.180(b).

§ 820.152 Installation.

Where a device is installed by the manufacturer or its authorized representative, the manufacturer or representative shall inspect the device after installation to assure that the device will perform as intended. Where a device is installed by a person other than the manufacturer or its authorized representative, the manufacturer shall provide adequate instructions and procedures for proper installation.

Subpart I—Device Evaluation

§ 820.160 Finished device inspection.

There shall be written procedures for finished device inspection to assure that device specifications are met. Prior to release for distribution, each production run, lot or batch shall be checked and, where necessary, tested for conformance with device specifications. Where practical, a device shall be selected from a production run, lot or batch and tested under simulated use conditions. Sampling plans for checking, testing, and release of a device shall be based on an acceptable statistical rationale. Finished devices shall be held in quarantine or otherwise adequately controlled until released.

§ 820.161 Critical devices, finished device inspection.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.160, the following requirement applies to critical devices: A critical device or component which does not meet its performance specifications shall be investigated. A written record of the investigation, including conclusions and followup, shall be made. A critical device shall not leave the control of the manufacturer for distribution until all acceptance records and test results have been checked by a designated individual(s). Such individual(s) shall assure that all records and documentation required for the device history record are present and complete, and show that release of the device was consistent with the release criteria. Such individual(s) shall authorize, by signature, the release of the device for distribution.

§ 820.162 Failure investigation.

After a device has been released for distribution, any failure of that device or any of its components to meet performance specifications shall be investigated. A written record of the investigation, including conclusions and followup, shall be made.

Subpart J—Records

§ 820.180 General requirements.

All records required by this part shall be maintained at the manufacturing establishment or other location that is reasonably accessible to responsible officials of the manufacturer and to employees of the Food and Drug Administration designated to perform inspections. Such records shall be available for review and copying by such employees. Except as specifically provided elsewhere, the following general provisions shall apply to all records required by this part.

(a) *Confidentiality.* Those records deemed confidential by the manufacturer may be marked to aid the Food and Drug Administration in determining whether information may be disclosed under the public information regulation in Part 20 of this chapter.

(b) *Record retention period.* All required records pertaining to a device shall be retained for a period of time equivalent to the design and expected life of the device, but in no case less than 2 years from the date of release for commercial distribution by the manufacturer. Photostatic or other reproductions of records required by this part may be used.

§ 820.181 Device master record.

The device master record shall be prepared, dated, and signed by a designated individual(s). Any changes in the device master record shall be authorized in writing by the signature of a designated individual(s). Any approval forms shall be part of the device master record. The device master record for each type of device shall include, or refer to the location of, the following information:

(a) Device specifications including appropriate drawings, composition, formulation, and component specifications.

(b) Production process specifications including the appropriate equipment specifications, production methods, production procedures, and production environment specifications.

(c) Quality assurance procedures and specifications including quality assurance checks used and the quality assurance apparatus used.

(d) Packaging and labeling specifications including methods and processes used.

§ 820.182 Critical devices, device master record.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.181, the device master record for a critical device shall include or refer to the location of the following information:

(a) *Critical components and critical component suppliers.* Full information concerning critical components and critical component suppliers, including the complete specifications of all critical components, the sources where they may be obtained, and written copies of any agreements made with suppliers under § 820.81(b).

(b) *Labels and labeling.* Complete labeling procedures for the individual device and copies of all approved labels and other labeling.

§ 820.184 Device history record.

A device history record shall be maintained to demonstrate that the device is manufactured in accordance with the device master record. The device history record shall include, or refer to the location of, the following information: The dates of manufacture, the quantity manufactured, the quantity released for distribution, and any control number used.

§ 820.185 Critical devices, device history record.

In addition to the requirements of § 820.184, the following requirements apply to critical devices: There shall be a critical device history record for each control number, which shall include complete information relating to the production unit. This record shall identify the specific label, labeling, and control number used for each production unit and shall be readily accessible and maintained by a designated individual(s). The device history record shall include, or refer to the location of, the following:

(a) *Component documentation.* The documentation of each critical component used in the manufacture of a device shall include:

(1) *Control number.* The control number designating each critical component or lot of critical components used in the manufacture of a device.

(2) *Acceptance record.* The acceptance record of the critical component, including acceptance date and signature of the recipient.

(b) *Record of critical operation.* The record of, or reference to, each critical operation, identifying the date performed, the designated individual(s) performing the operation and, when appropriate, the major equipment used.

(c) *Inspection checks.* The inspection checks performed, the methods and equipment used, results, the date, and signature of the inspecting individual.

§ 820.195 Critical devices, automated data processing.

When automated data processing is used for manufacturing or quality assurance purposes, adequate checks shall be designed and implemented to prevent inaccurate data output, input, and programming errors.

§ 820.198 Complaint files.

(a) Written and oral complaints relative to the identity, quality, durability, reliability, safety, effectiveness, or performance of a device shall be reviewed, evaluated, and maintained by a formally designated unit. This unit shall determine whether or not an investigation is necessary. When no investigation is made, the unit shall maintain a record that includes the reason and the name of the individual responsible for the decision not to investigate.

(b) Any complaint involving the possible failure of a device to meet any of its performance specifications shall be reviewed, evaluated, and investigated. Any complaint pertaining to injury, death, or any hazard to safety shall be immediately reviewed, evaluated, and investigated by a designated individual(s) and shall be maintained in a separate portion of the complaint file.

(c) When an investigation is made, a written record of each investigation shall be maintained by the formally designated unit identified in paragraph (a) of this section. The record of investigation shall include the name of the device, any control number used, name of complainant, nature of complaint, and reply to complainant.

(d) Where the formally designated unit is located at a site separate from the actual manufacturing establishment, a duplicate copy of the record of investigation of any complaint shall be transmitted to and maintained at the actual manufacturing establishment in a file designated for device complaints.

PART 860—MEDICAL DEVICE CLASSIFICATION PROCEDURES

Subpart A—General

Sec.
860.1 Scope.
860.3 Definitions.
860.5 Confidentiality and use of data and information submitted in connection with classification and reclassification.
860.7 Determination of safety and effectiveness.

Subpart B—Classification

860.84 Classification procedures for "old devices."
860.93 Classification of implants, life-supporting or life-sustaining devices.
860.95 Exemptions from sections 510, 519, and 520(f) of the act.

Subpart C—Reclassification

860.120 General.
860.123 Reclassification petition: Content and form.
860.125 Consultation with panels.
860.130 General procedures under section 513(e) of the act.
860.132 Procedures when the Commissioner initiates a performance standard or premarket approval proceeding under section 514(b) or 515(b) of the act.
860.134 Procedures for "new devices" under section 513(f) of the act.
860.136 Procedures for transitional products under section 520(l) of the act.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 513, 514, 515, 519, 520, and 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 540-559, 564-574 (21 U.S.C. 360c, 360d, 360e, 360i, 360j, and 371(a)).

SOURCE: 43 FR 32993, July 28, 1978, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 860.1 Scope.

(a) This part implements sections 513, 514(b), 515(b), and 520(l) of the act with respect to the classification and reclassification of devices intended for human use.

(b) This part prescribes the criteria and procedures to be used by classification panels in making their recommendations and by the Commissioner in making the Commissioner's determinations regarding the class of regulatory control (class I, class II, or class III) appropriate for particular devices. Supplementing the general Food and Drug Administration procedures governing advisory committees (Part 14 of this chapter), this part also provides procedures for manufacturers, importers, and other interested persons to participate in proceedings to classify and reclassify devices. This part also describes the kind of data required for determination of the safety and effectiveness of a device, and the circumstances under which information submitted to classification panels or to the Commissioner in connection with classification and reclassification proceedings will be available to the public.

§ 860.3 Definitions.

For the purposes of this part:

(a) "Act" means the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.

(b) "Commissioner" means the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, Food and Drug Administration, United States Department of Health and Human Services, or the Commissioner's designee.

(c) "Class" means one of the three categories of regulatory control for medical devices, defined below:

(1) "Class I" means the class of devices that are subject to only the general controls authorized by or under sections 501 (adulteration), 502 (misbranding), 510 (registration), 516 (banned devices), 518 (notification and other remedies), 519 (records and reports), and 520 (general provisions) of the act. A device is in class I if (i) general controls are sufficient to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device, or (ii)

there is insufficient information from which to determine that general controls are sufficient to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device or to establish a performance standard to provide such assurance, but which is not life-supporting or life-sustaining or for a use which is of substanial importance in preventing impairment of human health, and which does not present a potential unreasonable risk of illness of injury.

(2) "Class II" means the class of devices that are or eventually will be subject to the requirements of a performance standard promulgated in accordance with section 514 of the act. A device is in class II if general controls alone are insufficient to provide reasonable assurance of its safety and effectiveness and there is sufficient information to establish a performance standard to provide such assurance.

(3) "Class III" means the class of devices for which premarket approval is or will be required in accordance with section 515 of the act. A device is in class III if insufficient information exists to determine that general controls are sufficient to provide reasonable assurance of its safety and effectiveness or to establish a performance standard to provide such assurance and if, in addition, the device is life-supporting of life-sustaining, or for a use which is of substantial importance in preventing impairment of human health, or if the device presents a potential unreasonable risk of illness or injury.

(d) "Implant" means a device that is placed into a surgically or naturally formed cavity of the human body. A device is regarded as an implant for the purpose of this part only if it is intended to remain implanted continuously for a period of 30 days or more, unless the Commissioner determines otherwise in order to protect human health.

(e) "Life-supporting or life-sustaining device" means a device that is essential to, or that yields information that is essential to, the restoration or continuation of a bodily function important to the continuation of human life.

(f) "Classification questionnaire" means a specific series of questions prepared by the Commissioner for use as guidelines by classification panels preparing recommendations to the Commissioner regarding classification and by petitioners submitting petitions for reclassification. The questions relate to the safety and effectiveness characteristics of a device and the answers are designed to help the Commissioner determine the proper classification of the device.

(g) "Supplemental data sheet" means information compiled by a classification panel or submitted in a petition for reclassification, including:

(1) A summary of the reasons for the recommendation (or petition);

(2) A summary of the data upon which the recommendation (or petition) is based;

(3) An identification of the risks to health (if any) presented by the device;

(4) To the extent practicable in the case of a class II or class III device, a recommendation for the assignment of a priority for the application of the requirements of performance standards or premarket approval;

(5) In the case of a class I device, a recommendation whether the device should be exempted from any of the requirements of registration, recordkeeping and reporting, or good manufacturing practice regulations;

(6) In the case of an implant or a life-supporting or life-sustaining device for which classification in class III is not recommended, a statement of the reasons for not recommending that the device be classified in class III;

(7) Identification of any needed restrictions on the use of the device, e.g., whether the device requires special labeling, should be banned, or should be used only upon authorization of a practitioner licensed by law to administer or use such device; and

(8) Any known existing standards applicable to the device, device components, or device materials.

(h) "Classification panel" means one of the several advisory committees established by the Commissioner under section 513 of the act and Part 14 of this chapter for the purpose of making recommendations to the Commissioner on the classification and reclassification of devices and for other purposes prescribed by the act or by the Commissioner.

(i) "Generic type of device" means a grouping of devices that do not differ significantly in purpose, design, materials, energy source, function, or any other feature related to safety and effectiveness, and for which similar regulatory controls are sufficient to provide reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness.

(j) "Petition" means a submission seeking reclassification of a device in accordance with § 860.123.

§ 860.5 Confidentiality and use of data and information submitted in connection with classification and reclassification.

(a) This section governs the availability for public disclosure and the use by the Commissioner of data and information submitted to classification panels or to the Commissioner in connection with the classification or reclassification of devices under this part.

(b) In general, data and information submitted to classification panels in connection with the classification of devices under § 860.84 will be available immediately for public disclosure upon request. However, except as provided by the special rules in paragraph (c) of this section, this provision does not apply to data and information exempt from public disclosure in accordance with Part 20 of this chapter: Such data and information will be available only in accordance with Part 20.

(c)(1) Safety and effectiveness data submitted to classification panels or to the Commissioner in connection with the classification of a device under § 860.84, which have not been disclosed previously to the public, as described in § 20.81 of this chapter, shall be regarded as confidential if the device is classified in to class III. Because the classification of a device under § 860.84 may be ascertained only upon publication of a final regulation, all safety and effectiveness data that have not been disclosed previously are not available for public disclosure unless and until the device is classified into class I or II, in which case the procedure in paragraph (c)(2) of this section applies.

(2) Thirty days after publication of a final regulation under § 860.84 classifying a device into class I or class II, safety and effectiveness data submitted for that device that had been regarded as confidential under paragraph (c)(1) of this section will be available for public disclosure and placed on public display in the office of the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration unless, within that 30-day period, the person who submitted the data demonstrates that the data still fall within the exemption for trade secrets and confidential commercial information described in § 20.61 of this chapter. Safety and effectiveness data submitted for a device that is classified into class III by regulation in accordance with § 860.84 will remain confidential and unavailable for public disclosure so long as such data have not been disclosed to the public as described in § 20.81 of this chapter.

(3) Because device classification affects generic types of devices, in making determinations under § 860.84 concerning the initial classification of a device, the classification panels and the Commissioner may consider safety and effectiveness data developed for another device in the same generic type, regardless of whether such data are regarded currently as confidential under paragraph (c)(1) of this section.

(d)(1) The fact of its existence and the contents of a petition for reclassification filed in accordance with § 860.130 or § 860.132 are available for public disclosure at the time the petition is received by the Food and Drug Administration.

(2) The fact of the existence of a petition for reclassification filed in accordance with § 860.134 or § 860.136 is available for public disclosure at the time the petition is received by the Food and Drug Administration. The contents of such a petition are not available for public disclosure for the period of time following its receipt (not longer than 30 days) during which the petition is reviewed for any deficiencies preventing the Commissioner from making a decision on it.

Once it is determined that the petition contains no deficiencies preventing the Commissioner from making a decision on it, the petition will be filed with the Dockets Management Branch and its entire contents will be available for public disclosure and subject to consideration by classification panels and by the Commissioner in making a decision on the petition. If, during this 30-day period of time, the petition is found to contain deficiencies that prevent the Commissioner from making a decision on it, the petitioner will be so notified and afforded an opportunity to correct the deficiencies.

Thirty days after notice to the petitioner of deficiencies in the petition, the contents of the petition will be available for public disclosure unless, within that 30 days, the petitioner submits supplemental material intended to correct the deficiencies in the petition. The Commissioner, in the Commissioner's discretion, may allow withdrawal of a deficient petition during the 30-day period provided for correcting deficiencies. Any supplemental material submitted by the petitioner, together with the material in the original petition, is considered as a new petition. The new petition is reviewed for deficiencies in the same manner as the original petition, and the same procedures for notification and correction of deficiencies are followed. Once the petitioner has corrected the deficiencies, the entire contents of the petition will be available for public disclosure and subject to consideration by classification panels and by the Commissioner in making a decision on the petition. Deficient petitions which have not been corrected within 180 days after notification of deficiency will be returned to the petitioner and will not be considered further unless resubmitted.

(e) The Commissioner may not disclose, or use as the basis for reclassification of a device from class III to class II, any information reported to or otherwise obtained by the Commissioner under section 513, 514, 515, 516, 518, 519, 520(f), 520(g), or 704 of the act that falls within the exemption described in § 20.61 of this chapter for trade secrets and confidential commercial information. The exemption described in § 20.61 does not apply to data or information contained in a petition for reclassification submitted in accordance with § 860.130 or § 860.132, or in a petition submitted in accordance with § 860.134 or § 860.136 that has been determined to contain no deficiencies that prevent the Commissioner from making a decision on it. Accordingly, all data and information contained in such petitions may be disclosed by the Commissioner and used as the basis for reclassification of a device from class III to class II.

(f) For purposes of this section, safety and effectiveness data include data and results derived from all studies and tests of a device on animals and humans and from all studies and tests of the device itself intended to establish or determine its safety and effectiveness.

§ 860.7 Determination of safety and effectiveness.

(a) The classification panels, in reviewing evidence concerning the safety and effectiveness of a device and in preparing advice to the Commissioner, and the Commissioner, in making determinations concerning the safety and effectiveness of a device, will apply the rules in this section.

(b) In determining the safety and effectiveness of a device for purposes of classification, establishment of performance standards for class II devices, and premarket approval of class III devices, the Commissioner and the classification panels will consider the following, among other relevant factors:

(1) The persons for whose use the device is represented or intended;

(2) The conditions of use for the device, including conditions of use prescribed, recommended, or suggested in the labeling or advertising of the device, and other intended conditions of use;

(3) The probable benefit to health from the use of the device weighed against any probable injury or illness from such use; and

(4) The reliability of the device.

(c)(1) Although the manufacturer may submit any form of evidence to the Food and Drug Administration in an attempt to substantiate the safety and effectiveness of a device, the agency relies upon only valid scientific evidence to determine whether there is reasonable assurance that the device is safe and effective. After considering the nature of the device and the rules in this section, the Commissioner will determine whether the evidence submitted or otherwise available to the Commissioner is valid scientific evidence for the purpose of determining the safety or effectiveness of a particular device and whether the available evidence, when taken as a whole, is adequate to support a determination that there is reasonable assurance that the device is safe and effective for its conditions of use.

(2) Valid scientific evidence is evidence from well-controlled investigations, partially controlled studies, studies and objective trials without matched controls, well-documented case histories conducted by qualified experts, and reports of significant human experience with a marketed device, from which it can fairly and responsibly be concluded by qualified experts that there is reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of a device under its conditions of use. The evidence required may vary according to the characteristics of the device, its conditions of use, the existence and adequacy of warnings and other restrictions, and the extent of experience with its use. Isolated case reports, random experience, reports lacking sufficient details to permit scientific evaluation, and unsubstantiated opinions are not regarded as valid scientific evidence to show safety or effectiveness. Such information may be considered, however, in identifying a device the safety and effectiveness of which is questionable.

(d)(1) There is reasonable assurance that a device is safe when it can be determined, based upon valid scientific evidence, that the probable benefits to health from use of the device for its intended uses and conditions of use, when accompanied by adequate directions and warnings against unsafe use, outweigh any probable risks. The valid scientific evidence used to determine the safety of a device shall adequately demonstrate the absence of unreasonable risk of illness or injury associated with the use of the device for its intended uses and conditions of use.

(2) Among the types of evidence that may be required, when appropriate, to determine that there is reasonable assurance that a device is safe are investigations using laboratory animals, investigations involving human subjects, and nonclinical investigations including in vitro studies.

(e)(1) There is reasonable assurance that a device is effective when it can be determined, based upon valid scientific evidence, that in a significant portion of the target population, the use of the device for its intended uses and conditions of use, when accompanied by adequate directions for use and warnings against unsafe use, will provide clinically significant results.

(2) The valid scientific evidence used to determine the effectiveness of a device shall consist principally of well-controlled investigations, as defined in paragraph (f) of this section, unless the Commissioner authorizes reliance upon other valid scientific evidence which the Commissioner has determined is sufficient evidence from which to determine the effectiveness of a device, even in the absence of well-controlled investigations. The Commissioner may make such a determination where the requirement of well-controlled investigations in paragraph (f) of this section is not reasonably applicable to the device.

(f) The following principles have been developed over a period of years and are recognized by the scientific community as the essentials of a well-controlled clinical investigation. They provide the basis for the Commissioner's determination whether there is reasonable assurance that a device is effective based upon well-controlled investigations and are also useful in assessing the weight to be given to other valid scientific evidence permitted under this section.

(1) The plan or protocol for the study and the report of the results of a well-controlled investigation shall include the following:

(i) A clear statement of the objectives of the study;

(ii) A method of selection of the subjects that:

(*a*) Provides adequate assurance that the subjects are suitable for the purposes of the study, provides diagnostic criteria of the condition to be treated or diagnosed, provides confirmatory laboratory tests where appropriate and, in the case of a device to prevent a disease or condition, provides evidence of susceptibility and exposure to the condition against which prophylaxis is desired;

(*b*) Assigns the subjects to test groups, if used, in such a way as to minimize any possible bias;

(*c*) Assures comparability between test groups and any control groups of pertinent variables such as sex, severity or duration of the disease, and use of therapy other than the test device;

(iii) An explanation of the methods of observation and recording of results utilized, including the variables measured, quantitation, assessment of any subject's response, and steps taken to minimize any possible bias of subjects and observers;

(iv) A comparison of the results of treatment or diagnosis with a control in such a fashion as to permit quantitative evaluation. The precise nature of the control must be specified and an explanation provided of the methods employed to minimize any possible bias of the observers and analysts of the data. Level and methods of "blinding," if appropriate and used, are to be documented. Generally, four types of comparisons are recognized:

(*a*) *No treatments.* Where objective measurements of effectiveness are available and placebo effect is negligible, comparison of the objective results in comparable groups of treated and untreated patients;

(*b*) *Placebo control.* Where there may be a placebo effect with the use of a device, comparison of the results of use of the device with an ineffective device used under conditions designed to resemble the conditions of use under investigation as far as possible;

(*c*) *Active treatment control.* Where an effective regimen of therapy may be used for comparison, e.g., the condition being treated is such that the use of a placebo or the withholding of treatment would be inappropriate or contrary to the interest of the patient;

(*d*) *Historical control.* In certain circumstances, such as those involving diseases with high and predictable mortality or signs and symptoms of predictable duration or severity, or in the case of prophylaxis where morbidity is predictable, the results of use of the device may be compared quantitatively with prior experience historically derived from the adequately documented natural history of the disease or condition in comparable patients or populations who received no treatment or who followed an established effective regimen (therapeutic, diagnostic, prophylactic).

(v) A summary of the methods of analysis and an evaluation of the data derived from the study, including any appropriate statistical methods utilized.

(2) To insure the reliability of the results of an investigation, a well-controlled investigation shall involve the use of a test device that is standardized in its composition or design and performance.

(g)(1) It is the responsibility of each manufacturer and importer of a device to assure that adequate, valid scientific evidence exists, and to furnish such evidence to the Food and Drug Administration to provide reasonable assurance that the device is safe and effective for its intended uses and conditions of use. The failure of a manufacturer or importer of a device to present to the Food and Drug Administration adequate, valid scientific evidence showing that there is reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device, if regulated by general controls alone, or by general controls and performance standards, may support a determination that the device be classified into class III.

(2) The Commissioner may require that a manufacturer, importer, or distributor make reports or provide other information bearing on the classification of a device and indicating whether there is reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device or whether it is adulterated or misbranded under the act.

(3) A requirement for a report or other information under this paragraph will comply with section 519 of the act. Accordingly, the requirement

will state the reason or purpose for such request; will describe the required report or information as clearly as possible; will not be imposed on a manufacturer, importer, or distributor of a classified device that has been exempted from such a requirement in accordance with § 860.95; will prescribe the time for compliance with the requirement; and will prescribe the form and manner in which the report or information is to be provided.

(4) Required information that has been submitted previously to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health need not be resubmitted, but may be incorporated by reference.

[43 FR 32993, July 28, 1978, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart B—Classification

§ 860.84 Classification procedures for "old devices."

(a) This subpart sets forth the procedures for the original classification of a device that either was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or is substantially equivalent to a device that was in commercial distribution before that date. Such a device will be classified by regulation into either class I (general controls), class II (performance standards), or class III (premarket approval), depending upon the level of regulatory control required to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device (§ 860.3(c)). This subpart does not apply to a device that is classified into class III by statute under section 513(f) of the act because the Food and Drug Administration has determined that the device is not "substantially equivalent" to any device subject to this subpart or under section 520(l) (1) through (3) of the act because the device was regarded previously as a new drug. This subpart does apply to a device that was previously regarded as an antibiotic drug and that is subject to section 520(l)(4) of the act. In classifying a device under this section, the Food and Drug Administration will follow the procedures described in paragraphs (b) through (g) of this section.

(b) The Commissioner refers the device to the appropriate classification panel organized and operated in accordance with section 513 (b) and (c) of the act and Part 14 of this chapter.

(c) In order to make recommendations to the Commissioner on the class of regulatory control (class I, class II, or class III) appropriate for the device, the panel reviews the device for safety and effectiveness. In so doing, the panel:

(1) Considers the factors set forth in § 860.7 relating to the determination of safety and effectiveness;

(2) Determines the safety and effectiveness of the device on the basis of the types of scientific evidence set forth in § 860.7;

(3) Answers the questions in the classification questionnaire applicable to the device being classified;

(4) Completes a supplemental data sheet for the device;

(5) Provides, to the maximum extent practicable, an opportunity for interested persons to submit data and views on the classification of the device in accordance with Part 14 of this chapter.

(d) Based upon its review of evidence of the safety and effectiveness of the device, and applying the definition of each class in § 860.3(c), the panel submits to the Commissioner a recommendation regarding the classification of the device. The recommendation will include:

(1) A summary of the reasons for the recommendation;

(2) A summary of the data upon which the recommendation is based, accompanied by references to the sources containing such data;

(3) An identification of the risks to health (if any) presented by the device;

(4) In the case of a recommendation for classification into class I, a recommendation as to whether the device should be exempted from the requirements of one or more of the following sections of the act: section 510 (registration, product listing, and premarket notification) section 519 (records and reports) and section 520(f) (good manufacturing practice regulations) in accordance with § 860.95;

(5) In the case of a recommendation for classification into class II or class III, to the extent practicable, a recom-

mendation for the assignment to the device of a priority for the application of a performance standard or a premarket approval requirement;

(6) In the case of a recommendation for classification of an implant or a life-supporting or life-sustaining device into class I or class II, a statement of why premarket approval is not necessary to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device, accompanied by references to supporting documentation and data satisfying the requirements of § 860.7, and an identification of the risks to health, if any, presented by the device.

(e) A panel recommendation is regarded as preliminary until the Commissioner has reviewed it, discussed it with the panel if appropriate, and published a proposed regulation classifying the device. Preliminary panel recommendations are filed in the Dockets Management Branch's office upon receipt and are available to the public upon request.

(f) The Commissioner publishes the panel's recommendation in the FEDERAL REGISTER, together with a proposed regulation classifying the device, and other devices of that generic type, and provides interested persons an opportunity to submit comments on the recommendation and proposed regulation.

(g) The Commissioner reviews the comments and issues a final regulation classifying the device and other devices of that generic type. The regulation will:

(1) If classifying the device into class I, prescribe which, if any, of the requirements of sections 510, 519, and 520(f) of the act will not apply to the device and state the reasons for making the requirements inapplicable, in accordance with § 860.95;

(2) If classifying the device into class II or class III, at the discretion of the Commissioner, establish priorities for the application to the device of a performance standard or a premarket approval requirement;

(3) If classifying an implant, or life-supporting or life-sustaining device, comply with § 860.93(b).

§ 860.93 Classification of implants, life-supporting or life-sustaining devices.

(a) The classification panel will recommend classification into class III of any implant or life-supporting or life-sustaining device unless the panel determines that such classification is not necessary to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device. If the panel recommends classification or reclassification of such a device into a class other than class III, it shall set forth in its recommendation the reasons for so doing together with references to supporting documentation and data satisfying the requirements of § 860.7, and an identification of the risks to health, if any, presented by the device.

(b) The Commissioner will classify an implant or life-supporting or life-sustaining device into class III unless the Commissioner determines that such classification is not necessary to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device. If the Commissioner proposes to classify or reclassify such a device into a class other than class III, the regulation or order effecting such classification or reclassification will be accompanied by a full statement of the reasons for so doing. A statement of the reasons for not classifying or retaining the device in class III may be in the form of concurrence with the reasons for the recommendation of the classification panel, together with supporting documentation and data satisfying the requirements of § 860.7 and an identification of the risks to health, if any, presented by the device.

§ 860.95 Exemptions from sections 510, 519, and 520(f) of the act.

(a) A panel recommendation to the Commissioner that a device be classified or reclassified into class I will include a recommendation as to whether the device should be exempted from some or all of the requirements of one or more of the following sections of the act: Section 510 (registration, product listing and premarket notification), section 519 (records and reports), and section 520(f) (good manufacturing practice regulations).

(b) A regulation or an order classifying or reclassifying a device into class I will specify which requirements, if any, of sections 510, 519, and 520(f) of the act the device is to be exempted from, together with the reasons for such exemption.

(c) The Commissioner will grant exemptions under this section only if the Commissioner determines that the requirements from which the device is exempted are not necessary to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device.

Subpart C—Reclassification

§ 860.120 General.

(a) Sections 513(e) and (f), 514(b), 515(b), and 520(l) of the act provide for reclassification of a device and prescribe the procedures to be followed to effect reclassification. The purposes of Subpart C are to:

(1) Set forth the requirements as to form and content of petitions for reclassification;

(2) Describe the circumstances in which each of the five statutory reclassification provisions applies; and

(3) Explain the procedure for reclassification prescribed in the five statutory reclassification provisions.

(b) The criteria for determining the proper class for a device are set forth in § 860.3(c). The reclassification of any device within a generic type of device causes the reclassification of all substantially equivalent devices within that generic type. Accordingly, a petition for the reclassification of a specific device will be considered a petition for reclassification of all substantially equivalent devices within the same generic type.

(c) Any interested person may submit a petition for reclassification under section 513(e), 514(b), or 515(b). A manufacturer or importer may submit a petition for reclassification under section 513(f) or 520(l).

§ 860.123 Reclassification petition: Content and form.

(a) Unless otherwise provided in writing by the Commissioner, any petition for reclassification of a device, regardless of the section of the act under which it is filed, shall include the following:

(1) A specification of the type of device for which reclassification is requested;

(2) A statement of the action requested by the petitioner, e.g., "It is requested that — device(s) be reclassified from class III to a class II";

(3) A completed supplemental data sheet applicable to the device for which reclassification is requested;

(4) A completed classification questionnaire applicable to the device for which reclassification is requested;

(5) A statement of the basis for disagreement with the present classification status of the device;

(6) A full statement of the reasons, together with supporting data satisfying the requirements of § 860.7, why the device should not be classified into its present classification and how the proposed classification will provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device;

(7) Representative data and information known by the petitioner that are unfavorable to the petitioner's position;

(8) If the petition is based upon new information under section 513(e), 514(b), or 515(b) of the act, a summary of the new information;

(9) Copies of source documents from which new information used to support the petition has been obtained (attached as appendices to the petition).

(b) Each petition submitted pursuant to this section shall be:

(1) Addressed to the Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Document Mail Center (HFZ-401), 8757 Georgia Avenue, Silver Spring, Md. 20910;

(2) Marked clearly with the section of the act under which the petition is being submitted, i.e., "513(e)," "513(f)," "514(b)," "515(b)," or "520(l) Petition";

(3) Bound in a volume or volumes, where necessary; and

(4) Submitted in an original and two copies.

[43 FR 32993, July 28, 1978, as amended at 49 FR 14505, Apr. 12, 1984; 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 860.125 Consultation with panels.

(a) When the Commissioner is required to refer a reclassification petition to a classification panel for its recommendation under § 860.134, or is required, or chooses, to consult with a panel concerning a reclassification petition, such as under § 860.130, § 860.132, or § 860.136, the Commissioner will distribute a copy of the petition, or its relevant portions, to each panel member and will consult with the panel in one of the following ways:

(1) Consultation by telephone with at least a majority of current voting panel members and, when possible, nonvoting panel members;

(2) Consultation by mail with at least a majority of current voting panel members and, when possible, nonvoting panel members; and

(3) Discussion at a panel meeting.

(b) The method of consultation chosen by the Commissioner will depend upon the importance and complexity of the subject matter involved and the time available for action. When time and circumstances permit, the Commissioner will consult with a panel through discussion at a panel meeting.

(c) When a petition is submitted under § 860.134 for a post-enactment, not substantially equivalent device ("new device"), in consulting with the panel the Commissioner will obtain a recommendation that includes the information described in § 860.84(d). In consulting with a panel about a petition submitted under § 860.130, § 860.132, or § 860.136, the Commissioner may or may not obtain a formal recommendation.

§ 860.130 General procedures under section 513(e) of the act.

(a) Section 513(e) of the act applies to reclassification proceedings under the act based upon new information.

(b) A proceeding to reclassify a device under section 513(e) may be initiated:

(1) On the initiative of the Commissioner alone;

(2) On the initiative of the Commissioner in response to a request for change in classification based upon new information, under section 514(b) or 515(b) of the act (see § 860.132); or

(3) In response to the petition of an interested person, based upon new information, filed in accordance with § 860.123.

(c) The rulemaking procedures in § 10.40 of this chapter apply to proceedings to reclassify a device under section 513(e), except that the Commissioner may secure a recommendation with respect to a proposed reclassification from the classification panel to which the device was last referred. The panel will consider a proposed reclassification submitted to it by the Commissioner in accordance with the consultation procedures of § 860.125. Any recommendation submitted to the Commissioner by the panel will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER when the Commissioner promulgates a regulation under this section.

(d) Within 180 days after the filing of a petition for reclassification under this section, the Commissioner, by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, will either deny the petition or give notice of his intent to initiate a change in the classification of the device.

(e) If a device is reclassified under this section, the regulation effecting the reclassification may revoke any performance standard or premarket approval requirement that previously applied to the device but that is no longer applicable because of the change in classification.

(f) A regulation under this section changing the classification of a device from class III to class II may provide that such classification will not take effect until the effective date of a performance standard for the device established under section 514 of the act.

§ 860.132 Procedures when the Commissioner initiates a performance standard or premarket approval proceeding under section 514(b) or 515(b) of the act.

(a) Sections 514(b) and 515(b) of the act require the Commissioner to provide, by notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER, an opportunity for interested parties to request a change in the classification of a device based upon new information relevant to its classification when the Commissioner initiates a proceeding either to develop a performance standard for the device if in class II, or to promulgate a regulation requiring premarket approval for the device if in class III. In either case, if the Commissioner agrees that the new information warrants a change in classification, the Commissioner will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER notice of the Commissioner's intent to initiate a proceeding under section 513(e) of the act and § 860.130 to effect such a change.

(b) The procedures for effecting a change in classification under sections 514(b) and 515(b) of the act are as follows:

(1) Within 15 days after publication of the Commissioner's notice referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, an interested person files a petition for reclassification in accordance with § 860.123.

(2) The Commissioner consults with the appropriate classification panel with regard to the petition in accordance with § 860.125.

(3) Within 60 days after publication of the notice referred to in paragraph (a) of this section, the Commissioner, by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, either denies the petition or gives notice of his intent to initiate a change in classification in accordance with § 860.130.

§ 860.134 Procedures for "new devices" under section 513(f) of the act.

(a) Section 513(f)(2) of the act applies to reclassification proceedings initiated by a manufacturer or importer for reclassification of a device currently in class III by operation of section 513(f)(1) of the act. This category includes any device that is to be first introduced or delivered for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution after May 28, 1976, unless:

(1) It is substantially equivalent to another device that was in commercial distribution before that date and had not been regulated before that date as a new drug; or

(2) It is substantially equivalent to another device that was not in commercial distribution before such date but which has been classified into class I or class II; or

(3) The Commissioner has classified the device into class I or class II in response to a petition for reclassification under this section.

The Commissioner determines whether a device is "substantially equivalent" for purposes of the application of this section. If a manufacturer or importer believes that a device is not "substantially equivalent" but that it should not be in class III under the criteria in § 860.3(c), the manufacturer or importer may petition for reclassification under this section. A manufacturer or importer who believes that a device is "substantially equivalent" and wishes to proceed to market the device shall submit a premarket notification in accordance with Part 807 of this chapter. After considering a premarket notification, the Commissioner will determine whether the device is "substantially equivalent" and will notify the manufacturer or importer of such determination in accordance with Part 807 of this chapter.

(b) The procedures for effecting reclassification under section 513(f) of the act are as follows:

(1) The manufacturer or importer of the device petitions for reclassification of the device in accordance with § 860.123.

(2) Within 30 days after the petition is filed, the Commissioner notifies the petitioner of any deficiencies in the petition that prevent the Commissioner from making a decision on it and allows the petitioner to supplement a deficient petition. Within 30 days after any supplemental material is received, the Commissioner notifies the petitioner whether the petition, as supplemented, is adequate for review.

(3) After determining that the petition contains no deficiencies precluding a decision on it, the Commissioner refers the petition to the appropriate classification panel for its review and recommendation whether to approve or deny the petition.

(4) Within 90 days after the date the petition is referred to the panel, following the review procedures set forth in § 860.84(c) for the original classification of an "old" device, the panel submits to the Commissioner its recommendation containing the informa-

tion set forth in § 860.84(d). A panel recommendation is regarded as preliminary until the Commissioner has reviewed it, discussed it with the panel, if appropriate, and developed a proposed reclassification order. Preliminary panel recommendations are filed in the Dockets Management Branch upon receipt and are available to the public upon request.

(5) The panel recommendation is published in the FEDERAL REGISTER as soon as practicable and interested persons are provided an opportunity to comment on the recommendation.

(6) Within 90 days after the panel's recommendation is received (and no more than 210 days after the date the petition was filed), the Commissioner denies or approves the petition by order in the form of a letter to the petitioner. If the Commissioner approves the petition, the order will classify the device into class I or class II in accordance with the criteria set forth in § 860.3(c) and subject to the applicable requirements of § 860.93, relating to the classification of implants, life-supporting or life-sustaining devices, and § 860.95, relating to exemptions from certain requirements of the act.

(7) Within a reasonable time after issuance of an order under this section, the Commissioner announces the order by notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 860.136 Procedures for transitional products under section 520(l) of the act.

(a) Section 520(l)(2) of the act applies to reclassification proceedings initiated by a manufacturer or importer for reclassification of a device currently in class III by operation of section 520(l)(1) of the act. This section applies only to devices that the Food and Drug Administration regarded as "new drugs" before May 28, 1976.

(b) The procedures for effecting reclassification under section 520(l) are as follows:

(1) The manufacturer or importer of the device files a petition for reclassification of the device in accordance with § 860.123.

(2) Within 30 days after the petition is filed, the Commissioner notifies the petitioner of any deficiencies in the petition that prevent the Commissioner from making a decision on it, allowing the petitioner to supplement a deficient petition. Within 30 days after any supplemental material is received, the Commissioner notifies the petitioner whether the petition, as supplemented, is adequate for review

(3) The Commissioner provides the petitioner an opportunity for a regulatory hearing conducted in accordance with Part 16 of this chapter.

(4) The Commissioner consults with the appropriate classification panel with regard to the petition in accordance with § 860.125.

(5) Within 180 days after the petition is filed (where the Commissioner has determined it to be adequate for review), the Commissioner, by order in the form of a letter to the petitioner, either denies the petition or classifies the device into class I or class II in accordance with the criteria set forth in § 860.3(c).

(6) Within a reasonable time after issuance of an order under this section, the Commissioner announces the order by notice published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

PART 861—PROCEDURES FOR PERFORMANCE STANDARDS DEVELOPMENT

Subpart A—General

Sec.
861.1 Purpose and scope.
861.5 Statement of policy.
861.7 Contents of standards.

Subpart B—Procedures for Performance Standards Development and Publication

861.20 Summary of standards development process.
861.22 Invitation for a standard.
861.24 Existing standard as a proposed standard.
861.26 Offer to develop a proposed standard.
861.28 Acceptance of offer to develop a standard.
861.30 Development of standards.
861.32 Contribution by the Food and Drug Administration to the costs of developing a proposed standard.
861.34 Amendment or revocation of a standard.
861.36 Effective dates.

Sec.
861.38 Standards advisory committees.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501, 502, 513, 514, 701, 52 Stat. 1049-1051 as amended, 1055-1056 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-552 (21 U.S.C. 351, 352, 360c, 360d, 371).

SOURCE: 45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General

§ 861.1 Purpose and scope.

(a) This part implements section 514 of the act with respect to the initiation, development, establishment, amendment, and revocation of performance standards applicable to devices intended for human use.

(b) Performance standards may be established for: (1) A class II device; (2) a class III device which, upon the effective date of the standard, is reclassified into class II; and (3) a class III device, as a condition to premarket approval under section 515 of the act to reduce or eliminate a risk or risks associated with such device.

(c) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

[45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 23686, Apr. 8, 1980]

§ 861.5 Statement of policy.

In carrying out its duties under this section, the Food and Drug Administration will, to the maximum extent practical:

(a) Use personnel, facilities, and other technical support available in other Federal agencies;

(b) Consult with other Federal agencies concerned with standard setting and other nationally or internationally recognized standard-setting entities; and

(c) Invite participation, through conferences, workshops, or other means, by representatives of scientific, professional, industry, or consumer organizations who can make a significant contribution.

§ 861.7 Contents of standards.

Any performance standard established under this part will include such provisions as the Food and Drug Administration determines are necessary to provide reasonable assurance of the safety and effectiveness of the device or devices for which it is established. Where necessary to provide such assurance, a standard will address (but need not be limited to):

(a) Performance characteristics of the device;

(b) The design, construction, components, ingredients, and properties of the device, and its compatibility with power systems and connections to such systems;

(c) The manufacturing processes and quality control procedures applicable to the device;

(d) Testing of the device on either a sample or a 100-percent basis by the manufacturer, or, if it is determined that no other more practical means are available to the Food and Drug Administration to assure the conformity of the device to the standard, providing for testing by the Food and Drug Administration or a third person to ensure that the device conforms to the standard;

(e) The publication of the results of each test or of certain tests of the device to show that the device conforms to the portions of the standard for which the test or tests were required;

(f) Manufacturers' certification to purchasers or to the Food and Drug Administration that the device conforms to the applicable performance standard;

(g) Restrictions on the sale and distribution of the device, but only to the extent authorized under section 520(e) of the act;

(h) The use, and the form and content, of labeling for the proper installation, maintenance, operation, and use of the device. Among the provisions that may be required in the labeling are warnings; storage and transportation information; expiration dates; the date and place of manufacture; the results that may be expected if the device is used properly; the ranges of accuracy of diagnostic information; instructions regarding the proper care of, and the proper components, accessories, or other equipment to be used with the device; and statements concerning the appropriate patient population, for example, a statement that the device is considered safe and effective only when used by, or in the treatment of, a patient who has been tested by particular designated procedures and found to have an illness or condition for which use of the device is indicated by a person skilled in the use of the device.

Subpart B—Procedures for Performance Standards Development and Publication

§ 861.20 Summary of standards development process.

The procedure by which a performance standard for a device may be developed and promulgated is as follows:

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will initiate a proceeding for the development of a performance standard for a device by publishing in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of opportunity to request (within 15 days of the date of publication of the notice) reclassification of the device in accordance with § 860.130.

(b) If, after publication of a notice under paragraph (a) of this section, the Food and Drug Administration receives a request to change the classification of the device, the Food and Drug Administration will, within 60 days of the publication of the notice, by order published in the FEDERAL REGISTER, either deny the request or give notice of intent to initiate a change in the classification.

(c) If the Food and Drug Administration determines that the device will remain classified in class II, a notice will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER inviting any person, including any Federal agency, to submit within 60 days after the date of publication, either an existing standard as a proposed performance standard or an offer to develop such a standard.

(d) Following expiration of the 60-day period, the Food and Drug Administration will:

(1) Authorize a Federal agency to develop a proposed performance standard if the Food and Drug Administration determines that a performance standard can be developed by a Federal agency, based on the personnel, expertise, and resources of the agency; or

(2) Accept an existing standard as a proposed performance standard or as a basis upon which a proposed performance standard may be developed. An existing standard may be one that is submitted in response to the invitation for standards or it may be a standard that has been issued or adopted (or is being developed) by any Federal agency or any other qualified entity. The Food and Drug Administration will determine that such a standard is based upon scientific data and information and has been subjected to adequate scientific consideration; or

(3) Accept one or more offers to develop a proposed standard; or

(4) Proceed to develop a proposed standard; or

(5) Take other appropriate action to facilitate development of a performance standard for the device.

(e) After publication of a notice inviting the submission of an existing standard as a proposed performance standard or an offer to develop such a standard in accordance with § 861.22, the Food and Drug Administration may either:

(1) Publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER, in a notice of proposed rulemaking in accordance with § 10.40, a proposed performance standard for the device (the notice of proposed rulemaking will include proposed findings with respect to the degree of risk of illness or injury the proposed standard is designed to eliminate or reduce and the benefit to the public from the device); or

(2) Terminate the proceeding to develop and promulgate a performance standard by publishing in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice to that effect, together with the reasons therefor and, unless such notice is issued because the device is a banned device under section 516 of the act, initiate a proceeding under section 513(e) of the act to reclassify the device; or

(3) Take other appropriate action.

(f) If the Food and Drug Administration initiates a rulemaking proceeding under paragraph (e)(1) of this section, the Food and Drug Administration will:

(1) Complete the proceeding and establish the performance standard for

the device in accordance with this part and § 10.40; or

(2) Terminate the proceeding by publishing in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice announcing such termination and the reasons therefor and, unless the proceeding is terminated because the device is a banned device, initiate a proceeding in accordance with section 513(e) of the act to reclassify the device; or

(3) Take other appropriate action.

§ 861.22 Invitation for a standard.

The notice to be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER inviting offers to develop a performance standard will contain the following information:

(a) The time period within which the standard is to be developed, which may be extended by the Food and Drug Administration for good cause;

(b) A description or other designation of the device for which a performance standard may be established;

(c) A statement of the risks associated with use of the device and which are intended to be controlled by a performance standard, including pertinent portions of panel classification recommendations with respect to the device;

(d) A summary of the data from which the Food and Drug Administration has determined a need for initiation of the proceeding to develop a performance standard, including pertinent portions of the recommendations of classification panels with respect to the device;

(e) Identification of any existing performance standard known to the Food and Drug Administration that may be relevant to the proceeding; and

(f) The approximate number of products (i.e., kinds of models) within the generic type of device that may be subject to the performance standard.

§ 861.24 Existing standard as a proposed standard.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration may accept an existing standard or a standard that is being developed, if it includes:

(1) A description of the procedures used to develop the standard and a list of the persons and organizations that participated in its development, to the extent that such information is available or reasonably obtainable;

(2) An identification of the specific portions of the existing standard that the person submitting the standard believes are appropriate for adoption as, or inclusion in, the proposed standard; and

(3) A summary of the test data, or, if requested by the Food and Drug Administration, all such data or other information supporting the specific portions of the standard identified by the person submitting the standard.

(b) The Food and Drug Administration will publish a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER stating either that it has accepted, or has accepted with modification, as a proposed standard, an existing standard or one that is being developed, or that an existing standard is not acceptable, together with the reasons therefor.

§ 861.26 Offer to develop a proposed standard.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration may consider any offers to develop a proposed standard that include:

(1) Information on the offeror's expertise and experience that qualifies the offeror to develop a proposed standard for the particular device;

(2) Sufficient information on the offeror's financial stability to establish capability to conduct adequate standards development either with or without contribution by the Food and Drug Administration to the offeror's costs;

(3) Information relating to any potential conflicts of interest on the part of the offeror, its directors or officers, or any employees or consultants who may participate in the development of the standard, including any financial interest in the particular device or in the device industry generally, current industrial or commercial affiliates of the offeror, current sources of financial support for research, and all business entities in which the offeror has a financial interest which may be relevant to the offeror's qualifications to develop a standard for the particular device;

(4) [Reserved]

(5) A detailed description of the procedures the offeror intends to utilize in developing the standard;

(6) A description of how the offeror intends to provide interested persons adequate and reasonable notice of their right and opportunity to participate in the development of the standard;

(7) A description of the method whereby interested persons who respond to the notice may participate, either in person or through correspondence, in the development of the standard;

(8) A statement describing the facilities or equipment the offeror intends to utilize in developing the standard, and how the offeror intends to gain access to them;

(9) An estimate of the time required to develop the standard, including a detailed schedule for each phase of the procedure;

(10) A description of the method the offeror intends to use or has used to acquire test data or other information needed to support the standard;

(11) A description of the method the offeror intends to use to maintain records of the development of the standard and other relevant matters and to make such records available for disclosure during development, and a schedule for meeting the periodic reporting requirements of § 861.30(b);

(12) If the offeror desires, a request for contribution by the Food and Drug Administration to the offeror's cost of developing the standard, which shall include:

(i) A list of the items of expense for which contribution is sought and the amount requested for each item;

(ii) A justification of each item of expense, including an explanation of how the contribution is likely to ensure development of a more satisfactory standard;

(iii) A statement that the offeror will employ an adequate accounting system (one in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles) to record the costs and expenditures allocable to development of the standard; and

(iv) A statement requesting an advance payment of funds, if necessary to enable the offeror to meet operating expenses during the development period.

(b) Information included in an offer to develop a proposed standard is to be made available to the public only if the offer is accepted (except for information exempt from disclosure under § 20.61), or if disclosure is required under Part 20 of this chapter.

(Sec. 701, 52 Stat. 1055-1056 as amended, (21 U.S.C. 371); secs. 351, 354-361, 58 Stat. 702 as amended, (42 U.S.C. 262, 263b-264); sec. 102(2)(C), 83 Stat. 853 (42 U.S.C. 4332))

[45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980, as amended at 50 FR 16669, Apr. 26, 1985]

§ 861.28 Acceptance of offer to develop a standard.

(a) In determining whether to accept an offer to develop a performance standard, the Food and Drug Administration will evaluate the qualifications of the offeror on the basis of the offeror's expertise, experience, financial stability, and potential conflicts of interest. In choosing among competing offerors, the offerors with no financial interest in the particular device for which a proposed standard is sought or in the device industry generally will be preferred, all other things being equal.

(b) If the conditions provided in § 861.20(d)(3) have been met, and one or more offers that satisfy the requirements of § 861.26 have been submitted, one or more qualifying offers to develop a proposed standard may be accepted.

(c) The Food and Drug Administration will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER the name and address of each person whose offer to develop a standard is accepted and a summary of the terms of the accepted offer, including a statement of the extent to which the Food and Drug Administration will contribute, if at all, to the cost of developing the proposed standard.

(d) If the Food and Drug Administration does not accept an offer to develop a proposed standard submitted in response to a published invitation, the Food and Drug Administration will publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of that fact together with the reasons for the decision.

§ 861.30 Development of standards.

(a) Any person, including any Federal agency, engaged in the development of a proposed standard under this section shall:

(1) Support its proposed performance standard by such test data or other documents or materials as the Food and Drug Administration may reasonably require;

(2) Provide interested persons an opportunity to participate in the development of the standard by accepting comments and, where appropriate, holding public meetings on issues relating to development of the standard. Notice of the opportunity to participate in the development of the standard shall be furnished in a manner reasonably calculated to reach the majority of persons interested in the development of the standard. This requirement shall be satisfied by the Food and Drug Administration or any other Federal agency by publishing such a notice in the FEDERAL REGISTER. Whenever it is appropriate, FDA will use the FEDERAL REGISTER to make announcements about the standards development process of standard developers other than Federal agencies.

(3) Maintain records disclosing the course of development of the proposed standard, the comments and other information submitted by any person in connection with such development (including comments and information regarding the need for a standard), and such other information as may be required by the Food and Drug Administration to evaluate the standard.

(b) Any person engaged in the development of a standard shall, in addition to complying with paragraph (a) of this section:

(1) Submit progress reports on a quarterly basis or as otherwise required by the Food and Drug Administration;

(2) Cooperate fully with the Food and Drug Administration and permit duly authorized representatives of the Food and Drug Administration to inspect its facilities and developmental activities to determine whether satisfactory progress is being made toward completion of the standard;

(3) If receiving contributions from the Food and Drug Administration toward the cost of developing the proposed standard:

(i) Submit, on a quarterly basis, a full accounting of such contributions,

(ii) Remit all unexpended amounts within 60 calendar days after submission of the standard,

(iii) Maintain, for a period of 3 years after submission of the proposed standard, records that fully disclose the total costs and expenditures for the development of the standard and such other records as are necessary to permit an effective audit,

(iv) Grant access to and audit of any books, documents, papers, and other records relating to the expenditure of any funds contributed by the Food and Drug Administration.

(c) If it appears to the Food and Drug Administration that a person engaged in the development of a performance standard is not making satisfactory progress, that person will be afforded an opportunity either to demonstrate ability and willingness to complete the development of the standard within the designated time period or to justify the need for an extension of the development period. After evaluating available information, the Food and Drug Administration will terminate the person's role in the development process, extend the period for development of the proposed standard, or direct the person to complete the standard within the designated time period. Any person who has received a contribution from the Food and Drug Administration and whose role in the development process is terminated shall be required to submit to the Food and Drug Administration all information, records, and documents in its possession which relate to the development of the proposed standard, and to remit all funds contributed by the Food and Drug Administration that have not been expended. The Food and Drug Administration shall publish in the FEDERAL REGISTER a notice of the determination to terminate the role of any person in the development of a proposed standard, together with the reasons for this action.

§ 861.32 Contribution by the Food and Drug Administration to the costs of developing a proposed standard.

(a) If an offer to develop a proposed standard is accepted, the Food and Drug Administration may agree to contribute to the costs of developing the standard if it is determined that such contribution is likely to result in the development of a more satisfactory standard.

(b) The items of cost toward which the Food and Drug Administration may contribute are those allowable direct and indirect costs allocable to the development project as set forth in the applicable subparts of 48 CFR Parts 1-51 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations System. Typical standards development activities to which the Food and Drug Administration may contribute include:

(1) Research and analysis of the existing literature pertaining to the medical device that is the subject of the development effort;

(2) Testing of representative medical devices in support of the development effort; and

(3) Preparation of, and participation in public review of, draft standards.

(c) The items of cost to which the Food and Drug Administration may not contribute include:

(1) Costs for the construction or acquisition of any interest in land or buildings;

(2) Costs for the payment of salaries in excess of the amount paid by the offeror at the time immediately preceding the offer, excluding routine increases which may accrue during the development period;

(3) Costs for the payment of items in excess of the offeror's actual costs;

(4) Costs for an item with a usable lifespan extending beyond the development period, except that contribution may be made toward the portion of an item's cost allocable to the development of the proposed standard as determined by the difference between the item's estimated market value at the termination of the development period and the total cost of its acquisition; and

(5) Costs determined not to be allowable under generally accepted accounting principles and practices of 48 CFR Parts 1-51 of the Federal Acquisition Regulations System.

[45 FR 7484, Feb. 1, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 861.34 Amendment or revocation of a standard.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will provide for periodic evaluation of performance standards to determine whether such standards should be changed to reflect new medical, scientific, or other technological data.

(b) The Food and Drug Administration may, on its own initiative or upon petition of an interested party, amend or revoke by regulation a standard established under this part.

(c) Any petition to amend or revoke a standard shall:

(1) Identify the specific device and standard for which the amendment or revocation is sought; and

(2) Be submitted in accordance with the requirements of § 10.30.

(d) Proceedings to amend or revoke a performance standard shall be conducted in accordance with the rulemaking procedures of § 10.40. In addition, a notice of proposed rulemaking to amend or revoke a standard shall set forth proposed findings with respect to the degree of risk or illness to be eliminated or reduced and the benefit the public will derive from the proposed amendment or revocation.

§ 861.36 Effective dates.

(a) A regulation establishing, amending, or revoking a performance standard will set forth the date upon which it will take effect. To the extent practical, consistent with the public health and safety, such effective date will be established so as to minimize economic loss to, and disruption or dislocation of, domestic and international trade.

(b) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section, no regulation establishing, amending, or revoking a standard may take effect before 1 year after the date of its publication unless:

(1) The Food and Drug Administration determines that an earlier effective date is necessary to protect the public health and safety; or

(2) The standard has been established for a device that, by the effective date of the standard, has been reclassified from class III to class II.

(c) The Food and Drug Administration may declare a proposed regulation amending a standard effective on publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER if it determines, after affording interested persons an opportunity for an informal hearing conducted in accordance with Part 16 of this chapter, that making the regulation so effective is in the public interest. A proposed amendment of a performance standard made effective upon publication may not prohibit the introduction or delivery for introduction into interstate commerce of a device that conforms to the standard without the change or changes provided in the proposed amendment until the effective date of any final action on the proposal.

§ 861.38 Standards advisory committees.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration will establish advisory committees to which proposed regulations may be referred, and these committees shall consider such referrals in accordance with this section and Part 14 of this chapter. Such advisory committees, which may not be classification panels, shall be considered ad hoc advisory committees. Their members shall be selected in accordance with §§ 14.82 and 14.84, except that no member may be a regular full-time FDA employee. Each advisory committee established under this section shall include as nonvoting members a representative of consumer interests and a representative of interests of the device manufacturing industry.

(b) A proposed regulation to establish, amend, or revoke a performance standard shall be referred to an advisory committee for a report and recommendation with respect to any matter involved in the proposed regulation which requires the exercise of scientific judgment if:

(1) The Food and Drug Administration determines that such referral is necessary or appropriate under the circumstances; or

(2) (i) Requested by an interested person, in the form of a citizen petition in accordance with § 10.30, within the period provided for comment on the proposed regulation; and,

(ii) The Food and Drug Administration does not determine the request to be without good cause or on a matter not involving scientific judgment.

(c) When a proposed regulation is referred to an advisory committee, the Food and Drug Administration will furnish the committee with the data and information upon which the proposed regulation is based. After independently reviewing the materials furnished by the Food and Drug Administration and any other available data and information, the advisory committee shall, within 60 days of the referral, submit a report and recommendation on the proposed regulation, together with all underlying data and information and a statement of the reason or basis for the recommendation. A copy of the report and recommendation will be publicly displayed in the office of the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration.

(d) Where appropriate, each proposed regulation establishing a standard published in the FEDERAL REGISTER will include a call for nominations to the advisory committee for that particular standard.

PART 862—CLINICAL CHEMISTRY AND CLINICAL TOXICOLOGY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

862.1 Scope.
862.2 Regulation of calibrators.
862.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.
862.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

Subpart B—Clinical Chemistry Test Systems

862.1020 Acid phosphatase (total or prostatic) test system.
862.1025 Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) test system.
862.1030 Alanine amino transferase (ALT/SGPT) test system.
862.1035 Albumin test system.
862.1040 Aldolase test system.
862.1045 Aldosterone test system.

Sec.
862.1050 Alkaline phosphatase or isoenzymes test system.
862.1060 Delta-aminolevulinic acid test system.
862.1065 Ammonia test system.
862.1070 Amylase test system.
862.1075 Androstenedione test system.
862.1080 Androsterone test system.
862.1085 Angiotensin I and renin test system.
862.1090 Angiotensin converting enzyme (A.C.E.) test system.
862.1095 Ascorbic acid test system.
862.1100 Aspartate amino transferase (AST-SGOT) test system.
862.1110 Bilirubin (total or direct) test system.
862.1115 Urinary bilirubin and its conjugates (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1120 Blood gases ($P_{co}2P_{o}2$) and blood pH test system.
862.1130 Blood volume test system.
862.1135 C-peptides of proinsulin test system.
862.1140 Calcitonin test system.
862.1145 Calcium test system.
862.1150 Calibrator.
862.1155 Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) test system.
862.1160 Bicarbonate/carbon dioxide test system.
862.1165 Catecholamines (total) test system.
862.1170 Chloride test system.
862.1175 Cholesterol (total) test system.
862.1177 Cholylglycine test system.
862.1180 Chymotrypsin test system.
862.1185 Compound S (11-deoxycortisol) test system.
862.1187 Conjugated sulfolithocholic acid (SLCG) test system.
862.1190 Copper test system.
862.1195 Corticoids test system.
862.1200 Corticosterone test system.
862.1205 Cortisol (hydrocortisone and hydroxycorticosterone) test system.
862.1210 Creatine test system.
862.1215 Creatine phosphokinase/creatine kinase or isoenzymes test system.
862.1225 Creatinine test system.
862.1230 Cyclic AMP test system.
862.1240 Cystine test system.
862.1245 Dehydroepiandrosterone (free and sulfate) test system.
862.1250 Desoxycorticosterone test system.
862.1255 2,3-Diphosphoglyceric acid test system.
862.1260 Estradiol test system.
862.1265 Estriol test system.
862.1270 Estrogens (total, in pregnancy) test system.
862.1275 Estrogens (total, nonpregnancy) test system.
862.1280 Estrone test system.
862.1285 Etiocholanolone test system.

Sec.
862.1290 Fatty acids test system.
862.1295 Folic acid test system.
862.1300 Follicle-stimulating hormone test system.
862.1305 Formiminoglutamic acid (FIGLU) test system.
862.1310 Galactose test system.
862.1315 Galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase test system.
862.1320 Gastric acidity test system.
862.1325 Gastrin test system.
862.1330 Globulin test system.
862.1335 Glucagon test system.
862.1340 Urinary glucose (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1345 Glucose test system.
862.1360 Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and isoenzymes test system.
862.1365 Glutathione test system.
862.1370 Human growth hormone test system.
862.1375 Histidine test system.
862.1377 Urinary homocystine (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1380 Hydroxybutyric dehydrogenase test system.
862.1385 17-Hydroxycorticosteroids (17-ketogenic steroids) test system.
862.1390 5-Hydroxyindole acetic acid/serotonin test system.
862.1395 17-Hydroxyprogesterone test system.
862.1400 Hydroxyproline test system.
862.1405 Immunoreactive insulin test system.
862.1410 Iron (non-heme) test system.
862.1415 Iron-binding capacity test system.
862.1420 Isocitric dehydrogenase test system.
862.1430 17-Ketosteroids test system.
862.1435 Ketones (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1440 Lactate dehydrogenase test system.
862.1445 Lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes test system.
862.1450 Lactic acid test system.
862.1455 Lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in amniotic fluid test system.
862.1460 Leucine aminopeptidase test system.
862.1465 Lipase test system.
862.1470 Lipid (total) test system.
862.1475 Lipoprotein test system.
862.1485 Luteinizing hormone test system.
862.1490 Lysozyme (muramidase) test system.
862.1495 Magnesium test system.
862.1500 Malic dehydrogenase test system.
862.1505 Mucopolysaccharides (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1509 Methylmalonic acid (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1510 Nitrite (nonquantitative) test system.

Sec.
862.1515 Nitrogen (amino-nitrogen) test system.
862.1520 5'-Nucleotidase test system.
862.1530 Plasma oncometry test system.
862.1535 Ornithine carbamyl transferase test system.
862.1540 Osmolality test system.
862.1542 Oxalate test system.
862.1545 Parathyroid hormone test system.
862.1550 Urinary pH (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1555 Phenylalanine test system.
862.1560 Urinary phenylketones (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1565 6-Phosphogluconate dehydrogenase test system.
862.1570 Phosphohexose isomerase test system.
862.1575 Phospholipid test system.
862.1580 Phosphorus (inorganic) test system.
862.1585 Human placental lactogen test system.
862.1590 Porphobilinogen test system.
862.1595 Porphyrins test system.
862.1600 Potassium test system.
862.1605 Pregnanediol test system.
862.1610 Pregnanetriol test system.
862.1615 Pregnenolone test system
862.1620 Progesterone test system.
862.1625 Prolactin (lactogen) test system.
862.1630 Protein (fractionation) test system.
862.1635 Total protein test system.
862.1640 Protein-bound iodine test system.
862.1645 Urinary protein or albumin (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1650 Pyruvate kinase test system.
862.1655 Pyruvic acid test system.
862.1660 Quality control material (assayed and unassayed).
862.1665 Sodium test system.
862.1670 Sorbitol dehydrogenase test system.
862.1675 Blood specimen collection device.
862.1680 Testosterone test system.
862.1685 Thyroxine-binding globulin test system.
862.1690 Thyroid-stimulating hormone test system.
862.1695 Free thyroxine test system.
862.1700 Total thyroxine test system.
862.1705 Triglyceride test system.
862.1710 Total triiodothyronine test system.
862.1715 Triiodothyronine uptake test system.
862.1720 Triose phosphate isomerase test system.
862.1725 Trypsin test system.
862.1730 Free tyrosine test system.
862.1770 Urea nitrogen test system.
862.1775 Uric acid test system.
862.1780 Urinary calculi (stones) test system.
Sec.
862.1785 Urinary urobilinogen (nonquantitative) test system.
862.1790 Uroporphyrin test system.
862.1795 Vanilmandelic acid test system.
862.1805 Vitamin A test system.
862.1810 Vitamin B_{12} test system.
862.1815 Vitamin E test system.
862.1820 Xylose test system.

Subpart C—Clinical Laboratory Instruments

862.2050 General purpose laboratory equipment labeled or promoted for a specific medical use.
862.2100 Calculator/data processing module for clinical use.
862.2140 Centrifugal chemistry analyzer for clinical use.
862.2150 Continuous flow sequential multiple chemistry analyzer for clinical use.
862.2160 Discrete photometric chemistry analyzer for clinical use.
862.2170 Micro chemistry analyzer for clinical use.
862.2230 Chromatographic separation material for clinical use.
862.2250 Gas liquid chromatography system for clinical use.
862.2260 High pressure liquid chromatography system for clinical use.
862.2270 Thin-layer chromatography system for clinical use.
862.2300 Colorimeter, photometer, or spectrophotometer for clinical use.
862.2310 Clinical sample concentrator.
862.2320 Beta or gamma counter for clinical use.
862.2400 Densitometer/scanner (integrating, reflectance, TLC, or radiochromatogram) for clinical use.
862.2485 Electophoresis apparatus for clinical use.
862.2500 Enzyme analyzer for clinical use.
862.2540 Flame emission photometer for clinical use.
862.2560 Fluorometer for clinical use.
862.2680 Microtitrator for clinical use.
862.2700 Nephelometer for clinical use.
862.2720 Plasma oncometer for clinical use.
862.2730 Osmometer for clinical use.
862.2750 Pipetting and diluting system for clinical use.
862.2800 Refractometer for clinical use.
862.2850 Atomic absorption spectrophotometer for clinical use.
862.2860 Mass spectrometer for clinical use.
862.2900 Automated urinalysis system.
862.2920 Plasma viscometer for clinical use.

Subpart D—Clinical Toxicology Test Systems

862.3030 Acetaminophen test system.
862.3035 Amikacin test system.

Sec.
862.3040 Alcohol test system.
862.3050 Breath-alcohol test system.
862.3100 Amphetamine test system.
862.3110 Antimony test system.
862.3120 Arsenic test system.
862.3150 Barbiturate test system.
862.3170 Benzodiazepine test system.
862.3200 Clinical toxicology calibrator.
862.3220 Carbon monoxide test system.
862.3240 Cholinesterase test system.
862.3250 Cocaine and cocaine metabolite test system.
862.3270 Codeine test system.
862.3280 Clinical toxicology control material.
862.3300 Digitoxin test system.
862.3320 Digoxin test system.
862.3350 Diphenylhydantoin test system.
862.3380 Ethosuximide test system.
862.3450 Gentamicin test system.
862.3520 Kanamycin test system.
862.3550 Lead test system.
862.3555 Lidocaine test system.
862.3560 Lithium test system.
862.3580 Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) test system.
862.3600 Mercury test system.
862.3610 Methamphetamine test system.
862.3620 Methadone test system.
862.3630 Methaqualone test system.
862.3640 Morphine test system.
862.3645 Neuroleptic drugs radioreceptor assay test system.
862.3650 Opiate test system.
862.3660 Phenobarbital test system.
862.3670 Phenothiazine test system.
862.3680 Primidone test system.
862.3700 Propoxyphene test system.
862.3750 Quinine test system.
862.3830 Salicylate test system.
862.3850 Sulfonamide test system.
862.3870 Cannabinoid test system.
862.3880 Theophylline test system.
862.3900 Tobramycin test system.
862.3910 Tricyclic antidepressant drugs test system.
862.3950 Vancomycin test system.

AUTHORITY. Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 862.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of clinical chemistry and clinical toxicology devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 cannot show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required in § 807.87.

(c) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 862.2 Regulation of calibrators.

Many devices classified in this part are intended to be used with a calibrator. A calibrator has a reference value assigned to it which serves as the basis by which test results of patients are derived or calculated. The calibrator for a device may be (a) manufactured and distributed separately from the device with which it is intended to be used, (b) manufactured and distributed as one of several device components, such as in a kit of reagents, or (c) built-in as an integral part of the device. Because of the central role that a calibrator plays in the measurement process and the critical effect calibrators have on accuracy of test results, elsewhere in this part, all three of these types of calibrators (§§ 862.1150 and 862.3200 of this part) are classified into class II, notwithstanding the classification of the device with which it is intended to be used. Thus, a device and its calibrator may have different classifications, even if the calibrator is built into the device.

§ 862.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An ap-

30-073 O—89——6

proval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

§ 862.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

FDA's decision to grant an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification (section 510(k) of the act) for a generic type of class I device is based upon the existing and reasonably foreseeable characteristics of commercially distributed devices within that generic type. Because FDA cannot anticipate every change in intended use or characteristic that could significantly affect a device's safety or effectiveness, manufacturers of any commercially distributed class I device for which FDA has granted an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification must still submit a premarket notification to FDA before introducing or delivering for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution the device when:

(a) The device is intended for a use different from its intended use before May 28, 1976, or the device is intended for a use different from the intended use of a preamendments device to which it had been determined to be substantially equivalent; e.g., the device is intended for a different medical purpose, or the device is intended for lay use where the former intended use was by health care professionals only; or

(b) The modified device operates using a different fundamental scientific technology than that in use in the device before May 28, 1976; e.g., a surgical instrument cuts tissue with a laser beam rather than with a sharpened metal blade, or an in vitro diagnostic device detects or identifies infectious agents by using a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) probe or nucleic acid hybridization technology rather than culture or immunoassay technology.

[53 FR 21448, June 8, 1988]

Subpar —Clinical Chemistry Test Systems

§ 862.1020 Acid phosphatase (total or prostatic) test system.

(a) *Identification.* An acid phosphatase (total or prostatic) test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the acid phosphatase enzyme in plasma and serum.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1025 Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) test system.

(a) *Identification.* An adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) test system is a device intended to measure adrenocorticotropic hormone in plasma and serum. ACTH measurements are used in the differential diagnosis and treatment of certain disorders of the adrenal glands such as Cushing's syndrome, adrenocortical insufficiency, and the ectopic ACTH syndrome.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1030 Alanine amino transferase (ALT/SGPT) test system.

(a) *Identification.* An alanine amino transferase (ALT/SGPT) test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme alanine amino transferase (ALT) (also known as a serum glutamic pyruvic transaminase or SGPT) in serum and plasma. Alanine amino transferase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain liver diseases (e.g., viral hepatitis and cirrhosis) and heart diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1035 Albumin test system.

(a) *Identification.* An albumin test system is a device intended to measure the albumin concentration in serum and plasma. Albumin measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of numerous diseases involving primarily the liver or kidneys.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1040 Aldolase test system.

(a) *Identification.* An aldolase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme aldolase in serum or plasma. Aldolase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of the early stages of acute hepatitis and for certain muscle diseases such as progressive Duchenne-type muscular dystrophy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1045 Aldosterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* An aldosterone test system is a device intended to measure the hormone aldosterone in serum and urine. Aldosterone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of primary aldosteronism (a disorder caused by the excessive secretion of aldosterone by the adrenal gland), hypertension caused by primary aldosteronism, selective hypoaldosteronism, edematous states, and other conditions of electrolyte imbalance.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1050 Alkaline phosphatase or isoenzymes test system.

(a) *Identification.* An alkaline phosphatase or isoenzymes test system is a device intended to measure alkaline phosphatase or its isoenzymes (a group of enzymes with similar biological activity) in serum or plasma. Measurements of alkaline phosphatase or its isoenzymes are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver, bone, parathyroid, and intestinal diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1060 Delta-aminolevulinic acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A *delta*-aminolevulinic acid test system is a device intended to measure the level of *delta*-aminolevulinic acid (a precursor of porphyrin) in urine. *Delta*-aminolevulinic acid measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of lead poisoning and certain porphyrias (diseases affecting the liver, gastrointestinal, and nervous systems that are accompanied by increased urinary excretion of various heme compounds including *delta*-aminolevulinic acid).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1065 Ammonia test system.

(a) *Identification.* An ammonia test system is a device intended to measure ammonia levels in blood, serum, and plasma. Ammonia measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of severe liver disorders, such as cirrhosis, hepatitis, and Reye's syndrome.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1070 Amylase test system.

(a) *Identification.* An amylase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme amylase in serum and urine. Amylase measurements are used primarily for the diagnosis and treatment of pancreatitis (inflammation of the pancreas).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1075 Androstenedione test system.

(a) *Identification.* An androstenedione test system is a device intended to measure androstenedione (a substance secreted by the testes, ovary, and adrenal glands) in serum. Adrostenedione measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of females with excessive levels of androgen (male sex hormone) production.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1080 Androsterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* An androsterone test system is a device intended to measure the hormone adrosterone in serum, plasma, and urine. Androsterone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of gonadal and adrenal diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1085 Angiotensin I and renin test system.

(a) *Identification.* An angiotensin I and renin test system is a device intended to measure the level of angiotensin I generated by renin in plasma. Angiotensin I measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain types of hypertension.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1090 Angiotensin converting enzyme (A.C.E.) test system.

(a) *Identification.* An angiotensin converting enzyme (A.C.E.) test system is a device intended to measure the activity of angiotensin converting enzyme in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases such as sarcoidosis, a disease characterized by the formation of nodules in the lungs, bones, and skin, and Gaucher's disease, a hereditary disorder affecting the spleen.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1095 Ascorbic acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* An ascorbic acid test system is a device intended to measure the level of ascorbic acid (vitamin C) in plasma, serum, and urine. Ascorbic acid measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of ascorbic acid dietary deficiencies.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1100 Aspartate amino transferase (AST/SGOT) test system.

(a) *Identification.* An aspartate amino transferase (AST/SGOT) test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme aspartate amino transferase (AST) (also known as a serum glutamic oxaloacetic transferase or SGOT) in serum and plasma. Aspartate amino transferase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain types of liver and heart disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1110 Bilirubin (total or direct) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A bilirubin (total or direct) test system is a device intended to measure the levels of bilirubin (total or direct) in plasma or serum. Measurements of the levels of bilirubin, an organic compound formed during the normal and abnormal distruction of red blood cells, if used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver, hemolytic hematological, and metabolic disorders, including hepatitis and gall bladder block.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1115 Urinary bilirubin and its conjugates (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary bilirubin and its conjugates (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to measure the levels of bilirubin conjugates in urine. Measurements of urinary bilirubin and its conjugates (nonquantitative) are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain liver diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1120 Blood gases ($P_{CO}2$, $P_{O}2$) and blood pH test system.

(a) *Identification.* A blood gases ($P_{CO}2$, $P_{O}2$) and blood pH test system is a device intended to measure certain gases in blood, serum, plasma or pH of blood, serum, and plasma. Measurements of blood gases ($P_{CO}2$, $P_{O}2$) and blood pH are used in the diagnosis and treatment of life-threatening acid-base disturbances.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1130 Blood volume test system.

(a) *Identification.* A blood volume test system is a device intended to measure the circulating blood volume. Blood volume measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of shock, hemorrhage, and polycythemia vera (a disease characterized by an absolute increase in erythrocyte mass and total blood volume).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1135 C-peptides of proinsulin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A C-peptides of proinsulin test system is a device intended to measure C-peptides of proinsulin levels in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements of C-peptides of proinsulin are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with abnormal insulin secretion, including diabetes mellitus.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1140 Calcitonin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A calcitonin test system is a device intended to measure the thyroid hormone calcitonin (thyrocalcitonin) levels in plasma and serum. Calcitonin measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases involving the thyroid and parathyroid glands, including carcinoma and hyperparathyroidism (excessive activity of the parathyroid gland).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1145 Calcium test system.

(a) *Identification.* A calcium test system is a device intended to measure the total calcium level in serum. Calcium measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of parathyroid disease, a variety of bone diseases, chronic renal disease and tetany (intermittent muscular contractions or spasms).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1150 Calibrator.

(a) *Identification.* A calibrator is a device intended for medical purposes for use in a test system to establish points of reference that are used in the determination of values in the measurement of substances in human specimens. (See also § 862.2 in this part.)

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1155 Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) test system.

(a) *Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) test system intended for the early detection of pregnancy*—(1) *Identification.* A human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) test system is a device intended for the early detection of pregnancy is intended to measure HCG, a placental hormone, in plasma or urine.

(2) *Classification.* Class II.

(b) *Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) test system intended for any uses other than early detection of pregnancy*—(1) *Identification.* A human chorionic goadotropin (HCG) test system is a device intended for any uses other than early detection of pregnancy (such as an aid in the diagnosis, prognosis, and management of treatment of persons with certain tumors or carcinomas) is intended to measure HCG, a placental hormone, in plasma or urine.

(2) *Classification.* Class III.

(3) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before the device described in paragraph (b)(1) may be commercially distributed. See § 862.3.

§ 862.1160 Bicarbonate/carbon dioxide test system.

(a) *Identification.* A bicarbonate/carbon dioxide test system is a device intended to measure bicarbonate/carbon dioxide in plasma, serum, and whole blood. Bicarbonate/carbon dioxide measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of numerous potentially serious disorders associated with changes in body acid-base balance.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1165 Catecholamines (total) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A catecholamines (total) test system is a device intended to determine whether a group of similar compounds (epinephrine, norepinephrine, and dopamine) are present in urine and plasma. Catecholamine determinations are used in the diagnosis and treatment of adrenal medulla and hypertensive disorders, and for catecholamine-secreting tumors (pheochromo-cytoma, neuroblastoma, ganglioneuroma, and retinoblastoma).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1170 Chloride test system.

(a) *Identification.* A chloride test system is a device intended to measure the level of chloride in plasma, serum, sweat, and urine. Chloride measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of electrolyte and metabolic disorders such as cystic fibrosis and diabetic acidosis.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1175 Cholesterol (total) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cholesterol (total) test system is a device intended to measure cholesterol in plasma and serum. Cholesterol measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders involving excess cholesterol in the blood and lipid and lipoprotein metabolism disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1177 Cholylglycine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cholylglycine test system is a device intended to measure the bile acid cholylglycine in serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver disorders, such as cirrhosis or obstructive liver disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1180 Chymotrypsin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A chymotrypsin test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme chymotrypsin in blood and other body fluids and in feces. Chymotrypsin measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of pancreatic exocrine insufficiency.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1185 Compound S (11-deoxycortisol) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A compound S (11-dioxycortisol) test system is a device intended to measure the level of compound S (11-dioxycortisol) in plasma. Compound S is a steroid intermediate in the biosynthesis of the adrenal hormone cortisol. Measurements of compound S are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain adrenal and pituitary gland disorders resulting in clinical symptoms of masculinization and hypertension.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1187 Conjugated sulfolithocholic acid (SLCG) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A conjugated sulfolithocholic acid (SLCG) test system is a device intended to measure the bile acid SLCG in serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver disorders, such as cirrhosis or obstructive liver disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1190 Copper test system.

(a) *Identification.* A copper test system is a device intended to measure copper levels in plasma, serum, and urine. Measurements of copper are used in the diagnosis and treatment of anemia, infections, inflammations, and Wilson's disease (a hereditary disease primarily of the liver and nervous system). Test results are also used in monitoring patients with Hodgkin's disease (a disease primarily of the lymph system).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1195 Corticoids test system.

(a) *Identification.* A corticoids test system is a device intended to measure the levels of corticoids (hormones of the adrenal cortex) in serum and plasma. Measurements of corticoids are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the cortex of the adrenal glands, especially those associated with hypertension and electrolyte disturbances.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1200 Corticosterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A corticosterone test system is a device intended to measure corticosterone (a steroid secreted by the adrenal gland) levels in plasma. Measurements of corticosterone are used in the diagnosis and treatment of adrenal disorders such as adrenal cortex disorders and blocks in cortisol synthesis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1205 Cortisol (hydrocortisone and hydroxycorticosterone) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cortisol (hydrocortisone and hydroxycorticosterone) test system is a device intended to measure the cortisol hormones secreted by the adrenal gland in plasma and urine. Measurements of cortisol are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the adrenal gland.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1210 Creatine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A creatine test system is a device intended to measure creatine (a substance synthesized in the liver and pancreas and found in biological fluids) in plasma, serum, and urine. Measurements of creatine are used in the diagnosis and treatment of muscle diseases and endocrine disorders including hyperthyroidism.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1215 Creatine phosphokinase/creatine kinase or isoenzymes test system.

(a) *Identification.* A creatine phosphokinase/creatine kinase or isoenzymes test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme creatine phosphokinase or its isoenzymes (a group of enzymes with similar biological activity) in plasma and serum. Measurements of creatine phosphokinase and its isoenzymes are used in the diagnosis and treatment of myocardial infarction and muscle diseases such as progressive, Duchenne-type muscular dystrophy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1225 Creatinine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A creatinine test system is a device intended to measure creatinine levels in plasma and urine. Creatinine measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of renal diseases, in monitoring renal dialysis, and as a calculation basis for measuring other urine analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1230 Cyclic AMP test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cyclic AMP test system is a device intended to measure the level of adenosine 3', 5'-monophosphate (cyclic AMP) in plasma, urine, and other body fluids. Cyclic AMP measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of endocrine disorders, including hyperparathyroidism (overactivity of the parathyroid gland). Cyclic AMP measurements may also be used in the diagnosis and treatment of Graves' disease (a disorder of the thyroid) and in the differentiation of causes of hypercalcemia (elevated levels of serum calcium.)

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1240 Cystine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cystine test system is a device intended to measure the amino acid cystine in urine. Cystine measurements are used in the diagnosis of cystinuria (occurrence of cystine in urine). Patients with cystinuria frequently develop kidney calculi (stones).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1245 Dehydroepiandrosterone (free and sulfate) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A dehydroepiandrosterone (free and sulfate) test system is a device intended to measure dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and its sulfate in urine, serum, plasma, and amniotic fluid. Dehydroepiandrosterone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of DHEA-secreting adrenal carcinomas.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1250 Desoxycorticosterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A desoxycorticosterone test system is a device intended to measure desoxycorticosterone (DOC) in plasma and urine. DOC measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with hypermineralocorticoidism (excess retention of sodium and loss of potassium) and other disorders of the adrenal gland.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1255 2,3-Diphosphoglyceric acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 2,3-diphosphoglyceric acid test system is a device intended to measure 2,3-diphosphoglyceric acid (2,3-DPG) in erythrocytes (red blood cells). Measurements of 2,3-diphosphoglyceric acid are used in the diagnosis and treatment of blood disorders that affect the delivery of oxygen by erythrocytes to tissues and in monitoring the quality of stored blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1260 Estradiol test system.

(a) *Identification.* An estradiol test system is a device intended to measure estradiol, an estrogenic steroid, in plasma. Estradiol measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various hormonal sexual disorders and in assessing placental function in complicated pregnancy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1265 Estriol test system.

(a) *Identification.* An estriol test system is a device intended to measure estriol, an estrogenic steroid, in plasma, serum, and urine of pregnant females. Estriol measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of fetoplacental distress in certain cases of high-risk pregnancy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1270 Estrogens (total, in pregnancy) test system.

(a) *Identification.* As estrogens (total, in pregnancy) test system is a device intended to measure total estrogens in plasma, serum, and urine during pregnancy. The device primarily measures estrone plus estradiol. Measurements of total estrogens are used to aid in the diagnosis and treatment of fetoplacental distress in certain cases of high-risk pregnancy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1275 Estrogens (total, nonpregnancy) test system.

(a) *Identification.* As estrogens (total, nonpregnancy) test system is a device intended to measure the level of estrogens (total estrone, estradiol, and estriol) in plasma, serum, and urine of males and nonpregnant females. Measurement of estrogens (total, nonpregnancy) is used in the diagnosis and treatment of numerous disorders, including infertility, amenorrhea (absence of menses) differentiation of primary and secondary ovarian malfunction, estrogen secreting testicular and ovarian tumors, and precocious puberty in females.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1280 Estrone test system.

(a) *Identification.* An estrone test system is a device intended to measure estrone, an estrogenic steroid, in plasma. Estrone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of numerous disorders, including infertility, amenorrhea, differentiation of primary and secondary ovarian malfunction, estrogen secreting testicular and ovarian tumors, and precocious puberty in females.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1285 Etiocholanolone test system.

(a) *Identification.* An etiocholanolone test system is a device intended to measure etiocholanolone in serum and urine. Etiocholanolone is a metabolic product of the hormone testosterone and is excreted in the urine. Etiocholanolone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the testes and ovaries.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1290 Fatty acids test system.

(a) *Identification.* A fatty acids test system is a device intended to measure fatty acids in plasma and serum. Measurements of fatty acids are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various disorders of lipid metabolism.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1295 Folic acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A folic acid test system is a device intended to measure the vitamin folic acid in plasma and serum. Folic acid measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of megaloblastic anemia, which is characterized by the presence of megaloblasts (an abnormal red blood cell series) in the bone marrow.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987; 53 FR 11645, Apr. 8, 1988]

§ 862.1300 Follicle-stimulating hormone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A follicle-stimulating hormone test system is a device intended to measure follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) in plasma, serum, and urine. FSH measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of pituitary gland and gonadal disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1305 Formiminoglutamic acid (FIGLU) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A formiminoglutamic acid (FIGLU) test system is a device intended to measure formiminolutamic acid in urine. FIGLU measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis of anemias, such as pernicious anemia and congenital hemolytic anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1310 Galactose test system.

(a) *Identification.* A galactose test system is a device intended to measure galactose in blood and urine. Galactose measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of the hereditary disease galactosemia (a disorder of galactose metabolism) in infants.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1315 Galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase in erythrocytes (red blood cells). Measurements of galactose-1-phosphate uridyl transferase are used in the diagnosis and treatment of the hereditary disease galactosemia (disorder of galactose metabolism) in infants.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1320 Gastric acidity test system.

(a) *Identification.* A gastric acidity test system is a device intended to measure the acidity of gastric fluid. Measurements of gastric acidity are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with peptic ulcer, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (peptic ulcer due to gastrin-secreting tumor of the pancreas), and related gastric disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1325 Gastrin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A gastrin test system is a device intended to measure the hormone gastrin in plasma and serum. Measurements of gastrin are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with ulcers, pernicious anemia, and the Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (peptic ulcer due to a gastrin-secreting tumor of the pancreas).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1330 Globulin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A globulin test system is a device intended to measure globulins (proteins) in plasma and serum. Measurements of globulin are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with numerous illnesses including severe liver and renal disease, multiple myeloma, and other disorders of blood globulins.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1335 Glucagon test system.

(a) *Identification.* A glucagon test system is a device intended to measure the pancreatic hormone glucagon in plasma and serum. Glucagon measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with various disorders of carbohydrate metabolism, including diabetes mellitus, hypoglycemia, and hyperglycemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1340 Urinary glucose (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary glucose (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to measure glucosuria (glucose in urine). Urinary glucose (nonquantitative) measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of carbohydrate metabolism disorders including diabetes mellitus, hypoglycemia, and hyperglycemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1345 Glucose test system.

(a) *Identification.* A glucose test system is a device intended to measure glucose quantitatively in blood and other body fluids. Glucose measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of carbohydrate metabolism disorders including diabetes mellitus, neonatal hypoglycemia, and idiopathic hypoglycemia, and of pancreatic islet cell carcinoma.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1360 Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and isoenzymes test system.

(a) *Identification.* A gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase and isoenzymes test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGTP) in plasma and serum. Gamma glutamyl transpeptidase and isoenzymes measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases such as alcoholic cirrhosis and primary and secondary liver tumors.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1365 Glutathione test system.

(a) *Identification.* A glutathione test system is a device intended to measure glutathione (the tripeptide of glycine, cysteine, and glutamic acid) in erythrocytes (red blood cells). Glutathione measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain drug-induced hemolytic (erythrocyte destroying) anemias due to an inherited enzyme deficiency.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1370 Human growth hormone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A human growth hormone test system is a device intended to measure the levels of human growth hormone in plasma. Human growth hormone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders involving the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1375 Histidine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A histidine test system is a device intended to measure free histidine (an amino acid) in plasma and urine. Histidine measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of hereditary histidinemia characterized by excess histidine in the blood and urine often resulting in mental retardation and disordered speech development.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1377 Urinary homocystine (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary homocystine (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to identify homocystine (an analogue of the amino acid cystine) in urine. The identification of urinary homocystine is used in the diagnosis and treatment of homocystinuria (homosystine in urine), a heritable metabolic disorder which may cause mental retardation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1380 Hydroxybutyric dehydrogenase test system.

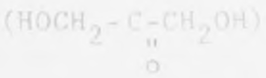
(a) *Identification.* A hydroxybutyric dehydrogenase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme alpha-hydroxybutric dehydrogenase (HBD) in plasma or serum. HBD measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of myocardial infarction, renal damage (such as rejection of transplants), certain hematological diseases (such as acute leukemias and megaloblastic anemias) and, to a lesser degree, liver disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1385 17-Hydroxycorticosteroids (17-ketogenic steroids) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 17-hydroxycorticosteroids (17-ketogenic steroids) test system is a device intended to measure corticosteroids that possess a dihydroxyacetone



$$(HOCH_2-\underset{\underset{O}{\|}}{C}-CH_2OH)$$

moiety on the steroid nucleus in urine. Corticosteroids with this chemical configuration include cortisol, cortisone 11-desoxycortisol, desoxycorticosterone, and their tetrahydroderivatives. This group of hormones is synthesized by the adrenal gland. Measurements of 17-hydroxycorticosteroids (17-ketogenic steroids) are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various diseases of the adrenal or pituitary glands and gonadal disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

[52 FR 16122, May 1, 1987; 52 FR 29468, Aug. 7, 1987]

§ 862.1390 5-Hydroxyindole acetic acid/serotonin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 5-hydroxyindole acetic acid/serotonin test system is a device intended to measure 5-hydroxyindole acetic acid/serotonin in urine. Measurements of 5-hydroxyindole acetic acid/serotonin are used in the diagnosis and treatment of carcinoid tumors of endocrine tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1395 17-Hydroxyprogesterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 17-hydroxyprogesterone test system is a device intended to measure 17-hydroxyprogesterone (a steroid) in plasma and serum. Measurements of 17-hydroxyprogesterone are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various disorders of the adrenal glands or the ovaries.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1400 Hydroxyproline test system.

(a) *Identification.* A hydroxyproline test system is a device intended to measure the amino acid hydroxyproline in urine. Hydroxyproline measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various collagen (connective tissue) diseases, bone disease such as Paget's disease, and endocrine disorders such as hyperparathyroidism and hyperthyroidism.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1405 Immunoreactive insulin test system.

(a) *Identification.* An immunoreactive insulin test system is a device intended to measure immunoreactive insulin in serum and plasma. Immunoreactive insulin measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various carbohydrate metabolism disorders, including diabetes mellitus and hypoglycemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1410 Iron (non-heme) test system.

(a) *Identification.* An iron (non-heme) test system is a device intended to measure iron (non-heme) in serum and plasma. Iron (non-heme) measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases such as iron deficiency anemia, hemochromatosis (a disease associated with widespread deposit in the tissues of two iron-containing pigments, hemosiderin and hemofuscin, and characterized by pigmentation of the skin), and chronic renal disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1415 Iron-binding capacity test system.

(a) *Identification.* An iron-binding capacity test system is a device intended to measure iron-binding capacity in serum. Iron-binding capacity measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1420 Isocitric dehydrogenase test system.

(a) *Identification.* An isocitric dehydrogenase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme isocitric dehydrogenase in serum and plasma. Isocitric dehydrogenase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver disease such as viral hepatitis, cirrhosis, or acute inflammation of the biliary tract; pulmonary disease such as pulmonary infarction (local arrest or sudden insufficiency of the blood supply to the lungs), and diseases associated with pregnancy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1430 17-Ketosteroids test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 17-ketosteroids test system is a device intended to measure 17-ketosteroids in urine. Measurements of 17-ketosteroids are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the adrenal cortex and gonads and of other endocrine disorders, including hypertension, diabetes, and hypothyroidism.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1435 Ketones (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A ketones (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to identify ketones in urine and other body fluids. Identification of ketones is used in the diagnosis and treatment of acidosis (a condition characterized by abnormally high acidity of body fluids) or ketosis (a condition characterized by increased production of ketone bodies such as acetone) and for monitoring patients on ketogenic diets and patients with diabetes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1440 Lactate dehydrogenase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lactate dehydrogenase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme lactate dehydrogenase in serum. Lactate dehydrogenase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases such as acute viral hepatitis, cirrhosis, and metastatic carcinoma of the liver, cardiac diseases such as myocardial infarction, and tumors of the lung or kidneys.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1445 Lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes test system is a device intended to measure the activity of lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes (a group of enzymes with similar biological activity) in serum. Measurements of lactate dehydrogenase isoenzymes are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases, such as viral hepatitis, and myocardial infarction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1450 Lactic acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lactic acid test system is a device intended to measure lactic acid in whole blood and plasma. Lactic acid measurements that evaluate the acid-base status are used in the diagnosis and treatment of lactic acidosis (abnormally high acidity of the blood).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1455 Lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in amniotic fluid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in amniotic fluid test system is a device intended to measure the lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in amniotic fluid. Lecithin and sphingomyelin are phospholipids (fats or fat-like substances containing phosphorus). Measurements of the lecithin/sphingomyelin ratio in amniotic fluid are used in evaluating fetal maturity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1460 Leucine aminopeptidase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A leucine aminopeptidase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme leucine amino-peptidase in serum, plasma, and urine. Leucine aminopeptidase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases such as viral hepatitis and obstructive jaundice.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1465 Lipase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lipase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzymes lipase in serum. Lipase measurements are used in diagnosis and treatment of diseases of the pancreas such as acute pancreatitis and obstruction of the pancreatic duct.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1470 Lipid (total) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lipid (total) test system is a device intended to measure total lipids (fats or fat-like substances) in serum and plasma. Lipid (total) measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various diseases involving lipid metabolism and atherosclerosis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1475 Lipoprotein test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lipoprotein test system is a device intended to measure lipoprotein in serum and plasma. Lipoprotein measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of lipid disorders (such as diabetes mellitus), atherosclerosis, and various liver and renal diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1485 Luteinizing hormone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A luteinizing hormone test system is a device intended to measure luteinizing hormone in serum and urine. Luteinizing hormone measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of gonadal dysfunction.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1490 Lysozyme (muramidase) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lysozyme (muramidase) test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the bacteriolytic enzyme lysozyme (muramidase) in serum, plasma, leukocytes, and urine. Lysozyme measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of monocytic leukemia and kidney disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1495 Magnesium test system.

(a) *Identification.* A magnesium test system is a device intended to measure magnesium levels in serum and plasma. Magnesium measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of hypomagnesemia (abnormally low plasma levels of magnesium) and hypermagnesemia (abnormally high plasma levels of magnesium).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1500 Malic dehydrogenase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A malic dehydrogenase test system is a device that is intended to measure the activity of the enzyme malic dehydrogenase in serum and plasma. Malic dehydrogenase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of muscle and liver diseases, myocardial infarctions, cancer, and blood disorders such as myelogenous (produced in the bone marrow) leukemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1505 Mucopolysaccharides (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A mucopolysaccharides (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to measure the levels of mucopolysaccharides in urine. Mucopolysaccharide measurements in urine are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various inheritable disorders that affect bone and connective tissues, such as Hurler's, Hunter's, Sanfilippo's, Scheie's Morquio's and Maroteaux-Lamy syndromes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1509 Methylmalonic acid (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A methylmalonic acid (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to identify methylmalonic acid in urine. The identification of methylmalonic acid in urine is used in the diagnosis and treatment of methylmalonic aciduria, a heritable metabolic disorder which, if untreated, may cause mental retardation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1510 Nitrite (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A nitrite (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to identify nitrite in urine. Nitrite identification is used in the diagnosis and treatment of uninary tract infection of bacterial origin.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1515 Nitrogen (amino-nitrogen) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A nitrogen (amino-nitrogen) test system is a device intended to measure amino acid nitrogen levels in serum, plasma, and urine. Nitrogen (amino-nitrogen) measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain forms of severe liver disease and renal disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1520 5'-Nucleotidase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 5'-nucleotidase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme 5'-nucleotidase in serum and plasma. Measurements of 5'-nucleotidase are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases and in the differentiations between liver and bone diseases in the presence of elevated serum alkaline phosphatase activity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1530 Plasma oncometry test system.

(a) *Identification.* A plasma oncometry test system is a device intended to measure plasma oncotic pressure. Plasma oncotic pressure is that portion of the total fluid pressure contributed by proteins and other molecules too large to pass through a specified membrane. Measurements of plasma oncotic pressure are used in the diagnosis and treatment of dehydration and circulatory disorders related to low serum protein levels and increased capillary permeability, such as edema and shock.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1535 Ornithine carbamyl transferase test system.

(a) *Identification.* An ornithine carbamyl transferase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme ornithine carbamyl transferase (OCT) in serum. Ornithine carbamyl transferase measurements are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases, such as infectious hepatitis, acute cholecystitis (inflammation of the gall bladder), cirrhosis, and liver metastases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1540 Osmolality test system.

(a) *Identification.* An osmolality test system is a device intended to measure ionic and nonionic solute concentration in body fluids, such as serum and urine. Osmolality measurement is used as an adjunct to other tests in the evaluation of a variety of diseases, including kidney diseases (e.g., chronic progressive renal failure), diabetes insipidus, other endocrine and metabolic disorders, and fluid imbalances.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1542 Oxalate test system.

(a) *Identification.* An oxalate test system is a device intended to measure the concentration of oxalate in urine. Measurements of oxalate are used to aid in the diagnosis or treatment of urinary stones or certain other metabolic disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1545 Parathyroid hormone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A parathyroid hormone test system is a device intended to measure the levels of parathyroid hormone in serum and plasma. Measurements of parathyroid hormone levels are used in the differential diagnosis of hypercalcemia (abnormally high levels of calcium in the blood) and hypocalcemia (abnormally low levels of calcium in the blood) resulting from disorders of calcium metabolism.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1550 Urinary pH (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary pH (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to estimate the pH of urine. Estimations of pH are used to evaluate the acidity or alkalinity of urine as it relates to numerous renal and metabolic disorders and in the monitoring of patients with certain diets.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1555 Phenylalanine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A phenylalanine test system is a device intended to measure free phenylalanine (an amino acid) in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements of phenylalanine are used in the diagnosis and treatment of congenital phenylketonuria which, if untreated, may cause mental retardation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1560 Urinary phenylketones (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary phenylketones (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to identify phenylketones (such as phenylpyruvic acid) in urine. The identification of urinary phenylketones is used in the diagnosis and treatment of congenital phenylketonuria which, if untreated, may cause mental retardation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1565 6-Phosphogluconate dehydrogenase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A 6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme 6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase (6 PGD) in serum and erythrocytes. Measurements of 6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain liver diseases (such as hepatitis) and anemias.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1570 Phosphohexose isomerase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A phosphohexose isomerase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme phosphohexose isomerase in serum. Measurements of phosphohexose isomerase are used in the diagnosis and treatment of muscle diseases such as muscular dystrophy, liver diseases such as hepatitis or cirrhosis, and metastatic carcinoma.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1575 Phospholipid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A phospholipid test system is a device intended to measure phospholipids in serum and plasma. Measurements of phospholipids are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders involving lipid (fat) metabolism.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1580 Phosphorus (inorganic) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A phosphorus (inorganic) test system is a device intended to measure inorganic phosphorus in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements of phosphorus (inorganic) are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various disorders, including parathyroid gland and kidney diseases, and vitamin D imbalance.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1585 Human placental lactogen test system.

(a) *Identification.* A human placental lactogen test system is a device intended to measure the hormone human placental lactogen (HPL), (also known as human chorionic somatomammotrophin (HCS)), in maternal serum and maternal plasma. Measurements of human placental lactogen are used in the diagnosis and clinical management of high-risk pregnancies involving fetal distress associated with placental insufficiency. Measurements of HPL are also used in pregnancies complicated by hypertension, proteinuria, edema, post-maturity, placental insufficiency, or possible miscarriage.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1590 Porphobilinogen test system.

(a) *Identification.* A porphobilinogen test system is a device intended to measure porphobilinogen (one of the derivatives of hemoglobin which can make the urine a red color) in urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of porphyrias (primarily inherited diseases associated with disturbed porphyrine metabolism), lead poisoning, and other diseases characterized by alterations in the heme pathway.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1595 Porphyrins test system.

(a) *Identification.* A porphyrins test system is a device intended to measure porphyrins (compounds formed during the biosynthesis of heme, a constituent of hemoglobin, and related compounds) in urine and feces. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of lead poisoning, porphyrias (primarily inherited diseases associated with disturbed porphyrin metabolism), and other diseases characterized by alterations in the heme pathway.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1600 Potassium test system.

(a) *Identification.* A potassium test system is a device intended to measure potassium in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used to monitor electrolyte balance in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases conditions characterized by low or high blood potassium levels.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1605 Pregnanediol test system.

(a) *Identification.* A pregnanediol test system is a device intended to measure pregnanediol (a major urinary metabolic product of progesterone) in urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the ovaries or placenta.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1610 Pregnanetriol test system.

(a) *Identification.* A pregnanetriol test system is a device intended to measure pregnanetriol (a precursor in the biosynthesis of the adrenal hormone cortisol) in urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of congenital adrenal hyperplasia (congenital enlargement of the adrenal gland).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1615 Pregnenolone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A pregnenolone test system is a device intended to measure pregnenolone (a precursor in the biosynthesis of the adrenal hormone cortisol and adrenal androgen) in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases of the adrenal cortex or the gonads.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1620 Progesterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A progesterone test system is a device intended to measure progesterone (a female hormone) in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the ovaries or placenta.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1625 Prolactin (lactogen) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A prolactin (lactogen) test system is a device intended to measure the anterior pituitary polypeptide hormone prolactin in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the anterior pituitary gland or of the hypothalamus portion of the brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1630 Protein (fractionation) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A protein (fractionation) test system is a device intended to measure protein fractions in blood, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, and other body fluids. Protein fractionations are used as a aid in recognizing abnormal proteins in body fluids and genetic variants of proteins produced in diseases with tissue destruction.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1635 Total protein test system.

(a) *Identification.* A total protein test system is a device intended to measure total protein(s) in serum or plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of a variety of diseases involving the liver, kidney, or bone marrow as well as other metabolic or nutritional disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1640 Protein-bound iodine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A protein-bound iodine test system is a device intended to measure protein-bound iodine in serum. Measurements of protein-bound iodine obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of thyroid disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1645 Urinary protein or albumin (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary protein or albumin (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to identify proteins or albumin in urine. Identification of urinary protein or albumin (nonquantitative) is used in the diagnosis and treatment of disease conditions such as renal or heart diseases or thyroid disorders, which are characterized by proteinuria or albuminuria.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1650 Pyruvate kinase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A pyruvate kinase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme pyruvate kinase in erythrocytes (red blood cells). Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of various inherited anemias due to pyruvate kinase deficiency or of acute leukemias.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1655 Pyruvic acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A pyruvic acid test system is a device intended to measure pyruvic acid (an intermediate compound in the metabolism of carbohydrate) in plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the evaluation of electrolyte metabolism and in the diagnosis and treatment of acid-base and electrolyte disturbances or anoxia (the reduction of oxygen in body tissues).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1660 Quality control material (assayed and unassayed).

(a) *Identification.* A quality control material (assayed and unassayed) for clinical chemistry is a device intended for medical purposes for use in a test system to estimate test precision and to detect systematic analytical deviations that may arise from reagent or analytical instrument variation. A quality control material (assayed and unassayed) may be used for proficiency testing in interlaboratory surveys. This generic type of device includes controls (assayed and unassayed) for blood gases, electrolytes, enzymes, multianalytes (all kinds), single (specified) analytes, or urinalysis controls.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1665 Sodium test system.

(a) *Identification.* A sodium test system is a device intended to measure sodium in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of aldosteronism (excessive secretion of the hormone aldosterone), diabetes insipidus (chronic excretion of large amounts of dilute urine, accompanied by extreme thirst), adrenal hypertension, Addison's disease (caused by destruction of the adrenal glands), dehydration, inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion, or other diseases involving electrolyte imbalance.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1670 Sorbitol dehydrogenase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A sorbitol dehydrogenase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme sorbitol dehydrogenase in serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver disorders such as cirrhosis or acute hepatitis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1675 Blood specimen collection device.

(a) *Identification.* A blood specimen collection device is a device intended for medical purposes to collect and to handle blood specimens and to separate serum from nonserum (cellular) components prior to further testing. This generic type device may include blood collection tubes, vials, systems, serum separators, blood collection trays, or vacuum sample tubes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1680 Testosterone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A testosterone test system is a device intended to measure testosterone (a male sex hormone) in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurement of testosterone are used in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders involving the male sex hormones (androgens), including primary and secondary hypogonadism, delayed or precocious puberty, impotence in males and, in females hirsutism (excessive hair) and virilization (masculinization) due to tumors, polycystic ovaries, and adrenogenital syndromes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987; 53 FR 11645, Apr. 8, 1988]

§ 862.1685 Thyroxine-binding globulin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A thyroxine-binding globulin test system is a device intended to measure thyroxine (thyroid)-binding globulin (TBG), a plasma protein which binds thyroxine, in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of thyroid diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1690 Thyroid stimulating hormone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A thyroid stimulating hormone test system is a device intended to measure thyroid stimulating hormone, also known as thyrotrophin and thyrotrophic hormone, in serum and plasma. Measurements of thyroid stimulating hormone produced by the anterior pituitary are used in the diagnosis of thyroid or pituitary disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1695 Free thyroxine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A free thyroxine test system is a device intended to measure free (not protein bound) thyroxine (thyroid hormone) in serum or plasma. Levels of free thyroxine in plasma are thought to reflect the amount of thyroxine hormone available to the cells and may therefore determine the clinical metabolic status of thyroxine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of thyroid diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1700 Total thyroxine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A total thyroxine test system is a device intended to measure total (free and protein bound) thyroxine (thyroid hormone) in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of thyroid diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1705 Triglyceride test system.

(a) *Identification.* A triglyceride test system is a device intended to measure triglyceride (neutral fat) in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of patients with diabetes mellitus, nephrosis, liver obstruction, other diseases involving lipid metabolism, or various endocrine disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1710 Total triiodothyronine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A total triiodothyronine test system is a device intended to measure the hormone triiodothyronine in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of thyroid diseases such as hyperthyroidism.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1715 Triiodothyronine uptake test system.

(a) *Identification.* A triiodothyronine uptake test system is a device intended to measure the total amount of binding sites available for binding thyroid hormone on the thyroxine-binding proteins, thyroid-binding globulin, thyroxine-binding prealbumin, and albumin of serum and plasma. The device provides an indirect measurement of thyrkoxine levels in serum and plasma. Measurements of triiodothyronine uptake are used in the diagnosis and treatment of thyroid disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1720 Triose phosphate isomerase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A triose phosphate isomerase test system is a device intended to measure the activity of the enzyme triose phosphate isomerase in erythrocytes (red blood cells). Triose phosphate isomerase is an enzyme important in glycolysis (the energy-yielding conversion of glucose to lactic acid in various tissues). Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of congenital triose phosphate isomerase enzyme deficiency, which causes a type of hemolytic anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1725 Trypsin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A trypsin test system is a device intended to measure the activity of trypsin (a pancreatic enzyme important in digestion for the breakdown of proteins) in blood and other body fluids and in feces. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of pancreatic disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1730 Free tyrosine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A free tyrosine test system is a device intended to measure free tyrosine (an amono acid) in serum and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of diseases such as congenital tyrosinemia (a disease that can cause liver/kidney disorders) and as an adjunct to the measurement of phenylalanine in detecting congenital phenylketonuria (a disease that can cause brain damage).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1770 Urea nitrogen test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urea nitrogen test system is a device intended to measure urea nitrogen (an end-product of nitrogen metabolism) in whole blood, serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain renal and metabolic diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1775 Uric acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A uric acid test system is a device intended to measure uric acid in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of numerous renal and metabolic disorders, including renal failure, gout, leukemia, psoriasis, starvation or other wasting conditions, and of patients receiving cytotoxic drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1780 Urinary calculi (stones) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary calculi (stones) test system is a device intended for the analysis of urinary calculi. Analysis of urinary calculi is used in the diagnosis and treatment of calculi of the urinary tract.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1785 Urinary urobilinogen (nonquantitative) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A urinary urobilinogen (nonquantitative) test system is a device intended to detect and estimate urobilinogen (a bile pigment degradation product of red cell hemoglobin) in urine. Estimations obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of liver diseases and hemolytic (red cells) disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1790 Uroporphyrin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A uroporphyrin test system is a device intended to measure uroporphyrin in urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of porphyrias (primarily inherited diseases associated with disturbed porphyrin metabolism), lead poisoning, and other diseases characterized by alterations in the heme pathway.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1795 Vanilmandelic acid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A vanilmandelic acid test system is a device intended to measure vanilmandelic acid in urine. Measurements of vanilmandelic acid obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of neuroblastoma, pheochromocytoma, and certain hypertensive conditions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1805 Vitamin A test system.

(a) *Identification.* A vitamin A test system is a device intended to measure vitamin A in serum or plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of vitamin A deficiency conditions, including night blindness, or skin, eye, or intestinal disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.1810 Vitamin B_{12} test system.

(a) *Identification.* A vitamin B_{12} test system is a device intended to measure vitamin B_{12} in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of anemias of gastrointestinal malabsorption.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.1815 Vitamin E test system.

(a) *Identification.* A vitamin E test system is a device intended to measure vitamin E (tocopherol) in serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of infants with vitamin E deficiency syndrome.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.1820 Xylose test system.

(a) *Identification.* A xylose test system is a device intended to measure xylose (a sugar) in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of gastrointestinal malabsorption syndrome (a group of disorders in which there is subnormal absorption of dietary constituents and thus excessive loss from the body of the nonabsorbed substances).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart C—Clinical Laboratory Instruments

§ 862.2050 General purpose laboratory equipment labeled or promoted for a specific medical use.

(a) *Identification.* General purpose laboratory equipment labeled or promoted for a specific medical use is a device that is intended to prepare or examine specimens from the human body and that is labeled or promoted for a specific medical use.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device identified in paragraph (a) of this section is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 and is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 862.2100 Calculator/data processing module for clinical use

(a) *Identification.* A calculator/data processing module for clinical use is an electronic device intended to store, retrieve, and process laboratory data.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 21449, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.2140 Centrifugal chemistry analyzer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A centrifugal chemistry analyzer for clinical use is an automatic device intended to centrifugally mix a sample and a reagent and spectrophotometrically measure concentrations of the sample constituents. This device is intended for use in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2150 Continuous flow sequential multiple chemistry analyzer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A continuous flow sequential multiple chemistry analyzer for clinical use is a modular analytical instrument intended to simultaneously perform multiple chemical procedures using the principles of automated continuous flow systems. This device is intended for use in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2160 Discrete photometric chemistry analyzer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A discrete photometric chemistry analyzer for clinical use is a device intended to duplicate manual analytical procedures by performing automatically various steps such as pipetting, preparing filtrates, heating, and measuring color intensity. This device is intended for use in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of analytes. Different models of the device incorporate various instrumentation such as micro analysis apparatus, double beam, single, or dual channel photometers, and bichromatic 2-wavelength photometers. Some models of the device may include reagent-containing components that may also serve as reaction units.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2170 Micro chemistry analyzer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A micro chemistry analyzer for clinical use is a device intended to duplicate manual analytical procedures by performing automatically various steps such as pipetting, preparing filtrates, heating, and measuring color intensity. The distinguishing characteristic of the device is that it requires only micro volume samples obtainable from pediatric patients. This device is intended for use in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2230 Chromatographic separation material for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A chromatographic separation material for clinical use is a device accessory (e.g., ion exchange absorbents, ion exchagne resins, and ion papers) intended for use in ion exchange chromatography, a procedure in which a compound is separated from a solution.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2250 Gas liquid chromatography system for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A gas liquid chromatography system for clinical use is a device intended to separate one or more drugs or compounds from a mixture. Each of the constituents in a vaporized mixture of compounds is separated according to its vapor pressure. The device may include accessories such as columns, gases, column supports, and liquid coating.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2260 High pressure liquid chromatography system for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A high pressure liquid chromatography system for clinical use is a device intended to separate one or more drugs or compounds from a solution by processing the mixture of compounds (solutes) through a column packed with materials of uniform size (stationary phase) under the influence of a high pressure liquid (mobile phase). Separation of the solutes occurs either by absorption, sieving, partition, or selective affinity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2270 Thin-layer chromatography system for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A thin-layer chromatography (TLC) system for clinical use is a device intended to separate one or more drugs or compounds from a mixture. The mixture of compounds is absorbed onto a stationary phase or thin layer of inert material (e.g., cellulose, alumina, etc.) and eluted off by a moving solvent (moving phase) until equilibrium occurs between the two phases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. Particular components of TLC systems, i.e., the thin-layer chromatography apparatus, TLC atomizer, TLC developing tanks, and TLC ultraviolet light, are exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 862.2300 Colorimeter, photometer, or spectrophotometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A colorimeter, a photometer, or a spectrophotometer for clinical use is an instrument intended to measure radiant energy emitted, transmitted, absorbed, or reflected under controlled conditions. The device may include a monochromator to produce light of a specific wavelength.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2310 Clinical sample concentrator.

(a) *Identification.* A clinical sample concentrator is a device intended to concentrate (by dialysis, evaporation, etc.) serum, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, and other body fluids before the fluids are analyzed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2320 Beta or gamma counter for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A beta or gamma counter for clinical use is a device intended to detect and count beta or gamma radiation emitted by clinical samples. Clinical samples are prepared by addition of a radioactive reagent to the sample. These measurements are useful in the diagnosis and treatment of various disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2400 Densitometer/scanner (integrating, reflectance, TLC, or radiochromatogram) for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A densitometer/scanner (integrating, reflectance, thin-layer chromatography, or radiochromatogram) for clinical use is device intended to measure the concentration of a substance on the surface of a film or other support media by either a photocell measurement of the light transmission through a given area of the medium or, in the case of the radiochromatogram scanner, by measurement of the distribution of a specific radio-active element on a radiochromatogram.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2485 Electrophoresis apparatus for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* An electrophoresis apparatus for clinical use is a device intended to separate molecules or particles, including plasma proteins, lipoproteins, enzymes, and hemoglobulins on the basis of their net charge in specified buffered media. This device is used in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of analytes as an aid in the diagnosis and treatment of certain disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2500 Enzyme analyzer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* An enzyme analyzer for clinical use is a device intended to measure enzymes in plasma or serum by nonkinetic or kinetic measurement of enzyme-catalyzed reactions. This device is used in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of enzymes as an aid in the diagnosis and treatment of certain enzyme-related disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2540 Flame emission photometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A flame emission photometer for clinical use is a device intended to measure the concentration of sodium, potassium, lithium, and other metal ions in body fluids. Abnormal variations in the concentration of these substances in the body are indicative of certain disorders (e.g., electrolyte imbalance and heavy metal intoxication) and are, therefore, useful in diagnosis and treatment of those disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2560 Fluorometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A fluorometer for clinical use is a device intended to measure by fluorescence certain analytes. Fluorescence is the property of certain substances of radiating, when illuminated, a light of a different wavelength. This device is used in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2680 Microtitrator for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A microtitrator for clinical use is a device intended for use in micronanalysis to measure the concentration of a substance by reacting it with a measure "micro" volume of a known standardized solution.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2700 Nephelometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A nephelometer for clinical use is a device intended to estimate the concentration of particles in a suspension by measuring their light scattering properties (the deflection of light rays by opaque particles in their path). The device is used in conjunction with certain materials to measure the concentration of a variety of analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2720 Plasma oncometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A plasma oncometer for clinical use is a device intended to measure plasma oncotic pressure, which is that portion of the total plasma osmotic pressure contributed by protein and other molecules too large to pass through a specified semipermeable membrane. Because variations in plasma oncotic pressure are indications of certain disorders, measurements of the variations are useful in the diagnosis and treatment of these disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2730 Osmometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* An osmometer for clinical use is a device intended to measure the osmotic pressure of body fluids. Osmotic pressure is the pressure required to prevent the passage of a solution with a lesser solute concentration into a solution with greater solute concentration when the two solutions are separated by a semipermeable membrane. The concentration of a solution affects its osmotic pressure, freezing point, and other physiochemical properties. Osmometers determine osmotic pressure by methods such as the measurement of the freezing point. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of body fluid disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2750 Pipetting and diluting system for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A pipetting and diluting system for clinical use is a device intended to provide an accurately measured volume of liquid at a specified temperature for use in certain test procedures. This generic type of device system includes serial, manual, automated, and semi-automated dilutors, pipettors, dispensers, and pipetting stations.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2800 Refractometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A refractometer for clinical use is a device intended to determine the amount of solute in a solution by measuring the index of refraction (the ratio of the velocity of light in a vacuum to the velocity of light in the solution). The index of refraction is used to measure the concentration of certain analytes (solutes), such a plasma total proteins and urinary total solids. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain conditions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2850 Atomic absorption spectrophotometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* An atomic absorption spectrophotometer for clinical use is a device intended to identify and measure elements and metals (e.g., lead and mercury) in human specimens. The metal elements are identified according to the wavelength and intensity of the light that is absorbed when the specimen is converted to the atomic vapor phase. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of certain conditions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2860 Mass spectrometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A mass spectrometer for clinical use is a device intended to identify inorganic or organic compounds (e.g., lead, mercury, and drugs) in human specimens by ionizing the compound under investigation and separating the resulting ions by means of an electrical and megnetic field according to their mass.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2900 Automated urinalysis system.

(a) *Identification.* An automated urinalysis system is a device intended to measure certain of the physical properties and chemical constituents of urine by procedures that duplicate manual urinalysis systems. This device is used in conjunction with certain materials to measure a variety of urinary analytes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.2920 Plasma viscometer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A plasma viscometer for clinical use is a device intended to measure the viscosity of plasma by determining the time period required for the plasma to flow a measured distance through a calibrated glass tube. Measurements obtained by this device are used to monitor changes in the amount of solids present in plasma in various disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart D—Clinical Toxicology Test Systems

§ 862.3030 Acetaminophen test system.

(a) *Identification.* An acetaminophen test system is a device intended to measure acetaminophen, an analgestic and fever reducing drug, in serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of acetaminophen overdose.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3035 Amikacin test system.

(a) *Identification.* An amikacin test system is a device intended to measure amikacin, an aminoglycoside antibiotic drug, in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of amikacin overdose and in monitoring levels of amikacin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3040 Alcohol test system.

(a) *Identification.* An alcohol test system is a device intented to measure alcohol (e.g., ethanol, methanol, isopropanol, etc.) in human body fluids (e.g., serum, whole blood, and urine). Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of alcohol intoxication and poisoning.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3050 Breath-alcohol test system.

(a) *Identification.* A breath-alcohol test system is a device intened to measure alcohol in the human breath. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis of alcohol intoxication.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3100 Amphetamine test system.

(a) *Identification.* An amphetamine test system is a device intended to measure amphetamine, a central nervous system stimulating drug, in plasma and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of amphetamine use or overdose and in monitoring levels of amphetamine to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3110 Antimony test system.

(a) *Identification.* An antimony test system is a device intended to measure antimony, a heavy metal, in urine, blood, vomitus, and stomach contents. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of antimony poisoning.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3120 Arsenic test system.

(a) *Identification.* An arsenic test system is a device intended to measure arsenic, a poisonous heavy metal, in urine, vomitus, stomach contents, nails, hair, and blood. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of arsenic poisoning.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3150 Barbiturate test system.

(a) *Identification.* A barbiturate test system is a device intended to measure barbiturates, a class of hypnotic and sedative drugs, in serum, urine, and gastric contents. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of barbiturate use or overdose and in monitoring levels of barbiturate to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3170 Benzodiazepine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A benzodiazepine test system is a device intended to measure any of the benzodiazepine compounds, sedative and hypnotic drugs, in blood, plasma, and urine. The benzodiazepine compounds include chlordiazepoxide, diazepam, oxazepam, chlorzepate, flurazepam, and nitrazepam. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of benzodiazepine use or overdose and in monitoring levels of benzodiazepines to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3200 Clinical toxicology calibrator.

(a) *Identification.* A clinical toxicology calibrator is a device intended for medical purposes for use in a test system to establish points of reference that are used in the determination of values in the measurement of substances in human specimens. A clinical toxicology calibrator can be a mixture of drugs or a specific material for a particular drug (e.g., ethanol, lidocaine, etc.). (See also § 862.2 in this part.)

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3220 Carbon monoxide test system.

(a) *Identification.* A carbon monoxide test system is a device intended to measure carbon monoxide or carboxyhemoglobin (carbon monoxide bound to the hemoglobin in the blood) in blood. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of or confirmation of carbon monoxide poisoning.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3240 Cholinesterase test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cholinesterase test system is a device intended to measure cholinesterase (an enzyme that catalyzes the hydrolysis of acetylcholine to choline) in human specimens. There are two principal types of cholinesterase in human tissues. True cholinesterase is present at nerve endings and in erythrocytes (red blood cells) but is not present in plasma. Pseudo cholinesterase is present in plasma and liver but is not present in erythrocytes. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of cholinesterase inhibition disorders (e.g., insecticide poisoning and succinylcholine poisoning).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3250 Cocaine and cocaine metabolite test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cocaine and cocaine metabolite test system is a device intended to measure cocaine and a cocaine metabolite (benzoylecgonine) in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of cocaine use or overdose.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3270 Codeine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A codeine test system is a device intended to measure codeine (a narcotic pain-relieving drug) in serum and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of codeine use or overdose and in monitoring levels of codeine to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3280 Clinical toxicology control material.

(a) *Identification.* A clinical toxicology control material is a device intended to provide an estimation of the precision of a device test system and to detect and monitor systematic deviations from accuracy resulting from reagent or instrument defects. This generic type of device includes various single, and multi-analyte control materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3300 Digitoxin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A digitoxin test system is a device intended to measure digitoxin, a cardiovascular drug, in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of digitoxin overdose and in monitoring levels of digitoxin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3320 Digoxin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A digoxin test system is a device intended to measure digoxin, a cardiovascular drug, in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of digoxin overdose and in monitoring levels of digoxin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3350 Diphenylhydantoin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A diphenylhydantoin test system is a device intended to measure diphenylhydantoin, an antiepileptic drug, in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of diphenylhydantoin overdose and in monitoring levels of diphenylhydantoin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3380 Ethosuximide test system.

(a) *Identification.* An ethosuximide test system is a device intended to measure ethosuximide, an antiepileptic drug, in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of ethosuximide overdose and in monitoring levels of ethosuximide to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3450 Gentamicin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A gentamicin test system is a device intended to measure gentamicin, an antibiotic drug, in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of gentamicin overdose and in monitoring levels of gentamicin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3520 Kanamycin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A kanamycin test system is a device intended to measure kanamycin, an antibiotic drug, in plasma and serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of kanamycin overdose and in monitoring levels of kanamycin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3550 Lead test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lead test system is a device intended to measure lead, a heavy metal, in blood and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of lead poisoning.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3555 Lidocaine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lidocaine test system is a device intended to measure lidocaine, an antiarrythmic and anticonvulsant drug, in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of lidocaine overdose or in monitoring levels of lidocaine to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3560 Lithium test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lithium test system is a device intended to measure lithium (from the drug lithium carbonate) in serum or plasma. Measurements of lithium are used to assure that the proper drug dosage is administered in the treatment of patients with mental disturbances, such as manic-depressive illness (bipolar disorder).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3580 Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) test system is a device intended to measure lysergic acid diethylamide, a hallucinogenic drug, in serum, urine, and gastric contents. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of LSD use or overdose.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3600 Mercury test system.

(a) *Identification.* A mercury test system is a device intended to measure mercury, a heavy metal, in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of mercury poisoning.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 862.3610 Methamphetamine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A methamphetamine test system is a device intended to measure methamphetamine, a central nervous system stimulating drug, in serum, plasma, and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of methamphetamine use or overdose.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3620 Methadone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A methadone test system is a device intended to measure methadone, an addictive narcotic pain-relieving drug, in serum and urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of methadone use or overdose and to determine compliance with regulations in methadone maintenance treatment.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3630 Methaqualone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A methaqualone test system is a device intended to measure methaqualone, a hypnotic and sedative drug, in urine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of methaqualone use or overdose.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3640 Morphine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A morphine test system is a device intended to measure morphine, an addictive narcotic pain-relieving drug, and its analogs in serum, urine, and gastric contents. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of morphine use or overdose and in monitoring levels of morphine and its analogs to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3645 Neuroleptic drugs radioreceptor assay test system.

(a) *Identification.* A neuroleptic drugs radioceptor assay test system is a device intended to measure in serum or plasma the dopamine receptor blocking activity of neuroleptic drugs and their active metabolites. A neuroleptic drug has anti-psychotic action affecting principally psychomotor activity, is generally without hypnotic effects, and is a tranquilizer. Measurements obtained by this device are used to aid in determining whether a patient is taking the prescribed dosage level of such drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3650 Opiate test system.

(a) *Identification.* An opiate test system is a device intended to measure any of the addictive narcotic pain-relieving opiate drugs in blood, serum, urine, gastric contents, and saliva. An opiate is any natural or synthetic drug that has morphine-like pharmocological actions. The opiates include drugs such as morphine, morphine glucoronide, heroin, codeine, nalorphine, and meperedine. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of opiate use or overdose and in monitoring the levels of opiate administration to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3660 Phenobarbital test system.

(a) *Identification.* A phenobarbitol test system is a device intended to measure phenobarbital, an antiepileptic and sedative-hypnotic drug, in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of phenobarbital use or overdose and in monitoring levels of phenobarbital to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3670 Phenothiazine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A phenothiazine test system is a device intended to measure any of the drugs of the phenothiazine class in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of phenothiazine use or overdose.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3680 Primidone test system.

(a) *Identification.* A primidone test system is a device intended to measure primidone, an antiepileptic drug, in human specimens. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of primidone overdose and in monitoring levels of primidone to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3700 Propoxyphene test system.

(a) *Identification.* A propoxyphene test system is a device intended to measure propoxyphene, a pain-relie
ing drug, in serum, plasma, and urir
Measurements obtained by this devi
are used in the diagnosis and tre
ment of propoxyphene use or overdo
or in monitoring levels of propox
phene to ensure appropriate therapy

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3750 Quinine test system.

(a) *Identification.* A quinine te
system is a device intended to measu
quininc, a fever-reducing and pain-r
lieving drug intended in the treatme
of malaria, in serum and urine. Mea
urements obtained by this device a
used in the diagnosis and treatment
quinine overdose and malaria.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. Th
device is exempt from the premark
notification procedures in Subpart
of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at
FR 21450, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.3830 Salicylate test system.

(a) *Identification.* A salicylate te
system is a device intended to measu
salicylates, a class of analgesic, antip
retic and anti-inflammatory dru
that includes aspirin, in human spe
mens. Measurements obtained by th
device are used in diagnosis and trea
ment of salicylate overdose and
monitoring salicylate levels to ensu
appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3850 Sulfonamide test system.

(a) *Identification.* A sulfonamid
test system is a device intended t
measure sulfonamides, any of the anti
bacterial drugs derived from sulfanila
mide, in human specimens. Measure
ments obtained by this device are use
in the diagnosis and treatment of sul
fonamide overdose and in monitorin
sulfonamide levels to ensure appropri
ate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The
device is exempt from the premarke
notification procedures in Subpart
of Part 807.

[52 FR 16122, May 6, 1987, as amended at 53
FR 21450, June 8, 1988]

§ 862.3870 Cannabinoid test system.

(a) *Identification.* A cannabinoid test system is a device intended to measure any of the cannabinoids, hallucinogenic compounds endogenous to marihuana, in serum, plasma, saliva, and urine. Cannabinoid compounds include *delta*-9-tetrahydrocannabinol, cannabidiol, cannabinol, and cannabichromene. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of cannabinoid use or abuse and in monitoring levels of cannabinoids during clinical investigational use.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3880 Theophylline test system.

(a) *Identification.* A theophylline test system is a device intended to measure theophylline (a drug used for stimulation of the muscles in the cardiovascular, respiratory, and central nervous systems) in serum and plasma. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of theophylline overdose or in monitoring levels of theophylline to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3900 Tobramycin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A tobramycin test system is a device intended to measure tobramycin, an aminoglycoside antibiotic drug, in plasma and serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of tobramycin overdose and in monitoring levels of tobramycin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3910 Tricyclic antidepressant drugs test system.

(a) *Identification.* A tricyclic antidepressant drugs test system is a device intended to measure any of the tricyclic antidepressant drugs in serum. The tricyclic antidepressant drugs include imipramine, desipramine, amitriptyline, nortriptyline, protriptyline, and doxepin. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of chronic depression to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 862.3950 Vancomycin test system.

(a) *Identification.* A vancomycin test system is a device intended to measure vancomycin, an antibiotic drug, in serum. Measurements obtained by this device are used in the diagnosis and treatment of vancomycin overdose and in monitoring the level of vancomycin to ensure appropriate therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

PART 864—HEMATOLOGY AND PATHOLOGY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
864.1 Scope.
864.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Biological Stains

864.1850 Dye and chemical solution stains.

Subpart C—Cell and Tissue Culture Products

864.2220 Synthetic cell and tissue culture media and components.
864.2240 Cell and tissue culture supplies and equipment.
864.2260 Chromosome culture kit.
864.2280 Cultured animal and human cells.
864.2360 Mycoplasma detection media and components.
864.2800 Animal and human sera.
864.2875 Balanced salt solutions or formulations.

Subpart D—Pathology Instrumentation and Accessories

864.3010 Tissue processing equipment.
864.3250 Specimen transport and storage container.
864.3300 Cytocentrifuge.
864.3400 Device for sealing microsections.
864.3600 Microscopes and accessories.
864.3800 Automated slide stainer.
864.3875 Automated tissue processor.

Subpart E—Specimen Preparation Reagents

864.4010 General purpose reagent.
864.4400 Enzyme preparations.

Subpart F—Automated and Semi-Automated Hematology Devices

864.5200 Automated cell counter.
864.5220 Automated differential cell counter.

Sec.
864.5240 Automated blood cell diluting apparatus.
864.5260 Automated cell-locating device.
864.5300 Red cell indices device.
864.5350 Microsedimentation centrifuge.
864.5400 Coagulation instrument.
864.5425 Multipurpose system for in vitro coagulation studies.
864.5600 Automated hematocrit instrument.
864.5620 Automated hemoglobin system.
864.5680 Automated heparin analyzer.
864.5700 Automated platelet aggregation system.
864.5800 Automated sedimentation rate device.
864.5850 Automated slide spinner.
864.5950 Blood volume measuring device.

Subpart G—Manual Hematology Devices

864.6100 Bleeding time device.
864.6150 Capillary blood collection tube.
864.6160 Manual blood cell counting device.
864.6400 Hematocrit measuring device.
864.6550 Occult blood test.
864.6600 Osmotic fragility test.
864.6650 Platelet adhesion test.
864.6675 Platelet aggregometer.
864.6700 Erythrocyte sedimentation rate test.

Subpart H—Hematology Kits and Packages

864.7040 Adenosine triphosphate release assay.
864.7060 Antithrombin III assay.
864.7100 Red blood cell enzyme assay.
864.7140 Activated whole blood clotting time tests.
864.7250 Erythropoietin assay.
864.7275 Euglobulin lysis time tests.
864.7290 Factor deficiency test.
864.7300 Fibrin monomer paracoagulation test.
864.7320 Fibrinogen/fibrin degradation products assay.
864.7340 Fibrinogen determination system.
864.7360 Erythrocytic glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase assay.
864.7375 Glutathione reductase assay.
864.7400 Hemoglobin A_2 assay.
864.7415 Abnormal hemoglobin assay.
864.7425 Carboxyhemoglobin assay.
864.7440 Electrophoretic hemoglobin analysis system.
864.7455 Fetal hemoglobin assay.
864.7470 Glycosylated hemoglobin assay.
864.7490 Sulfhemoglobin assay.
864.7500 Whole blood hemoglobin assays.
864.7525 Heparin assay.
864.7660 Leukocyte alkaline phosphatase test.
864.7675 Leukocyte peroxidase test.

Sec.
864.7695 Platelet factor 4 radioimmunoassay.
864.7720 Prothrombin consumption test.
864.7735 Prothrombin-proconvertin test and thrombotest.
864.7750 Prothrombin time test.
864.7825 Sickle cell test.
864.7875 Thrombin time test.
864.7900 Thromboplastin generation test.
864.7925 Partial thromboplastin time tests.

Subpart I—Hematology Reagents

864.8100 Bothrops atrox reagent.
864.8150 Calibrator for cell indices.
864.8165 Calibrator for hemoglobin or hematocrit measurement.
864.8175 Calibrator for platelet counting.
864.8185 Calibrator for red cell and white cell counting.
864.8200 Blood cell diluent.
864.8500 Lymphocyte separation medium.
864.8540 Red cell lysing reagent.
864.8625 Hematology quality control mixture.
864.8950 Russell viper venom reagent.

Subpart J—Products Used In Establishments That Manufacture Blood and Blood Products

864.9050 Blood bank supplies.
864.9100 Empty container for the collection and processing of blood and blood components.
864.9125 Vacuum-assisted blood collection system.
864.9145 Processing system for frozen blood.
864.9160 Blood group substances of nonhuman origin for in vitro diagnostic use.
864.9175 Automated blood grouping and antibody test system.
864.9185 Blood grouping view box.
864.9195 Blood mixing devices and blood weighing devices.
864.9205 Blood and plasma warming device.
864.9225 Cell-freezing apparatus and reagents for in vitro diagnostic use.
864.9245 Automated blood cell separator.
864.9275 Blood bank centrifuge for in vitro diagnostic use.
864.9285 Automated cell-washing centrifuge for immuno-hematology.
864.9300 Automated Coombs test systems.
864.9320 Copper sulfate solution for specific gravity determinations.
864.9400 Stabilized enzyme solution.
864.9550 Lectins and protectins.
864.9575 Environmental chamber for storage of platelet concentrate.
864.9600 Potentiating media for in vitro diagnostic use.
864.9650 Quality control kit for blood banking reagents.

best copy available

Sec.
864.9700 Blood storage refrigerator and blood storage freezer.
864.9750 Heat-sealing device.
864.9875 Transfer set.

Authority: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 864.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of hematology and pathology devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17732, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17732, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Biological Stains

§ 864.1850 Dye and chemical solution stains.

(a) *Identification.* Dye and chemical solution stains for medical purposes are mixtures of synthetic or natural dyes or nondye chemicals in solutions used in staining cells and tissues for diagnostic histopathology, cytopathology, or hematology.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The devices are exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[45 FR 60583, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart C—Cell And Tissue Culture Products

§ 864.2220 Synthetic cell and tissue culture media and components.

(a) *Identification.* Synthetic cell and tissue culture media and components are substances that are composed entirely of defined components (e.g., amino acids, vitamins, inorganic salts, etc.) that are essential for the survival and development of cell lines of humans and other animals.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60583, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.2240 Cell and tissue culture supplies and equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Cell and tissue culture supplies and equipment are devices that are used to examine, propagate, nourish, or grow cells and tissue cultures. These include such articles as slide culture chambers, perfusion and roller apparatus, cell culture suspension systems, and tissue culture flasks, disks, tubes, and roller bottles.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the devices are not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, they are exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[45 FR 60584, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.2260 Chromosome culture kit.

(a) *Identification.* A chromosome culture kit is a device containing the necessary ingredients (e.g., Minimum Essential Media (MEM) of McCoy's 5A culture media, phytohemagglutinin, fetal calf serum, antibiotics, and heparin) used to culture tissues for diagnosis of congenital chromosome abnormalities.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60585, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.2280 Cultured animal and human cells.

(a) *Identification.* Cultured animal and human cells are in vitro cultivated cell lines from the tissue of humans or other animals which are used in various diagnostic procedures, particularly diagnostic virology and cytogenetic studies.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60585, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.2360 Mycoplasma detection media and components.

(a) *Identification.* Mycoplasma detection media and components are used to detect and isolate mycoplasma pleuropneumonia-like organisms (PPLO), a common microbial contaminant in cell cultures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60586, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.2800 Animal and human sera.

(a) *Identification.* Animal and human sera are biological products, obtained from the blood of humans or other animals, that provide the necessary growth-promoting nutrients in a cell culture system.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60586, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.2875 Balanced salt solutions or formulations.

(a) *Identification.* A balanced salt solution or formulation is a defined mixture of salts and glucose in a simple medium. This device is included as a necessary component of most cell culture systems. This media component controls for pH, osmotic pressure, energy source, and inorganic ions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60586, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart D—Pathology Instrumentation and Accessories

§ 864.3010 Tissue processing equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Tissue processing equipment consists of devices used to prepare human tissue specimens for diagnostic histological examination by processing specimens through the various stages of decalcifying, infiltrating, sectioning, and mounting on microscope slides.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180 with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198 with respect to complaint files.

[45 FR 60587, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.3250 Specimen transport and storage container.

(a) *Identification.* A specimen transport and storage container is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to contain biological specimens in a fixative solution during storage and transport within and between clinics and laboratories in order that the specimen can effectively be used for diagnostic histological and cytological examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60588, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.3300 Cytocentrifuge.

(a) *Identification.* A cytocentrifuge is a centrifuge used to concentrate cells from biological cell suspensions (e.g., cerebrospinal fluid) and to deposit these cells on a glass microscope slide for cytological examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60588, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.3400 Device for sealing microsections.

(a) *Identification.* A device for sealing microsections is an automated instrument used to seal stained cells and microsections for histological and cytological examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60589, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.3600 Microscopes and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* Microscopes and accessories are optical instruments used to enlarge images of specimens, preparations, and cultures for medical purposes. Variations of microscopes and accessories (through a change in the light source) used for medical purposes include the following:

(1) Phase contrast microscopes, which permit visualization of unstained preparations by altering the phase relationship of light that passes around the object and through the object.

(2) Fluorescense microscopes, which permit examination of specimens stained with fluorochromes that fluoresce under ultraviolet light.

(3) Inverted stage microscopes, which permit examination of tissue cultures or other biological specimens contained in bottles or tubes with the light source mounted above the specimen.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198 with respect to complaint files.

[45 FR 60590, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.3800 Automated slide stainer.

(a) *Identification.* An automated slide stainer is a device used to stain histology, cytology, and hematology slides for diagnosis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60591, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.3875 Automated tissue processor.

(a) *Identification.* An automated tissue processor is an automated system used to process tissue specimens for examination through fixation, dehydration, and infiltration.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60591, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart E—Specimen Preparation Reagents

§ 864.4010 General purpose reagent.

(a) *Identification.* A general purpose reagent is a chemical reagent that has general laboratory application, that is used to collect, prepare, and examine specimens from the human body for diagnostic histopathology, cytology, and hematology, and that is not labeled or otherwise intended for a specific diagnostic application. General purpose reagents include cytological preservatives, decalcifying reagents, fixatives and adhesives, tissue processing reagents, isotonic solutions, and pH buffers.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the devices are not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, they are exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[45 FR 60592, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.4400 Enzyme preparations.

(a) *Identification.* Enzyme preparations are products that are used in the histopathology laboratory for the following purposes:

(1) To disaggregate tissues and cells already in established cultures for preparation into subsequent cultures (e.g., trypsin);

(2) To disaggregate fluid specimens for cytological examination (e.g., papain for gastric lavage or trypsin for sputum liquefaction);

(3) To aid in the selective staining of tissue specimens (e.g., diastase for glycogen determination).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60592, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart F—Automated and Semi-Automated Hematology Devices

§ 864.5200 Automated cell counter.

(a) *Identification.* An automated cell counter is a fully-automated or semi-automated device used to count red blood cells, white blood cells, or blood platelets using a sample of the patient's peripheral blood (blood circulating in one of the body's extremities, such as the arm). These devices may also measure hemoglobin or hematocrit and may also calculate or measure one or more of the red cell indices (the erythrocyte mean corpuscular volume, the mean corpuscular hemoglobin, or the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration). These devices may use either an electronic particle counting method or an optical counting method.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60593, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5220 Automated differential cell counter.

(a) *Identification.* An automated differential cell counter is a device used to identify and classify one or more of the formed elements of the blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 864.3.

[45 FR 60596, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.5240 Automated blood cell diluting apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* An automated blood cell diluting apparatus is a fully automated or semi-automated device used to make appropriate dilutions of a blood sample for further testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60596, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5260 Automated cell-locating device.

(a) *Identification.* An automated cell-locating device is a device used to locate blood cells on a peripheral blood smear, allowing the operator to identify and classify each cell according to type. (Peripheral blood is blood circulating in one of the body's extremities, such as the arm.)

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60597, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5300 Red cell indices device.

(a) *Identification.* A red cell indices device, usually part of a larger system, calculates or directly measures the erythrocyte mean corpuscular volume (MCV), the mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), and the mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC). The red cell indices are used for the differential diagnosis of anemias.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60597, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5350 Microsedimentation centrifuge.

(a) *Identification.* A microsedimentation centrifuge is a device used to sediment red cells for the microsedimentation rate test.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60598, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5400 Coagulation instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A coagulation instrument is an automated or semiautomated device used to determine the onset of clot formation for in vitro coagulation studies.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60598, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5425 Multipurpose system for in vitro coagulation studies.

(a) *Identification.* A multipurpose system for in vitro coagulation studies is a device consisting of one automated or semiautomated instrument and its associated reagents and controls. The system is used to perform a series of coagulation studies and coagulation factor assays.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60599, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5600 Automated hematocrit instrument.

(a) *Identification.* An automated hematocrit instrument is a fully automated or semi-automated device which may or may not be part of a larger system. This device measures the packed red cell volume of a blood sample to distinguish normal from abnormal states, such as anemia and erythrocytosis (an increase in the number of red cells).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60600, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5620 Automated hemoglobin system.

(a) *Identification.* An automated hemoglobin system is a fully automated or semi-automated device which may or may not be part of a larger system. The generic type of device consists of the reagents, calibrators, controls, and instrumentation used to determine the hemoglobin content of human blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60601, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5680 Automated heparin analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An automated heparin analyzer is a device used to determine the heparin level in a blood sample by mixing the sample with protamine (a heparin-neutralizing substance) and determining photometrically the onset of air-activated clotting. The analyzer also determines the amount of protamine necessary to neutralize the heparin in the patient's circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 864.3.

[45 FR 60601, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.5700 Automated platelet aggregation system.

(a) *Identification.* An automated platelet aggregation system is a device used to determine changes in platelet shape and platelet aggregation following the addition of an aggregating reagent to a platelet-rich plasma.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60602, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5800 Automated sedimentation rate device.

(a) *Identification.* An automated sedimentation rate device is an instrument that measures automatically the erythrocyte sedimentation rate in whole blood. Because an increased sedimentation rate indicates tissue damage or inflammation, the erythrocyte sedimentation rate device is useful in monitoring treatment of a disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60602, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5850 Automated slide spinner.

(a) *Identification.* An automated slide spinner is a device that prepares automatically a blood film on a microscope slide using a small amount of peripheral blood (blood circulating in one of the body's extremities, such as the arm).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60603, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.5950 Blood volume measuring device.

(a) *Identification.* A blood volume measuring device is a manual, semiautomated, or automated system that is used to calculate the red cell mass, plasma volume, and total blood volume.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60603, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart G—Manual Hematology Devices

§ 864.6100 Bleeding time device.

(a) *Identification.* A bleeding time device is a device, usually employing two spring-loaded blades, that produces two small incisions in the patient's skin. The length of time required for the bleeding to stop is a measure of the effectiveness of the coagulation system, primarily the platelets.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60604, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6150 Capillary blood collection tube.

(a) *Identification.* A capillary blood collection tube is a plain or heparinized glass tube of very small diameter used to collect blood by capillary action.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60604, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6160 Manual blood cell counting device.

(a) *Identification.* A manual blood cell counting device is a device used to count red blood cells, white blood cells, or blood platelets.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60605, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6400 Hematocrit measuring device.

(a) *Identification.* A hematocrit measuring device is a system consisting of instruments, tubes, racks, and a sealer and a holder. The device is used to measure the packed red cell volume in blood to determine whether the patient's total red cell volume is normal or abnormal. Abnormal states include anemia (an abnormally low total red cell volume) and erythrocytosis (an abnormally high total red cell mass). The packed red cell volume is produced by centrifuging a given volume of blood.

(b) *Clasification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60606, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6550 Occult blood test.

(a) *Identification.* An occult blood test is a device used to detect occult blood in urine or feces. (Occult blood is blood present in such small quantities that it can be detected only by chemical tests of suspected material, or by microscopic or spectroscopic examination.)

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60606, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6600 Osmotic fragility test.

(a) *Identification.* An osmotic fragility test is a device used to determine the resistance of red blood cells to hemolysis (destruction) in varying concentrations of hypotonic saline solutions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60607, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6650 Platelet adhesion test.

(a) *Identification.* A platelet adhesion test is a device used to determine in vitro platelet function.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60608, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6675 Platelet aggregometer.

(a) *Identification.* A platelet aggregometer is a device, used to determine changes in platelet shape and platelet aggregation following the addition of an aggregating reagent to a platelet rich plasma.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60608, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.6700 Erythrocyte sedimentation rate test.

(a) *Identification.* An erythrocyte sedimentation rate test is a device that measures the length of time required for the red cells in a blood sample to fall a specified distance or a device that measures the degree of sedimentation taking place in a given length of time. An increased rate indicates tissue damage or inflammation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60608, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart H—Hematology Kits and Packages

§ 864.7040 Adenosine triphosphate release assay.

(a) *Identification.* An adenosine triphosphate release assay is a device that measures the release of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) from platelets following aggregation. This measurement is made on platelet-rich plasma using a photometer and a luminescent firefly extract. Simultaneous measurements of platelet aggregation and ATP release are used to evaluate platelet function disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60609, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7060 Antithrombin III assay.

(a) *Identification.* An antithrombin III assay is a device that is used to determine the plasma level of antithrombin III (a substance which acts with the anticoagulant heparin to prevent coagulation). This determination is used to monitor the administration of heparin in the treatment of thrombosis. The determination may also be used in the diagnosis of thrombophilia (a congenital deficiency of antithrombin III).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60609, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7100 Red blood cell enzyme assay.

(a) *Identification.* Red blood cell enzyme assay is a device used to measure the activity in red blood cells of clinically important enzymatic reactions and their products, such as pyruvate kinase or 2,3-diphosphoglycerate. A red blood cell enzyme assay is used to determine the enzyme defects responsible for a patient's hereditary hemolytic anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60610, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7140 Activated whole blood clotting time tests.

(a) *Identification.* An activated whole blood clotting time tests is a device, used to monitor heparin therapy for the treatment of venous thrombosis or pulmonary embolism by measuring the coagulation time of whole blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60611, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7250 Erythropoietin assay.

(a) *Identification.* A erythropoietin assay is a device that measures the concentration of erythropoietin (an enzyme that regulates the production of red blood cells) in serum or urine. This assay provides diagnostic information for the evaluation of erythrocytosis (increased total red cell mass) and anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 864.3.

[45 FR 60612, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.7275 Euglobulin lysis time tests.

(a) *Identification.* A euglobulin lysis time test is a device that measures the length of time required for the lysis (dissolution) of a clot formed from fibrinogen in the euglobulin fraction (that fraction of the plasma responsible for the formation of plasmin, a clot lysing enzyme). This test evaluates natural fibrinolysis (destruction of a blood clot after bleeding has been arrested). The test also will detect accelerated fibrinolysis.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60612, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7290 Factor deficiency test.

(a) *Identification.* A factor deficiency test is a device used to diagnose specific coagulation defects, to monitor certain types of therapy, to detect coagulation inhibitors, and to detect a carrier state (a person carrying both a recessive gene for a coagulation factor deficiency such as hemophilia and the corresponding normal gene).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60613, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7300 Fibrin monomer paracoagulation test.

(a) *Identification.* A fibrin monomer paracoagulation test is a device used to detect fibrin monomer in the diagnosis of disseminated intravascular coagulation (nonlocalized clotting within a blood vessel) or in the differential diagnosis between disseminated intravascular coagulation and primary fibrinolysis (dissolution of the fibrin in a blood clot).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 864.3.

[45 FR 60614, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.7320 Fibrinogen/fibrin degradation products assay.

(a) *Identification.* A fibrinogen/fibrin degradation products assay is a device used to detect and measure fibrinogen degradation products and fibrin degradation products (protein fragments produced by the enzymatic action of plasmin on fibrinogen and fibrin) as an aid in detecting the presence and degree of intravascular coagulation and fibrinolysis (the dissolution of the fibrin in a blood clot) and in monitoring therapy for disseminated intravascular coagulation (nonlocalized clotting in the blood vessels).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60615, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7340 Fibrinogen determination system.

(a) *Identification.* A fibrinogen determination system is a device that consists of the instruments, reagents, standards, and controls used to determine the fibrinogen levels in disseminated intravascular coagulation (nonlocalized clotting within the blood vessels) and primary fibrinolysis (the dissolution of fibrin in a blood clot).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60615, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7360 Erythrocytic glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase assay.

(a) *Identification.* An erythrocytic glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase assay is a device used to measure the activity of the enzyme glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase or of glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase isoenzymes. The results of this assay are used in the diagnosis and treatment of nonspherocytic congenital hemolytic anemia or drug-induced hemolytic anemia associated with a glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. This generic device includes assays based on fluorescence, electrophoresis, methemoglobin reduction, catalase inhibition, and ultraviolet kinetics.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60616, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7375 Glutathione reductase assay.

(a) *Identification.* A glutathione reductase assay is a device used to determine the activity of the enzyme glutathione reductase in serum, plasma, or erythrocytes by such techniques as fluorescence and photometry. The results of this assay are used in the diagnosis of liver disease, glutathione reductase deficiency, or riboflavin deficiency.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60616, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7400 Hemoglobin A_2 assay.

(a) *Identification.* A hemoglobin A_2 assay is a device used to determine the hemoglobin A_2 content of human blood. The measurement of hemoglobin A_2 is used in the diagnosis of the thalassemias (hereditary hemolytic anemias characterized by decreased synthesis of one or more types of hemoglobin polypeptide chains).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60617, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7415 Abnormal hemoglobin assay.

(a) *Identification.* An abnormal hemoglobin assay is a device consisting of the reagents, apparatus, instrumentation, and controls necessary to isolate and identify abnormal genetically determined hemoglobin types.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60618, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7425 Carboxyhemoglobin assay.

(a) *Identification.* A carboxyhemoglobin assay is a device used to determine the carboxyhemoglobin (the compound formed when hemoglobin is exposed to carbon monoxide) content of human blood as an aid in the diagnosis of carbon monoxide poisoning. This measurement may be made using methods such as spectroscopy, colorimetry, spectrophotometry, and gasometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60619, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7440 Electrophoretic hemoglobin analysis system.

(a) *Identification.* An electrophoretic hemoglobin analysis system is a device that electrophoretically separates and identifies normal and abnormal hemoglobin types as an aid in the diagnosis of anemia or erythrocytosis (increased total red cell mass) due to a hemoglobin abnormality.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60620, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7455 Fetal hemoglobin assay.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal hemoglobin assay is a device that is used to determine the presence and distribution of fetal hemoglobin (hemoglobin F) in red cells or to measure the amount of fetal hemoglobin present. The assay may be used to detect fetal red cells in the maternal circulation or to detect the elevated levels of fetal hemoglobin exhibited in cases of hemoglobin abnormalities such as thalassemia (a hereditary hemolytic anemia characterized by a decreased synthesis of one or more types of hemoglobin polypeptide chains). The hemoglobin determination may be made by methods such as electrophoresis, alkali denaturation, column chromatography, or radial immunodiffusion.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60620, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7470 Glycosylated hemoglobin assay.

(a) *Identification.* A glycosylated hemoglobin assay is a device used to measure the glycosylated hemoglobins (A_{1a}, A_{1b}, and A_{1c}) in a patient's blood by a column chromatographic procedure. Measurement of glycosylated hemoglobin is used to assess the level of control of a patient's diabetes and to determine the proper insulin dosage for a patient. Elevated levels of glycosylated hemoglobin indicate uncontrolled diabetes in a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60621, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7490 Sulfhemoglobin assay.

(a) *Identification.* A sulfhemoglobin assay is a device consisting of the reagents, calibrators, controls, and instrumentation used to determine the sulfhemoglobin (a compound of sulfur and hemoglobin) content of human blood as an aid in the diagnosis of sulfhemoglobinemia (presence of sulfhemoglobin in the blood due to drug administration or exposure to a poison). This measurement may be made using methods such as spectroscopy, colorimetry, spectrophotometry, or gasometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60621, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7500 Whole blood hemoglobin assays.

(a) *Identification.* A whole blood hemoglobin assay is a device consisting or reagents, calibrators, controls, or photometric or spectrophotometric instrumentation used to measure the hemoglobin content of whole blood for the detection of anemia. This generic device category does not include automated hemoglobin systems.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60622, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7525 Heparin assay.

(a) *Identification.* A heparin assay is a device used to determine the level of the anticoagulant heparin in the patient's circulation. These assays are quantitative clotting time procedures using the effect of heparin on activated coagulation factor X (Stuart factor) or procedures based on the neutralization of heparin by protamine sulfate (a protein that neutralizes heparin).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60623, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7660 Leukocyte alkaline phosphatase test.

(a) *Identification.* A leukocyte alkaline phosphatase test is a device used to identify the enzyme leukocyte alkaline phosphatase in neutrophilic granulocytes (granular leukocytes stainable by neutral dyes). The cytochemical identification of alkaline phosphatase depends on the formation of blue granules in cells containing alkaline phosphatase. The results of this test are used to differentiate chronic granulocytic leukemia (a malignant disease characterized by excessive overgrowth of granulocytes in the bone marrow) and reactions that resemble true leukemia, such as those occuring in severe infections and polycythemia (increased total red cell mass).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls.

[45 FR 60623, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7675 Leukocyte peroxidase test.

(a) *Identification.* A leukocyte peroxidase test is a device used to distinguish certain myeloid cells derived from the bone marrow, i.e., neutrophils, eosinophils, and monocytes, from lymphoid cells of the lymphatic system and erythroid cells of the red blood cell series on the basis of their peroxidase activity as evidenced by staining. The results of this test are used in the differential diagnosis of the leukemias.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60624, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7695 Platelet factor 4 radioimmunoassay.

(a) *Identification.* A platelet factor 4 radioimmunoassay is a device used to measure the level of platelet factor 4, a protein released during platelet activation by radioimmunoassay. This device measures platelet activiation, which may indicate a coagulation disorder, such as myocardial infarction or coronary artery disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60625, Sept. 12, 1980; 46 FR 14890, Mar. 3, 1981]

§ 864.7720 Prothrombin consumption test.

(a) *Identification.* A prothrombin consumption tests is a device that measures the patient's capacity to generate thromboplastin in the coagulation process. The test also is an indirect indicator of qualitative or quantitative platelet abnormalities. It is a screening test for thrombocytopenia (decreased number of blood platelets) and hemophilia A and B.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60625, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7735 Prothrombin-proconvertin test and thrombotest.

(a) *Identification.* The prothrombin-proconvertin test and thrombotest are devices used in the regulation of coumarin therapy (administration of a coumarin anticoagulant such as sodium warfarin in the treatment of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism) and as a diagnostic test in conjunction with, or in place of, the Quick prothrombin time test to detect coagulation disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60626, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7750 Prothrombin time test.

(a) *Identification.* A prothrombin time test is a device used as a general screening procedure for the detection of possible clotting factor deficiencies in the extrinsic coagulation pathway, which involves the reaction between coagulation factors III and VII, and to monitor patients receiving coumarin therapy (the administration of one of the coumarin anticoagulants in the treatment of venous thrombosis or pulmonary embolism).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60626, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7825 Sickle cell test.

(a) *Identification.* A sickle cell test is a device used to determine the sickle cell hemoglobin content of human blood to detect sickle cell trait or sickle cell diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60627, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7875 Thrombin time test.

(a) *Identification.* A thrombin time test is a device used to measure fibrinogen concentration and detect fibrin or fibrinogen split products for the evaluation of bleeding disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60628, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7900 Thromboplastin generation test.

(a) *Identification.* A thromboplastin generation test is a device used to detect and identify coagulation factor deficiencies and coagulation inhibitors.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60628, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.7925 Partial thromboplastin time tests.

(a) *Identification.* A partial thromboplastin time test is a device used for primary screening for coagulation abnormalities, for evaluation of the effect of therapy on procoagulant disorders, and as an assay for coagulation factor deficiencies of the intrinsic coagulation pathway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60629, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart I—Hematology Reagents

§ 864.8100 Bothrops atrox reagent.

(a) *Identification.* A Bothrops atrox reagent is a device made from snake venom and used to determine blood fibrinogen levels to aid in the evaluation of disseminated intravascular coagulation (nonlocalized clotting in the blood vessels) in patients receiving heparin therapy (the administration of the anticoagulant heparin in the treatment of thrombosis) or as an aid in the classification of dysfibrinogenemia (presence in the plasma of functionally defective fibrinogen).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60629, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8150 Calibrator for cell indices.

(a) *Identification.* A calibrator for cell indices is a device that approximates whole blood or certain blood cells and that is used to set an instrument intended to measure mean cell volume (MCV), mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), and mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC), or other cell indices. It is a suspension of particles or cells whose size, shape, concentration, and other characteristics have been precisely and accurately determined.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60631, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8165 Calibrator for hemoglobin or hematocrit measurement.

(a) *Identification.* A calibrator for hemoglobin or hematocrit measurement is a device that approximates whole blood, red blood cells, or a hemoglobin derivative and that is used to set instruments intended to measure hemoglobin, the hematocrit, or both. It is a material whose characteristics have been precisely and accurately determined.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60632, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8175 Calibrator for platelet counting.

(a) *Identification.* A calibrator for platelet counting is a device that resembles platelets in plasma or whole blood and that is used to set a platelet counting instrument. It is a suspension of particles or cells whose size, shape concentration, and other characteristics have been precisely and accurately determined.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60633, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8185 Calibrator for red cell and white cell counting.

(a) *Identification.* A calibrator for red cell and white cell counting is a device that resembles red or white blood cells and that is used to set instruments intended to count red cells, white cells, or both. It is a suspension of particles or cells whose size, shape, concentration, and other characteristics have been precisely and accurately determined.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60634, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8200 Blood cell diluent.

(a) *Identification.* A blood cell diluent is a device used to dilute blood for further testing, such as blood cell counting.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60635, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8500 Lymphocyte separation medium.

(a) *Identification.* A lymphocyte separation medium is a device used to isolate lymphocytes from whole blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60636, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8540 Red cell lysing reagent.

(a) *Identification.* A red cell lysing reagent is a device used to lyse (destroy) red blood cells for hemoglobin determinations or aid in the counting of white blood cells.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60636, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8625 Hematology quality control mixture.

(a) *Identification.* A hematology quality control mixture is a device used to ascertain the accuracy and precision of manual, semiautomated, and automated determinations of cell parameters such as white cell count (WBC), red cell count (RBC), platelet count (PLT), hemoglobin, hematocrit (HCT), mean corpuscular volume (MCV), mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), and mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60637, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.8950 Russell viper venom reagent.

(a) *Identification.* Russell viper venom reagent is a device used to determine the cause of an increase in the prothrombin time.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60637, Sept. 12, 1980]

Subpart J—Products Used In Establishments That Manufacture Blood and Blood Products

§ 864.9050 Blood bank supplies.

(a) *Identification.* Blood bank supplies are general purpose devices intended for in vitro use in blood banking. This generic type of device includes products such as blood bank pipettes, blood grouping slides, blood typing tubes, blood typing racks, and cold packs for antisera reagents. The device does not include articles that are licensed by the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research of the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60638, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 864.9100 Empty container for the collection and processing of blood and blood components.

(a) *Identification.* An empty container for the collection and processing of blood and blood components is a device intended for medical purposes that is an empty plastic bag or plastic or glass bottle used to collect, store, or transfer blood and blood components for further processing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60638, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9125 Vacuum-assisted blood collection system.

(a) *Identification.* A vacuum-assisted blood collection system is a device intended for medical purposes that uses a vacuum to draw blood for subsequent reinfusion.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60639, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9145 Processing system for frozen blood.

(a) *Identification.* A processing system for frozen blood is a device used to glycerolize red blood cells prior to freezing to minimize hemolysis (disruption of the red cell membrane accompanied by the release of hemoglobin) due to freezing and thawing of red blood cells and to deglycerolize and wash thawed cells for subsequent reinfusion.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60639, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9160 Blood group substances of nonhuman origin for in vitro diagnostic use.

(a) *Identification.* Blood group substances of nonhuman origin for in vitro diagnostic use are materials, such as blood group specific substances prepared from nonhuman sources (e.g., pigs, cows, and horses) used to detect, identify, or neutralize antibodies to various human blood group antigens. This generic type of device does not include materials that are licensed by the Center for Biologics Evaluation and Research of the Food and Drug Administration.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60640, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 864.9175 Automated blood grouping and antibody test system.

(a) *Identification.* An automated blood grouping and antibody test system is a device used to group erythrocytes (red blood cells) and to detect antibodies to blood group antigens.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60641, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9185 Blood grouping view box.

(a) *Identification.* A blood grouping view box is a device with a glass or plastic viewing surface, which may be illuminated and heated, that is used to view cell reactions in antigen-antibody testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60641, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9195 Blood mixing devices and blood weighing devices.

(a) *Identification.* A blood mixing device is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to mix blood or blood components by agitation. A blood weighing device is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to weigh blood or blood components as they are collected.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60642, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9205 Blood and plasma warming device.

(a) *Nonelectromagnetic blood or plasma warming device*—(1) *Identification.* A nonelectromagnetic blood and plasma warming device is a device that warms blood or plasma, by means other than electromagnetic radiation, prior to administration.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Electromagnetic blood and plasma warming device*—(1) *Identification.* An electromagnetic blood and plasma warming device is a device that employs electromagnetic radiation (radiowaves or microwaves) to warm a bag or bottle of blood or plasma prior to administration.

(2) *Classfication.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 864.3.

[45 FR 60642, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.9225 Cell-freezing apparatus and reagents for in vitro diagnostic use.

(a) *Identification.* Cell-freezing apparatus and reagents for in vitro diagnostic use are devices used to freeze human red blood cells for in vitro diagnostic use.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60643, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9245 Automated blood cell separator.

(a) *Identification.* An automated blood cell separator is a device that automatically removes whole blood from a donor, separates the blood into components (red blood cells, white blood cells, plasma, and platelets), retains one or more of the components, and returns the remainder of the blood to the donor. The components obtained are transfused or used to prepare blood products for administration. These devices operate on either a centrifugal separation principle or a filtration principle. The separation bowls of centrifugal blood cell separators may be reusable or disposable.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 864.3.

[45 FR 60645, Sept. 12, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 864.9275 Blood bank centrifuge for in vitro diagnostic use.

(a) *Identification.* A blood bank centrifuge for in vitro diagnostic use is a device used only to separate blood cells for further diagnostic testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60645, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9285 Automated cell-washing centrifuge for immuno-hematology.

(a) *Identification.* An automated cell-washing centrifuge for immunohematology is a device used to separate and prepare cells and sera for further in vitro diagnostic testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60646, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9300 Automated Coombs test systems.

(a) *Identification.* An automated Coombs test system is a device used to detect and identify antibodies in patient sera or antibodies bound to red cells. The Coombs test is used for the diagnosis of hemolytic disease of the newborn, and autoimmune hemolytic anemia. The test is also used in crossmatching and in investigating transfusion reactions and drug-induced red cell sensitization.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60646, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9320 Copper sulfate solution for specific gravity determinations.

(a) *Identification.* A copper sulfate solution for specific gravity determinations is a device used to determine whether the hemoglobin content of a potential donor's blood meets the required level (12.5 grams per 100 milliliters of blood for women and 13.5 grams per 100 milliliters of blood for men).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60647, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9400 Stabilized enzyme solution.

(a) *Identification.* A stabilized enzyme solution is a reagent intended for medical purposes that is used to enhance the reactivity of red blood cells with certain antibodies, including antibodies that are not detectable by other techniques. These enzyme solutions include papain, bromelin, ficin, and trypsin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60647, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9550 Lectins and protectins.

(a) *Identification.* Lectins and protectins are proteins derived from plants and lower animals that cause cell agglutination in the presence of certain antigens. These substances are used to detect blood group antigens for in vitro diagnostic purposes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60648, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9575 Environmental chamber for storage of platelet concentrate.

(a) *Identification.* An environmental chamber for storage of platelet concentrate is a device used to hold platelet-rich plasma within a preselected temperature range.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60648, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9600 Potentiating media for in vitro diagnostic use.

(a) *Identification.* Potentiating media for in vitro diagnostic use are media, such as bovine albumin, that are used to suspend red cells and to enhance cell reactions for antigen-antibody testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60649, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9650 Quality control kit for blood banking reagents.

(a) *Identification.* A quality control kit for blood banking reagents is a device that consists of sera, cells, buffers, and antibodies used to determine the specificity, potency, and reactivity of the cells and reagents used for blood banking.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60649, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9700 Blood storage refrigerator and blood storage freezer.

(a) *Identification.* A blood storage refrigerator and a blood storage freezer are devices intended for medical purposes that are used to preserve blood and blood products by storing them at cold or freezing temperatures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60650, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9750 Heat-sealing device.

(a) *Identification.* A heat-sealing device is a device intended for medical purposes that uses heat to seal plastic bags containing blood or blood components.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 60650, Sept. 12, 1980]

§ 864.9875 Transfer set.

(a) *Identification.* A transfer set is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a piece of tubing with suitable adaptors used to transfer blood or plasma from one container to another.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 60651, Sept. 12, 1980]

PART 866—IMMUNOLOGY AND MICROBIOLOGY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
866.1 Scope.
866.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

866.1620 Antimicrobial susceptibility test disc.
866.1640 Antimicrobial susceptibility test powder.
866.1700 Culture medium for antimicrobial susceptibility tests.

Subpart C—Microbiology Devices

866.2050 Staphylococcal typing bacteriophage.
Sec.
866.2120 Anaerobic chamber.
866.2160 Coagulase plasma.
866.2170 Automated colony counter.
866.2180 Manual colony counter.
866.2300 Multipurpose culture medium.
866.2320 Differential culture medium.
866.2330 Enriched culture medium.
866.2350 Microbiological assay culture medium.
866.2360 Selective culture medium.
866.2390 Transport culture medium.
866.2410 Culture medium for pathogenic *Neisseria* spp.
866.2420 Oxidase screening test for gonorrhea.
866.2440 Automated medium dispensing and stacking device.
866.2450 Supplement for culture media.
866.2480 Quality control kit for culture media.
866.2500 Microtiter diluting and dispensing device.
866.2540 Microbiological incubator.
866.2560 Microbial growth monitor.
866.2580 Gas-generating device.
866.2600 Wood's fluorescent lamp.
866.2660 Microorganism differentiation and identification device.
866.2850 Automated zone reader.
866.2900 Microbiological specimen collection and transport device.

Subpart D—Serological Reagents

866.3010 *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* serological reagents.
866.3020 Adenovirus serological reagents.
866.3035 *Arizona* spp. serological reagents.
866.3040 *Aspergillus* spp. serological reagents.
865.3060 *Blastomyces dermatitidis* serological reagents.
866.3065 *Bordetella* spp. serological reagents.
866.3085 *Brucella* spp. serological reagents.
866.3110 *Campylobacter fetus* serological reagents.
866.3120 Chlamydia serological reagents.
866.3125 *Citrobacter* spp. serological reagents.
866.3135 *Coccidioides immitis* serological reagents.
866.3140 *Corynebacterium* spp. serological reagents.
866.3145 Coxsackievirus serological reagents.
866.3165 *Cryptococcus neoformans* serological reagents.
866.3175 Cytomegalovirus serological reagents.
866.3200 *Echinococcus* spp. serological reagents.
866.3205 Echovirus serological reagents.
866.3220 *Entamoeba histolytica* serological reagents.

Sec.
866.3235 Epstein-Barr virus serological reagents.
866.3240 Equine encephalomyelitis virus serological reagents.
866.3250 *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* serological reagents.
866.3255 *Escherichia coli* serological reagents.
866.3270 *Flavobacterium* spp. serological reagents.
866.3280 *Francisella tularensis* serological reagents.
866.3290 Gonococcal antibody test (GAT).
866.3300 *Haemophilus* spp. serological reagents.
866.3305 Herpes simplex virus serological reagents.
866.3320 *Histoplasma capsulatum* serological reagents.
866.3330 Influenza virus serological reagents.
866.3340 *Klebsiella* spp. serological reagents.
866.3350 *Leptospira* spp. serological reagents.
866.3355 *Listeria* spp. serological reagents.
866.3360 Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus serological reagents.
866.3370 *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* immunofluorescent reagents.
866.3375 *Mycoplasma* spp. serological reagents.
866.3380 Mumps virus serological reagents.
866.3390 *Neisseria* spp. direct serological test reagents.
866.3400 Parainfluenza virus serological reagents.
866.3405 Poliovirus serological reagents.
866.3410 *Proteus* spp. (Weil-Felix) serological reagents.
866.3415 *Pseudomonas* spp. serological reagents.
866.3460 Rabiesvirus immunofluorescent reagents.
866.3470 Reovirus serological reagents.
866.3480 Respiratory syncytial virus serological reagents.
866.3490 Rhinovirus serological reagents.
866.3500 Rickettsia serological reagents.
866.3510 Rubella virus serological reagents.
866.3520 Rubeola (measles) virus serological reagents.
866.3550 *Salmonella* spp. serological reagents.
866.3600 *Schistosoma* spp. serological reagents.
866.3630 *Serratia* spp. serological reagents.
866.3660 *Shigella* spp. serological reagents.
866.3680 *Sporothrix schenckii* serological reagents.
866.3700 *Staphylococcus aureus* serological reagents.
866.3720 *Streptococcus* spp. exoenzyme reagents.
Sec.
866.3740 *Streptococcus* spp. serological reagents.
866.3780 *Toxoplasma gondii* serological reagents.
866.3820 *Treponema pallidum* nontreponemal test reagents.
866.3830 *Treponema pallidum* treponemal test reagents.
866.3850 *Trichinella spiralis* serological reagents.
866.3870 *Trypanosoma* spp. serological reagents.
866.3900 Varicella-zoster virus serological reagents.
866.3930 *Vibrio cholerae* serological reagents.

Subpart E—Immunology Laboratory Equipment and Reagents

866.4100 Complement reagent.
866.4500 Immunoelectrophoresis equipment.
866.4520 Immunofluorometer equipment.
866.4540 Immunonephelometer equipment.
866.4600 Ouchterlony agar plate.
866.4800 Radial immunodiffusion plate.
866.4830 Rocket immunoelectrophoresis equipment.
866.4900 Support gel.

Subpart F—Immunological Test Systems

866.5040 Albumin immunological test system.
866.5060 Prealbumin immunological test system.
866.5065 Human allotypic marker immunological test system.
866.5080 *Alpha*-1-antichymotrypsin immunological test system.
866.5090 Antimitochondrial antibody immunological test system.
866.5100 Antinuclear antibody immunological test system.
866.5110 Antiparietal antibody immunological test system.
866.5120 Antismooth muscle antibody immunological test system.
866.5130 *Alpha*-1-antitrypsin immunological test system.
866.5150 Bence-Jones proteins immunological test system.
866.5160 *Beta-globulin* immunological test system.
866.5170 Breast milk immunological test system.
866.5200 Carbonic anhydrase B and C immunological test system.
866.5210 Ceruloplasmin immunological test system.
866.5220 Cohn fraction II immunological test system.
866.5230 Colostrum immunological test system.

Sec.
866.5240 Complement components immunological test system.
866.5250 Complement C_1 inhibitor (inactivator) immunological test system.
866.5260 Complement C_{3b} inactivator immunological test system.
866.5270 C-reactive protein immunological test system.
866.5320 Properidin factor B immunological test system.
866.5330 Factor XIII, A, S, immunological test system.
866.5340 Ferritin immunological test system.
866.5350 Fibrinopeptide A immunological test system.
866.5360 Cohn fraction IV immunological test system.
866.5370 Cohn fraction V immunological test system.
866.5380 Free secretory component immunological test system.
866.5400 *Alpha*-globulin immunological test system.
866.5420 *Alpha*-1-glycoproteins immunological test system.
866.5425 *Alpha*-2-glycoproteins immunological test system.
866.5430 *Beta*-2-glycoprotein I immunological test system.
866.5440 *Beta*-2-glycoprotein III immunological test system.
866.5460 Haptoglobin immunological test system.
866.5470 Hemoglobin immunological test system.
866.5490 Hemopexin immunological test system.
866.5500 Hypersensitivity pneumonitis immunological test system.
866.5510 Immunoglobulins A, G, M, D, and E immunological test system.
866.5520 Immunoglobulin G (Fab fragment specific) immunological test system.
866.5530 Immunoglobulin G (Fc fragment specific) immunological test system.
866.5540 Immunoglobulin G (Fd fragment specific) immunological test system.
866.5550 Immunoglobulin (light chain specific) immunological test system.
866.5560 Lactic dehydrogenase immunological test system.
866.5570 Lactoferrin immunological test system.
866.5580 *Alpha*-1-lipoprotein immunological test system.
866.5590 Lipoprotein X immunological test system.
866.5600 Low-density lipoprotein immunological test system.
866.5620 *Alpha*-2-macroglobulin immunological test system.
866.5630 *Beta*-2-microglobulin immunological test system.
Sec.
866.5640 Infectious mononucleosis immunological test system.
866.5660 Multiple autoantibodies immunological test system.
866.5680 Myoglobin immunological test system.
866.5700 Whole human plasma or serum immunological test system.
866.5715 Plasminogen immunological test system.
866.5735 Prothrombin immunological test system.
866.5750 Radioallergosorbent (RAST) immunological test system.
866.5765 Retinol-binding protein immunological test system.
866.5775 Rheumatoid factor immunological test system.
866.5800 Seminal fluid (sperm) immunological test system.
866.5820 Systemic lupus erythematosus immunological test system.
866.5860 Total spinal fluid immunological test system.
866.5870 Thyroid autoantibody immunological test system.
866.5880 Transferrin immunological test system.
866.5890 Inter-*alpha* trypsin inhibitor immunological test system.

Subpart G—Tumor Associated Antigen Immunological Test Systems

866.6010 Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) immunological test system as an aid in the detection and management of cancer.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 866.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of immunology and microbiology devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The indentification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, an immunology and microbiology device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a microbiology device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987]

§ 866.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (Premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

(c) A device identified in a regulation in this part that is classified into class III and that is subject to the transitional provisions of section 520(l) of the act is automatically classified by statute into class III and must have an approval under section 515 of the act before being commercially distributed. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III transitional device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17733, May 11, 1987; 52 FR 22577, June 12, 1987]

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 866.1620 Antimicrobial susceptibility test disc.

(a) *Identification.* An antimicrobial susceptibility test disc is a device that consists of antimicrobic-impregnated paper discs used to measure by a disc-agar diffusion technique or a disc-broth elution technique the in vitro susceptibility of most clinically important bacterial pathogens to antimicrobial agents. In the disc-agar diffusion technique, bacterial susceptibility is ascertained by directly measuring the magnitude of a zone of bacterial inhibition around the disc on an agar surface. The disc-broth elution technique is associated with an automated rapid susceptibility test system and employs a fluid medium in which susceptibility is ascertained by photometrically measuring changes in bacterial growth resulting when antimicrobial material is eluted from the disc into the fluid medium. Test results are used to determine the antimicrobial agent of choice in the treatment of bacterial diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.1640 Antimicrobial susceptibility test powder.

(a) *Identification.* An antimicrobial susceptibility test powder is a device that consists of an antimicrobial drug powder packaged in vials in specified amounts and intended for use in clinical laboratories for determining in vitro susceptibility of bacterial pathogens to these therapeutic agents. Test results are used to determine the antimicrobial agent of choice in the treatment of bacterial diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.1700 Culture medium for antimicrobial susceptibility tests.

(a) *Identification.* A culture medium for antimicrobial susceptibility tests is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of any medium capable of supporting the growth of many of the bacterial pathogens that are subject to antimicrobial susceptibility tests. The medium should be free of components known to be antagonistic to the common agents for which susceptibility tests are performed in the treatment of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart C—Microbiology Devices

§ 866.2050 Staphylococcal typing bacteriophage.

(a) *Identification.* A staphylococcal typing bacteriophage is a device consisting of a bacterial virus intended for medical purposes to identify pathogenic staphylococcal bacteria through use of the bacteria's susceptibility to destruction by the virus. Test results are used principally for the collection of epidemiological information.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2120 Anaerobic chamber.

(a) *Identification.* An anaerobic chamber is a device intended for medical purposes to maintain an anaerobic (oxygen free) environment. It is used to isolate and cultivate anaerobic microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 866.2160 Coagulase plasma.

(a) *Identification.* Coagulase plasma is a device that consists of freeze-dried animal or human plasma that is intended for medical purposes to perform coagulase tests primarily on staphylococcal bacteria. When reconstituted, the fluid plasma is clotted by the action of the enzyme coagulase which is produced by pathogenic staphylococci. Test results are used primarily as an aid in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic bacteria belonging to the genus *Staphylococcus* and provide epidemiological information on disease caused by these microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.2170 Automated colony counter.

(a) *Identification.* An automated colony counter is a mechanical device intended for medical purposes to determine the number of bacterial colonies present on a bacteriological culture medium contained in a petri plate. The number of colonies counted is used in the diagnosis of disease as a measure of the degree of bacterial infection.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2180 Manual colony counter.

(a) *Identification.* A manual colony counter is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a printed grid system superimposed on an illuminated screen. Petri plates containing bacterial colonies to be counted are placed on the screen for better viewing and ease of counting. The number of colonies counted is used in the diagnosis of disease as a measure of the degree of bacterial infection.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 866.2300 Multipurpose culture medium.

(a) *Identification.* A multipurpose culture medium is a device that consists primarily of liquid or solid biological materials intended for medical purposes for the cultivation and identification of several types of pathogenic microorganisms without the need of additional nutritional supplements. Test results aid in the diagnosis of disease and also provide epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2320 Differential culture medium.

(a) *Identification.* A differential culture medium is a device that consists primarily of liquid biological materials intended for medical purposes to cultivate and identify different types of pathogenic microorganisms. The identification of these microorganisms is accomplished by the addition of a specific biochemical component(s) to the medium. Microorganisms are identified by a visible change (e.g., a color change) in a specific biochemical component(s) which indicates that specific metabolic reactions have occurred. Test results aid in the diagnosis of disease and also provide epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2330 Enriched culture medium.

(a) *Identification.* An enriched culture medium is a device that consists primarily of liquid or solid biological materials intended for medical purposes to cultivate and identify fastidious microorganisms (those having complex nutritional requirements). The device consists of a relatively simple basal medium enriched by the addition of such nutritional components as blood, blood serum, vitamins, and extracts of plant or animal tissues. The device is used in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic microorganisms and also provides epidemiological information on these diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2350 Microbiological assay culture medium.

(a) *Identification.* A microbiological assay culture medium is a device that consists primarily of liquid or solid biological materials intended for medical purposes to cultivate selected test microorganisms in order to measure by microbiological procedures the concentration in a patient's serum of certain substances, such as amino acids, antimicrobial agents, and vitamins. The concentration of these substances is measured by their ability to promote or inhibit the growth of the test organism in the innoculated medium. Test results aid in the diagnosis of disease resulting from either deficient or excessive amounts of these substances in a patient's serum. Tests results may also be used to monitor the effects of the administration of certain antimicrobial drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2360 Selective culture medium.

(a) *Identification.* A selective culture medium is a device that consists primarily of liquid or solid biological materials intended for medical purposes to cultivate and identify certain pathogenic microorganisms. The device contains one or more components that suppress the growth of certain microorganisms while either promoting or not affecting the growth of other microorganisms. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic microorganisms and also provides epidemiological information on these diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2390 Transport culture medium.

(a) *Identification.* A transport culture medium is a device that consists of a semisolid, usually non-nutrient, medium that maintains the viability of suspected pathogens contained in patient specimens while in transit from the specimen collection area to the laboratory. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic microorganisms and also provides epidemiological information on these diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2410 Culture medium for pathogenic Neisseria spp.

(a) *Identification.* A culture medium for pathogenic *Neisseria* spp. is a device that consists primarily of liquid or solid biological materials used to cultivate and identify pathogenic *Neisseria* spp. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Neisseria,* such as epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis, other meningococcal disease, and gonorrhea, and also provides epidemiological information on these microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.2420 Oxidase screening test for gonorrhea.

(a) *Identification.* An oxidase screening test for gonorrhea is an in vitro device that consists of the articles intended to identify by chemical reaction, cytochrome oxidase, an oxidizing enzyme that is associated with certain bacteria including *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.* A sample of a male's urethral discharge is obtained on a swab which is placed into a wetting agent containing an ingredient that will react with cytochrome oxidase. When cytochrome oxidase is present, the swab turns a dark purple color within 3 minutes. Because it is unlikely that cytochrome oxidase-positive organisms other than *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* are present in the urethral discharge of males, the identification of cytochrome oxidase with this device indicates presumptive infection of the patient with the causative agent of gonorrhea.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval) (transitional device).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 866.3.

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

§ 866.2440 Automated medium dispensing and stacking device.

(a) *Identification.* An automated medium dispensing and stacking device is a device intended for medical purposes to dispense a microbiological culture medium into petri dishes and then mechanically stack the petri dishes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). This device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. This device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 866.2450 Supplement for culture media.

(a) *Identification.* A supplement for culture media is a device, such as a vitamin or sugar mixture, that is added to a solid or liquid basal culture medium to produce a desired formulation and that is intended for medical purposes to enhance the growth of fastidious microorganisms (those having complex nutritional requirements). This device aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by pathogenic microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2480 Quality control kit for culture media.

(a) *Identification.* A quality control kit for culture media is a device that consists of paper discs (or other suitable materials), each impregnated with a specified, freeze-dried, viable microorganism, intended for medical purposes to determine if a given culture medium is able to support the growth of that microorganism. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic microorganisms and also provides epidemiological information on these diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2500 Microtiter diluting and dispensing device.

(a) *Identification.* A microtiter diluting and dispensing device is a mechanical device intended for medical purposes to dispense or serially dilute very small quantities of biological or chemical reagents for use in various diagnostic procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2540 Microbiological incubator.

(a) *Identification.* A microbiological incubator is a device with various chambers or water-filled compartments in which controlled environmental conditions, particularly temperature, are maintained. It is intended for medical purposes to cultivate microorganisms and aid in the diagnosis of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). This device is exempt from premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 866.2560 Microbial growth monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A microbial growth monitor is a device intended for medical purposes that measures the concentration of bacteria suspended in a liquid medium by measuring changes in light scattering properties, optical density, electrical impedance, or by making direct bacterial counts. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2580 Gas-generating device.

(a) *Identification.* A gas-generating device is a device intended for medical purposes that produces predetermined amounts of selected gases to be used in a closed chamber in order to establish suitable atmospheric conditions for cultivation of microorganisms with special atmospheric requirements. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2600 Wood's fluorescent lamp.

(a) *Identification.* A Wood's fluorescent lamp is a device intended for medical purposes to detect fluorescent materials (e.g., fluorescein pigment produced by certain microorganisms) as an aid in the identification of these microorganisms. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198 with respect to complaint files.

§ 866.2660 Microorganism differentiation and identification device.

(a) *Identification.* A microorganism differentiation and identification device is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of one or more components, such as differential culture media, biochemical reagents, and paper discs or paper strips impregnated with test reagents, that are usually contained in individual compartments and used to differentiate and identify selected microorganisms. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2850 Automated zone reader.

(a) *Identification.* An automated zone reader is a mechanical device intended for medical purposes to measure zone diameters of microbial growth inhibition (or exhibition), such as those observed on the surface of certain culture media used in disc-agar diffusion antimicrobial susceptibility tests. The device aids in decisionmaking respecting the treatment of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.2900 Microbiological specimen collection and transport device.

(a) *Identification.* A microbiological specimen collection and transport device is a specimen collecting chamber intended for medical purposes to preserve the viability or integrity of microorganisms in specimens during storage of specimens after their collection and during their transport from the collecting area to the laboratory. The device may be labeled or otherwise represented as sterile. The device aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by pathogenic microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

Subpart D—Serological Reagents

§ 866.3010 Acinetobacter calcoaceticus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* serological reagents are devices that consist of *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* antigens and antisera used to identify this bacterium from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by the bacterium *Acinetobacter calcoaceticus* and provides epidemiological information on disease caused by this microorganism. This organism becomes pathogenic in patients with burns or with immunologic deficiency, and infection can result in sepsis (blood poisoning).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3020 Adenovirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Adenovirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to adenovirus in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of adenovirus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye and are used to identify adenoviruses directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by adenoviruses and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Adenovirus infections may cause pharyngitis (inflammation of the throat), acute respiratory diseases, and certain external diseases of the eye (e.g., conjunctivitis).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3035 Arizona spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Arizona* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antisera and antigens used to identify *Arizona* spp. in cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Arizona* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. *Arizona* spp. can cause gastroenteritis (food poisoning) and sepsis (blood poisoning).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3040 Aspergillus spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Aspergillus* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in various serological tests to identify antibodies to *Aspergillus* spp. in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of aspergillosis caused by fungi belonging to the genus *Aspergillus.* Aspergillosis is a disease marked by inflammatory granulomatous (tumorlike) lessions in the skin, ear, eyeball cavity, nasal sinuses, lungs, and occasionally the bones.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3060 Blastomyces dermatitidis serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Blastomyces dermatitidis* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Blastomyces determatitidis* in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of blastomycosis caused by the fungus *Blastomyces dermatitidis.* Blastomycosis is a chronic granulomatous (tumor-like) disease, which may be limited to the skin or lung or may be widely disseminated in the body resulting in lesions of the bones, liver, spleen, and kidneys.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3065 Bordetella spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Bordetella* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera, including antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye, used in serological tests to identify *Bordetella* spp. from cultured isolates or directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Bordetella* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. *Bordetella* spp. cause whooping cough (*Bordetella pertussis*) and other similiarly contagious and acute respiratory infections characterized by pneumonitis (inflammation of the lungs).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3085 Brucella spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Brucella* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used for serological identification of *Brucella* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens or to identify antibodies to *Brucella* spp. in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Brucella* spp. directly from clinical specimens or cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of brucellosis (e.g., undulant fever, Malta fever) caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Brucella* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3110 Campylobacter fetus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Campylobacter fetus* serological reagents are devices that consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify *Campylobacter fetus* from clinical specimens or cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by this bacterium and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. *Campylobacter fetus* is a frequent cause of abortion in sheep and cattle and is sometimes responsible for endocarditis (inflammation of certain membranes of the heart) and enteritis (inflammation of the intestines) in humans.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3120 Chlamydia serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Chlamydia serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to chlamydia in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of chlamydia antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify chlamydia directly from clinical specimens or cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Chlamydia* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Chlamydia are the causative agents of psittacosis (a form of pneumonia), lymphogranuloma venereum (a venereal disease), and trachoma (a chronic disease of the eye and eyelid).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3125 Citrobacter spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Citrobacter* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Citrobacter* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Citrobacter* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. *Citrobacter* spp. have occasionally been associated with urinary tract infections.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3135 Coccidioides immitis serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Coccidioides immitis* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Coccidioides immitis* in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of coccidioidomycosis caused by a fungus belonging to the genus *Coccidioides* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by this microorganism. An infection with *Coccidioides immitis* produces symptoms varying in severity from those accompanying the common cold to those of influenza.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3140 Corynebacterium spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Corynebacterium* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify *Corynebacterium* spp. from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Corynebacterium* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. The principal human pathogen of this genus, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, causes diphtheria. However, many other types of corynebacteria form part of the normal flora of the human respiratory tract, other mucus membranes, and skin, and are either nonpathogenic or have an uncertain role.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3145 Coxsackievirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Coxsackievirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to coxsackievirus in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of coxsackievirus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye that are used to identify coxsackievirus from clinical specimens or from tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of coxsackievirus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Coxsackieviruses produce a variety of infections, including common colds, meningitis (inflammation of brain and spinal cord membranes), herpangina (brief fever accompanied by ulcerated lesions of the throat), and myopericarditis (inflammation of heart tissue).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3165 Cryptococcus neoformans serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Cryptococcus neoformans* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Cryptococcus neoformans* in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) and are used to identify *Cryptococcus neoformans* directly from clinical specimens or from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of cryptococcosis and provides epidemiological information on this type of disease. Cryptococcosis infections are found most often as chronic meningitis (inflammation of brain membranes) and, if not treated, are usually fatal.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3175 Cytomegalovirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Cytomegalovirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to cytomegalovirus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by cytomegaloviruses (principally cytomegalic inclusion disease) and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Cytomegalic inclusion disease is a generalized infection of infants and is caused by intrauterine or early postnatal infection with the virus. The disease may cause severe congenital abnormalities, such as microcephaly (abnormal smallness of the head), motor disability, and mental retardation. Cytomegalovirus infection has also been associated with acquired hemolytic anemia, acute and chronic hepatitis, and an infectious mononucleosis-like syndrome.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3200 Echinococcus spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Echinococcus* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of *Echinococcus* spp. antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Echinococcus* spp. in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of echinococcosis, caused by parasitic tapeworms belonging to the genus *Echinococcus* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Echinococcosis is characterized by the development of cysts in the liver, lung, kidneys, and other organs formed by the larva of the infecting organisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3205 Echovirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Echovirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to echovirus in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of echovirus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify echoviruses from clinical specimens or from tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of echovirus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Echoviruses cause illnesses such as meningitis (inflammation of the brain and spinal cord membranes), febrile illnesses (accompanied by fever) with or without rash, and the common cold.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3220 Entamoeba histolytica serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Entamoeba histolytica* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Entamoeba histolytica* in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Entamoeba histolytica* directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of amebiasis caused by the microscopic protozoan parasite *Entamoeba histolytica* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by this parasite. The parasite may invade the skin, liver, intestines, lungs, and diaphragm, causing disease conditions such as indolent ulcers, an amebic hepatitis, amebic dysentery, and pulmonary lesions.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982; 47 FR 56846, Dec. 21, 1982]

§ 866.3235 Epstein-Barr virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Epstein-Barr virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to Epstein-Barr virus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of Epstein-Barr virus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Epstein-Barr viruses are thought to cause infectious mononucleosis and have been associated with Burkitt's lymphoma (a tumor of the jaw in African children and young adults) and postnasal carcinoma (cancer).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3240 Equine encephalomyelitis virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Equine encephalomyelitis virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antobodies to equine encephalomyelitis virus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by equine encephalomyelitis viruses and provides epidemiological information on these viruses. Equine encephalomyelitis viruses are transmitted to humans by the bite of insects, such as mosquitos and ticks, and may cause encephalitis (inflammation of the brain), rash, acute arthritis, or hepatitis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3250 Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathiae* from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by this bacterium belonging to the genus *Erysipelothrix*. This organism is responsible for a variety of inflammations of the skin following skin abrasions from contact with fish, shellfish, or poultry.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3255 Escherichia coli serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Escherichia coli* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Escherichia coli* from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of *Escherichia coli* antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify *Escherichia coli* directly from clinical specimens or cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by this bacterium belonging to the genus *Escherichia*, and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by this microorganism. Although *Escherichia coli* constitutes the greater part of the microorganisms found in the intestinal tract in humans and is usually nonpathogenic, those strains which are pathogenic may cause urinary tract infections or epidemic diarrheal disease, especially in children.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3270 Flavobacterium spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Flavobacterium* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Flavobacteriuim* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Flavobacterium* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. Most members of this genus are found in soil and water and, under certain conditions, may become pathogenic to humans. *Flavobacterium meningosepticum* is highly virulent for the newborn, in whom it may cause epidemics of septicemia (blood poisoning) and meningitis (inflammation of the membranes of the brain) and is usually attributable to contaminated hospital equipment.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3280 Francisella tularensis serological reagents.

(a) *Identification Francisella tularensis* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Francisella tularensis* in serum or to identify *Francisella tularensis* in cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Francisella tularensis* directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of tularemia caused by *Francisella tularensis* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Tularemia is a desease principally of rodents, but may be transmitted to humans through handling of infected animals, animal products, or by the bites of fleas and ticks. The disease takes on several forms depending upon the site of infection, such as skin lesions, lymph node enlargements, or pulmonary infection.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3290 Gonococcal antibody test (GAT).

(a) *Identification.* A gonococcal antibody test (GAT) is an in vitro device that consists of the reagents intended to identify by immunochemical techniques, such as latex agglutination, indirect fluorescent antibody, or radioimmunoassay, antibodies to *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in sera of asymptomatic females at low risk of infection. Identification of antibodies with this device may indicate past or present infection of the patient with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae.*

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval) (transitional device).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 866.3.

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

§ 866.3300 Haemophilus spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Haemophilus* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera, including antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye, that are used in serological tests to identify *Haemophilus* spp. directly from clinical specimens or tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Haemophilus* and provides epidemiological information on diseases cause by these microorganisms. Diseases most often caused by *Haemophilus* spp. include pneumonia, pharyngitis, sinusitis, vaginitis, chancroid venereal disease, and a contagious form of conjunctivitis (inflammation of eyelid membranes).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3305 Herpes simplex virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Herpes simplex virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in various serological tests to identify antibodies to herpes simplex virus in serum. Additionally, some of the reagents consist of herpes simplex virus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify herpes simplex virus directly from clinical specimens or tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by herpes simplex viruses and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Herpes simplex viral infections range from common and mild lesions of the skin and mucous membranes to a severe form of encephalitis (inflammation of the brain). Neonatal herpes virus infections range from an mild infection to a severe generalized disease with a fatal outcome.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 866.3.

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

§ 866.3320 Histoplasma capsulatum serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Histoplasma capsulatum* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Histoplasma capsulatum* in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of *Histoplasma capsulatum* antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Histoplasma capsulatum* from clinical specimens or cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of histoplasmosis caused by this fungus belonging to the genus *Histoplasma* and provides epidemiological information on the diseases caused by this fungus. Histoplasmosis usually is a mild and often asymptomatic respiratory infection, but in a small number of infected individuals the lesions may spread to practically all tissues and organs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3330 Influenza virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Influenza virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to influenza in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of influenza (flu) and provides epidemiological information on influenza. Influenza is an acute respiratory tract disease, which is often epidemic.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3340 Klebsiella spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Klebsiella* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera, including antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents), that are used in serological tests to identify *Klebsiella* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Klebsiella* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. These organisms can cause serious urinary tract and pulmonary infections, particularly in hospitalized patients.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3350 Leptospira spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Leptospira* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Leptospira* spp. in serum or identify *Leptospira* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. Additionally, some of these antisera are conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) and used to identify *Leptospira* spp. directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of leptospirosis caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Leptospira* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. *Leptospira* infections range from mild fever-producing illnesses to severe liver and kidney involvement producing hemorrhage and dysfunction of these organs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3355 Listeria spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Listeria* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Listeria* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of *Listeria* spp. antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Listeria* spp. directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of listeriosis, a disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Listeria*, and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. *Listeria monocytogenes*, the most common human pathogen of this genus, causes meningitis (inflammation of the brain membranes) and meningoencephalitis (inflammation of the brain and brain membranes) and is often fatal if untreated. A second form of human listeriosis is an intrauterine infection in pregnant women that results in a high mortality rate for infants before or after birth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3360 Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Lymphocytic choriomeningitis viruses usually cause a mild cerebral meningitis (inflammation of membranes that envelop the brain) and occasionally a mild pneumonia, but in rare instances may produce severe and even fatal illnesses due to complications from cerebral meningitis and pneumonia.

(b) *Classification*. Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3370 Mycobacterium tuberculosis immunofluorescent reagents.

(a) *Identification*. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* immunofluorescent reagents are devices that consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of tuberculosis and provides epidemiological information on this disease. *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* is the common causative organism in human tuberculosis, a chronic infectious disease characterized by formation of tubercles (small rounded nodules) and tissue necrosis (destruction), usually occurring in the lung.

(b) *Classification*. Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3375 Mycoplasma spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification*. *Mycoplasma* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Mycoplasma* spp. in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of *Mycoplasma* spp. antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Mycoplasma* spp. directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Mycoplasma* and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. *Mycoplasma* spp. are associated with inflammatory conditions of the urinary and respiratory tracts, the genitals, and the mouth. The effects in humans of infection with *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* range from inapparent infection to mild or severe upper respiratory disease, ear infection, and bronchial pneumonia.

(b) *Classification*. Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3380 Mumps virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification*. Mumps virus serological reagents consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to mumps virus in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used in serological tests to identify mumps viruses from tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of mumps and provides epidemiological information on mumps. Mumps is an acute contagious disease, particularly in children, characterized by an enlargement of one or both of the parotid glands (glands situated near the ear), although other organs may also be involved.

(b) *Classification*. Class I (general controls).

§ 886.3390 Neisseria spp. direct serological test reagents.

(a) *Identification*. *Neisseria* spp. direct serological test reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Neisseria* spp. from cultured isolates. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of *Neisseria* spp. antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) which may be used to detect the presence of *Neisseria* spp. directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Neisseria*, such as epidemic cerebrospinal meningitis, meningococcal disease, and gonorrhea, and also provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these microorganisms. The device does not include products for the detection of gonorrhea in humans by indirect methods, such as detection of antibodies or of oxidase produced by gonococcal organisms.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3400 Parainfluenza virus serological reagents.

(a) Identification. Parainfluenza virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to parainfluenza virus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of parainfluenza virus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Parainfluenza viruses cause a variety of respiratory illnesses ranging from the common cold to pneumonia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3405 Poliovirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Poliovirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to poliovirus in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of poliovirus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify polioviruses from clinical specimens or from tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of poliomyelitis (polio) and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Poliomyelitis is an acute infectious disease which in its serious form affects the central nervous system resulting in atrophy (wasting away) of groups of muscles, ending in contraction and permanent deformity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3410 Proteus spp. (Weil-Felix) serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Proteus* spp. (Weil-Felix) serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera, including antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents), derived from the bacterium *Proteus vulgaris* used in agglutination tests (a specific type of antigen-antibody reaction) for the detection of antibodies to rickettsia (virus-like bacteria) in serum. Test results aid in the diagnosis of diseases caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Rickettsiae* and provide epidemiological information on these diseases. Rickettsia are generally transmitted by arthropods (e.g., ticks and mosquitoes) and produce infections in humans characterized by rash and fever (e.g., typhus fever, spotted fever, Q fever, and trench fever).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3415 Pseudomonas spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Pseudomonas* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera, including antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents), used to identify *Pseudomonas* spp. from clinical specimens or from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Pseudomonas. Pseudomonas aeruginosa* is a major cause of hospital-acquired infections, and has been associated with urinary tract infections, eye infections, burn and wound infections, blood poisoning, abscesses, and meningitis (inflammation of brain membranes). *Pseudomonas pseudomallei* causes melioidosis, a chronic pneumonia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3460 Rabiesvirus immunofluorescent reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Rabiesvirus immunofluorescent reagents are devices that consist of rabiesvirus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye used to identify rabiesvirus in specimens taken from suspected rabid animals. The identification aids in the diagnosis of rabies in patients exposed by animal bites and provides epidemiological information on rabies. Rabies is an acute infectious disease of the central nervous system which, if undiagnosed, may be fatal. The disease is commonly transmitted to humans by a bite from a rabid animal.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3470 Reovirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Reovirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to reovirus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of reovirus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Reoviruses are thought to cause only mild respiratory and gastrointestinal illnesses.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3480 Respiratory syncytial virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Respiratory syncytial virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to respiratory syncytial virus in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of respiratory syncytial virus antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) and used to identify respiratory syncytial viruses from clinical specimens or from tissue culture isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of respiratory syncytial virus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Respiratory syncytial viruses cause a number of respiratory tract infections, including the common cold, pharyngitis, and infantile bronchopneumonia.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3490 Rhinovirus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Rhinovirus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to rhinovirus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of rhinovirus infections and provides epidemiological information on diseases caused by these viruses. Rhinoviruses cause common colds.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3500 Rickettsia serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Rickettsia serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to rickettsia in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of rickettsial antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify rickettsia directly from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by virus-like bacteria belonging to the genus *Rickettsiae* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Rickettsia are generally transmitted by arthropods (e.g., ticks and mosquitoes) and produce infections in humans characterized by rash and fever (e.g., typhus fever, spotted fever, Q fever, and trench fever).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3510 Rubella virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Rubella virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to rubella virus in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of rubella (German measles) or confirmation of a person's immune status from past infections or immunizations and provides epidemiological information on German measles. Newborns infected in the uterus with rubella virus may be born with multiple congenital defects (rubella syndrome).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 866.3.

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

§ 866.3520 Rubeola (measles) virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Rubeola (measles) virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to rubeola virus in serum.

The identification aids in the diagnosis of measles and provides epidemiological information on the disease. Measles is an acute, highly infectious disease of the respiratory and reticuloendothelial tissues, particularly in children, characterized by a confluent and blotchy rash.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3550 Salmonella spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* *Salmonella* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Salmonella* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Salmonella* spp. directly from clinical specimens or cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of salmonellosis caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Salmonella* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Salmonellosis is characterized by high grade fever ("enteric fever"), severe diarrhea, and cramps.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3600 Schistosoma spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* *Schistosoma* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Schistosoma* spp. in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of schistosomiasis caused by parasitic flatworms of the genus *Schistosoma*. Schistosomiasis is characterized by a variety of acute and chronic infections. Acute infection is marked by fever, allergic symptoms, and diarrhea. Chronic effects are usually severe and are caused by fibrous degeneration of tissue around deposited eggs of the parasite in the liver, lungs, and central nervous system. Schistosomes can also cause schistosome dermatitis (e.g., swimmer's itch), a skin disease marked by intense itching.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3630 Serratia spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* *Serratia* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify *Serratia* spp. from cultured isolates. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Serratia* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. *Serratia* spp. are occasionally associated with gastroenteritis (food poisoning) and wound infections.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3660 Shigella spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* *Shigella* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera, including antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents), used in serological tests to identify *Shigella* spp. from cultured isolates. The identification aids in the diagnosis of shigellosis caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Shigella* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Shigellosis is characterized by abdominal pain, cramps, diarrhea, and fever.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3680 Sporothrix schenckii serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* *Sporothrix schenckii* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Sporothrix schenckii* in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of sporothrichosis caused by a fungus belonging to the genus *Sporothrix* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Sporothrichosis is a chronic tumorlike infection primarily of the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3700 Staphylococcus aureus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Staphylococcus aureus* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify enterotoxin (toxin affecting the intestine) producing staphylococci from cultured isolates. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by this bacterium belonging to the genus *Staphylococcus* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Certain strains of *Staphylococcus aureus* produce an enterotoxin while growing in meat, dairy, or bakery products. After ingestion, this enterotoxin is absorbed in the gut and causes destruction of the intestinal lining (gastroenteritis).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3720 Streptococcus spp. exoenzyme reagents.

(a) *Identification. Streptococcus* spp. exoenzyme reagents are devices used to identify antibodies to *Streptococcus* spp. exoenzyme in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of disease caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Streptococcus* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Pathogenic streptococci are associated with infections, such as sore throat, impetigo (an infection characterized by small pustules on the skin), urinary tract infections, rheumatic fever, and kidney disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3740 Streptococcus spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Streptococcus* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera (excluding streptococcal exoenzyme reagents made from enzymes secreted by streptococci) used in serological tests to identify *Streptococcus* spp. from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Streptococcus* and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Pathogenic streptococci are associated with infections, such as sore throat, impetigo (an infection characterized by small pustules on the skin), urinary tract infections, rheumatic fever, and kidney disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3780 Toxoplasma gondii serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Toxoplasma gondii* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Toxoplasma gondii* in serum. Additionally, some of these reagents consist of antisera conjugated with a fluorescent dye (immunofluorescent reagents) used to identify *Toxoplasma gondii* from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of toxoplasmosis caused by the parasitic protozoan *Toxoplasma gondii* and provides epidemiological information on this disease. Congenital toxoplasmosis is characterized by lesions of the central nervous system, which if undetected and untreated may lead to brain defects, blindness, and death of an unborn fetus. The disease is characterized in children by inflammation of the brain and spinal cord.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3820 Treponema pallidum nontreponemal test reagents.

(a) *Identification. Treponema pallidum* nontreponemal test reagents are devices that consist of antigens derived from nontreponemal sources (sources not directly associated with treponemal organisms) and control sera (standardized sera with which test results are compared) used in serological tests to identify reagin, an antibody-like agent, which is produced from the reaction of treponema microorganisms with body tissues. The identification aids in the diagnosis of syphilis caused by microorganisms belonging to the genus *Treponema* and provides epidemiological information on syphilis.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3830 Treponema pallidum treponemal test reagents.

(a) *Identification. Treponema pallidum* treponemal test reagents are devices that consist of the antigens, antisera and all control reagents (standardized reagents with which test results are compared) which are derived from treponemal sources and that are used in the fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test (FTA-ABS), the *Treponema pallidum* immobilization test (T.P.I.), and other treponemal tests used to identify antibodies to *Treponema pallidum* directly from infecting treponemal organisms in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of syphilis caused by bacteria belonging to the genus *Treponema* and provides epidemiological information on syphilis.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3850 Trichinella spiralis serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Trichinella spiralis* serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Trichinella spiralis* in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of trichinosis caused by parasitic roundworms belonging to the genus *Trichinella* and provides epidemiological information on trichinosis. Trichinosis is caused by ingestion of undercooked, infested meat, especially pork, and characterized by fever, muscle weakness, and diarrhea.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3870 Trypanosoma spp. serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Trypanosoma* spp. serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to *Trypanosoma* spp. in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of trypanosomiasis, a disease caused by parasitic protozoans belonging to the genus *Trypanosoma*. Trypanosomiasis in adults is a chronic disease characterized by fever, chills, headache, and vomiting. Central nervous system involvement produces typical sleeping sickness syndrome: physical exhaustion, inability to eat, tissue wasting, and eventual death. Chagas disease, an acute form of trypanosomiasis in children, most seriously affects the central nervous system and heart muscle.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.3900 Varicella-zoster virus serological reagents.

(a) *Identification.* Varicella-zoster virus serological reagents are devices that consist of antigens and antisera used in serological tests to identify antibodies to varicella-zoster in serum. The identification aids in the diagnosis of diseases caused by varicella-zoster viruses and provides epidemiological information on these diseases. Varicella (chicken pox) is a mild, highly infectious disease, chiefly of children. Zoster (shingles) is the recurrent form of the disease, occurring in adults who were previously infected with varicella-zoster viruses. Zoster is the response (characterized by a rash) of the partially immune host to a reactivation of varicella viruses present in latent form in the patient's body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.3930 Vibrio cholerae serological reagents.

(a) *Identification. Vibrio cholerae* serological reagents are devices that are used in the agglutination (an antigen-antibody clumping reaction) test to identify *Vibrio cholerae* from cultured isolates derived from clinical specimens. The identification aids in the diagnosis of cholera caused by the bacterium *Vibrio cholerae* and provides epidemiological information on cholera. Cholera is an acute infectious disease characterized by severe diarrhea with extreme fluid and electrolyte (salts) depletion, and by vomiting, muscle cramps, and prostration. If untreated, the severe dehydration may lead to shock, renal failure, cardiovascular collapse, and death.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart E—Immunology Laboratory Equipment and Reagents

§ 866.4100 Complement reagent.

(a) *Identification.* A complement reagent is a device that consists of complement, a naturally occurring serum protein from any warm-blooded animal such as guinea pigs, that may be included as a component part of serological test kits used in the diagnosis of disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 866.4500 Immunoelectrophoresis equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Immunoelectrophoresis equipment for clinical use with its electrical power supply is a device used for separating protein molecules. Immunoelectrophoresis is a procedure in which a complex protein mixture is placed in an agar gel and the various proteins are separated on the basis of their relative mobilities under the influence of an electric current. The separated proteins are then permitted to diffuse through the agar toward a multispecific antiserum, allowing precipitation and visualization of the separate complexes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.4520 Immunofluorometer equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Immunofluorometer equipment for clinical use with its electrical power supply is a device used to measure the fluorescence of fluorochrome-labeled antigen-antibody complexes. The concentration of these complexes may be measured by means of reflected light. A beam of light is passed through a solution in which a fluorochrome has been selectively attached to serum protein antibody molecules in suspension. The amount of light emitted by the fluorochrome label is detected by a photodetector, which converts light energy into electrical energy. The amount of electrical energy registers on a readout system such as a digital voltmeter or a recording chart. This electrical readout is called the fluorescence value and is used to measure the concentration of antigen-antibody complexes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.4540 Immunonephelometer equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Immunonephelometer equipment for clinical use with its electrical power supply is a device that measures light scattering from antigen-antibody complexes. The concentration of these complexes may be measured by means of reflected light. A beam of light passed through a solution is scattered by the particles in suspension. The amount of light is detected by a photodetector, which converts light energy into electrical energy. The amount of electrical energy registers on a readout system such as a digital voltmeter or a recording chart. This electrical readout is called the light-scattering value and is used to measure the concentration of antigen-antibody complexes. This generic type of device includes devices with various kinds of light sources, such as laser equipment.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.4600 Ouchterlony agar plate.

(a) *Identification.* An ouchterlony agar plate for clinical use is a device containing an agar gel used to examine antigen-antibody reactions. In immunodiffusion, antibodies and antigens migrate toward each other through gel which originally contained neither of these reagents. As the reagents come in contact with each other, they combine to form a precipitate that is trapped in the gel matrix and is immobilized.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.4800 Radial immunodiffusion plate.

(a) *Identification.* A radial immunodiffusion plate for clinical use is a device that consists of a plastic plate to which agar gel containing antiserum is added. In radial immunodiffusion, antigens migrate through gel which originally contains specific antibodies. As the reagents come in contact with each other, they combine to form a precipitate that is trapped in the gel matrix and immobilized.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 866.4830 Rocket immunoelectrophoresis equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Rocket immunoelectrophoresis equipment for clinical use is a device used to perform a specific test on proteins by using a procedure called rocket immunoelectrophoresis. In this procedure, an electric current causes the protein in solution to migrate through agar gel containing specific antisera. The protein precipitates with the antisera in a rocket-shaped pattern, giving the name to the device. The height of the peak (or the area under the peak) is proportional to the concentration of the protein.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.4900 Support gel.

(a) *Identification.* A support gel for clinical use is a device that consists of an agar or agarose preparation that is used while measuring various kinds of, or parts of, protein molecules by various immunochemical techniques, such as immunoelectrophoresis, immunodiffusion, or chromatography.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

Subpart F—Immunological Test Systems

§ 866.5040 Albumin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An albumin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the albumin (a plasma protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of albumin aids in the diagnosis of kidney and intestinal diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5060 Prealbumin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A prealbumin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the prealbumin (a plasma protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of prealbumin levels in serum may aid in the assessment of the patient's nutritional status.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5065 Human allotypic marker immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A human allotypic marker immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to identify by immunochemical techniques the inherited human protein allotypic markers (such as nGm, nA$_2$m, and Km allotypes) in serum and other body fluids. The identification may be used while studying population genetics.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5080 Alpha-1-antichymotrypsin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-1-antichymotrypsin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques *alpha*-1-antichymotrypsin (a protein) in serum, other body fluids, and tissues. *Alpha*-1-antichymotrypsin helps protect tissues against proteolytic (protein-splitting) enzymes released during infection.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5090 Antimitochondrial antibody immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An antimitochondrial antibody immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the antimitochondrial antibodies in human serum. The measurements aid in the diagnosis of diseases that produce a spectrum of autoantibodies (antibodies produced against the body's own tissue), such as primary biliary cirrhosis (degeneration of liver tissue) and chronic active hepatitis (inflammation of the liver).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5100 Antinuclear antibody immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An antinuclear antibody immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the autoimmune antibodies in serum, other body fluids, and tissues that react with cellular nuclear constituents (molecules present in the nucleus of a cell, such as ribonucleic acid, deoxyribonucleic acid, or nuclear proteins). The measurements aid in the diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus (a multisystem autoimmune disease in which antibodies attack the victim's own tissues), hepatitis (a liver disease), rheumatoid arthritis, Sjogren's syndrome (arthritis with inflammation of the eye, eyelid, and salivary glands), and systemic sclerosis (chronic hardening and shrinking of many body tissues).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5110 Antiparietal antibody immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An antiparietal antibody immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the specific antibody for gastric parietal cells in serum and other body fluids. Gastric parietal cells are those cells located in the stomach that produce a protein that enables vitamin B_{12} to be absorbed by the body. The measurements aid in the diagnosis of vitamin B_{12} deficiency (or pernicious anemia), atrophic gastritis (inflammation of the stomach), and autoimmune connective tissue diseases (diseases resulting when the body produces antibodies against its own tissues).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5120 Antismooth muscle antibody immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An antismooth muscle antibody immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the antismooth muscle antibodies (antibodies to nonstriated, involuntary muscle) in serum. The measurements aid in the diagnosis of chronic hepatitis (inflammation of the liver) and autoimmune connective tissue diseases (diseases resulting from antibodies produced against the body's own tissues).

(b) *Classification* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5130 Alpha-1-antitrypsin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-1-antitrypsin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *alpha*-1-antitrypsin (a plasma protein) in serum, other body fluids, and tissues. The measurements aid in the diagnosis of several conditions including juvenile and adult cirrhosis of the liver. In addition, *alpha*-1-antitrypsin deficiency has been associated with pulmonary emphysema.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5150 Bence-Jones proteins immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A Bence-Jones proteins immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the Bence-Jones proteins in urine and plasma. Immunoglobulin molecules normally consist of pairs of polypeptide chains (subunits) of unequal size (light chains and heavy chains) bound together by several disulfide bridges. In some cancerous conditions, there is a proliferation of one plasma cell (antibody-producing cell) with excess production of light chains of one specific kind (monoclonal light chains). These free homogeneous light chains not associated with an immunoglobulin molecule can be found in urine and plasma, and have been called Bence-Jones proteins. Measurement of Bence-Jones proteins and determination that they are monoclonal aid in the diagnosis of multiple myeloma (malignant proliferation of plasma cells), Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia (increased production of large immunoglobulins by spleen and bone marrow cells), leukemia (cancer of the blood-forming organs), and lymphoma (cancer of the lymphoid tissue).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5160 Beta-globulin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A *beta*-globulin immunological test system is a device that consists of reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques beta globulins (serum protein) in serum and other body fluids. *Beta*-globulin proteins include *beta*-lipoprotein, transferrin, glycoproteins, and complement, and are rarely associated with specific pathologic disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5170 Breast milk immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A breast milk immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the breast milk proteins.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5200 Carbonic anhydrase B and C immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A carbonic anhydrase B and C immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques specific carbonic anhydrase protein molecules in serum and other body fluids. Measurements of carbonic anhydrase B and C aid in the diagnosis of abnormal hemoglobin metabolism.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5210 Ceruloplasmin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A ceruloplasmin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the ceruloplasmin (copper-transporting serum protein) in serum, other body fluids, or tissues. Measurements of ceruloplasmin aid in the diagnosis of copper metabolism disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5220 Cohn fraction II immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A Cohn fraction II immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents that contain or are used to measure that fraction of plasma containing protein gamma globulins, predominantly of the IgG class. The device may be used as a coprecipitant in radioimmunoassay methods, as raw material for the purification of IgG subclasses, and to reduce nonspecific adsorption of plasma proteins in immunoassay techniques. Measurement of these proteins aids in the diagnosis of any disease concerned with abnormal levels of IgG gamma globulins such as agammaglobulinemia or multiple myeloma.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5230 Colostrum immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A colostrum immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the specific proteins in colostrum. Colostrum is a substance excreted by the mammary glands during pregnancy and until production of breast milk begins 1 to 5 days after childbirth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5240 Complement components immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A complement components immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques complement components C_{1q}, C_{1r}, C_{1s}, C_2, C_3, C_4, C_5, C_6, C_7, C_8, and C_9, in serum, other body fluids, and tissues. Complement is a group of serum proteins which destroy infectious agents. Measurements of these proteins aids in the diagnosis of immunologic disorders, especially those associated with deficiencies of complement components.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 866.5250 Complement C_1 inhibitor (inactivator) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A complement C_1 inhibitor (inactivator) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the complement C_1 inhibitor (a plasma protein) in serum. Complement C_1 inhibitor occurs normally in plasma and blocks the action of the C_1 component of complement (a group of serum proteins which destroy infectious agents). Measurement of complement C_1 inhibitor aids in the diagnosis of hereditary angioneurotic edema (increased blood vessel permeability causing swelling of tissues) and a rare form of angioedema associated with lymphoma (lymph node cancer).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5260 Complement C_{3b} inactivator immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A complement C_{3b} inactivator immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the complement C_{3b} inactivator (a plasma protein) in serum. Complement is a group of serum proteins that destroy infectious agents. Measurement of complement C_{3b} inactivator aids in the diagnosis of inherited antibody dysfunction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5270 C-reactive protein immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A C-reactive protein immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the C-reactive protein in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of C-reactive protein aids in evaluation of the amount of injury to body tissues.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5320 Properdin factor B immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A properdin factor B immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques properdin factor B in serum and other body fluids. The deposition of properdin factor B in body tissues or a corresponding depression in the amount of properdin factor B in serum and other body fluids is evidence of the involvement of the alternative to the classical pathway of activation of complement (a group of plasma proteins which cause the destruction of cells which are foreign to the body). Measurement of properdin factor B aids in the diagnosis of several kidney diseases, e.g., chronic glomerulonephritis (inflammation of the glomeruli of the kidney), lupus nephritis (kidney disease associated with a multisystem autoimmune disease, systemic lupus erythematosus), as well as several skin diseases, e.g., dermititis herpetiformis (presence of vesicles on the skin that burn and itch), and pemphigus vulgaris (large vesicles on the skin). Other diseases in which the alternate pathway of complement activation has been implicated include rheumatoid arthritis, sickle cell anemia, and gram-negative bacteremia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5330 Factor XIII, A, S, immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A factor XIII, A, S, immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the factor XIII (a blood-clotting factor), in platelets (A) or serum (S). Measurements of factor XIII, A, S, aid in the diagnosis and treatment of certain bleeding disorders resulting from a deficiency of this factor.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5340 Ferritin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A ferritin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the ferritin (an iron-storing protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurements of ferritin aid in the diagnosis of diseases affecting iron metabolism, such as hemochromatosis (iron overload) and iron deficiency amemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5350 Fibrinopeptide A immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A fibrinopeptide A immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the fibrinopeptide A (a blood-clotting factor) in plasma and other body fluids. Measurement of fibrinopeptide A may aid in the diagnosis and treatment of certain blood-clotting disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5360 Cohn fraction IV immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A Cohn fraction IV immunological test system is a device that consists of or measures that fraction of plasma proteins, predominantly *alpha*- and *beta*-globulins, used as a raw material for the production of pure *alpha*- or *beta*-globulins. Measurement of specific *alpha*- or *beta*-globulins aids in the diagnosis of many diseases, such as Wilson's disease (an inherited disease affecting the liver and brain), Tangier's disease (absence of *alpha*-1-lipoprotein), malnutrition, iron deficiency anemia, red blood cell disorders, and kidney disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982; 47 FR 56846, Dec. 21, 1982]

§ 866.5370 Cohn fraction V immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A Cohn fraction V immunological test system is a device that consists of or measures that fraction of plasma containing predominantly albumin (a plasma protein). This test aids in the diagnosis of diseases where albumin levels may be depressed, e.g., nephrosis (disease of the kidney), proteinuria (protein in the urine), gastroenteropathy (disease of the stomach and small intestine), rheumatoid arthritis, and viral hepatitis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5380 Free secretory component immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A free secretory component immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques free secretory component (normally a portion of the secretory IgA antibody molecule) in body fluids. Measurement of free secretory component (protein molecules) aids in the diagnosis or repetitive lung infections and other hypogammaglobulinemic conditions (low antibody levels).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5400 Alpha-globulin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-globulin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *alpha*-globulin (a serum protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of *alpha*-globulin may aid in the diagnosis of inflammatory lesions, infections, severe burns, and a variety of other conditions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5420 Alpha-1-glycoproteins immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-1-glycoproteins immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques *alpha*-1-glycoproteins (a group of plasma proteins found in the *alpha*-1 group when subjected to electrophoresis) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of specific *alpha*-1-glycoproteins may aid in the diagnosis of collagen (connective tissue) disorders, tuberculosis, infections, extensive malignancy, and diabetes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5425 Alpha-2-glycoproteins immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-2-glycoproteins immunolgical test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *alpha*-2-glycoproteins (a group of plasma proteins found in the *alpha*-2 group when subjected to electrophoresis) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of *alpha*-2-glycoproteins aids in the diagnosis of some cancers and genetically inherited deficiencies of these plasma proteins.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5430 Beta-2-glycoprotein I immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A *beta*-2-glycoprotein I immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *beta*-2-glycoprotein I (a serum protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of *beta*-2-glycoprotein I aids in the diagnosis of an inherited deficiency of this serum protein.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5440 Beta-2-glycoprotein III immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A *beta*-2-glycoprotein III immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *beta*-2-glycoprotein III (a serum protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of *beta*-2-glycoprotein III aids in the diagnosis of an inherited deficiency of this serum protein and a variety of other conditions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5460 Haptoglobin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A haptoglobin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the haptoglobin (a protein that binds hemoglobin, the oxygen-carrying pigment in red blood cells) in serum. Measurement of haptoglobin may aid in the diagnosis of hemolytic diseases (diseases in which the red blood cells rupture and release hemoglobin) related to the formation of hemoglobin-haptoglobin complexes and certain kidney diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5470 Hemoglobin immunological test system.

(a) *Indentification.* A hemoglobin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the different types of free hemoglobin (the oxygen-carrying pigment in red blood cells) in blood, urine, plasma, or other body fluids. Measurements of free hemoglobin aid in the diagnosis of various hematologic disorders, such as sickle cell anemia, Fanconi's anemia (a rare inherited disease), aplastic anemia (bone marrow does not produce enough blood cells), and leukemia (cancer of the blood-forming organs).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5490 Hemopexin immunological test system.

(a) *Indentification.* A hemopexin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the hemopexin (a serum protein that binds heme, a component of hemoglobin) in serum. Measurement of hemopexin aids in the diagnosis of various hematologic disorders, such as hemolytic anemia (anemia due to shortened in vivo survival of mature red blood cells and inability of the bone marrow to compensate for their decreased life span) and sickle cell anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5500 Hypersensitivity pneumonitis immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A hypersensitivity pneumonitis immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the immunoglobulin antibodies in serum which react specifically with organic dust derived from fungal or animal protein sources. When these antibodies react with such dusts in the lung, immune complexes precipitate and trigger an inflammatory reaction (hypersensitivity pneumonitis). Measurement of these immunoglobulin G antibodies aids in the diagnosis of hypersensitivity pneumonitis and other allergic respiratory disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5510 Immunoglobulins A, G, M, D, and E immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An immunoglobulins A, G, M, D, and E immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the immunoglobulins A, G, M, D, an E (serum antibodies) in serum. Measurement of these immunoglobulins aids in the diagnosis of abnormal protein metabolism and the body's lack of ability to resist infectious agents.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5520 Immunoglobulin G (Fab fragment specific) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An immunoglobulin G (Fab fragment specific) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the Fab antigen-binding fragment resulting from breakdown of immunoglobulin G antibodies in urine, serum, and other body fluids. Measurement of Fab fragments of immunoglobulin G aids in the diagnosis of lymphoproliferative disorders, such as multiple myeloma (tumor of bone marrow cells), Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia (increased immunoglobulin production by the spleen and bone marrow cells), and lymphoma (tumor of the lymphoid tissues).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5530 Immunoglobulin G (Fc fragment specific) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An immunoglobulin G (Fc fragment specific) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the Fc (carbohydrate containing) fragment of immunoglobulin G (resulting from breakdown of immunoglobulin G antibodies) in urine, serum, and other body fluids. Measurement of immunoglobulin G Fc fragments aids in the diagnosis of plasma cell antibody-forming abnormalities, e.g., gamma heavy chain disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5540 Immunoglobulin G (Fd fragment specific) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An immunoglobulin G (Fd fragment specific) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the amino terminal (antigen-binding) end (Fd fragment) of the heavy chain (a subunit) of the immunoglobulin antibody molecule in serum. Measurement of immunoglobulin G Fd fragments aids in the diagnosis of plasma antibody-forming cell abnormalities.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5550 Immunoglobulin (light chain specific) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An immunoglobulin (light chain specific) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques both kappa and lambda types of light chain portions of immunoglobulin molecules in serum, other body fluids, and tissues. In some disease states, an excess of light chains are produced by the antibody-forming cells. These free light chains, unassociated with gamma globulin molecules, can be found in a patient's body fluids and tissues. Measurement of the various amounts of the different types of light chains aids in the diagnosis of multiple myeloma (cancer of antibody-forming cells), lymphocytic neoplasms (cancer of lymphoid tissue), Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia (increased production of large immunoglobulins), and connective tissue diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis or systemic lupus erythematosus.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5560 Lactic dehydrogenase immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lactic dehydrogenase immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the activity of the lactic dehydrogenase enzyme in serum. Increased levels of lactic dehydrogenase are found in a variety of conditions, including megaloblastic anemia (decrease in the number of mature red blood cells), myocardial infarction (heart disease), and some forms of leukemia (cancer of the blood-forming organs). However, the diagnostic usefulness of this device is limited because of the many conditions known to cause increased lactic dehydrogenase levels.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5570 Lactoferrin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lactoferrin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the lactoferrin (an iron-binding protein with the ability to inhibit the growth of bacteria) in serum, breast milk, other body fluids, and tissues. Measurement of lactoferrin may aid in the diagnosis of an inherited deficiency of this protein.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5580 Alpha-1-lipoprotein immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-1-lipoprotein immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *alpha*-1-lipoprotein (high-density lipoprotein) in serum and plasma. Measurement of *alpha*-1-lipoprotein may aid in the diagnosis of Tangier disease (a hereditary disorder of fat metabolism).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5590 Lipoprotein X immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A lipoprotein X immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques lipoprotein X (a high-density lipoprotein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of lipoprotein X aids in the diagnosis of obstructive liver disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5600 Low-density lipoprotein immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A low-density lipoprotein immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the low-density lipoprotein in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of low-density lipoprotein in serum may aid in the diagnosis of disorders of lipid (fat) metabolism and help to identify young persons at risk from cardiovascular diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5620 Alpha-2-macroglobulin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An *alpha*-2-macroglobulin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the *alpha*-2-macroglobulin (a serum protein) in plasma. Measurement of *alpha*-2-macroglobulin may aid in the diagnosis of blood-clotting or clot lysis disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5630 Beta-2-microglobulin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A *beta*-2-microglobulin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques *beta*-2-microglobulin (a protein molecule) in serum, urine, and other body fluids. Measurement of *beta*-2-microglobulin aids in the diagnosis of active rheumatoid arthritis and kidney disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5640 Infectious mononucleosis immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An infectious mononucleosis immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques heterophile antibodies frequently associated with infectious mononucleosis in serum, plasma, and other body fluids. Measurements of these antibodies aid in the diagnosis of infectious mononucleosis.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982; 47 FR 56846, Dec. 21, 1982]

§ 866.5660 Multiple autoantibodies immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A multiple autoantibodies immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the autoantibodies (antibodies produced against the body's own tissues) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of multiple autoantibodies aids in the diagnosis of autoimmune disorders (disease produced when the body's own tissues are injured by autoantibodies).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5680 Myoglobin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A myoglobin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the myoglobin (an oxygen storage protein found in muscle) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of myoglobin aids in the rapid diagnosis of heart or renal disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5700 Whole human plasma or serum immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A whole human plasma or serum immunological test system is a device that consists of reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the proteins in plasma or serum. Measurements of proteins in plasma or serum aid in the diagnosis of any disease concerned with abnormal levels of plasma or serum proteins, e.g., agammaglobulinemia, allergies, multiple myeloma, rheumatoid vasculitis, or hereditary angioneurotic edema.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5715 Plasminogen immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A plasminogen immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the plasminogen (an inactive substance from which plasmin, a blood-clotting factor, is formed) in serum, other body fluids, and tissues. Measurement of plasminogen levels may aid in the diagnosis of fibrinolytic (blood-clotting) disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5735 Prothrombin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A prothrombin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the prothrombin (clotting factor II) in serum. Measurements of the amount of antigenically competent (ability to react with protein antibodies) prothrombin aid in the diagnosis of blood-clotting disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5750 Radioallergosorbent (RAST) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A radioallergosorbent immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the allergen antibodies (antibodies which cause an allergic reaction) specific for a given allergen. Measurement of specific allergen antibodies may aid in the diagnosis of asthma, allergies, and other pulmonary disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5765 Retinol-binding protein immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A retinol-binding protein immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the retinol-binding protein that binds and transports vitamin A in serum and urine. Measurement of this protein may aid in the diagnosis of kidney disease and in monitoring patients with kidney transplants.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5775 Rheumatoid factor immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A rheumatoid factor immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the rheumatoid factor (antibodies to immunoglobulins) in serum, other body fluids, and tissues. Measurement of rheumatoid factor may aid in the diagnosis of rheumatoid arthritis.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5800 Seminal fluid (sperm) immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A seminal fluid (sperm) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used for legal purposes to identify and differentiate animal and human semen. The test results may be used as court evidence in alleged instances of rape and other sex-related crimes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 866.5820 Systemic lupus erythematosus immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the autoimmune antibodies in serum and other body fluids that react with cellular nuclear double-stranded deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) or other nuclear constituents that are specifically diagnostic of SLE. Measurement of nuclear double-stranded DNA antibodies aids in the diagnosis of SLE (a multisystem autoimmune disease in which tissues are attacked by the person's own antibodies).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5860 Total spinal fluid immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A total spinal fluid immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the total protein in cerebrospinal fluid. Measurement of spinal fluid proteins may aid in the diagnosis of multiple sclerosis and other diseases of the nervous system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5870 Thyroid autoantibody immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A thyroid autoantibody immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the thyroid autoantibodies (antibodies produced against the body's own tissues). Measurement of thyroid autoantibodies may aid in the diagnosis of certain thyroid disorders, such as Hashimoto's disease (chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis), nontoxic goiter (enlargement of thyroid gland), Grave's disease (enlargement of the thyroid gland with protrusion of the eyeballs), and cancer of the thyroid.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5880 Transferrin immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* A transferrin immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the transferrin (an iron-binding and transporting serum protein) in serum, plasma, and other body fluids. Measurement of transferrin levels aids in the diagnosis of malnutrition, acute inflammation, infection, and red blood cell disorders, such as iron deficiency anemia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 866.5890 Inter-alpha trypsin inhibitor immunological test system.

(a) *Identification.* An inter-*alpha* trypsin inhibitor immunological test system is a device that consists of the reagents used to measure by immunochemical techniques the inter-*alpha* trypsin inhibitor (a protein) in serum and other body fluids. Measurement of inter-*alpha* trypsin inhibitor may aid in the diagnosis of acute bacterial infection and inflammation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart G—Tumor Associated Antigen Immunological Test Systems

§ 866.6010 Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) immunological test system as an aid in the detection and management of cancer.

(a) *Identification.* A carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) immunological test system as an aid in the detection and management of cancer is a device that consists of the reagents intended to measure by immunochemical techniques, such as enzyme immunoassay or radioimmunoassay, CEA in blood, plasma, other body fluids, and tissues. Measurement of CEA levels may aid in the detection and management of cancer.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval) (transitional device).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 866.3.

[47 FR 50823, Nov. 9, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

PART 868—ANESTHESIOLOGY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
868.1 Scope.
868.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

868.1030 Manual algesimeter.
868.1040 Powered algesimeter.
868.1075 Argon gas analyzer.
868.1100 Arterial blood sampling kit.
868.1120 Indwelling blood oxyhemoglobin concentration analyzer.
868.1150 Indwelling blood carbon dioxide partial pressure (P_{CO_2}) analyzer.
868.1170 Indwelling blood hydrogen ion concentration (pH) analyzer.
868.1200 Indwelling blood oxygen partial pressure (P_{O_2}) analyzer.
868.1400 Carbon dioxide gas analyzer.
868.1430 Carbon monoxide gas analyzer.
868.1500 Enflurane gas analyzer.
868.1575 Gas collection vessel.
868.1620 Halothane gas analyzer.
868.1640 Helium gas analyzer.
868.1670 Neon gas analyzer.
868.1690 Nitrogen gas analyzer.
868.1700 Nitrous oxide gas analyzer.
868.1720 Oxygen gas analyzer.
868.1730 Oxygen uptake computer.
868.1750 Pressure plethysmograph.
868.1760 Volume plethysmograph.
868.1780 Inspiratory airway pressure meter.
868.1800 Rhinoanemometer.
868.1840 Diagnostic spirometer.
868.1850 Monitoring spirometer.
868.1860 Peak-flow meter for spirometry.
868.1870 Gas volume calibrator.
868.1880 Pulmonary-function data calculator.
868.1890 Predictive pulmonary-function value calculator.
868.1900 Diagnostic pulmonary-function interpretation calculator.
868.1910 Esophageal stethoscope.
868.1920 Esophageal stethoscope with electrical conductors.
868.1930 Stethoscope head.
868.1965 Switching valve (ploss).
868.1975 Water vapor analyzer.

Subpart C—Monitoring Devices

868.2025 Ultrasonic air embolism monitor.
868.2300 Bourdon gauge flowmeter.
868.2320 Uncompensated thorpe tube flowmeter.
868.2340 Compensated thorpe tube flowmeter.
868.2350 Gas calibration flowmeter.
868.2375 Breathing frequency monitor.
868.2450 Lung water monitor.
868.2500 Cutaneous oxygen monitor.
868.2550 Pneumotachometer.
868.2600 Airway pressure monitor.
868.2610 Gas pressure gauge.
868.2620 Gas pressure calibrator.
868.2700 Pressure regulator.

Sec.
868.2775 Electrical peripheral nerve stimulator.
868.2875 Differential pressure transducer.
868.2885 Gas flow transducer.
868.2900 Gas pressure transducer.

Subparts D–E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

868.5090 Emergency airway needle.
868.5100 Nasopharyngeal airway.
868.5110 Oropharyngeal airway.
868.5120 Anesthesia conduction catheter.
868.5130 Anesthesia conduction filter.
868.5140 Anesthesia conduction kit.
868.5150 Anesthesia conduction needle.
868.5160 Gas machine for anesthesia or analgesia.
868.5170 Laryngotracheal topical anesthesia applicator.
868.5180 Rocking bed.
868.5220 Blow bottle.
868.5240 Anesthesia breathing circuit.
868.5250 Breathing circuit circulator.
868.5260 Breathing circuit bacterial filter.
868.5270 Breathing system heater.
868.5280 Breathing tube support.
868.5300 Carbon dioxide absorbent.
868.5310 Carbon dioxide absorber.
868.5320 Reservoir bag.
868.5330 Breathing gas mixer.
868.5340 Nasal oxygen cannula.
868.5350 Nasal oxygen catheter.
868.5365 Posture chair for cardiac or pulmonary treatment.
868.5375 Heat and moisture condenser (artificial nose).
868.5400 Electroanesthesia apparatus.
868.5420 Ether hook.
868.5430 Gas-scavenging apparatus.
868.5440 Portable oxygen generator.
868.5450 Respiratory gas humidifier.
868.5460 Therapeutic humidifier for home use.
868.5470 Hyperbaric chamber.
868.5530 Flexible laryngoscope.
868.5540 Rigid laryngoscope.
868.5550 Anesthetic gas mask.
868.5560 Gas mask head strap.
868.5570 Nonrebreathing mask.
868.5580 Oxygen mask.
868.5590 Scavenging mask.
868.5600 Venturi mask.
868.5610 Membrane lung for long-term pulmonary support.
868.5620 Breathing mouthpiece.
868.5630 Nebulizer.
868.5640 Medicinal nonventilatory nebulizer (atomizer).
868.5650 Esophageal obturator.
868.5655 Portable liquid oxygen unit.
868.5665 Powered percussor.
868.5675 Rebreathing device.
868.5690 Incentive spirometer.

Sec.
868.5700 Nonpowered oxygen tent.
868.5710 Electrically powered oxygen tent.
868.5720 Bronchial tube.
868.5730 Tracheal tube.
868.5740 Tracheal/bronchial differential ventilation tube.
868.5750 Inflatable tracheal tube cuff.
868.5760 Cuff spreader.
868.5770 Tracheal tube fixation device.
868.5780 Tube introduction forceps.
868.5790 Tracheal tube stylet.
868.5795 Tracheal tube cleaning brush.
868.5800 Tracheostomy tube and tube cuff.
868.5810 Airway connector.
868.5820 Dental protector.
868.5830 Autotransfusion apparatus.
868.5860 Pressure tubing and accessories.
868.5870 Nonrebreathing valve.
868.5880 Anesthetic vaporizer.
868.5895 Continuous ventilator.
868.5905 Noncontinuous ventilator (IPPB).
868.5915 Manual emergency ventilator.
868.5925 Powered emergency ventilator.
868.5935 External negative pressure ventilator.
868.5955 Intermittent mandatory ventilation attachment.
868.5965 Positive end expiratory pressure breathing attachment.
868.5975 Ventilator tubing.
868.5995 Tee drain (water trap).

Subpart G—Miscellaneous

868.6100 Anesthetic cabinet, table, or tray.
868.6175 Cardiopulmonary emergency cart.
868.6225 Nose clip.
868.6250 Portable air compressor.
868.6400 Calibration gas.
868.6700 Anesthesia stool.
868.6810 Tracheobronchial suction catheter.
868.6820 Patient position support.
868.6885 Medical gas yoke assembly.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 42 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 868.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of anesthesiology devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, an anesthesiology device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17734, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 868.1030 Manual algesimeter.

(a) *Identification.* A manual algesimeter is a mechanical device intended to determine a patient's sensitivity to pain after administration of an anesthetic agent, e.g., by pricking with a sharp point.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.1040 Powered algesimeter.

(a) *Identification.* A powered algesimeter is a device using electrical stimulation intended to determine a patient's sensitivity to pain after administration of an anesthetic agent.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1075 Argon gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An argon gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of argon in a gas mixture to aid in determining the patient's ventilatory status. The device may use techniques such as mass spectrometry or thermal conductivity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1100 Arterial blood sampling kit.

(a) *Identification.* An arterial blood sampling kit is a device, in kit form, used to obtain arterial blood samples from a patient for blood gas determinations. The kit may include a syringe, needle, cork, and heparin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1120 Indwelling blood oxyhemoglobin concentration analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An indwelling blood oxyhemoglobin concentration analyzer is a photoelectric device used to measure, in vivo, the oxygen-carrying capacity of hemoglobin in blood to aid in determining the patient's physiological status.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987; 52 FR 22577, June 12, 1987]

§ 868.1150 Indwelling blood carbon dioxide partial pressure (P_{CO_2}) analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An indwelling blood carbon dioxide partial pressure P_{CO_2} analyzer is a device that consists of a catheter-tip P_{CO_2} transducer (e.g., P_{CO_2} electrode) and that is used to measure, in vivo, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide in blood to aid in determining the patient's circulatory, ventilatory, and metabolic status.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982; 47 FR 40410, Sept. 14, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.1170 Indwelling blood hydrogen ion concentration (pH) analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An indwelling blood hydrogen ion concentration (pH) analyzer is a device that consists of a catheter-tip pH electrode and that is used to measure, in vivo, the hydrogen ion concentration (pH) in blood to aid in determining the patient's acid-base balance.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.1200 Indwelling blood oxygen partial pressure (P_{O_2}) analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An indwelling blood oxygen partial pressure (P_{O_2}) analyzer is a device that consists of a catheter-tip P_{O_2} transducer (e.g., P_{O_2} electrode) and that is used to measure, in vivo, the partial pressure of oxygen in blood to aid in determining the patient's circulatory, ventilatory, and metabolic status.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982; 47 FR 40410, Sept. 14, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.1400 Carbon dioxide gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A carbon dioxide gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of carbon dioxide in a gas mixture to aid in determining the patient's ventilatory, circulatory, and metabolic status. The device may use techniques such as chemical titration, absorption of infrared radiation, gas chromatography, or mass spectrometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1430 Carbon monoxide gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A carbon monoxide gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of carbon monoxide in a gas mixture to aid in determining the patient's ventilatory status. The device may use techniques such as infrared absorption or gas chromatography.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1500 Enflurane gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An enflurane gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of enflurane anesthetic in a gas mixture.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1575 Gas collection vessel.

(a) *Identification.* A gas collection vessel is a container-like device intended to collect a patient's exhaled gases for subsequent analysis. It does not include a sampling pump.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1620 Halothane gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A halothane gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of halothane anesthetic in a gas mixture. The device may use techniques such as mass spectrometry or absorption of infrared or ultraviolet radiation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1640 Helium gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A helium gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of helium in a gas mixture during pulmonary function testing. The device may use techniques such as thermal conductivity, gas chromatography, or mass spectrometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1670 Neon gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A neon gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of neon in a gas mixture exhaled by a patient. The device may use techniques such as mass spectrometry or thermal conductivity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1690 Nitrogen gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A nitrogen gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of nitrogen in respiratory gases to aid in determining a patient's ventilatory status. The device may use techniques such as gas chromatography or mass spectrometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1700 Nitrous oxide gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A nitrous oxide gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of nitrous oxide anesthetic in a gas mixture. The device may use techniques such as infrared absorption or mass spectrometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1720 Oxygen gas analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An oxygen gas analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of oxygen in respiratory gases by techniques such as mass spectrometry, polarography, thermal conductivity, or gas chromatography. This generic type of device also includes paramagnetic analyzers.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1730 Oxygen uptake computer.

(a) *Identification.* An oxygen uptake computer is a device intended to compute the amount of oxygen consumed by a patient and may include components for determining expired gas volume and composition.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1750 Pressure plethysmograph.

(a) *Identification.* A pressure plethysmograph is a device used to determine a patient's airway resistance and lung volumes by measuring pressure changes while the patient is in an airtight box.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1760 Volume plethysmograph.

(a) *Identification.* A volume plethysmograph is an airtight box, in which a patient sits, that is used to determine the patient's lung volume changes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1780 Inspiratory airway pressure meter.

(a) *Identification.* An inspiratory airway pressure meter is a device used to measure the amount of pressure produced in a patient's airway during maximal inspiration.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1800 Rhinoanemometer.

(a) *Identification.* A rhinoanemometer is a device used to quantify the amount of nasal congestion by measuring the airflow through, and differential pressure across, a patient's nasal passages.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1840 Diagnostic spirometer.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic spirometer is a device used in pulmonary function testing to measure the volume of gas moving in or out of a patient's lungs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1850 Monitoring spirometer.

(a) *Identification.* A monitoring spirometer is a device used to measure continuously a patient's tidal volume (volume of gas inhaled by the patient during each respiration cycle) or minute volume (the tidal volume multiplied by the rate of respiration for 1 minute) for the evaluation of the patient's ventilatory status.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1860 Peak-flow meter for spirometry.

(a) *Identification.* A peak-flow meter for spirometry is a device used to measure a patient's maximum ventilatory flow rate.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1870 Gas volume calibrator.

(a) *Identification.* A gas volume calibrator is a device that is intended for medical purposes and that is used to calibrate the output of gas volume measurement instruments by delivering a known gas volume.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1880 Pulmonary-function data calculator.

(a) *Identification.* A pulmonary-function data calculator is a device used to calculate pulmonary-function values based on actual physical data obtained during pulmonary-function testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1890 Predictive pulmonary-function value calculator.

(a) *Identification.* A predictive pulmonary-function value calculator is a device used to calculate normal pulmonary-function values based on empirical equations.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1900 Diagnostic pulmonary-function interpretation calculator.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic pulmonary-function interpretation calculator is a device that interprets pulmonary study data to determine clinical significance of pulmonary-function values.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1910 Esophageal stethoscope.

(a) *Identification.* An esophageal stethoscope is a nonpowered device that is inserted into a patient's esophagus to enable the user to listen to heart and breath sounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.1920 Esophageal stethoscope with electrical conductors.

(a) *Identification.* An esophageal stethoscope with electrical conductors is a device that is inserted into the esophagus to listen to a patient's heart and breath sounds and to monitor electrophysiological signals. The device may also incorporate a thermistor for temperature measurement.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.1930 Stethoscope head.

(a) *Identification.* A stethoscope head is a weighted chest piece used during anesthesia to listen to a patient's heart, breath, and other physiological sounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.1965 Switching valve (ploss).

(a) *Identification.* A switching valve (ploss) is a three-way valve located between a stethoscope placed over the heart, a blood pressure cuff, and an earpiece. The valve allows the user to eliminate one sound channel and listen only to a patient's heart or korotkoff (blood pressure) sounds through the other channel.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.1975 Water vapor analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A water vapor analyzer is a device intended to measure the concentration of water vapor in a patient's expired gases by using techniques such as mass spectrometry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart C—Monitoring Devices

§ 868.2025 Ultrasonic air embolism monitor.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasonic air embolism monitor is a device used to detect air bubbles in a patient's blood stream. It may use Doppler or other ultrasonic principles.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2300 Bourdon gauge flowmeter.

(a) *Identification.* A bourdon gauge flowmeter is a device intended for medical purposes that is used in conjunction with respiratory equipment to sense gas pressure. The device is calibrated to indicate gas flow rate when the outflow is open to the atmosphere.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2320 Uncompensated thorpe tube flowmeter.

(a) *Identification.* An uncompensated thorpe tube flowmeter is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to indicate and control gas flow rate accurately. The device includes a vertically mounted tube and is calibrated when the outlet of the flowmeter is open to the atmosphere.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2340 Compensated thorpe tube flowmeter.

(a) *Identification.* A compensated thorpe tube flowmeter is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to control and measure gas flow rate accurately. The device includes a vertically mounted tube, with the outlet of the flowmeter calibrated to a reference pressure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2350 Gas calibration flowmeter.

(a) *Identification.* A gas calibration flowmeter is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to calibrate flowmeters and accurately measure gas flow.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2375 Breathing frequency monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing (ventilatory) frequency monitor is a device intended to measure or monitor a patient's respiratory rate. The device may provide an audible or visible alarm when the respiratory rate is outside predetermined limits.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2450 Lung water monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A lung water monitor is a device used to monitor the trend of fluid volume changes in a patient's lung by measuring changes in thoracic electrical impedance (resistance to alternating current) by means of electrodes placed on the patient's chest.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.2500 Cutaneous oxygen monitor.

(a) *Cutaneous oxygen monitor for an infant patient who is not under gas anesthesia*—(1) *Identification.* A cutaneous oxygen monitor for an infant patient who is not under gas anesthesia is a device that uses a noninvasive sensor (e.g., a Clark-type polarographic electrode) placed on the patient's skin and that is intended to monitor relative changes in the cutaneous oxygen tension in an infant patient who is not under gas anesthesia.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Cutaneous oxygen monitor for all other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A cutaneous oxygen monitor for all other uses is a device that uses a noninvasive sensor (e.g., a Clark-type polarographic electrode) placed on the patient's skin and that is intended to monitor relative changes in the cutaneous oxygen tension in a noninfant patient or in any patient, including an infant, who is under gas anesthesia.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.2550 Pneumotachometer.

(a) *Identification.* A pneumotachometer is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to determine gas flow by measuring the pressure differential across a known resistance. The device may use a set of capillaries or a metal screen for the resistive element.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2600 Airway pressure monitor.

(a) *Identification.* An airway pressure monitor is a device used to measure the pressure in a patient's upper airway. The device may include a pressure gauge and an alarm.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2610 Gas pressure gauge.

(a) *Identification.* A gas pressure gauge (e.g., bourdon tube pressure gauge) is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to measure gas pressure in a medical gas delivery system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2620 Gas pressure calibrator.

(a) *Identification.* A gas pressure calibrator is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to calibrate pressure-measuring instruments by generating a known gas pressure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2700 Pressure regulator.

(a) *Identification.* A pressure regulator is a device, often called a pressure-reducing valve, that is intended for medical purposes and that is used to convert a medical gas pressure from a high variable pressure to a lower, more constant working pressure. This device includes mechanical oxygen regulators.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2775 Electrical peripheral nerve stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An electrical peripheral nerve stimulator (neuromuscular blockade monitor) is a device used to apply an electrical current to a patient to test the level of pharmacological effect of anesthetic drugs and gases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2875 Differential pressure transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A differential pressure transducer is a two-chambered device intended for medical purposes that is often used during pulmonary function testing. It generates an electrical signal for subsequent display or processing that is proportional to the difference in gas pressures in the two chambers.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2885 Gas flow transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A gas flow transducer is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to convert gas flow rate into an electrical signal for subsequent display or processing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.2900 Gas pressure transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A gas pressure transducer is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to convert gas pressure into an electrical signal for subsequent display or processing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subparts D-E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

§ 868.5090 Emergency airway needle.

(a) *Identification.* An emergency airway needle is a device intended to puncture a patient's cricothyroid membrane to provide an emergency airway during upper airway obstruction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5100 Nasopharyngeal airway.

(a) *Identification.* A nasopharyngeal airway is a device used to aid breathing by means of a tube inserted into a patient's pharynx through the nose to provide a patent airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5110 Oropharyngeal airway.

(a) *Identification.* An oropharyngeal airway is a device inserted into a patient's pharynx through the mouth to provide a patent airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5120 Anesthesia conduction catheter.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthesia conduction catheter is a flexible tubular device used to inject local anesthetics into a patient and to provide continuous regional anesthesia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5130 Anesthesia conduction filter.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthesia conduction filter is a microporous filter used while administering to a patient injections of local anesthetics to minimize particulate (foreign material) contamination of the injected fluid.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5140 Anesthesia conduction kit.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthesia conduction kit is a device used to administer to a patient conduction, regional, or local anesthesia. The device may contain syringes, needles, and drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5150 Anesthesia conduction needle.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthesia conduction needle is a device used to inject local anesthetics into a patient to provide regional anesthesia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5160 Gas machine for anesthesia or analgesia.

(a) *Gas machine for anesthesia*—(1) *Identification.* A gas machine for anesthesia is a device used to administer to a patient, continuously or intermittently, a general inhalation anesthetic and to maintain a patient's ventilation. The device may include a gas flowmeter, vaporizer, ventilator, breathing circuit with bag, and emergency air supply.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Gas machine for analgesia*—(1) *Identification.* A gas machine for analgesia is a device used to administer to a patient an analgesic agent, such as a nitrous oxide-oxygen mixture (maximum concentration of 70 percent nitrous oxide).

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5170 Laryngotracheal topical anesthesia applicator.

(a) *Identification.* A laryngotracheal topical anesthesia applicator is a device used to apply topical anesthetics to a patient's laryngotracheal area.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5180 Rocking bed.

(a) *Identification.* A rocking bed is a device intended for temporary use to help patient ventilation (breathing) by repeatedly tilting the patient, thereby using the weight of the abdominal contents to move the diaphragm.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5220 Blow bottle.

(a) *Identification.* A blow bottle is a device that is intended for medical purposes to induce a forced expiration from a patient. The patient blows into the device to move a column of water from one bottle to another.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.5240 Anesthesia breathing circuit.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthesia breathing circuit is a device that is intended to administer medical gases to a patient during anesthesia. It provides both an inhalation and exhalation route and may include a connector, adaptor, and Y-piece.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5250 Breathing circuit circulator.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing circuit circulator is a turbine device that is attached to a closed breathing circuit and that is intended to circulate anesthetic gases continuously by maintaining the unidirectional valves in an open position and reducing mechanical dead space and resistance in the breathing circuit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5260 Breathing circuit bacterial filter.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing circuit bacterial filter is a device that is intended to remove microbiological and particulate matter from the gases in the breathing circuit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5270 Breathing system heater.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing system heater is a device that is intended to warm breathing gases before they enter a patient's airway. The device may include a temperature controller.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5280 Breathing tube support.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing tube support is a device that is intended to support and anchor a patient's breathing tube(s).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5300 Carbon dioxide absorbent.

(a) *Identification.* A carbon dioxide absorbent is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of an absorbent material (e.g., soda lime) that is intended to remove carbon dioxide from the gases in the breathing circuit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5310 Carbon dioxide absorber.

(a) *Identification.* A carbon dioxide absorber is a device that is intended for medical purposes and that is used in a breathing circuit as a container for carbon dioxide absorbent. It may include a canister and water drain.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5320 Reservoir bag.

(a) *Identification.* A reservoir bag is a device, usually made of conductive rubber, intended for use in a breathing circuit as a reservoir for breathing gas and to assist, control, or monitor a patient's ventilation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5330 Breathing gas mixer.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing gas mixer is a device intended for use in conjunction with a respiratory support apparatus to control the mixing of gases that are to be breathed by a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5340 Nasal oxygen cannula.

(a) *Identification.* A nasal oxygen cannula is a two-pronged device used to administer oxygen to a patient through both nostrils.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5350 Nasal oxygen catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A nasal oxygen catheter is a device intended to be inserted through a patient's nostril to administer oxygen.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5365 Posture chair for cardiac or pulmonary treatment.

(a) *Identification.* A posture chair for cardiac or pulmonary treatment is a device intended to assist in the rehabilitation and mobilization of patients with chronic heart or lung disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5375 Heat and moisture condenser (artificial nose).

(a) *Identification.* A heat and moisture condenser (artificial nose) is a device intended to be positioned over a tracheotomy (a surgically created opening in the throat) or tracheal tube (a tube inserted into the trachea) to warm and humidify gases breathed in by a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5400 Electroanesthesia apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* An electroanesthesia apparatus is a device used for the induction and maintenance of anesthesia during surgical procedures by means of an alternating or pulsed electric current that is passed through electrodes fixed to a patient's head.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.5420 Ether hook.

(a) *Identification.* An ether hook is a device that fits inside a patient's mouth and that is intended to deliver vaporized ether.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.5430 Gas-scavenging apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* A gas-scavenging apparatus is a device intended to collect excess anesthetic, analgesic, or trace gases or vapors from a patient's breathing system, ventilator, or extracorporeal pump-oxygenator, and to conduct these gases out of the area by means of an exhaust system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5440 Portable oxygen generator.

(a) *Identification.* A portable oxygen generator is a device that is intended to release oxygen for respiratory therapy by means of either a chemical reaction or physical means (e.g., a molecular sieve).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5450 Respiratory gas humidifier.

(a) *Identification.* A respiratory gas humidifier is a device that is intended to add moisture to, and sometimes to warm, the breathing gases for administration to a patient. Cascade, gas, heated, and prefilled humidifiers are included in this generic type of device.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5460 Therapeutic humidifier for home use.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic humidifier for home use is a device that adds water vapor to breathing gases and that is intended for respiratory therapy or other medical purposes. The vapor produced by the device pervades the area surrounding the patient, who breathes the vapor during normal respiration.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982; 47 FR 40410, Sept. 14, 1982]

§ 868.5470 Hyperbaric chamber.

(a) *Identification.* A hyperbaric chamber is a device that is intended to increase the environmental oxygen pressure to promote the movement of oxygen from the environment to a patient's tissue by means of pressurization that is greater than atmospheric pressure. This device does not include topical oxygen chambers for extremities (§ 878.5650).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5530 Flexible laryngoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A flexible laryngoscope is a fiberoptic device used to examine and visualize a patient's upper airway and aid placement of a tracheal tube.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 41107, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 868.5540 Rigid laryngoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A rigid laryngoscope is a device used to examine and visualize a patient's upper airway and aid placement of a tracheal tube.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 41107, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 868.5550 Anesthetic gas mask.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthetic gas mask is a device, usually made of conductive rubber, that is positioned over a patient's nose or mouth to direct anesthetic gases to the upper airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 41107, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 868.5560 Gas mask head strap.

(a) *Identification.* A gas mask head strap is a device used to hold an anesthetic gas mask in position on a patient's face.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[47 FR 41107, Sept. 17, 1982]

§ 868.5570 Nonrebreathing mask.

(a) *Identification.* A nonrebreathing mask is a device fitting over a patient's face to administer oxygen. It utilizes one-way valves to prevent the patient from rebreathing previously exhaled gases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5580 Oxygen mask.

(a) *Identification.* An oxygen mask is a device placed over a patient's nose, mouth, or tracheostomy to administer oxygen or aerosols.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5590 Scavenging mask.

(a) *Identification.* A scavenging mask is a device positioned over a patient's nose to deliver anesthetic or analgesic gases to the upper airway and to remove excess and exhaled gas. It is usually used during dentistry.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5600 Venturi mask.

(a) *Identification.* A venturi mask is a device containing an air-oxygen mixing mechanism that dilutes 100 percent oxygen to a predetermined concentration and delivers the mixed gases to a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5610 Membrane lung for long-term pulmonary support.

(a) *Identification.* A membrane lung for long-term pulmonary support is a device used to provide to a patient extracorporeal blood oxygenation for longer than 24 hours.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 868.3.

[47 FR 31142, July 16, 1982, as amended at 52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 868.5620 Breathing mouthpiece.

(a) *Identification.* A breathing mouthpiece is a rigid device that is inserted into a patient's mouth and that connects with diagnostic or therapeutic respiratory devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5630 Nebulizer.

(a) *Identification.* A nebulizer is a device intended to spray liquids in aerosol form into gases that are delivered directly to the patient for breathing. Heated, ultrasonic, gas, venturi, and refillable nebulizers are included in this generic type of device.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5640 Medicinal nonventilatory nebulizer (atomizer).

(a) *Identification.* A medicinal nonventilatory nebulizer (atomizer) is a device that is intended to spray liquid medication in aerosol form into the air that a patient will breathe.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5650 Esophageal obturator.

(a) *Identification.* An esophageal obturator is a device inserted through a patient's mouth to aid ventilation of the patient during emergency resuscitation by occluding (blocking) the esophagus, thereby permitting positive pressure ventilation through the trachea. The device consists of a closed-end semirigid esophageal tube that is attached to a face mask.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5655 Portable liquid oxygen unit.

(a) *Identification.* A portable liquid oxygen unit is a portable, thermally insulated container of liquid oxygen that is intended to supplement gases to be inhaled by a patient, is sometimes accompanied by tubing and an oxygen mask. An empty portable liquid oxygen unit is a device, while the oxygen contained therein is a drug.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5665 Powered percussor.

(a) *Identification.* A powered percussor is a device that is intended to transmit vibration through a patient's chest wall to aid in freeing mucus deposits in the lung in order to improve bronchial drainage and that may be powered by electricity or compressed gas.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5675 Rebreathing device.

(a) *Identification.* A rebreathing device is a device that enables a patient to rebreathe exhaled gases. It may be used in conjunction with pulmonary function testing or for increasing minute ventilation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.5690 Incentive spirometer.

(a) *Identification.* An incentive spirometer is a device that indicates a patient's breathing volume or flow and that provides an incentive to the patient to improve his or her ventilation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5700 Nonpowered oxygen tent.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered oxygen tent is a device that encloses a patient's head and upper body to contain oxygen delivered to the patient for breathing. This generic type of device includes infant oxygen hoods.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.5710 Electrically powered oxygen tent.

(a) *Identification.* An electrically powered oxygen tent is a device that encloses a patient's head and, by means of an electrically powered unit, administers breathing oxygen and controls the temperature and humidity of the breathing gases. This generic type device includes the pediatric aerosol tent.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5720 Bronchial tube.

(a) *Identification.* A bronchial tube is a device used to differentially intubate a patient's bronchus (one of the two main branches of the trachea leading directly to the lung) in order to isolate a portion of lung distal to the tube.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5730 Tracheal tube.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheal tube is a device inserted into a patient's trachea via the nose or mouth and used to maintain an open airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5740 Tracheal/bronchial differential ventilation tube.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheal/bronchial differential ventilation tube is a device used to isolate the left or the right lung of a patient for anesthesia or pulmonary function testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5750 Inflatable tracheal tube cuff.

(a) *Identification.* An inflatable tracheal tube cuff is a device used to provide an airtight seal between a tracheal tube and a patient's trachea.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5760 Cuff spreader.

(a) *Identification.* A cuff spreader is a device used to install tracheal tube cuffs on tracheal or tracheostomy tubes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.5770 Tracheal tube fixation device.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheal tube fixation device is a device used to hold a tracheal tube in place, usually by means of straps or pinch rings.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5780 Tube introduction forceps.

(a) *Identification.* Tube introduction forceps (e.g., Magill forceps) are a right-angled device used to grasp a tracheal tube and place it in a patient's trachea.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5790 Tracheal tube stylet.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheal tube stylet is a device used temporarily to make rigid a flexible tracheal tube to aid its insertion into a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5795 Tracheal tube cleaning brush.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheal tube cleaning brush is a device consisting of a brush with plastic bristles intended to clean tracheal cannula devices after their removal from patients.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[51 FR 40388, Nov. 6, 1986]

§ 868.5800 Tracheostomy tube and tube cuff.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheostomy tube and tube cuff is a device intended to be placed into a surgical opening of the trachea to facilitate ventilation to the lungs. The cuff may be a separate or integral part of the tracheostomy tube and is, when inflated, intended to establish a seal between the tracheal wall and the tracheostomy tube. The cuff is used to prevent the patient's aspiration of substances, such as blood or vomit, or to provide a means for positive-pressure ventilation of the patient. This device is made of either stainless steel or plastic.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

[51 FR 40389, Nov. 6, 1986]

§ 868.5810 Airway connector.

(a) *Identification.* An airway connector is a device intended to connect a breathing gas source to a tracheal tube, tracheostomy tube, or mask.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5820 Dental protector

(a) *Identification.* A dental protector is a device intended to protect a patient's teeth during manipulative procedures within a patient's oral cavity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5830 Autotransfusion apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* An autotransfusion apparatus is a device used to collect and reinfuse the blood lost by patient due to surgery or trauma.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5860 Pressure tubing and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* Pressure tubing and accessories are flexible or rigid devices intended to deliver pressurized medical gases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5870 Nonrebreathing valve.

(a) *Identification.* A nonrebreathing valve is a one-way valve that directs breathing gas flow to the patient and vents exhaled gases into the atmosphere.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5880 Anesthetic vaporizer.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthetic vaporizer is a device used to vaporize liquid anesthetic and deliver a controlled amount of the vapor to the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5895 Continuous ventilator.

(a) *Identification.* A continuous ventilator (respirator) is a device intended to mechanically control or assist patient breathing by delivering a predetermined percentage of oxygen in the breathing gas. Adult, pediatric, and neonatal ventilators are included in this generic type of device.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5905 Noncontinuous ventilator (IPPB).

(a) *Identification.* A noncontinuous ventilator (intermittent positive pressure breathing-IPPB) is a device intended to deliver intermittently an aerosol to a patient's lungs or to assist a patient's breathing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5915 Manual emergency ventilator.

(a) *Identification.* A manual emergency ventilator is a device, usually incorporating a bag and valve, intended to provide emergency respiratory support by means of a face mask or a tube inserted into a patient's airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5925 Powered emergency ventilator.

(a) *Identification.* A powered emergency ventilator is a demand valve or inhalator intended to provide emergency respiratory support by means of a face mask or a tube inserted into a patient's airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5935 External negative pressure ventilator.

(a) *Identification.* An external negative pressure ventilator (e.g., iron lung, cuirass) is a device chamber that is intended to support a patient's ventilation by alternately applying and releasing external negative pressure over the diaphragm and upper trunk of the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5955 Intermittent mandatory ventilation attachment.

(a) *Identification.* An intermittent mandatory ventilation (IMV) attachment is a device attached to a mechanical ventilator that allows spontaneous breathing by a patient while providing mechanical ventilation at a preset rate.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5965 Positive end expiratory pressure breathing attachment.

(a) *Identification.* A positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP) breathing attachment is a device attached to a ventilator that is used to elevate pressure in a patient's lungs above atmospheric pressure at the end of exhalation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5975 Ventilator tubing.

(a) *Identification.* Ventilator tubing is a device intended for use as a conduit for gases between a ventilator and a patient during ventilation of the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.5995 Tee drain (water trap).

(a) *Identification.* A tee drain (water trap) is a device intended to trap and drain water that collects in ventilator tubing during respiratory therapy, thereby preventing an increase in breathing resistance.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perfomance standards).

Subpart G—Miscellaneous

§ 868.6100 Anesthetic cabinet, table, or tray.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthetic cabinet, table, or tray is a device intended to store anesthetic equipment and drugs. The device is usually constructed to eliminate build-up of static electrical charges.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.6175 Cardiopulmonary emergency cart.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary emergency cart is a device intended to store and transport resuscitation supplies for emergency treatment. The device does not include any equipment used in cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.6225 Nose clip.

(a) *Identification.* A nose clip is a device intended to close a patient's external nares (nostrils) during diagnostic or therapeutic procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 868.6250 Portable air compressor.

(a) *Identification.* A portable air compressor is a device intended to provide compressed air for medical purposes, e.g., to drive ventilators and other respiratory devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.6400 Calibration gas.

(a) *Identification.* A calibration gas is a device consisting of a container of gas of known concentration intended to calibrate medical gas concentration measurement devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.6700 Anesthesia stool.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthesia stool is a device intended for use as a stool for the anesthesiologist in the operating room.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.6810 Tracheobronchial suction catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheobronchial suction catheter is a device used to aspirate liquids or semisolids from a patient's upper airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 868.6820 Patient position support.

(a) *Identification.* A patient position support is a device intended to maintain the position of an anesthetized patient during surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 868.6885 Medical gas yoke assembly.

(a) *Identification.* A medical gas yoke assembly is a device intended to connect medical gas cylinders to regulators or needle valves to supply gases for anesthesia or respiratory therapy. The device may include a particulate filter.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

PART 870—CARDIOVASCULAR DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
870.1 Scope.
870.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Cardiovascular Diagnostic Devices

870.1025 Arrhythmia detector and alarm.
870.1100 Blood pressure alarm.
870.1110 Blood pressure computer.
870.1120 Blood pressure cuff.
870.1130 Noninvasive blood pressure measurement system.
870.1140 Venous blood pressure manometer.
870.1200 Diagnostic intravascular catheter.
870.1210 Continuous flush catheter.
870.1220 Electrode recording catheter or electrode recording probe.
870.1230 Fiberoptic oximeter catheter.
870.1240 Flow-directed catheter.
870.1250 Percutaneous catheter.
870.1270 Intracavitary phonocatheter system.
870.1280 Steerable catheter.
870.1290 Steerable catheter control system.
870.1300 Catheter cannula.
870.1310 Vessel dilator for percutaneous catheterization.
870.1330 Catheter guide wire.
870.1340 Catheter introducer.
870.1350 Catheter balloon repair kit.
870.1360 Trace microsphere.
870.1370 Catheter tip occluder.
870.1380 Catheter stylet.
870.1390 Trocar.
870.1425 Programmable diagnostic computer.
870.1435 Single-function, preprogrammed diagnostic computer.
870.1450 Densitometer.
870.1650 Angiographic injector and syringe.
870.1660 Indicator injector.
870.1670 Syringe actuator for an injector.
870.1750 External programmable pacemaker pulse generator.
870.1800 Withdrawal-infusion pump.
870.1875 Stethoscope.
870.1915 Thermodilution probe.

Subpart C—Cardiovascular Monitoring Devices

870.2050 Biopotential amplifier and signal conditioner.
870.2060 Transducer signal amplifier and signal conditioner.
870.2100 Cardiovascular blood flowmeter.
870.2120 Extravascular blood flow probe.

Sec.
870.2300 Cardiac monitor (including cardiotachometer and rate alarm).
870.2310 Apex cardiograph (vibrocardiograph).
870.2320 Ballistocardiograph.
870.2330 Echocardiograph.
870.2340 Electrocardiograph.
870.2350 Electrocardiograph lead switching adaptor.
870.2360 Electrocardiograph electrode.
870.2370 Electrocardiograph surface electrode tester.
870.2390 Phonocardiograph.
870.2400 Vectorcardiograph.
870.2450 Medical cathode-ray tube display.
870.2600 Signal isolation system.
870.2620 Line isolation monitor.
870.2640 Portable leakage current alarm.
870.2675 Oscillometer.
870.2700 Oximeter.
870.2710 Ear oximeter.
870.2750 Impedance phlebograph.
870.2770 Impedance plethysmograph.
870.2780 Hydraulic, pneumatic, or photoelectric plethysmographs.
870.2800 Medical magnetic tape recorder.
870.2810 Paper chart recorder.
870.2840 Apex cardiographic transducer.
870.2850 Extravascular blood pressure transducer.
870.2860 Heart sound transducer.
870.2870 Catheter tip pressure transducer.
870.2880 Ultrasonic transducer.
870.2890 Vessel occlusion transducer.
870.2900 Patient transducer and electrode cable (including connector).
870.2910 Radiofrequency physiological signal transmitter and receiver.
870.2920 Telephone electrocardiograph transmitter and receiver.

Subpart D—Cardiovascular Prosthetic Devices

870.3250 Vascular clip.
870.3260 Vena cava clip.
870.3300 Arterial embolization device.
870.3375 Cardiovascular intravascular filter.
870.3450 Vascular graft prosthesis of less than 6 millimeters diameter.
870.3460 Vascular graft prosthesis of 6 millimeters and greater diameter.
870.3470 Intracardiac patch or pledget made of polypropylene, polyethylene terephthalate, or polytetrafluoroethylene.
870.3535 Intra-aortic balloon and control system.
870.3545 Ventricular bypass (assist) device.
870.3600 External pacemaker pulse generator.
870.3610 Implantable pacemaker pulse generator.
870.3620 Pacemaker lead adaptor.
Sec.
870.3630 Pacemaker generator function analyzer.
870.3640 Indirect pacemaker generator function analyzer.
870.3650 Pacemaker polymeric mesh bag.
870.3670 Pacemaker charger.
870.3680 Cardiovascular permanent or temporary pacemaker electrode.
870.3690 Pacemaker test magnet.
870.3700 Pacemaker programmers.
870.3710 Pacemaker repair or replacement material.
870.3720 Pacemaker electrode function tester.
870.3730 Pacemaker service tools.
870.3800 Annuloplasty ring.
870.3850 Carotid sinus nerve stimulator.
870.3925 Replacement heart valve.
870.3935 Prosthetic heart valve holder.
870.3945 Prosthetic heart valve sizer.

Subpart E—Cardiovascular Surgical Devices

870.4075 Endomyocardial biopsy device.
870.4200 Cardiopulmonary bypass accessory equipment.
870.4205 Cardiopulmonary bypass bubble detector.
870.4210 Cardiopulmonary bypass vascular catheter, cannula, or tubing.
870.4220 Cardiopulmonary bypass heart-lung machine console.
870.4230 Cardiopulmonary bypass defoamer.
870.4240 Cardiopulmonary bypass heat exchanger.
870.4250 Cardiopulmonary bypass temperature controller.
870.4260 Cardiopulmonary bypass arterial line blood filter.
870.4270 Cardiopulmonary bypass cardiotomy suction line blood filter.
870.4280 Cardiopulmonary prebypass filter.
870.4290 Cardiopulmonary bypass adaptor, stopcock, manifold, or fitting.
870.4300 Cardiopulmonary bypass gas control unit.
870.4310 Cardiopulmonary bypass coronary pressure gauge.
870.4320 Cardiopulmonary bypass pulsatile flow generator.
870.4330 Cardiopulmonary bypass on-line blood gas monitor.
870.4340 Cardiopulmonary bypass level sensing monitor and/or control.
870.4350 Cardiopulmonary bypass oxygenator.
870.4360 Nonroller-type cardiopulmonary bypass blood pump.
870.4370 Roller-type cardiopulmonary bypass blood pump.
870.4380 Cardiopulmonary bypass pump speed control.

Sec.
870.4390 Cardiopulmonary bypass pump tubing.
870.4400 Cardiopulmonary bypass blood reservoir.
870.4410 Cardiopulmonary bypass in-line blood gas sensor.
870.4420 Cardiopulmonary bypass cardiotomy return sucker.
870.4430 Cardiopulmonary bypass intracardiac suction control.
870.4450 Vascular clamp.
870.4475 Surgical vessel dilator.
870.4500 Cardiovascular surgical instruments.
870.4875 Intraluminal artery stripper.
870.4885 External vein stripper.

Subpart F—Cardiovascular Therapeutic Devices

870.5050 Patient care suction apparatus.
870.5150 Embolectomy catheter.
870.5175 Septostomy catheter.
870.5200 External cardiac compressor.
870.5225 External counter-pulsating device.
870.5300 DC-defibrillator (including paddles).
870.5325 Defibrillator tester.
870.5550 External transcutaneous cardiac pacemaker (noninvasive).
870.5800 Compressible limb sleeve.
870.5900 Thermal regulating system.
870.5925 Automatic rotating tourniquet.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 870.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of cardiovascular devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a cardiovascular device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17735, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Cardiovascular Diagnostic Devices

§ 870.1025 Arrhythmia detector and alarm.

(a) *Identification.* An arrhythmia detector and alarm is a system that monitors the electrocardiogram and is designed to produce a visible or audible signal or alarm when an atrial or ventricular arrhythmia, such as a premature contraction or ventricular fibrillation, exists.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.1100 Blood pressure alarm.

(a) *Identification.* A blood pressure alarm is a device that accepts the signal from a blood pressure transducer amplifier, processes the signal, and emits an alarm when the blood pressure falls outside a pre-set upper or lower limit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1110 Blood pressure computer.

(a) *Identification.* A blood pressure computer is a device that accepts the electrical signal from a blood pressure transducer amplifier and indicates the systolic, diastolic, or mean pressure based on the input signal.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1120 Blood pressure cuff.

(a) *Identification.* A blood pressure cuff is a device that has an inflatable bladder in an inelastic sleeve (cuff) with a mechanism for inflating and deflating the bladder. The cuff is used in conjunction with another device to determine a subject's blood pressure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1130 Noninvasive blood pressure measurement system.

(a) *Identification.* A noninvasive blood pressure measurement system is a device that provides a signal from which systolic, diastolic, mean, or any combination of the three pressures can be derived through the use of tranducers placed on the surface of the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1140 Venous blood pressure manometer.

(a) *Identification.* A venous blood pressure manometer is a device attached to a venous catheter to indicate manometrically the central or peripheral venous pressure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1200 Diagnostic intravascular catheter.

(a) *Identification.* An intravascular diagnostic catheter is a device used to record intracardiac pressures, to sample blood, and to introduce substances into the heart and vessels. Included in this generic device are right-heart catheters, left-heart catheters, and angiographic catheters, among others.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1210 Continuous flush catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A continuous flush catheter is an attachment to a catheter-transducer system that permits continuous intravascular flushing at a slow infusion rate for the purpose of eliminating clotting, back-leakage, and waveform damping.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1220 Electrode recording catheter or electrode recording probe.

(a) *Identification.* An electrode recording catheter or an electrode recording probe is a device used to detect an intracardiac electrocardiogram, or to detect cardiac output or left-to-right heart shunts. The device may be unipolar or multipolar for electrocardiogram detection, or may be a platinum-tipped catheter which senses the presence of a special indicator for cardiac output or left-to-right heart shunt determinations.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1230 Fiberoptic oximeter catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A fiberoptic oximeter catheter is a device used to estimate the oxygen saturation of the blood. It consists of two fiberoptic bundles that conduct light at a desired wavelength through blood and detect the reflected and scattered light at the distal end of the catheter.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1240 Flow-directed catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A flow-directed catheter is a device that incorporates a gas-filled balloon to help direct the catheter to the desired position.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1250 Percutaneous catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A percutaneous catheter is a device that is introduced into a vein or artery through the skin using a dilator and a sheath (introducer) or guide wire.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1270 Intracavitary phonocatheter system.

(a) *Identification.* An intracavitary phonocatheter system is a system that includes a catheter with an acoustic transducer and the associated device that processes the signal from the transducer; this device records bioacoustic phenomena from a transducer placed within the heart, blood vessels, or body cavities.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1280 Steerable catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A steerable catheter is a catheter used for diagnostic and monitoring purposes whose movements are directed by a steering control unit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1290 Steerable catheter control system.

(a) *Identification.* A steerable catheter control system is a device that is connected to the proximal end of a steerable guide wire that controls the motion of the steerable catheter.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1300 Catheter cannula.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter cannula is a hollow tube which is inserted into a vessel or cavity; this device provides a rigid or semirigid structure which can be connected to a tube or connector.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1310 Vessel dilator for percutaneous catheterization.

(a) *Identification.* A vessel dilator for percutaneous catheterization is a device which is placed over the guide wire to enlarge the opening in the vessel, and which is then removed before sliding the catheter over the guide wire.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1330 Catheter guide wire.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter guide wire is a coiled wire that is designed to fit inside a percutaneous catheter for the purpose of directing the catheter through a blood vessel.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1340 Catheter introducer.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter introducer is a sheath used to facilitate placing a catheter through the skin into a vein or artery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1350 Catheter balloon repair kit.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter balloon repair kit is a device used to repair or replace the balloon of a balloon catheter. The kit contains the materials, such as glue and balloons, necessary to effect the repair or replacement.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.1360 Trace microsphere.

(a) *Identification.* A trace microsphere is a radioactively tagged nonbiodegradable particle that is intended to be injected into an artery or vein and trapped in the capillary bed for the purpose of studying blood flow within or to an organ.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.1370 Catheter tip occluder.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter tip occluder is a device that is inserted into certain catheters to prevent flow through one or more orifices.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1380 Catheter stylet.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter stylet is a wire that is run through a catheter or cannula to render it stiff.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1390 Trocar.

(a) *Identification.* A trocar is a sharp-pointed instrument used with a cannula for piercing a vessel or chamber to facilitate insertion of the cannula.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1425 Programmable diagnostic computer.

(a) *Identification.* A programmable diagnostic computer is a device that can be programmed to compute various physiologic or blood flow parameters based on the output from one or more electrodes, transducers, or measuring devices; this device includes any associated commercially supplied programs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1435 Single-function, preprogrammed diagnostic computer.

(a) *Identification.* A single-function, preprogrammed diagnostic computer is a hard-wired computer that calculates a specific physiological or blood-flow parameter based on information obtained from one or more electrodes, transducers, or measuring devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1450 Densitometer.

(a) *Identification.* A densitometer is a device used to measure the transmission of light through an indicator in a sample of blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1650 Angiographic injector and syringe.

(a) *Identification.* An angiographic injector and syringe is a device that consists of a syringe and a high-pressure injector which are used to inject contrast material into the heart, great vessels, and coronary arteries to study the heart and vessels by x-ray photography.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1660 Indicator injector.

(a) *Identification.* An indicator injector is an electrically or gas-powered device designed to inject accurately an indicator solution into the blood stream. This device may be used in conjuction with a densitometer or thermodilution device to determine cardiac output.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1670 Syringe actuator for an injector.

(a) *Identification.* A syringe actuator for an injector is an electrical device that controls the timing of an injection by an angiographic or indicator injector and synchronizes the injection with the electrocardiograph signal.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1750 External programmable pacemaker pulse generator.

(a) *Identification.* An external programmable pacemaker pulse generators is a device that can be programmed to produce one or more pulses at preselected intervals; this device is used in electrophysiological studies.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1800 Withdrawal-infusion pump.

(a) *Identification.* A withdrawal-infusion pump is a device designed to inject accurately drugs into the bloodstream and to withdraw blood samples for use in determining cardiac output.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1875 Stethoscope.

(a) *Manual stethoscope*—(1) *Identification.* A manual stethoscope is a mechanical device used to project the sounds associated with the heart, arteries, and veins and other internal organs.

(2) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

(b) *Electronic stethoscope*—(1) *Identification.* An electronic stethoscope is an electrically amplified device used to project the sounds associated with the heart, arteries, and veins and other internal organs.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.1915 Thermodilution probe.

(a) *Identification.* A thermodilution probe is a device that monitors cardiac output by use of thermodilution techniques; this device is commonly attached to a catheter that may have one or more probes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart C—Cardiovascular Monitoring Devices

§ 870.2050 Biopotential amplifier and signal conditioner.

(a) *Identification.* A biopotential amplifier and signal conditioner is a device used to amplify or condition an electrical signal of biologic origin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2060 Transducer signal amplifier and conditioner.

(a) *Identification.* A transducer signal amplifier and conditioner is a device used to provide the excitation energy for the transducer and to amplify or condition the signal emitted by the transducer.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2100 Cardiovascular blood flowmeter.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiovascular blood flowmeter is a device that is connected to a flow transducer that energizes the transducer and processes and displays the blood flow signal.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2120 Extravascular blood flow probe.

(a) *Identification.* An extravascular blood flow probe is an extravascular ultrasonic or electromagnetic probe used in conjunction with a blood flowmeter to measure blood flow in a chamber or vessel.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2300 Cardiac monitor (including cardiotachometer and rate alarm).

(a) *Identification.* A cardiac monitor (including cardiotachometer and rate alarm) is a device used to measure the heart rate from an analog signal produced by an electrocardiograph, vectorcardiograph, or blood pressure monitor. This device may sound an alarm when the heart rate falls outside preset upper and lower limits.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2310 Apex cardiograph (vibrocardiograph).

(a) *Identification.* An apex cardiograph (vibrocardiograph) is a device used to amplify or condition the signal from an apex cardiographic transducer and to produce a visual display of the motion of the heart; this device also provides any excitation energy required by the transducer.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2320 Ballistocardiograph.

(a) *Identification.* A ballistocardiograph is a device, including a supporting structure on which the patient is placed, that moves in response to blood ejection from the heart. The device often provides a visual display.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2330 Echocardiograph.

(a) *Identification.* An echocardiograph is a device that uses ultrasonic energy to create images of cardiovascular structures. It includes phased arrays and two-dimensional scanners.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2340 Electrocardiograph.

(a) *Identification.* An electrocardiograph is a device used to process the electrical signal transmitted through two or more electrocardiograph electrodes and to produce a visual display of the electrical signal produced by the heart.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2350 Electrocardiograph lead switching adaptor.

(a) *Identification.* An electrocardiograph lead switching adaptor is a passive switching device to which electrocardiograph limb and chest leads may be attached. This device is used to connect various combinations of limb and chest leads to the output terminals in order to create standard lead combinations such as leads I, II, and III.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2360 Electrocardiograph electrode.

(a) *Identification.* An electrocardiograph electrode is the electrical conductor which is applied to the surface of the body to transmit the electrical signal at the body surface to a processor that produces an electrocardiogram or vectorcardiogram.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2370 Electrocardiograph surface electrode tester.

(a) *Identification.* An electrocardiograph surface electrode tester is a device used to test the function and application of electrocardiograph electrodes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2390 Phonocardiograph.

(a) *Identification.* A phonocardiograph is a device used to amplify or condition the signal from a heart sound transducer. This device furnishes the excitation energy for the transducer and provides a visual or audible display of the heart sounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2400 Vectorcardiograph.

(a) *Identification.* A vectorcardiograph is a device used to process the electrical signal transmitted through electrocardiograph electrodes and to produce a visual display of the magnitude and direction of the electrical signal produced by the heart.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2450 Medical cathode-ray tube display.

(a) *Identification.* A medical cathode-ray tube display is a device designed primarily to display selected biological signals. This device often incorporates special display features unique to a specific biological signal.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2600 Signal isolation system.

(a) *Identification.* A signal isolation system is a device that electrically isolates the patient from equipment connected to the commercial power supply received from a utility company. This isolation may be accomplished, for example, by transformer coupling, acoustic coupling, or optical coupling.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2620 Line isolation monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A line isolation monitor is a device used to monitor the electrical leakage current from a power supply electrically isolated from the commercial power supply received from a utility company.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2640 Portable leakage current alarm.

(a) *Identification.* A portable leakage current alarm is a device used to measure the electrical leakage current between any two points of an electrical system and to sound an alarm if the current exceeds a certain threshold.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2675 Oscillometer.

(a) *Identification.* An oscillometer is a device used to measure physiological oscillations of any kind, e.g., changes in the volume of arteries.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2700 Oximeter.

(a) *Identification.* An oximeter is a device used to transmit radiation at a known wavelength(s) through blood and to measure the blood oxygen saturation based on the amount of reflected or scattered radiation. It may be used alone or in conjunction with a fiberoptic oximeter catheter.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2710 Ear oximeter.

(a) *Identification.* An ear oximeter is an extravascular device used to transmit light at a known wavelength(s) through blood in the ear. The amount of reflected or scattered light as indicated by this device is used to measure the blood oxygen saturation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2750 Impedance phlebograph.

(a) *Identification.* An impedance phlebograph is a device used to provide a visual display of the venous pulse or drainage by measuring electrical impedance changes in a region of the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2770 Impedance plethysmograph.

(a) *Identification.* An impedance plethysmograph is a device used to estimate peripheral blood flow by measuring electrical impedance changes in a region of the body such as the arms and legs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2780 Hydraulic, pneumatic, or photoelectric plethysmographs.

(a) *Identification.* A hydraulic, pneumatic, or photoelectric plethysmograph is a device used to estimate blood flow in a region of the body using hydraulic, pneumatic, or photoelectric measurement techniques.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2800 Medical magnetic tape recorder.

(a) *Identification.* A medical magnetic tape recorder is a device used to record and play back signals from, for example, physiological amplifiers, signal conditioners, or computers.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2810 Paper chart recorder.

(a) *Identification.* A paper chart recorder is a device used to print on paper, and create a permanent record of the signal from, for example, a physiological amplifier, signal conditioner, or computer.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2840 Apex cardiographic transducer.

(a) *Identification.* An apex cardiographic transducer is a device used to detect motion of the heart (acceleration, velocity, or displacement) by changes in the mechanical or electrical properties of the device.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2850 Extravascular blood pressure transducer.

(a) *Identification.* An extravascular blood pressure transducer is a device used to measure blood pressure by changes in the mechanical or electrical properties of the device. The proximal end of the transducer is connected to a pressure monitor that produces an analog or digital electrical signal related to the electrical or mechanical changes produced in the transducer.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2860 Heart sound transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A heart sound transducer is an external transducer that exhibits a change in mechanical or electrical properties in relation to sounds produced by the heart. This device may be used in conjunction with a phonocardiograph to record heart sounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2870 Catheter tip pressure transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A catheter tip pressure transducer is a device incorporated into the distal end of a catheter. When placed in the bloodstream, its mechanical or electrical properties change in relation to changes in blood pressure. These changes are transmitted to accessory equipment for processing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2880 Ultrasonic transducer.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasonic transducer is a device applied to the skin to transmit and receive ultrasonic energy that is used in conjunction with an echocardiograph to provide imaging of cardiovascular structures. This device includes phased arrays and two-dimensional scanning transducers.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2890 Vessel occlusion transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A vessel occlusion transducer is a device used to provide an electrical signal corresponding to sounds produced in a partially occluded vessel. This device includes motion, sound, and ultrasonic transducers.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2900 Patient transducer and electrode cable (including connector).

(a) *Identification.* A patient transducer and electrode cable (including connector) is an electrical conductor used to transmit signals from, or power or excitation signals to, patient-connected electrodes or transducers.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2910 Radiofrequency physiological signal transmitter and receiver.

(a) *Identification.* A radiofrequency physiological signal transmitter and receiver is a device used to condition a physiological signal so that it can be transmitted via radiofrequency from one location to another, e.g., a central monitoring station. The received signal is reconditioned by the device into its original format so that it can be displayed.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.2920 Telephone electrocardiograph transmitter and receiver.

(a) *Identification.* A telephone electrocardiograph transmitter and receiver is a device used to condition an electrocardiograph signal so that it can be transmitted via a telephone line to another location. This device also includes a receiver that reconditions the received signal into its original format so that it can be displayed. The device includes devices used to transmit and receive pacemaker signals.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart D—Cardiovascular Prosthetic Devices

§ 870.3250 Vascular clip.

(a) *Identification.* A vascular clip is an implanted extravascular device designed to occlude, by compression, blood flow in small blood vessels other than intracranial vessels.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3260 Vena cava clip.

(a) *Identification.* A vena cava clip is an implanted extravascular device designed to occlude partially the vena cava for the purpose of inhibiting the flow of thromboemboli through that vessel.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3300 Arterial embolization device.

(a) *Identification.* An arterial embolization device is an intravascular implanted device used to control internal hemorrhage or to halt blood flow in arteries supplying blood to certain types of abdominal tumors (e.g., nephroma, hepatoma) and arteriovenous malformations. This device is not used in intracranial arteries.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3375 Cardiovascular intravascular filter.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiovascular intravascular filter is an implant that is placed in the inferior vena cava for the purpose of preventing pulmonary thromboemboli (blood clots generated in the lower limbs and broken loose into the blood stream) from flowing into the right side of the heart and the pulmonary circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3450 Vascular graft prosthesis of less than 6 millimeters diameter.

(a) *Identification.* A vascular graft prosthesis of less than 6 millimeters (mm) diameter is a device used to replace sections of small arteries. This prosthesis is commonly constructed of woven or knitted materials such as polyethylene terephthalate and polytetrafluoroethylene and is not made of materials of animal origin, including human umbilical cords.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3460 Vascular graft prosthesis of 6 millimeters and greater diameter.

(a) *Identification.* A vascular graft prosthesis of 6 millimeters (mm) and greater diameter is a device used to replace sections of arteries. This prosthesis is commonly constructed of woven or knitted materials such as polyethylene terephthalate and polytetrafluoroethylene and is not made of materials of animal origin, including human umbilical cords.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3470 Intracardiac patch or pledget made of polypropylene, polyethylene terephthalate, or polytetrafluoroethylene.

(a) *Identification.* An intracardiac patch or pledget made of polypropylene, polyethylene terephthalate, or polytetrafluoroethylene is a fabric device placed in the heart that is used to repair septal defects, for patch grafting, to repair tissue, and to buttress sutures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3535 Intra-aortic balloon and control system

(a) *Identification.* A intra-aortic balloon and control system is a device that consists of an inflatable balloon, which is placed in the aorta to improve cardiovascular functioning during certain life-threatening emergencies, and a control system for regulating the inflation and deflation of the balloon. The control system, which monitors and is synchronized with the electrocardiogram, provides a means for setting the inflation and deflation of the balloon with the cardiac cycle.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3545 Ventricular bypass (assist) device.

(a) *Identification.* A ventricular bypass (assist) device is a device that assists the left or right ventricle in maintaining circulatory blood flow. The device is either totally or partially implanted in the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3600 External pacemaker pulse generator.

(a) *Identification.* An external pacemaker pulse generator is a device that has a power supply and electronic circuits that produce a periodic electrical pulse to stimulate the heart. This device, which is used outside the body, is used as a temporary substitute for the heart's intrinsic pacing sytem until a permanent pacemaker can be implanted, or to control irregular heartbeats in patients following cardiac surgery or a myocardial infarction. The device may have adjustments for impulse strength, duration, R-wave sensitivity, and other pacing variables.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3610 Implantable pacemaker pulse generator.

(a) *Identification.* An implantable pacemaker pulse generator is a device that has a power supply and electronic circuits that produce a periodic electrical pulse to stimulate the heart. This device is used as a substitute for the heart's intrinsic pacing system to correct both intermittent and continuous cardiac rhythm disorders. This device includes triggered, inhibited, and asynchronous devices implanted in the human body.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3620 Pacemaker lead adaptor.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker lead adaptor is a device used to adapt a pacemaker lead so that it can be connected to a pacemaker pulse generator produced by a different manufacturer.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3630 Pacemaker generator function analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker generator function analyzer is a device that is connected to a pacemaker pulse generator to test any or all of the generator's parameters, including pulse duration, pulse amplitude, pulse rate, and sensing threshold.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3640 Indirect pacemaker generator function analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An indirect pacemaker generator function analyzer is an electrically powered device that is used to determine pacemaker function or pacemaker battery function by periodically monitoring an implanted pacemaker's pulse rate and pulse width. The device is noninvasive, and it detects pacemaker pulse rate and width via external electrodes in contact with the patient's skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3650 Pacemaker polymeric mesh bag.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker polymeric mesh bag is an implanted device used to hold a pacemaker pulse generator. The bag is designed to create a stable implant environment for the pulse generator.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3670 Pacemaker charger.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemal charger is a device used transcut eously to recharge the batteries o rechargeable pacemaker.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perfor ance standards).

§ 870.3680 Cardiovascular permanent temporary pacemaker electrode.

(a) *Temporary pacemaker electrod* (1) *Identification.* A temporary pa maker electrode is a device consisti of flexible insulated electrical condu tors with one end connected to an *ternal* pacemaker pulse generator a the other end applied to the hea The device is used to transmit a paci electrical stimulus from the pulse ge erator to the heart and/or to transm the electrical signal of the heart to t pulse generator.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (perfor ance standards).

(b) *Permanent pacemaker ele trode*—(1) *Identification.* A permane pacemaker electrode is a device co sisting of flexible insulated electric conductors with one end connected an implantable pacemaker pulse ge erator and the other end applied the heart. The device is used to tran mit a pacing electrical stimulus fro the pulse generator to the heart and or to transmit the electrical signal the heart to the pulse generator.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (prema ket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completio of a PDP is required.* No effective dat has been established of the require ment for premarket approval for th device described in paragraph (b)(1) See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amende at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3690 Pacemaker test magnet.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker test magnet is a device used to test an inhibited or triggered type of pacemaker pulse generator and cause an inhibited or triggered generator to revert to asynchronous operation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3700 Pacemaker programmers.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker programmer is a device used to change noninvasively one or more of the electrical operating characteristics of a pacemaker.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3710 Pacemaker repair or replacement material.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker repair or replacement material is an adhesive, a sealant, a screw, a crimp, or any other material used to repair a pacemaker lead or to reconnect a pacemaker lead to a pacemaker pulse generator.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3720 Pacemaker electrode function tester.

(a) *Identification.* A pacemaker electrode function tester is a device which is connected to an implanted pacemaker lead that supplies an accurately calibrated, variable pacing pulse for measuring the patient's pacing threshold and intracardiac R-wave potential.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3730 Pacemaker service tools.

(a) *Identification.* Pacemaker service tools are devices such as screwdrivers and Allen wrenches, used to repair a pacemaker lead or to reconnect a pacemaker lead to a pacemaker generator

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 870.3800 Annuloplasty ring.

(a) *Identification.* An annuloplasty ring is a rigid or flexible ring implanted around the mitral or tricuspid heart valve for reconstructive treatment of valvular insufficiency.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3850 Carotid sinus nerve stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* A carotid sinus nerve stimulator is an implantable device used to decrease arterial pressure by stimulating Hering's nerve at the carotid sinus.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17736, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.3925 Replacement heart valve.

(a) *Identification.* A replacement heart valve is a device intended to perform the function of any of the heart's natural valves. This device includes valves constructed of prosthetic materials, biologic valves (e.g., porcine valves), or valves constructed of a combination of prosthetic and biologic materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or a notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before December 9, 1987 for any replacement heart valve that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has on or before December 9, 1987 been found to be substantially equivalent to a replacement heart valve that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976. Any other replacement heart valve shall have an approved PMA or a declared completed PDP in effect before being placed in commercial distribution.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 18163, May 13, 1987; 52 FR 23137, June 17, 1987]

§ 870.3935 Prosthetic heart valve holder.

(a) *Identification.* A prosthetic heart valve holder is a device used to hold a replacement heart valve while it is being sutured into place.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.3945 Prosthetic heart valve sizer.

(a) *Identification.* A prosthetic heart valve sizer is a device used to measure the size of the natural valve opening to determine the size of the appropriate replacement heart valve.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart E—Cardiovascular Surgical Devices

§ 870.4075 Endomyocardial biopsy device.

(a) *Identification.* An endomyocardial biopsy device is a device used in a catheterization procedure to remove samples of tissue from the inner wall of the heart.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4200 Cardiopulmonary bypass accessory equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Cardiopulmonary bypass accessory equipment are devices that have no contact with blood and that are used in the cardiopulmonary bypass circuit to support, adjoin, or connect components, or to aid in the setup of the extracorporeal line, e.g., an oxygenator mounting bracket or system-priming equipment.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 870.4205 Cardiopulmonary bypass bubble detector.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass bubble detector is a device used to detect bubbles in the arterial return line of the cardiopulmonary bypass circuit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4210 Cardiopulmonary bypass vascular catheter, cannula, or tubing.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass vascular catheter, cannula, or tubing is a device used in cardiopulmonary surgery to cannulate the vessels, perfuse the coronary arteries, and to interconnect the catheters and cannulas with an oxygenator. The device includes accessory bypass equipment.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4220 Cardiopulmonary bypass heart-lung machine console.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass heart-lung machine console is a device that consists of a control panel and the electrical power and control circuitry for a heart-lung machine. The console is designed to interface with the basic units used in a gas exchange system, including the pumps, oxygenator, and heat exchanger.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4230 Cardiopulmonary bypass defoamer.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass defoamer is a device used in conjunction with an oxygenator during cardiopulmonary bypass surgery to remove gas bubbles from the blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.4240 Cardiovascular bypass heat exchanger.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass heat exchanger is a device, consisting of a heat exchange system used in extracorporeal circulation to warm or cool the blood or perfusion fluid flowing through the device.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4250 Cardiopulmonary bypass temperature controller.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass temperature controller is a device used to control the temperature of the fluid entering and leaving a heat exchanger.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4260 Cardiopulmonary bypass arterial line blood filter.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass arterial line blood filter is a device used as part of a gas exchange (oxygenator) system to filter nonbiologic particles and emboli (blood clots or pieces of foreign material flowing in the bloodstream which will obstruct circulation by blocking a vessel) out of the blood. It is used in the arterial return line.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.4270 Cardiopulmonary bypass cardiotomy suction line blood filter.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass cardiotomy suction line blood filter is a device used as part of a gas exchange (oxygenator) system to filter nonbiologic particles and emboli (a blood clot or a piece of foreign material flowing in the bloodstream which will obstruct circulation by blocking a vessel) out of the blood. This device is intended for use in the cardiotomy suction line.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4280 Cardiopulmonary prebypass filter.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary prebypass filter is a device used during priming of the oxygenator circuit to remove particulates or other debris from the circuit prior to initiating bypass. The device is not used to filter blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4290 Cardiopulmonary bypass adaptor, stopcock, manifold, or fitting.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass adaptor, stopcock, manifold, or fitting is a device used in cardiovascular diagnostic, surgical, and therapeutic applications to interconnect tubing, catheters, or other devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4300 Cardiopulmonary bypass gas control unit.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass gas control unit is a device used to control and measure the flow of gas into the oxygenator. The device is calibrated for a specific gas.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4310 Cardiopulmonary bypass coronary pressure gauge.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass coronary pressure gauge is a device used in cardiopulmonary bypass surgery to measure the pressure of the blood perfusing the coronary arteries.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4320 Cardiopulmonary bypass pulsatile flow generator.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass pulsatile flow generator is an electrically and pneumatically operated device used to create pulsatile blood flow. The device is placed in a cardiopulmonary bypass circuit downstream from the oxygenator.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.4330 Cardiopulmonary bypass on-line blood gas monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass on-line blood gas monitor is a device used in conjunction with a blood gas sensor to measure the level of gases in the blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4340 Cardiopulmonary bypass level sensing monitor and/or control.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass level sensing monitor and/or control is a device used to monitor and/or control the level of blood in the blood reservoir and to sound an alarm when the level falls below a predetermined value.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4350 Cardiopulmonary bypass oxygenator.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass oxygenator is a device used to exchange gases between blood and a gaseous environment to satisfy the gas exchange needs of a patient during open-heart surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.4360 Nonroller-type cardiopulmonary bypass blood pump.

(a) *Identification.* A nonroller-type cardiopulmonary bypass blood pump is a device that uses a method other than revolving rollers to pump the blood through the cardiopulmonary bypass circuit during bypass surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.4370 Roller-type cardiopulmona
bypass blood pump.

(a) *Identification.* A roller-type ca
diopulmonary bypass blood pump is
device that uses a revolving roll
mechanism to pump the blo
through the cardiopulmonary bypa
circuit during bypass surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perfor
ance standards).

§ 870.4380 Cardiopulmonary bypass pu
speed control.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmo
ary bypass pump speed control is
device used that incorporates an ele
trical system or a mechanical syste
or both, and is used to control th
speed of blood pumps used in cardi
pulmonary bypass surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perforn
ance standards).

§ 870.4390 Cardiopulmonary bypass pun
tubing.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmo
ary bypass pump tubing is polymer
tubing which is used in the bloo
pump head and which is cyclicall
compressed by the pump to cause th
blood to flow through the cardiopu
monary bypass circuit.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perforn
ance standards).

§ 870.4400 Cardiopulmonary bypass bloo
reservoir.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmon
ary bypass blood reservoir is a devic
used in conjunction with short-tern
extracorporeal circulation devices t
hold a reserve supply of blood in th
bypass circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perform
ance standards), except that a reser
voir that contains a defoamer or filte
is classified into the same class as th
defoamer or filter.

§ 870.4410 Cardiopulmonary bypass in
line blood gas sensor.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmon
ary bypass in-line blood gas sensor is
transducer that measures the level o
gases in the blood.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perform
ance standards).

§ 870.4420 Cardiopulmonary bypass cardiotomy return sucker.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass cardiotomy return sucker is a device that consists of tubing, a connector, and a probe or tip that is used to remove blood from the chest or heart during cardiopulmonary bypass surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4430 Cardiopulmonary bypass intracardiac suction control.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary bypass intracardiac suction control is a device which provides the vacuum and control for a cardiotomy return sucker.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4450 Vascular clamp.

(a) *Identification.* A vascular clamp is a surgical instrument used to occlude a blood vessel temporarily.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4475 Surgical vessel dilator.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical vessel dilator is a device used to enlarge or calibrate a vessel.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4500 Cardiovascular surgical instruments.

(a) *Identification.* Cardiovascular surgical instruments are surgical instruments that have special features for use in cardiovascular surgery. These devices include, e.g., forceps, retractors, and scissors.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 870.4875 Intraluminal artery stripper.

(a) *Identification.* An intraluminal artery stripper is a device used to perform an endarterectomy (removal of plaque deposits from arterisclerotic arteries.)

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.4885 External vein stripper.

(a) *Identification.* An external vein stripper is an extravascular device used to remove a section of a vein.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart F—Cardiovascular Therapeutic Devices

§ 870.5050 Patient care suction apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* A patient care suction apparatus is a device used with an intrathoracic catheter to withdraw fluid from the chest during the recovery period following surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.5150 Embolectomy catheter.

(a) *Identification.* An embolectomy catheter is a balloon-tipped catheter that is used to remove thromboemboli, i.e., blood clots which have migrated in blood vessels from one site in the vascular tree to another.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.5175 Septostomy catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A septostomy catheter is a special balloon catheter that is used to create or enlarge the atrial septal defect found in the heart of certain infants.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.5200 External cardiac compressor.

(a) *Identification.* An external cardiac compressor is an external device that is electrically, pneumatically, or manually powered and is used to compress the chest periodically in the region of the heart to provide blood flow during cardiac arrest.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.5225 External counter-pulsating device.

(a) *Identification.* An external counter-pulsating device is a noninvasive device used to assist the heart by applying positive or negative pressure to one or more of the body's limbs in synchrony with the heart cycle.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.5300 DC-defribrillator (including paddles).

(a) *Low-energy DC-defibrillator*—(1) *Identification.* A low-energy DC-defibrillator is a device that delivers into a 50 ohm test load an electrical shock of a maximum of 360 joules of energy used for defibrillating (restoring normal heart rhythm) the atria or ventricles of the heart or to terminate other cardiac arrhythmias. This generic type of device includes low energy defibrillators with a maximum electrical output of less than 360 joules of energy that are used in pediatric defibrillation or in cardiac surgery. The device may either synchronize the shock with the proper phase of the electrocardiogram or may operate asynchronously. The device delivers the electrical shock through paddles placed either directly across the heart or on the surface of the body.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *High-energy DC-defibrillator*—(1) *Identification.* A high-energy DC-defibrillator is a device that delivers into a 50 ohm test load an electrical shock of greater than 360 joules of energy used for defibrillating the atria or ventricles of the heart or to terminate other cardiac arrhythmias. The device may either synchronize the shock with the proper phase of the electrocardiogram or may operate asynchronously. The device delivers the electrical shock through paddles placed either directly across the heart or on the surface of the body.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (prema ket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completio of a PDP is required.* No effective dat has been established of the requir ment for premarket approval for th device described in paragraph (b)(1 See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amende at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.5325 Defibrillator tester.

(a) *Identification.* A defibrillato tester is a device that is connected t the output of a defibrillator and used to measure the energy delivere by the defibrillator into a standard re sistive load. Some testers also provid waveform information.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (perform ance standards).

§ 870.5550 External transcutaneous cardi ac pacemaker (noninvasive).

(a) *Identification.* An external trans cutaneous cardiac pacemaker (nonin vasive) is a device used to supply periodic electrical pulse intended t pace the heart. The pulse from th device is usually applied to the surfac of the chest through electrodes such as defibrillator paddles.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premar ket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective dat has been established of the require ment for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1) See § 870.3.

[45 FR 7907-7971, Feb. 5, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

§ 870.5800 Compressible limb sleeve.

(a) *Identification.* A compressible limb sleeve is a device that is used to prevent pooling of blood in a limb by inflating periodically a sleeve around the limb.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.5900 Thermal regulation system.

(a) *Identification.* A thermal regulating system is an external system consisting of a device that is placed in contact with the patient and a temperature controller for the device. The system is used to regulate patient temperature.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 870.5925 Automatic rotating tourniquet.

(a) *Identification.* An automatic rotating tourniquet is a device that prevents blood flow in one limb at a time, which temporarily reduces the total blood volume, thereby reducing the normal workload of the heart.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

PART 872—DENTAL DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
872.1 Scope.
872.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

872.1500 Gingival fluid measurer.
872.1720 Pulp tester.
872.1730 Electrode gel for pulp tester.
872.1740 Caries detection device.
872.1800 Extraoral source X-ray system.
872.1810 Intraoral source X-ray system.
872.1820 Dental X-ray exposure alignment device.
872.1830 Cephalometer.
872.1840 Dental X-ray position indicating device.
872.1850 Lead-lined position indicator.
872.1905 Dental X-ray film holder.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

872.3050 Amalgam alloy.
872.3060 Gold based alloys and precious metal alloys for clinical use.
872.3080 Mercury and alloy dispenser.
872.3110 Dental amalgam capsule.
872.3130 Preformed anchor.
872.3140 Resin applicator.
872.3150 Articulator.
872.3165 Precision attachment.
872.3200 Resin tooth bonding agent.
872.3220 Facebow.
872.3240 Dental bur.
872.3250 Calcium hydroxide cavity liner.
872.3260 Cavity varnish.
872.3275 Dental cement.
872.3285 Preformed clasp.
872.3300 Hydrophilic resin coating for dentures.
Sec.
872.3310 Coating material for resin fillings.
872.3330 Preformed crown.
872.3350 Gold or stainless steel cusp.
872.3360 Preformed cusp.
872.3400 Karaya and sodium borate with or without acacia denture adhesive.
872.3410 Ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or carboxymethyl-cellulose sodium denture adhesive.
872.3420 Carboxymethylcellulose sodium and cationic polyacrylamide polymer denture adhesive.
872.3450 Ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or karaya denture adhesive.
872.3480 Polyacrylamide polymer (modified cationic) denture adhesive.
872.3490 Carboxymethylcellulose sodium and/or polyvinylmethylether maleic acid calcium-sodium double salt denture adhesive.
872.3500 Polyvinylmethylether maleic anhydride (PVM-MA), acid copolymer, and carboxymethylcellulose sodium (NACMC) denture adhesive.
872.3520 OTC denture cleanser.
872.3540 OTC denture cushion or pad.
872.3560 OTC denture reliner.
872.3570 OTC denture repair kit.
872.3580 Preformed gold denture tooth.
872.3590 Preformed plastic denture tooth.
872.3600 Partially fabricated denture kit.
872.3640 Endosseous implant.
872.3645 Subperiosteal implant material.
872.3660 Impression material.
872.3670 Resin impression tray material.
872.3680 Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) vitreous carbon material.
872.3690 Tooth shade resin material.
872.3700 Dental mercury.
872.3710 Base metal alloy.
872.3730 Pantograph.
872.3740 Retentive and splinting pin.
872.3750 Bracket adhesive resin and tooth conditioner.
872.3760 Denture relining, repairing, or rebasing resin.
872.3765 Pit and fissure sealant and conditioner.
872.3770 Temporary crown and bridge resin.
872.3810 Root canal post.
872.3820 Root canal filling resin.
872.3830 Endodontic paper point.
872.3840 Endodontic silver point.
872.3850 Gutta percha.
872.3890 Endodontic stabilizing splint.
872.3900 Posterior artificial tooth with a metal insert.
872.3910 Backing and facing for an artificial tooth.
872.3920 Porcelain tooth.
872.3930 Tricalcium phosphate granules for dental bone repair.

Sec.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

872.4120 Bone cutting instrument and accessories.
872.4130 Intraoral dental drill.
872.4465 Gas-powered jet injector.
872.4475 Spring-powered jet injector.
872.4535 Dental diamond instrument.
872.4565 Dental hand instrument.
872.4600 Intraoral ligature and wire lock.
872.4630 Dental operating light.
872.4730 Dental injecting needle.
872.4760 Bone plate.
872.4840 Rotary scaler.
872.4850 Ultrasonic scaler.
872.4880 Intraosseous fixation screw or wire.
872.4920 Dental electrosurgical unit and accessories.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

872.5410 Orthodontic appliance and accessories.
872.5470 Orthodontic plastic bracket.
872.5500 Extraoral orthodontic headgear.
872.5525 Preformed tooth positioner.
872.5550 Teething ring.

Subpart G—Miscellaneous Devices

872.6010 Abrasive device and accessories.
872.6030 Oral cavity abrasive polishing agent.
872.6050 Saliva absorber.
872.6070 Ultraviolet activator for polymerization.
872.6080 Airbrush.
872.6100 Anesthetic warmer.
872.6140 Articulation paper.
872.6200 Base plate shellac.
872.6290 Prophylaxis cup.
872.6300 Rubber dam and accessories.
872.6350 Ultraviolet detector.
872.6390 Dental floss.
872.6570 Impression tube.
872.6650 Massaging pick or tip for oral hygiene.
872.6660 Procelain powder for clinical use.
872.6670 Silicate protector.
872.6730 Endodontic dry heat sterilizer.
872.6770 Cartridge syringe.
872.6855 Manual toothbrush.
872.6870 Disposable fluoride tray.
872.6880 Preformed impression tray.
872.6890 Intraoral dental wax.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 52 FR 30097, Aug. 12, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provision

§ 872.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the clas
cation of dental devices intended
human use that are in commercial
tribution.

(b) The identification of a device
regulation in this part is not a pre
description of every device that is
will be, subject to the regulation
manufacturer who submits a prem
ket notification submission for
device under Part 807 cannot sh
merely that the device is accurat
described by the section title and id
tification provisions of a regulation
this part, but shall state why
device is substantially equivalent
other devices, as required by § 807.8

(c) To avoid duplicative listings
dental device that has two or m
types of uses (e.g., used both as a di
nostic device and as a therapeu
device) is listed in one subpart only.

(d) References in this part to regu
tory sections of the Code of Fede
Regulations are to Chapter I of Ti
21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 872.3 Effective dates of requirement premarket approval.

A device included in this part that
classified into class III (premarket
proval) shall not be commercially d
tributed after the date shown in t
regulation classifying the device unle
the manufacturer has an approv
under section 515 of the act (unless
exemption has been granted und
section 520(g)(2) of the act). An a
proval under section 515 of the a
consists of FDA's issuance of an ord
approving an application for prema
ket approval (PMA) for the device
declaring completed a product deve
opment protocol (PDP) for the devic

(a) Before FDA requires that
device commercially distributed befo
the enactment date of the amen
ments, or a device that has been foun
substantially equivalent to such
device, has an approval under sectio
515 of the act, FDA must promulgat
a regulation under section 515(b)
the act requiring such approva
except as provided in paragraphs (
and (c) of this section. Such a regul

tion under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

(c) A device identified in a regulation in this part that is classified into class III and that is subject to the transitional provisions of section 520(1) of the act is automatically classified by statute into class III and must have an approval under section 515 of the act before being commercially distributed. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III transitional device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 872.1500 Gingival fluid measurer.

(a) *Identification.* A gingival fluid measurer is a gauge device intended to measure the amount of fluid in the gingival sulcus (depression between the tooth and gums) to determine if there is a gingivitis condition.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.1720 Pulp tester.

(a) *Identification.* A pulp tester is an AC or battery powered device intended to evaluate the pulpal vitality of teeth by employing high frequency current transmitted by an electrode to stimulate the nerve tissue in the dental pulp.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1730 Electrode gel for pulp testers.

(a) *Identification.* An electrode gel for pulp testers is a device intended to be applied to the surface of a tooth before use of a pulp tester to aid conduction of electrical current

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.1740 Caries detection device.

(a) *Identification.* The caries detection device is a device intended to show the existence of decay in a patient's tooth by use of electrical current.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1800 Extraoral source X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* An extraoral source X-ray system is an AC-powered device that produces X-rays and is intended for dental radiographic examination and diagnosis of diseases of the teeth, jaw, and oral structures. The X-ray source (a tube) is located outside the mouth. This generic type of device may include patient and equipment supports and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1810 Intraoral source X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* An intraoral source X-ray system is an electrically powered device that produces X-rays and is intended for dental radiographic examination and diagnosis of diseases of the teeth, jaw, and oral structures. The X-ray source (a tube) is located inside the mouth. This generic type of device may include patient and equipment supports and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1820 Dental X-ray exposure alignment device.

(a) *Identification.* A dental X-ray exposure alignment device is a device intended to position X-ray film and to align the examination site with the X-ray beam.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.1830 Cephalometer.

(a) *Identification.* A cephalometer is a device used in dentistry during X-ray procedures. The device is intended to place and to hold a patient's head in a standard position during dental X-rays.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1840 Dental X-ray position indicating device.

(a) *Identification.* A dental X-ray position indicating device is a device, such as a collimator, cone, or aperture, that is used in dental radiographic examination. The device is intended to align the examination site with the X-ray beam and to restrict the dimensions of the dental X-ray field by limiting the size of the primary X-ray beam.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1850 Lead-lined position indicator.

(a) *Identification.* A lead-lined position indicator is a cone-shaped device lined with lead that is attached to a dental X-ray tube and intended to aid in positioning the tube, to prevent the misfocusing of the X-rays by absorbing divergent radiation, and to prevent leakage of radiation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.1905 Dental X-ray film holder.

(a) *Identification.* A dental X-ray film holder is a device intended to position and to hold X-ray film inside the mouth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt
the current good manufacturing
tice regulations in Part 820, wit
exception of § 820.180, with respe
general requirements concer
records, and § 820.198 with respe
complaint files.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Device

§ 872.3050 Amalgam alloy.

(a) *Identification.* An amalgam
is a device that consists of a me
substance intended to be mixed
mercury to form filling materia
treatment of dental caries.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3060 Gold-based alloys and pre metal alloys for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* Gold-based a
and precious metal alloys for cli
use are mixtures of metals, the m
components of which are gold, si
or palladium. They also may conta
small quantity of copper or plati
The device is intended to fabri
dental appliances, such as crowns
bridges, for patients.

(b) *Classification.* Class II

§ 872.3080 Mercury and alloy dispense

(a) *Identification.* A mercury
alloy dispenser is a device wit
spring-activated valve intended
measure and dispense into a mi
capsule a predetermined amount
dental mercury in droplet form an
premeasured amount of alloy pellet

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3110 Dental amalgam capsule.

(a) *Identification.* A dental amalg
capsule is a container device in wh
silver alloy is intended to be mi
with mercury to form dental amalga

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3130 Preformed anchor.

(a) *Identification.* A preform
anchor is a device made of austeni
alloys or alloys containing 75 perce
or greater gold or metals of the pla
num group intended to be incorpor
ed into a dental appliance, such as

denture, to help stabilize the appliance in the patient's mouth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3140 Resin applicator.

(a) *Identification.* A resin applicator is a brushlike device intended for use in spreading dental resin on a tooth during application of tooth shade material.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.3150 Articulator.

(a) *Identification.* An articulator is a mechanical device intended to simulate movements of a patient's upper and lower jaws. Plaster casts of the patient's teeth and gums are placed in the device to reproduce the occlusion (bite) and articulation of the patient's jaws. An articulator is intended to fit dentures or provide orthodontic treatment.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.3165 Precision attachment.

(a) *Identification.* A precision attachment or preformed bar is a device made of austenitic alloys or alloys containing 75 percent or greater gold and metals of the platinum group intended for use in prosthetic dentistry in conjunction with removable partial dentures. Various forms of the device are intended to connect a lower partial denture with another lower partial denture, to connect an upper partial denture with another upper partial denture, to connect either an upper or lower partial denture to a tooth or a crown, or to connect a fixed bridge to a partial denture.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3200 Resin tooth bonding agent.

(a) *Identification.* A resin tooth bonding agent is a device material, such as methylmethacrylate, intended to be painted on the interior of a prepared cavity of a tooth to improve retention of a restoration, such as a filling.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3220 Facebow.

(a) *Identification.* A facebow is a device intended for use in denture fabrication to determine the spatial relationship between the upper and lower jaws. This determination is intended for use in placing denture casts accurately into an articulator (§ 872.3150) and thereby aiding correct placement of artificial teeth into a denture base.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.3240 Dental bur.

(a) *Identification.* A dental bur is a rotary cutting device made from carbon steel or tungsten carbide intended to cut hard structures in the mouth, such as teeth or bone. It is also intended to cut hard metals, plastics, porcelains, and similar materials intended for use in the fabrication of dental devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3250 Calcium hydroxide cavity liner.

(a) *Identification.* A calcium hydroxide cavity liner is a device material intended to be applied to the interior of a prepared cavity before insertion of restorative material, such as amalgam, to protect the pulp of a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3260 Cavity varnish.

(a) *Identification.* Cavity varnish is a device that consists of a compound intended to coat a prepared cavity of a tooth before insertion of restorative materials. The device is intended to prevent penetration of restorative materials, such as amalgam, into the dentinal tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3275 Dental cement.

(a) *Zinc oxide-eugenol*—(1) *Identification.* Zinc oxide-eugenol is a device composed of zinc oxide-eugenol intended to serve as a temporary tooth filling or as a base cement to affix a temporary tooth filling, to affix dental devices such as crowns or bridges, or to be applied to a tooth to protect the tooth pulp.

(2) *Classification.* Class I.

(b) *Dental cement other than zinc oxide-eugenol*—(1) *Identification.* Dental cement other than zinc oxide-eugenol is a device composed of various materials other than zinc oxide-eugenol intended to serve as a temporary tooth filling or as a base cement to affix a temporary tooth filling, to affix dental devices such as crowns or bridges, or to be applied to a tooth to protect the tooth pulp.

(2) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3285 Preformed clasp.

(a) *Identification.* A preformed clasp or a preformed wire clasp is a prefabricated device made of austenitic alloys or alloys containing 75 percent or greater gold and metals of the platinum group intended to be incorporated into a dental appliance, such as a partial denture, to help stabilize the appliance in the patient's mouth by fastening the appliance to an adjacent tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3300 Hydrophilic resin coating for dentures.

(a) *Identification.* A hydrophilic resin coating for dentures is a device that consists of a water-retaining polymer that is intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted into the patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3310 Coating material for resin fillings.

(a) *Identification.* A coating material for resin fillings is a device intended to be applied to the surface of a restorative resin dental filling to atta
smooth, glaze-like finish on the
face of the filling.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3330 Preformed crown.

(a) *Identification.* A preforn
crown is a prefabricated device m
of plastic or austenitic alloys or all
containing 75 percent or greater g
and metals of the platinum group
tended to be affixed temporarily t
tooth after removal of, or breakage
the natural crown (that portion of
tooth that normally protrudes ab
the gums). It is intended for use a
functional restoration until a perr
nent crown is constructed. The dev
also may be intended for use as a fu
tional restoration for a badly decay
deciduous (baby) tooth until the ad
tooth erupts.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3350 Gold or stainless steel cusp.

(a) *Identification.* A gold or stainl
steel cusp is a prefabricated dev
made of austenitic alloys or alloys co
taining 75 percent or greater gold a
metals of the platinum group or sta
less steel intended to provide a perm
nent cusp (a projection on the chewi
surface of a tooth) to achieve occlus
harmony (a proper bite) between t
teeth and a removable denture.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3360 Preformed cusp.

(a) *Identification.* A performed cu
is a prefabricated device made of pla
tic or austenitic alloys or alloys co
taining 75 percent or greater gold a
metals of the platinum group intend
to be used as a temporary cusp (a pr
jection on the chewing surface of
tooth) to achieve occlusal harmony
proper bite) before permanent restor
tion of a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3400 Karaya and sodium borate wi or without acacia denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* A karaya a
sodium borate with or without acac
denture adhesive is a device compos
of karaya and sodium borate with
without acacia intended to be appli
to the base of a denture before th

denture is inserted into patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class I if the device contains less than 12 percent by weight of sodium borate.

(2) Class III if the device contains 12 percent or more by weight of sodium borate.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval of the device described in paragraph (b)(2). See § 872.3.

§ 872.3410 Ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or carboxymethylcellulose sodium denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* An ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or carboxymethylcellulose sodium denture adhesive is a device containing ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or carboxymethylcellulose sodium intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted in a patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3420 Carboxymethylcellulose sodium and cationic polyacrylamide polymer denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* A carboxymethylcellulose sodium and cationic polyacrylamide polymer denture adhesive is a device composed of carboxymethylcellulose sodium and cationic polyacrylamide polymer intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted in a patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 872.3.

§ 872.3450 Ehtylene oxide homopolymer and/or karaya denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* Ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or karaya denture adhesive is a device composed of ethylene oxide homopolymer and/or karaya intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted in a patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3480 Polyacrylamide polymer (modified cationic) denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* A polyacrylamide polymer (modified cationic) denture adhesive is a device composed of polyacrylamide polymer (modified cationic) intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted in a patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 872.3.

§ 872.3490 Carboxymethylcellulose sodium and/or polyvinylmethylether maleic acid calcium-sodium double salt denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* A carboxymethylcellulose sodium and/or polyvinylmethylether maleic acid calcium-sodium double salt denture adhesive is a device composed of carboxymethylcellulose sodium and/or polyvinylmethylether maleic acid calcium-sodium double salt intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted in a patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3500 Polyvinylmethylether maleic anhydride (PVM-MA), acid copolymer, and carboxymethylcellulose sodium (NACMC) denture adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* Polyvinylmethylether maleic anhydride (PVM-MA), acid copolymer, and carboxymethylcellulose sodium (NACMC) denture adhesive is a device composed of polyvinylmethylether maleic anhydride, acid copolymer, and carboxymethylcellulose sodium intended to be applied to the base of a denture before the denture is inserted in a patient's mouth to improve denture retention and comfort.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 872.3.

§ 872.3520 OTC denture cleanser.

(a) *Identification.* An OTC denture cleanser is a device that consists of material in the form of a powder, tablet, or paste that is intended to remove debris from removable prosthetic dental appliances, such as bridges or dentures. The dental appliance is removed from the patient's mouth when the appliance is cleaned.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3540 OTC denture cushion or pad.

(a) *Identification.* An OTC denture cushion or pad is a prefabricated or noncustom made disposable device that is intended to improve the fit of a loose or uncomfortable denture, and may be available for purchase over-the-counter.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class I if the OTC denture cushion or pad is made of wax-impregnated cotton cloth that the patient applies to the base or inner surface of a denture before inserting the denture into the mouth. The device is intended to be discarded following 1 day's use.

(2) Class III if the OTC denture cushion or pad is made of a material other than wax-impregnated cotton cloth or if the intended use of the device differs from that described in paragraph (b) of this section.

(c) *Data PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval of the device described in paragraph (b)(2). See § 872.3.

§ 872.3560 OTC denture reliner.

(a) *Identification.* An OTC denture reliner is a device consisting of a material such as plastic resin that is intended to be applied as a permanent coating or lining on the base or tissue-contacting surface of a denture. The device is intended to replace a worn denture lining and may be available for purchase over the counter.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Data PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the re-
quirement for premarket appro
See § 872.3.

§ 872.3570 OTC denture repair kit.

(a) *Identification.* An OTC dent
repair kit is a device consisting o
material, such as a resin monor
system of powder and liquid glu
that is intended to be applied per
nently to a denture to mend cracks
breaks. The device may be availa
for purchase over-the counter.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Data PMA or notice of com
tion of PDP is required.* No effect
date has been established of the
quirement for premarket appro
See § 872.3.

§ 872.3580 Preformed gold denture toot

(a) *Identification.* A preformed g
denture tooth is a device composed
austenitic alloys or alloys contain
75 percent or greater gold and met
of the platinum group intended
use as a tooth or a portion of a too
in a fixed or removable partial de
ture.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3590 Preformed plastic dentue too

(a) *Identification.* A preformed pl
tic denture tooth is a prefabricat
device, composed of materials such
methyl methacrylate, that is intend
for use as a tooth in a denture.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3600 Partially fabricated denture k

(a) *Identification.* A partially fab
cated denture kit is a device compos
of connected preformed teeth that
intended for use in construction of
denture. A denture base is construct
using the patient's mouth as a mol
by partially polymerizing the res
denture base materials while the m
terials are in contact with the oral t
sues. After the denture base is co
structed, the connected preforme
teeth are chemically bonded to th
base.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Data PMA or notice of compl
tion of a PDP is required.* No effecti
date has been established of the r
quirement for premarket approva
See § 872.3.

§ 872.3640 Endosseous implant.

(a) *Identification.* An endosseous implant is a device made of a material such as titanium intended to be surgically placed in the bone of the upper or lower jaw arches to provide support for prosthetic devices, such as artificial teeth, and to restore the patient's chewing function.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 872.3.

§ 872.3645 Subperiosteal implant material.

(a) *Identification.* Subperiosteal implant material is a device composed of titanium or cobalt chrome molybdenum intended to construct custom prosthetic devices which are surgically implanted into the lower or upper jaw between the periosteum (connective tissue covering the bone) and supporting bony structures. The device is intended to provide support for prostheses, such as dentures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3660 Impression material.

(a) *Identification.* Impression material is a device composed of materials such as alginate or polysulfide intended to be placed on a preformed impression tray and used to reproduce the structure of a patient's teeth and gums. The device is intended to provide models for study and for production of restorative prosthetic devices, such as gold inlays and dentures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3670 Resin impression tray material.

(a) *Identification.* Resin impression tray material is a device intended for use in a two-step dental mold fabricating process. The device consists of a resin material, such as methyl methacrylate, and is used to form a custom impression tray for use in cases in which a preformed impression tray is not suitable, such as the fabrication of crowns, bridges, or full dentures. A preliminary plaster or stone model of the patient's teeth and gums is made. The resin impression tray material is applied to this preliminary study model to form a custom tray. This tray is then filled with impression material and inserted into the patient's mouth to make an impression, from which a final, more precise, model of the patient's mouth is cast.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.3680 Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) vitreous carbon materials.

(a) *Identification.* Polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) vitreous carbon material is a device composed of polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) vitreous carbon intended for use in maxillofacial alveolar ridge augmentation (building up the upper or lower jaw area that contains the sockets in which teeth are rooted) or intended to coat metal surgical implants to be placed in the alveoli (sockets in which the teeth are rooted) or the temporomandibular joints (the joint between the upper and lower jaws).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

[52 FR 30097, Aug. 12, 1987; 52 FR 34456, Sept. 11, 1987]

§ 872.3690 Tooth shade resin material.

(a) *Identification.* Tooth shade resin material is a device composed of materials such as bisphenol-A glycidyl methacrylate (Bis-GMA) intended to restore carious lesions or structural defects in teeth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3700 Dental mercury.

(a) *Identification.* Dental mercury is a device composed of mercury intended for use as a component of amalgam alloy in the restoration of a dental cavity or a broken tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3710 Base metal alloy.

(a) *Identification.* A base metal alloy is a device composed of a material, such as a mixture of nickel and chromium, intended for use in fabrication of a custom-made dental device, such as porcelain veneer for a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3730 Pantograph.

(a) *Identification.* A pantograph is a device intended to be attached to a patient's head to duplicate lower jaw movements to aid in construction of restorative and prosthetic dental devices. A marking pen is attached to the lower jaw component of the device and, as the patient's mouth opens, the pen records on graph paper the angle between the upper and the lower jaw.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.3740 Retentive and splinting pin.

(a) *Identification.* A retentive and splinting pin is a device made of austenitic alloys or alloys containing 75 percent or greater gold and metals of the platinum group intended to be placed permanently in a tooth to provide retention and stabilization for a restoration, such as a crown, or to join two or more teeth together.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3750 Bracket adhesive resin and tooth conditioner.

(a) *Identification.* A bracket adhesive resin and tooth conditioner is a device composed of an adhesive compound, such as polymethylmethacrylate, intended to cement an orthodontic bracket to a tooth surface.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3760 Denture relining, repairing, or rebasing resin.

(a) *Identification.* A denture relining, repairing, or rebasing resin is a device composed of materials such as methylmethacrylate, intended to reline a denture surface that contacts tissue, to repair a fractured denture, or to form a new denture base. This device is not available for over-th counter (OTC) use.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3765 Pit and fissure sealant and co ditioner.

(a) *Identification.* A pit and fissu sealant and conditioner is a devi composed of resin, such as polymet ylmethacrylate, intended for use p marily in young children to seal p and fissure depressions (faults in th enamel) in the biting surfaces of teet to prevent cavities.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3770 Temporary crown and brid resin.

(a) *Identification.* A temporar crown and bridge resin is a device composed of a material, such as polymeth ylmethacrylate, intended to make temporary prosthesis, such as a crow or bridge, for use until a permanen restoration is fabricated.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3810 Root canal post.

(a) *Identification.* A root canal pos is a device made of austenitic alloys o alloys containing 75 percent or greate gold and metals of the platinum grou intended to be cemented into the roo canal of a tooth to stabilize and support a restoration.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3820 Root canal filling resin.

(a) *Identification.* A root canal filling resin is a device composed of material, such as methylmethacrylate, intended for use during endodontic therapy to fill the root canal of a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II i chloroform is not used as an ingredient in the device.

(2) Class III if chloroform is used as an ingredient in the device.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval of the device described in paragraph (b)(2). See § 872.3.

§ 872.3830 Endodontic paper point.

(a) *Identification.* An endodontic paper point is a device made of paper intended for use during endodontic therapy to dry, or apply medication to, the root canal of a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3840 Endodontic silver point.

(a) *Identification.* An endodontic silver point is a device made of silver intended for use during endodontic therapy to fill permanently the root canal of a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3850 Gutta percha.

(a) *Identification.* Gutta percha is a device made from coagulated sap of certain tropical trees intended to fill the root canal of a tooth. The gutta percha is softened by heat and inserted into the root canal, where it hardens as it cools.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3890 Endodontic stabilizing splint.

(a) *Identification.* An endodontic stabilizing splint is a device made of a material, such as titanium, intended to be inserted through the root canal into the upper or lower jaw bone to stabilize a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3900 Posterior artificial tooth with a metal insert.

(a) *Identification.* A posterior artificial tooth with a metal insert is a porcelain device with an insert made of austenitic alloys or alloys containing 75 percent or greater gold and metals of the platinum group intended to replace a natural tooth. The device is attached to surrounding teeth by a bridge and is intended to provide both an improvement in appearance and functional occlusion (bite).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3910 Backing and facing for an artificial tooth.

(a) *Identification.* A backing and facing for an artificial tooth is a device intended for use in fabrication of a fixed or removable dental appliance, such as a crown or bridge. The backing, which is made of gold, is attached to the dental appliance and supports the tooth-colored facing, which is made of porcelain or plastic.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.3920 Porcelain tooth.

(a) *Identification.* A porcelain tooth is a prefabricated device made of porcelain powder for clinical use (§ 872.6660) intended for use in construction of fixed or removable prostheses, such as crowns and partial dentures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.3930 Tricalcium phosphate granules for dental bone repair.

(a) *Identification.* Tricalcium phosphate granules for dental bone repair is a device intended to be implanted into the upper or lower jaw to provide support for prosthetic devices.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 872.3.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

§ 872.4120 Bone cutting instrument and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A bone cutting instrument and accessories is a metal device intended for use in reconstructive oral surgery to drill or cut into the upper or lower jaw and may be used to prepare bone to insert a wire, pin, or screw. The device includes the manual bone drill and wire driver, powered bone drill, rotary bone cutting handpiece, and AC-powered bone saw.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4130 Intraoral dental drill.

(a) *Identification.* An intraoral dental drill is a rotary device intended to be attached to a dental handpiece to drill holes in teeth to secure cast or preformed pins to retain operative dental appliances.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.4465 Gas-powered jet injector.

(a) *Identification.* A gas-powered jet injector is a syringe device intended to administer a local anesthetic. The syringe is powered by a cartridge containing pressurized carbon dioxide which provides the pressure to force the anesthetic out of the syringe.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4475 Spring-powered jet injector.

(a) *Identification.* A spring-powered jet injector is a syringe device intended to administer a local anesthetic. The syringe is powered by a spring mechanism which provides the pressure to force the anesthetic out of the syringe.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4535 Dental diamond instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A dental diamond instrument is an abrasive device intended to smooth tooth surfaces during the fitting of crowns or bridges. The device consists of a shaft which is inserted into a handpiece and a head which has diamond chips imbedded into it. Rotation of the diamond instrument provides an abrasive action when it contacts a tooth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.4565 Dental hand instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A dental hand instrument is a hand-held device intended to perform various tasks in general dentistry and oral surgery procedures. The device includes the operative burnisher, operative amalgam carrier, operative dental amalgam carver, surgical bone chisel, operative amalgam and foil condenser, endodontic curette, operative curette, periodontic curette, surgical curette, dental surgical elevator, operative dental excavator, operative explorer surgical bone file, operative margin finishing file, periodontic file, periodontic probe, surgical rongeur forceps, surgical tooth extractor forceps, surgical hemostat, periodontic hoe, operative matrix contouring instrument, operative cutting instrument, operative margin finishing periodontic knife, periodontic marker, operative pliers, endodontic root canal plugger, endodontic root canal preparer, surgical biopsy punch, endodontic pulp canal reamer, crown remover, periodontic scaler, collar and crown scissors, endodontic pulp canal filling material spreader, surgical osteotome chisel, endodontic broach, dental wax carver, endodontic pulp canal file, hand instrument for calculus removal,
dental depth gauge instrumen
dental filling instrument, d
strument handle, surgical tis
sors, mouth mirror, orthodon
driver, orthodontic band pu
thodontic band setter, ort
bracket aligner, orthodontic p
thodontic ligature tucking ins
forceps, for articulation paper
for dental dressing, dental
band, matrix retainer, denta
tor, dental retractor accessori
dontic or endodontic irriga
ringe, and restorative or im
material syringe.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.4600 Intraoral ligature a lock.

(a) *Identification.* An intrao
ture and wire lock is a metal d
tended to constrict fractured b
ments in the oral cavity. The b
ments are stabilized by wrap
ligature (wire) around the f
bone segments and locking t
together.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4630 Dental operating light.

(a) *Identification.* A dental
ing light, including the surgic
light, is an AC-powered device
ed to illuminate oral structu
operating areas.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4730 Dental injecting needle.

(a) *Identification.* A dental i
needle is a slender, hollow
device with a sharp point inte
be attached to a syringe to inj
anesthetics and other drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.4760 Bone plate.

(a) *Identification.* A bone pl
metal device intended to stabili
tured bone structures in th
cavity. The bone segments
tached to the plate with screws
vent movement of the segments

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4840 Rotary scaler.

(a) *Identification.* A rotary s
an abrasive device intended to
tached to a powered handp

remove calculus deposits from teeth during dental cleaning and periodontal (gum) therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4850 Ultrasonic scaler.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasonic scaler is a device intended for use during dental cleaning and periodontal (gum) therapy to remove calculus deposits from teeth by application of an ultrasonic vibrating scaler tip to the teeth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4880 Intraosseous fixation screw or wire.

(a) *Identification.* An intraosseous fixation screw or wire is a metal device intended to be inserted into fractured jaw bone segments to prevent their movement.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.4920 Dental electrosurgical unit and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A dental electrosurgical unit and accessories is an AC-powered device consisting of a controlled power source and a set of cutting and coagulating electrodes. This device is intended to cut or remove soft tissue or to control bleeding during surgical procedures in the oral cavity. An electrical current passes through the tip of the electrode into the tissue and, depending upon the operating mode selected, cuts through soft tissue or coagulates the tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.5410 Orthodontic appliance and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An orthodontic appliance and accessories is a device intended for use in orthodontic treatment. The device is affixed to a tooth so that pressure can be exerted on the teeth. This device includes the preformed orthodontic band, orthodontic band material, orthodontic elastic band, orthodontic metal bracket, orthodontic wire clamp, preformed orthodontic space maintainer, orthodontic expansion screw retainer, orthodontic spring, orthodontic tube, and orthodontic wire.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.5470 Orthodontic plastic bracket.

(a) *Identification.* An orthodontic plastic bracket is a plastic device intended to be bonded to a tooth to apply pressure to a tooth from a flexible orthodontic wire to alter its position.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.5500 Extraoral orthodontic headgear.

(a) *Identification.* An extraoral orthodontic headgear is a device intended for use with an orthodontic appliance to exert pressure on the teeth from outside the mouth. The headgear has a strap intended to wrap around the patient's neck or head and an inner bow portion intended to be fastened to the orthodontic appliance in the patient's mouth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.5525 Preformed tooth positioner.

(a) *Identification.* A preformed tooth positioner is a plastic device that is an impression of a perfected bite intended to prevent a patient's teeth from shifting position or to move teeth to a final position after orthodontic appliances (braces) have been removed. The patient bites down on the device for several hours a day to force the teeth into a final position or to maintain the teeth in their corrected position.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.5550 Teething ring.

(a) *Identification.* A teething ring is a divice intended for use by infants for medical purposes to soothe gums during the teething process.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class I if the teething ring does not contain a fluid, such as water.

(2) Class II if the teething ring contains a fluid, such as water.

Subpart G—Miscellaneous Devices

§ 872.6010 Abrasive device and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An abrasive device and accessories is a device constructed of various abrasives, such as diamond chips, that are glued to shellac-based paper. The device is intended to remove excessive restorative materials, such as gold, and to smooth rough surfaces from oral restorations, such as crowns. The device is attached to a shank that is held by a handpiece. The device includes the abrasive disk, guard for an abrasive disk, abrasive point, polishing agent strip, and polishing wheel.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6030 Oral cavity abrasive polishing agent.

(a) *Identification.* An oral cavity abrasive polishing agent is a device in paste or powder form that contains an abrasive material, such as silica pumice, intended to remove debris from the teeth. The abrasive polish is applied to the teeth by a handpiece attachment (prophylaxis cup).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.6050 Saliva absorber.

(a) *Identification.* A saliva absorber is a device made of paper or cotton intended to absorb moisture from the oral cavity during dental procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6070 Ultraviolet activator for polymerization.

(a) *Identification.* An ultraviolet activator for polymerization is a device that produces ultraviolet radiation intended to polymerize (set) resinous dental pit and fissure sealants or restorative materials by transmission of light through a rod.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.6080 Airbrush.

(a) *Identification.* An airbrush is an AC-powered device intended for use in conjunction with articulation paper. The device uses air-driven particles to roughen the surfaces of dental restorations. Uneven areas of the restorations are then identified by use of articulation paper.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 872.3.

[52 FR 30097, Aug. 12, 1987; 52 FR 49256, Dec. 30, 1987]

§ 872.6100 Anesthetic warmer.

(a) *Identification.* An anesthetic warmer is an AC-powered device into which tubes containing anesthetic solution are intended to be placed to warm them prior to administration of the anesthetic.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.6140 Articulation paper.

(a) *Identification.* Articulation paper is a device composed of paper coated with an ink dye intended to be placed between the patient's upper and lower teeth when the teeth are in the bite position to locate uneven or high areas.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6200 Base plate shellac.

(a) *Identification.* Base plant shellac is a device composed of shellac intended to rebuild the occlusal rim of full or partial dentures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

best copy available

2.6290 Prophylaxis cup.

) *Identification.* A prophylaxis cup
device made of rubber intended to
held by a dental handpiece and
d to apply polishing agents during
phylaxis (cleaning). The dental
dpiece spins the rubber cup hold-
the polishing agent and the user
lies it to the teeth to remove
ris.

) *Classification.* Class I. If the
ce is not labeled or otherwise rep-
nted as sterile, it is exempt from
current good manufacturing prac-
regulations in Part 820, with the
eption of § 820.180, with respect to
eral requirements concerning
rds, and § 820.198, with respect to
plaint files.

2.6300 Rubber dam and accessories.

) *Identification.* A rubber dam and
essories is a device composed of a
sheet of latex with a hole in the
er intended to isolate a tooth from
ds in the mouth duing dental pro-
ures, such as filling a cavity prepa-
on. The device is stretched around
oth by inserting the tooth through
hole in the center. The device in-
es the rubber dam, rubber dam
np, rubber dam frame, and forceps
a rubber dam clamp.

) *Classification.* Class I. If the
ce is not labeled or otherwise rep-
nted as sterile, it is exempt from
current good manufacturing prac-
regulations in Part 820, with the
eption of § 820.180, with respect to
eral requirements concerning
rds, and § 820.198, with respect to
plaint files.

.6350 Ultraviolet detector.

) *Identification.* An ultraviolet de-
or is a device intended to provide a
ce of ultraviolet light which is
to identify otherwise invisible
erial, such as dental plaque,
ent in or on teeth.

) *Classification.* Class II.

.6390 Dental floss.

Identification. Dental floss is a
g-like device made of cotton or
r fibers intended to remove plaque
food particles from between the
to reduce tooth decay. The
fibers of the device may be coated with wax for easier use.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 872.6570 Impression tube.

(a) *Identification.* An impression tube is a device consisting of a hollow copper tube intended to take an impression of a single tooth. The hollow tube is filled with impression material. One end of the tube is sealed with a softened material, such as wax, the remaining end is slipped over the tooth to make the impression.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6650 Massaging pick or tip for oral hygiene.

(a) *Identification.* A massaging pick or tip for oral hygiene is a rigid, pointed device intended to be used manually to stimulate and massage the gums to promote good periodontal (gum) condition.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6660 Porcelain powder for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* Porcelain powder for clinical use is a device consisting of a mixture of kaolin, felspar, quartz, or other substances intended for use in the production of artificial teeth in fixed or removable dentures, of jacket crowns, facings, and veneers. The device is used in prosthetic dentistry by heating the powder mixture to a high temperature in an oven to produce a hard prosthesis with a glass-like finish.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.6670 Silicate protector.

(a) *Identification.* A silicate protector is a device made of silicone intended to be applied with an absorbent tipped applicator to the surface of a new restoration to exclude temporarily fluids from its surface.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6730 Endodontic dry heat sterilizer.

(a) *Identification.* An endodontic dry heat sterilizer is a device intended to sterilize endodontic and other dental instruments by the application of dry heat. The heat is supplied through glass beads which have been heated by electricity.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 872.3.

§ 872.6770 Cartridge syringe.

(a) *Identification.* A cartridge syringe is a device intended to inject anesthetic agents subcutaneously or intramuscularly. The device consists of a metal syringe body into which a disposable, previously filled, glass carpule (a cylindrical cartridge) containing anesthetic is placed. After attaching a needle to the syringe body and activating the carpule by partially inserting the plunger on the syringe, the device is used to administer an injection to the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 872.6855 Manual toothbrush.

(a) *Identification.* A manual toothbrush is a device composed of a shaft with either natural or synthetic bristles at one end intended to remove adherent plaque and food debris from the teeth to reduce tooth decay.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6870 Disposable flouride tray.

(a) *Identification.* A disposable fluoride tray is a device made of styrofoam intended to apply fluoride topically to the teeth. To use the tray, the patient bites down on the tray which has been filled with a fluoride solution.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6880 Preformed impression tray.

(a) *Identification.* A preformed impression tray is a metal or plastic device intended to hold impression material, such as alginate, to make an impression of a patient's teeth or alveolar process (bony tooth sockets) to reproduce the structure of a patient's teeth and gums.

(b *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 872.6890 Intraoral dental wax.

(a) *Identification.* Intraoral dental wax is a device made of wax intended to construct patterns from which custom made metal dental prostheses, such as crowns and bridges, are cast. In orthodontic dentistry, the device is intended to make a pattern of a patient's bite to make study models of the teeth.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

PART 874—EAR, NOSE, AND THROAT DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
874.1 Scope.
874.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.
874.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

874.1050 Audiometer.
874.1060 Acoustic chamber for audiometric testing.
874.1080 Audiometer calibration set.
874.1090 Auditory impedance tester.
874.1100 Earphone cushion for audiometric testing.
874.1120 Electronic noise generator for audiometric testing.
874.1325 Electroglottograph.
874.1500 Gustometer.
874.1820 Surgical nerve stimulator/locator.
874.1925 Toynbee diagnostic tube.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

874.3300 Hearing aid.
874.3310 Hearing aid calibrator and analysis system.
874.3320 Group hearing aid or group auditory trainer.
874.3330 Master hearing aid.
874.3375 Battery-powered artificial larynx.
874.3400 Tinnitus masker.
874.3430 Middle ear mold.
874.3450 Partial ossicular replacement prosthesis.
874.3495 Total ossicular replacement prosthesis.
874.3540 Prosthesis modification instrument for ossicular replacement surgery.
874.3620 Ear, nose, and throat synthetic polymer material.
874.3695 Mandibular implant facial prosthesis.
874.3730 Laryngeal prosthesis (Taub design).
874.3760 Sacculotomy tack (Cody tack).
874.3820 Endolymphatic shunt.
874.3850 Endolymphatic shunt tube with valve.
874.3880 Tympanostomy tube.
874.3930 Tympanostomy tube with semipermeable membrane.

Sec.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

874.4100 Epistaxis balloon.
874.4140 Ear, nose, and throat bur.
874.4175 Nasopharyngeal catheter.
874.4250 Ear, nose, and throat electric or pneumatic surgical drill.
874.4350 Ear, nose, and throat fiberoptic light source and carrier.
874.4420 Ear, nose, and throat manual surgical instrument.
874.4490 Microsurgical argon laser.
874.4500 Ear, nose, and throat microsurgical carbon dioxide laser.
874.4680 Bronchoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories.
874.4710 Esophagoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories.
874.4720 Mediastinoscope and accessories.
874.4760 Nasopharyngoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

874.5220 Ear, nose, and throat drug administration device.
874.5350 Suction antichoke device.
874.5370 Tongs antichoke device.
874.5800 External nasal splint.
874.5840 Antistammering device.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 51 FR 40339, Nov. 6, 1986, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 874.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of ear, nose, and throat devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 cannot show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provision of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, an ear, nose, and throat device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed in one subpart only.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 874.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

§ 874.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

FDA's decision to grant an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification (section 510(k) of the act) for a generic type of class I device is based upon the existing and reasonably foreseeable characteristics of commercially distributed devices within that generic type. Because FDA cannot anticipate every change in intended use or characteristic that could significantly affect a device's safety or effectiveness, manufacturers of any commercially distributed class I device for which FDA has granted an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification must still submit a premarket notification to FDA before introducing or delivering for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution the device when:

(a) The device is intended for a use different from its intended use before May 28, 1976, or the device is intended for a use different from the intended use of a preamendments device to which it had been determined to be substantially equivalent; e.g., the device is intended for a different medical purpose, or the device is intended for lay use where the former intended use was by health care professionals only; or

(b) The modified device operates using a different fundamental scientific technology than that in use in the device before May 28, 1976; e.g., a surgical instrument cuts tissue with a laser beam rather than with a sharpened metal blade, or an in vitro diagnostic device detects or identifies infectious agents by using a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) probe or nucleic acid hybridization technology rather than culture or immunoassay technology.

[52 FR 32111, Aug. 25, 1987]

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 874.1050 Audiometer.

(a) *Identification.* An audiometer or automated audiometer is an electroacoustic device that produces controlled levels of test tones and signals intended for use in conducting diagnostic hearing evaluations and assisting in the diagnosis of possible otologic disorders.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.1060 Acoustic chamber for audiometric testing.

(a) *Identification.* An acoustic chamber for audiometric testing is a room that is intended for use in conducting diagnostic hearing evaluations and that eliminates sound reflections and provides isolation from outside sounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 874.1080 Audiometer calibration set.

(a) *Identification.* An audiometer calibration set is an electronic reference device that is intended to calibrate an audiometer. It measures the sound frequency and intensity characteristics that emanate from an audiometer earphone. The device consists of an acoustic cavity of known volume, a sound level meter, a microphone with calibration traceable to the National Bureau of Standards, oscillators, frequency counters, microphone amplifiers, and a recorder. The device can measure selected audiometer test frequencies at a given intensity level, and selectable audiometer attenuation settings at a given test frequency.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.1090 Auditory impedance tester.

(a) *Identification.* An auditory impedance tester is a device that is intended to change the air pressure in the external auditory canal and measure and graph the mobility characteristics of the tympanic membrane to evaluate the functional condition of the middle ear. The device is used to determine abnormalities in the mobility of the tympanic membrane due to stiffness, flaccidity, or the presence of fluid in the middle ear cavity. The device is also used to measure the acoustic reflex threshold from contractions of the stapedial muscle, to monitor healing of tympanic membrane grafts or stapedectomies, or to monitor followup treatment for inflammation of the middle ear.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.1100 Earphone cushion for audiometric testing.

(a) *Identification.* An earphone cushion for audiometric testing is a device that is used to cover an audiometer earphone during audiometric testing to provide an acoustic coupling (sound connection path) between the audiometer earphone and the patient's ear.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, it is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[51 FR 40389, Nov. 9, 1986; 52 FR 18495, May 15, 1987, as amended at 52 FR 32111, Aug. 25, 1987]

§ 874.1120 Electronic noise generator for audiometric testing.

(a) *Identification.* An electronic noise generator for audiometric testing is a device that consists of a swept frequency generator, an amplifier, and an earphone. It is intended to introduce a masking noise into the non-test ear during an audiometric evaluation. The device minimizes the non-test ear's sensing of test tones and signals being generated for the ear being tested.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.1325 Electroglottograph.

(a) *Identification.* An electroglottograph is an AC-powered device that employs a pair of electrodes that are placed in contact with the skin on both sides of the larynx and held in place by a collar. It is intended to measure the electrical impedance of the larynx to aid in assessing the degree of closure of the vocal cords, confirm larygeal diagnosis, aid behavioral treatment of voice disorders, and aid research concerning the laryngeal mechanism.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.1500 Gustometer.

(a) *Identification.* A gustometer is a battery-powered device that consists of two electrodes that are intended to be placed on both sides of the tongue at different taste centers and that provides a galvanic stimulus resulting in taste sensation. It is used for assessing the sense of taste.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180 with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198 with respect to complaint files.

§ 874.1820 Surgical nerve stimulator/locator.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical nerve stimulator/locator is a device that is intended to provide electrical stimulation to the body to locate and identify nerves and to test their excitability.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.1925 Toynbee diagnostic tube.

(a) *Identification.* The toynbee diagnostic tube is a listening device intended to determine the degree of openness of the eustachian tube.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

§ 874.3300 Hearing Aid.

(a) *Identification.* A hearing aid is wearable sound-amplifying device that is intended to compensate for impaired hearing. This generic type of device includes the air-conduction hearing aid and the bone-conduction hearing aid, but excludes the group hearing aid or group auditory trainer (§ 874.3320), master hearing aid (§ 874.3330), and tinnitus masker (§ 874.3400).

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class I for the air-conduction hearing aid. (2) Class II for the bone-conduction hearing aid.

§ 874.3310 Hearing aid calibrator and analysis system.

(a) *Identification.* A hearing aid calibrator and analysis system is an electronic reference device intended to calibrate and assess the electroacoustic frequency and sound intensity characteristics emanating from a hearing aid, master hearing aid, group hearing aid or group auditory trainer. The device consists of an acoustic complex of known cavity volume, a sound level meter, a microphone, oscillators, frequency counters, microphone amplifiers, a distoration analyzer, a chart recorder, and a hearing aid test box.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3320 Group hearing aid or group auditory trainer.

(a) *Identification.* A group hearing aid or group auditory trainer is a hearing aid that is intended for use in communicating simultaneously with one or more listeners having hearing impairment. The device is used with an associated transmitter microphone. It may be either monaural or binaural, and it provides coupling to the ear through either earphones or earmolds. The generic type of device includes three types of applications: hardwire systems, inductance loop systems, and wireless systems.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3330 Master hearing aid.

(a) *Identification.* A master hearing aid is an electronic device intended to simulate a hearing aid during audiometric testing. It has adjustable acoustic output levels, such as those for gain, output, and frequency response. The device is used to select and adjust a person's wearable hearing aid.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3375 Battery-powered artificial larynx.

(a) *Identification.* A battery-powered artificial larynx is an externally applied device intended for use in the absence of the larynx to produce sound. When held against the skin in the area of the voicebox, the device generates mechanical vibrations which resonate in the oral and nasal cavities and can be modulated by the tongue and lips in a normal manner, thereby allowing the production of speech.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180 with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 874.3400 Tinnitus masker.

(a) *Identification.* A tinnitus masker is an electronic device intended to generate noise of sufficient intensity and bandwidth to mask ringing in the ears or internal head noises. Because the device is able to mask internal noises, it is also used as an aid in hearing external noises and speech.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 874.3.

§ 874.3430 Middle ear mold.

(a) *Identification.* A middle ear mold is a preformed device that is intended to be implanted to reconstruct the middle ear cavity during repair of the tympanic membrane. The device permits an ample air-filled cavity to be maintained in the middle ear and promotes regeneration of the mucous membrane lining of the middle ear cavity. A middle ear mold is made of materials such as polyamide, polytetrafluoroethylene, silicone elastomer, or polyethylene, but does not contain porous polyethylene.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3450 Partial ossicular replacement prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A partial ossicular replacement prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted for the functional reconstruction of segments of the ossicular chain and facilitates the conduction of sound wave from the tympanic membrane to the inner ear. The device is made of materials such as stainless steel, tantalum, polytetrafluoroethylene, polyethylene, polytetrafluoroethylene with carbon fibers composite, absorbable gelatin material, porous polyethylene, or from a combination of these materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3495 Total ossicular replacement prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A total ossicular replacement prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted for the total functional reconstruction of the ossicular chain and facilitates the conduction of sound waves from the tympanic membrane to the inner ear. The device is made of materials such as polytetrafluoroethylene, polytetrafluoroethylene with vitreous carbon fibers composite, porous polyethylene, or from a combination of these materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3540 Prosthesis modification instrument for ossicular replacement surgery.

(a) *Identification.* A prosthesis modification instrument for ossicular replacement surgery is a device intended for use by a surgeon to construct ossicular replacements. This generic type of device includes the ear, nose, and throat cutting block; wire crimper, wire bending die; wire closure forceps; piston cutting jib; gelfoam ™ punch; wire cutting scissors; and ossicular finger vise.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, it is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[51 FR 40389, Nov. 9, 1986, as amended at 52 FR 32111, Aug. 25, 1987]

§ 874.3620 Ear, nose, and throat synthetic polymer material.

(a) *Identification.* Ear, nose, and throat synthetic polymer material is a device material that is intended to be implanted for use as a space-occupying substance in the reconstructive surgery of the head and neck. The device is used, for example, in augmentation rhinoplasty and in tissue defect closures in the esophagus. The device is shaped and formed by the suregon to conform to the patient's needs. This generic type of device is made of material such as polyamide mesh or foil and porous polyethylene.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3695 Mandibular implant facial prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A mandibular implant facial prosthesis is a device that is intended to be implanted for use in the functional reconstruction of mandibular deficits. The device is made of materials such as stainless steel, tantalum, titanium, cobalt-chromium based alloy, polytetrafluoroethylene, silicone elastomer, polyethylene, polyurethane, or polytetrafluoroethylene with carbon fibers composite.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3730 Laryngeal prosthesis (Taub design).

(a) *Identification.* A laryngeal prosthesis (Taub design) is a device intended to direct pulmonary air flow to the pharynx in the absence of the larynx, thereby permitting esophageal speech. The device is interposed between openings in the trachea and the esophagus and may be removed and replaced each day by the patient. During phonation, air from the lungs is directed to flow through the device and over the esophageal mucosa to provide a sound source that is articulated as speech.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3760 Sacculotomy tack (Cody tack).

(a) *Identification.* A sacculotomy tack (Cody tack) is a device that consists of a pointed stainless steel tack intended to be implanted to relieve the symptoms of vertigo. The device repetitively ruptures the utricular membrane as the membrane expands under increased endolymphatic pressure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3820 Endolymphatic shunt.

(a) *Identification.* An endolymphatic shunt is a device that consists of a tube or sheet intended to be implanted to relieve the symptons of vertigo. The device permits the unrestricted flow of excess endolymph from the distended end of the endolymphatic system into the mastoid cavity where resorption occurs. This device is made of polytetrafluoroethylene or silicone elastomer.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3850 Endolymphatic shunt tube with valve.

(a) *Identification.* An endolymphatic shunt tube with valve is a device that consists of a pressure-limiting valve associated with a tube intended to be implanted in the inner ear to relieve the symptoms of vertigo. The device directs excess endolymph from the distended end of the endolymphatic system into the mastoid cavity where resorption occurs. The function of the pressure-limiting inner ear valve is to impede the flow of endolymph so that a physiologically normal endolymphatic pressure is maintained. The device is made of silicone elastomer and polyamide and contains gold radiopaque markers within the silicone elastomer sheath.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 874.3.

§ 874.3880 Tympanostomy tube.

(a) *Identification.* A tympanostomy tube is a device that is intended to be implanted for ventilation or drainage of the middle ear. The device is inserted through the tympanic membrane to permit a free exchange of air between the outer ear and middle ear. A type of tympanostomy tube known as the malleous clip tube attaches to the malleous to provide middle ear ventilation. The device is made of materials such as polytetrafluoroethylene, polyethylene, silicon elastomer, or porous polyethylene.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.3930 Tympanostomy tube with semipermeable membrane.

(a) *Identification.* A tympanostomy tube with a semipermeable membrane is a device intended to be implanted for ventilation or drainage of the middle ear and for preventing fluids from entering the middle ear cavity. The device is inserted through the tympanic membrane to permit a free exchange of air between the outer ear and middle ear. The tube portion of the device is made of silicone elastomer or porous polyethylene, and the membrane portion is made of polytetrafluoroethylene.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 874.3.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

§ 874.4100 Epistaxis balloon.

(a) *Identification.* An epistaxis balloon is a device consisting of an inflatable balloon intended to control internal nasal bleeding by exerting pressure against the sphenopalatine artery.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 874.4140 Ear, nose, and throat bur.

(a) *Identification.* An ear, nose, and throat bur is a device consisting of an interchangeable drill bit that is intended for use in an ear, nose, and throat electric or pneumatic surgical drill (§ 874.4250) for incising or removing bone in the ear, nose, or throat area. The bur consists of a carbide cutting tip on a metal shank or a coating of diamond on a metal shank. The device is used in mastoid surgery, frontal sinus surgery, and surgery of the facial nerves.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 874.4175 Nasopharyngeal catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A nasopharyngeal catheter is a device consisting of a bougie or filiform catheter that is intended for use in probing or dilating the eustachian tube. This generic type of device includes eustachian catheters.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 874.4250 Ear, nose, and throat electric or pneumatic surgical drill.

(a) *Identification.* An ear, nose, and throat electric or pneumatic surgical drill is a rotating drilling device, including the handpiece, that is intended to drive various accessories, such as an ear, nose, and throat bur (§ 874.4140), for the controlled incision or removal of bone in the ear, nose, and throat area.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.4350 Ear, nose, and throat fiberoptic light source and carrier.

(a) *Identification.* An ear, nose, and throat fiberoptic light source and carrier is an AC-powered device that generates and transmits light through glass of plastic fibers and that is intended to provide illumination at the tip of an ear, nose, or throat endoscope. Endoscopic devices which utilize fiberoptic light sources and carriers include the bronchoscope, esophagoscope, laryngoscope, mediastinoscope, laryngeal-bronchial telescope, and nasopharyngoscope.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.4420 Ear, nose, and throat manual surgical instrument.

(a) *Identification.* An ear, nose, and throat manual surgical instrument is one of a variety of devices intended for use in surgical procedures to examine or treat the bronchus, esophagus, trachea, larynx, pharynx, nasal and paranasal sinus, or ear. This generic type of device includes the esophageal dilator; tracheal bistour (a long, narrow surgical knife); tracheal dilator; tracheal hook; laryngeal injection set; laryngeal knife; laryngeal saw; laryngeal trocar; laryngectomy tube, adenoid curette; adenotome; metal tongue depressor; mouth gag; oral screw; salpingeal curette; tonsillectome; tonsil guillotine; tonsil screw; tonsil snare; tonsil suction tub; tonsil suturing hook; antom reforator; ethmoid curette; frontal sinus-rasp; nasal curette; nasal rasp; nasal rongeur; nasal saw; nasal scissors; nasal snare; sinus irrigator; sinus trephine; ear curette; ear excavator; ear rasp; ear scissor, ear snare; ear spoon; ear suction tub; malleous ripper; mastoid gauge; microsurgical ear chisel; myringotomy tube inserter; ossici holding clamp; sacculotomy tack inserter; vein press; wire ear loop; microrule; mirror; mobilizer; ear, nose, and throat punch; ear, nose and throat knife; and ear, nose, and throat trocar.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, it is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[51 FR 40389, Nov. 9, 1986, as amended at 52 FR 32111, Aug. 25, 1987]

§ 874.4490 Microsurgical argon laser.

(a) *Microsurgical argon laser for use in otology*—(1) *Identification.* A microsurgical argon laser for use in otology is a device intended to cut, destroy, or alter tissue or bone of the ear using laser light energy.

(2) *Classification.* Class II.

(b) *Microsurgical argon laser for all other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A microsurgical argon laser for all other uses, including use in laryngology and general use in otolaryngology, is a device that is intended to cut, destroy, or alter tissue.

(2) *Classification.* Class III.

(3) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before the device identified in paragraph (b) may be commercially distributed. See § 874.3.

§ 874.4500 Ear, nose, and throat microsurgical carbon dioxide laser.

(a) *Identification.* An ear, nose, and throat microsurgical carbon dioxide laser is a device intended for the surgical excision of tissue from the ear, nose, and throat area. The device is used, for example, in microsurgical procedures to excise lesions and tumors of the vocal cords and adjacent areas.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.4680 Bronchoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A bronchoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories is a tubular endoscopic device with any of a group of accessory devices which attach to the bronchoscope and is intended to examine or treat the larynx and tracheobronchial tree. It is typically used with a fiberoptic light source and carrier to provide illumination. The device is made of materials such as stainless steel or flexible plastic. This generic type of device includes the rigid ventilating bronchoscope, rigid nonventilating bronchoscope, nonrigid bronchoscope, laryngeal-bronchial telescope, flexible foreign body claw, bronchoscope tubing, flexible biopsy forceps, rigid biopsy curette, flexible biopsy brush, rigid biopsy forceps, flexible biopsy curette, and rigid bronchoscope aspirating tube, but excludes the fiberoptic light source and carrier.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.4710 Esophagoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An esophagoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories is a tubular endoscopic device with any of a group of accessory devices which attach to the esophagoscope and is intended to examine or treat esophageal malfunction symptoms, esophageal or mediastinal disease, or to remove foreign bodies from the esophagus. When inserted, the device extends from the area of the hypopharynx to the stomach. It is typically used with a fiberoptic light source and carrier to provide illumination. The device is made of materials such as stainless steel or flexible plastic. This generic type of device includes the flexible foreign body claw, flexible biopsy forceps, rigid biopsy curette, flexible biopsy brush, rigid biopsy forceps and flexible biopsy curette, but excludes the fiberoptic light source and carrier.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.4720 Mediastinoscope and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A mediastinoscope and accessories is a tubular tapered electrical endoscopic device with any of a group of accessory devices which attach to the mediastinoscope and is intended to examine or treat tissue in the area separating the lungs. The device is inserted transthoracicly and is used in diagnosis of tumors and lesions and to determine whether excision of certain organs or tissues is indicated. It is typically used with a fiberoptic light source and carrier to provide illumination. The device is made of materials such as stainless steel. This generic type of device includes the flexible foreign body claw, flexible biopsy forceps, rigid biopsy curette, flexible biopsy brush, rigid biopsy forceps, and flexible biopsy curette, but excludes the fiberoptic light source and carrier.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 874.4760 Nasopharyngoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A nasopharyngoscope (flexible or rigid) and accessories is a tubular endoscopic device with any of a group of accessory devices which attach to the nasopharyngoscope and is intended to examine or treat the nasal cavity and nasal pharynx. It is typically used with a fiberoptic light source and carrier to provide illumination. The device is made of materials such as stainless steel and flexible plastic. This generic type of device includes the antroscope, nasopharyngolaryngoscope, nasosinuscope, nasoscope, postrhinoscope, rhinoscope, salpingoscope, flexible foreign body claw, flexible biopsy forceps, rigid biopsy curette, flexible biospy brush, rigid biopsy forceps and flexible biopsy curette, but excludes the fiberoptic light source and carrier.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

§ 874.5220 Ear, nose, and throat drug administration device.

(a) *Identification.* An ear, nose, and throat drug administration device is one of a group of ear, nose, and throat devices intended specifically to administer medicinal substances to treat ear, nose, and throat disorders. These instruments include the powder blower, dropper, ear wick, manual nebulizer pump, and nasal inhaler.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 874.5350 Suction antichoke device.

(a) *Identification.* A suction antichoke device is a device intended to be used in an emergency situation to remove, by the application of suction, foreign objects that obstruct a patient's airway to prevent asphyxiation to the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice or completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 874.3.

§ 874.5370 Tongs antichoke device.

(a) *Identification.* A tongs antichoke device is a device that is intended to be used in an emergency situation to grasp and remove foreign objects that obstruct a patient's airway to prevent asphyxiation of the patient. This generic type of device includes a plastic instrument with serrated ends that is inserted into the airway in a blind manner to grasp and extract foreign objects, and a stainless steel forceps with spoon ends that is inserted under tactile guidance to grasp and extract foreign objects from the airway.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* A No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 874.3.

§ 874.5800 External nasal splint.

(a) *Identification.* An external nasal splint is a rigid or partially rigid device intended for use externally for immobilization of parts of the nose.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, it is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

[51 FR 40389, Nov. 9, 1986, as amended at 52 FR 32111, Aug. 25, 1987]

§ 874.5840 Antistammering device.

(a) *Identification.* An antistammering device is a device that electronically generates a noise when activated or when it senses the user's speech and that is intended to prevent the user from hearing the sounds of his or her own voice. The device is used to minimize a user's involuntary hesitative or repetitive speech.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

PART 876—GASTROENTEROLOGY-UROLOGY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

876.1 Scope.
876.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

876.1075 Gastroenterology-urology biopsy instrument.
876.1400 Stomach pH electrode.
876.1500 Endoscope and accessories.
876.1620 Urodynamics measurement system.
876.1725 Gastrointestinal motility monitoring system.
876.1800 Urine flow or volume measuring system.

Subpart C—Monitoring Devices

876.2040 Enuresis alarm.

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

876.3350 Penile inflatable implant.
876.3630 Penile rigidity implant.
876.3750 Testicular prosthesis.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

876.4020 Fiberoptic light ureteral catheter.
876.4270 Colostomy rod.
876.4300 Endoscopic electrosurgical unit and accessories.
876.4370 Gastroenterology-urology evacuator.

Sec.

876.4400 Hemorrhoidal ligator.
876.4480 Electrohydraulic lithotriptor.
876.4500 Mechanical lithotriptor.
876.4530 Gastroenterology-urology fiberoptic retractor.
876.4560 Ribdam.
876.4590 Interlocking urethral sound.
876.4620 Ureteral stent.
876.4650 Water jet renal stone dislodger system.
876.4680 Ureteral stone dislodger.
876.4730 Manual gastroenterology-urology surgical instrument and accessories.
876.4770 Urethrotome.
876.4890 Urological table and accessories.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

876.5010 Biliary catheter and accessories.
876.5030 Continent ileostomy catheter.
876.5090 Suprapubic urological catheter and accessories.
876.5130 Urological catheter and accessories.
876.5160 Urological clamp for males.
876.5210 Enema kit.
876.5220 Colonic irrigation system.
876.5250 Urine collector and accessories.
876.5270 Implanted electrical urinary continence device.
876.5280 Implanted mechanical/hydraulic urinary continence device.
876.5320 Nonimplanted electrical continence device.
876.5365 Esophageal dilator.
876.5450 Rectal dilator.
876.5470 Ureteral dilator.
876.5520 Urethral dilator.
876.5540 Blood access device and accessories.
876.5600 Sorbent regenarated dialysate delivery system for hemodialysis.
876.5630 Peritoneal dialysis system and accessories.
876.5665 Water purification system for hemodialysis.
876.5820 Hemodialysis system and accessories.
876.5830 Hemodialyzer with disposable insert (Kiil type).
876.5860 High permeability hemodialysis system.
876.5870 Sorbent hemoperfusion system.
876.5880 Isolated kidney perfusion and transport system and accessories.
876.5895 Ostomy irrigator.
876.5900 Ostomy pouch and accessories.
876.5920 Protective garment for incontinence.
876.5955 Peritoneo-venous shunt.
876.5970 Hernia support.
876.5980 Gastrointestinal tube and accessories.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as

nended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574,
76-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e,
60j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

Source: 48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, unless
therwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

876.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classifi-
ation of gastroenterology-urology de-
ices intended for human use that are
commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a
egulation in this part is not a precise
escription of every device that is, or
ill be, subject to the regulation. A
anufacturer who submits a premar-
et notification submission for a
evice under Part 807 may not show
erely that the device is accurately
escribed by the section title and iden-
fication provisions of a regulation in
his part, but shall state why the
evice is substantially equivalent to
ther devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a
astroenterology-urology device that
as two or more types of uses (e.g.,
sed both as a diagnostic device and as
therapeutic device) is listed only in
ne subpart.

(d) References in this part to regula-
ory sections of the Code of Federal
egulations are to Chapter I of Title
1, unless otherwise noted.

52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987; 52 FR 22577,
une 12, 1987]

**876.3 Effective dates of requirement for
premarket approval.**

A device included in this part that is
lassified into class III (premarket ap-
roval) shall not be commercially dis-
ributed after the date shown in the
egulation classifying the device unless
he manufacturer has an approval
nder section 515 of the act (unless an
xemption has been granted under
ection 520(g)(2) of the act). An ap-
roval under section 515 of the act
onsists of FDA's issuance of an order
pproving an application for premar-
et approval (PMA) for the device or
eclaring completed a product devel-
pment protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a
evice commercially distributed before
ne enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commerically distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17737, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 876.1075 Gastroenterology-urology biopsy instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A gastroenterology-urology biopsy instrument is a device used to remove, by cutting or aspiration, a specimen of tissue for microscopic examination. This generic type of device includes the biopsy punch, gastrointestinal mechanical biopsy instrument, suction biopsy instrument, gastro-urology biopsy needle and needle set, and nonelectric biopsy forceps. This section does not apply to biopsy instruments that have specialized uses in other medical specialty areas and that are covered by classification regulations in other parts of the device classification regulations.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.1400 Stomach pH electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A stomach pH electrode is a device used to measure intragastric and intraesophageal pH (hydrogen ion concentration). The pH electrode is at the end of a flexible lead which may be inserted into the esophagus or stomach through the patient's mouth. The device may include an integral gastrointestinal tube.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.1500 Endoscope and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An endoscope and accessories is a device used to provide access, illumination, and allow observation or manipulation of body cavities, hollow organs, and canals. The device consists of various rigid or flexible instruments that are inserted into body spaces and may include an optical system for conveying an image to the user's eye and their accessories may assist in gaining access or increase the versatility and augment the capabilities of the devices. Examples of devices that are within this generic type of device include cleaning accessories for endoscopes, photographic accessories for endoscopes, nonpowered anoscopes, binolcular attachments for endoscopes, pocket battery boxes, flexible or rigid choledochoscopes, colonoscopes, diagnostic cystoscopes, cystourethroscopes, enteroscopes, esophagogastroduodenoscopes, rigid esophagoscopes, fiberoptic illuminators for endoscopes, incandescent endoscope lamps, biliary pancreatoscopes, proctoscopes, resectoscopes, nephroscopes, sigmoidoscopes, ureteroscopes, urethroscopes, endomagnetic retrievers, cytology brushes for endoscopes, and lubricating jelly for transurethral surgical instruments. This section does not apply to endoscopes that have specialized uses in other medical specialty areas and that are covered by classification regulations in other parts of the device classification regulations.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.1620 Urodynamics measurement system.

(a) *Identification.* A urodynamics measurement system is a device used to measure volume and pressure in the urinary bladder when it is filled through a catheter with carbon dioxide or water. The device controls the supply of carbon dioxide or water and may also record the electrical activity of the muscles associated with urination. The device system may include transducers, electronic signal conditioning and display equipment, a catheter withdrawal device to enable a urethral pressure profile to be obtained, and special catheters for urethral profilometry and electrodes for electromyography. This generic type of device includes the cystometric gas (carbon dioxide) device, the cystometric hydrualic device, and the electrical recording cystometer, but excludes any device that uses air to fill the bladder.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.1725 Gastrointestinal motility monitoring system.

(a) *Identification.* A gastrointestinal motility monitoring system is a device used to measure peristalic activity or pressure in the stomach or esophagus by means of a probe with transducers that is introduced through the mouth into the gastrointestinal tract. The device may include signal conditioning, amplifying, and recording equipment. This generic type of device includes the esophageal motility monitor and tube, the gastrointestinal motility (electrical) system, and certain accessories, such as a pressure transducer, amplifier, and external recorder.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.1800 Urine flow or volume measuring system.

(a) *Identification.* A urine flow or volume measuring system is a device that measures directly or indirectly the volume or flow of urine from a patient, either during the course of normal urination or while the patient is catheterized. The device may include a drip chamber to reduce the risk of retrograde bacterial contamination of the bladder and a transducer and electrical signal conditioning and display equipment. This generic type of device includes the electrical urinometer, mechanical urinometer, nonelectric urinometer, disposable nonelectric urine flow rate measuring device, and uroflowmeter.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart C—Monitoring Devices

§ 876.2040 Enuresis alarm.

(a) *Identification.* An enuresis alarm is a device intended for use in treatment of bedwetting. Through an electrical trigger mechanism, the device sounds an alarm when a small quantity of urine is detected on a sensing pad. This generic type of device includes conditioned response enuresis alarms.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

§ 876.3350 Penile inflatable implant.

(a) *Identification.* A penile inflatable implant is a device that consists of two inflatable cylinders implanted in the penis, connected to a reservoir filled with radiopaque fluid implanted in the abdomen, and a subcutaneous manual pump implanted in the scrotum. When the cylinders are inflated, they provide rigidity to the penis. This device is used in the treatment of erectile impotence.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.3630 Penile rigidity implant.

(a) *Identification.* A penile rigidity implant is a device that consists of a single semi-rigid rod or a pair of semi-rigid rods implanted in the penis to provide rigidity. It is used in the treatment of erectile impotence.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (permarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.3750 Testicular prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A testicular prosthesis is an implanted device that consists of a solid or gel-filled silicone rubber prosthesis that is implanted surgically to resemble a testicle.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

§ 876.4020 Fiberoptic light ureteral catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A fiberoptic light ureteral catheter is a device that consists of a fiberoptic bundle that emits light throughout its length and is shaped so that it can be inserted into the ureter to enable the path of the ureter to be seen during lower abdominal or pelvic surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4270 Colostomy rod.

(a) *Identification.* A colostomy rod is a device used during the loop colostomy procedure. A loop of colon is surgically brought out through the abdominal wall and the stiff colostomy rod is placed through the loop temporarily to keep the colon from slipping back through the surgical opening.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4300 Endoscopic electrosurgical unit and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An endoscopic electrosurgical unit and accessories is a device used to perform electrosurgical procedures through an endoscope. This generic type of device includes the electrosurgical generator, patient plate, electric biopsy forceps, electrode, flexible snare, electrosurgical alarm system, electrosurgical power supply unit, electrical clamp, self-opening rigid snare, flexible suction coagulator electrode, patient return wristlet, contact jelly, adaptor to the cord for transurethral surgical instruments, the electric cord for transurethral surgical instruments, and the transurethral desiccator.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4370 Gastroenterology-urology evacuator.

(a) *Identification.* A gastroenterology-urology evacuator is a device used to remove debris and fluids during gastroenterological and urological procedures by drainage, aspiration, or irrigation. This generic type of device includes the fluid evacuator system, manually powered bladder evacuator, and the AC-powered vacuum pump.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II (performance standards) for the gastroenterology-urology evacuator when other than manually powered.

(2) Class I (general controls) for the gastroenterology-urology evacuator when manually powered.

§ 876.4400 Hemorrhoidal ligator.

(a) *Identification.* A hemorrhoidal ligator is a device used to cut off the blood flow to hemorrhoidal tissue by means of a ligature or band placed around the hemorrhoid.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4480 Electrohydraulic lithotriptor.

(a) *Identification.* An electrohydraulic lithotriptor is an AC-powered device used to fragment urinary bladder stones. It consists of a high voltage source connected by a cable to a bipolar electrode that is introduced into the urinary bladder through a cystoscope. The electrode is held against the stone in a water-filled bladder and repeated electrical discharges between the two poles of the electrode cause electrohydraulic shock waves which disintegrate the stone.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.4500 Mechanical lithotriptor.

(a) *Identification.* A mechanical lithotriptor is a device with steel jaws that is inserted into the urinary bladder through the urethra to grasp and crush bladder stones.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4530 Gastroenterology-urology fiberoptic retractor.

(a) *Identification.* A gastroenterology-urology fiberoptic retractor is a device that consists of a mechanical retractor with a fiberoptic light system that is used to illuminate deep surgical sites.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 876.4560 Ribdam.

(a) *Identification.* A ribdam is a device that consists of a broad strip of latex with supporting ribs used to drain surgical wounds where copious urine drainage is expected.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 876.4590 Interlocking urethal sound.

(a) *Identification.* An interlocking urethral sound is a device that consists of two metal sounds (elongated instruments for exploring or sounding body cavities) with interlocking ends, such as with male and female threads or a rounded point and mating socket, used in the repair of a ruptured urethra. The device may include a protective cap to fit over the metal threads.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4620 Ureteral stent.

(a) *Identification.* A ureteral stent is a tube-like implanted device that is inserted into the ureter to provide ureteral rigidity and allow the passage of urine. The device may have finger-like protrusions or hooked ends to keep the tube in place. It is used in the treatment of ureteral injuries and ureteral obstruction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4650 Water jet renal stone dislodger system.

(a) *Identification.* A water jet renal stone dislodger system is a device used to dislodge stones from renal calyces (recesses of the pelvis of the kidney) by means of a pressurized stream of water through a conduit. The device is used in the surgical removal of kidney stones.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4680 Ureteral stone dislodger.

(a) *Identification.* A ureteral stone dislodger is a device that consists of a bougie or a catheter with an expandable wire basket near the tip, a special flexible tip, or other special construction. It is inserted through a cystoscope and used to entrap and remove stones from the ureter. This generic type of device includes the metal basket and the flexible ureteral stone dislodger.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4730 Manual gastroenterology-urology surgical instrument and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A manual gastroenterology-urology surgical instrument and accessories is a device designed to be used for gastroenterological and urological surgical procedures. The device may be nonpowered, handheld, or hand-manipulated. Manual gastroenterology-urology surgical instruments include the biopsy forceps cover, biopsy tray without biopsy instruments, line clamp, nonpowered rectal probe, nonelectrical clamp, colostomy spur-crushers, locking device for intestinal clamp, needle holder, gastro-urology hook, gastro-urology probe and director, nonself-retaining retractor, laparotomy rings, nonelectrical snare, rectal specula, bladder neck spreader, self-retaining retractor, and scoop.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 876.4770 Urethrotome.

(a) *Identification.* A urethrotome is a device that is inserted into the urethra and used to cut urethral strictures and enlarge the urethra. It is a metal instrument equipped with a dorsal-fin cutting blade which can be elevated from its sheath. Some urethrotomes incorporate an optical channel for visual control.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.4890 Urological table and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A urological table and accessories is a device that consists of a table, stirrups, and belts used to support a patient in a suitable position for endoscopic procedures of the lower urinary tract. The table can be adjusted into position manually or electrically.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II (performance standards) for the electrically powered urological table and accessories.

(2) Class I (general controls) for the manually powered urological table and accessories.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

§ 876.5010 Biliary catheter and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A biliary catheter and accessories is a tubular flexible device used for temporary or prolonged drainage of the biliary tract, for splinting of the bile duct during healing, or for preventing stricture of the bile duct. This generic type of device may include a bile collecting bag that is attached to the biliary catheter by a connector and fastened to the patient with a strap.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5030 Continent ileostomy catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A continent ileostomy catheter is a flexible tubular device used as a form during surgery for continent ileostomy and it provides drainage after surgery. Additionally, the device may be inserted periodically by the patient for routine care to empty the ileal pouch. This generic type of device includes the rectal catheter for continent ileostomy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 876.5090 Suprapubic urological catheter and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A suprapubic urological catheter and accessories is a flexible tubular device that is inserted through the abdominal wall into the urinary bladder with the aid of a trocar and cannula. The device is used to pass fluids to and from the urinary tract. This generic type of device includes the suprapubic catheter and tube, Malecot catheter, catheter punch instrument, suprapubic drainage tube, and the suprapubic cannula and trocar.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5130 Urological catheter and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A urological catheter and accessories is a flexible tubular device that is inserted through the urethra and used to pass fluids to or from the urinary tract. This generic type of device includes radiopaque urological catheters, ureteral catheters, urethral catheters, coudé catheters, balloon retention type catheters, straight catheters, upper urinary tract catheters, double lumen female urethrographic catheters, disposable ureteral catheters, male urethrographic catheters, and urological catheter accessories including ureteral catheter stylets, ureteral catheter adapters, ureteral catheter holders, ureteral catheter stylets, ureteral catheterization trays, and the gastro-urological irrigation tray (for urological use).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5160 Urological clamp for males.

(a) *Identification.* A urological clamp for males is a device used to close the urethra of a male to control urinary incontinence or to hold anesthetic or radiography contrast media in the urethra temporarily. It is an external clamp.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 876.5210 Enema kit.

(a) *Identification.* An enema kit is a device intended to instill water or other fluids into the colon through a nozzle inserted into the rectum to promote evacuation of the contents of the lower colon. The device consists of a container for fluid connected to the nozzle either directly or via tubing. This device does not include the colonic irrigation system (§ 876.5220).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of §820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 876.5220 Colonic irrigation system.

(a) *Identification.* A colonic irrigation system is a device intended to instill water into the colon through a nozzle inserted into the rectum to cleanse (evacuate) the contents of the lower colon. The system is designed to allow evacuation of the contents of the colon during the administration of the colonic irrigation. The device consists of a container for fluid connected to the nozzle via tubing and includes a system which enables the pressure, temperature, or flow of water through the nozzle to be controlled. The device may include a console-type toilet and necessary fittings to allow the device to be connected to water and sewer pipes. The device may use electrical power to heat the water. The device does not include the enema kit (§ 876.5210).

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II (performance standards) when the device is intended for colon cleansing when medically indicated, such as before radiological or endoscopic examinations.

(2) Class III (premarket approval) when the device is intended for other uses, including colon cleansing routinely for general well being.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device intended for the uses described in paragraph (b)(2). See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5250 Urine collector and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A urine collector and accessories is a device intended to collect urine. The device and accessories consist of tubing, a suitable receptacle, connectors, mechanical supports, and may include a means to prevent the backflow of urine or ascent of infection. The two kinds of urine collectors are: (1) A urine collector and accessories intended to be connected to an indwelling catheter, which includes the urinary drainage collection kit and the closed urine drainage system and drainage bag; and (2) a urine collector and accessories not intended to be connected to an indwelling catheter, which includes the corrugated rubber sheath, pediatric urine collector, leg bag for external use, urosheath type incontinence device, and the paste-on device for incontinence.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II (performance standards) for a urine collector and accessories intended to be connected to an indwelling catheter.

(2) Class I (general controls) for a urine collector and accessories not intended to be connected to an indwelling catheter. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 876.5270 Implanted electrical urinary continence device.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted electrical urinary device is a device intended for treatment of urinary incontinence that consists of a receiver implanted in the abdomen with electrodes for pulsed-stimulation that are implanted either in the bladder wall or in the pelvic floor, and a battery-powered transmitter outside the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5280 Implanted mechanical/hydraulic urinary continence device.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted mechanical/hydraulic urinary continence device is a device used to treat urinary incontinence by the application of continuous or intermittent pressure to occlude the urethra. The totally implanted device may consist of a static pressure pad, or a system with a container of radiopaque fluid in the abdomen and a manual pump and valve under the skin surface that is connected by tubing to an adjustable pressure pad or to a cuff around the urethra. The fluid is pumped as needed from the container to inflate the pad or cuff to pass on the urethra.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5320 Nonimplanted electrical continence device.

(a) *Identification.* A nonimplanted electrical continence device is a device that consists of a pair of electrodes on a plug or a pessary that are connected by an electrical cable to a battery-powered pulse source. The plug or pessary is inserted into the rectum or into the vagina and used to stimulate the muscles of the pelvic floor to maintain urinary or fecal continence. When necessary, the plug or pessary may be removed by the user. This device excludes an AC-powered nonimplanted electrical continence device and the powered vaginal muscle stimulator for therapeutic use (§ 884.5940).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5365 Esophageal dilator.

(a) *Identification.* An esophageal dilator is a device that consists of a cylindrical instrument that may be hollow and weighted with mercury or a metal olive-shaped weight that slides on a guide, such as a string or wire and is used to dilate a stricture of the esophagus. This generic type of device includes esophageal or gastrointestinal bougies and the esophageal dilator (metal olive).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5450 Rectal dilator.

(a) *Identification.* A rectal dilator is a device designed to dilate the anal sphincter and canal when the size of the anal opening may interfere with its function or the passage of an examining instrument.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5470 Ureteral dilator.

(a) *Identification.* A ureteral dilator is a device that consists of a specially shaped catheter or bougie and is used to dilate the ureter at the place where a stone has become lodged or to dilate a ureteral stricture.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5520 Urethral dilator.

(a) *Identification.* A urethral dilator is a device that consists of a slender hollow or solid instrument made of metal, plastic, or other suitable material in a cylindrical form and in a range of sizes and flexibilities. The device may include a mechanism to expand the portion of the device in the urethra and indicate the degree of expansion on a dial. It is used to dilate the urethra. This generic type of device includes the mechanical urethral dilator, urological bougies, metal or plastic urethral sound, urethrometer, filiform, and filiform follower.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5540 Blood access device and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A blood access device and accessories is a device intended to provide access to a patient's blood for hemodialysis or other chronic uses. When used in hemodialysis, it is part of an artificial kidney system for the treatment of patients with renal failure or toxemic conditions and provides access to a patient's blood for hemodialysis. The device includes implanted blood access devices, nonimplanted blood access devices, and accessories for both the implanted and nonimplanted blood access devices.

(1) The implanted blood access device consists of various flexible or rigid tubes, which are surgically implanted in appropriate blood vessels, may come through the skin, and are intended to remain in the body for 30 days or more. This generic type of device includes various shunts and connectors specifically designed to provide access to blood, such as the arteriovenous (A-V) shunt cannula and vessel tip.

(2) The nonimplanted blood access device consists of various flexible or rigid tubes, such as catheters, cannulae or hollow needles, which are inserted into appropriate blood vessels or a vascular graft prosthesis (§§ 870.3450 and 870.3460), and are intended to remain in the body for less than 30 days. This generic type of device includes fistula needles, the single needle dialysis set (coaxial flow

needle), and the single needle dialysis set (alternating flow needle).

(3) Accessories common to either type include the shunt adaptor, cannula clamp, shunt connector, shunt stabilizer, vessel dilator, disconnect forceps, shunt guard, crimp plier, tube plier, crimp ring, joint ring, fistula adaptor, and declotting tray (including contents).

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class III (premarket approval) for the implanted blood access device.

(2) Class II (performance standards) for the nonimplanted blood access device.

(3) Class II (performance standards) for accessories for both the implanted and the nonimplanted blood access device.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5600 Sorbent regenerated dialysate delivery system for hemodialysis.

(a) *Identification.* A sorbent regenerated dialysate delivery system for hemodialysis is a device that is part of an artificial kidney system for the treatment of patients with renal failure or toxemic conditions, and that consists of a sorbent cartridge and the means to circulate dialysate through this cartridge and the dialysate compartment of the dialyzer. The device is used with the extracorporeal blood system and the dialyzer of the hemodialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5820). The device includes the means to maintain the temperature, conductivity, electrolyte balance, flow rate and pressure of the dialysate, and alarms to indicate abnormal dialysate conditions. The sorbent cartridge may include absorbent, ion exchange and catalytic materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5630 Peritoneal dialysis system and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* (1) A peritoneal dialysis system and accessories is a device that is used as an artificial kidney system for the treatment of patients with renal failure or toxemic conditions, and that consists of a peritoneal access device, an administration set for peritoneal dialysis, a source of dialysate, and, in some cases, a water purification mechanism. After the dialysate is instilled into the patient's peritoneal cavity, it is allowed to dwell there so that undesirable substances from the patient's blood pass through the lining membrane of the peritoneal cavity into this dialysate. These substances are then removed when the dialysate is drained from the patient. The peritoneal dialysis system may regulate and monitor the dialysate temperature, volume, and delivery rate together with the time course of each cycle of filling, dwell time, and draining of the peritoneal cavity or manual controls may be used. This generic device includes the semiautomatic and the automatic peritoneal delivery system.

(2) The peritoneal access device is a flexible tube that is implanted through the abdominal wall into the peritoneal cavity and that may have attached cuffs to provide anchoring and a skin seal. The device is either a single use peritoneal catheter, intended to remain in the peritoneal cavity for less than 30 days, or a long term peritoneal catheter. Accessories include stylets and trocars to aid in the insertion of the catheter and an obturator to maintain the patency of the surgical fistula in the abdominal wall between treatments.

(3) The disposable administration set for peritoneal dialysis consists of tubing, an optional reservoir bag, and appropriate connectors. It may include a peritoneal dialysate filter to trap and remove contaminating particles.

(4) The source of dialysate may be sterile prepackaged dialysate (for semiautomatic peritoneal dialysate delivery systems or "cycler systems") or dialysate prepared from dialysate concentrate and sterile purified water (for automatic peritoneal dialysate delivery systems or "reverse osmosis" systems). Prepackaged dialysate intended for use with either of the peritoneal dialysate delivery systems is regulated by FDA as a drug.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5665 Water purification system for hemodialysis.

(a) *Identification.* A water purification system for hemodialysis is a device that is intended for use with a hemodialysis system and that is intended to remove organic and inorganic substances and microbial contaminants from water used to dilute dialysate concentrate to form dialysate. This generic type of device may include a water softener, sediment filter, carbon filter, and water distillation system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5820 Hemodialysis system and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A hemodialysis system and accessories is a device that is used as an artificial kidney system for the treatment of patients with renal failure or toxemic conditions and that consists of an extracorporeal blood system, a conventional dialyzer, a dialysate delivery system, and accessories. Blood from a patient flows through the tubing of the extracorporeal blood system and accessories to the blood compartment of the dialyzer, then returns through further tubing of the extracorporeal blood system to the patient. The dialyzer has two compartments that are separated by a semipermeable membrane. While the blood is in the blood compartment, undesirable substances in the blood pass through the semipermeable membrane into the dialysate in the dialysate compartment. The dialysate delivery system controls and monitors the dialysate circulating through the dialysate compartment of the dialyzer.

(1) The extracorporeal blood system and accessories consists of tubing, pumps, pressure monitors, air foam or bubble detectors, and alarms to keep blood moving safely from the blood access device and accessories for hemodialysis (§ 876.5540) to the blood compartment of the dialyzer and back to the patient.

(2) The conventional dialyzer allows a transfer of water and solutes between the blood and the dialysate through the semipermeable membrane. The semipermeable membrane of the conventional dialyzer has a sufficiently low permeability to water that an ultrafiltration controller is not required to prevent excessive loss of water from the patient's blood. This conventional dialyzer does not include hemodialyzers with the disposable inserts (Kiil type) (§ 876.5830) or dialyzers of high permeability (§ 876.5860).

(3) The dialysate delivery system consists of mechanisms that monitor and control the temperature, conductivity, flow rate, and pressure of the dialysate and circulates dialysate through the dialysate compartment of the dialyzer. The dialysate delivery system includes the dialysate concentrate for hemodialysis (liquid or powder) and alarms to indicate abnormal dialysate conditions. This dialysate delivery system does not include the sorbent regenerated dialysate delivery system for hemodialysis (§ 876.5600), the dialysate delivery system of the peritoneal dialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5630), or the controlled dialysate delivery system of the high permeability hemodialysis system § 876.5860).

(4) Remote accessories to the hemodialysis system include the unpowered dialysis chair without a scale, the powered dialysis chair without a scale, the dialyzer holder set, dialysis tie gun and ties, and hemodialysis start/stop tray.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II (performance standards) for hemodialysis systems and all accessories directly associated with the extracorporeal blood system and the dialysate delivery system.

(2) Class I (general controls) for other accessories of the hemodialysis system remote from the extracorporeal blood system and the dialysate delivery system, such as the unpowered dialysis chair, hemodialysis start/stop tray, dialyzer holder set, and dialysis tie gun and ties.

§ 876.5830 Hemodialyzer with disposable insert (kiil type).

(a) *Identification.* A hemodialyzer with disposable inserts (Kiil type) is a device that is used as a part of an artificial kidney system for the treatment of patients with renal failure or toxemic conditions and that includes disposable inserts consisting of layers of semipermeable membranes which are sandwiched between support plates. The device is used with the extracorporeal blood system and the dialysate delivery system of the hemodialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5820).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 53 FR 11253, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 876.5860 High permeability hemodialysis system.

(a) *Identification.* A high permeability hemodialysis system is a device that is used as an artificial kidney system for the treatment of patients with renal failure or toxemic conditions, and that has a dialyzer with a semipermeable membrane that is more permeable to water than the semipermeable membrane of the conventional dialyzer. The device system consists of an extracorporeal blood system, a high permeability dialyzer, and a controlled dialysate delivery system that incorporates an ultrafiltration controller to prevent excessive loss of water from the patient's blood. This highly permeable, semipermeable membrane may also permit greater loss of higher molecular weight substances from the blood, compared with the conventional dialyzer of the hemodialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5820). The extracorporeal blood system is the same generic type of extracorporeal blood system that is used in the hemodialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5820). The controlled dialysate delivery system also is similar to the conventional disalysate delivery system of the hemodialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5820), with the addition of an ultrafiltration controller to regulate the rate of the removal of water from the patient's blood and ensure that the pressure on the dialysate side of the membrane is always lower than on the blood side. This generic type of device includes the sealed dialysate delivery system.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5870 Sorbent hemoperfusion system.

(a) *Identification.* A sorbent hemoperfusion system is a device that consists of an extracorporeal blood system similar to that identified in the hemodialysis system and accessories (§ 876.5820) and a container filled with adsorbent material that removes a wide range of substances, both toxic and normal, from blood flowing through it. The adsorbent materials are usually activated-carbon or resins which may be coated or immobilized to prevent fine particles entering the patient's blood. The generic type of device may include lines and filters specifically designed to connect the device to the extracorporeal blood system. The device is used in the treatment of poisoning, drug overdose, hepatic coma, or metabolic disturbances.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5880 Isolated kidney perfusion and transport system and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An isolated kidney perfusion and transport system and accesssories is a device that is used to support a donated or a cadaver kidney and to maintain the organ in a near-normal physiologic state until it is transplanted into a recipient patient. This generic type of device may include tubing, catheters, connectors, an ice storage or freezing container with or without bag or preservatives, pulsatile or nonpulsatile hypothermic isolated organ perfusion apparatus with or without oxygenator, and disposable perfusion set.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5895 Ostomy irrigator.

(a) *Identification.* An ostomy irrigator is a device that consists of a container for fluid, tubing with a cone-shaped tip or a soft and flexible catheter with a retention shield and that is used to wash out the colon through a colostomy, a surgically created opening of the colon on the surface of the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 876.5900 Ostomy pouch and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An ostomy pouch and accessories is a device that consists of a bag that is attached to the patient's skin by an adhesive material and that is intended for use as a receptacle for collection of fecal material or urine following an ileostomy, colostomy, or ureterostomy (a surgically created opening of the small intestine, large intestine, or the ureter on the surface of the body). This generic type of device and its accessories includes the ostomy pouch, ostomy adhesive, the disposable colostomy appliance, ostomy collector, colostomy pouch, urinary ileostomy bag, urine collecting ureterostomy bag, ostomy drainage bag with adhesive, stomal bag, ostomy protector, and the ostomy size selector, but excludes ostomy pouches which incorporate arsenic-containing compounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 876.5920 Protective garment for incontinence.

(a) *Identification.* A protective garment for incontinence is a device that consists of absorbent padding and a fluid barrier and that is intended to protect an incontinent patient's garment from the patient's excreta. This generic type of device does not include diapers for infants.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, regarding general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, regarding complaint files.

§ 876.5955 Peritoneo-venous shunt.

(a) *Identification.* A peritoneovenous shunt is an implanted device that consists of a catheter and a pressure activated one-way valve. The catheter is implanted with one end in the peritoneal cavity and the other in a large vein. This device enables ascitic fluid in the peritoneal cavity to flow into the venous system for the treatment of intractable ascites.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 876.3.

[48 FR 53023, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 876.5970 Hernia support.

(a) *Identification.* A hernia support is a device, usually made of elastic, canvas, leather, or metal, that is intended to be placed over a hernial opening (a weakness in the abdominal wall) to prevent protrusion of the abdominal contents. This generic type of device includes the umbilical truss.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the currrent good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, regarding general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, regarding complaint files.

§ 876.5980 Gastrointestinal tube and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A gastrointestinal tube and accessories is a device that consists of flexible or semi-rigid tubing used for instilling fluids into, withdrawing fluids from, splinting, or suppressing bleeding of the alimentary tract. This device may incorporate an integral inflatable balloon for retention or hemostasis. This generic type of device includes the hemostatic bag, irrigation and aspiration catheter (gastric, colonic, etc.), rectal catheter, sterile infant gavage set, gastrointestinal string and tubes to locate internal bleeding, double lumen tube for intestinal decompression or intubation, feeding tube, gastroenterostomy tube, Levine tube, nasogastric tube, single lumen tube with mercury weight balloon for intestinal intubation or decompression, and gastro-urological irrigation tray (for gastrological use).

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II (performance standards).

(2) Class I (general controls) for the dissolvable nasogastric feed tube guide for the nasogastric tube.

[49 FR 573, Jan. 5, 1984]

PART 878—GENERAL AND PLASTIC SURGERY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
878.1 Scope.
878.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

878.1800 Speculum and accessories.

Subpart C—Reserved

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

878.3250 External facial fracture fixation appliance.
878.3300 Surgical mesh.
878.3500 Polytetrafluoroethylene with carbon fibers composite implant material.
878.3530 Silicone inflatable breast prosthesis.
878.3540 Silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis.
878.3550 Chin prosthesis.
878.3590 Ear prosthesis.
878.3610 Esophageal prosthesis.
878.3680 Nose prosthesis.
878.3720 Tracheal prosthesis.
878.3750 External prosthesis adhesive.
878.3800 External aesthetic restoration prosthesis.
878.3900 Inflatable extremity splint.
878.3910 Noninflatable extremity splint.
878.3925 Plastic surgery kit and accessories.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

878.4040 Surgical apparel.
878.4100 Organ bag.
Sec.
878.4160 Surgical camera and accessories.
878.4200 Introduction/drainage catheter and accessories.
878.4300 Implantable clip.
878.4320 Removable skin clip.
878.4350 Cryosurgical unit and accessories.
878.4370 Surgical drape and drape accessories.
878.4380 Drape adhesive.
878.4400 Electrosurgical cutting and coagulation device and accessories.
878.4440 Eye pad.
878.4450 Nonabsorbable gauze for internal use.
878.4460 Surgeon's glove.
878.4470 Surgeon's gloving cream.
878.4480 Absorbable powder for lubricating a surgeon's glove.
878.4490 Absorbable hemostatic agent and dressing.
878.4520 Polytetrafluoroethylene injectable.
878.4580 Surgical lamp.
878.4630 Ultraviolet lamp for dermatologic disorders.
878.4660 Skin marker.
878.4680 Nonpowered, single patient, portable suction apparatus.
878.4730 Surgical skin degreaser or adhesive tape solvent.
878.4750 Implantable staple.
878.4760 Removable skin staple.
878.4780 Powered suction pump.
Sec.
878.4800 Manual surgical instrument for general use.
878.4810 Laser surgical instrument for use in general and plastic surgery and in dermatology.
878.4930 Suture retention device.
878.4950 Manual operating table and accessories and manual operating chair and accessories.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

878.5070 Air-handling apparatus for a surgical operating room.
878.5350 Needle-type epilator.
878.5360 Tweezer-type epilator.
878.5650 Topical oxygen chamber for extremities.
878.5900 Nonpneumatic tourniquet.
878.5910 Pneumatic tourniquet.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 53 FR 23872, June 24, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 878.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of general and plastic surgery devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 cannot show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provision of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87 of this chapter.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a general and plastic surgery device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed in one subpart only.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 878.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act, FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

(c) A device identified in a regulation in this part that is classified into class III and that is subject to the transitional provisions of section 520(l) of the act is automatically classified by statute into class III and must have an approval under section 515 of the act before being commercially distributed. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III transitional device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 878.1800 Speculum and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A speculum is a device intended to be inserted into a body cavity to aid observation. It is either nonilluminated or illuminated and may have various accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart C—Reserved

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

§ 878.3250 External facial fracture fixation appliance.

(a) *Identification.* An external facial fracture fixation appliance is a metal apparatus intended to be used during surgical reconstruction and repair to immobilize maxillofacial bone fragments in their proper facial relationship.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.3300 Surgical mesh.

(a) *Identification.* Surgical mesh is a metallic or polymeric screen intended to be implanted to reinforce soft tissue or bone where weakness exists. Examples of surgical mesh are metallic and polymeric mesh for hernia repair, and acetabular and cement restrictor mesh used during orthopedic surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.3500 Polytetrafluoroethylene with carbon fibers composite implant material.

(a) *Identification.* A polytetrafluoroethylene with carbon fibers composite implant material is a porous device material intended to be implanted during surgery of the chin, jaw, nose, or bones or tissue near the eye or ear. The device material serves as a space-occupying substance and is shaped and formed by the surgeon to conform to the patient's need.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.3530 Silicone inflatable breast prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A silicone inflatable breast prosthesis is a silicone rubber shell made of polysiloxane(s), such as polydimethylsiloxane and polydiphenylsiloxane, that is inflated to the desired size with sterile isotonic saline before or after implantation. The device is intended to be implanted to augment or reconstruct the female breast.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 878.3.

§ 878.3540 Silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis.

(a) *Identification*—(1) *Single-lumen silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis.* A single-lumen silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis is a silicone rubber shell made of polysiloxane(s), such as polydimethylsiloxane and polydiphenylsiloxane. The shell either contains a fixed amount cross-linked polymerized silicone gel, filler, and stabilizers or is filled to the desired size with injectable silicone gel at time of implantation. The device is intended to be implanted to augment or reconstruct the female breast.

(2) *Double-lumen silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis.* A double lumen silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis is a silicone rubber inner shell and a silicone rubber outer shell, both shells made of polysiloxane(s), such as polydimethylsiloxane and polydiphenylsiloxane. The inner shell contains fixed amounts of cross-linked polymerized silicone gel, fillers, and stabilizers. The outer shell is inflated to the desired size with sterile isotonic saline before or after implantation. The device is intended to be implanted to augment or reconstruct the female breast.

(3) *Polyurethane covered silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis.* A polyurethane covered silicone gel-filled breast prosthesis is an inner silicone rubber shell made of polysiloxane(s), such as polydimethylsiloxane and polydiphenylsiloxane, with an outer silicone adhesive layer and an outer covering of

polyurethane; contained within the inner shell is a fixed amount of cross-linked polymerized silicone gel, fillers, and stabilizers and an inert support structure compartmentalizing the silicone gel. The device is intended to be implanted to augment or reconstruct the female breast.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 878.3.

§ 878.3550 Chin prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A chin prosthesis is a silicone rubber solid device intended to be implanted to augment or reconstruct the chin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.3590 Ear prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An ear prosthesis is a silicone rubber solid device intended to be implanted to reconstruct the external ear.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.3610 Esophageal prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An esophageal prosthesis is a plastic tube or tube-like device that may have mesh reinforcement that is intended to be implanted in, or affixed externally to, the chest and throat to restore the esophagus or provide pharyngoesophageal continuity.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 878.3.

§ 878.3680 Nose prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A nose prosthesis is a silicone rubber solid device intended to be implanted to augment or reconstruct the nasal dorsum.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.3720 Tracheal prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A tracheal prosthesis is a tubular device intended to be implanted to reconstruct the trachea.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 878.3.

§ 878.3750 External prosthesis adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* An external prosthesis adhesive is a silicone-type adhesive intended to be used to fasten to the body an external aesthetic restoration prosthesis, such as an artificial nose.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.3800 External aesthetic restoration prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An external aesthetic restoration prosthesis is a device intended to be used to construct an external artificial body structure, such as an ear, breast, or nose. Usually the device is made of silicone rubber and it may be fastened to the body with an external prosthesis adhesive. The device is not intended to be implanted.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is intended for use without an external prosthesis adhesive to fasten it to the body, the device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180 of this chapter, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198 of this chapter, with respect to complaint files.

§ 878.3900 Inflatable extremity splint.

(a) *Identification.* An inflatable extremity splint is a device intended to be inflated to immobilize a limb or an extremity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.3910 Noninflatable extremity splint.

(a) *Identification.* A noninflatable extremity splint is a device intended to immobilize a limb or an extremity. It is not inflatable.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with exception of § 820.180 of this chapter, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198 of this chapter, with respect to complaint files.

§ 878.3925 Plastic surgery kit and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A plastic surgery kit and accessories is a device intended to be used to reconstruct maxillofacial deficiencies. The kit contains surgical instruments and materials used to make maxillofacial impressions before molding an external prosthesis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

§ 878.4040 Surgical apparel.

(a) *Identification.* Surgical apparel are devices that are intended to be worn by operating room personnel during surgical procedures to protect both the surgical patient and the operating room personnel from transfer of microorganisms, body fluids, and particulate material. Examples include surgical caps, hoods, masks, gowns, operating room shoes and shoe covers, and isolation masks and gowns. Surgical suits and dresses, commonly known as scrub suits, are excluded.

(b) *Classification.* Class II for surgical gowns and surgical masks. Class I for surgical apparel other than surgical gowns and surgical masks.

§ 878.4100 Organ bag.

(a) *Identification.* An organ bag is a device that is a flexible plastic bag intended to be used as a temporary receptacle for an organ during surgical procedures to prevent moisture loss.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4160 Surgical camera and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical camera and accessories is a device intended to be used to record operative procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4200 Introduction/drainage catheter and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An introduction/drainage catheter is a device that is a flexible single or multilumen tube intended to be used to introduce nondrug fluids into body cavities other than blood vessels, drain fluids from body cavities, or evaluate certain physiologic conditions. Examples include irrigation and drainage catheters, pediatric catheters, peritoneal catheters (including dialysis), and other general surgical catheters. An introduction/drainage catheter accessory is intended to aid in the manipulation of or insertion of the device into the body. Examples of accessories include adaptors, connectors, and catheter needles.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4300 Implantable clip.

(a) *Identification.* An implantable clip is a clip-like device intended to connect internal tissues to aid healing. It is not absorbable.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4320 Removable skin clip.

(a) *Identification.* A removable skin clip is a clip-like device intended to connect skin tissues temporarily to aid healing. It is not absorbable.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4350 Cryosurgical unit and accessories.

(a) *Identification*—(1) *Cryosurgical unit with a liquid nitrogen cooled cryoprobe and accessories.* A cryosurgical unit with a liquid nitrogen cooled cryoprobe and accessories is a device intended to destroy tissue during surgical procedures by applying extreme cold.

(2) *Cryosurgical unit with a nitrous oxide cooled cryoprobe and accessories.* A cryosurgical unit with a nitrous oxide cooled cryoprobe and accessories is a device intended to destroy tissue during surgical procedures, including urological applications, by applying extreme cold.

(3) *Cryosurgical unit with a carbon dioxide cooled cryoprobe or a carbon dioxide dry ice applicator and accessories.* A cryosurgical unit with a carbon dioxide cooled cryoprobe or a carbon dioxide dry ice applicator and accessories is a device intended to destroy tissue during surgical procedures by applying extreme cold. The device is intended to treat disease conditions such as tumors, skin cancers, acne

scars, or hemangiomas (benign tumors consisting of newly formed blood vessels) and various benign or malignant gynecological conditions affecting vulvar, vaginal, or cervical tissue. The device is not intended for urological applications.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4370 Surgical drape and drape accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical drape and drape accessories is a device made of natural or synthetic materials intended to be used as a protective patient covering, such as to isolate a site of surgical incision from microbial and other contamination. The device includes a plastic wound protector that may adhere to the skin around a surgical incision or be placed in a wound to cover its exposed edges, and a latex drape with a self-retaining finger cot that is intended to allow repeated insertion of the surgeon's finger into the rectum during performance of a transurethral prostatectomy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4380 Drape adhesive.

(a) *Identification.* A drape adhesive is a device intended to be placed on the skin to attach a surgical drape.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4400 Electrosurgical cutting and coagulation device and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An electrosurgical cutting and coagulation device and accessories is a device intended to remove tissue and control bleeding by use of high-frequency electrical current.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4440 Eye pad.

(a) *Identification.* An eye pad is a device that consists of a pad made of various materials, such as gauze and cotton, intended for use as a bandage over the eye for protection or absorption of secretions.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4450 Nonabsorbable gauze for internal use.

(a) *Identification.* Nonabsorbable gauze for internal use is a device made of an open mesh fabric intended to be used inside the body or a surgical incision or applied to internal organs or structures, to control bleeding, absorb fluid, or protect organs or structures from abrasion, drying, or contamination. The device is woven from material made of not less than 50 percent by mass cotton, cellulose, or a simple chemical derivative of cellulose, and contains x-ray detectable elements.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4460 Surgeon's glove.

(a) *Identification.* A surgeon's glove is a device made of natural or synthetic rubber intended to be worn by operating room personnel to protect a surgical wound from contamination. The lubricating or dusting powder used in the glove is excluded.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4470 Surgeon's gloving cream.

(a) *Identification.* Surgeon's gloving cream is an ointment intended to be used to lubricate the user's hand before putting on a surgeon's glove.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4480 Absorbable powder for lubricating a surgeon's glove.

(a) *Identification.* Absorbable powder for lubricating a surgeon's glove is a powder made from corn starch that meets the specifications for absorbable powder in the United States Pharmacopeia (U.S.P.) and that is intended to be used to lubricate the surgeon's hand before putting on a surgeon's glove. The device is absorbable through biological degradation.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 878.3.

§ 878.4490 Absorbable hemostatic agent and dressing.

(a) *Identification.* An absorbable hemostatic agent or dressing is a device intended to produce hemostasis by accelerating the clotting process of blood. It is absorbable.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 878.3.

§ 878.4520 Polytetrafluoroethylene injectable.

(a) *Identification.* Polytetrafluoroethylene injectable is an injectable paste prosthetic device composed of polytetrafluoroethylene intended to be used to augment or reconstruct a vocal cord.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 878.3.

§ 878.4580 Surgical lamp.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical lamp (including a fixture) is a device intended to be used to provide visible illumination of the surgical field or the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4630 Ultraviolet lamp for dermatologic disorders.

(a) *Identification.* An ultraviolet lamp for dermatologic disorders is a device (including a fixture) intended to provide ultraviolet radiation of the body to photoactivate a drug in the treatment of a dermatologic disorder if the labeling of the drug intended for use with the device bears adequate directions for the device's use with that drug.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4660 Skin marker.

(a) *Identification.* A skin marker is a pen-like device intended to be used to write on the patient's skin, e.g., to outline surgical incision sites or mark anatomical sites for accurate blood pressure measurement.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4680 Nonpowered, single patient, portable suction apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered, single patient, portable suction apparatus is a device that consists of a manually operated plastic, disposable evacuation system intended to provide a vacuum for suction drainage of surgical wounds.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4730 Surgical skin degreaser or adhesive tape solvent.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical skin degreaser or an adhesive tape solvent is a device that consists of a liquid such as 1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane; 1,1,1-trichloroethane; and 1,1,1-trichloroethane with mineral spirits intended to be used to dissolve surface skin oil or adhesive tape.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4750 Implantable staple.

(a) *Identification.* An implantable staple is a staple-like device intended to connect internal tissues to aid healing. It is not absorbable.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4760 Removable skin staple.

(a) *Identification.* A removable skin staple is a staple-like device intended to connect external tissues temporarily to aid healing. It is not absorbable.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4780 Powered suction pump.

(a) *Identification.* A powered suction pump is a portable, AC-powered or compressed air-powered device intended to be used to remove infectious materials from wounds or fluids from a patient's airway or respiratory support system. The device may be used during surgery in the operating room or at the patient's bedside. The device may include a microbial filter.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4800 Manual surgical instrument for general use.

(a) *Identification.* A manual surgical instrument for general use is a nonpowered, hand-held, or hand-manipulated device, either reusable or disposable, intended to be used in various general surgical procedures. The device includes the applicator, clip applier, biopsy brush, manual dermabrasion brush, scrub brush, cannula, ligature carrier, chisel, clamp, contractor, curette, cutter, dissector, elevator, skin graft expander, file, forceps, gouge, instrument guide, needle guide, hammer, hemostat, amputation hook, ligature passing and knot-tying instrument, knife, blood lancet, mallet, disposable or reusable aspiration and injection needle, disposable or reusable suturing needle, osteotome, pliers, rasp, retainer, retractor, saw, scalpel blade, scalpel handle, one-piece scalpel, snare, spatula, stapler, disposable or reusable stripper, stylet, suturing apparatus for the stomach and intestine, measuring tape, and calipers. A surgical instrument that has specialized uses in a specific medical specialty is classified in separate regulations in Parts 868 through 892.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4810 Laser surgical instrument for use in general and plastic surgery and in dermatology.

(a) *Identification.* (1) A carbon dioxide laser for use in general surgery and in dermatology is a laser device intended to cut, destroy, or remove tissue by light energy emitted by carbon dioxide.

(2) An argon laser for use in dermatology is a laser device intended to destroy or coagulate tissue by light energy emitted by argon.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.4930 Suture retention device.

(a) *Identification.* A suture retention device is a device, such as a retention bridge, a surgical button, or a suture bolster, intended to aid wound healing by distributing suture tension over a larger area in the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.4950 Manual operating table and accessories and manual operating chair and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A manual operating table and accessories and a manual operating chair and accessories are nonpowered devices, usually with movable components, intended to be used to support a patient during diagnostic examinations or surgical procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

§ 878.5070 Air-handling apparatus for a surgical operating room.

(a) *Identification.* Air-handling apparatus for a surgical operating room is a device intended to produce a directed, nonturbulent flow of air that has been filtered to remove particulate matter and microorganisms to provide an area free of contaminants to reduce the possibility of infection in the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.5350 Needle-type epilator.

(a) *Identification.* A needle-type epilator is a device intended to destroy the dermal papilla of a hair by applying electric current at the tip of a fine needle that has been inserted close to the hair shaft, under the skin, and into the dermal papilla. The electric current may be high-frequency AC current, high-frequency AC combined with DC current, or DC current only.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 878.5360 Tweezer-type epilator.

(a) *Identification.* A tweezer-type epilator is an electrical device intended for hair removal. The device provides a high-frequency electric current at the tip of a tweezer used for removing hair.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 878.3.

§ 878.5650 Topical oxygen chamber for extremities.

(a) *Identification.* A topical oxygen chamber for extremities is a device intended to surround hermetically a patient's limb and apply humidified oxygen topically at a pressure slightly greater than atmospheric pressure to aid healing of chronic skin ulcers or bed sores.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 878.3.

§ 878.5900 Nonpneumatic tourniquet.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpneumatic tourniquet is a device consisting of a strap or tubing intended to be wrapped around a patient's limb and tightened to reduce circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 878.5910 Pneumatic tourniquet.

(a) *Identification.* A pneumatic tourniquet is an air-powered device consisting of a pressure-regulating unit, connecting tubing, and an inflatable cuff. The cuff is intended to be wrapped around a patient's limb and inflated to reduce or totally occlude circulation during surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

PART 880—GENERAL HOSPITAL AND PERSONAL USE DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
880.1 Scope.
880.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—[Reserved]

Subpart C—General Hospital and Personal Use Monitoring Devices

880.2200 Liquid crystal forehead temperature strip.
880.2400 Bed-patient monitor.
880.2420 Electronic monitor for gravity flow infusion systems.
880.2460 Electrically powered spinal fluid pressure monitor.
880.2500 Spinal fluid manometer.
880.2700 Stand-on patient scale.
880.2720 Patient scale.
880.2740 Surgical sponge scale.
880.2800 Sterilization process indicator.
880.2900 Clinical color change thermometer.
880.2910 Clinical electronic thermometer.
880.2920 Clinical mercury thermometer.

Subparts D–E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—General Hospital and Personal Use Therapeutic Devices

880.5025 I.V. container.
880.5045 Medical recirculating air cleaner.
880.5075 Elastic bandage.
880.5090 Liquid bandage.
880.5100 AC-powered adjustable hospital bed.
Sec.
880.5110 Hydraulic adjustable hospital bed.
880.5120 Manual adjustable hospital bed.
880.5130 Infant radiant warmer.
880.5140 Pediatric hospital bed.
880.5150 Nonpowered flotation therapy mattress.
880.5160 Therapeutic medical binder.
880.5180 Burn sheet.
880.5200 Intravascular catheter.
880.5210 Intravascular catheter securement device.
880.5240 Medical adhesive tape and adhesive bandage.
880.5270 Neonatal eye pad.
880.5300 Medical absorbent fiber.
880.5400 Neonatal incubator.
880.5410 Neonatal transport incubator.
880.5420 Pressure infusor for an I.V. bag.
880.5430 Nonelectrically powered fluid injector.
880.5440 Intravascular administration set.
880.5450 Patient care reverse isolation chamber.
880.5475 Jet lavage.
880.5500 AC-powered patient lift.
880.5510 Non-AC-powered patient lift.
880.5550 Alternating pressure air flotation mattress.
880.5560 Temperature regulated water mattress.
880.5570 Hypodermic single lumen needle.
880.5630 Nipple shield.
880.5640 Lamb feeding nipple.
880.5680 Pediatric position holder.
880.5700 Neonatal phototherapy unit.
880.5725 Infusion pump.
880.5740 Suction snakebite kit.
880.5760 Chemical cold pack snakebite kit.
880.5780 Medical support stocking.
880.5820 Therapeutic scrotal support.
880.5860 Piston syringe.
880.5950 Umbilical occlusion device.

Subpart G—General Hospital and Personal Use Miscellaneous Devices

880.6025 Absorbent tipped applicator.
880.6050 Ice bag.
880.6060 Medical disposable bedding.
880.6070 Bed board.
880.6080 Cardiopulmonary resuscitation board.
880.6085 Hot/cold water bottle.
880.6100 Ethylene oxide gas aerator cabinet.
880.6140 Medical chair and table.
880.6150 Ultrasonic cleaner for medical instruments.
880.6175 Specimen container.
880.6185 Cast cover.
880.6190 Mattress cover for medical purposes.
880.6200 Ring cutter.
880.6230 Tongue depressor.

Sec.
880.6250 Patient examination glove.
880.6265 Examination gown.
880.6280 Medical insole.
880.6320 AC-powered medical examination light.
880.6350 Battery-powered medical examination light.
880.6375 Patient lubricant.
880.6430 Liquid medication dispenser.
880.6450 Skin pressure protectors.
880.6500 Medical ultraviolet air purifier.
880.6710 Medical ultraviolet water purifier.
880.6730 Body waste receptacle.
880.6740 Vacuum-powered body fluid suction apparatus.
880.6760 Protective restraint.
880.6775 Powered patient transfer device.
880.6785 Manual patient transfer device.
880.6800 Washer for body waste receptacles.
880.6820 Medical disposable scissors.
880.6850 Sterilization wrap.
880.6860 Ethylene oxide gas sterilizer.
880.6870 Dry-heat sterilizer.
880.6880 Steam sterilizer.
880.6900 Hand-carried stretcher.
880.6910 Wheeled stretcher.
880.6920 Syringe needle introducer.
880.6960 Irrigating syringe.
880.6970 Liquid crystal vein locator.
880.6980 Vein stabilizer.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 45 FR 69682-69737, Oct. 21, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 880.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of general hospital and personal use devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a general hospital and personal use device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

§ 880.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" devices defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17738, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—[Reserved]

Subpart C—General Hospital and Personal Use Monitoring Devices

§ 880.2200 Liquid crystal forehead temperature strip.

(a) *Identification.* A liquid crystal forehead temperature strip is a device applied to the forehead that is used to indicate the presence or absence of fever, or to monitor body temperature changes. The device displays the color changes of heat sensitive liquid crystals corresponding to the variation in the surface temperature of the skin. The liquid crystals, which are cholesteric esters, are sealed in plastic.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2400 Bed-patient monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A bed-patient monitor is a battery-powered device placed under a mattress and used to indicate by an alarm or other signal when a patient attempts to leave the bed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.2420 Electronic monitor for gravity flow infusion systems.

(a) *Identification.* An electronic monitor for gravity flow infusion systems is a device used to monitor the amount of fluid being infused into a patient. The device consists of an electronic transducer and equipment for signal amplification, conditioning, and display.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2460 Electrically powered spinal fluid pressure monitor.

(a) *Identification.* An electrically powered spinal fluid pressure monitor is an electrically powered device used to measure spinal fluid pressure by the use of a transducer which converts spinal fluid pressure into an electrical signal. The device includes signal amplification, conditioning, and display equipment.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2500 Spinal fluid manometer.

(a) *Identification.* A spinal fluid manometer is a device used to measure spinal fluid pressure. The device uses a hollow needle, which is inserted into the spinal column fluid space, to connect the spinal fluid to a graduated column so that the pressure can be measured by reading the height of the fluid.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2700 Stand-on patient scale.

(a) *Identification.* A stand-on patient scale is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to weigh a patient who is able to stand on the scale platform.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.2720 Patient scale.

(a) *Identification.* A patient scale is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to measure the weight of a patient who cannot stand on a scale. This generic device includes devices placed under a bed or chair to weigh both the support and the patient, devices where the patient is lifted by a sling from a bed to be weighed, and devices where the patient is placed on the scale platform to be weighed. The device may be mechanical, battery powered, or AC-powered and may include transducers, electronic signal amplification, conditioning and display equipment.

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class I (general controls) for a mechanical or battery powered patient scale.

(2) Class II (performance standards) for an AC-powered patient scale.

§ 880.2740 Surgical sponge scale.

(a) *Identification.* A surgical sponge scale is a nonelectrically powered device used to weigh surgical sponges that have been used to absorb blood during surgery so that, by comparison with the known dry weight of the sponges, an estimate may be made of the blood lost by the patient during surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.2800 Sterilization process indicator.

(a) *Biological sterilization process indicator*—(1) *Identification.* A biological sterilization process indicator is a device intended for use by a health care provider to accompany products being sterilized through a sterilization procedure and to monitor adequacy of sterilization. The device consists of a known number of microorganisms, of known resistance to the mode of sterilization, in or on a carrier and enclosed in a protective package. Subsequent growth or failure of the microorganisms to grow under suitable conditions indicates the adequacy of sterilization.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Physical/chemical sterilization process indicator*—(1) *Identification.* A physical/chemical sterilization process indicator is a device intended for use by a health care provider to accompany products being sterilized through a sterilization procedure and to monitor one or more parameters of the sterilization process. The adequacy of the sterilization conditions as measured by these parameters is indicated by a visible change in the device.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2900 Clinical color change thermometer.

(a) *Identification.* A clinical color change thermometer is a disposable device used to measure a patient's oral, rectal, or axillary (armpit) body temperature. The device records body temperature by use of heat sensitive chemicals which are sealed at the end of a plastic or metal strip. Body heat causes a stable color change in the heat sensitive chemicals.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2910 Clinical electronic thermometer.

(a) *Identification.* A clinical electronic thermometer is a device used to measure the body temperature of a patient by means of a transducer coupled with an electronic signal amplification, conditioning, and display unit. The transducer may be in a detachable probe with or without a disposable cover.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.2920 Clinical mercury thermometer.

(a) *Identification.* A clinical mercury thermometer is a device used to measure oral, rectal, or axillary (armpit) body temperature using the thermal expansion of mercury.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subparts D–E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—General Hospital and Personal Use Therapeutic Devices

§ 880.5025 I.V. container.

(a) *Identification.* An I.V. container is a container made of plastic or glass used to hold a fluid mixture to be administered to a patient through an intravascular administration set.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5045 Medical recirculating air cleaner.

(a) *Identification.* A medical recirculating air cleaner is a device used to remove particles from the air for medical purposes. The device may function by electrostatic precipitation or filtration.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5075 Elastic bandage.

(a) *Identification.* An elastic bandage is a device consisting of either a long flat strip or a tube of elasticized material that is used to support and compress a part of a patient's body.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5090 Liquid bandage.

(a) *Identification.* A liquid bandage is a sterile device that is a liquid, semiliquid, or powder and liquid combination used to cover an opening in the skin or as a dressing for burns. The device is also used as a topical skin protectant.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.5100 AC-powered adjustable hospital bed.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered adjustable hospital bed is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a bed with a built-in electric motor and remote controls that can be operated by the patient to adjust the height and surface contour of the bed. The device includes movable and latchable side rails.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5110 Hydraulic adjustable hospital bed.

(a) *Identification.* A hydraulic adjustable hospital bed is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a bed with a hydraulic mechanism operated by an attendant to adjust the height and surface contour of the bed. The device includes movable and latchable side rails.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.5120 Manual adjustable hospital bed.

(a) *Identification.* A manual adjustable hospital bed is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a bed with a manual mechanism operated by an attendant to adjust the height and surface contour of the bed. The device includes movable and latchable side rails.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5130 Infant radiant warmer.

(a) *Identification.* An infant radiant warmer is a device consisting of an infrared heating element intended to be placed over an infant to maintain the infant's body temperature by means of radiant heat. The device may also contain a temperature monitoring sensor, a heat output control mechanism and an alarm to alert operators of the device's failure. The device may be placed over a pediatric hospital bed or it may be built into the bed as a complete unit.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 880.3.

[45 FR 69682-69737, Oct. 21, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17739, May 11, 1987]

§ 880.5140 Pediatric hospital bed.

(a) *Identification.* A pediatric hospital bed is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a bed or crib designed for the use of a pediatric patient, with fixed end rails and movable and latchable side rails. The contour of the bed surface may be adjustable.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5150 Nonpowered flotation therapy mattress.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered flotation therapy mattress is a mattress intended for medical purposes which contains air, fluid, or other materials that have the functionally equivalent effect of supporting a patient and avoiding excess pressure on local body areas. The device is intended to treat or prevent decubitus ulcers (bed sores).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5160 Therapeutic medical binder.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic medical binder is a device, usually made of cloth, that is intended for medical purposes and that can be secured by ties so that it supports the underlying part of the body or holds a dressing in place. This generic type of device includes the abdominal binder, breast binder, and perineal binder.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notifiction procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5180 Burn sheet.

(a) *Identification.* A burn sheet is a device made of a porous material that is wrapped aroung a burn victim to retain body heat, to absorb wound exudate, and to serve as a barrier against contaminants.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general Controls).

§ 880.5200 Intravascular catheter.

(a) *Identification.* An intravascular catheter is a device that consists of a slender tube and any necessary connecting fittings and that is inserted into the patient's vascular system for short term use (less than 30 days) to sample blood, monitor blood pressure, or administer fluids intravenously. The device may be constructed of metal, rubber, plastic, or a combination of these materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5210 Intravascular catheter securement device.

(a) *Identification.* An intravascula catheter securement device is a devic with an adhesive backing that i placed over a needle or catheter and i used to keep the hub of the needle o the catheter flat and securely anchored to the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (genera controls).

§ 880.5240 Medical adhesive tape and adhesive bandage.

(a) *Identification.* A medical adhesive tape or adhesive bandage is device intended for medical purpose that consists of a strip of fabric material or plastic, coated on one side wit an adhesive, and may include a pad o surgical dressing without a disinfectant. The device is used to cover an protect wounds, to hold together th skin edges of a wound, to support an injured part of the body, or to secure objects to the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.5270 Neonatal eye pad.

(a) *Identification.* A neonatal eye pad is an opaque device used to cover and protect the eye of an infant during therapeutic procedures, such as phototherapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5300 Medical absorbent fiber.

(a) *Identification.* A medical absorbent fiber is a device intended for medical purposes that is made from cotton or synthetic fiber in the shape of a ball or a pad and that is used for applying medication to, or absorbing small amounts of body fluids from, a patient's body surface. Absorbent fibers intended solely for cosmetic purposes are not included in this generic device category.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5400 Neonatal incubator.

(a) *Identification.* A neonatal incubator is a device consisting of a rigid boxlike enclosure in which an infant may be kept in a controlled environment for medical care. The device may include an AC-powered heater, a fan to circulate the warmed air, a container for water to add humidity, a control valve through which oxygen may be added, and access ports for nursing care.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5410 Neonatal transport incubator.

(a) *Identification.* A neonatal transport incubator is a device consisting of a portable rigid boxlike enclosure with insulated walls in which an infant may be kept in a controlled environment while being transported for medical care. The device may include straps to secure the infant, a battery-operated heater, an AC-powered battery charger, a fan to circulate the warmed air, a container for water to add humidity, and provision for a portable oxygen bottle.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5420 Pressure infusor for an I.V. bag.

(a) *Identification.* A pressure infusor for an I.V. bag is a device consisting of an inflatable cuff which is placed around an I.V. bag. When the device is inflated, it increases the pressure on the I.V. bag to assist the infusion of the fluid.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.5430 Nonelectrically powered fluid injector.

(a) *Identification.* A nonelectrically powered fluid injector is a nonelectrically powered device used by a health care provider to give a hypodermic injection by means of a narrow, high velocity jet of fluid which can penetrate the surface of the skin and deliver the fluid to the body. It may be used for mass inoculations.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5440 Intravascular administration set.

(a) *Identification.* An intravascular administration set is a device used to administer fluids from a container to a patient's vascular system through a needle or catheter inserted into a vein. The device may include the needle or catheter, tubing, a flow regulator, a drip chamber, an infusion line filter, an I.V. set stopcock, fluid delivery tubing, connectors between parts of the set, a side tube with a cap to serve as an injection site, and a hollow spike to penetrate and connect the tubing to an I.V. bag or other infusion fluid container.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5450 Patient care reverse isolation chamber.

(a) *Identification.* A patient care reverse isolation chamber is a device consisting of a roomlike enclosure designed to prevent the entry of harmful airborne material. This device protects a patient who is undergoing treatment for burns or is lacking a normal immunosuppressive defense due to therapy or congenital abnormality. The device includes fans and air filters which maintain an atmosphere of clean air at a pressure greater than the air pressure outside the enclosure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5475 Jet lavage.

(a) *Identification.* A jet lavage is a device used to clean a wound by a pulsatile jet of sterile fluid. The device consists of the pulsing head, tubing to connect to a container of sterile fluid, and a means of propelling the fluid through the tubing, such as an electric roller pump.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5500 AC-powered patient lift.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered lift is an electrically powered device either fixed or mobile, used to lift and transport patients in the horizontal or other required position from one place to another, as from a bed to a bath. The device includes straps and slings to support the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5510 Non-AC-powered patient lifts.

(a) *Identification.* A non-AC-powered patient lift is a hydraulic, battery, or mechanically powered device, either fixed or mobile, used to lift and transport a patient in the horizontal or other required position from one place to another, as from a bed to a bath. The device includes straps and a sling to support the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.5550 Alternating pressure air flotation mattress.

(a) *Identification.* An alternating pressure air flotation mattress is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a mattress with multiple air cells that can be filled and emptied in an alternating pattern by an associated control unit to provide regular, frequent, and automatic changes in the distribution of body pressure. The device is used to prevent and treat decubitus ulcers (bed sores).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5560 Temperature regulated water mattress.

(a) *Identification.* A temperature regulated water mattress is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a mattress of suitable size, filled with water which can be heated or in some cases cooled. The device includes electrical heating and water circulating components, and an optional cooling component. The temperature control may be manual or automatic.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5570 Hypodermic single lumen needle.

(a) *Identification.* A hypodermic single lumen needle is a device intended to inject fluids into, or withdraw fluids from, parts of the body below the surface of the skin. The device consists of a metal tube that is sharpened at one end and at the other end joined to a female connector (hub) designed to mate with a male connector (nozzle) of a piston syringe or an intravascular administration set.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5630 Nipple shield.

(a) *Identification.* A nipple shield is a device consisting of a cover used to protect the nipple of a nursing woman. This generic device does not include nursing pads intended solely to protect the clothing of a nursing woman from milk.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.5640 Lamb feeding nipple.

(a) *Identification.* A lamb feeding nipple is a device intended for use as a feeding nipple for infants with oral or facial abnormalities.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5680 Pediatric position holder.

(a) *Identification.* A pediatric position holder is a device used to hold an infant or a child in a desired position for therapeutic or diagnostic purposes, e.g., in a crib under a radiant warmer, or to restrain a child while an intravascular injection is administered.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5700 Neonatal phototherapy unit.

(a) *Identification.* A neonatal phototherapy unit is a device used to treat or prevent hyperbilirubinemia (elevated serum bilirubin level). The device consists of one or more lamps that emit a specific spectral band of light, under which an infant is placed for therapy. This generic type of device may include supports for the patient and equipment and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5725 Infusion pump.

(a) *Identification.* An infusion pump is a device used in a health care facility to pump fluids into a patient in a controlled manner. The device may use a piston pump, a roller pump, or a peristaltic pump and may be powered electrically or mechanically. The device may also operate using a constant force to propel the fluid through a narrow tube which determines the flow rate. The device may include means to detect a fault condition, such as air in, or blockage of, the infusion line and to activate an alarm.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5740 Suction snakebite kit.

(a) *Identification.* A suction snakebite kit is a device consisting of a knife, suction device, and tourniquet used for first-aid treatment of snakebites by removing venom from the wound.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls.).

§ 880.5760 Chemical cold pack snakebite kit.

(a) *Identification.* A chemical cold pack snakebit kit is a device consisting of a chemical cold pack and tourniquet used for first-aid treatment of snakebites.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 880.3.

[45 FR 69682-69737, Oct. 21, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17739, May 11, 1987]

§ 880.5780 Medical support stocking.

(a) *Medical support stocking to prevent the pooling of blood in the legs*—(1) *Identification.* A medical support stocking to prevent the pooling of blood in the legs is a device that is constructed of elastic material and designed to apply controlled pressure to the leg and that is intended for use in the prevention of pooling of blood in the leg.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Medical support stocking for general medical purposes*—(1) *Identification.* A medical support stocking for general medical purposes is a device that is constructed of elastic material and designed to apply controlled pressure to the leg and that is intended for medical purposes other than the prevention of pooling of blood in the leg.

(2) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5820 Therapeutic scrotal support.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic scrotal support is a device intended for medical purposes that consist of a pouch attached to an elastic waistband and that is used to support the scrotum (the sac that contains the testicles).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.5860 Piston syringe.

(a) *Identification.* A piston syringe is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a calibrated hollow barrel and a movable plunger. At one end of the barrel there is a male connector (nozzle) for fitting the female connector (hub) of a hypodermic single lumen needle. The device is used to inject fluids into, or withdraw fluids from, the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.5950 Umbilical occlusion device.

(a) *Identification.* An umbilical occlusion device is a clip, tie, tape, or other article used to close the blood vessels in the umbilical cord of a newborn infant.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

Subpart G—General Hospital and Personal Use Miscellaneous Devices

§ 880.6025 Absorbent tipped applicator.

(a) *Identification.* An absorbent tipped applicator is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of an absorbent swab on a wooden, paper, or plastic stick. The device is used to apply medications to, or to take specimens from, a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6050 Ice bag.

(a) *Identification.* An ice bag is a device intended for medical purposes that is in the form of a container intended to be filled with ice that is used to apply dry cold therapy to an area of the body. The device may include a holder that keeps the bag in place against an external area of the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6060 Medical disposable bedding.

(a) *Identification.* Medical disposable bedding is a device intended for medical purposes to be used by one patient for a period of time and then discarded. This generic type of device may include disposable bedsheets, bedpads, pillows and pillowcases, blankets, emergency rescue blankets, or waterproof sheets.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6070 Bed board.

(a) *Identification.* A bed board is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a stiff board used to increase the firmness of a bed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6080 Cardiopulmonary resuscitation board.

(a) *Identification.* A cardiopulmonary resuscitation board is a device consisting of a rigid board which is placed under a patient to act as a support during cardiopulmonary resuscitation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6085 Hot/cold water bottle.

(a) *Identification.* A hot/cold water bottle is a device intended for medical purposes that is in the form of a container intended to be filled with hot or cold water to apply heat or cold to an area of the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6100 Ethylene oxide gas aerator cabinet.

(a) *Identification.* An ethyene oxide gas aerator cabinet is a device that is intended for use by a health care provider and consists of a cabinet with a ventilation system designed to circulate and exchange the air in the cabinet to shorten the time required to remove residual ethylene oxide (ETO) from wrapped medical devices that have undergone ETO sterilization. The device may include a heater to warm the circulating air.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6140 Medical chair and table.

(a) *Identification.* A medical chair or table is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a chair or table without wheels and not electrically powered which, by reason of special shape or attachments, such as food trays or headrests, or special features such as a built-in raising and lowering mechanism or removable arms, is intended for use of blood donors, geriatric patients, or patients undergoing treatment or examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6150 Ultrasonic cleaner for medical instruments.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasonic cleaner for medical instruments is a device intended for cleaning medical instruments by the emission of high frequency soundwaves.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.6175 Specimen container.

(a) *Identification.* A specimen container is a device intended for medical purposes, that may be labeled or otherwise represented as sterile and that is used for the collection and transport of body waste, body exudate, or tissue samples.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is also exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6185 Cast cover.

(a) *Identification.* A cast cover is a device intended for medical purposes that is made of waterproof material and placed over a cast to protect it from getting wet during a shower or a bath.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from premarket notification procedures in Subpart 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile it is also exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6190 Mattress cover for medical purposes.

(a) *Identification.* A mattress cover for medical purposes is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to protect a mattress. It may be electrically conductive or contain a germicide.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6200 Ring cutter.

(a) *Identification.* A ring cutter is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to cut a ring on a patient's finger so that the ring can be removed. The device incorporates a guard to prevent injury to the patient's finger.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6230 Tongue depressor.

(a) *Identification.* A tongue depressor is a device intended to displace the tongue to facilitate examination of the surrounding organs and tissues.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6250 Patient examination glove.

(a) *Identification.* A patient examination glove is a disposable device intended for medical purposes that is worn on the examiner's hand or finger to prevent contamination between patient and examiner.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[45 FR 69682-69737, Oct. 21, 1980, as amended at 53 FR 1604, Jan. 13, 1989]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: At 53 FR 1604, Jan. 13, 1989, § 880.6250 was amended by revising paragraph (b), effective April 13, 1989. For the convenience of the user of this volume, the superseded text in effect until April 13, 1989, appears below.

§ 880.6250 Patient examination glove.

* * * * *

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is also exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6265 Examination gown.

(a) *Identification.* An examination gown is a device intended for medical purposes that is made of cloth, paper, or other material that is draped over or worn by a patient as a body covering during a medical examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6280 Medical insole.

(a) *Identification.* A medical insole is a device intended for medical purposes that is placed inside a shoe to relieve the symptoms of athlete's foot infection by absorbing moisture.

(b) Classification. Class I (general controls).

§ 880.6320 AC-powered medical examination light.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered medical examination light is an AC-powered device intended for medical purposes that is used to illuminate body surfaces and cavities during a medical examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6350 Battery-powered medical examination light.

(a) *Identification.* A battery-powered medical examination light is a battery-powered device intended for medical purposes that is used to illuminate body surfaces and cavities during a medical examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6375 Patient lubricant.

(a) *Identification.* A patient lubricant is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to lubricate a body orifice to facilitate entry of a diagnostic or therapeutic device.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.6430 Liquid medication dispenser.

(a) *Identification.* A Liquid medication dispenser is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to issue a measured amount of liquid medication.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6450 Skin pressure protectors.

(a) *Identification.* A skin pressure protector is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to reduce pressure on the skin over a bony prominence to reduce the likelihood of the patient's developing decubitus ulcers (bedsores).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6500 Medical ultraviolet air purifier.

(a) *Identification.* A medical ultraviolet air purifier is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to destroy bacteria in the air by exposure to ultraviolet radiation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6710 Medical ultraviolet water purifier.

(a) *Identification.* A medical ultraviolet water purifier is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to destroy bacteria in water by exposure to ultraviolet radiation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6730 Body waste receptacle.

(a) *Identification.* A body waste receptacle is a device intended for medical purposes tht is not attached to the body and that is used to collect the body wastes of a bed patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6740 Vacuum-powered body fluid suction apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* A vacuum-powered body fluid suction apparatus is a device used to aspirate, remove, or sample body fluids. The device is powered by an external source of vacuum. This generic type of device includes vacuum regulators, vacuum collection bottles, suction catheters and tips, connecting flexible aspirating tubes, rigid suction tips, specimen traps, noninvasive tubing, and suction regulators (with gauge).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6760 Protective restraint.

(a) *Identification.* A protective restraint is a device, usually a wristlet, anklet, or other type of strap, that is intended for medical purposes and that limits a patient's movements to the extent necessary for treatment, examination, or protection of the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is also exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6775 Powered patient transfer device.

(a) *Identification.* A powered patient transfer device is a device consisting of a wheeled stretcher and a powered mechanism that has a broad, flexible band stretched over long rollers that can advance itself under a patient and transfer the patient with minimal disturbance in a horizontal position to the stretcher.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6785 Manual patient transfer device.

(a) *Identification.* A manual patient transfer device is a device consisting of a wheeled stretcher and a mechanism on which a patient can be placed so that the patient can be transferred with minimal disturbance in a horizontal position to the stretcher.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The divice also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6800 Washers for body waste receptacles.

(a) *Identification.* A washer for body waste receptacles is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to clean and sanitize a body waste receptacle, such as a bedpan. The device consists of a wall-mounted plumbing fixture with a door through which a body waste receptacle is inserted. When the door is closed the body waste receptacle is cleaned by hot water, steam, or germicide.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6820 Medical disposable scissors.

(a) *Identification.* Medical disposable scissors are disposable type general cutting devices intended for medical purposes. This generic type of device does not include surgical scissors.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 880.6850 Sterilization wrap.

(a) *Identification.* A sterilization wrap (pack, sterilization wrapper, bag, or accessories, is a device intended to be used to enclose another medical device that is to be sterilized by a health care provider. It is intended to allow sterilization of the enclosed medical device and also to maintain sterility of the enclosed device until used.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6860 Ethylene oxide gas sterilizer.

(a) *Identification.* An ethylene gas sterilizer is a nonportable device intended for use by a health care provider that uses ethylene oxide (ETO) to sterilize medical products.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6870 Dry-heat sterilizer.

(a) *Identification.* A dry-heat sterilizer is a device that is intended for use by a health care provider to sterilize medical products by means of dry heat.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6880 Steam sterilizer.

(a) *Identification.* A steam sterilizer (autoclave) is a device that is intended for use by a health care provider to sterilize medical products by means of pressurized steam.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6900 Hand-carried stretcher.

(a) *Identification.* A hand-carried stretcher is a device consisting of a lightweight frame, or of two poles with a cloth or metal platform, on which a patient can be carried.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6910 Wheeled stretcher.

(a) *Identification.* A wheeled stretcher is a device consisting of a platform mounted on a wheeled frame that is designed to transport patients in a horizontal position. The device may have side rails, supports for fluid infusion equipment, and patient securement straps. The frame may be fixed or collapsible for use in an ambulance.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6920 Syringe needle introducer.

(a) *Identification.* A syringe needle introducer is a device that uses a spring-loaded mechanism to drive a hypodermic needle into a patient to a predetermined depth below the skin surface.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 880.6960 Irrigating syringe.

(a) *Identification.* An irrigating syringe is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a bulb or a piston syringe with an integral or a detachable tube. The device is used to irrigate, withdraw fluid from, or instill fluid into, a body cavity or wound.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and

§ 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 880.6970 Liquid crystal vein locator.

(a) *Identification.* A liquid crystal vein locator is a device used to indicate the location of a vein by revealing variations in the surface temperature of the skin by displaying the color changes of heat sensitive liquid crystals (cholesteric esters).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 880.6980 Vein stabilizer.

(a) *Identification.* A vein stabilizer is a device consisting of a flat piece of plastic with two noninvasive prongs. The device is placed on the skin so that the prongs are on either side of a vein and hold it stable while a hypodermic needle is inserted into the vein.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it is also exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

PART 882—NEUROLOGICAL DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
882.1 Scope.
882.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Neurological Diagnostic Devices

882.1020 Rigidity analyzer.
882.1030 Ataxiagraph.
882.1200 Two-point discriminator.
882.1240 Echoencephalograph.
882.1275 Electroconductive media.
882.1310 Cortical electrode.
882.1320 Cutaneous electrode.
882.1330 Depth electrode.
882.1340 Nasopharyngeal electrode.
882.1350 Needle electrode.
882.1400 Electroencephalograph.
882.1410 Electroencephalograph electrode/lead tester.
882.1420 Electroencephalogram (EEG) signal spectrum analyzer.
Sec.
882.1430 Electroencephalograph test signal generator.
882.1460 Nystagmograph.
882.1480 Neurological endoscope.
882.1500 Esthesiometer.
882.1525 Tuning fork.
882.1540 Galvanic skin response measurement device.
882.1550 Nerve conduction velocity measurement device.
882.1560 Skin potential measurement device.
882.1570 Powered direct-contact temperature measurement device.
882.1610 Alpha monitor.
882.1620 Intracranial pressure monitoring device.
882.1700 Percussor.
882.1750 Pinwheel.
882.1790 Ocular plethysmograph.
882.1825 Rheoencephalograph.
882.1835 Physiological signal amplifier.
882.1845 Physiological signal conditioner.
882.1855 Electroencephalogram (EEG) telemetry system.
882.1870 Evoked response electrical stimulator.
882.1880 Evoked response mechanical stimulator.
882.1890 Evoked response photic stimulator.
882.1900 Evoked response auditory stimulator.
882.1925 Ultrasonic scanner calibration test block.
882.1950 Tremor transducer.

Subparts C-D—[Reserved]

Subpart E—Neurological Surgical Devices

882.4030 Skull plate anvil.
882.4060 Ventricular cannula.
882.4100 Ventricular catheter.
882.4125 Neurosurgical chair.
882.4150 Scalp clip.
882.4175 Aneurysm clip applier.
882.4190 Clip forming/cutting instrument.
882.4200 Clip removal instrument.
882.4215 Clip rack.
882.4250 Cryogenic surgical device.
882.4275 Dowel cutting instrument.
882.4300 Manual cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories.
882.4305 Powered compound cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories.
882.4310 Powered simple cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories.
882.4325 Cranial drill handpiece (brace).
882.4360 Electric cranial drill motor.
882.4370 Pneumatic cranial drill motor.
882.4400 Radiofrequency lesion generator.
882.4440 Neurosurgical headrests.
882.4460 Neurosurgical head holder (skull clamp).

Sec.
882.4500 Cranioplasty material forming instrument.
882.4525 Microsurgical instrument.
882.4535 Nonpowered neurosurgical instrument.
882.4545 Shunt system implantation instrument.
882.4560 Stereotaxic instrument.
882.4600 Leukotome.
882.4650 Neurosurgical suture needle.
882.4700 Cottonoid paddie.
882.4725 Radiofrequency lesion probe.
882.4750 Skull punch.
882.4800 Self-retaining retractor for neurosurgery.
882.4840 Manual rongeur.
882.4845 Powered rongeur.
882.4900 Skullplate screwdriver.

Subpart F—Neurological Therapeutic Devices

882.5030 Methyl methacrylate for aneurysmorrhaphy.
882.5050 Biofeedback device.
882.5070 Bite block.
882.5150 Intravascular occluding catheter.
882.5175 Carotid artery clamp.
882.5200 Aneurysm clip.
882.5225 Implanted malleable clip.
882.5235 Aversive conditioning device.
882.5250 Burr hole cover.
882.5275 Nerve cuff.
882.5300 Methyl methacrylate for cranioplasty.
882.5320 Preformed alterable cranioplasty plate.
882.5330 Preformed nonalterable cranioplasty plate.
882.5360 Cranioplasty plate fastener.
882.5500 Lesion temperature monitor.
882.5550 Central nervous system fluid shunt and components.
882.5800 Cranial electrotheraphy stimulator.
882.5810 External functional neuromuscular stimulator.
882.5820 Implanted cerebellar stimulator.
882.5830 Implanted diaphragmatic/phrenic nerve stimulator.
882.5840 Implanted intracerebral/subcortical stimulator for pain relief.
882.5850 Implanted spinal cord stimulator for bladder evacuation.
882.5860 Implanted neuromuscular stimulator.
882.5870 Implanted peripheral nerve stimulator for pain relief.
882.5880 Implanted spinal cord stimulator for pain relief.
882.5890 Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulator for pain relief.
882.5900 Preformed craniosynostosis strip.
882.5910 Dura substitute.
882.5940 Electroconvulsive therapy device.
882.5950 Artificial embolization device.
882.5960 Skull tongs for traction.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 882.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of neurological devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a neurological device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17739, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section, 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17739, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Neurological Diagnostic Devices

§ 882.1020 Rigidity analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* A rigidity analyzer is a device for quantifying the extent of the rigidity of a patient's limb to determine the effectiveness of drugs or other treatments.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1030 Ataxiagraph.

(a) *Identification.* An ataxiagraph is a device used to determine the extent of ataxia (failure of muscular coordination) by measuring the amount of swaying of the body when the patient is standing erect and with eyes closed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.1200 Two-point discriminator.

(a) *Identification.* A two-point discriminator is a device with points used for testing a patient's touch discrimination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 882.1240 Echoencephalograph.

(a) *Identification.* An echoencephalograph is an ultrasonic scanning device (including A-scan, B-scan, and doppler systems) that uses noninvasive transducers for measuring intracranial interfaces and blood flow velocity to and in the head.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1275 Electroconductive media.

(a) *Identification.* Electroconductive media are the conductive creams or gels used with external electrodes to reduce the impedance (resistance to alternating current) of the contact between the electrode surface and the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1310 Cortical electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A cortical electrode is an electrode which is temporarily placed on the surface of the brain for stimulating the brain or recording the brain's electrical activity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1320 Cutaneous electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A cutaneous electrode is an electrode that is applied directly to a patient's skin either to record physiological signals (e.g., the electroencephalogram) or to apply electrical stimulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1330 Depth electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A depth electrode is an electrode used for temporary stimulation of, or recording electrical signals at, subsurface levels of the brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1340 Nasopharyngeal electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A nasopharyngeal electrode is an electrode which is temporarily placed in the nasopharyngeal region for the purpose of recording electrical activity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1350 Needle electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A needle electrode is a device which is placed subcutaneously to stimulate or to record electrical signals.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1400 Electroencephalograph.

(a) *Identification.* An electroencephalograph is a device used to measure and record the electrical activity of the patient's brain obtained by placing two or more electrodes on the head.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1410 Electroencephalograph electrode/lead tester.

(a) *Identification.* An electroencephalograph electrode/lead tester is a device used for testing the impedance (resistance to alternating current) of the electrode and lead system of an electroencephalograph to assure that an adequate contact is made between the electrode and the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1420 Electroencephalogram (EEG) signal spectrum analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An electroencephalogram (EEG) signal spectrum analyzer is a device used to display the frequency content or power spectral density of the electroencephalogram (EEG) signal.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.1430 Electroencephalograph test signal generator.

(a) *Identification.* An electroencephalograph test signal generator is a device used to test or calibrate an electroencephalograph.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.1460 Nystagmograph.

(a) *Identification.* A nystagmograph is a device used to measure, record, or visually display the involuntary movements (nystagmus) of the eyeball.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1480 Neurological endoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A neurological endoscope is an instrument with a light source used to view the inside of the ventricles of the brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1500 Esthesiometer.

(a) *Identification.* An esthesiometer is a mechanical device which usually consists of a single rod or fiber which is held in the fingers of the physician or other examiner and which is used to determine whether a patient has tactile sensitivity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 882.1525 Tuning fork.

(a) *Identification.* A tuning fork is a mechanical device which resonates at a given frequency and is used to diagnose hearing disorders and to test for vibratory sense.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 882.1540 Galvanic skin response measurement device.

(a) *Identification.* A galvanic skin response measurement device is a device used to determine autonomic responses as psychological indicators by measuring the electrical resistance of the skin and the tissue path between two electrodes applied to the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1550 Nerve conduction velocity measurement device.

(a) *Identification.* A nerve conduction velocity measurement device is a device which measures nerve conduction time by applying a stimulus, usually to a patient's peripheral nerve. This device includes the stimulator and the electronic processing equipment for measuring and displaying the nerve conduction time.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1560 Skin potential measurement device.

(a) *Identification.* A skin potential measurement device is a general diagnostic device used to measure skin voltage by means of surface skin electrodes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1570 Powered direct-contact temperature measurement device.

(a) *Identification.* A powered direct-contact temperature measurement device is a device which contains a power source and is used to measure differences in temperature between two points on the body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1610 Alpha monitor.

(a) *Identification.* An alpha monitor is a device with electrodes that are placed on a patient's scalp to monitor that portion of the electroencephalogram which is referred to as the alpha wave.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1620 Intracranial pressure monitoring device.

(a) *Identification.* An intracranial pressure monitoring device is a device used for short-term monitoring and recording of intracranial pressures and pressure trends. The device includes the transducer, monitor, and interconnecting hardware.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1700 Percussor.

(a) *Identification.* A percussor is a small hammerlike device used by a physician to provide light blows to a body part. A percussor is used as a diagnostic aid during physical examinations.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 882.1750 Pinwheel.

(a) *Identification.* A pinwheel is a device with sharp points on a rotating wheel used for testing pain sensation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.1790 Ocular plethysmograph.

(a) *Identification.* An ocular plethysmograph is a device used to measure or detect volume changes in the eye produced by pulsations of the artery, to diagnose carotid artery occlusive disease (restrictions on blood flow in the carotid artery).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17739, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.1825 Rheoencephalograph.

(a) *Identification.* A rheoencephalograph is a device used to estimate a patient's cerebral circulation (blood flow in the brain) by electrical inpedance methods with direct electrical connections to the scalp or neck area.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.1835 Physiological signal amplifier.

(a) *Identification.* A physiological signal amplifier is a general purpose device used to electrically amplify signals derived from various physiological sources (e.g., the electroencephalogram).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1845 Physiological signal conditioner.

(a) *Identification.* A physiological signal conditioner is a device such as an integrator or differentiator used to modify physiological signals for recording and processing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1855 Electroencephalogram (EEG) telemetry system.

(a) *Identification.* An electroencephalogram (EEG) telemetry system consists of transmitters, receivers, and other components used for remotely monitoring or measuring EEG signals by means of radio or telephone transmission systems.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1870 Evoked response electrical stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An evoked response electrical stimulator is a device used to apply an electrical stimulus to a patient by means of skin electrodes for the purpose of measuring the evoked response.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1880 Evoked response mechanical stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An evoked response mechanical stimulator is a device used to produce a mechanical stimulus or a series of mechanical stimuli for the purpose of measuring a patient's evoked response.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1890 Evoked response photic stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An evoked response photic stimulator is a device used to generate and display a shifting pattern or to apply a brief light stimulus to a patient's eye for use in evoked response measurements or for electroencephalogram (EEG) activation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1900 Evoked response auditory stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An evoked response auditory stimulator is a device that produces a sound stimulus for use in evoked response measurements or electroencephalogram activation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.1925 Ultrasonic scanner calibration test block.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasonic scanner calibration test block is a block of material with known properties used to calibrate ultrasonic scanning devices (e.g., the echoencephalograph).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.1950 Tremor transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A tremor transducer is a device used to measure the degree of tremor caused by certain diseases.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subparts C–D—[Reserved]

Subpart E—Neurological Surgical Devices

§ 882.4030 Skull plate anvil.

(a) *Identification.* A skull plate anvil is a device used to form alterable skull plates in the proper shape to fit the curvature of a patient's skull.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4060 Ventricular cannula.

(a) *Identification.* A ventricular cannula is a device used to puncture the ventricles of the brain for aspiration or for injection. This device is frequently referred to as a ventricular needle.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4100 Ventricular catheter.

(a) *Identification.* A ventricular catheter is a device used to gain access to the cavities of the brain for injection of material into, or removal of material from, the brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4125 Neurosurgical chair.

(a) *Identification.* A neurosurgical chair is an operating room chair used to position and support a patient during neurosurgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4150 Scalp clip.

(a) *Identification.* A scalp clip is a plastic or metal clip used to stop bleeding during surgery on the scalp.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4175 Aneurysm clip applier.

(a) *Identification.* An aneurysm clip applier is a device used by the surgeon for holding and applying intracranial aneurysm clips.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4190 Clip forming/cutting instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A clip forming/cutting instrument is a device used by the physician to make tissue clips from wire stock.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4200 Clip removal instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A clip removal instrument is a device used to remove surgical clips from the patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4215 Clip rack.

(a) *Identification.* A clip rack is a device used to hold or store surgical clips during surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4250 Cryogenic surgical device.

(a) *Identification.* A cryogenic surgical device is a device used to destroy nervous tissue or produce lesions in nervous tissue by the application of extreme cold to the selected site.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4275 Dowel cutting instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A dowel cutting instrument is a device used to cut dowels of bone for bone grafting.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4300 Manual cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories

(a) *Identification.* Manual cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories are bone cutting and drilling instruments that are used without a power source on a patient's skull.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4305 Powered compound cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories.

(a) *Identification.* Powered compound cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories are bone cutting and drilling instruments used on a patient's skull. The instruments employ a clutch mechanism to disengage the tip of the instrument after penetrating the skull to prevent plunging of the tip into the brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4310 Powered simple cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories.

(a) *Identification.* Powered simple cranial drills, burrs, trephines, and their accessories are bone cutting and drilling instruments used on a patient's skull. The instruments are used with a power source but do not have a clutch mechanism to disengage the tip after penetrating the skull.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4325 Cranial drill handpiece (brace).

(a) *Identification.* A cranial drill handpiece (brace) is a hand holder, which is used without a power source, for drills, burrs, trephines, or other cutting tools that are used on a patient's skull.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4360 Electric cranial drill motor.

(a) *Identification.* An electric cranial drill motor is an electrically operated power source used with removable rotating surgical cutting tools or drill bits on a patient's skull.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4370 Pneumatic cranial drill motor.

(a) *Identification.* A pneumatic cranial drill motor is a pneumatically operated power source used with removable rotating surgical cutting tools or drill bits on a patient's skull.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4400 Radiofrequency lesion generator.

(a) *Identification.* A radiofrequency lesion generator is a device used to produce lesions in the nervous system or other tissue by the direct application of radiofrequency currents to selected sites.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4440 Neurosurgical headrests.

(a) *Identification.* A neurosurgical headrest is a device used to support the patient's head during a surgical procedure.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4460 Neurosurgical head holder (skull clamp).

(a) *Identification.* A neurosurgical head holder (skull clamp) is a device used to clamp the patient's skull to hold head and neck in a particular position during surgical procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4500 Cranioplasty material forming instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A cranioplasty material forming instrument is a roller used in the preparation and forming of cranioplasty (skull repair) materials.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4525 Microsurgical instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A microsurgical instrument is a nonpowered surgical instrument used in neurological microsurgery procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4535 Nonpowered neurosurgical instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered neurosurgical instrument is a hand instrument or an accessory to a hand instrument used during neurosurgical procedures to cut, hold, or manipulate tissue. It includes specialized chisels, osteotomes, curettes, dissectors, elevators, forceps, gouges, hooks, surgical knives, rasps, scissors, separators, spatulas, spoons, blades, blade holders, blade breakers, probes, etc.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4545 Shunt system implantation instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A shunt system implantation instrument is an instrument used in the implantation of cerebrospinal fluid shunts, and includes tunneling instruments for passing shunt components under the skin.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4560 Stereotaxic instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A stereotaxic instrument is a device consisting of a rigid frame with a calibrated guide mechanism for precisely positioning probes or other devices within a patient's brain, spinal cord, or other part of the nervous system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4600 Leukotome.

(a) *Identification.* A leukotome is a device used to cut sections out of the brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4650 Neurosurgical suture needle.

(a) *Identification.* A neurosurgical suture needle is a needle used in suturing during neurosurgical procedures or in the repair of nervous tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4700 Cottonoid paddie.

(a) *Identification.* A cottonoid paddie is a cotton pad used during surgery to protect nervous tissue, absorb fluids, or stop bleeding.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4725 Radiofrequency lesion probe.

(a) *Identification.* A radiofrequency lesion probe is a device connected to a radiofrequency (RF) lesion generator to deliver the RF energy to the site within the nervous system where a lesion is desired.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4750 Skull punch.

(a) *Identification.* A skull punch is a device used to punch holes through a patient's skull to allow fixation of cranioplasty plates or bone flaps by wire or other means.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 882.4800 Self-retaining retractor for neurosurgery.

(a) *Identification.* A self-retaining retractor for neurosurgery is a self-locking device used to hold the edges of a wound open during neurosurgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4840 Manual rongeur.

(a) *Identification.* A manual rongeur is a manually operated instrument used for cutting or biting bone during surgery involving the skull or spinal column.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4845 Powered rongeur.

(a) *Identification.* A powered rongeur is a powered instrument used for cutting or biting bone during surgery involving the skull or spinal column.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.4900 Skullplate screwdriver.

(a) *Identification.* A skullplate screwdriver is a tool used by the surgeon to fasten cranioplasty plates or skullplates to a patient's skull by screws.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

Subpart F—Neurological Therapeutic Devices

§ 882.5030 Methyl methacrylate for aneurysmorrhaphy.

(a) *Identification.* Methyl methacrylate for aneurysmorrhaphy (repair of aneurysms, which are balloonlike sacs formed on blood vessels) is a self-curing acrylic used to encase and reinforce intracranial aneurysms that are not amenable to conservative management, removal, or obliteration by aneurysm clip.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5050 Biofeedback device.

(a) *Identification.* A biofeedback device is an instrument that provides a visual or auditory signal corresponding to the status of one or more of a patient's physiological parameters (e.g., brain alpha wave activity, muscle activity, skin temperature, etc.) so that the patient can control voluntarily these physiological parameters.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5070 Bite block.

(a) *Identification.* A bite block is a device inserted into a patient's mouth to protect the tongue and teeth while the patient is having convulsions.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5150 Intravascular occluding catheter.

(a) *Identification.* An intravascular occluding catheter is a catheter with an inflatable or detachable balloon tip that is used to block a blood vessel to treat malformations, e.g., aneurysms (balloonlike sacs formed on blood vessels) of intracranial blood vessels.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.5175 Carotid artery clamp.

(a) *Identification.* A carotid artery clamp is a device that is surgically placed around a patient's carotid artery (the principal artery in the neck that supplies blood to the brain) and has a removable adjusting mechanism that protrudes through the skin of the patient's neck. The clamp is used to occlude the patient's carotid artery to treat intracranial aneurysms (balloonlike sacs formed on blood vessels) or other intracranial vascular malformations that are difficult to attach directly by reducing the blood pressure and blood flow to the aneurysm or malformation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5200 Aneurysm clip.

(a) *Identification.* An aneurysm clip is a device used to occlude an intracranial aneurysm (a balloonlike sac formed on a blood vessel) to prevent it from bleeding or bursting.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5225 Implanted malleable clip.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted malleable clip is a bent wire or staple that is forcibly closed with a special instrument to occlude an intracranial blood vessel or aneurysm (a balloonlike sac formed on a blood vessel), stop bleeding, or hold tissue or a mechanical device in place in a patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5235 Aversive conditioning device.

(a) *Identification.* An aversive conditioning device is an instrument used to administer an electrical shock or other noxious stimulus to a patient to modify undesirable behavioral characteristics.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5250 Burr hole cover.

(a) *Identification.* A burr hole cover is a plastic or metal device used to cover or plug holes drilled into the skull during surgery and to reattach cranial bone removed during surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5275 Nerve cuff.

(a) *Identification.* A nerve cuff is a tubular silicone rubber sheath used to encase a nerve for aid in repairing the nerve (e.g., to prevent ingrowth of scar tissue) and for capping the end of the nerve to prevent the formation of neuroma (tumors).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5300 Methyl methacrylate for cranioplasty.

(a) *Identification.* Methyl methacrylate for cranioplasty (skull repair) is a self-curing acrylic that a surgeon uses to repair a skull defect in a patient. At the time of surgery, the surgeon initiates polymerization of the material and forms it into a plate or other appropriate shape to repair the defect.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5320 Preformed alterable cranioplasty plate.

(a) *Identification.* A preformed alterable cranioplasty plate is a device that is implanted into a patient to repair a skull defect. It is constructed of a material, e.g., tantalum, that can be altered or reshaped at the time of surgery without changing the chemical behavior of the material.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5330 Preformed nonalterable cranioplasty plate.

(a) *Identification.* A preformed nonalterable cranioplasty plate is a device that is implanted in a patient to repair a skull defect and is constructed of a material, e.g., stainless steel or vitallium, that cannot be altered or reshaped at the time of surgery without changing the chemical behavior of the material.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5360 Cranioplasty plate fastener.

(a) *Identification.* A cranioplasty plate fastener is a screw, wire, or other article made of tantalum, vitallium, or stainless steel used to secure a plate to the patient's skull to repair a skull defect.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5500 Lesion temperature monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A lesion temperature monitor is a device used to monitor the tissue temperature at the site where a lesion (tissue destruction) is to be made when a surgeon uses a radiofrequency (RF) lesion generator and probe.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5550 Central nervous system fluid shunt and components.

(a) *Identification.* A central nervous system fluid shunt is a device or combination of devices used to divert fluid from the brain or other part of the central nervous system to an internal delivery site or an external receptacle for the purpose of relieving elevated intracranial pressure or fluid volume (e.g., due to hydrocephalus). Components of a central nervous system shunt include catheters, valved catheters, valves, connectors, and other accessory components intended to facilitate use of the shunt or evaluation of a patient with a shunt.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5800 Cranial electrotheraphy stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* A cranial electrotheraphy stimulator is a device that applies electrical current to a patient's head to treat insomnia, depression, or anxiety.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.5810 External functional neuromuscular stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An external functional neuromuscular stimulator is an electrical stimulator that uses external electrodes for stimulating muscles in the leg and ankle of partially paralyzed patients (e.g., after stroke) to provide flexion of the foot and thus improve the patient's gait.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5820 Implanted cerebellar stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted cerebellar stimulator is a device used to stimulate electrically a patient's cerebellar cortex for the treatment of intractable epilepsy, spasticity, and some movement disorders. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed on the patient's cerebellum and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before September 26, 1984. Any implanted cerebellar stimulator that was not in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has not on or before September 26, 1984 been found by FDA to be substantially equivalent to an implanted cerebellar stimulator that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976 shall have an approved PMA or declared completed PDP in effect before beginning commercial distribution.

[44 FR 51730–51778, Sept. 4, 1979 and 49 FR 26574, June 28, 1984]

§ 882.5830 Implanted diaphragmatic/phrenic nerve stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted diaphragmatic/phrenic nerve stimulator is a device that provides electrical stimulation of a patient's phrenic nerve to contract the diaphragm rhythmically and produce breathing in patients who have hypoventilation (a state in which an abnormally low amount of air enters the lungs) caused by brain stem disease, high cervical spinal cord injury, or chronic lung disease. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed around the patient's phrenic nerve and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or a notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before July 7, 1986 for any implanted diaphragmatic/phrenic nerve stimulator that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has on or before July 7, 1986 been found to be substantially equivalent to an implanted diaphragmatic/phrenic nerve stimulator that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976. Any other implanted diaphragmatic/phrenic nerve stimulator shall have an approved PMA or a declared completed PDP in effect before being placed in commercial distribution.

[44 FR 51730–51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 51 FR 12101, Apr. 8, 1986]

§ 882.5840 Implanted intracerebral/subcortical stimulator for pain relief.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted intracerebral/subcortical stimulator for pain relief is a device that applies electrical current to subsurface areas of a patient's brain to treat severe intractable pain. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed within a patient's brain and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or a notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before March 1, 1989, for any implanted intracerebral/subcortical stimulator for pain relief that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has on or before March 1, 1989, been found to be substantially equivalent to an implanted intracerebral/subcortical stimulator for pain relief that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976. Any other implanted intracerebral/subcortical stimulator for pain relief shall have an approved PMA or a declared completed PDP in effect before being placed in commercial distribution.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 53 FR 48621, Dec. 1, 1988]

§ 882.5850 Implanted spinal cord stimulator for bladder evacuation.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted spinal cord stimulator for bladder evacuation is an electrical stimulator used to empty the bladder of a paraplegic patient who has a complete transection of the spinal cord and who is unable to empty his or her bladder by reflex means or by the intermittent use of catheters. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed on the conus medullaris portion of the patient's spinal cord and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.5860 Implanted neuromuscular stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted neuromuscular stimulator is a device that provides electrical stimulation to a patient's peroneal or femoral nerve to cause muscles in the leg to contract, thus improving the gait in a patient with a paralyzed leg. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed around a patient's nerve and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver. The external transmitter is activated by a switch in the heel in the patient's shoe.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.5870 Implanted peripheral nerve stimulator for pain relief.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted peripheral nerve stimulator for pain relief is a device that is used to stimulate electrically a peripheral nerve in a patient to relieve severe intractable pain. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed around a peripheral nerve and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5880 Implanted spinal cord stimulator for pain relief.

(a) *Identification.* An implanted spinal cord stimulator for pain relief is a device that is used to stimulate electrically a patient's spinal cord to relieve severe intractable pain. The stimulator consists of an implanted receiver with electrodes that are placed on the patient's spinal cord and an external transmitter for transmitting the stimulating pulses across the patient's skin to the implanted receiver.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5890 Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulator for pain relief.

(a) *Identification.* A transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulator for pain relief is a device used to apply an electrical current to electrodes on a patient's skin to treat pain.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5900 Preformed craniosynostosis strip.

(a) *Identification.* A preformed craniosynostosis strip is a plastic strip used to cover bone edges of craniectomy sites (sites where the skull has been cut) to prevent the bone from regrowing in patients whose skull sutures are abnormally fused together.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5910 Dura substitute.

(a) *Identification.* A dura substitute is a sheet or material that is used to repair the dura mater (the membrane surrounding the brain).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 882.5940 Electroconvulsive therapy device.

(a) *Identification.* An electroconvulsive therapy device is a device used for treating severe psychiatric disturbances (e.g., severe depression) by inducing in the patient a major motor seizure by applying a brief intense electrical current to the patient's head.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.5950 Artificial embolization device.

(a) *Identification.* An artificial embolization device is an object that is placed in a blood vessel to permanently obstruct blood flow to an aneurysm or other vascular malformation.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 882.3.

[44 FR 51730-51778, Sept. 4, 1979, as amended at 52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 882.5960 Skull tongs for traction.

(a) *Identification.* Skull tongs for traction is an instrument used to immobilize a patient with a cervical spine injury (e.g., fracture or dislocation). The device is caliper shaped with tips that penetrate the skin. It is anchored to the skull and has a heavy weight attached to it that maintains, by traction, the patient's position.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

PART 884—OBSTETRICAL AND GYNECOLOGICAL DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
884.1 Scope.
884.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Obstetrical and Gynecological Diagnostic Devices

884.1040 Viscometer for cervical mucus.
884.1050 Endocervical aspirator.
884.1060 Endometrial aspirator.
884.1100 Endometrial brush.
884.1175 Endometrial suction curette and accessories.
884.1185 Endometrial washer.
884.1300 Uterotubal carbon dioxide insufflator and accessories.
884.1425 Perineometer.
884.1550 Amniotic fluid sampler (amniocentesis tray).
884.1560 Fetal blood sampler.
884.1600 Transabdominal amnioscope (fetoscope) and accessories.
884.1630 Colposcope.
884.1640 Culdoscope and accessories.
884.1660 Transcervical endoscope (amnioscope) and accessories.
884.1690 Hysteroscope and accessories.
884.1700 Hysteroscopic insufflator.
884.1720 Gynecologic laparoscope and accessories.
884.1730 Laparoscopic insufflator.

Subpart C—Obstetrical and Gynecological Monitoring Devices

884.2050 Obstetric data analyzer.
884.2225 Obstetric-gynecologic ultrasonic imager.
884.2600 Fetal cardiac monitor.
884.2620 Fetal electroencephalographic monitor.
884.2640 Fetal phonocardiographic monitor and accessories.

Sec.
884.2660 Fetal ultrasonic monitor and accessories.
884.2675 Fetal scalp circular (spiral) electrode and applicator.
884.2685 Fetal scalp clip electrode and applicator.
884.2700 Intrauterine pressure monitor and accessories.
884.2720 External uterine contraction monitor and accessories.
884.2740 Perinatal monitoring system and accessories.
884.2900 Fetal stethoscope.
884.2960 Obstetric ultrasonic transducer and accessories.
884.2980 Telethermographic system.
884.2982 Liquid crystal thermographic system.

Subpart D—Obstetrical and Gynecological Prosthetic Devices

884.3200 Cervical drain.
884.3575 Vaginal pessary.
884.3650 Fallopian tube prosthesis.
884.3900 Vaginal stent.

Subpart E—Obstetrical and Gynecological Surgical Devices

884.4100 Endoscopic electrocautery and accessories.
884.4120 Gynecologic electrocautery and accessories.
884.4150 Bipolar endoscopic coagulator-cutter and accessories.
884.4160 Unipolar endoscopic coagulator-cutter and accessories.
884.4250 Expandable cervical dilator.
884.4260 Hygroscopic Laminaria cervical dilator.
884.4270 Vibratory cervical dilators.
884.4340 Fetal vacuum extractor.
884.4400 Obstetric forceps.
884.4500 Obstetric fetal destructive instrument.
884.4520 Obstetric-gynecologic general manual instrument.
884.4530 Obstetric-gynecologic specialized manual instrument.
884.4550 Gynecologic surgical laser.
884.4900 Obstetric table and accessories.

Subpart F—Obstetrical and Gynecological Therapeutic Devices

884.5050 Metreurynter-balloon abortion system.
884.5070 Vacuum abortion system.
884.5100 Obstetric anesthesia set.
884.5150 Nonpowered breast pump.
884.5160 Powered breast pump.
884.5225 Abdominal decompression chamber.
884.5250 Cervical cap.

Sec.
884.5300 Condom.
884.5310 Condom with spermicidal lubricant.
884.5350 Contraceptive diaphragm and accessories.
884.5360 Contraceptive intrauterine device (IUD) and introducer.
884.5380 Contraceptive tubal occlusion device (TOD) and introducer.
884.5390 Perineal heater.
884.5400 Menstrual cup.
884.5425 Scented or scented deodorized menstrual pad.
884.5435 Unscented menstrual pad.
884.5460 Scented or scented deodorized menstrual tampon.
884.5470 Unscented menstrual tampon.
884.5900 Therapeutic vaginal douche apparatus.
884.5920 Vaginal insufflator.
884.5940 Powered vaginal muscle stimulator for therapeutic use.
884.5960 Genital vibrator for therapeutic use.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 884.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of obstetrical and gynecological devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a obstetrical and gynecological device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal

Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17740, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Obstetrical and Gynecological Diagnostic Devices

§ 884.1040 Viscometer for cervical mucus.

(a) *Identification.* A viscometer for cervical mucus is a device that is intended to measure the relative viscoelasticity of cervical mucus collected from a female patient. Measurements of relative viscoelasticity are intended for use as an adjunct in the clinical evaluation of a female with chronic infertility, to determine the time of ovulation and the penetrability of cervical mucus to motile sperm.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

[47 FR 14706, Apr. 6, 1982]

§ 884.1050 Endocervical aspirator.

(a) *Identification.* An endocervical aspirator is a device designed to remove tissue from the endocervix (mucous membrane lining the canal of the cervix of the uterus) by suction with a syringe, bulb and pipette, or catheter. This device is used to evaluate endocervical tissue to detect malignant and premalignant lesions.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1060 Endometrial aspirator.

(a) *Identification.* An endometrial aspirator is a device designed to remove materials from the endometrium (the mucosal lining of the uterus) by suction with a syringe, bulb and pipette, or catheter. This device is used to study endometrial cytology (cells).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.1100 Endometrial brush.

(a) *Identification.* An endometrial brush is a device designed to remove samples of the endometrium (the mucosal lining of the uterus) by brushing its surface. This device is used to study endometrial cytology (cells).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.1175 Endometrial suction curette and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An endometrial suction curette is a device used to remove material from the uterus and from the mucosal lining of the uterus by scraping and vacuum suction. This device is used to obtain tissue for biopsy or for menstrual extraction. This generic type of device may include catheters, syringes, and tissue filters or traps.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1185 Endometrial washer.

(a) *Identification.* An endometrial washer is a device used to remove materials from the endometrium (the mucosal lining of the uterus) by washing with water or saline solution and then aspirating with negative pressure. This device is used to study endometrial cytology (cells).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.1300 Uterotubal carbon dioxide insufflator and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A uterotubal carbon dioxide insufflator and accessories is a device used to test the patency (lack of obstruction) of the fallopian tubes by pressurizing the uterus and fallopian tubes and filling them with carbon dioxide gas.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1425 Perineometer.

(a) *Identification.* A perineometer is a device consisting of a fluid-filled sack for intravaginal use that is attached to an external manometer. The devices measure the strength of the perineal muscles by offering resistence to a patient's voluntary contractions of these muscles and is used to diagnose and to correct, through exercise, uninary incontinence or sexual dysfunction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1550 Amniotic fluid sampler (amniocentesis tray).

(a) *Identification.* An amniotic fluid sampler is a device used for amniocentesis (transabdominal aspiration of fluid from the amniotic sac). The sampler consists of disposable instruments, drapes, specimen containers, and other accessories on a tray.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1560 Fetal blood sampler.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal blood sampler is a device used to obtain fetal blood transcervically through an endoscope by puncturing the fetal skin with a short blade and drawing blood into a heparinized tube. The fetal blood pH is determined and used in the diagnosis of fetal distress and fetal hypoxia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1600 Transabdominal amnioscope (fetoscope) and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A transabdominal amnioscope is a device designed to permit direct visual examination of the fetus by a telescopic system via abdominal entry. The device is used to ascertain fetal abnormalities, to obtain fetal blood samples, or to obtain fetal tissue. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: trocar and cannula, instruments used through an operating channel or through a separate cannula associated with the amnioscope, light source and cables, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or a notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before January 29, 1987 for any transabdominal amnioscope (fetoscope) and accessories that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has on or before January 29, 1987 been found to be substantially equivalent to a transabdominal amnioscope (fetoscope) and accessories that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976. Any other transabdominal amnioscope (fetoscope) and accessories shall have an approved PMA or a declared completed PDP in effect before being placed in commercial distribution.

[45 FR 12684–12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 51 FR 39845, Oct. 31, 1986]

§ 884.1630 Colposcope.

(a) *Identification.* A colposcope is a device designed to permit direct viewing of the tissues of the vagina and cervix by a telescopic system located outside the vagina. It is used to diagnose abnormalities and select areas for biopsy. This generic type of device may include a light source, cables, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1640 Culdoscope and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A culdoscope is a device designed to permit direct viewing of the organs within the peritoneum by a telescopic system introduced into the pelvic cavity through the posterior vaginal fornix. It is used to perform diagnostic and surgical procedures on the female genital organs. This generic type of device may include trocar and cannula, instruments used through an operating channel, scope preheaters, light source and cables, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1660 Transcervical endoscope (amnioscope) and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A transcervical endoscope is a device designed to permit direct viewing of the fetus and amniotic sac by means of an open tube introduced into the uterus through the cervix. The device may be used to visualize the fetus or amniotic fluid and to sample fetal blood or amniotic fluid. This generic type of device may include obturators, instruments used through an operating channel, light sources and cables, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1690 Hysteroscope and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A hysteroscope is a device used to permit direct viewing of the cervical canal and the uterine cavity by a telescopic system introduced into the uterus through the cervix. It is used to perform diagnostic and surgical procedures other than sterilization. This generic type of device may include obturators and sheaths, instruments used through an operating channel, scope preheaters, light sources and cables, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1700 Hysteroscopic insufflator.

(a) *Identification.* A hysteroscopic insufflator is a device designed to distend the uterus by filling the uterine cavity with a liquid or gas to facilitate viewing with a hysteroscope.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1720 Gynecologic laparoscope and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A gynecologic laparoscope is a device used to permit direct viewing of the organs within the peritoneum by a telescopic system introduced through the abdominal wall. It is used to perform diagnostic and surgical procedures on the female genital organs. This generic type of device may include: Trocar and cannula, instruments used through an operating channel, scope preheater, light source and cables, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.1730 Laparoscopic insufflator.

(a) *Identification.* A laparoscopic insufflator is a device used to facilitate the use of the laparoscope by filling the peritoneal cavity with gas to distend it.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart C—Obstetrical and Gynecological Monitoring Devices

§ 884.2050 Obstetric data analyzer.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric data analyzer (i.e., fetal status data analyzer) is a device used during labor to analyze electronic signal data obtained from fetal and maternal monitors and to indicate clinical diagnosis of fetal well-being. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, electronic interfaces for other equipment, and power supplies and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.2225 Obstetric-gynecologic ultrasonic imager.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric-gynecologic ultrasonic imager is a device designed to transmit and receive ultrasonic energy into and from a female patient by pulsed echoscopy. This device is used to provide a visual representation of some physiological or artificial structure, or of a fetus, for diagnostic purposes during a limited period of time. This generic type of device may include the following: signal analysis and display equipment, electronic interfaces for other equipment, patient and equipment supports, coupling gel, and component parts. This generic type of device does not include devices used to monitor the changes in some physiological condition over long periods of time.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2600 Fetal cardiac monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal cardiac monitor is a device used to ascertain fetal heart activity during pregnancy and labor. The device is designed to separate fetal heart signals from maternal heart signals by analyzing electrocardiographic signal (electrical potentials generated during contraction and relaxation of heart muscle) obtained from the maternal abdomen with external electrodes. This generic type of device may include an alarm that signals when the heart rate crosses a preset threshold. This generic type of device includes the "fetal cardiotachometer (with sensors)" and the "fetal electrocardiographic monitor."

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2620 Fetal electroencephalographic monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal electroencephalographic monitor is a device used to detect, measure, and record in graphic form (by means of one or more electrodes placed transcervically on the fetal scalp during labor) the rhythmically varying electrical skin potentials produced by the fetal brain.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.2640 Fetal phonocardiographic monitor and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal phonocardiographic monitor is a device designed to detect, measure, and record fetal heart sounds electronically, in graphic form, and noninvasively, to ascertain fetal condition during labor. This generic type of device includes the following accessories: signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, and other component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2660 Fetal ultrasonic monitor and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal ultrasonic monitor is a device designed to transmit and receive ultrasonic energy into and from the pregnant woman, usually by means of continuous wave (doppler) echoscopy. The device is used to represent some physiological condition or characteristic in a measured value over a period of time (e.g., perinatal monitoring during labor) or in an immediately perceptible form (e.g., use of the ultrasonic stethoscope). This generic type of device may include the following accessories: signal analysis and display equipment, electronic interfaces for other equipment, patient and equipment supports, and component parts. This generic type of device does not include devices used to image some relatively unchanging physiological structure or interpret a physiological condition, but does include devices which may be set to alarm automatically at a predetermined threshold value.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2675 Fetal scalp circular (spiral) electrode and applicator.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal scalp circular (spiral) electrode and applicator is a device used to obtain a fetal electrocardiogram during labor and delivery. It establishes electrical contact between fetal skin and an external monitoring device by a shallow subcutaneous puncture of fetal scalp tissue with a curved needle or needles. This generic type of device includes nonreusable spiral electrodes and reusable circular electrodes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2685 Fetal scalp clip electrode and applicator.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal scalp clip electrode and applicator is a device designed to establish electrical contact between fetal skin and an external monitoring device by means of pinching skin tissue with a nonreusable clip. This device is used to obtain a fetal electrocardiogram. This generic type of device may include a clip electrode applicator.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.2700 Intrauterine pressure monitor and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An intrauterine pressure monitor is a device designed to detect and measure intrauterine and amniotic fluid pressure with a catheter placed transcervically into the uterine cavity. The device is used to monitor intensity, duration, and frequency of uterine contractions during labor. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2720 External uterine contraction monitor and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An external uterine contraction monitor (i.e., the tokodynamometer) is a device used to monitor the progress of labor. It measures the duration, frequency, and relative pressure of uterine contractions with a transducer strapped to the maternal abdomen. This generic type of device may include an external pressure transducer, support straps, and other patient and equipment supports.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2740 Perinatal monitoring system and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A perinatal monitoring system is a device used to show graphically the relationship between maternal labor and the fetal heart rate by means of combining and coordinating uterine contraction and fetal heart monitors with appropriate displays of the well-being of the fetus during pregnancy, labor, and delivery. This generic type of device may include any of the devices subject to §§ 884.2600, 884.2640, 884.2660, 884.2675, 884.2700, and 884.2720. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: Central monitoring system and remote repeaters, signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, and component parts.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2900 Fetal stethoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal stethoscope is a device used for listening to fetal heart sounds. It is designed to transmit the fetal heart sounds not only through sound channels by air conduction, but also through the user's head by tissue conduction into the user's ears. It does not use ultrasonic energy. This device is designed to eliminate noise interference commonly caused by handling conventional stethoscopes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 884.2960 Obstetric ultrasonic transducer and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric ultrasonic transducer is a device used to apply ultrasonic energy to, and to receive ultrasonic energy from, the body in conjunction with an obstetric monitor or imager. The device converts electrical signals into ultrasonic energy, and vice versa, by means of an assembly distinct from an ultrasonic generator. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: coupling gel, preamplifiers, amplifiers, signal conditioners with their power supply, connecting cables, and component parts. This generic type of device does not include devices used to generate the ultrasonic frequency electrical signals for application.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.2980 Telethermographic system.

(a) [Reserved]

(b) *Telethermographic system intended for use alone in diagnostic screening for detection of breast cancer or other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A telethermographic system for use as the sole diagnostic screening tool for detection of breast cancer or other uses is an electrically powered device with a detector that is intended to measure, without touching the patient's skin, the self-emanating infrared radiation that reveals the temperature variations of the surface of the body. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(2) *Classification.* Class III.

(3) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before the device described in paragraph (b)(1) may be commercially distributed. See § 884.3.

[53 FR 1566, Jan. 20, 1988]

§ 884.2982 Liquid crystal thermographic system.

(a) *A nonelectrically powered liquid crystal thermographic system intended for adjunctive use in diagnostic screening for detection of breast cancer or other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A nonelectrically powered liquid crystal thermographic system intended for use as an adjunct to physical palpation or mammography in diagnostic screening for detection of breast cancer or other uses is a nonelectrically powered device applied to the skin that displays the color patterns of heat sensitive cholesteric liquid crystals that respond to temperature variations of the surface of the body. This generic type of device may include patient and equipment supports, a means to ensure thermal contact between the patient's skin and the liquid crystals, component parts, and accessories.

(2) *Classification.* Class I.

(b) *A nonelectrically powered or an AC-powered liquid crystal thermographic system intended for use alone in diagnostic screening for detection of breast cancer or other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A nonelectrically powered or an AC-powered liquid crystal thermographic system intended for use as the sole diagnostic screening tool for detection of breast cancer or other uses is a nonelectrically powered or an AC-powered device applied to the skin that displays the color patterns of heat sensitive cholesteric liquid crystals that respond to temperature variations of the surface of the body. This generic type of device may include image display and recording equipment, patient and equipment supports, a means to ensure thermal contact between the patient's skin and the liquid crystals, component parts, and accessories.

(2) *Classification.* Class III.

(3) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before the device described in paragraph (b)(1) may be commercially distributed. See § 884.3.

[53 FR 1566, Jan. 20, 1988]

Subpart D—Obstetrical and Gynecological Prosthetic Devices

§ 884.3200 Cervical drain.

(a) *Identification.* A cervical drain is a device designed to provide an exit channel for draining discharge from the cervix after pelvic surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.3575 Vaginal pessary.

(a) *Identification.* A vaginal pessary is a removable structure placed in the vagina to support the pelvic organs and is used to treat conditions such as uterine prolapse (falling down of uterus), uterine retroposition (backward displacement), or gynecologic hernia.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.3650 Fallopian tube prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A fallopian tube prosthesis is a device designed to maintain the patency (openness) of the fallopian tube and is used after reconstructive surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.3900 Vaginal stent.

(a) *Identification.* A vaginal stent is a device used to enlarge the vagina by stretching, or to support the vagina and to hold a skin graft after reconstructive surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart E—Obstetrical and Gynecological Surgical Devices

§ 884.4100 Endoscopic electrocautery and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An endoscopic electrocautery is a device used to perform female sterilization under endoscopic observation. It is designed to coagulate fallopian tube tissue with a probe heated by low-voltage energy. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: electrical generators, probes, and electrical cables.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684–12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.4120 Gynecologic electrocautery and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A gynecologic electrocautery is a device designed to destroy tissue with high temperatures by tissue contact with an electrically heated probe. It is used to excise cervical lesions, perform biopsies, or treat chronic cervicitis under direct visual observation. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: an electrical generator, a probe, and electrical cables.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4150 Bipolar endoscopic coagulator-cutter and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A bipolar endoscopic coagulator-cutter is a device used to perform female sterilization and other operative procedures under endoscopic observation. It destroys tissue with high temperatures by directing a high frequency electrical current through tissue between two electrical contacts of a probe. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: an electrical generator, probes, and electrical cables.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.4160 Unipolar endoscopic coagulator-cutter and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A unipolar endoscopic coagulator-cutter is a device designed to destroy tissue with high temperatures by directing a high frequency electrical current through the tissue between an energized probe and a grounding plate. It is used in female sterilization and in other operative procedures under endoscopic observation. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: an electrical generator, probes and electrical cables, and a patient grounding plate. This generic type of device does not include devices used to perform female sterilization under hysteroscopic observation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4250 Expandable cervical dilator.

(a) *Identification.* An expandable cervical dilator is an instrument with two handles and two opposing blades used manually to dilate (stretch open) the cervical os.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.4260 Hygroscopic Laminaria cervical dilator.

(a) *Identification.* A hygroscopic *Laminaria* cervical dilator is a device designed to dilate (stretch open) the cervical os by cervical insertion of a conical and expansible material made from the root of a seaweed (*Laminaria* digitata or *Laminaria* japonica). The device is used to induce abortion.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4270 Vibratory cervical dilators.

(a) *Identification.* A vibratory cervical dilator is a device designed to dilate the cervical os by stretching it with a power-driven vibrating probe head. The device is used to gain access to the uterus or to induce abortion, but is not to be used during labor when a viable fetus is desired or anticipated.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.4340 Fetal vacuum extractor.

(a) *Identification.* A fetal vacuum extractor is a device used to facilitate delivery. The device enables traction to be applied to the fetal head (in the birth canal) by means of a suction cup attached to the scalp and is powered by an external vacuum source. This generic type of device may include the cup, hosing, vacuum source, and vacuum control.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4400 Obstetric forceps.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric forceps is a device consisting of two blades, with handles, designed to grasp and apply traction to the fetal head in the birth passage and facilitate delivery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

884.4500 Obstetric fetal destructive instrument.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric fetal destructive instrument is a device designed to crush or pull the fetal body to facilitate the delivery of a dead or anomalous (abnormal) fetus. This generic type of device includes the cleidoclast, cranioclast, craniotribe, and destructive hook.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4520 Obstetric-gynecologic general manual instrument.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric-gynecologic general manual instrument is one of a group of devices used to perform simple obstetric and gynecologic manipulative functions. This generic type of device consists of the following:

(1) An episiotomy scissors is a cutting instrument, with two opposed shearing blades, used for surgical incision of the vulvar orifice for obstetrical purposes.

(2) A fiberoptic metal vaginal speculum is a metal instrument, with fiberoptic light, used to expose and illuminate the interior of the vagina.

(3) A metal vaginal speculum is a metal instrument used to expose the interior of the vagina.

(4) An umbilical scissors is a cutting instrument, with two opposed shearing blades, used to cut the umbilical cord.

(5) A uterine clamp is an instrument used to hold the uterus by compression.

(6) A uterine packer is an instrument used to introduce dressing into the uterus or vagina.

(7) A vaginal applicator is an instrument used to insert medication into the vagina.

(8) A vaginal retractor is an instrument used to maintain vaginal exposure by separating the edges of the vagina and holding back the tissue.

(9) A gynecological fibroid hook is an instrument used to exert traction upon a fibroid.

(10) A pelvimeter (external) is an instrument used to measure the external diameters of the pelvis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 884.4530 Obstetric-gynecologic specialized manual instrument.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric-gynecologic specialized manual instrument is one of a group of devices used during obstetric-gynecologic procedures to perform manipulative diagnostic and surgical functions (e.g., dilating, grasping, measuring, and scraping), where structural integrity is the chief criterion of device performance. This type of device consists of the following:

(1) An amniotome is an instrument used to rupture the fetal membranes.

(2) A circumcision clamp is an instrument used to compress the foreskin of the penis during circumcision of a male infant.

(3) An umbilical clamp is an instrument used to compress the umbilical cord.

(4) A uterine curette is an instrument used to scrape and remove material from the uterus.

(5) A fixed-size cervical dilator is any of a series of bougies of various sizes used to dilate the cervical os by stretching the cervix.

(6) A uterine elevator is an instrument inserted into the uterus used to lift and manipulate the uterus.

(7) A gynecological surgical forceps is an instrument with two blades and handles used to pull, grasp, or compress during gynecological examination.

(8) A cervical cone knife is a cutting instrument used to excise and remove tissue from the cervix.

(9) A gynecological cerclage needle is a looplike instrument used to suture the cervix.

(10) A hook-type contraceptive intrauterine device (IUD) remover is an instrument used to remove an IUD from the uterus.

(11) A gynecological fibroid screw is an instrument used to hold onto a fibroid.

(12) A uterine sound is an instrument used to determine the depth of the uterus by inserting it into the uterine cavity.

(13) A cytological cervical spatula is a blunt instrument used to scrape and remove cytological material from the surface of the cervix or vagina.

(14) A gynecological biopsy forceps is an instrument with two blades and handles used for gynecological biopsy procedures.

(15) A uterine tenaculum is a hook-like instrument used to seize and hold the cervix or fundus.

(16) An internal pelvimeter is an instrument used within the vagina to measure the diameter and capacity of the pelvis.

(17) A nonmetal vaginal speculum is a nonmetal instrument used to expose the interior of the vagina.

(18) A fiberoptic nonmetal vaginal speculum is a nonmetal instrument, with fiberoptic light, used to expose and illuminate the interior of the vagina.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4550 Gynecologic surgical laser.

(a) *Identification.* A gynecologic surgical laser is a continuous wave carbon dioxide laser designed to destroy tissue thermally or to remove tissue by radiant light energy. The device is used only in conjunction with a colposcope as part of a gynecological surgical system. A colposcope is a magnifying lens system used to examine the vagina and cervix.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.4900 Obstetric table and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric table is a device with adjustable sections designed to support a patient in the various positions required during obstetric and gynecologic procedures. This generic type of device may include the following accessories: patient equipment, support attachments, and cabinets for warming instruments and disposing of wastes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart F—Obstetrical and Gynecological Therapeutic Devices

§ 884.5050 Metreurynter-balloon abortion system.

(a) *Identification.* A metreurynter-balloon abortion system is a device used to induce abortion. The device is inserted into the uterine cavity, inflated, and slowly extracted. The extraction of the balloon from the uterus causes dilation of the cervical os. This generic type of device may include pressure sources and pressure controls.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.5070 Vacuum abortion system.

(a) *Identification.* A vacuum abortion system is a device designed to aspirate transcervically the products of conception or menstruation from the uterus by using a cannula connected to a suction source. This device is used for pregnancy termination or menstrual regulation. This type of device may include aspiration cannula, vacuum source, and vacuum controller.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5100 Obstetric anesthesia set.

(a) *Identification.* An obstetric anesthesia set is an assembly of antiseptic solution, needles, needle guides, syringes, and other accessories, intended for use with an anesthetic drug. This device is used to administer regional blocks (e.g., paracervical, uterosacral, and pudendal) that may be used during labor, delivery, or both.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5150 Nonpowered breast pump.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered breast pump is a manual suction device used to express milk from the breast.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 884.5160 Powered breast pump.

(a) *Identification.* A powered breast pump in an electrically powered suction device used to express milk from the breast.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5225 Abdominal decompression chamber.

(a) *Identification.* An abdominal decompression chamber is a hoodlike device used to reduce pressure on the pregnant patient's abdomen for the relief of abdominal pain during pregnancy or labor.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.5250 Cervical cap.

(a) *Identification.* A cervical cap is a flexible cuplike receptacle that fits over the cervix to collect menstrual flow or to aid artificial insemination. This generic type of device is not for contraceptive use.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5300 Condom.

(a) *Identification.* A condom is a sheath which completely covers the penis with a closely fitting membrane. The condom is used for contraceptive and for prophylactic purposes (preventing transmission of venereal disease). The device may also be used to collect semen to aid in the diagnosis of infertility.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5310 Condom with spermicidal lubricant.

(a) *Identification.* A condom with spermicidal lubricant is a sheath which completely covers the penis with a closely fitting membrane with a lubricant that contains a spermicidal agent, nonoxynol-9. This condom is used for contraceptive and prophylactic purposes (preventing transmission of venereal disease).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[47 FR 49022, Oct. 29, 1982]

§ 884.5350 Contraceptive diaphragm and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A contraceptive diaphragm is a closely fitting membrane placed between the posterior aspect of the pubic bone and the posterior vaginal fornix. The device covers the cervix completely and is used with a spermicide to prevent pregnancy. This generic type of device may include an introducer.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5360 Contraceptive intrauterine device (IUD) and introducer.

(a) *Identification.* A contraceptive intrauterine device (IUD) is a device used to prevent pregnancy. The device is placed high in the uterine fundus with a string extending from the device through the cervical os into the vagina. This generic type of device includes the introducer, but does not include contraceptive IUD's that function by drug activity, which are subject to the new drug provisions of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (see § 310.502).

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Labeling.* Labeling requirements for contraceptive IUD's are set forth in § 801.427.

(d) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or a notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before August 4, 1986, for any IUD and introducer that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has on or before August 4, 1986, been found to be substantially equivalent to an IUD and introducer that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976. Any other IUD and introducer shall have an approved PMA or a declared completed PDP in effect before being placed in commercial distribution.

[45 FR 12684—12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 51 FR 16649, May 5, 1986]

§ 884.5380 Contraceptive tubal occlusion device (TOD) and introducer.

(a) *Identification.* A contraceptive tubal occlusion device (TOD) and introducer is a device designed to close a fallopian tube with a mechanical structure, e.g., a band or clip on the outside of the fallopian tube or a plug or valve on the inside. The devices are used to prevent pregnancy.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date premarket approval application (PMA) or notice of completion of a product development protocol (PDP) is required.* A PMA or a notice of completion of a PDP is required to be filed with the Food and Drug Administration on or before December 30, 1987, for any TOD and introducer that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976, or that has on or before December 30, 1987, been found to be substantially equivalent to a TOD and introducer that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976. Any other TOD and introducer shall have an approved PMA or a declared completed PDP in effect before being placed in commercial distribution.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 36883, Oct. 1, 1987]

§ 884.5390 Perineal heater.

(a) *Identification.* A perineal heater is a device designed to apply heat directly by contact, or indirectly from a radiant source, to the surface of the perineum (the area between the vulva and the anus) and is used to soothe or to help heal the perineum after an episiotomy (incision of the vulvar orifice for obstetrical purposes).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5400 Menstrual cup.

(a) *Identification.* A menstrual cup is a receptacle placed in the vagina to collect menstrual flow.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5425 Scented or scented deodorized menstrual pad.

(a) *Identification.* A scented or scented deodorized menstrual pad is a device that is a pad made of cellulosic or synthetic material which is used to absorb menstrual or other vaginal discharge. It has scent (*i.e.,* fragrance materials) added for aesthetic purposes (scented menstrual pad) or for deodorizing purposes (scented deodorized menstrual pad). This generic type of device includes sterile scented menstrual pads used for medically indicated conditions, but does not include menstrual pads treated with added antimicrobial agents or other drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 51185, Aug. 1, 1980]

§ 884.5435 Unscented menstrual pad.

(a) *Identification.* An unscented menstrual pad is a device that is a pad made of cellulosic or synthetic material which is used to absorb menstrual or other vaginal discharge. This generic type of device includes sterile unscented menstrual pads used for medically indicated conditions, but does not include menstrual pads treated with scent (i.e., fragrance materials) or those with added antimicrobial agents or other drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 884.5460 Scented or scented deodorized menstrual tampon.

(a) *Identification.* A scented or scented deodorized menstrual tampon is a device that is a plug made of cellulosic or synthetic material that is inserted into the vagina and used to absorb menstrual or other vaginal discharge. It has scent (*i.e.,* fragrance materials) added for aesthetic purposes (scented menstrual tampon) or for deodorizing purposes (scented deodorized menstrual tampon). This generic type of device does not include menstrual tampons treated with added antimicrobial agents or other drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 45 FR 51186, Aug. 1, 1980]

§ 884.5470 Unscented menstrual tampon.

(a) *Identification.* An unscented menstrual tampon is a device that is a plug made of cellulosic or synthetic material that is inserted into the vagina and used to absorb menstrual or other vaginal discharge. This generic type of device does not include menstrual tampons treated with scent (i.e., fragrance materials) or those with added antimicrobial agents or other drugs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5900 Therapeutic vaginal douche apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic vaginal douche apparatus is a device that is a bag or bottle with tubing and a nozzle. The apparatus does not include douche solutions. The apparatus is intended and labeled for use in the treatment of medical conditions except it is not for contraceptive use. After filling the therapeutic vaginal douche apparatus with a solution, the patient uses the device to direct a stream of solution into the vaginal cavity.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 884.5920 Vaginal insufflator.

(a) *Identification.* A vaginal insufflator is a device used to treat vaginitis by introducing medicated powder from a hand-held bulb into the vagina through an open speculum.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 884.5940 Powered vaginal muscle stimulator for therapeutic use.

(a) *Identification.* A powered vaginal muscle stimulator is an electrically powered device designed to stimulate directly the muscles of the vagina with pulsating electrical current. This device is intended and labeled for therapeutic use in increasing muscular tone and strength in the treatment of sexual dysfunction. This generic type of device does not include devices used to treat urinary incontinence.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 884.3.

[45 FR 12684-12720, Feb. 26, 1980, as amended at 52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 884.5960 Genital vibrator for therapeutic use.

(a) *Identification.* A genital vibrator for therapeutic use is an electrically operated device intended and labeled for therapeutic use in the treatment of sexual dysfunction or as an adjunct to Kegel's exercise (tightening of the muscles of the pelvic floor to increase muscle tone).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

PART 886—OPHTHALMIC DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
886.1 Scope.
886.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.
886.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

886.1040 Ocular esthesiometer.
886.1140 Ophthalmic chair.
886.1150 Visual acuity chart.
886.1170 Color vision tester.
886.1190 Distometer.
886.1200 Optokinetic drum.
886.1220 Corneal electrode.
886.1250 Euthyscope.
886.1270 Exophthalmometer.
886.1320 Fornixscope.
886.1330 Amsler grid.
886.1350 Keratoscope.
886.1360 Visual field laser instrument.
886.1375 Bagolini lens.
886.1380 Diagnostic condensing lens.
886.1385 Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) diagnostic contact lens.
886.1390 Flexible diagnostic Fresnel lens.
886.1395 Diagnostic Hruby fundus lens.
886.1400 Maddox lens.

Sec.
886.1405 Ophthalmic trial lens set.
886.1410 Ophthalmic trial lens clip.
886.1415 Ophthalmic trial lens frame.
886.1420 Ophthalmic lens gauge.
886.1460 Stereopsis measuring instrument.
886.1500 Headband mirror.
886.1510 Eye movement monitor.
886.1570 Ophthalmoscope.
886.1605 Perimeter.
886.1630 AC-powered photostimulator.
886.1640 Ophthalmic preamplifier.
886.1650 Ophthalmic bar prism.
886.1655 Ophthalmic Fresnel prism.
886.1660 Gonioscopic prism.
886.1665 Ophthalmic rotary prism.
886.1670 Ophthalmic isotope uptake probe.
886.1700 Pupillometer.
886.1750 Skiascopic rack.
886.1760 Ophthalmic refractometer.
886.1770 Manual refractor.
886.1780 Retinoscope.
886.1790 Nearpoint ruler.
886.1800 Schirmer strip.
886.1810 Tangent screen (campimeter).
886.1840 Simulatan (including crossed cylinder).
886.1850 AC-powered slitlamp biomicroscope.
886.1860 Ophthalmic instrument stand.
886.1870 Stereoscope.
886.1880 Fusion and stereoscopic target.
886.1905 Nystagmus tape.
886.1910 Spectacle dissociation test system.
886.1930 Tonometer and accessories.
886.1945 Transilluminator.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

886.3100 Ophthalmic tantalum clip.
886.3130 Ophthalmic conformer.
886.3200 Artificial eye.
886.3300 Absorbable implant (scleral buckling method).
886.3320 Eye sphere implant.
886.3340 Extraocular orbital implant.
886.3400 Keratoprosthesis.
886.3600 Intraocular lens.
886.3800 Scleral shell.
886.3920 Eye valve implant.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

886.4070 Powered corneal burr.
886.4100 Radiofrequency electrosurgical cautery apparatus.
886.4115 Thermal cautery unit.
886.4150 Vitreous aspiration and cutting instrument.
886.4170 Cryophthalmic unit.
886.4230 Ophthalmic knife test drum.
886.4250 Ophthalmic electrolysis unit.
886.4270 Intraocular gas.
886.4275 Intraocular fluid.

Sec.
886.4280 Intraocular pressure measuring device.
886.4300 Intraocular lens guide.
886.4335 Operating headlamp.
886.4350 Manual ophthalmic surgical instrument.
886.4360 Ocular surgery irrigation device.
886.4370 Keratome.
886.4390 Ophthalmic laser.
886.4392 Nd:YAG laser for posterior capsulotomy.
886.4400 Electronic metal locator.
886.4440 AC-powered magnet.
886.4445 Permanent magnet.
886.4570 Ophthalmic surgical marker.
886.4610 Ocular pressure applicator.
886.4670 Phacofragmentation system.
886.4690 Ophthalmic photocoagulator.
886.4750 Ophthalmic eye shield.
886.4770 Ophthalmic operating spectacles (loupes).
886.4790 Ophthalmic sponge.
886.4855 Ophthalmic instrument table.

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

886.5100 Ophthalmic beta radiation source.
886.5120 Low-power binocular loupe.
886.5420 Contact lens inserter/remover.
886.5540 Low-vision magnifier.
886.5600 Ptosis crutch.
886.5800 Ophthalmic bar reader.
886.5810 Ophthalmic prism reader.
886.5840 Magnifying spectacles.
886.5842 Spectacle frame.
886.5844 Prescription spectacle lens.
886.5850 Sunglasses (nonprescription).
886.5870 Low-vision telescope.
886.5900 Electronic vision aid.
886.5910 Image intensification vision aid.
886.5915 Optical vision aid.
886.5916 Rigid gas permeable contact lens.
886.5918 Rigid gas permeable contact lens solution.
886.5925 Soft (hydrophilic) contact lens.
886.5928 Soft (hydrophilic) contact lens solution.
886.5933 Contact lens heat disinfection unit.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 886.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of ophthalmic devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 cannot show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provision of a regulation in this part but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, an ophthalmic device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed in one subpart only.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 886.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act, FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

(c) A device identified in a regulation in this part that is classified into class III and that is subject to the transitional provisions of section 520(1) of the act is automatically classified by statute into class III and must have an approval under section 515 of the act before being commercially distributed. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III transitional device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

§ 886.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

FDA's decision to grant an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification (section 510(k) of the act) for a generic type of class I device is based upon the existing and reasonably foreseeable characteristics of commercially distributed devices within that generic type. Because FDA cannot anticipate every change in intended use or characteristic that could significantly affect a device's safety or effectiveness, manufacturers of any commercially distributed class I device for which FDA has granted an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification must still submit a premarket notification to FDA before introducing or delivering for introduction into interstate commerce for commercial distribution the device when:

(a) The device is intended for a use different from its intended use before May 28, 1976, or the device is intended for a use different from the intended use of a preamendments device to which it had been determined to be substantially equivalent; e.g., the device is intended for a different medical purpose, or the device is intended for lay use where the former intended use was by health care professionals only; or

(b) The modified device operates using a different fundamental scientific technology than that in use in the device before May 28, 1976; e.g., a surgical instrument cuts tissue with a laser beam rather than with a sharpened metal blade, or an in vitro diagnostic device detects or identifies infectious agents by using a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) probe or nucleic acid hybridization technology rather than culture or immunoassay technology.

[53 FR 35603, Sept. 14, 1988]

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 886.1040 Ocular esthesiometer.

(a) *Identification.* An ocular esthesiometer is a device, such as a single-hair brush, intended to touch the cornea to assess corneal sensitivity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35603, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1140 Ophthalmic chair.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic chair is a manual device with adjustable positioning in which a patient is intended to sit or recline during ophthalmological examination or treatment.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35603, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1150 Visual acuity chart.

(a) *Identification.* A visual acuity chart is a device that is a chart, such as a Snellen chart with block letters or other symbols in graduated sizes, intended to test visual acuity.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35603, Sept. 14, 1988; 53 FR 40825, Oct. 18, 1988]

§ 886.1170 Color vision tester.

(a) *Identification.* A color vision tester is a device that consists of various colored materials, such as colored yarns or color vision plates (multicolored plates which patients with color vision deficiency would perceive as being of one color), intended to evaluate color vision.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35603, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1190 Distometer.

(a) *Identification.* A distometer is a device intended to measure the distance between the cornea and a corrective lens during refraction to help measure the change of the visual image when a lens is in place.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35603, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1200 Optokinetic drum.

(a) *Identification.* An optokinetic drum is a drum-like device covered with alternating white and dark stripes or pictures that can be rotated on its handle. The device is intended to elicit and evaluate nystagmus (involuntary rapid movement of the eyeball) in patients.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1220 Corneal electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A corneal electrode is an AC-powered device, usually part of a special contact lens, intended to be applied directly to the cornea to provide data showing the changes in electrical potential in the retina after electroretinography (stimulation by light).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1250 Euthyscope.

(a) *Identification.* A euthyscope is a device that is a modified battery-powered ophthalmoscope (a perforated mirror device used to inspect the interior of the eye) that projects a bright light encompassing an arc of about thirty degrees on the fundus of the eye. The center of the light bundle is blocked by a black disk covering the fovea (the central depression of the macular retinae where only cones are present and blood vessels are lacking). The device is intended for use in the treatment of amblyopia (dimness of vision without apparent disease of the eye).

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.1270 Exophthalmometer.

(a) *Identification.* An exophthalmometer is a device, such as a ruler, gauge, or caliper, intended to measure the degree of exophthalmos (abnormal protrusion of the eyeball).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1320 Fornixscope.

(a) *Identification.* A fornixscope is a device intended to pull back and hold open the eyelid to aid examination of the conjunctiva.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1330 Amsler grid.

(a) *Identification.* An Amsler grid is a device that is a series of charts with grids of different sizes that are held at 30 centimeters distance from the patient and intended to rapidly detect central and paracentral irregularities in the visual field.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1350 Keratoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A keratoscope is a battery-powered device intended to measure and evaluate the corneal curvature of the eye. Lines and circles within the keratoscope are used to observe the corneal reflex. This generic type of device includes the photokeratoscope which records corneal curvature by taking photographs of the cornea.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1360 Visual field laser instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A visual field laser instrument is an AC-powered device intended to provide visible laser radiation that produces an interference pattern on the retina to evaluate retinal function.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1375 Bagolini lens.

(a) *Identification.* A Bagolini lens is a device that consists of a plane lens containing almost imperceptible striations that do not obscure visualization of objects. The device is placed in a trial frame and intended to determine harmonious/anomalous retinal correspondence (a condition in which corresponding points on the retina have the same directional values).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1380 Diagnostic condensing lens.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic condensing lens is a device used in binocular indirect ophthalmoscopy (a procedure that produces an inverted or reversed direct magnified image of the eye) intended to focus reflected light from the fundus of the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1385 Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) diagnostic contact lens.

(a) *Identification.* A polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) diagnostic contact lens is a device that is a curved shell of PMMA intended to be applied for a short period of time directly on the globe or cornea of the eye for diagnosis or therapy of intraocular abnormalities.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1390 Flexible diagnostic Fresnel lens.

(a) *Identification.* A flexible diagnostic Fresnel lens is a device that is a very thin lens which has its surface a concentric series of increasingly refractive zones. The device is intended to be applied to the back of the spectacle lenses of patients with aphakia (absence of the lens of the eye).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1395 Diagnostic Hruby fundus lens.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic Hruby fundus lens is a device that is a 55 diopter lens intended for use in the examination of the vitreous body and the fundus of the eye under slitlamp illumination and magnification.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1400 Maddox lens.

(a) *Identification.* A Maddox lens is a device that is a series of red cylinders that change the size, shape, and color of an image. The device is intended to be handheld or placed in a trial frame to evaluate eye muscle dysfunction.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1405 Ophthalmic trial lens set.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic trial lens set is a device that is a set of lenses of various dioptric powers intended to be handheld or inserted in a trial frame for vision testing to determine refraction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1410 Ophthalmic trial lens clip.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic trial lens clip is a device intended to hold prisms, spheres, cylinders, or occluders on a trial frame or spectacles for vision testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1415 Ophthalmic trial lens frame.

(a) *Identification.* An opthalmic trial lens frame is a mechanical device intended to hold trial lenses for vision testing.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1420 Ophthalmic lens gauge.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic lens gauge is a calibrated device intended to manually measure the curvature of a spectacle lens.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35604, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1460 Stereopsis measuring instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A stereopsis measuring instrument is a device intended to measure depth perception by illumination of objects placed on different planes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1500 Headband mirror.

(a) *Identification.* A headband mirror is a device intended to be strapped to the head of the user to reflect light for use in examination of the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1510 Eye movement monitor.

(a) *Identification.* An eye movement monitor is an AC-powered device with an electrode intended to measure and record ocular movements.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1570 Ophthalmoscope.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmoscope is an AC-powered or battery-powered device containing illumination and viewing optics intended to examine the media (cornea, aqueous, lens, and vitreous) and the retina of the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1605 Perimeter.

(a) *Identification.* A perimeter is a manual device intended to determine the extent of the peripheral visual field of a patient. The device projects light on various points of a curved surface, and the patient indicates whether he or she sees the light.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1630 AC-powered photostimulator.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered photostimulator is an AC-powered device intended to provide light stimulus which allows measurement of retinal or visual function by perceptual or electrical methods (e.g., stroboscope).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1640 Ophthalmic preamplifier.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic preamplifier is an AC-powered or battery-powered device intended to amplify electrical signals from the eye in electroretinography (recording retinal action currents from the surface of the eyeball after stimulation by light), electrooculography (testing for retinal dysfunction by comparing the standing potential in the front and the back of the eyeball), and electromyography (recording electrical currents generated in active muscle).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1650 Ophthalmic bar prism.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic bar prism is a device that is a bar composed of fused prisms of gradually increasing strengths intended to measure latent and manifest strabismus (eye muscle deviation) or the power of fusion of a patient's eyes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1655 Ophthalmic Fresnel prism.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic Fresnel prism is a device that is a thin plastic sheet with embossed rulings which provides the optical effect of a prism. The device is intended to be applied to spectacle lenses to give a prismatic effect.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1660 Gonioscopic prism.

(a) *Identification.* A gonioscopic prism is a device that is a prism intended to be placed on the eye to study the anterior chamber. The device may have angled mirrors to facilitate visualization of anatomical features.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1665 Ophthalmic rotary prism.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic rotary prism is a device with various prismatic powers intended to be handheld and used to measure ocular deviation in patients with latent or manifest strabismus (eye muscle deviation).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1670 Ophthalmic isotope uptake probe.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic isotope uptake probe is an AC-powered device intended to measure, by a probe which is placed in close proximity to the eye, the uptake of a radioisotope (phosphorus 32) by tumors to detect tumor masses on, around, or within the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1700 Pupillometer.

(a) *Identification.* A pupillometer is a manual device intended to measure by reflected light the width or diameter of the pupil of the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1750 Skiascopic rack.

(a) *Identification.* A skiascopic rack is a device that is a rack and a set of attached ophthalmic lenses of various dioptric strengths intended as an aid in refraction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1760 Ophthalmic refractometer.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic refractometer is an automatic AC-powered device that consists of a fixation system, a measurement and recording system, and an alignment system intended to measure the refractive power of the eye by measuring light reflexes from the retina.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1770 Manual refractor.

(a) *Identification.* A manual refractor is a device that is a set of lenses of varous dioptric powers intended to measure the refractive error of the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1780 Retinoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A retinoscope is a battery-powered device intended to
measure the refraction of the eye
illuminating the retina and noting t
direction of movement of the light
the retinal surface and of the refra
tion by the eye of the emergent ra

(b) *Classification.* Class I. T
device is exempt from the curre
good manufacturing practice regul
tions in Part 820, with the exceptio
of § 820.180, with respect to general r
quirements concerning records, a
§ 820.198, with respect to complai
files.

§ 886.1790 Nearpoint ruler.

(a) *Identification.* A nearpoint rul
is a device calibrated in centimeters i
tended to measure the nearpoint
convergence (the point to which th
visual lines are directed when conve
gence is at its maximum).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. Th
device is exempt from the premark
notification procedures in Part 80
Subpart E of this chapter. The devi
also is exempt from the current goo
manufacturing practice regulations
Part 820 of this chapter, with the e
ception of § 820.180, with respect
general requirements concernin
records, and § 820.198, with respect
complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended
53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988; 53 FR 4082
Oct. 18, 1988]

§ 886.1800 Schirmer strip.

(a) *Identification.* A Schirmer stri
is a device made of filter paper or sim
lar material intended to be insert
under a patient's lower eyelid to stim
ulate and evaluate formation of tear

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If th
device is made of the same materia
that were used in the device befor
May 28, 1976, the device is exem
from the premarket notification proc
dures in Part 807, Subpart E of th
chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended a
53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1810 Tangent screen (campimeter).

(a) *Identification.* A tangent scree
(campimeter) is a battery-powere
device that is a large square clot
chart with a central mark of fixatio
intended to map on a flat surface th

central thirty degrees of a patient's visual field. This generic type of device includes projection tangent screens, target tangent screens and targets, felt tangent screens, and battery-powered stereo campimeters.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1840 Simulatan (including crossed cylinder).

(a) *Identification.* A simulatan (including crossed cylinder) is a device that is a set of pairs of cylinder lenses that provides various equal plus and minus refractive strengths. The lenses are arranged so that the user can exchange the positions of plus and minus cylinder lenses of equal strengths. The device is intended for subjective refraction (refraction in which the patient judges whether a given object is clearly in focus, as the examiner uses different lenses).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35605, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1850 AC-powered slitlamp biomicroscope.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered slitlamp biomicroscope is an AC-powered device that is a microscope intended for use in eye examination that projects into a patient's eye through a control diaphragm a thin, intense beam of light.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1860 Ophthalmic instrument stand.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic instrument stand is a nonpowered device intended to store ophthalmic instruments in a readily accessible position.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1870 Stereoscope.

(a) *Identification.* A stereoscope is a battery-powered device that combines the images of two similar objects to produce a three-dimensional appearance of solidity and relief. It is intended to measure the angle of strabismus (eye muscle deviation), evaluate binocular vision (usage of both eyes to see), and guide a patient's corrective exercises of eye muscles.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1880 Fusion and stereoscopic target.

(a) *Identification.* A fusion and stereoscopic target is a device intended for use as a viewing object with a stereoscope (§ 886.1870).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1905 Nystagmus tape.

(a) *Identification.* Nystagmus tape is a device that is a long, narrow strip of fabric or other flexible material on which a series of objects are printed. The device is intended to be moved across a patient's field of vision to elicit optokinetic nystagmus (abnormal and irregular eye movements) and to test for blindness.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1910 Spectacle dissociation test system.

(a) *Identification.* A spectacle dissocation test system is a battery-powered device, such as a Lancaster test system, that consists of a light source and various filters, usually red or green filters, intended to subjectively measure imbalance of ocular muscles.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.1930 Tonometer and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A tonometer and accessories is a manual device intended to measure intraocular pressure by
applying a known force on the glo
of the eye and measuring the amou
of indentation produced (Schiotz typ
or to measure intraocular tension
applanation (applying a small flat di
to the cornea). Accessories for t
device may include a tonometer ca
brator or a tonograph recordi
system. The device is intended for u
in the diagnosis of glaucoma.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.1945 Transilluminator.

(a) *Identification.* A transillumin
tor is a battery-powered device that
a light source intended to transm
light through tissues to aid examin
tion of patients.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

§ 886.3100 Ophthalmic tantalum clip.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthaln
tantalum clip is a malleable meta
device intended to be implanted p
manently or temporarily to bring
gether the edges of a wound to
healing or prevent bleeding from sm
blood vessels in the eye.

(b) *Classification* Class II.

§ 886.3130 Ophthalmic conformer.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthaln
conformer is a device usually made
molded plastic intended to be insert
temporarily between the eyeball a
eyelid to maintain space in the orbi
cavity and prevent closure or ad
sions during the healing process
lowing surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.3200 Artificial eye.

(a) *Identification.* An artificial ey
a device resembling an eyeball, usua
made of glass or plastic, intended to
inserted in a patient's eye socket
cosmetic purposes to replace an e
The device is not intended to be
planted.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.3300 Absorbable implant (scleral buckling method).

(a) *Identification.* An absorbable implant (scleral buckling method) is a device intended to be implanted on the sclera to aid retinal reattachment.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.3320 Eye sphere implant.

(a) *Identification.* An eye sphere implant is a device intended to be implanted in the eyeball to occupy space following the removal of the contents of the eyeball with the sclera left intact.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.3340 Extraocular orbital implant.

(a) *Identification.* An extraocular orbital implant is a nonabsorbable device intended to be implanted during scleral surgery for buckling or building up the floor of the eye, usually in conjunction with retinal reattachment. Injectable substances are excluded.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.3400 Keratoprosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A keratoprosthesis is a device made of plastic intended to be implanted to replace the central area of an opacified natural cornea of the eye to maintain or restore sight.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 886.3.

§ 886.3600 Intraocular lens.

(a) *Identification.* An intraocular lens is a device made of materials such as glass or plastic intended to be implanted to replace the natural lens of an eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.3800 Scleral shell.

(a) *Identification.* A scleral shell is a device made of glass or plastic that is intended to be inserted for short time periods over the cornea and proximal cornea sclera for cosmetic or reconstructive purposes. An artificial eye is usually painted on the device. The device is not intended to be implanted.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.3920 Eye valve implant.

(a) *Identification.* An eye valve implant is a one-way, pressure-sensitive, valve-like device intended to be implanted to normalize intraocular pressure. The device may be used in the treatment of glaucoma.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 886.3.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

§ 886.4070 Powered corneal burr.

(a) *Identification.* A powered corneal burr is a battery-powered device that is a motor and drilling tool intended to remove rust rings from the cornea of the eye.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.4100 Radiofrequency electrosurgical cautery apparatus.

(a) *Identification.* A radiofrequency electrosurgical cautery apparatus is an AC-powered or battery-powered device intended for use during ocular surgery to coagulate tissue or arrest bleeding by a high frequency electric current.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4115 Thermal cautery unit.

(a) *Identification.* A thermal cautery unit is an AC-powered or battery-powered device intended for use during ocular surgery to coagulate tissue or arrest bleeding by heat conducted through a wire tip.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4150 Vitreous aspiration and cutting instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A vitreous aspiration and cutting instrument is an electrically powered device, which may use ultrasound, intended to remove vitreous matter from the vitreous cavity or remove a crystalline lens.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4170 Cryophthalmic unit.

(a) *Identification.* A cryophthalmic unit is a device that is a probe with a small tip that becomes extremely cold through the controlled use of a refrigerant or gas. The device may be AC-powered. The device is intended to remove cataracts by the formation of an adherent ice ball in the lens, to freeze the eye and adjunct parts for surgical removal of scars, and to freeze tumors.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4230 Ophthalmic knife test drum.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic knife test drum is a device intended to test the keenness of ophthalmic surgical knives to determine whether resharpening is needed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4250 Ophthalmic electrolysis unit.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic electrolysis unit is a battery-powered device intended to destroy ocular hair follicles by applying a galvanic electrical current.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.4270 Intraocular gas.

(a) *Identification.* An intraocular gas is a device consisting of a gaseous fluid intended to be introduced into the eye to place pressure on a detached retina.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.4275 Intraocular fluid.

(a) *Identification.* An intraocular fluid is a device consisting of a nongaseous fluid intended to be introduced into the eye to aid performance of surgery, such as to maintain anterior chamber depth, preserve tissue integrity, protect tissue from surgical trauma, or function as a tamponade during retinal reattachment.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.4280 Intraocular pressure measurin device.

(a) *Identification.* An intraocular pressure measuring device is a manua or AC-powered device intended t measure intraocular pressure. Also included are any devices found by FD to be substantially equivalent to suc devices. Accessories for the device ma include calibrators or recorders. Th device is intended for use in the diagnosis of glaucoma.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completio of PDP is required.* As of May 28, 197 an approval under section 515 of th act is required before this device ma be commercially distributed. Se § 886.3.

§ 886.4300 Intraocular lens guide.

(a) *Identification.* An intraocula lens guide is a device intended to be i serted into the eye during surgery direct the insertion of an intraocula lens and be removed after insertion completed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.4335 Operating headlamp.

(a) *Identification.* An operatin headlamp is a battery-powered devi intended to be worn on the user's he to provide a light source to aid visua ization during surgical, diagnostic, therapeutic procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. Th device is exempt from the premark notification procedures in Part 80 Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4350 Manual ophthalmic surgical instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A manual ophthalmic surgical instrument is a nonpowered, handheld device intended to aid or perform ophthalmic surgical procedures. This generic type of device includes the manual corneal burr, ophthalmic caliper, ophthalmic cannula, eyelid clamp, ophthalmic muscle clamp, iris retractor clip, orbital compressor, ophthalmic curette, cystotome, orbital depressor, lachrymal dilator, erisophake, expressor, ophthalmic forcep, ophthalmic hook, sphere introducer, ophthalmic knife, ophthalmic suturing needle, lachrymal probe, trabeculotomy probe, cornea-sclera punch, ophthalmic retractor, ophthalmic ring (Flieringa), lachrymal sac rongeur, ophthalmic scissors, enucleating snare, ophthalmic spatula, ophthalmic specula, ophthalmic spoon, ophthalmic spud, trabeculotome or ophthalmic manual trephine.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4360 Ocular surgery irrigation device.

(a) *Identification.* An ocular surgery irrigation device is a device intended to be suspended over the ocular area during ophthalmic surgery to deliver continuous, controlled irrigation to the surgical field.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device does not directly contact the patient's body, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4370 Keratome.

(a) *Identification.* A keratome is battery-powered device intended to shave tissue from sections of the cornea for a lamellar (partial thickness) transplant.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.4390 Ophthalmic laser.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic laser is an AC-powered device intended to coagulate or cut tissue of the eye, orbit, or surrounding skin by a laser beam.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4392 Nd:YAG laser for posterior capsulotomy.

(a) *Identification.* The Nd:YAG laser for posterior capsulotomy consists of a mode-locked or Q-switched solid state Nd:YAG laser intended for posterior capsulotomy, which generates short pulse, low energy, high power, coherent optical radiation. When the laser output is combined with focusing optics, the high irradiance at the target causes tissue disruption via optical breakdown. A visible aiming system is utilized to target the invisible Nd:YAG laser radiation on or in close proximity to the target tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

[53 FR 38947, Oct. 4, 1988]

§ 886.4400 Electronic metal locator.

(a) *Identification.* An electronic metal locator is an AC-powered device with probes intended to locate metallic foreign bodies in the eye or eye socket.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4440 AC-powered magnet.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered magnet is an AC-powered device that generates a magnetic field intended to find and remove metallic foreign bodies from eye tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4445 Permanent magnet.

(a) *Identification.* A permanent magnet is a nonelectric device that generates a magnetic field intended to find and remove metallic foreign bodies from eye tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4570 Ophthalmic surgical marker.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic surgical marker is a device intended to mark by use of ink, dye, or indentation the location of ocular or scleral surgical manipulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4610 Ocular pressure applicator.

(a) *Identification.* An ocular pressure applicator is a manual device that consists of a sphygmomanometer-type squeeze bulb, a dial indicator, a band, and bellows, intended to apply pressure on the eye in preparation for ophthalmic surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4670 Phacofragmentation system.

(a) *Identification.* A phacofragmentation system is an AC-powered device with a fragmenting needle intended for use in cataract surgery to disrupt a cataract with ultrasound and extract the cataract.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4690 Ophthalmic photocoagulator.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic photocoagulator is an AC-powered device intended to use the energy from an extended noncoherent light source to occlude blood vessels of the retina, choroid, or iris.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4750 Ophthalmic eye shield.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthal
eye shield is a device that consists
plastic or aluminum eye covering
tended to protect the eye or ret
dressing materials in place.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. T
device is exempt from the curr
good manufacturing practice regu
tions in Part 820, with the except
of § 820.180, with respect to general
quirements concerning records,
§ 820.198, with respect to compla
files.

§ 886.4770 Ophthalmic operating spe cles (loupes).

(a) *Identification.* Ophthalmic op
ating spectacles (loupes) are devi
that consist of convex lenses or l
systems intended to be worn by a s
geon to magnify the surgical
during ophthalmic surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. T
device is exempt from the premar
notification procedures in Part 8
Subpart E of this chapter. The dev
also is exempt from the current go
manufacturing practice regulations
Part 820 of this chapter, with the
ception of § 820.180, with respect
general requirements concern
records, and § 820.198, with respect
complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended
53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.4790 Ophthalmic sponge.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalm
sponge is a device that is an absorb
sponge, pad, or spear made of fold
gauze, cotton, cellulose, or other ma
rial intended to absorb fluids from t
operative field in ophthalmic surge

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.4855 Ophthalmic instrument table

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic
strument table is a manual device
which ophthalmic instruments
placed.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. T
device is exempt from the premark
notification procedures in Part 8
Subpart E of this chapter. The dev
also is exempt from the current go

manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35606, Sept. 14, 1988]

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

§ 886.5100 Ophthalmic beta radiation source.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic beta radiation source is a device intended to apply superficial radiation to benign and malignant ocular growths.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 886.5120 Low-power binocular loupe.

(a) *Identification.* A low-power binocular loupe is a device that consists of two eyepieces, each with a lens or lens system, intended for medical purposes to magnify the appearance of objects.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5420 Contact lens inserter/remover.

(a) *Identification.* A contact lens inserter/remover is a handheld device intended to insert or remove contact lenses by surface adhesion or suction.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5540 Low-vision magnifier.

(a) *Identification.* A low-vision magnifier is a device that consists of a magnifying lens intended for use by a patient who has impaired vision. The device may be held in the hand or attached to spectacles.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5600 Ptosis crutch.

(a) *Identification.* A ptosis crutch is a device intended to be mounted on the spectacles of a patient who has ptosis (drooping of the upper eyelid as a result of faulty development or paralysis) to hold the upper eyelid open.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5800 Ophthalmic bar reader.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic bar reader is a device that consists of a magnifying lens intended for use by a patient who has impaired vision. The device is placed directly onto reading material to magnify print.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5810 Ophthalmic prism reader.

(a) *Identification.* An ophthalmic prism reader is a device intended for use by a patient who is in a supine position to change the angle of print to aid reading.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5840 Magnifying spectacles.

(a) *Identification.* Magnifying spectacles are devices that consist of spectacle frames with convex lenses intended to be worn by a patient who has impaired vision to enlarge images.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5842 Spectacle frame.

(a) *Identification.* A spectacle frame is a device made of metal or plastic intended to hold prescription spectacle lenses worn by a patient to correct refractive errors.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.5844 Prescription spectacle lens.

(a) *Identification.* A prescription spectacle lens is a glass or plastic device that is a lens intended to be worn by a patient in a spectacle frame to provide refractive corrections in accordance with a prescription for the patient. The device may be modified to protect the eyes from bright sunlight (i.e., prescription sunglasses)
Prescription sunglass lenses may be re
flective, tinted, polarizing, or photo
sensitized.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If th
device is made of the same material
that were used in the device befor
May 28, 1976, the device is exemp
from the premarket notification proce
dures in Part 807, Subpart E of thi
chapter.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended a
53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5850 Sunglasses (nonprescription).

(a) *Identification.* Sunglasses (non
prescription) are devices that consis
of spectacle frames or clips with ab
sorbing, reflective, tinted, polarizing
or photosensitized lenses intended t
be worn by a person to protect th
eyes from bright sunlight but not t
provide refractive corrections. Thi
device is usually available over-the
counter.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.5870 Low-vision telescope.

(a) *Identification.* A low-vision tele
scope is a device that consists of an ar
rangement of lenses or mirrors intend
ed for use by a patient who has im
paired vision to increase the apparen
size of objects. This generic type o
device includes handheld or spectacl
telescopes.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. Th
device is exempt from the premarke
notification procedures in Part 80
Subpart E of this chapter. The devic
also is exempt from the current goo
manufacturing practice regulations i
Part 820 of this chapter, with the ex
ception of § 820.180, with respect t
general requirements concernin
records, and § 820.198, with respect t
complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended
53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5900 Electronic vision aid.

(a) *Identification.* An electroni
vision aid is a battery-powered devic
that consists of an electronic senso
transducer intended for use by a pa
tient who has impaired vision or blin
ness, to translate visual images of ob
jects into tactile or auditory signals.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 886.5910 Image intensification vision aid.

(a) *Identification.* An image intensification vision aid is a battery-powered device intended for use by a patient who has limited dark adaptation or impaired vision to amplify ambient light.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5915 Optical vision aid.

(a) *Identification.* An optical vision aid is a device that consists of a magnifying lens with accompanying battery-powered light source intended for use by a patient who has impaired vision to increase the apparent size of object detail.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Part 807, Subpart E of this chapter. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

[52 FR 33355, Sept. 2, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 35607, Sept. 14, 1988]

§ 886.5916 Rigid gas permeable contact lens.

(a) *Identification.* A rigid gas permeable contact lens is a device intended to be worn directly against the cornea of the eye to correct vision conditions. The device is made of various materials, such as cellulose acetate butyrate, polyacrylate-silicone, or silicone elastomers, whose main polymer molecules generally do not absorb or attract water.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.5918 Rigid gas permeable contact lens solution.

(a) *Identification.* A rigid gas permeable contact lens solution is a device intended to clean, disinfect, wet, or store a rigid gas permeable contact lens (§ 886.5916).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.5925 Soft (hydrophilic) contact lens.

(a) *Identification.* A soft (hydrophilic) contact lens is a device intended to be worn directly against the cornea and adjacent limbal and scleral areas of the eye to correct vision conditions or act as a therapeutic bandage. The device is made of various polymer materials the main polymer molecules of which absorb or attract a certain volume (percentage) of water.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.5928 Soft (hydrophilic) contact lens solution.

(a) *Identification.* A soft (hydrophilic) contact lens solution is a device intended to clean, disinfect, wet, or store a soft (hydrophilic) contact lens (§ 886.5925).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

§ 886.5933 Contact lens heat disinfection unit.

(a) *Identification.* A contact lens heat disinfection unit is a device intended to disinfect a contact lens by means of heat.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 886.3.

PART 888—ORTHOPEDIC DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
888.1 Scope.
888.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.
888.5 Resurfacing technique.
888.6 Degree of constraint.
888.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

888.1100 Arthroscope.
888.1240 AC-powered dynamometer.
888.1250 Nonpowered dynamometer.
888.1520 Nonpowered goniometer.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

888.3000 Bone cap.
888.3010 Bone fixation cerclage.
888.3015 Bone heterograft.
888.3020 Intramedullary fixation rod.
888.3025 Passive tendon prosthesis.
888.3027 Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) bone cement.
888.3030 Single/multiple component metallic bone fixation appliances and accessories.
888.3040 Smooth or threaded metallic bone fixation fastener.
888.3050 Spinal interlaminal fixation orthosis.
888.3060 Spinal intervertebral body fixation orthosis.
888.3100 Ankle joint metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3110 Ankle joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3120 Ankle joint metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3150 Elbow joint metal/metal or metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis.

Sec.
888.3160 Elbow joint metal/polymer se
constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3170 Elbow joint radial (hemi-elb
polymer prosthesis.
888.3180 Elbow joint humeral (hemi-elb
metallic uncemented prosthesis.
888.3200 Finger joint metal/metal
strained uncemented prosthesis.
888.3210 Finger joint metal/metal
strained cemented prosthesis.
888.3220 Finger joint metal/polymer
strained cemented prosthesis.
888.3230 Finger joint polymer constrai
prosthesis.
888.3300 Hip joint metal constrained
mented or uncemented prosthesis.
888.3310 Hip joint metal/polymer
strained cemented or uncemented p
thesis.
888.3320 Hip joint metal/metal semi-
strained, with a cemented acetab
component, prosthesis.
888.3330 Hip joint metal/metal semi-
strained, with an uncemented aceta
lar component, prosthesis.
888.3340 Hip joint metal/composite s
constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3350 Hip joint metal/polymer s
constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3360 Hip joint femoral (hemi-hip)
tallic cemented or uncemented pros
sis.
888.3370 Hip joint (hemi-hip) acetab
metal cemented prosthesis.
888.3380 Hip joint femoral (hemi-
trunnion-bearing metal/polyacetal
mented prosthesis.
888.3390 Hip joint femoral (hemi-
metal/polymer cemented or unceme
prosthesis.
888.3400 Hip joint femoral (hemi-hip)
tallic resurfacing prosthesis.
888.3410 Hip joint metal/polymer s
constrained resurfacing cemented
thesis.
888.3480 Knee joint femorotibial me
constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3490 Knee joint femorotibial m
composite non-constrained ceme
prosthesis.
888.3500 Knee joint femorotibial m
composite semi-constrained ceme
prosthesis.
888.3510 Knee joint femorotibial m
polymer constrained cemented pro
sis.
888.3520 Knee joint femorotibial m
polymer non-constrained cemented
thesis.
888.3530 Knee joint femorotibial m
polymer semi-constrained ceme
prosthesis.
888.3540 Knee joint patellofemoral
mer/metal semi-constrained ceme
prosthesis.

Sec.
888.3550 Knee joint patellofemorotibial polymer/metal/metal constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3560 Knee joint patellofemorotibial polymer/metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3570 Knee joint femoral (hemi-knee) metallic uncemented prosthesis.
888.3580 Knee joint patellar (hemi-knee) metallic resurfacing uncemented prosthesis.
888.3590 Knee joint tibial (hemi-knee) metallic resurfacing uncemented prosthesis.
888.3640 Shoulder joint metal/metal or metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3650 Shoulder joint metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3660 Shoulder joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3680 Shoulder joint glenoid (hemi-shoulder) metallic cemented prosthesis.
888.3690 Shoulder joint humeral (hemi-shoulder) metallic uncemented prosthesis.
888.3720 Toe joint polymer constrained prosthesis.
888.3730 Toe joint phalangeal (hemi-toe) polymer prosthesis.
888.3750 Wrist joint carpal lunate polymer prosthesis.
888.3760 Wrist joint carpal scaphoid polymer prosthesis.
888.3770 Wrist joint carpal trapezium polymer prosthesis.
888.3780 Wrist joint polymer constrained prosthesis.
888.3790 Wrist joint metal constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3800 Wrist joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.
888.3810 Wrist joint ulnar (hemi-wrist) polymer prosthesis.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

888.4150 Calipers for clinical use.
888.4200 Cement dispenser.
888.4210 Cement mixer for clinical use.
888.4220 Cement monomer vapor evacuator.
888.4230 Cement ventilation tube.
888.4300 Depth gauge for clinical use.
888.4540 Orthopedic manual surgical instrument.
888.4580 Sonic surgical instrument and accessories/attachments.
888.4600 Protractor for clinical use.
888.4800 Template for clinical use.
888.5850 Nonpowered orthopedic traction apparatus and accessories.
888.5890 Noninvasive traction component.
888.5940 Cast component.
888.5980 Manual cast application and removal instrument.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 888.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of orthopedic devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 cannot show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provision of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, an orthopedic device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a surgical device) is listed in one subpart only.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

§ 888.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act, FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, including a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commercially distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

(c) A device identified in a regulation in this part that is classified into class III and that is subject to the transitional provisions of section 520(l) of the act is automatically classified by statute into class III and must have an approval under section 515 of the act before being commercially distributed. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III transitional device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

§ 888.5 Resurfacing technique.

Because of resurfacing techniques, certain joint prostheses require far less bone resection than other devices intended to repair or replace the same joint. The amount of bone resection may or may not affect the safety and effectiveness of the implantation of the prosthesis. When a resurfacing technique is used, the name of the prosthesis includes this information.

§ 888.6 Degree of constraint.

Certain joint prostheses provide more constraint of joint movement than others. FDA believes that the degree of constraint is an important factor affecting the safety and effectiveness of orthopedic prostheses. FDA is defining the following standard terms for categorizing the degree of constraint.

(a) A "constrained" joint prosthesis is used for joint replacement and prevents dislocation of the prosthesis in more than one anatomic plane and consists of either a single, flexible, across-the-joint component or more than one component linked together or affined.

(b) A "semi-constrained" joint prosthesis is used for partial or total joint replacement and limits translation and rotation of the prosthesis in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no across-the-joint linkage.

(c) A "non-constrained" joint prosthesis is used for partial or total joint replacement and restricts minimally prosthesis movement in one or more planes. Its components have no across-the-joint linkage.

§ 888.9 Limitations of exemptions from section 510(k) of the act.

FDA's decision to grant an exemption from the requirement of premar-

best copy available

ket notification (section 510(k) of the act) for a generic type of class I device is based upon the existing and reasonably foreseeable characteristics of commercially distributed devices within that generic type. Because FDA cannot anticipate every change in intended use or characteristic that could significantly affect a device's safety or effectiveness, manufacturers of any commercially distributed class I device for which FDA has granted an exemption from the requirement of premarket notification must still submit a premarket notification to FDA before introducing or delivering for introducion into interstate commerce for comnercial distribution the device when:

(a) The device is intended for a use different from its intended use before May 28, 1976, or the device is intended or a use different from the intended se of a preamendments device to which it had been determined to be ubstantially equivalent; e.g., the device is intended for a different medial purpose, or the device is intended or lay use where the former intended se was by health care professionals nly; or

(b) The modified device operates using a different fundamental scientifc technology than that in use in the device before May 28, 1976; e.g., a surical instrument cuts tissue with a aser beam rather than with a sharpned metal blade, or an in vitro diagostic device detects or identifies inectious agents by using a deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) probe or nucleic acid hybridization technology rather than ulture or immunoassay technology.

53 FR 52953, Dec. 29, 1988]

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

888.1100 Arthroscope.

(a) *Identification.* An arthroscope is n electrically powered endoscope ntended to make visible the interior f a joint. The arthroscope and accesories also is intended to perform surery within a joint.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

888.1240 AC-powered dynamometer.

(a) *Identification.* An AC-powered dynamometer is an AC-powered device intended for medical purposes to assess neuromuscular function or degree of neuromuscular blockage by measuring, with a force transducer (a device that translates force into electrical impulses), the grip-strength of a patient's hand.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.1250 Nonpowered dynamometer.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered dynamometer is a mechanical device intended for medical purposes to measure the pinch and grip muscle strength of a patient's hand.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 888.1520 Nonpowered goniometer.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered goniometer is a mechanical device intended for medical purposes to measure the range of motion of joints.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Prosthetic Devices

§ 888.3000 Bone cap.

(a) *Identification.* A bone cap is a mushroom-shaped device intended to be implanted made of either silicone elastomer or ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. It is used to cover the severed end of a long bone, such as the humerus or tibia, to control bone overgrowth in juvenile amputees.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3010 Bone fixation cerclage.

(a) *Identification.* A bone fixation cerclage is a device intended to be implanted that is made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and that consists of a metallic ribbon or flat sheet or a wire. The device is wrapped around the shaft of a long bone, anchored to the bone with wire or screws, and used in the fixation of fractures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3015 Bone heterograft.

(a) *Identification.* Bone heterograft is a device intended to be implanted that is made from mature (adult) bovine bones and used to replace human bone following surgery in the cervical region of the spinal column.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* As of May 28, 1976, an approval under section 515 of the act is required before this device may be commercially distributed. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3020 Intramedullary fixation rod.

(a) *Identification.* An intramedullary fixation rod is a device intended to be implanted that consists of a rod made of alloys such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum and stainless steel. It is inserted into the medullary (bone marrow) canal of long bones for the fixation of fractures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3025 Passive tendon prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A passive tendon prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted made of silicon elastomer or a polyester reinforced medical grade silicone elastomer intended for use in the surgical reconstruction of a flexor tendon of the hand. The device is implanted for a period of 2 to 6 months to aid growth of a new tendon sheath. The device is not intended as a permanent implant nor to function as a replacement for the ligament or tendon nor to function as a scaffold for soft tissue ingrowth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3027 Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) bone cement.

(a) *Identification.* Polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA) bone cement (luting agent) is a device intended to be implanted that is made from methylmethacrylate, polymethylmethacrylate, esters of methacrylic acid or copolymers containing polymethylmethyacrylate and polystyrene. The device is intended for use in arthroplastic procedures of the hip, knee, and other joints for the fixation of polymer or metallic prosthetic implants to the living bone.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of complet of a PDP is required.* As of May 1976, an approval under section 515 the act is required before this dev may be commercially distributed. S § 888.3.

§ 888.3030 Single/multiple component m tallic bone fixation appliances and a cessories.

(a) *Identification.* Single/multip component metallic bone fixation appliances and accessories are devices intended to be implanted consisting o one or more metallic components an their metallic fasteners. The device contain a plate, a nail/plate combination, or a blade/plate combinatio that are made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, stainles steel, and titanium, that are intende to be held in position with fasteners such as screws and nails, or bolts, nuts and washers. These devices are used for fixation of fractures of the proximal or distal end of long bones, such as intracapsular, intertrochanteric, intercervical, supracondylar, or condylar fractures of the femur; for fusion of a joint; or for surgical procedures tha involve cutting a bone. The devices may be implanted or attached throug the skin so that a pulling force (traction) may be applied to the skeleta system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3040 Smooth or threaded metalli bone fixation fastener.

(a) *Identification.* A smooth o threaded metallic bone fixation fastener is a device intended to be implanted that consists of a stiff wir segment or rod made of alloys, such a cobalt-chromium-molybdenum an stainless steel, and that may b smooth on the outside, fully or partially threaded, straight or U-shaped; an may be either blunt pointed, shar pointed, or have a formed, slotte head on the end. It may be used fo fixation of bone fractures, for bone reconstructions, as a guide pin for insertion of other implants, or it may b implanted through the skin so that pulling force (traction) may be applie to the skeletal system.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3050 Spinal interlaminal fixation orthosis.

(a) *Identification.* A spinal interlaminal fixation orthosis is a device intended to be implanted made of an alloy, such as stainless steel, that consists of various hooks and a posteriorly placed compression or distraction rod. The device is implanted, usually across three adjacent vertebrae, to straighten and immobilize the spine to allow bone grafts to unite and fuse the vertebrae together. The device is used primarily in the treatment of scoliosis (a lateral curvature of the spine), but it also may be used in the treatment of fracture or dislocation of the spine, grades 3 and 4 of spondylolisthesis (a dislocation of the spinal column), and lower back syndrome.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3060 Spinal intervertebral body fixation orthosis.

(a) *Identification.* A spinal intervertebral body fixation orthosis is a device intended to be implanted made of titanium. It consists of various vertebral plates that are punched into each of a series of vertebral bodies. An eye-type screw is inserted in a hole in the center of each of the plates. A braided cable is threaded through each eye-type screw. The cable is tightened with a tension device and it is fastened or crimped at each eye-type screw. The device is used to apply force to a series of vertebrae to correct "sway back," scoliosis (lateral curvature of the spine), or other conditions.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3100 Ankle joint metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An ankle joint metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace an ankle joint. The device limits translation and rotation: in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a talar resurfacing component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial resurfacing component fabricated from ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene with carbon fibers composite, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3110 Ankle joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An ankle joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace an ankle joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces and has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a talar resurfacing component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3120 Ankle joint metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An ankle joint metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace an ankle joint. The device limits minimally (less than normal anatomic constraints) translation in one or more planes. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a tibial component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a talar component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3150 Elbow joint metal/metal or metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An elbow joint metal/metal or metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted made exclusively of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, or made from these alloys with a ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene bushing, and used to replace an elbow joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and consists of two components which are linked together. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3160 Elbow joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An elbow joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace an elbow joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a humeral resurfacing component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a radial resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3170 Elbow joint radial (hemi-elbow) polymer prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An elbow joint radial (hemi-elbow) polymer prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted made of medical grade silicone elastomer used to replace the proximal end of the radius.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3180 Elbow joint humeral (hemi-elbow) metallic uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An elbow joint humeral (hemi-elbow) metallic uncemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, that is used to replace the distal end of the humerus formed by the trochlea humeri and the capitulum humeri. The generic type of device is limited to prostheses intended for use without bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3200 Finger joint metal/metal constrained uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A finger joint metal/metal constrained uncemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a metacarpophalangeal or proximal interphalangeal (finger) joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and consists of two components which are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, or protheses made from alloys and ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device is limited to prostheses intended for use without bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3210 Finger joint metal/metal constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A finger joint metal/metal constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a metacarpophalangeal (finger) joint. This device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and has components which are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses that are made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3220 Finger joint metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A finger joint metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a metacarpophalangeal or proximal interphalangeal (finger) joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane, and consists of two components which are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses that are made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3230 Finger joint polymer constrained prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A finger joint polymer constrained prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a metacarpophalangeal or proximal interphalangeal (finger) joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a single flexible across-the-joint component made from either a silicone elastomer or a combination pf polypropylene and polyester material. The flexible across-the-joint component may be covered with a silicone rubber sleeve.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3300 Hip joint metal constrained cemented or uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal constrained cemented or uncemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a hip joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and has components that are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have components made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and is intended for use with or without bone cement (§ 888.3027). This device is not intended for biological fixation.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3310 Hip joint metal/polymer constrained cemented or uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal/polymer constrained cemented or uncemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a hip joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and has components that are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and an acetabular component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device is intended for use with or without bone cement (§ 888.3027). This device is not intended for biological fixation.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3320 Hip joint metal/metal semi-constrained, with a cemented acetabular component, prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal/metal semi-constrained, with a cemented acetabular component, prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace a hip joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a femoral and an acetabular component, both made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3330 Hip joint metal/metal semi-constrained, with an uncemented acetabular component, prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal/metal semi-constrained, with an uncemented acetabular component, prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace a hip joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a femoral and an acetabular component, both made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. The femoral component is intended to be fixed with bone cement. The acetabular component is intended for use without bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3340 Hip joint metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace a hip joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and an acetabular component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene with carbon fibers composite. Both components are intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3350 Hip joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a hip joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and an acetabular resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3360 Hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) metallic cemented or uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) metallic cemented or uncemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a portion of the hip joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. This generic type of device includes designs which are intended to be fixed to the bone with bone cement (§ 888.3027) as well as designs which have large window-like holes in the stem of the device and which are intended for use without bone cement. However, in these latter designs, fixation of the device is not achieved by means of bone ingrowth.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3370 Hip joint (hemi-hip) acetabular metal cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint (hemi-hip) acetabular metal cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a portion of the hip joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have an acetabular component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3380 Hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) trunnion-bearing metal/polyacetal cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) trunnion-bearing metal/polyacetal cemented prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace the head and neck of the femur. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a metallic stem made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, with an integrated cylindrical trunnion bearing at the upper end of the stem that fits into a recess in the head of the device. The head of the device is made of polyacetal (polyoxymethylene) and it is covered by a metallic alloy, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. The trunnion bearing allows the head of the device to rotate on its stem. The prosthesis is intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3390 Hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) metal/polymer cemented or uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) metal/polymer cemented or uncemented prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace the head and neck of the femur. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a snap-fit acetabular component made of an alloy, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device may be fixed to the bone with bone cement (§ 888.3027) or implanted by impaction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3400 Hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) metallic resurfacing prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint femoral (hemi-hip) metallic resurfacing prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a portion of the hip joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral resurfacing component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3410 Hip joint metal/polymer semi-constrained resurfacing cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A hip joint metal/polymer semi-constrained resurfacing cemented prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace the articulating surfaces of the hip while preserving the femoral head and neck. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a femoral cap component made of alloy, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, that is placed over a surgically prepared femoral head, and an acetabular resurfacing polymer component. Both components are intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3480 Knee joint femorotibial metallic constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femorotibial metallic constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and has components that are linked together. The only knee joint movement allowed by the device is in the sagittal plane. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have an intramedullary stem at both the proximal and distal locations. The upper and lower components may be joined either by a solid bolt or pin, an internally threaded bolt with locking screw, or a bolt retained by circlip. The components of the device are made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. The stems of the device may be perforated, but are intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3490 Knee joint femorotibial metal/composite non-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femorotibial metal/composite non-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits minimally (less than normal anatomic constraints) translation in one or more planes. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral condylar resurfacing component or components made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial condylar component or components made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene with carbon fibers composite and are intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3500 Knee joint femorotibial metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femorotibial metal/composite semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial component with the articulating surfaces made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene with carbon-fibers composite and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3510 Knee joint femorotibial metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femorotibial metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits translation or rotation in one or more planes and has components that are linked together or affined. This generic type of device includes prostheses composed of a ball-and-socket joint located between a stemmed femoral and a stemmed tibial component and a runner and track joint between each pair of femoral and tibial condyles. The ball-and-socket joint is composed of a ball at the head of a column rising from the stemmed tibial component. The ball, the column, the tibial plateau, and the stem for fixation of the tibial component are made of an alloy, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. The ball of the tibial component is held within the socket of the femoral component by the femoral component's flat outer surface. The flat outer surface of the tibial component abuts both a reciprocal flat surface within the cavity of the femoral component and flanges on the femoral component designed to prevent distal displacement. The stem of the femoral component is made of an alloy, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, but the socket of the component is made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. The femoral component has metallic runners which align with the ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene tracks that press-fit into the metallic tibial component. The generic class also includes devices whose upper and lower components are linked with a solid bolt passing through a journal bearing of greater radius, permitting some rotation in the transverse plane, a minimal arc of abduction/adduction. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3520 Knee joint femorotibial metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femorotibial metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits minimally (less than normal anatomic constraints) translation in one or more planes. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral condylar resurfacing component or components made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial component or components made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene and are intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3530 Knee joint femorotibial metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femorotibial metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3540 Knee joint patellofemoral polymer/metal semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint patellofemoral polymer/metal semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a two-part device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint in the treatment of primary patellofemoral arthritis or chondromalacia. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes a component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum or austenitic steel, for resurfacing the intercondylar groove (femoral sulcus) on the anterior aspect of the distal femur, and a patellar component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device is limited to those devices intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027). The patellar component is designed to be implanted only with its femoral component.

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3550 Knee joint patellofemorotibial polymer/metal/metal constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint patellofemorotibial polymer/metal/metal constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a knee joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and has components that are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component, a tibial component, a cylindrical bolt and accompanying locking hardware that are all made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a retropatellar resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. The retropatellar surfacing component may be attached to the resected patella either with a metallic screw or bone cement. All stemmed metallic components within this generic type are intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3560 Knee joint patellofemorotibial polymer/metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint patellofemorotibial polymer/metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a knee joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a femoral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a tibial component or components and a retropatellar resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3570 Knee joint femoral (hemi-knee) metallic uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint femoral (hemi-knee) metallic uncemented prosthesis is a device made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that consist of a femoral component with or without protuberance(s) for the enhancement of fixation and is limited to those prostheses intended for use without bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3580 Knee joint patellar (hemi-knee) metallic resurfacing uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint patellar (hemi-knee) metallic resurfacing uncemented prosthesis is a device made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, intended to be implanted to replace the retropatellar articular surface of the patellofemoral joint. The device limits minimally (less than normal anatomic constraints) translation in one or more planes. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a retropatellar resurfacing component and an orthopedic screw to transfix the patellar remnant. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use without bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* (1) Class II when intended for treatment of degenerative and posttraumatic patellar arthritis.

(2) Class III when intended for uses other than treatment of degenerative and posttraumatic patellar arthritis.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device intended for uses described in paragraph (b)(2). See § 888.3.

§ 888.3590 Knee joint tibial (hemi-knee) metallic resurfacing uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A knee joint tibial (hemi-knee) metallic resurfacing uncemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace part of a knee joint. The device limits minimally (less than normal anatomic constraints) translation in one or more planes. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This prosthesis is made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and is intended to resurface one tibial condyle. The generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use without bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3640 Shoulder joint metal/metal or metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A shoulder joint metal/metal or metal/polymer constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a shoulder joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and has components that are linked together. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a humeral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a glenoid component made of this alloy or a combination of this alloy and ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3650 Shoulder joint metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A shoulder joint metal/polymer non-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a shoulder joint. The device limits minimally (less than normal anatomic constraints) translation in one or more planes. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a humeral component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a glenoid resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3660 Shoulder joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A shoulder joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a shoulder joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have a humeral resurfacing component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and a glenoid resurfacing component made of ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3680 Shoulder joint glenoid (hemi-shoulder) metallic cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A shoulder joint glenoid (hemi-shoulder) metallic cemented prosthesis is a device that has a glenoid (socket) component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, or alloys with ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene and intended to be implanted to replace part of a shoulder joint. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3690 Shoulder joint humeral (hemi-shoulder) metallic uncemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A shoulder joint humeral (hemi-shoulder) metallic uncemented prosthesis is a device made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. It has an intramedullary stem and is intended to be implanted to replace the articular surface of the proximal end of the humerus and to be fixed without bone cement (§ 888.3027). This device is not intended for biological fixation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3720 Toe joint polymer constrained prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A toe joint polymer constrained prosthesis is a device made of silicone elastomer or polyester reinforced silicone elastomer intended to be implanted to replace the first metatarsophalangeal (big toe) joint. This generic type of device consists of a single flexible across-the-joint component that prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3730 Toe joint phalangeal (hemi-toe) polymer prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A toe joint phalangeal (hemi-toe) polymer prosthesis is a device made of silicone elastomer intended to be implanted to replace the base of the proximal phalanx of the toe.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3750 Wrist joint carpal lunate polymer prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint carpal lunate prosthesis is a one-piece device made of silicone elastomer intended to be implanted to replace the carpal lunate bone of the wrist.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3760 Wrist joint carpal scaphoid polymer prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint carpal scaphoid polymer prosthesis is a one-piece device made of silicone elastomer intended to be implanted to replace the carpal scaphoid bone of the wrist.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3770 Wrist joint carpal trapezium polymer prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint carpal trapezium polymer prosthesis is a one-piece device made of silicone elastomer or silicone elastomer/polyester material intended to be implanted to replace the carpal trapezium bone of the wrist.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3780 Wrist joint polymer constrained prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint polymer constrained prosthesis is a device made of polyester-reinforced silicone elastomer intended to be implanted to replace a wrist joint. This generic type of device consists of a single flexible across-the-joint component that prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3790 Wrist joint metal constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint metal constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a wrist joint. The device prevents dislocation in more than one anatomic plane and consists of either a single flexible across-the-joint component or two components linked together. This generic type of device is limited to a device which is made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, and is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class III.

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 888.3.

§ 888.3800 Wrist joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint metal/polymer semi-constrained cemented prosthesis is a device intended to be implanted to replace a wrist joint. The device limits translation and rotation in one or more planes via the geometry of its articulating surfaces. It has no linkage across-the-joint. This generic type of device includes prostheses that have either a one-part radial component made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum, with an ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene bearing surface, or a two-part radial component made of alloys and an ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene ball that is mounted on the radial component with a trunnion bearing. The metallic portion of the two-part radial component is inserted into the radius. These devices have a metacarpal component(s) made of alloys, such as cobalt-chromium-molybdenum. This generic type of device is limited to those prostheses intended for use with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.3810 Wrist joint ulnar (hemi-wrist) polymer prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* A wrist joint ulnar (hemi-wrist) polymer prosthesis is a mushroom-shaped device made of a medical grade silicone elastomer or ultra-high molecular weight polyethylene intended to be implanted into the intramedullary canal of the bone and held in place by a suture. Its purpose is to cover the resected end of the distal ulna to control bone overgrowth and to provide an articular surface for the radius and carpus.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

Subpart E—Surgical Devices

§ 888.4150 Calipers for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A caliper for clinical use is a compass-like device intended for use in measuring the thickness or diameter of a part of the body or the distance between two body surfaces, such as for measuring an excised skeletal specimen to determine the proper replacement size of a prosthesis.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 888.4200 Cement dispenser.

(a) *Identification.* A cement dispenser is a nonpowered syringe-like device intended for use in placing bone cement (§ 888.3027) into surgical sites.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976 (e.g., 316 stainless steel, chrome plated carbon steel, or polyethylene), the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52953, Dec. 29, 1988]

§ 888.4210 Cement mixer for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A cement mixer for clinical use is a device consisting of a container intended for use in mixing bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976 (e.g., 316 stainless steel or polyethylene), the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52953, Dec. 29, 1988]

§ 888.4220 Cement monomer vapor evacuator.

(a) *Identification.* A cement monomer vapor evacuator is a device intended for use during surgery to contain or remove undesirable fumes, such as monomer vapor from bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52954, Dec. 29, 1988]

§ 888.4230 Cement ventilation tube.

(a) *Identification.* A cement ventilation tube is a tube-like device usually made of plastic intended to be inserted into a surgical cavity to allow the release of air or fluid from the cavity as it is being filled with bone cement (§ 888.3027).

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976 (e.g., polypropylene or polyethylene), the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52954, Dec. 29, 1988]

§ 888.4300 Depth gauge for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A depth gauge for clinical use is a measuring device intended for various medical purposes, such as to determine the proper length of screws for fastening the ends of a fractured bone.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 888.4540 Orthopedic manual surgical instrument.

(a) *Identification.* An orthopedic manual surgical instrument is a nonpowered hand-held device intended for medical purposes to manipulate tissue, or for use with other devices in orthopedic surgery. This generic type of device includes the cerclage applier, awl, bender, drill brace, broach, burr, corkscrew, countersink, pin crimper, wire cutter, prosthesis driver, extractor, file, fork, needle holder, impactor, bending or contouring instrument, compression instrument, passer, socket positioner, probe, femoral neck punch, socket pusher, reamer, rongeur, scissors, screwdriver, bone skid, staple driver, bone screw starter, surgical stripper, tamp, bone tap, trephine, wire twister, and wrench.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, the device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 888.4580 Sonic surgical instrument and accessories/attachments.

(a) *Identification.* A sonic surgical instrument is a hand-held device with various accessories or attachments, such as a cutting tip that vibrates at high frequencies, and is intended for medical purposes to cut bone or other materials, such as acrylic.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 888.4600 Protractor for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A protractor for clinical use is a device intended for use in measuring the angles of bones, such as on X-rays or in surgery.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 888.4800 Template for clinical use.

(a) *Identification.* A template for clinical use is a device that consists of a pattern or guide intended for medical purposes, such as selecting or positioning orthopedic implants or guiding the marking of tissue before cutting.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 888.5850 Nonpowered orthopedic traction apparatus and accessories.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered orthopedic traction apparatus is a device that consists of a rigid frame with nonpowered traction accessories, such as cords, pulleys, or weights, and that is intended to apply a therapeutic pulling force to the skeletal system.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 with the exception of § 820.180, regarding general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, regarding complaint files.

§ 888.5890 Noninvasive traction component.

(a) *Identification.* A noninvasive traction component is a device, such as a head halter, pelvic belt, or a traction splint, that does not penetrate the skin and is intended to assist in connecting a patient to a traction apparatus so that a therapeutic pulling force may be applied to the patient's body.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, regarding general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, regarding complaint files.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52954, Dec. 29, 1988]

§ 888.5940 Cast component.

(a) *Identification.* A cast component is a device intended for medical purposes to protect or support a cast. This generic type of device includes the cast heel, toe cap, cast support, and walking iron.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. If the device is made of the same materials that were used in the device before May 28, 1976, (e.g., heels of rubber vinyl; walking irons of plate steel) it is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, regarding general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, regarding complaint files.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52954, Dec. 29, 1988]

§ 888.5980 Manual cast application and removal instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A manual cast application and removal instrument is a nonpowered hand-held device intended to be used in applying or removing a cast. This generic type of device includes the cast knife, cast spreader, plaster saw, plaster dispenser, and casting stand.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807 of this chapter. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing regulations in Part 820 of this chapter, with the exception of § 820.180, regarding general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, regarding complaint files.

[52 FR 33702, Sept. 4, 1987, as amended at 53 FR 52954, Dec. 29, 1988]

PART 890—PHYSICAL MEDICINE DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
890.1 Scope.
890.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Physical Medicine Diagnostic Devices

890.1175 Electrode cable.
890.1225 Chronaximeter.
890.1375 Diagnostic electromyograph.
890.1385 Diagnostic electromyograph needle electrode.
890.1450 Powered reflex hammer.
890.1575 Force-measuring platform.
890.1600 Intermittent pressure measurement system.
890.1615 Miniature pressure transducer.
890.1850 Diagnostic muscle stimulator.
890.1925 Isokinetic testing and evaluation system.

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Physical Medicine Prosthetic Devices

890.3025 Prosthetic and orthotic accessory.
890.3075 Cane.
890.3100 Mechanical chair.
890.3110 Electric positioning chair.
890.3150 Crutch.
890.3175 Flotation cushion.
890.3410 External limb orthotic component.
890.3420 External limb prosthetic component.
890.3450 Mechanical automobile hand and foot driving control.
890.3475 Limb orthosis.
890.3490 Truncal orthosis.
Sec.
890.3500 External assembled lower limb prosthesis.
890.3520 Plinth.
890.3610 Rigid pneumatic structure orthosis.
890.3640 Arm sling.
890.3665 Congenital hip dislocation abduction splint.
890.3675 Denis Brown splint.
890.3690 Powered wheeled stretcher.
890.3700 Nonpowered communication system.
890.3710 Powered communication system.
890.3725 Powered environmental control system.
890.3750 Mechanical table.
890.3760 Powered table.
890.3790 Cane, crutch, and walker tips and pads.
890.3800 Motorized three-wheeled vehicle.
890.3825 Mechanical walker.
890.3850 Mechanical wheelchair.
890.3860 Powered wheelchair.
890.3880 Special grade wheelchair.
890.3890 Stair-climbing wheelchair.
890.3900 Standup wheelchair.
890.3910 Wheelchair accessory.
890.3920 Wheelchair component.
890.3930 Wheelchair elevator.
890.3940 Wheelchair platform scale.

Subpart E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—Physical Medicine Therapeutic Devices

890.5050 Daily activity assist device.
890.5100 Immersion hydrobath.
890.5110 Paraffin bath.
890.5125 Nonpowered sitz bath.
890.5150 Powered patient transport.
890.5160 Air-fluidized bed.
890.5170 Powered flotation therapy bed.
890.5180 Manual patient rotation bed.
890.5225 Powered patient rotation bed.
890.5250 Moist steam cabinet.
890.5275 Microwave diathermy.
890.5290 Shortwave diathermy.
890.5300 Ultrasonic diathermy.
890.5350 Exercise component.
890.5360 Measuring exercise equipment.
890.5370 Nonmeasuring exercise equipment.
890.5380 Powered exercise equipment.
890.5410 Powered finger exerciser.
890.5500 Infrared lamp.
890.5525 Iontophoresis device.
890.5575 Powered external limb overload warning device.
890.5650 Powered inflatable tube massager.
890.5660 Therapeutic massager.
890.5700 Cold pack.
890.5710 Hot or cold disposable pack.
890.5720 Water circulating hot or cold pack.

Sec.
890.5730 Moist heat pack.
890.5740 Powered heating pad.
890.5765 Pressure-applying device.
890.5850 Powered muscle stimulator.
890.5860 Ultrasound and muscle stimulator.
890.5880 Multi-function physical therapy table.
890.5900 Powered traction equipment.
890.5925 Traction accessory.
890.5940 Chilling unit.
890.5950 Powered heating unit.
890.5975 Therapeutic vibrator.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 890.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of physical medicine devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 may not show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provisions of a regulation in this part, but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a physical medicine device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., used both as a diagnostic device and as a therapeutic device) is listed only in one subpart.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are the Chapter I of Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

[52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application of premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be effective during the grace period ending on the 90th day after its promulgation or on the last day of the 30th full calendar month after the regulation that classifies the device into class III is effective, whichever is later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of the act. Accordingly, unless an effective date of the requirement for premarket approval is shown in the regulation for a device classified into class III in this part, the device may be commercially distributed without FDA's issuance of an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device. If FDA promulgates a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring premarket approval for a device, section 501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to the device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equivalent, device introduced into commercial distribution on or after May 28, 1976, includiing a device formerly marketed that has been substantially altered, is classified by statute (section 513(f) of the act) into class III without any grace period and FDA must have issued an order approving a PMA or declaring completed a PDP for the device before the device is commercially distributed unless it is reclassified. If FDA knows that a device being commerically distributed may be a "new" device as defined in this section because of any new intended use or other reasons, FDA may codify the statutory classification of the device into class III for such new use. Accordingly, the regulation for such a class III device states that as of the enactment date of the amendments, May 28, 1976, the device must have an approval under section 515 of the act before commercial distribution.

[52 FR 17741, May 11, 1987]

Subpart B—Physical Medicine Diagnostic Devices

§ 890.1175 Electrode cable.

(a) *Identification.* An electrode cable is a device composed of strands of insulated electrical conductors laid together around a central core and intended for medical purposes to connect an electrode from a patient to a diagnostic machine.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.1225 Chronaximeter.

(a) *Identification.* A chronaximeter is a device intended for medical purposes to measure neuromuscular excitability by means of a strength-duration curve that provides a basis for diagnosis and prognosis of neurological dysfunction.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1375 Diagnostic electromyograph.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic electromyograph is a device intended for medical purposes, such as to monitor and display the bioelectric signals produced by muscles, to stimulate peripheral nerves, and to monitor and display the electrical activity produced by nerves, for the diagnosis and prognosis of neuromuscular disease.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1385 Diagnostic electromyograph needle electrode.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic electromyograph needle electrode is a monopolar or bipolar needle intended to be inserted into muscle or nerve tissue to sense bioelectrical signals. The device is intended for medial purposes for use in connection with electromyography (recording the intrinsic electrical properties of skeletal muscle).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1450 Powered reflex hammer.

(a) *Identification.* A powered reflex hammer is a motorized device intended for medical purposes to elicit and determine controlled deep tendon reflexes.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1575 Force-measuring platform.

(a) *Identification.* A force-measuring platform is a device intended for medical purposes that converts pressure applied upon a planar surface into analog mechanical or electrical signals. This device is used to determine ground reaction force, centers of percussion, centers of torque, and their variations in both magnitude and direction with time.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1600 Intermittent pressure measurement system.

(a) *Identification.* An intermittent pressure measurement system is an evaluative device intended for medical purposes, such as to measure the actual pressure between the body surface and the supporting media.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1615 Miniature pressure transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A miniature pressure transducer is a device intended for medical purposes to measure the pressure between a device and soft tissue by converting mechanical inputs to analog electrical signals.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1850 Diagnostic muscle stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic muscle stimulator is a device used mainly with an electromyograph machine to initiate muscle activity. It is intended for medical purposes, such as to diagnose motor nerve or sensory neuromuscular disorders and neuromuscular function.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.1925 Isokinetic testing and evaluation system.

(a) *Identification.* An isokinetic testing and evaluation system is a rehabilitative exercise device intended for medical purposes, such as to measure, evaluate, and increase the strength of muscles and the range of motion of joints.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

Subpart C—[Reserved]

Subpart D—Physical Medicine Prosthetic Devices

§ 890.3025 Prosthetic and orthotic accessory.

(a) *Identification.* A prosthetic and orthotic accessory is a device intended for medical purposes to support, protect, or aid in the use of a cast, orthosis (brace), or prosthesis. Examples of prosthetic and orthotic accessories include the following: A pelvic support band and belt, a cast shoe, a cast bandage, a limb cover, a prosthesis alignment device, a postsurgical pylon, a transverse rotator, and a temporary training splint.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3075 Cane.

(a) *Identification.* A cane is a device intended for medical purposes that is used to provide minimal weight support while walking. Examples of canes include the following: A standard cane, a forearm cane, and a cane with a tripod, quad, or retractable stud on the ground end.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulation in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3100 Mechanical chair.

(a) *Identification.* A mechanical chair is a manually operated device intended for medical purposes that is used to assist a disabled person in performing an activity that the person would otherwise find difficult to do or be unable to do. Examples of mechanical chairs include the following: A chair with an elevating seat used to raise a person from a sitting position to a standing position and a chair with casters used by a person to move from one place to another while sitting.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.3110 Electric positioning chair.

(a) *Identification.* An electric positioning chair is a device with a motorized positioning control that is intended for medical purposes and that can be adjusted to various positions. The device is used to provide stability for patients with athetosis (involuntary spasms) and to alter postural positions.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3150 Crutch.

(a) *Identification.* A crutch is a device intended for medical purposes for use by disabled persons to provide minimal to moderate weight support while walking.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is also exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of

§820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and §820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3175 Flotation cushion.

(a) *Identification.* A flotation cushion is a device intended for medical purposes that is made of plastic, rubber, or other type of covering, that is filled with water, air, gel, mud, or any other substance allowing a flotation media, used on a seat to lessen the likelihood of skin ulcers.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.3410 External limb orthotic component.

(a) *Identification.* An external limb orthotic component is a device intended for medical purposes for use in conjunction with an orthosis (brace) to increase the function of the orthosis for a patient's particular needs. Examples of external limb orthotic components include the following: A brace-setting twister and an external brace stirrup.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of §820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and §820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3420 External limb prosthetic component.

(a) *Identification.* An external limb prosthetic component is a device intended for medical purposes that, when put together with other appropriate components, constitutes a total prosthesis. Examples of external limb prosthetic components include the following: Ankle, foot, hip, knee, and socket components; mechanical or powered hand, hook, wrist unit, elbow joint, and shoulder joint components; and cable and prosthesis suction valves.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3450 Mechanical automobile hand and foot driving control.

(a) *Identification.* A mechanical automobile hand or foot driving control is a device intended for medical purposes to enable persons who have limited use of their arms or legs to drive an automobile. The device allows the hand operation of the gas, brake, and clutch pedals or foot operation of the steering and gear shift.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3475 Limb orthosis.

(a) *Identification.* A limb orthosis (brace) is a device intended for medical purposes that is worn on the upper or lower extremities to support, to correct, or to prevent deformities or to align body structures for functional improvement. Examples of limb orthoses include the following: A whole limb and joint brace, a hand splint, an elastic stocking, a knee cage, and a corrective shoe.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3490 Truncal orthosis.

(a) *Identification.* A truncal orthosis is a device intended for medical purposes to support or to immobilize fractures, strains, or sprains of the neck or trunk of the body. Examples of truncal orthoses are the following: Abdominal, cervical, cervical-thoracic, lumbar, lumbo-sacral, rib fracture, sacroiliac, and thoracic orthoses and clavicle splints.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification precedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3500 External assembled lower limb prosthesis.

(a) *Identification.* An external assembled lower limb prosthesis is a device that is intended for medical purposes and is a preassembled external artificial limb for the lower extremity. Examples of external assembled lower limb prostheses are the following: Knee/shank/ankle/foot assembly and thigh/knee/shank/ankle/foot assembly.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3520 Plinth.

(a) *Identification.* A plinth is a flat, padded board with legs that is intended for medical purposes. A patient is placed on the device for treatment or examination.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). This device is exempt from the premarket notification procedure in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is also exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records and § 820.198 with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3610 Rigid pneumatic structure orthosis.

(a) *Identification.* A rigid pneumatic structure orthosis is a device intended for medical purposes to provide whole body support by means of a pressurized suit to help thoracic paraplegics walk.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.3640 Arm sling.

(a) *Identification.* An arm sling is a device intended for medical purposes to immobilize the arm, by means of a fabric band suspended from around the neck.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3665 Congenital hip dislocation abduction splint.

(a) *Identification.* A congenital hip dislocation abduction splint is a device intended for medical purposes to stabilize the hips of a young child with dislocated hips in an abducted position (away from the midline).

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3675 Denis Brown splint.

(a) *Identification.* A Denis Brown splint is a device intended for medical purposes to immobilize the foot. It is used on young children with tibial torsion (excessive rotation of the lower leg) or club foot.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3690 Powered wheeled stretcher.

(a) *Identification.* A powered wheeled stretcher is a battery-powered table with wheels that is intended for medical purposes for use by patients who are unable to propel themselves independently and who must maintain a prone or supine position for prolonged periods because of skin ulcers or contractures (muscle contractions).

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3700 Nonpowered communication system.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered communication system is a mechanical device intended for medical purposes that is used to assist a patient in communicating when physical impairment prevents writing, telephone use, reading, or talking. Examples of nonpowered communications systems include an alphabet board and a page turner.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3710 Powered communication system.

(a) *Identification.* A powered communication system is an AC- or battery-powered device intended for medical purposes that is used to transmit or receive information. It is used by persons unable to use normal communication methods because of physical impairment. Examples of powered communication systems include the following: a specialized typewriter, a reading machine, and a video picture and word screen.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3725 Powered environmental control system.

(a) *Identification.* A powered environmental control system is an AC- or battery-powered device intended for medical purposes that is used by a patient to operate an environmental control function. Examples of environmental control functions include the following: to control room temperature, to answer a doorbell or telephone, or to sound an alarm for assistance.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3750 Mechanical table.

(a) *Identification.* A mechanical table is a device intended for medical purposes that has a flat surface that can be inclined or adjusted to various positions. It is used by patients with circulatory, neurological, or musculoskeletal conditions to increase tolerance to an upright or standing position.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.3760 Powered table.

(a) *Identification.* A powered table is a device intended for medical purposes that is an electrically operated flat surface table that can be adjusted to various positions. It is used by patients with circulatory, neurological, or musculoskeletal conditions to increase tolerance to an upright or standing position.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3790 Cane, crutch, and walker tips and pads.

(a) *Identification.* Cane, crutch, and walker tips and pads are rubber (or rubber substitute) device accessories intended for medical purposes that are applied to the ground end of mobility aids to prevent skidding or that are applied to the body contact area of the device for comfort or as an aid in using an ambulatory assist device.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and

§ 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3800 Motorized three-wheeled vehicle.

(a) *Identification.* A motorized three-wheeled vehicle is a gasoline-fueled or battery-powered device intended for medical purposes that is used for outside transportation by disabled persons.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3825 Mechanical walker.

(a) *Identification.* A mechanical walker is a four-legged device with a metal frame intended for medical purposes to provide moderate weight support while walking. It is used by disabled persons who lack strength, good balance, or endurance.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3850 Mechanical wheelchair.

(a) *Identification.* A mechanical wheelchair is a manually operated device with wheels that is intended for medical purposes to provide mobility to persons restricted to a sitting position.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.3860 Powered wheelchair.

(a) *Identification.* A powered wheelchair is a battery-operated device with wheels that is intended for medical purposes to provide mobility to persons restricted to a sitting position.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3880 Special grade wheelchair.

(a) *Identification.* A special grade wheelchair is a device with wheels that is intended for medical purposes to provide mobility to persons restricted to a sitting position. It is intended to be used in all environments for long-term use, e.g., for paraplegics, quadraplegics, and amputees.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3890 Stair-climbing wheelchair.

(a) *Identification.* A stair-climbing wheelchair is a device with wheels that is intended for medical purposes to provide mobility to persons restricted to a sitting position. The device is intended to climb stairs by means of two endless belt tracks that are lowered from under the chair and adjusted to the angle of the stairs.

(b) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval. See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987; 52 FR 22577, June 12, 1987]

§ 890.3900 Standup wheelchair.

(a) *Identification.* A standup wheelchair is a device with wheels that is intended for medical purposes to provide mobility to persons restricted to a sitting position. The device incorporates an external manually controlled mechanical system that is intended to raise a paraplegic to an upright position by means of an elevating seat.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3910 Wheelchair accessory.

(a) *Identification.* A wheelchair accessory is a device intended for medical purposes that is sold separately from a wheelchair and is intended to meet the specific needs of a patient who uses a wheelchair. Examples of wheelchair accessories are the following: armboard, lapboard, pusher cuff, crutch and cane holder, restraint, overhead suspension sling, head and trunk support, and blanket and leg rest strap.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.3920 Wheelchair component.

(a) *Identification.* A wheelchair component is a device intended for medical purposes that is generally sold as an integral part of a wheelchair, but may also be sold separately as a replacement part. Examples of wheelchair components are the following: Armrest, narrowing attachment, belt, extension brake, curb climber, cushion, antitip device, footrest, handrim, hill holder, leg rest, heel loops, and toe loops.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.3930 Wheelchair elevator.

(a) *Identification.* A wheelchair elevator is a motorized lift device intended for medical purposes to provide a means for a disabled person to move a wheelchair from one level to another.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.3940 Wheelchair Platform scale.

(a) *Identification.* A wheelchair platform scale is a device with a base designed to accommodate a wheelchair. It is intended for medical purposes to weigh a person who is confined to a wheelchair.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

Subpart E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—Physical Medicine Therapeutic Devices

§ 890.5050 Daily activity assist device.

(a) *Identification.* A daily activity assist device is a modified adaptor or utensil (e.g., a dressing, grooming, recreational activity, transfer, eating, or homemaking aid) that is intended for medical purposes to assist a patient to perform a specific function.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. If the device is not labeled or otherwise represented as sterile, it also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5100 Immersion hydrobath.

(a) *Identification.* An immersion hydrobath is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of water agitators and that may include a tub to be filled with water. The water temperature may be measured by a gauge. It is used in hydrotherapy to relieve pain and itching and as an aid in the healing process of inflamed and traumatized tissue, and it serves as a setting for removal of contaminated tissue.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5110 Paraffin bath.

(a) *Identification.* A paraffin bath is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a tub to be filled with liquid paraffin (wax) and maintained at an elevated temperature in which the patient's appendages (e.g., hands or fingers) are placed to relieve pain and stiffness.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5125 Nonpowered sitz bath.

(a) *Identification.* A nonpowered sitz bath is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a tub to be filled with water for use in external hydrotherapy to relieve pain or pruritis and to accelerate the healing of inflamed or traumatized tissues of the perianal and perineal areas.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5150 Powered patient transport.

(a) *Identification.* A powered patient transport is a motorized device intended for medical purposes to assist transfers of patients to and from the bath, beds, chairs, treatment modalities, transport vehicles, and up and down flights of stairs. This generic type of device does not include motorized threewheeled vehicles or wheelchairs.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5160 Air-fluidized bed.

(a) *Identification.* An air-fluidized bed is a device employing the circulation of filtered air through ceramic spherules (small, round ceramic objects) that is intended for medical purposes to treat or prevent bedsores, to treat severe or extensive burns, or to aid circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5170 Powered flotation therapy bed.

(a) *Identification.* A powered flotation therapy bed is a device that is equipped with a mattress that contains a large volume of constantly moving water, air, mud, or sand. It is intended for medical purposes to treat or prevent a patient's bedsores, to treat severe or extensive burns, or to aid circulation. The mattress may be electrically heated.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5180 Manual patient rotation bed.

(a) *Identification.* A manual patient rotation bed is a device that turns a patient who is restricted to a reclining position. It is intended for medical purposes to treat or prevent bedsores, to treat severe and extensive burns, or to aid circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.5225 Powered patient rotation bed.

(a) *Identification.* A powered patient rotation bed is a device that turns a patient who is restricted to a reclining position. It is intended for medical purposes to treat or prevent bedsores, to treat severe and extensive burns, urinary tract blockage, and to aid circulation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5250 Moist steam cabinet.

(a) *Identification.* A moist steam cabinet is a device intended for medical purposes that delivers a flow of heated, moisturized air to a patient in an enclosed unit. It is used to treat arthritis and fibrosis (a formation of fibrosis tissue) and to increase local blood flow.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5275 Microwave diathermy.

(a) *Microwave diathermy for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions*—(1) *Identification.* A microwave diathermy for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions is a device that applies to specific areas of the body electromagnetic energy in the microwave frequency bands of 915 megahertz to 2,450 megahertz and that is intended to generate deep heat within body tissues for the treatment of selected medical conditions such as relief of pain, muscle spasms, and joint contractures, but not for the treatment of malignancies.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Microwave diathermy for all other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A microwave diathermy for all other uses except for the treatment of malignancies is a device that applies to the body electromagnetic energy in the microwave frequency bands of 915 megahertz to 2,450 megahertz and that is intended for the treatment of medical conditions by means other than the generation of deep heat within body tissues as described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.5290 Shortwave diathermy.

(a) *Shortwave diathermy for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions*—(1) *Identification.* A shortwave diathermy for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions is a device that applies to specific areas of the body electromagnetic energy in the radio frequency bands of 13 megahertz to 27.12 megahertz and that is intended to generate deep heat within body tissues for the treatment of selected medical conditions such as relief of pain, muscle spasms, and joint contractures, but not for the treatment of malignancies.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Shortwave diathermy for all other uses*—(1) *Identification.* A shortwave diathermy for all other uses except for the treatment of malignancies is a device that applies to the body electromagnetic energy in the radio frequency bands of 13 megahertz to 27.12 megahertz and that is intended for the treatment of medical conditions by means other than the generation of deep heat within body tissues as described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.5300 Ultrasonic diathermy.

(a) *Ultrasonic diathermy for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions*—(1) *Identification.* An ultrasonic diathermy for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions is a device that applies to specific areas of the body ultrasonic energy at a frequency beyond 20 kilohertz and that is intended to generate deep heat within body tissues for the treatment of selected medical conditions such as relief of pain, muscle spasms, and joint contractures, but not for the treatment of malignancies.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Ultrasonic diathermy for all other uses*—(1) *Identification.* An ultrasonic diathermy for all other uses except for the treatment of malignancies is a device that applies to the body ultrasonic energy at a frequency beyond 20 kilohertz and that is intended for the treatment of medical conditions by means other than the generation of deep heat within body tissues as described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.5350 Exercise component.

(a) *Identification.* An exercise component is a device that is used in conjunction with other forms of exercise and that is intended for medical purposes, such as to redevelope muscles or restore motion to joints or for use as an adjunct treatment for obesity. Examples include weights, dumbbells, straps, and adaptive hand mitts.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exemption of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5360 Measuring exercise equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Measuring exercise equipment consist of manual devices intended for medical purposes, such as to redevelop muscles or restore motion to joints or for use as an adjunct treatment for obesity. These devices also include instrumentation, such as the pulse rate monitor, that provide information used for physical evaluation and physical planning purposes., Examples include a therapeutic exercise bicycle with measuring instrumentation, a manually propelled treadmill with measuring instrumentation, and a rowing machine with measuring instrumentation.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5370 Nonmeasuring exercise equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Nonmeasuring exercise equipment consist of devices intended for medical purposes, such as to redevelop muscles or restore motion to joints or for use as an adjunct treatment for obesity. Examples include a prone scooter board, parallel bars, a mechanical treadmill, an exercise table, and a manually propelled exercise bicycle.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The devices are exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The devices also are exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5380 Powered exercise equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Powered exercise equipment consist of powered devices intended for medical purposes, such as to redevelop muscles or restore motion to joints or for use as an adjunct treatment for obesity. Examples include a powered treadmill, a powered bicycle, and powered parallel bars.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5410 Powered finger exerciser.

(a) *Identification.* A powered finger exerciser is a device intended for medical purposes to increase flexion and the extension range of motion of the joints of the second to the fifth fingers of the hand.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5500 Infrared lamp.

(a)Identification. An infrared lamp is a device intended for medical purposes that emits energy at infrared frequencies (approximately 700 nanometers to 50,000 nanometers) to provide topical heating.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5525 Iontophoresis device.

(a) *Iontophoresis device intended for certain specified uses*—(1) *Identification.* An iontophoresis device is a device that is intended to use a direct current to introduce ions of soluble salts or other drugs into the body and induce sweating for use in the diagnosis of cystic fibrosis or for other uses if the labeling of the drug intended for use with the device bears adequate directions for the device's use with that drug. When used in the diagnosis of cystic fibrosis, the sweat is collected and its composition and weight are determined.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Iontophoresis device intended for any other purposes*—(1) *Identification.* An iontophoresis device is a device that is intended to use a direct current to introduce ions of soluble salts or other drugs into the body for medical purposes other than those specified in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.5575 Powered external limb overload warning device.

(a) *Identification.* A powered external limb overload warning device is a device intended for medical purposes to warn a patient of an overload or an underload in the amount of pressure placed on a leg.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5650 Powered inflatable tube massager.

(a) *Identification.* A powered inflatable tube massager is a powered device intended for medical purposes, such as to relieve minor muscle aches and pains and to increase circulation. It simulates kneading and stroking of tissues with the hands by use of an inflatable pressure cuff.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5660 Therapeutic massager.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic massager is an electrically powered device intended for medical purposes, such as to relieve minor muscle aches and pains.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5700 Cold pack.

(a) *Identification.* A cold pack is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a compact fabric envelope containing a specially hydrated pliable silicate gel capable of forming to the contour of the body and that provides cold therapy for body surfaces.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5710 Hot or cold disposable pack.

(a) *Identification.* A hot or cold disposable pack is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a sealed plastic bag incorporating chemicals that, upon activation, provides hot or cold therapy for body surfaces.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.5720 Water circulating hot or cold pack.

(a) *Identification.* A water circulating hot or cold pack is a device intended for medical purposes that operates by pumping heated or chilled water through a plastic bag and that provides hot or cold therapy for body surfaces.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5730 Moist heat pack.

(a) *Identification.* A moist heat pack is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of silica gel in a fabric container used to retain an elevated temperature and that provides moist heat therapy for body surfaces.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device also is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5740 Powered heating pad.

(a) *Identification.* A powered heating pad is an electrical device intended for medical purposes that provides dry heat therapy for body surfaces. It is capable of maintaining an elevated temperature during use.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5765 Presssure-applying device.

(a) *Identification.* A presssure-applying device is a device intended for medical purposes to apply continuous pressure to the paravertebral tissues for muscular relaxation and neuro-inhibition. It consists of a table with an adjustable overhead weight that, in place of the therapist's hands, presses on the back of a prone patient.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls).

§ 890.5850 Powered muscle stimulator.

(a) *Identification.* A powered muscle stimulator is an electrically powered device intended for medical purposes that repeatedly contracts muscles by passing electrical currents through electrodes contacting the affected body area.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5860 Ultrasound and muscle stimulator.

(a) *Ultrasound and muscle stimulator for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions*—(1) *Identification.* An ultrasound and muscle stimulator for use in applying therapeutic deep heat for selected medical conditions is a device that applies to specific areas of the body ultrasonic energy at a frequency beyond 20 kilohertz and that is intended to generate deep heat within body tissues for the treatment of selected medical conditions such as relief of pain, muscle spasms, and joint contractures, but not for the treatment of malignancies. The device also passes electrical currents through the body area to stimulate or relax muscles.

(2) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

(b) *Ultrasound and muscle stimulator for all other uses*—(1) *Identification.* An ultrasound and muscle stimulator for all other uses except for the treatment of malignancies is a device that applies to the body ultrasonic energy at a frequency beyond 20 kilohertz and applies to the body electrical currents and that is intended for the treatment of medical conditions by means other than the generation of deep heat within body tissues and the stimulation or relaxation of muscles as described in paragraph (a) of this section.

(2) *Classification.* Class III (premarket approval).

(c) *Date PMA or notice of completion of a PDP is required.* No effective date has been established of the requirement for premarket approval for the device described in paragraph (b)(1). See § 890.3.

[48 FR 53047, Nov. 23, 1983, as amended at 52 FR 17742, May 11, 1987]

§ 890.5880 Multi-function physical therapy table.

(a) *Identification.* A multi-function physical therapy table is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of a motorized table equipped to provide patients with heat, traction, and muscle relaxation therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5900 Power traction equipment.

(a) *Identification.* Powered traction equipment consists of powered devices intended for medical purposes for use in conjunction with traction accessories, such as belts and harnesses, to exert therapeutic pulling forces on the patient's body.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5925 Traction accessory.

(a) *Identification.* A traction accessory is a nonpowered accessory device intended for medical purposes to be used with powered traction equipment to aid in exerting therapeutic pulling forces on the patient's body. This generic type of device includes the pulley, strap, head halter, and pelvic belt.

(b) *Classification.* Class I (general controls). The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 890.5940 Chilling unit.

(a) *Identification.* A chilling unit is a refrigerative device intended for medical purposes to chill and maintain cold packs at a reduced temperature.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5950 Powered heating unit.

(a) *Identification.* A powered heating unit is a device intended for medical purposes that consists of an encased cabinet containing hot water and that is intended to heat and maintain hot packs at an elevated temperature.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

§ 890.5975 Therapeutic vibrator.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic vibrator is an electrically powered device intended for medical purposes that incorporates various kinds of pads and that is held in the hand or attached to the hand or to a table. It is intended for various uses, such as relaxing muscles and relieving minor aches and pains.

(b) *Classification.* Class II (performance standards).

PART 892—RADIOLOGY DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
92.1 Scope.
92.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

92.1000 Magnetic resonance diagnostic device.
92.1170 Bone densitometer.
92.1200 Emission computed tomography system.
92.1220 Fluorescent scanner.
92.1310 Nuclear tomography system.
92.1360 Radionuclide dose calibrator.
92.1370 Nuclear anthropomorphic phantom.
2.1380 Nuclear flood source phantom.
2.1390 Radionuclide rebreathing system.
2.1400 Nuclear sealed calibration source.
2.1420 Radionuclide test pattern phantom.
2.1540 Nonfetal ultrasonic monitor.
2.1550 Ultrasonic pulsed doppler imaging system.
2.1560 Ultrasonic pulsed echo imaging system.
2.1570 Diagnostic ultrasonic transducer.
2.1600 Angiographic X-ray system.
2.1610 Diagnostic X-ray beam-limiting device.
2.1620 Cine or spot fluorographic X-ray camera.
2.1630 Electrostatic X-ray imaging system.
2.1650 Image-intensified fluoroscopic X-ray system.
2.1660 Non-image-intensified fluoroscopic X-ray system.
2.1670 Spot-film device.
2.1680 Stationary X-ray system.
2.1700 Diagnostic X-ray high voltage generator.
2.1710 Mammographic X-ray system.
2.1720 Mobile X-ray system.
2.1730 Photofluorographic X-ray system.

Sec.
892.1740 Tomographic X-ray system.
892.1750 Computed tomography X-ray system.
892.1760 Diagnostic X-ray tube housing assembly.
892.1770 Diagnostic X-ray tube mount.
892.1820 Pneumoencephalographic chair.
892.1830 Radiologic patient cradle.
892.1840 Radiographic film.
892.1850 Radiographic film cassette.
892.1860 Radiographic film/cassette changer.
892.1870 Radiographic film/cassette changer programmer.
892.1880 Wall-mounted radiographic cassette holder.
892.1910 Radiographic grid.
892.1920 Radiographic head holder.
892.1940 Radiologic quality assurance instrument.
892.1950 Radiographic anthropomorphic phantom.
892.1960 Radiographic intensifying screen.
892.1980 Radiologic table.

Subparts C–E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

892.5050 Medical charged-particle radiation therapy system.
892.5300 Medical neutron radiation therapy system.
892.5650 Manual radionuclide applicator system.
892.5700 Remote controlled radionuclide applicator system.
892.5710 Radiation therapy beam-shaping block.
892.5730 Radionuclide brachytherapy source.
892.5740 Radionuclide teletherapy source.
892.5750 Radionuclide radiation therapy system.
892.5770 Powered radiation therapy patient support assembly.
892.5780 Light beam patient position indicator.
892.5840 Radiation therapy simulation system.
892.5900 X-ray radiation therapy system.
892.5930 Therapeutic X-ray tube housing assembly.

Subpart G—Miscellaneous Devices

892.6500 Personnel protective shield.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 501(f), 510, 513, 515, 520, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-546, 552-559, 565-574, 576-577 (21 U.S.C. 351(f), 360, 360c, 360e, 360j, 371(a)); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 53 FR 1567, Jan. 20, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 892.1 Scope.

(a) This part sets forth the classification of radiology devices intended for human use that are in commercial distribution.

(b) The identification of a device in a regulation in this part is not a precise description of every device that is, or will be, subject to the regulation. A manufacturer who submits a premarket notification submission for a device under Part 807 cannot show merely that the device is accurately described by the section title and identification provision of a regulation in this part but shall state why the device is substantially equivalent to other devices, as required by § 807.87.

(c) To avoid duplicative listings, a radiology device that has two or more types of uses (e.g., use both as a diagnostic device and a therapeutic device) is listed in one subpart only.

(d) References in this part to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of this Title 21, unless otherwise noted.

§ 892.3 Effective dates of requirement for premarket approval.

A device included in this part that is classified into class III (premarket approval) shall not be commercially distributed after the date shown in the regulation classifying the device unless the manufacturer has an approval under section 515 of the act (unless an exemption has been granted under section 520(g)(2) of the act). An approval under section 515 of the act consists of FDA's issuance of an order approving an application for premarket approval (PMA) for the device or declaring completed a product development protocol (PDP) for the device.

(a) Before FDA requires that a device commercially distributed before the enactment date of the amendments, or a device that has been found substantially equivalent to such a device, has an approval under section 515 of the act, FDA must promulgate a regulation under section 515(b) of the act requiring such approval, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. Such a regulation under section 515(b) of the act shall not be
effective during the grace perio
ending on the 90th day after its pr
mulgation or on the last day of th
30th full calendar month after th
regulation that classifies the devi
into class III is effective, whichever
later. See section 501(f)(2)(B) of th
act. Accordingly, unless an effecti
date of the requirement for premark
approval is shown in the regulation f
a device classified into class III in th
part, the device may be commercial
distributed without FDA's issuance
an order approving a PMA or decla
ing completed a PDP for the device.
FDA promulgates a regulation und
section 515(b) of the act requiring pr
market approval for a device, secti
501(f)(1)(A) of the act applies to th
device.

(b) Any new, not substantially equ
alent, device introduced into comme
cial distribution on or after May
1976, including a device formerly ma
keted that has been substantially
tered, is classified by statute (secti
513(f) of the act) into class III witho
any grace period and FDA must ha
issued an order approving a PMA
declaring completed a PDP for t
device before the device is commerci
ly distributed unless it is reclassifi
If FDA knows that a device being co
merically distributed may be a "ne
device as defined in this section
cause of any new intended use
other reasons, FDA may codify t
statutory classification of the dev
into class III for such new use. Acco
ingly, the regulation for such a cl
III device states that as of the ena
ment date of the amendments, M
28, 1976, the device must have an
proval under section 515 of the
before commercial distribution.

Subpart B—Diagnostic Devices

§ 892.1000 Magnetic resonance diagno device.

(a) *Identification.* A magnetic re
nance diagnostic device is intended
general diagnostic use to pres
images which reflect the spatial dis
bution and/or magnetic resona
spectra which reflect frequency
distribution of nuclei exhibiting nu
ar magnetic resonance. Other phys

parameters derived from the images and/or spectra may also be produced. The device includes hydrogen-1 (proton) imaging, sodium-23 imaging, hydrogen-1 spectroscopy, phosphorus-31 spectroscopy, and chemical shift imaging (preserving simultaneous frequency and spatial information).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

[53 FR 5078, Feb. 1, 1989]

§ 892.1170 Bone densitometer.

(a) *Identification.* A bone densitometer is a device intended for medical purposes to measure bone density and mineral content by X-ray or gamma ray transmission measurements through the bone and adjacent tissues. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1200 Emission computed tomography system.

(a) *Identification.* An emission computed tomography system is a device intended to detect the location and distribution of gamma ray- and positron-emitting radionuclides in the body and produce cross-sectional images through computer reconstruction of the data. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, radionuclide anatomical markers, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1220 Fluorescent scanner.

(a) *Identification.* A fluorescent scanner is a device intended to measure the induced fluorescent radiation in the body by exposing the body to certain X rays or low-energy gamma rays. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1310 Nuclear tomography system.

(a) *Identification.* A nuclear tomography system is a device intended to detect nuclear radiation in the body and produce images of a specific cross-sectional plane of the body by blurring or eliminating detail from other planes. This generic type of devices may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, radionuclide anatomical markers, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1360 Radionuclide dose calibrator.

(a) *Identification.* A radionuclide dose calibrator is a radiation detection device intended to assay radionuclides before their administration to patients.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1370 Nuclear anthropomorphic phantom.

(a) *Identification.* A nuclear anthropomorphic phantom is a human tissue facsimile that contains a radioactive source or a cavity in which a radioactive sample can be inserted. It is intended to calibrate nuclear uptake probes or other medical instruments.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.1380 Nuclear flood source phantom.

(a) *Identification.* A nuclear flood source phantom is a device that consists of a radiolucent container filled with a uniformly distributed solution of a desired radionuclide. It is intended to calibrate a medical gamma camera-collimator system for uniformity of response.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.1390 Radionuclide rebreathing system.

(a) *Identification.* A radionuclide rebreathing system is a device intended to be used to contain a gaseous or volatile radionuclide or a radionuclide-labeled aerosol and permit it to be respired by the patient during nuclear medicine ventilatory tests (testing process of exchange between the lungs and the atmosphere). This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1400 Nuclear sealed calibration source.

(a) *Identification.* A nuclear sealed calibration source is a device that consists of an encapsulated reference radionuclide intended for calibration of medical nuclear radiation detectors.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.1420 Radionuclide test pattern phantom.

(a) *Identification.* A radionuclide test pattern phantom is a device that consists of an arrangement of radiopaque or radioactive material sealed in a solid pattern intended to serve as a test for a performance characteristic of a nuclear medicine imaging device.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.1540 Nonfetal ultrasonic monitor.

(a) *Identification.* A nonfetal ultrasonic monitor is a device that projects a continuous high-frequency sound wave into body tissue other than a fetus to determine frequency changes (doppler shift) in the reflected wave and is intended for use in the investigation of nonfetal blood flow and other nonfetal body tissues in motion. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1550 Ultrasonic pulsed doppler imaging system.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasonic pulsed doppler imaging system is a device that combines the features of continuous wave doppler-effect technology with pulsed-echo effect technology and is intended to determine stationary body tissue characteristics, such as depth or location of tissue interfaces or dynamic tissue characteristics such as velocity of blood or tissue motion. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1560 Ultrasonic pulsed echo imagin system.

(a) *Identification.* An ultrasoni pulsed echo imaging system is a devic intended to project a pulsed soun beam into body tissue to determin the depth or location of the tissu interfaces and to measure the dura tion of an acoustic pulse from th transmitter to the tissue interface an back to the receiver. This generic typ of device may include signal analysi and display equipment, patient an equipment supports, component parts and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1570 Diagnostic ultrasonic transducer.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic ul trasonic transducer is a device made o a piezoelectric material that converts electrical signals into acoustic signals and acoustic signals into electrical signals and intended for use in diagnostic ultrasonic medical devices. Accessories of this generic type of device may include transmission media for acoustically coupling the transducer to the body surface, such as acoustic gel, paste, or a flexible fluid container.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1600 Angiographic X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* An angiographic X-ray system is a device intended for radiologic visualization of the heart, blood vessels, or lymphatic system during or after injection of a contrast medium. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1610 Diagnostic X-ray beam-limiting device.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic X-ray beam-limiting device is a device such as a collimator, a cone, or an aperture intended to restrict the dimensions of a diagnostic X-ray field by limiting the size of the primary X-ray beam.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1620 Cine or spot fluorographic X-ray camera.

(a) *Identification.* A cine or spot fluorographic X-ray camera is a device intended to photograph diagnostic images produced by X-rays with an image intensifier.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1630 Electrostatic X-ray imaging system.

(a) *Identification.* An electrostatic X-ray imaging system is a device intended for medical purposes that uses an electrostatic field across a semiconductive plate, a gas-filled chamber, or other similar device to convert a pattern of X-radiation into an electrostatic image and, subsequently, into a visible image. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1650 Image-intensified fluoroscopic X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* An image-intensified fluoroscopic X-ray system is a device intended to visualize anatomical structures by converting a pattern of X-radiation into a visible image through electronic amplification. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1660 Non-image-intensified fluoroscopic X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A non-image-intensified fluoroscopic X-ray system is a device intended to be used to visualize anatomical structures by using a fluorescent screen to convert a pattern of X-radiation into a visible image. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1670 Spot-film device.

(a) *Identification.* A spot-film device is an electromechanical component of a fluoroscopic X-ray system that is intended to be used for medical purposes to position a radiographic film cassette to obtain radiographs during fluoroscopy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1680 Stationary X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A stationary X-ray system is a permanently installed diagnostic system intended to generate and control X-rays for examination of various anatomical regions. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1700 Diagnostic X-ray high voltage generator.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic X-ray high voltage generator is a device that is intended to supply and control the electrical energy applied to a diagnostic X-ray tube for medical purposes. This generic type of device may include a converter that changes alternating current to direct current, filament transformers for the X-ray tube, high voltage switches, electrical protective devices, or other appropriate elements.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1710 Mammographic X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A mammographic X-ray system is a device intended to be used to produce radiographs of the breast. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1720 Mobile X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A mobile X-ray system is a transportable device system intended to be used to generate and control X-ray for diagnostic procedures. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1730 Photofluorographic X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A photofluorographic X-ray system is a device that includes a fluoroscopic X-ray unit and a camera intended to be used to produce, then photograph, a fluoroscopic image of the body. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1740 Tomographic X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A tomographic X-ray system is an X-ray device intended to be used to produce radiologic images of a specific cross-sectional plane of the body by blurring or eliminating detail from other planes. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1750 Computed tomography X-ray system.

(a) *Identification.* A computed tomography X-ray system is a diagnostic X-ray system intended to produce cross-sectional images of the body by computer reconstruction of X-ray transmission data from the same axial plane taken at different angles. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1760 Diagnostic X-ray tube housing assembly.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic X-ray tube housing assembly is an X-ray generating tube encased in a radiation-shielded housing that is intended for diagnostic purposes. This generic type of device may include high voltage and filament transformers or other appropriate components.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1770 Diagnostic X-ray tube mount.

(a) *Identification.* A diagnostic X-ray tube mount is a device intended to support and to position the diagnostic X-ray tube housing assembly for a medical radiographic procedure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1820 Pneumoencephalographic chair.

(a) *Identification.* A pneumoencephalographic chair is a chair intended to support and position a patient during pneumoencephalography (X-ray imaging of the brain).

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1830 Radiologic patient cradle.

(a) *Identification.* A radiologic patient cradle is a support device intended to be used for rotational positioning about the longitudinal axis of a patient during radiologic procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1840 Radiographic film.

(a) *Identification.* Radiographic film is a device that consists of a thin sheet of radiotransparent material coated on one or both sides with a photographic emulsion intended to record images during diagnostic radiologic procedures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807.

§ 892.1850 Radiographic film cassette.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic film cassette is a device intended for use during diagnostic X-ray procedures to hold a radiographic film in close contact with an X-ray intensifying screen and to provide a light-proof enclosure for direct exposure of radiographic film.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1860 Radiographic film/cassette changer.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic film/cassette changer is a device intended to be used during a radiologic procedure to move a radiographic film or cassette between X-ray exposures and to position it during the exposure.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1870 Radiographic film/cassette changer programmer.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic film/cassette changer programmer is a device intended to be used to control the operations of a film or cassette changer during serial medical radiography.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1880 Wall-mounted radiographic cassette holder.

(a) *Identification.* A wall-mounted radiographic cassette holder is a device that is a support intended to hold and position radiographic cassettes for a radiographic exposure for medical use.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.1910 Radiographic grid.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic grid is a device that consists of alternating radiolucent and radiopaque strips intended to be placed between the patient and the image receptor to reduce the amount of scattered radiation reaching the image receptor.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.1920 Radiographic head holder.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic head holder is a device intended to position the patient's head during a radiographic procedure.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 892.1940 Radiologic quality assurance instrument.

(a) *Identification.* A radiologic quality assurance instrument is a device intended for medical purposes to measure a physical characteristic associated with another radiologic device.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 892.1950 Radiographic anthropomorphic phantom.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic anthropomorphic phantom is a device intended for medical purposes to simulate a human body for positioning radiographic equipment.

(b) *Classification.* Class I. The device is exempt from the premarket notification procedures in Subpart E of Part 807. The device is exempt from the current good manufacturing practice regulations in Part 820, with the exception of § 820.180, with respect to general requirements concerning records, and § 820.198, with respect to complaint files.

§ 892.1960 Radiographic intensifying screen.

(a) *Identification.* A radiographic intensifying screen is a device that is a thin radiolucent sheet coated with a luminescent material that transforms incident X-ray photons into visible light and intended for medical purposes to expose radiographic film.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.1980 Radiologic table.

(a) *Identification.* A radiologic table is a device intended for medical purposes to support a patient during radiologic procedures. The table may be fixed or tilting and may be electrically powered.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

Subparts C-E—[Reserved]

Subpart F—Therapeutic Devices

§ 892.5050 Medical charged-particle radiation therapy system.

(a) *Identification.* A medical charged-particle radiation therapy system is a device that produces by acceleration high energy charged particles (e.g., electrons and protons) intended for use in radiation therapy. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, treatment planning computer programs, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5300 Medical neutron radiation therapy system.

(a) *Identification.* A medical neutron radiation therapy system is a device intended to generate high-energy neutrons for radiation therapy. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment support, treatment planning computer programs, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5650 Manual radionuclide applicator system.

(a) *Identification.* A manual radionuclide applicator system is a manually operated device intended to apply a radionuclide source into the body or to the surface of the body for radiation therapy. This generic type of device may include patient and equipment supports, component parts, treatment planning computer programs, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.5700 Remote controlled radionuclide applicator system.

(a) *Identification.* A remote controlled radionuclide applicator system is an electromechanical or pneumatic device intended to enable an operator to apply, by remote control, a radionuclide source into the body or to the surface of the body for radiation therapy. This generic type of device may include patient and equipment supports, component parts, treatment planning computer programs, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5710 Radiation therapy beam-shaping block.

(a) *Identification.* A radiation therapy beam-shaping block is a device made of a highly attenuating material (such as lead) intended for medical purposes to modify the shape of a beam from a radiation therapy source.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5730 Radionuclide brachytherapy source.

(a) *Identification.* A radionuclide brachytherapy source is a device tha consists of a radionuclide which may be enclosed in a sealed container made of gold, titanium, stainless steel, o platinum and intended for medica purposes to be placed onto a body surface or into a body cavity or tissue as a source of nuclear radiation for therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5740 Radionuclide teletherapy source.

(a) *Identification.* A radionuclide teletherapy source is a device consisting of a radionuclide enclosed in a sealed container. The device is intended for radiation therapy, with the radiation source located at a distance from the patient's body.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

§ 892.5750 Radionuclide radiation therapy system.

(a) *Identification.* A radionuclide radiation therapy system is a device intended to permit an operator to administer gamma radiation therapy, with the radiation source located at a distance from the patient's body. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, treatment planning computer programs, component parts (including beam-limiting devices), and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5770 Powered radiation therapy patient support assembly.

(a) *Identification.* A powered radiation therapy patient support assembly is an electrically powered adjustable couch intended to support a patient during radiation therapy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5780 Light beam patient position indicator.

(a) *Identification.* A light beam patient position indicator is a device that projects a beam of light (incoherent light or laser) to determine the alignment of the patient with a radiation beam. The beam of light is intended to be used during radiologic procedures to ensure proper positioning of the patient and to monitor alignment of the radiation beam with the patient's anatomy.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5840 Radiation therapy simulation system.

(a) *Identification.* A radiation therapy simulation system is a fluoroscopic or radiographic X-ray system intended for use in localizing the volume to be exposed during radiation therapy and confirming the position and size of the therapeutic irradiation field produced. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, treatment planning computer programs, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5900 X-ray radiation therapy system.

(a) *Identification.* An X-ray radiation therapy system is a device intended to produce and control X-rays used for radiation therapy. This generic type of device may include signal analysis and display equipment, patient and equipment supports, treatment planning computer programs, component parts, and accessories.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

§ 892.5930 Therapeutic X-ray tube housing assembly.

(a) *Identification.* A therapeutic X-ray tube housing assembly is an X-ray generating tube encased in a radiation-shielded housing intended for use in radiation therapy. This generic type of device may include high-voltage and filament transformers or other appropriate components when contained in radiation-shielded housing.

(b) *Classification.* Class II.

Subpart G—Miscellaneous Devices

§ 892.6500 Personnel protective shield.

(a) *Identification.* A personnel protective shield is a device intended for medical purposes to protect the patient, the operator, or other persons from unnecessary exposure to radiation during radiologic procedures by providing an attenuating barrier to radiation. This generic type of device may include articles of clothing, furniture, and movable or stationary structures.

(b) *Classification.* Class I.

PART 895—BANNED DEVICES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
895.1 Scope.
895.20 General.
895.21 Procedures for banning a device.
895.22 Submission of data and information by the manufacturer, distributor, or importer.
895.25 Labeling.
895.30 Special effective date.

Subpart B—Listing of Banned Devices

895.101 Prosthetic hair fibers.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 502(r), 516, 518, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 560, 562-565, 577-578 (21 U.S.C. 352(r), 360f, 360h, 360i, 371).

SOURCE: 44 FR 29221, May 18, 1979, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 895.1 Scope.

(a) This part describes the procedures by which the Commissioner may institute proceedings to make a device intended for human use that presents substantial deception or an unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury a banned device.

(b) This part applies to any "device", as defined in section 201(h) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (act) that is intended for human use.

(c) A device that is made a banned device in accordance with this part is adulterated under section 501(g) of the act. A restricted device that is banned may also be misbranded under section 502(q) of the act.

(d) Although this part does not cover devices intended for animal use, the manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other person(s) responsible for the labeling of the device that is banned cannot avoid the ban by relabeling the device for veterinary use. A device that has been banned from human use but that also has a valid veterinary use may be marketed for use as a veterinary device only under the following conditions: The device shall comply with all requirements applicable to veterinary devices under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and this chapter, and the label for the device shall bear the following statement: "For Veterinary Use Only. Caution: Federal law prohibits the distribution of this device for human use." A device so labeled, however, that is determined by the Food and Drug Administration to be intended for human use, will be considered to be a banned device. In determining whether such a device is intended for human use, the Food and Drug Administration will consider, among other things, the ultimate destination of the device.

§ 895.20 General.

The Commissioner may initiate a proceeding to make a device a banned device whenever the Commissioner finds, on the basis of all available data and information, and after consultation with the appropriate device panel, that the device presents substantial deception or an unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury that the Commissioner determines cannot be, or has not been, corrected or eliminated by labeling or by a change in labeling, or by a change in advertising if the device is a restricted device.

§ 895.21 Procedures for banning a device.

(a) Before initiating a proceeding to make a device a banned device, the Commissioner shall find that the continued marketing of the device presents a substantial deception or an unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury.

(1) In determining whether the deception or risk of illness or injury is substantial, the Commissioner will consider whether the deception or risk posed by continued marketing of the device, or continued marketing of the device as presently labeled, is important, material, or significant in relation to the benefit to the public health from its continued marketing.

(2) In determining whether a device is deceptive, the Commissioner will consider whether users of the device may be deceived or otherwise harmed by the device. The Commissioner is not required to determine that there was an intent on the part of the manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other responsible person(s) to mislead or otherwise harm users of the device or that there exists any actual proof of deception of, or injury to, an individual.

(3) In determining whether a device presents deception or risk of illness or injury, the Commissioner will consider all available data and information, including data and information that the Commissioner may obtain under other provisions of the act, data and information that may be supplied by the manufacturer, distributor, or importer of the device under § 895.22, and data and information voluntarily submitted by any other interested persons.

(b) Before initiating a proceeding to make a device a banned device, the Commissioner will consult with the classification panel established under section 513 of the act that has expertise with respect to the type of device under consideration. The consultation with the panel may occur at a regular or specially scheduled panel meeting or may be accomplished by correspondence or telephone conversation with panel members. The Commissioner may request that the panel submit in writing any advice on the device under consideration. The Commissioner will record in written memorandums any oral communications with the panel or its members.

(c) If the Commissioner determines that any substantial deception or unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury or any unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals presented by a device can be corrected or eliminated by labeling or change in labeling, or change in advertising if the device is a restricted device, the Commissioner will notify the responsible person of the required labeling or change in labeling or change in advertising in accordance with § 895.25. If such required relabeling or change in advertising is not accomplished in accordance with § 895.25, the Commissioner may initiate a proceeding to ban the device in accordance with § 895.21(d) and, when appropriate, may establish a special effective date in accordance with § 895.30.

(d) If the Commissioner decides to initiate a proceeding to make a device a banned device, a notice of proposed rulemaking will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER to this effect. The notice will briefly summarize—

(1) The Commissioner's finding under paragraph (a) of this section that the device presents substantial deception or an unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury, and, when appropriate, the Commissioner's determination under § 895.30 that the deception or risk of illness or injury presents an unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals;

(2) The reasons why the Commissioner initiated the proceeding;

(3) The evaluation of data and information obtained under other provisions of the act, submitted by the manufacturer, distributer, or importer of the device, or voluntarily submitted by any other interested persons under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, if any;

(4) The consultation with the classification panel under paragraph (b) of this section;

(5) The determination as to whether the deception or risk of illness or injury or the danger to the health of individuals could be corrected by labeling or change in labeling, or change in advertising if the device is a restricted device;

(6) The determination of whether the required labeling or change of labeling, or change in advertising if the device is a restricted device, if any, has been made in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section;

(7) The determination as to whether, and the reasons why, the banning should apply to devices already in commercial distribution or those already sold to the ultimate user, or both; and

(8) Any other data and information that the Commissioner believes are pertinent to the proceeding.

The notice will afford all interested persons an opportunity to submit written comments and request an informal hearing, as defined in section 201(y) of the act, before the Food and Drug Administration within 30 days after the date of publication of the proposed regulation. If a request for an informal hearing is granted, the hearing will be conducted as a regulatory hearing under the applicable provisions of Part 16 of this chapter. All nonconfidential information upon which the proposed finding is based, including the recommendations of the panel, will be available for public review in the office of the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration.

(e)(1) If, after reviewing the administrative record of the regulatory hearing before the Food and Drug Administration, if any, the written comments received on the proposed regulation, and any additional available data and information, the Commissioner determines to ban a device, a final regulation to this effect will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER. The final regulation will amend Subpart B by adding the name or description of the device, or both, to the list of banned devices.

(2) If the Commissioner determines not to ban the device, a notice of withdrawal and termination of rulemaking proceedings and reasons therefor will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(f) The effective date of a final regulation to make a device a banned device, promulgated under paragraph (e) of this section, will be the date of publication of the final regulation in the FEDERAL REGISTER unless the Commissioner, for reasons stated, determines that the effective date should be later than the date of the publication and specifies that date in the notice. Each such regulation will specify whether devices already in commercial distribution or sold to the ultimate user or both are banned.

(g) A regulation promulgated under paragraph (e) of this section is final agency action, subject to judicial review under section 517 of the act.

(h) Upon petition of any interested person submitted in accordance with § 10.30 of this chapter, or as a matter of discretion, the Commissioner may institute proceedings to amend or revoke a regulation that made a device a banned device if the Commissioner finds that the conditions that constituted the basis for the regulation banning the device are no longer applicable. When appropriate, the procedures in this section will be employed in such proceedings.

[44 FR 29221, May 18, 1979, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 895.22 Submission of data and information by the manufacturer, distributor, or importer.

(a) A manufacturer, distributor, or importer of a device may be required to submit to the Food and Drug Administration all relevant and available data and information to enable the Commissioner to determine whether the device presents substantial deception, unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury, or unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals. The data and information required by the Commissioner may include scientific or test data, reports, records, or other information, including data and information on whether the device is safe and effective for its intended use or when used as directed, whether the device performs according to the claims made for the device, and information on adulteration or misbranding. Any relevant information that is voluntarily submitted will also be reviewed.

(b) A manufacturer, distributor, or importer of a device required to submit data and information as provided in paragraph (a) of this section will be notified in writing by the Food and Drug Administration that such data and information shall be submitted. The written notification will advise the manufacturer, distributor, or importer of the device that the purpose for the request is to enable the Commissioner to determine whether any of the conditions listed in paragraph (a) of this section or § 895.30(a)(1) exists with respect to the device such that a proceeding should be initiated to make the device a banned device. When the required data and information can be identified by the Food and Drug Administration at the time of the notification, the agency will provide such identification to the manufacturer, distributor, or importer of the device.

(c) The required data and information shall be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration no more than 30 days after the date of receipt of the request, unless the Commissioner determines that the data and information shall be submitted by some other date and so informs the manufacturer, distributor, or importer, in which case the data and information shall be submitted on the date specified by the Commissioner.

(d) If the data or information submitted to the Food and Drug Administration is sufficient to persuade the Commissioner that the deception or risk of illness or injury or the danger to the health of individuals presented by a device could be corrected or eliminated by labeling or change in labeling, or change in advertising if the device is a restricted device, the Commissioner will proceed in accordance with § 895.25.

(e) If the data or information submitted to the Food and Drug Administration is insufficient to show that the device does not present a substantial deception or an unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury, or an unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals, or if the manufacturer, distributor, or importer fails to submit the required information, the Commissioner may rely upon this insufficiency or failure to submit the required information in considering whether to initiate a proceeding to make the device a banned device under § 895.21(d) and, when appropriate, to establish a special effective date in accordance with § 895.30. The Commissioner may also initiate other regulatory action as provided in the act or this chapter.

§ 895.25 Labeling.

(a) If the Commissioner determines that the substantial deception or unreasonable and substantial risk of illness or injury or the unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals presented by a device can be corrected or eliminated by labeling or a change in labeling, or change in advertising if the device is a restricted device, the Commissioner will provide written notice to the manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other person(s) responsible for the labeling or advertising of the device specifying:

(1) The deception or risk of illness or injury or the danger to the health of individuals,

(2) The labeling or change in labeling, or change in advertising if the device is a restricted device, necessary to correct the deception or eliminate or reduce such risk or danger, and

(3) The period of time within which the labeling, change in labeling, or change in advertising must be accomplished.

(b) In specifying the labeling or change in labeling or change in advertising to correct the deception or to eliminate or reduce the risk of illness or injury or the danger to the health of individuals, the Commissioner may require the manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other person(s) responsible for the labeling or advertising of the device to include in labeling for the device, and in advertising if the device is a restricted device, a statement, notice, or warning. Such statement, notice, or warning shall be in the manner and form prescribed by the Commissioner and shall identify the deception or risk of illness or injury or the unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals associated with the device as previously labeled. Such statement, notice, or warning shall be used in the labeling and advertising of the device for a time period specified by the Commissioner on the basis of the degree of deception, risk of illness or injury, or danger to health; the frequency of sale of the device; the length of time the device has been on the market; the intended uses of the device; the method of its use; and any other factors that the Commissioner considers pertinent.

(c) The Commissioner will allow a manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other person(s) responsible for the labeling or advertising of the device a reasonable time, considering the deception or risk of illness or injury or the danger to the health of individuals presented by the device, within which to accomplish the required labeling, change in labeling, and, if the device is a restricted device, any change in advertising. The Commissioner may, however, request that no additional devices be introduced into commerce until the labeling or change in labeling, or change in advertising is accomplished by the manufacturer, distributor, importer, or other person(s) responsible for the labeling or advertising of the device.

(d) If such voluntary action is not taken, the Commissioner may take action under other sections of the act to prevent the introduction of the devices into commerce. The Commissioner may consider the failure of a manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other person(s) responsible for the labeling or advertising of the device to accomplish the required labeling or change in labeling, or change in advertising in accordance with this section as a basis for initiating a proceeding to make a device a banned device in accordance with § 895.21(d) and when appropriate to establish a special effective date in accordance with § 895.30.

§ 895.30 Special effective date.

(a) The Commissioner may declare a proposed regulation under § 895.21(d) to be effective upon its publication in the FEDERAL REGISTER and until the effective date of any final action taken respecting the regulation if:

(1) The Commissioner determines, on the basis of all available data and information, that the deception or risk of illness or injury associated with use of the device that is subject to the regulation presents an unreasonable, direct, and substantial danger to the health of individuals, and

(2) Before the date of the publication of such regulation, the Commissioner notifies the domestic manufacturer and importer, if any, of the device that the regulation is to be made so effective. If necessary, the Commissioner may also notify the distributor or any other responsible person(s). In addition, the Commissioner will attempt to notify any foreign manufacturer when the name and address of the foreign manufacturer are readily available.

(b) This procedure may be used when the Commissioner determines that the potential or actual injury involved is a serious one that the Commissioner believes will endanger the health of individuals who have been, or will be, exposed to the device. In assessing the degree of danger, the Commissioner need not find that the danger is immediate, and it shall be sufficient for the Commissioner to determine that the danger may involve a serious long-term risk.

(c) If the Commissioner makes a proposed regulation effective in accordance with this section, the Commissioner will, as expeditiously as possible, give interested persons prompt notice of this action in the FEDERAL REGISTER and will provide an opportunity for an informal hearing in accordance with Part 16 of this chapter.

(d) After the hearing, if any, and after considering any written comments submitted on the proposal and any additional available information and data, the Commissioner will as expeditiously as possible either affirm, modify, or revoke the proposed regulation making the device a banned device. If the Commissioner decides to affirm or modify the proposed regulation to make a device a banned device, the Commissioner will amend Subpart B by adding the name or description of the device, or both, to the list of banned devices. If the Commissioner decides to revoke a proposed regulation making a device a banned device, a notice of termination of rulemaking proceedings and reasons therefor will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

(e) The Commissioner may declare the special effective date provided by this section to be in effect after the publication of a proposed regulation under § 895.21(d), if, based on new information, or upon reconsideration of previously available information, the Commissioner makes the determination and provides the appropriate notices and an opportunity for a hearing in accordance with paragraphs (a) and (c) of this section.

(f) Those devices that have been named banned devices under § 895.30 and that have already been sold to the public may be subject to relabeling by the manufacturer, distributor, importer, or any other person(s) responsible for the labeling of the device or may be subject to the provisions of section 518(a) or (b) of the act.

Subpart B—Listing of Banned Devices

§ 895.101 Prosthetic hair fibers.

Prosthetic hair fibers are devices intended for implantation into the human scalp to simulate natural hair or conceal baldness. Prosthetic hair fibers may consist of various materials; for example, synthetic fibers, such as modacrylic, polyacrylic, and polyester; and natural fibers, such as processed human hair. Excluded from the banned device are natural hair transplants, in which a person's hair and its surrounding tissue are surgically removed from one location on the person's scalp and then grafted onto another area of the person's scalp.

(Secs. 502(r), 516, 518, 519, 701(a), 52 Stat. 1055, 90 Stat. 560, 562-565, 577-578 (21 U.S.C. 352(r), 360f, 360h, 360i, 371(a)) and under 21 CFR 5.11 as revised (see 47 FR 16010, Apr. 14, 1982))

[48 FR 25136, June 3, 1983, and 49 FR 1177, Jan. 10, 1984]

SUBCHAPTER I—[RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER J—RADIOLOGICAL HEALTH

PART 1000—GENERAL

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1000.1 General.
1000.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Statements of Policy and Interpretation

1000.15 Examples of electronic products subject to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968.

Subpart C—Radiation Protection Recommendations

1000.50 Recommendation for the use of specific area gonad shielding on patients during medical diagnostic x-ray procedures.
1000.55 Recommendation for quality assurance programs in diagnostic radiology facilities.
1000.60 Recommendation on administratively required dental x-ray examinations.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 354-360F, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 263b-263n); 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28624, Oct. 15, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1000.1 General.

References in this Subchapter J to regulatory sections of the Code of Federal Regulations are to Chapter I of Title 21 unless otherwise noted.

[50 FR 33688, Aug. 20, 1985]

§ 1000.3 Definitions.

As used in this Subchapter J:

(a) "Electronic product radiation" means—

(1) Any ionizing or nonionizing electromagnetic or particulate radiation, or

(2) Any sonic, infrasonic, or ultrasonic wave, which is emitted from an electronic product as the result of the operation of an electronic circuit in such product.

(b) "Electromagnetic radiation" includes the entire electromagnetic spectrum of radiation of any wavelength. The electromagnetic spectrum illustrated in Figure 1 includes, but is not limited to, gamma rays, X-rays, ultraviolet, visible, infrared, microwave, radiowave, and low frequency radiations.

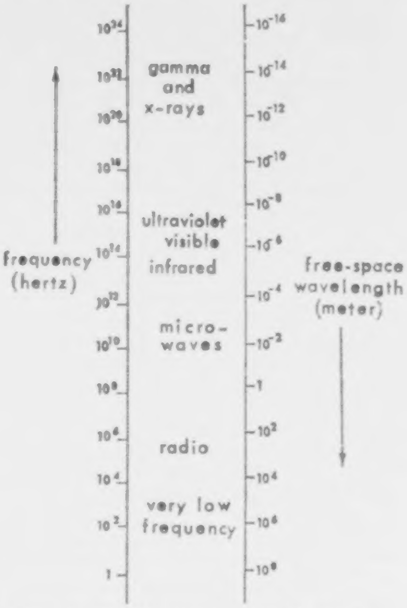


Figure 1. The Electromagnetic Spectrum

(c) "Particulate radiation" is defined as charged particles such as protons, electrons, alpha particles, heavy particles, etc., which have sufficient kinetic energy to produce ionization or atomic or electron excitation by collision, electrical attractions or electrical repulsion or uncharged particles such as neutrons, which can initiate a nuclear transformation or liberate charged particles having sufficient kinetic energy to produce ionization or atomic or electron excitation by collision.

(d) "Infrasonic, sonic (or audible) and ultrasonic waves" refer to energy transmitted as an alteration (pressure, particle displacement or density) in a property of an elastic medium (gas, liquid or solid) that can be detected by an instrument or listener.

(e) "Electronic product" means (1) any manufactured or assembled product which, when in operation, (i) contains or acts as part of an electronic circuit and (ii) emits (or in the absence of effective shielding or other controls would emit) electronic product radiation, or (2) any manufactured or assembled article which is intended for use as a component, part, or accessory of a product described in paragraph (e)(1) and which when in operation emits (or in the absence of effective shielding or other controls would emit) such radiation.

(f) "Manufacturer" means any person engaged in the business of manufacturing, assembling, or importing of electronic products.

(g) "Commerce" means (1) commerce between any place in any State and any place outside thereof, and (2) commerce wholly within the District of Columbia.

(h) "State" means a State, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, Guam, and American Samoa.

(i) "Act" means the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968 (Pub. L. 90-602, 42 U.S.C. 263b et seq.).

(j) "Secretary" means the Secretary of the Department of Health and Human Services.

(k) "Federal standard" means a performance standard issued pursuant to section 358 of the Act.

(l) The term "dealer" means a person engaged in the business of offering electronic products for sale to purchasers, without regard to whether such person is or has been primarily engaged in such business, and includes persons who offer such products for lease or as prizes or awards.

(m) The term "distributor" means a person engaged in the business of offering electronic products for sale to dealers without regard to whether such person is or has been primarily or customarily engaged in such business.

(n) The term "purchaser" means the first person who, for value, or as an award or prize, acquires an electronic product for purposes other than resale, and also includes a person who leases an electronic product for purposes other than subleasing.

(o) The term "model" means any identifiable, unique electronic product design, and refers to products having the same structural and electrical design characteristics and to which the manufacturer has assigned a specific designation to differentiate between it and other products produced by that manufacturer.

Subpart B—Statements of Policy and Interpretation

§ 1000.15 Examples of electronic products subject to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968.

The following listed electronic products are intended to serve as illustrative examples of sources of electronic product radiation to which the regulations of this part apply.

(a) Examples of electronic products which may emit X-rays and other ionizing electromagnetic radiation, electrons, neutrons, and other particulate radiation include:

Ionizing electromagnetic radiation:
  Television receivers.
  Accelerators.
  X-ray machines (industrial, medical, research, educational).
Particulate radiation and ionizing electromagnetic radiation:
  Electron microscopes.
  Neutron generators.

(b) Examples of electronic products which may emit ultraviolet, visible, infrared, microwaves, radio and low frequency electromagnetic radiation include:

Ultraviolet:
  Biochemical and medical analyzers.
  Tanning and therapeutic lamps.
  Sanitizing and sterilizing devices.
  Black light sources.
  Welding equipment.
Visible:
  White light devices.
Infrared:
  Alarm systems.

  Diathermy units.
  Dryers, ovens, and heaters.
Microwave:
  Alarm systems.
  Diathermy units.
  Dryers, ovens, and heaters.
  Medico-biological heaters.
  Microwave power generating devices.
  Radar devices.
  Remote control devices.
  Signal generators.
Radio and low frequency:
  Cauterizers.
  Diathermy units.
  Power generation and transmission equipment.
  Signal generators.
  Electromedical equipment.

(c) Examples of electronic products which may emit coherent electromagnetic radiation produced by stimulated emission include:

Laser:
  Art-form, experimental and educational devices.
  Biomedical analyzers.
  Cauterizing, burning and welding devices.
  Cutting and drilling devices.
  Communications transmitters.
  Rangefinding devices.
Maser:
  Communications transmitters.

(d) Examples of electronic products which may emit infrasonic, sonic, and ultrasonic vibrations resulting from operation of an electronic circuit include:

Infrasonic:
  Vibrators.
Sonic:
  Electronic oscillators.
  Sound amplification equipment.
Ultrasonic:
  Cauterizers.
  Cell and tissue disintegrators.
  Cleaners.
  Diagnostic and nondestructive testing equipment.
  Ranging and detection equipment.

Subpart C—Radiation Protection Recommendations

§ 1000.50 Recommendation for the use of specific area gonad shielding on patients during medical diagnostic x-ray procedures.

Specific area gonad shielding covers an area slightly larger than the region of the gonads. It may therefore be used without interfering with the objectives of the examination to protect the germinal tissue of patients from radiation exposure that may cause genetic mutations during many medical x-ray procedures in which the gonads lie within or are in close proximity to the x-ray field. Such shielding should be provided when the following conditions exist:

(a) The gonads will lie within the primary x-ray field, or within close proximity (about 5 centimeters), despite proper beam limitation. Except as provided in paragraph (b) or (c) of this section:

(1) Specific area testicular shielding should always be used during those examinations in which the testes usually are in the primary x-ray field, such as examinations of the pelvis, hip, and upper femur;

(2) Specific area testicular shielding may also be warranted during other examinations of the abdominal region in which the testes may lie within or in close proximity to the primary x-ray field, depending upon the size of the patient and the examination techniques and equipment employed. Some examples of these are: Abdominal, lumbar spine and lumbosacral spine examinations, intravenous pyelograms, and abdominal scout film for barium enemas and upper GI series. Each x-ray facility should evaluate its procedures, techniques, and equipment and compile a list of such examinations for which specific area testicular shielding should be routinely considered for use. As a basis for judgment, specific area testicular shielding should be considered for all examinations of male patients in which the pubic symphysis will be visualized on the film;

(3) Specific area gonad shielding should never be used as a substitute for careful patient positioning, the use of correct technique factors and film processing, or proper beam limitation (confinement of the x-ray field to the area of diagnostic interest), because this could result in unnecessary doses to other sensitive tissues and could adversely affect the quality of the radiograph; and

(4) Specific area gonad shielding should provide attenuation of x-rays

at least equivalent to that afforded by 0.25 millimeter of lead.

(b) The clinical objectives of the examination will not be compromised.

(1) Specific area testicular shielding usually does not obscure needed information except in a few cases such as oblique views of the hip, retrograde urethrograms and voiding cystourethrograms, visualization of the rectum and, occasionally, the pubic symphysis. Consequently, specific area testicular shielding should be considered for use in the majority of x-ray examinations of male patients in which the testes will lie within the primary beam or within 5 centimeters of its edge. It is not always possible to position shields on male patients so that no bone is obscured. Therefore, if all bone structure of the pelvic area must be visualized for a particular patient, the use of shielding should be carefully evaluated. The decision concerning the applicability of shielding for an individual patient is dependent upon consideration of the patient's0unique anthropometric characteristics and the diagnostic information needs of the examination.

(2) The use of specific area ovarian shielding is frequently impractical at present because the exact location of the ovaries is difficult to estimate, and the shield may obscure visualization of portions of adjacent structures such as the spine, ureters, and small and large bowels. However, it may be possible for practitioners to use specific area ovarian shielding during selected views in some examinations.

(c) The patient has a reasonable reproductive potential.

(1) Specific area shielding need not be used on patients who cannot or are not likely to have children in the future.

(2) The following table of statistical data regarding the average number of children expected by potential parents in various age categories during their remaining lifetimes is provided for xray facilities that wish to use it as a basis for judging reproductive potential:

EXPECTED NUMBER OF FUTURE CHILDREN VERSUS AGE OF POTENTIAL PARENT [1]

Age	Male parent	Female parent
Fetus	2.6	2.6
0 to 4	2.6	2.5
5 to 9	2.7	2.5
10 to 14	2.7	2.6
15 to 19	2.7	2.6
20 to 24	2.6	2.2
25 to 29	2.0	1.4
30 to 34	1.1	.6
35 to 39	.5	.2
40 to 44	.2	.04
45 to 49	.07	0
50 to 54	.03	0
55 to 64	.01	0
Over 65	0	0

[1] Derived from data published by the National Center for Health Statistics, "Final Natality Statistics 1970," HRA 74-1120, vol. 22, No. 12, Mar. 20, 1974.

(Sec. 356, 82 Stat. 1174-1176 (42 U.S.C. 263d))

[41 FR 30328, July 23, 1976; 41 FR 31812, July 30, 1976]

§ 1000.55 Recommendation for quality assurance programs in diagnostic radiology facilities.

(a) *Applicability.* Quality assurance programs as described in paragraph (c) of this section are recommended for all diagnostic radiology facilities.

(b) *Definitions.* As used in this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Diagnostic radiology facility" means any facility in which an x-ray system(s) is used in any procedure that involves irradiation of any part of the human body for the purpose of diagnosis or visualization. Offices of individual physicians, dentists, podiatrists, and chiropractors, as well as mobile laboratories, clinics, and hospitals are all examples of diagnostic radiology facilities.

(2) "Quality assurance" means the planned and systematic actions that provide adequate confidence that a diagnostic x-ray facility will produce consistently high quality images with minimum exposure of the patients and healing arts personnel. The determination of what constitutes high quality will be made by the facility producing the images. Quality assurance actions include both "quality control" techniques and "quality administration" procedures.

(3) "Quality assurance program" means an organized entity designed to provide "quality assurance" for a diagnostic radiology facility. The nature and extent of this program will vary with the size and type of the facility, the type of examinations conducted, and other factors.

(4) "Quality control techniques" are those techniques used in the monitoring (or testing) and maintenance of the components of an x-ray system. The quality control techniques thus are concerned directly with the equipment.

(5) "Quality administration procedures" are those management actions intended to guarantee that monitoring techniques are properly performed and evaluated and that necessary corrective measures are taken in response to monitoring results. These procedures provide the organizational framework for the quality assurance program.

(6) "X-ray system" means an assemblage of components for the controlled production of diagnostic images with x-rays. It includes minimally an x-ray high voltage generator, an x-ray control, a tube-housing assembly, a beam-limiting device, and the necessary supporting structures. Other components that function with the system, such as image receptors, image processors, view boxes, and darkrooms, are also parts of the system.

(c) *Elements.* A quality assurance program should contain the elements listed in paragraphs (c)(1) through (10) of this section. The extent to which each element of the quality assurance program is implemented should be determined by an analysis of the facility's objectives and resources conducted by its qualified staff or by qualified outside consultants. The extent of implementation should be determined on the basis of whether the expected benefits in radiation exposure reduction, improved image quality, and/or financial savings will compensate for the resources required for the program.

(1) *Responsibility.* (i) Responsibility and authority for the overall quality assurance program as well as for monitoring, evaluation, and corrective measures should be specified and recorded in a quality assurance manual.

(ii) The owner or practitioner in charge of the facility has primary responsibility for implementing and maintaining the quality assurance program.

(iii) Staff technologists will generally be delegated a basic quality assurance role by the practitioner in charge. Responsibility for specific quality control monitoring and maintenance techniques or quality administration procedures may be assigned, provided that the staff technologists are qualified by training or experience for these duties. The staff technologists should also be responsible for identifying problems or potential problems requiring actions beyond the level of their training. They should bring these problems to the attention of the practitioner in charge, or his or her representative, so that assistance in solving the problems may be obtained from inside or outside the facility.

(iv) In facilities where they are available, physicists, supervisory technologists, or quality control technologists should have a major role in the quality assurance program. Such specialized personnel may be assigned responsibility for day-to-day administration of the program, may carry out monitoring duties beyond the level of training of the staff technologist or, if desired by the facility, may relieve the staff technologists of some or all of their basic monitoring duties. Staff service engineers may also be assigned responsibility for certain preventive or corrective maintenance actions.

(v) Responsibility for certain quality control techniques and corrective measures may be assigned to personnel qualified by training or experience, such as consultants or industrial representatives, from outside of the facility, provided there is a written agreement clearly specifying these services.

(vi) In large facilities, responsibility for long-range planning of quality assurance goals and activities should be assigned to a quality assurance committee as described in paragraph (c)(9) of this section.

(2) *Purchase specifications.* Before purchasing new equipment, the staff

of the diagnostic radiology facility should determine the desired performance specifications for the equipment. Initially, these specifications may be stated in terms of the desired performance of the equipment, or prospective vendors may be informed solely of the functions the equipment should be able to perform and asked to provide the performance specifications of items from their equipment line that can perform these functions. In either case, the responses of the prospective vendors should serve as the basis for negotiations to establish the final purchase specifications, taking into account the state of the art and balancing the need for the specified performance levels with the cost of the equipment to meet them. The final purchase specifications should be in writing and should include performance specifications. The availability of experienced service personnel should also be taken into consideration in making the final purchase decisions. Any understandings with respect to service personnel should be incorporated into the purchase specifications. After the equipment is installed, the facility should conduct a testing program, as defined in its purchase specifications, to ensure that the equipment meets the agreed upon specifications, including applicable Federal and State regulatory requirements. The equipment should not be formally accepted until any necessary corrections have been made by the vendor. The purchase specifications and the records of the acceptance testing should be retained throughout the life of the equipment for comparison with monitoring results in order to assess continued acceptability of performance.

(3) *Monitoring and maintenance.* A routine quality control monitoring and maintenance system incorporating state-of-the-art procedures should be established and conducted on a regular schedule. The purpose of monitoring is to permit evaluation of the performance of the facility's x-ray system(s) in terms of the standards for image quality established by the facility (as described in paragraph (c)(4) of this section) and compliance with applicable Federal and State regulatory requirements. The maintenance program should include corrective maintenance to eliminate problems revealed by monitoring or other means before they have a serious deleterious impact on patient care. To the extent permitted by the training of the facility staff, the maintenance program should also include preventive maintenance, which could prevent unexpected breakdowns of equipment and disruption of departmental routine.

(i) The parameters to be monitored in a facility should be determined by that facility on the basis of an analysis of expected benefits and cost. Such factors as the size and resources of the facility, the type of examinations conducted, and the quality assurance problems that have occurred in that or similar facilities should be taken into account in establishing the monitoring system. The monitoring frequency should also be based upon need and can be different for different parameters.

(ii) Although the parameters to be monitored will vary somewhat from facility to facility, every diagnostic radiology facility should consider monitoring the following five key components of the x-ray system:

(*a*) Film processing.

(*b*) Basic performance characteristics of the x-ray unit.

(*c*) Cassettes and grids.

(*d*) View boxes.

(*e*) Darkroom.

(iii) Examples of parameters of the above-named components and of more specialized equipment that may be monitored are as follows:

(*a*) For film processing:

An index of speed.
An index of contrast.
Base plus fog.
Solution temperatures.
Film artifact identification.

(*b*) For basic performance characteristics of the x-ray unit:

(*1*) For fluoroscopic x-ray units:

Table-top exposure rates.
Centering alignment.
Collimation.
kVp accuracy and reproducibility.
mA accuracy and reproducibility.
Exposure time accuracy and reproducibility.

Reproducibility of x-ray output.
Focal spot size consistency.
Half-value layer.
Representative entrance skin exposures.

(*2*) For image-intensified systems:

Resolution.
Focusing.
Distortion.
Glare.
Low contrast performance.
Physical alignment of camera and collimating lens.

(*3*) For radiographic x-ray units:

Reproducibility of x-ray output.
Linearity and reproducibility of mA stations.
Reproducibility and accuracy of timer stations.
Reproducibility and accuracy of kVp stations.
Accuracy of source-to-film distance indicators.
Light/x-ray field congruence.
Half-value layer.
Focal spot size consistency.
Representative entrance skin exposures.

(*4*) For automatic exposure control devices:

Reproducibility.
kVp compensation.
Field sensitivity matching.
Minimum response time.
Backup timer verification.

(*c*) For cassettes and grids:

(*1*) For cassettes:

Film/screen contact.
Screen condition.
Light leaks.
Artifact identification.

(*2*) For grids:

Alignment and focal distance.
Artifact identification.

(*d*) For view boxes:

Consistency of light output with time.
Consistency of light output from one box to another.
View box surface conditions.

(*e*) For darkrooms:

Darkroom integrity.
Safe light conditions.

(*f*) For specialized equipment:

(*1*) For tomographic systems:

Accuracy of depth and cut indicator.
Thickness of cut plane.
Exposure angle.
Completeness of tomographic motion.
Flatness of tomographic field.
Resolution.
Continuity of exposure.
Flatness of cassette.
Representative entrance skin exposures.

(*2*) For computerized tomography:

Precision (noise).
Contrast scale.
High and low contrast resolution.
Alignment.
Representative entrance skin exposures.

(iv) The maintenance program should include both preventive and corrective aspects.

(*a*) *Preventive maintenance.* Preventive maintenance should be performed on a regularly scheduled basis with the goal of preventing breakdowns due to equipment failing without warning signs detectable by monitoring. Such actions have been found cost effective if responsibility is assigned to facility staff members. Possible preventive maintenance procedures are visual inspection of the mechanical and electrical characteristics of the x-ray system (covering such things as checking conditions of cables, watching the tomographic unit for smoothness of motion, assuring cleanliness with respect to spilling of contaminants in the examination room or the darkroom, and listening for unusual noises in the moving parts of the system), following the manufacturer's recommended procedures for cleaning and maintenance of the equipment, and regular inspection and replacement of switches and parts that routinely wear out or fail. The procedures included would depend upon the background of the staff members available. Obviously, a large facility with its own service engineers can do more than an individual practitioner's office.

(*b*) *Corrective maintenance.* For maximum effectiveness, the quality assurance program should make provision, as described in paragraph (c)(5) of this section, for ascertaining whether potential problems are developing. If potential or actual problems are detected, corrective maintenance should be carried out to eliminate them before they cause a major impact on patient care.

(4) *Standards for image quality.* Standards of acceptable image quality

should be established. Ideally, these should be objective, e.g., acceptability limits for the variations of parameter values, but they may be subjective, e.g., the opinions of professional personnel, in cases where adequate objective standards cannot be defined. These standards should be routinely reviewed and redefined as needed, as described in paragraph (c)(10) of this section.

(5) *Evaluation.* The facility's quality assurance program should include means for two levels of evaluation.

(i) On the first level, the results of the monitoring procedures should be used to evaluate the performance of the x-ray system(s) to determine whether corrective actions are needed to adjust the equipment so that the image quality consistently meets the standards for image quality. This evaluation should include analysis of trends in the monitoring data as well as the use of the data to determine the need for corrective actions on a day-by-day basis. Comparison of monitoring data with the purchase specifications and acceptance testing results for the equipment in question is also useful.

(ii) On the second level, the facility quality assurance program should also include means for evaluating the effectiveness of the program itself. Possible means include ongoing studies of the retake rate and the causes of the repeated radiographs, examination of equipment repair and replacement costs, subjective evaluation of the radiographs being produced, occurrence and reasons for complaints by radiologists, and analysis of trends in the results of monitoring procedures such as sensitometric studies. Of these, ongoing studies of the retake rate (reject rate) and its causes are often the most useful and may also provide information of value in the first level of evaluation. Such studies can be used to evaluate potential for improvement, to make corrections, and to determine whether the corrective actions were effective. The number of rejects should be recorded daily or weekly, depending on the facility's analysis of its needs. Ideally, the reasons for the rejection should also be determined and recorded. Should determining these reasons be impossible on a regular basis with the available staff, the analysis should be done for a 2-week period after major changes have occurred in diagnostic procedures or the x-ray system and at least semi-annually.

(6) *Records.* The program should include provisions for the keeping of records on the results of the monitoring techniques, any difficulties detected, the corrective measures applied to these difficulties, and the effectiveness of these measures. The extent and form of these records should be determined by the facility on the basis of its needs. The facility should view these records as a tool for maintaining an effective quality assurance program and not view the data in them as an end in itself but rather as a beginning. For example, the records should be made available to vendors to help them provide better service. More importantly, the data should be the basis for the evaluation and the reviews suggested in paragraphs (c)(5) and (10) of this section.

(7) *Manual.* A quality assurance manual should be written in a format permitting convenient revision as needed and should be made readily available to all personnel. The content of the manual should be determined by the facility staff, but the following items are suggested as providing essential information:

(i) A list of the individuals responsible for monitoring and maintenance techniques.

(ii) A list of the parameters to be monitored and the frequency of monitoring.

(iii) A description of the standards, criteria of quality, or limits of acceptability that have been established for each of the parameters monitored.

(iv) A brief description of the procedures to be used for monitoring each parameter.

(v) A description of procedures to be followed when difficulties are detected to call these difficulties to the attention of those responsible for correcting them.

(vi) A list of the publications in which detailed instructions for monitoring and maintenance procedures can be found. Copies of these publications should also be readily available to the entire staff, but they should be separate from the manual. (Publications providing these instructions can usually be obtained from FDA or private sources, although the facility may wish to make some modifications to meet its needs more effectively.)

(vii) A list of the records, with sample forms, that the facility staff has decided should be kept. The facility staff should also determine and note in the manual the length of time each type of record should be kept before discarding.

(viii) A copy of each set of purchase specifications developed for new equipment and the results of the acceptance testing for that equipment.

(8) *Training.* The program should include provisions for appropriate training for all personnel with quality assurance responsibilities. This should include both training provided before the quality assurance responsibilities are assumed and continuing education to keep the personnel up-to-date. Practical experience with the techniques conducted under the supervision of experienced instructors, either in the facility or in a special program, is the most desirable type of training. The use of self-teaching materials can be an adequate substitute for supervised instruction, especially in continuing education programs, if supervised instruction is not available.

(9) *Committee.* A facility whose size would make it impractical for all staff members to meet for planning purposes should consider the establishment of a quality assurance committee whose primary function would be to maintain lines of communication among all groups with quality assurance and/or image production or interpretation responsibilities. For maximum communication, all departments of the facility with x-ray equipment should be represented. The committee may also be assigned policy-making duties such as some or all of the following:

Assign quality assurance responsibilities; maintain acceptable standards of quality; periodically review program effectiveness, etc. Alternatively, the duties of this committee could be assigned to an already-existing committee such as the Radiation Safety Committee. In smaller facilities, all staff members should participate in the committee's tasks. The Quality Assurance Committee should report directly to the head of the radiology department, or, in facilities where more than one department operates x-ray equipment, to the chief medical officer of the facility. The committee should meet on a regular basis.

(10) *Review.* The facility's quality assurance program should be reviewed by the Quality Assurance Committee and/or the practitioner in charge to determine whether its effectiveness could be improved. Items suggested for inclusion in the review include:

(i) The reports of the monitoring and maintenance techniques to ensure that they are being performed on schedule and effectively. These reports should be reviewed at least quarterly.

(ii) The monitoring and maintenance techniques and their schedules to ensure that they continue to be appropriate and in step with the latest developments in quality assurance. They should be made current at least annually.

(iii) The standards for image quality to ensure that they are consistent with the state-of-the-art and the needs and resources of the facility. These standards should be evaluated at least annually.

(iv) The results of the evaluations of the effectiveness of the quality assurance actions to determine whether changes need to be made. This determination should be made at least annually.

(v) The quality assurance manual should also be reviewed at least annually to determine whether revision is needed.

[44 FR 71737, Dec. 11, 1979]

§ 1000.60 Recommendation on administratively required dental x-ray examinations.

(a) The Food and Drug Administration recommends that dental x-ray examinations be performed only after careful consideration of the dental or other health needs of the patient, that is, when the patient's dentist or physician judges them to be necessary for diagnosis, treatment, or prevention of disease. Administratively required dental x-ray examinations are those required by a remote third party for reasons not related to the patient's immediate dental needs. These x-ray examinations are usually a source of unnecessary radiation exposure to the patient. Because any unnecessary radiation exposure should be avoided, third parties should not require dental x-ray examinations unless they can demonstrate that such examinations provide a direct clinical benefit to the patient, and the patient's dentist or physician agrees with that assessment.

(b) Some examples of administrative x-ray examinations that should not be required by third parties are those intended solely:

(1) To monitor insurance claims or detect fraud;

(2) To satisfy a prerequisite for reimbursement;

(3) To provide training or experience;

(4) To certify qualifications or competence.

(c) This recommendation is not intended to preclude dental x-ray examinations ordered by the attending practitioner, based on the patient's history or physical examination, or those performed on selected populations shown to have significant yields of previously undiagnosed disease. This recommendation is also not intended to preclude the administrative use by third parties of dental radiographs that are taken on the order of the patient's dentist or physician as a necessary part of the patient's clinical care.

[45 FR 40978, June 17, 1980]

PART 1002—RECORDS AND REPORTS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1002.1 Applicability.
1002.2 Definitions.
1002.3 Records and reports on components.
1002.4 Confidentiality of information.
1002.7 Submission of data and reports.

Subpart B—Required Manufacturers' Reports for Listed Electronic Products

1002.10 Initial reports.
1002.11 Annual reports.

Sec.
1002.12 Reports of model changes.

Subpart C—Manufacturers' Reports on Accidental Radiation Occurrences

1002.20 Reporting of accidental radiation occurrences.

Subpart D—Manufacturers' Records

1002.30 Records to be maintained by manufacturers.
1002.31 Preservation and inspection of records.

Subpart E—Dealer and Distributor Records

1002.40 Records to be obtained by dealers and distributors.
1002.41 Disposition of records obtained by dealers and distributors.
1002.42 Confidentiality of records furnished by dealers and distributors.

Subpart F—Exemptions From Records and Reports Requirements

1002.50 Special exemptions.
1002.51 Exemptions for manufacturers of products intended for the U.S. Government.

Subpart G—Codes for Reporting Listed Electronic Products

1002.61 List of specific product groups.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 360A, 82 Stat. 1182-84; 42 U.S.C. 263i, 263j.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1002.1 Applicability.

The provisions of this part are applicable to manufacturers, dealers, and distributors of electronic products as specified herein, but, except for § 1002.20, are not applicable to:

(a) Manufacturers of electronic products intended solely for export if such product is labeled or tagged to show that the product is intended for export, and the product meets all the applicable requirements of the country to which such product is intended for export:

(b) Manufacturers of electronic products listed in § 1002.61 if sold exclusively to other manufacturers for use as components of electronic products to be sold to purchasers, with the exception that the provisions are applicable to those manufacturers certifying components of diagnostic x-ray systems pursuant to provisions of § 1020.30(c) of this chapter.

(c) Manufacturers of electronic products which are intended for use by the U.S. Government and whose function or design cannot be divulged by the manufacturer for reasons of national security, as evidenced by government security classification.

(d) Assemblers of diagnostic x-ray equipment subject to the provisions of § 1020.30(d) of this chapter, provided the assembler has submitted the report required by § 1020.30(d) (1) or (2) of this chapter and retains a copy of such report for a period of five years from its date.

[38 FR 31828, Nov. 19, 1973]

§ 1002.2 Definitions.

As used in this part:

(a) The term "dealer" means a person engaged in the business of offering electronic products for sale to purchasers, without regard to whether such person is or has been primarily engaged in such business, and includes persons who offer such products for lease or as prizes or awards.

(b) The term "distributor" means a person engaged in the business of offering electronic products for sale to dealers without regard to whether such person is or has been primarily or customarily engaged in such business.

(c) The term "purchaser" means the first person who, for value, or as an award or prize, acquires an electronic product for purposes other than resale, and also includes a person who leases an electronic product for purposes other than subleasing.

(d) The term "accidental radiation occurrence" means a single event or series of events occurring in the course of the manufacturing, testing, or use of any electronic product which has resulted in injurious or potentially injurious exposure of any person to electronic product radiation as a direct result of the manufacturing, testing, or use of that product.

(e) The term "model" means any dentifiable, unique electronic product design, and refers to products having he same structural and electrical design characteristics and to which the manufacturer has assigned a specific designation to differentiate between it and other products produced by that manufacturer.

§ 1002.3 Records and reports on components.

Records and reports required for products listed in § 1002.61 shall include information on all components which the manufacturer may provide with the listed product and which affect the quantity, quality, or direction of the radiation emissions.

§ 1002.4 Confidentiality of information.

The Secretary or his representative shall not disclose any information reported to or otherwise obtained by him, pursuant to this part, which concerns or relates to a trade secret or other matter referred to in section 1905 of title 18 of the United States Code, except that such information may be disclosed to other officers or employees of the Department and of the other agencies concerned with carrying out the requirements of the Act. Nothing in this section shall authorize the withholding of information by the Secretary, or by any officers or employees under his control, from the duly authorized committees of the Congress.

§ 1002.7 Submision of data and reports.

All submissions such as reports, test data, product descriptions, and other information required by this part, or voluntarily submitted to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, shall be filed with the number of copies as prescribed by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health , and shall be signed by the person making the submission.

(a) In addition to the requirements of this part, all material submitted to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, shall be submitted pursuant to the provisions of Part 20—Public Information, of this chapter.

(b) Where guides or instructions have been issued by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, for the submission of material required by this part such as test data, initial and annual reports, and reports of model changes, the material submitted shall conform to the applicable reporting guide or instruction to the extent that it is possible or appropriate to do so. Where it is not feasible or where it would not be appropriate to conform to any portion of a prescribed reporting guide or instruction, an alternate format for providing the information requested by that portion of the guide or instruction may be used provided the submitter of such information submits adequate explanation and justification for use of an alternate format. If the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, determines that such justification is inadequate and that it is feasible or appropriate to conform to the prescribed reporting guide or instruction, he may require resubmission of the information in conformance with the reporting guide or instruction.

(Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179 (42 U.S.C. 263f))

[42 FR 18062, Apr. 5, 1977, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart B—Required Manufacturers' Reports for Listed Electronic Products

§ 1002.10 Initial reports.

Every manufacturer of a product listed under § 1002.61, shall submit an initial report to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, in accordance with this section. The report shall be submitted within 90 days following the effective date of listing such product under § 1002.61 or prior to the introduction of such product into commerce, whichever is later. The report shall be distinctly marked "Initial Report of (Name of Manufacturer)" and shall:

(a) State in the report for each model of a listed product whether the report is submitted pursuant to paragraph (a), (b), or (c) of § 1002.61.

(b) Identify each model of the listed product together with sufficient information concerning the manufacturer's code or other system of labeling sufficient to enable the Secretary to determine the place of manufacture.

(c) Describe the function, operational characteristics affecting radiation emissions, and intended and known uses of each model of the listed product.

(d) State the standards or design specifications, if any, for each model with respect to electronic product radiation safety. Reference may be made to a Federal standard, if applicable.

(e) For each model, describe the physical or electrical characteristics such as shielding, or electronic circuitry, etc., incorporated into the product in order that the standards or specifications reported pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section are met.

(f) Describe the methods and procedures employed, if any, in testing and measuring each model with respect to electronic product radiation safety including the control of unnecessary, secondary, or leakage electronic product radiation, the applicable quality control procedures used for each model, and the basis for selecting such testing and quality control procedures.

(g) For those products which may produce increased radiation with aging, describe the methods and procedures used, and frequency of testing each model for durability and stability with respect to electronic product radiation safety. Include the basis for selecting such methods and procedures, or for determining that such testing and quality control procedures are not necessary.

(h) Provide sufficient results of the testing and measuring of electronic product radiation safety and of the quality control procedures described in accordance with paragraphs (f) and (g) of this section to enable the Secretary to determine the effectiveness of the methods and procedures used to accomplish the stated purposes.

(i) Report for each model, all warning signs, labels and instructions, for installation, operation, and use which relate to electronic product radiation safety.

(j) Provide upon request such other information as the Secretary may reasonably require to enable him to determine whether the manufacturer has acted or is acting in compliance with the Act and any standards prescribed thereunder, and to enable the Secretary to carry out the purposes of the Act.

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 39 FR 16228, May 8, 1974; 40 FR 10175, Mar. 5, 1975; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1002.11 Annual reports.

(a) Every manufacturer of products listed under § 1002.61(b) and (c) shall submit an annual report summarizing the contents of the records required to be maintained by § 1002.30(a).

(b) The first annual report shall be submitted by September 1, 1971, with subsequent reports due annually thereafter. Such reports shall cover the 12-month period ending on June 30 preceding the due date of the report.

§ 1002.12 Reports of model changes.

Prior to the introduction into commerce of a new or modified model of a product listed in § 1002.61 for which an initial report under § 1002.10 was required, each manufacturer shall submit a report with respect to such new or modified model containing any changes in the information submitted in the initial report.

Subpart C—Manufacturers' Reports on Accidental Radiation Occurrences

§ 1002.20 Reporting of accidental radiation occurrences.

(a) Manufacturers of electronic products shall, where reasonable grounds for suspecting that such an incident has occurred, immediately report to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, all accidental radiation occurrences reported to or otherwise known to the manufacturer and arising from the manufacturing, testing, or use of any product introduced or intended to be introduced into commerce by such manufacturer. Reasonable grounds include, but are not necessarily limited to, professional, scientific, or medical facts or opinions documented or otherwise, that conclude or lead to the conclusion that such an incident has occurred.

(b) Such reports shall be addressed to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857, and the reports and their envelopes shall be distinctly marked "Report on § 1002.20" and shall contain all of the following information where known to the manufacturer:

(1) The nature of the accidental radiation occurrence;

(2) The location at which the accidental radiation occurrence occurred;

(3) The manufacturer, type, and model number of the electronic product or products involved;

(4) The circumstances surrounding the accidental radiation occurrence, including causes;

(5) The number of persons involved, adversely affected, or exposed during the accidental radiation occurrence, the nature and magnitude of their exposure and/or injuries and, if requested by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, the names of the persons involved;

(6) The actions, if any, which may have been taken by the manufacturer, to control, correct, or eliminate the causes and to prevent reoccurrence; and

(7) Any other pertinent information with respect to the accidental radiation occurrence.

(c) If a manufacturer is required to report to the Director under paragraph (a) of this section and also is required to report under Part 803 of this chapter, the manufacturer shall report in accordance with Part 803. If a manufacturer is required to report to the Director under paragraph (a) of this section and is not required to report under Part 803, the manufacturer shall report in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section.

(Secs. 502(t), 510, 519, 701(a), 704 (a) and (e), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 792-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-565, 578, 581 (21 U.S.C. 352(t), 360, 360i, 371(a), 374 (a) and (e)); secs. 215, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 262, 263b-263n))

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973 and 49 FR 36351, Sept. 14, 1984; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart D—Manufacturers' Records

§ 1002.30 Records to be maintained by manufacturers.

(a) Manufacturers of products listed under paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 1002.61 shall establish and maintain the following records with respect to such products:

(1) Description of the quality control procedures with respect to electronic product radiation safety.

(2) Records of the results of tests for electronic product radiation safety, including the control of unnecessary, secondary or leakage electronic product radiation, the methods, devices, and procedures used in such tests, and the basis for selecting such methods, devices, and procedures.

(3) For those products displaying aging effects which may increase electronic product radiation emission, records of the results of tests for durability and stability of the product, and the basis for selecting these tests.

(4) Copies of all written communications between the manufacturer and dealers, distributors, and purchasers concerning radiation safety including complaints, investigations, instructions, or explanations affecting the use, repair, adjustment, maintenance, or testing of the listed product.

(b) In addition to the records required by paragraph (a) of this section, manufacturers of products listed in paragraph (c) of § 1002.61 shall establish and maintain the following records with respect to such products:

(1) A record of the manufacturer's distribution of products in a form which will enable the tracing of specific products or production lots to distributors or to dealers in those instances in which the manufacturer distributes directly to dealers.

(2) Records received from dealers or distributors pursuant to § 1002.41.

§ 1002.31 Preservation and inspection of records.

(a) Every manufacturer required to maintain records pursuant to this part, including records received pursuant to § 1002.41, shall preserve such records for a period of 5 years from the date of the record.

(b) Upon reasonable notice by an officer or employee duly designated by the Department, manufacturers shall permit such officer or employee to inspect appropriate books, records, papers, and documents as are relevant to determining whether the manufacturer has acted or is acting in compliance with Federal standards.

(c) Upon request of the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, a manufacturer of products listed in paragraph (c) of § 1002.61 shall submit to the Director, copies of the records required to be maintained by paragraph (b) of § 1002.30.

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart E—Dealer and Distributor Records

§ 1002.40 Records to be obtained by dealers and distributors.

(a) Dealers and distributors of electronic products listed in § 1002.61(c), for which there are applicable Federal standards under this subchapter and for which the retail price is not less than $50, shall obtain such information as is necessary to permit tracing of specific products to specific purchasers.

(b) Such information shall include:

(1) The name and mailing address of the distributor, dealer, or purchaser to whom the product was transferred.

(2) Identification and brand name of the product.

(3) Model number and serial or other identification number of the product.

(4) Date of sale, award, or lease.

(c) The information obtained pursuant to this section shall be forwarded immediately to the appropriate manufacturer of the electronic product, or preserved as prescribed in § 1002.41.

(Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179 (42 U.S.C. 263f))

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 42 FR 18063, Apr. 5, 1977]

§ 1002.41 Disposition of records obtained by dealers and distributors.

(a) Information obtained by dealers and distributors pursuant to § 1002.40

shall immediately be forwarded to the appropriate manufacturer unless:

(1) The dealer or distributor elects to hold and preserve such information and to immediately furnish it to the manufacturer when advised by the manufacturer or the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, that such information is required for purposes of section 359 of the Act; and

(2) The dealer or distributor, upon making the election under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, promptly notifies the manufacturer of such election; such notification shall be in writing and shall identify the dealer or distributor and the electronic product or products for which the information is being accumulated and preserved.

(b) Every dealer or distributor who elects to hold and preserve information required pursuant to § 1002.40 shall preserve the information for a period of 5 years from the date of the sale, award, or lease of the product, or until the dealer or distributor discontinues dealing in, or distributing the product, whichever is sooner. If the dealer or distributor discontinues dealing in, or distributing the product, such information as obtained pursuant to § 1002.40 shall be furnished at that time, or before, to the manufacturer of the product.

(Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179 (42 U.S.C. 263f))

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 42 FR 18063, Apr. 5, 1977; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1002.42 Confidentiality of records furnished by dealers and distributors.

All information furnished to manufacturers by dealers and distributors pursuant to this part shall be treated by such manufacturers as confidential information which may be used only as necessary to notify persons pursuant to section 359 of the Act.

Subpart F—Exemptions from Records and Reports Requirements

§ 1002.50 Special exemptions.

(a) Manufacturers of electronic products listed under paragraphs (b) and (c) of § 1002.61 may submit to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, with or subsequent to the submission of the initial report required by § 1002.10, a request, together with accompanying justification, that a product be exempted from the annual reporting and recordkeeping requirements. In addition to other information which may be required, the justification must contain documented evidence showing that the product or product type for which the exemption is requested:

(1) Cannot emit electronic product radiation in sufficient intensity or of such quality under any conditions of use or product failure to be hazardous; or

(2) Is produced in such small numbers as to negate the need for continuous recordkeeping and reporting, and is to be used by trained individuals who are knowledgeable of the hazards involved in such use.

(b) The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, may exempt manufacturers from all or part of the record and reporting requirements of this part on the basis of information submitted in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section or such other information which he may possess or may require of the manufacturer if he determines that such exemption is in keeping with the purposes of the Act.

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1002.51 Exemptions for manufacturers of products intended for the U.S. Government.

Upon application therefor by the manufacturer, the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, may exempt from the provisions of this part a manufacturer of any electronic product intended for use by departments or agencies of the United States provided such department or agency has prescribed procurement specifications governing emissions of electronic product radiation and provided further that such product is of a type used solely or predominantly by departments or agencies of the United States.

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart G—Codes for Reporting Listed Electronic Products

§ 1002.61 List of specific product groups.

(a) *Group A.* (1) Ultrasonic products.

(2) Microwave heating equipment not listed in paragraph (c) of this section.

(3) High voltage vacuum switches, high voltage rectifier tubes, shunt regulator tubes, and cathode ray tubes which are intended to be operated at voltages greater than 5,000 volts but less than 15,000 volts.

(4) Ultraviolet lamps and products containing such lamps intended for irradiation of any part of the living human body by light of wavelength in air less than 320 nanometers to perform a diagnostic or therapeutic function.

(b) *Group B.* (1) Television receivers which, on or after the effective date of this subpart, meet the Federal standard in effect on June 1, 1971, provided also that the voltage on the cathode ray tube and any other vacuum tube component cannot exceed 15,000 volts under the test conditions required by the Federal standard at that time.

(2) High voltage vacuum switches, high voltage rectifier tubes, shunt regulator tubes, and cathode ray tubes, which are intended to operate at voltages of 15,000 volts or greater.

(c) *Group C.* (1) Products subject to Federal standards prescribed under this subchapter except for television receivers described in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(2) Products which are intended to produce x-radiation.

(3) Industrial dielectric heaters, including radiofrequency (RF) sealers, and electromagnetic (EM) induction heating equipment that operate in the frequency range from 2 megahertz to 500 megahertz.

(4) Microwave diathermy machines.

(Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179 (42 U.S.C. 263f))

[38 FR 28625, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 40 FR 10175, Mar. 5, 1975; 41 FR 27316, July 2, 1976; 44 FR 65357, Nov. 9, 1979; 45 FR 47615, July 15, 1980]

PART 1003—NOTIFICATION OF DEFECTS OR FAILURE TO COMPLY

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

1003.1 Applicability.
1003.2 Defect in an electronic product.
1003.5 Effect of regulations on other laws.

Subpart B—Discovery of Defect or Failure to Comply

1003.10 Discovery of defect or failure of compliance by manufacturer; notice requirements.
1003.11 Determination by Secretary that product fails to comply or has a defect.

Subpart C—Notification

1003.20 Notification by the manufacturer to the Secretary.
1003.21 Notification by the manufacturer to affected persons.
1003.22 Copies of communications sent to purchasers, dealers, or distributors.

Subpart D—Exemptions from Notification Requirements

1003.30 Application for exemption from notification requirements.
1003.31 Granting the exemption.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 359, 82 Stat. 1180; 42 U.S.C. 263g.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28628, Oct. 15, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1003.1 Applicability.

The provisions of this part are applicable to electronic products which were manufactured after October 18, 1968.

§ 1003.2 Defect in an electronic product.

For the purpose of this part, an electronic product shall be considered to have a defect which relates to the safety of use by reason of the emission of electronic product radiation if:

(a) It is a product which does not utilize the emission of electronic product radiation in order to accomplish its purpose, and from which such emissions are unintended, and as a result of its design, production or assembly;

(1) It emits electronic product radiation which creates a risk of injury, in-

cluding genetic injury, to any person, or

(2) It fails to conform to its design specifications relating to electronic radiation emissions; or

(b) It is a product which utilizes electronic product radiation to accomplish its primary purpose and from which such emissions are intended, and as a result of its design, production or assembly it;

(1) Fails to conform to its design specifications relating to the emission of electronic product radiation; or

(2) Without regard to the design specifications of the product, emits electronic product radiation unnecessary to the accomplishment of its primary purpose which creates a risk of injury, including genetic injury to any person; or

(3) Fails to accomplish the intended purpose.

§ 1003.5 Effect of regulations on other laws.

The remedies provided for in this subchapter shall be in addition to and not in substitution for any other remedies provided by law and shall not relieve any person from liability at common law or under statutory law.

Subpart B—Discovery of Defect or Failure to Comply

§ 1003.10 Discovery of defect or failure of compliance by manufacturer; notice requirements.

Any manufacturer who discovers that any electronic product produced, assembled, or imported by him, which product has left its place of manufacture, has a defect or fails to comply with an applicable Federal standard shall:

(a) Immediately notify the Secretary in accordance with § 1003.20, and

(b) Except as authorized by § 1003.30, furnish notification with reasonable promptness to the following persons:

(1) The dealers or distributors to whom such product was delivered by the manufacturer; and

(2) The purchaser of such product and any subsequent transferee of such product (where known to the manufacturer or where the manufacturer upon reasonable inquiry to dealers, distributors, or purchasers can identify the present user).

(c) If a manufacturer is required to notify the Secretary under paragraph (a) of this section and also is required to report to the Food and Drug Administration under Part 803 of this chapter, the manufacturer shall report in accordance with Part 803. If a manufacturer is required to notify the Secretary under paragraph (a) of this section and is not required to report to the Food and Drug Administration under Part 803, the manufacturer shall notify the Secretary in accordance with paragrapn (a) of this section.

(Secs. 502(t), 510, 519, 701(a), 704 (a) and (e), 52 Stat. 1055, 76 Stat. 792-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 564-565, 578 581 (21 U.S.C. 352(t), 360, 360i, 371(a), 374 (a) and (e)); secs. 215, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 262, 263b-263n))

[38 FR 28628, Oct. 15, 1973 and 49 FR 36351, Sept. 14, 1984]

§ 1003.11 Determination by Secretary that product fails to comply or has a defect.

(a) If, the Secretary, through testing, inspection, research, or examination of reports or other data, determines that any electronic product does not comply with an applicable Federal standard issued pursuant to the Act or has a defect, he shall immediately notify the manufacturer of the product in writing specifying:

(1) The defect in the product or the manner in which the product fails to comply with the applicable Federal standard;

(2) The Secretary's findings, with references to the tests, inspections, studies, or reports upon which such findings are based;

(3) A reasonable period of time during which the manufacturer may present his views and evidence to establish that there is no failure of compliance or that the alleged defect does not exist or does not relate to safety of use of the product by reason of the emission of electronic product radiation.

The manufacturer shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to Part 16 of this chapter.

(b) Every manufacturer who receives a notice under paragraph (a) of this section shall immediately advise the Secretary in writing of the total number of such product units produced and the approximate number of such product units which have left the place of manufacture.

(c) If, after the expiration of the period of time specified in the notice, the Secretary determines that the product has a defect or does not comply with an applicable Federal standard and the manufacturer has not applied for an exemption, he shall direct the manufacturer to furnish the notification to the persons specified in § 1003.10(b) in the manner specified in § 1003.21. The manufacturer shall within 14 days from the date of receipt of such directive furnish the required notification.

[38 FR 28628, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 41 FR 48269, Nov. 2, 1976; 42 FR 15676, Mar. 22, 1977]

Subpart C—Notification

§ 1003.20 Notification by the manufacturer to the Secretary.

The notification to the Secretary required by § 1003.10(a) shall be confirmed in writing and, in addition to other relevant information which the Secretary may require, shall include the following:

(a) Identification of the product or products involved;

(b) The total number of such product units so produced, and the approximate number of such product units which have left the place of manufacture;

(c) The expected usage for the product if known to the manufacturer;

(d) A description of the defect in the product or the manner in which the product fails to comply with an applicable Federal standard;

(e) An evaluation of the hazards reasonably related to defect or the failure to comply with the Federal standard;

(f) A statement of the measures to be taken to repair such defect or to bring the product into compliance with the Federal standard;

(g) The date and circumstances under which the defect was discovered; and

(h) The identification of any trade secret information which the manufacturer desires kept confidential.

§ 1003.21 Notification by the manufacturer to affected persons.

(a) The notification to the persons specified in § 1003.10(b) shall be in writing and, in addition to other relevant information which the Secretary may require, shall include:

(1) The information prescribed by § 1003.20 (a), (d), and instructions with respect to the use of the product pending the correction of the defect;

(2) A clear evaluation in nontechnical terms of the hazards reasonably related to any defect or failure to comply; and

(3) The following statement:

> The manufacturer will, without charge, remedy the defect or bring the product into compliance with each applicable Federal standard in accordance with a plan to be approved by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, the details of which will be included in a subsequent communication to you.

Provided, That if at the time the notification is sent, the Secretary has approved a plan for the repair, replacement or refund of the product, the notification may include the details of the approved plan in lieu of the above statement.

(b) The envelope containing the notice shall not contain advertising or other extraneous material, and such mailings will be made in accordance with this section.

(1) No. 10 white envelopes shall be used, and the name and address of the manufacturer shall appear in the upper left corner of the envelope.

(2) The following statement is to appear in the far left third of the envelope in the type and size indicated and in reverse printing, centered in a red rectangle 3¾ inches wide and 2¼ inches high:

IMPORTANT—ELECTRONIC PRODUCT
RADIATION WARNING

The statement shall be in three lines, all capitals, and centered. "Important" shall be in 36-point Gothic Bold type. "Electronic Product" and "Radiation Warning" shall be in 36-point Gothic Condensed type.

(3) Envelopes with markings similar to those prescribed in this section shall not be used by manufacturers for mailings other than those required by this part.

(c) The notification shall be sent:

(1) By certified mail to purchasers of the product and to subsequent transferees.

(2) By certified mail or other more expeditious means to dealers and distributors.

(d) Where products were sold under a name other than that of the manufacturer of the product, the name of the individual or company under whose name the product was sold may be used in the notification required by this section.

§ 1003.22 Copies of communications sent to purchasers, dealers or distributors.

(a) Every manufacturer of electronic products shall furnish to the Secretary a copy of all notices, bulletins, or other communications sent to the dealers or distributors of such manufacturers or to purchasers (or subsequent transferees) of electronic products of such manufacturer regarding any defect in such product or any failure of such product to comply with an applicable Federal standard.

(b) In the event the Secretary deems the content of such notices to be insufficient to protect the public health and safety, the Secretary may require additional notice to such recipients, or may elect to make or cause to be made such notification by whatever means he deems appropriate.

Subpart D—Exemptions From Notification Requirements

§ 1003.30 Application for exemption from notification requirements.

(a) A manufacturer may at the time of giving the written confirmation required by § 1003.20 or within 15 days of the receipt of any notice from the Secretary pursuant to § 1003.11(a), apply for an exemption from the requirement of notice to the persons specified in § 1003.10(b).

(b) The application for exemption shall contain the information required by § 1003.20 and in addition shall set forth in detail the grounds upon which the exemption is sought.

§ 1003.31 Granting the exemption.

(a) If, in the judgment of the Secretary, the application filed pursuant to § 1003.30 states reasonable grounds for an exemption from the requirement of notice, the Secretary shall give the manufacturer written notice specifying a reasonable period of time during which he may present his views and evidence in support of the application.

(b) Such views and evidence shall be confined to matters relevant to whether the defect in the product or its failure to comply with an applicable Federal standard is such as to create a significant risk of injury, including genetic injury, to any person and shall be presented in writing unless the Secretary determines that an oral presentation is desirable. Where such evidence includes nonclinical laboratory studies, the data submitted shall include, with respect to each such study, either a statement that the study was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 58 of this chapter, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance. When such evidence includes clinical investigations involving human subjects, the data submitted shall include, with respect to each clinical investigation either a statement that each investigation was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 56 of this chapter, or a statement that the investigation is not subject to such requirements in accordance with § 56.104 or § 56.105, and a statement that each investigation was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 50 of this chapter.

(c) If, during the period of time afforded the manufacturer to present his views and evidence, the manufacturer proves to the Secretary's satisfaction that the defect or failure to comply does not create a significant risk of injury, including genetic injury, to any person, the Secretary shall issue an exemption from the requirement of notification to the manufacturer and shall notify the manufacturer in writing specifying:

(1) The electronic product or products for which the exemption has been issued; and

(2) Such conditions as the Secretary deems necessary to protect the public health and safety.

(d) Any person who contests denial of an exemption shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to Part 16 of this chapter.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 512-516, 518-520, 601, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat. 851 as amended 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 76 Stat. 794 as amended, 82 Stat. 343-351, 90 Stat. 539-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360b-360f, 360h-360i); secs. 215, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended; (42 U.S.C. 216, 262, 263b-263n); secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[38 FR 28628, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 41 FR 48269, Nov. 2, 1976; 42 FR 15676, Mar. 22, 1977; 50 FR 7518, Feb. 22, 1985]

PART 1004—REPURCHASE, REPAIRS, OR REPLACEMENT OF ELECTRONIC PRODUCTS

Sec.

1004.1 Manufacturer's obligation to repair, replace, or refund cost of electronic products.
1004.2 Plans for the repair of electronic products.
1004.3 Plans for the replacement of electronic products.
1004.4 Plans for refunding the cost of electronic products.
1004.6 Approval of plans.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 359, 82 Stat. 1180; 42 U.S.C. 263g.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28629, Oct. 15, 1973, unles otherwise noted.

§ 1004.1 Manufacturer's obligation t repair, replace, or refund cost of elec tronic products.

(a) If any electronic product fails to comply with an applicable Federa standard or has a defect and the notification specified in § 1003.10(b) of this chapter is required to be furnished, the manufacturer of such product shall:

(1) Without charge, bring such product into conformity with such standard or remedy such defect and provide reimbursement for any expenses for transportation of such product incurred in connection with having such product brought into conformity or having such defect remedied; or

(2) Replace such product with a like or equivalent product which complies with each applicable Federal standard and which has no defect relating to the safety of its use; or

(3) Make a refund of the cost of the product to the purchaser.

(b) The manufacturer shall take the action required by this section in accordance with a plan approved by the Secretary pursuant to § 1004.6.

§ 1004.2 Plans for the repair of electronic products.

Every plan for bringing an electronic product into conformity with applicable Federal standards or for remedying any defect in such product shall be submitted to the Secretary in writing, and in addition to other relevant information which the Secretary may require, shall include:

(a) Identification of the product involved.

(b) The approximate number of defective product units which have left the place of manufacture.

(c) The specific modifications, alterations, changes, repairs, corrections, or adjustments to be made to bring the product into conformity or remedy any defect.

(d) The manner in which the operations described in paragraph (c) will be accomplished, including the procedure for obtaining access to, or possession of, the products and the location where such operations will be performed.

(e) The technical data, test results or studies demonstrating the effectiveness of the proposed remedial action.

(f) A time limit, reasonable in light of the circumstances, for completion of the operations.

(g) The system by which the manufacturer will provide reimbursement for any transportation expenses incurred in connection with having such product brought into conformity or having any defect remedied.

(h) The text of the statement which the manufacturer will send to the persons specified in § 1003.10(b) of this chapter informing such persons;

(1) That the manufacturer, at his expense, will repair the electronic product involved,

(2) Of the method by which the manufacturer will obtain access to or possession of the product to make such repairs,

(3) That the manufacturer will reimburse such persons for any transportation expenses incurred in connection with making such repairs, and

(4) Of the manner in which such reimbursement will be effected.

(i) An assurance that the manufacturer will provide the Secretary with progress reports on the effectiveness of the plan, including the number of electronic products repaired.

§ 1004.3 Plans for the replacement of electronic products.

Every plan for replacing an electronic product with a like or equivalent product shall be submitted to the Secretary in writing, and in addition to other relevant information which the Secretary may require, shall include:

(a) Identification of the product to be replaced.

(b) A description of the replacement product in sufficient detail to support the manufacturer's contention that the replacement product is like or equivalent to the product being replaced.

(c) The approximate number of defective product units which have left the place of manufacture.

(d) The manner in which the replacement operation will be effected including the procedure for obtaining possession of the product to be replaced.

(e) A time limit, reasonable in light of the circumstances for completion of the replacement.

(f) The steps which the manufacturer will take to insure that the defective product will not be reintroduced into commerce, until it complies with each applicable Federal standard and has no defect relating to the safety of its use.

(g) The system by which the manufacturer will provide reimbursement for any expenses for transportation of such product incurred in connection with effecting the replacement.

(h) The text of the statement which the manufacturer will send to the persons specified in § 1003.10(b) of this chapter informing such persons;

(1) That the manufacturer, at its expense, will replace the electronic product involved,

(2) Of the method by which the manufacturer will obtain possession of the product and effect the replacement,

(3) That the manufacturer will reimburse such persons for any transportation expenses incurred in connection with effecting such replacement, and

(4) Of the manner in which such reimbursement will be made.

(i) An assurance that the manufacturer will provide the Secretary with progress reports on the effectiveness of the plan, including the number of electronic products replaced.

§ 1004.4 Plans for refunding the cost of electronic products.

Every plan for refunding the cost of an electronic product shall be submitted to the Secretary in writing, and in addition to other relevant information which the Secretary may require, shall include:

(a) Identification of the product involved.

(b) The approximate number of defective product units which have left the place of manufacture.

(c) The manner in which the refund operation will be effected including the procedure for obtaining possession of the product for which the refund is to be made.

(d) The steps which the manufacturer will take to insure that the defective products will not be reintroduced into commerce, until it complies with each applicable Federal standard and has no defect relating to the safety of its use.

(e) A time limit, reasonable in light of the circumstances, for obtaining the product and making the refund.

(f) A statement that the manufacturer will refund the cost of such product together with the information the manufacturer has used to determine the amount of the refund.

(g) The text of the statement which the manufacturer will send to the persons specified in § 1003.10(b) of this chapter informing such persons;

(1) That the manufacturer, at his expense, will refund the cost of the electronic product plus any transportation costs,

(2) Of the amount to be refunded exclusive of transportation costs,

(3) Of the method by which the manufacturer will obtain possession of the product and make the refund.

(h) An assurance that the manufacturer will provide the Secretary with progress reports on the effectiveness of the plan, including the number of refunds made.

§ 1004.6 Approval of plans.

If, after review of any plan submitted pursuant to this subchapter, the Secretary determines that the action to be taken by the manufacturer will expeditiously and effectively fulfill the manufacturer's obligation under § 1004.1 in a manner designed to encourage the public to respond to the proposal, the Secretary will send written notice of his approval of such plan to the manufacturer. Such approval may be conditioned upon such additional terms as the Secretary deems necessary to protect the public health and safety. Any person who contests denial of a plan shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to Part 16 of this chapter.

[38 FR 28629, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 41 FR 48269, Nov. 2, 1976; 42 FR 15676, Mar. 22, 1977]

PART 1005—IMPORTATION OF ELECTRONIC PRODUCTS

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1005.1 Applicability.
1005.2 Definitions.
1005.3 Importation of noncomplying goods prohibited.

Subpart B—Inspection and Testing

1005.10 Notice of sampling.
1005.11 Payment for samples.

Subpart C—Bonding and Compliance Procedures

1005.20 Hearing.
1005.21 Application for permission to bring product into compliance.
1005.22 Granting permission to bring product into compliance.
1005.23 Bonds.
1005.24 Costs of bringing product into compliance.
1005.25 Service of process on manufacturers.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 215, 356, 58 Stat. 690, 82 Stat. 1174; 42 U.S.C. 216, 263d.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28630, Oct. 15, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1005.1 Applicability.

(a) The provisions of §§ 1005.1 through 1005.24 are applicable to electronic products which are subject to the standards prescribed under this subchapter and are offered for importation into the United States.

(b) Section 1005.25 is applicable to every manufacturer of electronic products offering an electronic product for importation into the United States.

(Secs. 356, 360, 82 Stat. 1174-1176, 1181-1182 (42 U.S.C. 263d, 263h))

[38 FR 28630, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 45 FR 81739, Dec. 12, 1980]

§ 1005.2 Definitions.

As used in this part:

The term "owner" or "consignee" means the person who has the rights of a consignee under the provisions of sections 483, 484, and 485 of the Tariff Act of 1930, as amended (19 U.S.C. 1483, 1484, 1485).

§ 1005.3 Importation of noncomplying goods prohibited.

The importation of any electronic product for which standards have been prescribed under section 358 of the Act (42 U.S.C. 263f) shall be refused admission into the United States unless there is affixed to such product a certification in the form of a label or tag in conformity with section 358(h) of the Act (42 U.S.C. 263f(h)). Merchandise refused admission shall be destroyed or exported under regulations prescribed by the Secretary of the Treasury unless a timely and adequate petition for permission to bring the product into compliance is filed and granted under §§ 1005.21 and 1005.22.

Subpart B—Inspection and Testing

§ 1005.10 Notice of sampling.

When a sample of a product to be offered for importation has been requested by the Secretary, the District Director of Customs having jurisdiction over the shipment shall, upon the arrival of the shipment, procure the sample and shall give to its owner or consignee prompt notice of the delivery or of the intention to deliver such sample to the Secretary. If the notice so requires, the owner or consignee will hold the shipment of which the sample is typical and not release such shipment until he receives notice of the results of the tests of the sample from the Secretary, stating that the product is in compliance with the requirements of the Act. The District Director of Customs will be given the results of the tests. If the Secretary notifies the District Director of Customs that the product does not meet the requirements of the Act, the District Director of Customs shall require the exportation or destruction of the shipment in accordance with customs laws.

§ 1005.11 Payment for samples.

The Department of Health and Human Services will pay for all import samples of electronic products rendered unsalable as a result of testing, or will pay the reasonable costs of repackaging such samples for sale, if the samples are found to be in compliance with the requirements of the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. Billing for reimbursement shall be made by the owner or consignee to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Payment for samples will not be made if the sample is found to be in violation of the Act, even though subsequently brought into compliance pursuant to terms specified in a notice of permission issued under § 1005.22.

[38 FR 28630, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart C—Bonding and Compliance Procedures

§ 1005.20 Hearing.

(a) If, from an examination of the sample or otherwise, it appears that the product may be subject to a refusal of admission, the Secretary shall give the owner or consignee a written notice to that effect, stating the reasons therefor. The notice shall specify a place and a period of time during which the owner or consignee shall have an opportunity to introduce testimony unless the owner or consignee indicates his intention to bring the product into compliance. Upon timely request, such time and place may be changed. Such testimony shall be confined to matters relevant to the admissibility of the article and may be introduced orally or in writing.

(b) If the owner or consignee submits or indicates his intention to submit an application for permission to perform such action as is necessary to bring the product into compliance with the Act, such application shall include the information required by § 1005.21.

(c) If the application is not submitted at or prior to the hearing, the Secretary may allow a reasonable time for filing such application.

§ 1005.21 Application for permission to bring product into compliance.

Application for permission to perform such action as is necessary to bring the product into compliance with the Act may be filed only by the owner, consignee, or manufacturer and, in addition to any other information which the Secretary may reasonably require, shall:

(a) Contain a detailed proposal for bringing the product into compliance with the Act;

(b) Specify the time and place where such operations will be effected and the approximate time for their completion; and

(c) Identify the bond required to be filed pursuant to § 1005.23.

§ 1005.22 Granting permission to bring product into compliance.

(a) When permission contemplated by § 1005.21 is granted, the Secretary shall notify the applicant in writing, specifying:

(1) The procedure to be followed;

(2) The disposition of the rejected articles or portions thereof;

(3) That the operations are to be carried out under the supervision of a representative of the Department of Health and Human Services;

(4) A reasonable time limit for completing the operations; and

(5) Such other conditions as he finds necessary to maintain adequate supervision and control over the product.

(b) Upon receipt of a written request for an extension of time to complete the operations necessary to bring the product into compliance, the Secretary may grant such additional time as he deems necessary.

(c) The notice of permission may be amended upon a showing of reasonable grounds thereof and the filing of an amended application for permission with the Secretary.

(d) If ownership of a product included in a notice of permission changes before the operations specified in the notice have been completed, the original owner will remain responsible under its bond, unless the new owner has executed a superseding bond on customs Form 7601 and obtained a new notice.

(e) The Secretary will notify the District Director of Customs having jurisdiction over the shipment involved, of the determination as to whether or not the product has in fact been brought into compliance with the Act.

§ 1005.23 Bonds.

The bond required under sect
360(b) of the Act shall be executed
the owner or consignee on the app
priate form of a customs single-en
bond, customs Form 7551 or te
bond, customs Form 7553 or 7595, c
taining a condition for the redeliv
of the shipment or any part ther
not complying with the laws and re
lations governing its admission i
the commerce of the United Sta
upon demand of the District Direc
of Customs and containing a provis
for the performance of any action n
essary to bring the product into co
pliance with all applicable laws a
regulations. The bond shall be fi
with the District Director of Custo

§ 1005.24 Costs of bringing product in compliance.

The costs of supervising the ope
ations necessary to bring a produ
into compliance with the Act shall
paid by the owner or consignee wh
files an application pursuant
§ 1005.21 and executes a bond und
section 360(b) of the Act. Such cos
shall include:

(a) Travel expenses of the supervis
ing officer;

(b) Per diem in lieu of subsistence o
the supervising officer when awa
from his home station, as provided b
law;

(c) *Service fees*: (1) The charge fo
the services of the supervising officer
which shall include administrativ
support, shall be computed at a rate
per hour equal to 266 percent of the
hourly rate of regular pay of a grade
GS-11/4 employee, except that such
services performed by a customs officer and subject to the provisions of the act of February 13, 1911, as amended (sec. 5, 36 Stat. 901, as amended (19 U.S.C. 267)), shall be calculated as provided in that act.

(2) The charge for the services of the analyst, which shall include administrative and laboratory support, shall be computed at a rate per hour equal to 266 percent of the hourly rate of regular pay of a grade GS-12/4 employee.

(3) The rate per hour equal to 266 percent of the equivalent hourly rate

of regular pay of the supervising officer (GS-11/4) and the analyst (GS-12/4) is computed as follows:

	Hours
Gross number of working hours in 52 40-hour weeks	2,080
Less:	
Nine legal public holidays—New Years Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Veterans Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day	72
Annual Leave—26 days	208
Sick Leave—13 days	104
Total	384
Net number of working hours	1,696
Gross number of working hours in 52 40-hour weeks	2,080
Working hour equivalent of Government contributions for employee retirement, life insurance, and health benefits computed at 8½% of annual rate of pay of employee	176
Equivalent annual working hours	2,256
Support required to equal to 1 man-year	2,256
Equivalent gross annual working hours charged to Food and Drug appropriation	4,512

NOTE: Ratio of equivalent gross annual number of working hours charged to Food and Drug appropriation to net number of annual working hours (4512/1696)=266 pct.

(d) The minimum charge for services of supervising officers shall be not less than the charge for 1 hour and time after the first hour shall be computed in multiples of 1 hour, disregarding fractional parts less than one-half hour.

(Sec. 360, 82 Stat. 1175-1176, 1181-1182 (42 U.S.C. 263h))

[38 FR 28630, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 42 FR 55207, Oct. 14, 1977; 42 FR 62130, Dec. 9, 1977]

§ 1005.25 Service of process on manufacturers.

(a) Every manufacturer of electronic products, prior to offering such product for importation into the United States, shall designate a permanent resident of the United States as the manufacturer's agent upon whom service of all processes, notices, orders, decisions, and requirements may be made for and on behalf of the manufacturer as provided in section 360(d) of the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 263h(d)) and this section. The agent may be an individual, a firm, or a domestic corporation. For purposes of this section, any number of manufacturers may designate the same agent.

(b) The designation shall be addressed to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. It shall be in writing and dated; all signatures shall be in ink. The designation shall be made in the legal form required to make it valid and binding on the manufacturer under the laws, corporate bylaws, or other requirements governing the making of the designation by the manufacturer at the place and time where it is made, and the persons or person signing the designation shall certify that it is so made. The designation shall disclose the manufacturer's full legal name and the name(s) under which he conducts his business, if applicable, his principal place of business, and mailing address. If any of the products of the manufacturer do not bear his legal name, the designation shall identify the marks, trade names, or other designations of origin which these products bear. The designation shall provide that it will remain in effect until withdrawn or replaced by the manufacturer and shall bear a declaration of acceptance duly signed by the designated agent. The full legal name and mailing address of the agent shall be stated. Until rejected by the Secretary, designations are binding on the manufacturer even when not in compliance with all the requirements of this section. The designated agent may not assign performance of his function under the designation to another.

(c) Service of any process, notice, order, requirement, or decision specified in section 360(d) of the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968 may be made by registered or certified mail addressed to the agent with return receipt requested, or in any other manner authorized by law. In the absence of such a designation or if for any reason service on the designated agent cannot be effected, service may be made as provided in section 360(d) by posting such process, notice, order, requirement, or decision in the Office of the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health and publishing a notice that such service was made in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

[38 FR 28630, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

PART 1010—PERFORMANCE STANDARDS FOR ELECTRONIC PRODUCTS: GENERAL

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

1010.1 Scope.
1010.2 Certification.
1010.3 Identification.
1010.4 Variances.
1010.5 Exemptions for products intended for United States Government use.

Subpart B—Alternate Test Procedures

1010.13 Special test procedures.

Subpart C—Exportation of Electronic Products

1010.20 Electronic products intended for export.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177; 42 U.S.C. 263f; 21 CFR 5.10.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28631, Oct. 15, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1010.1 Scope.

The standards listed in this subchapter are prescribed pursuant to section 358 of the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968 (42 U.S.C. 263f) and are applicable to electronic products as specified herein, to control electronic product radiation from such products. Standards so prescribed are subject to amendment or revocation and additional standards may be prescribed as are determined necessary for the protection of the public health and safety.

[40 FR 32257, July 31, 1975]

§ 1010.2 Certification.

(a) Every manufacturer of an electronic product for which an applicable standard is in effect under this subchapter shall furnish to the dealer or distributor, at the time of delivery of such product, the certification that such product conforms to all applicable standards under this subchapter.

(b) The certification shall be in the form of a label or tag permanently affixed to or inscribed on such product so as to be legible and readily accessible to view when the product is fully assembled for use, unless the applicable standard prescribes some other manner of certification. All such labels or tags shall be in the English language.

(c) Such certification shall be based upon a test, in accordance with the standard, of the individual article to which it is attached or upon a testing program which is in accordance with good manufacturing practices. The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health may disapprove such a testing program on the grounds that it does not assure the adequacy of safeguards against hazardous electronic product radiation or that it does not assure that electronic products comply with the standards prescribed under this subchapter.

(d) In the case of products for which it is not feasible to certify in accordance with paragraph (b) of this section, upon application by the manufacturer, the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health may approve an alternate means by which such certification may be provided.

[38 FR 28631, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 40 FR 32257, July 31, 1975; 42 FR 18063, Apr. 5, 1977; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1010.3 Identification.

(a) Every manufacturer of an electronic product to which a standard under this subchapter is applicable shall set forth the information specified in paragraphs (a)(1) and (2) of this section. This information shall be provided in the form of a tag or label permanently affixed or inscribed on such product so as to be legible and readily accessible to view when the product is fully assembled for use or in such other manner as may be prescribed in the applicable standard. Except for foreign equivalent abbreviations as authorized in paragraph (a)(1) of this section all such labels or tags shall be in the English language.

(1) The full name and address of the manufacturer of the product; abbreviations such as "Co.," "Inc.," or their

foreign equivalents ar[illegible] the first and middle initials of individuals may be used. Where products [illegible] sold under a name other than that of the manufacturer of the product, the full name and address of the individual or company under whose name the product was sold may be set forth, provided such individual or company has previously suppled the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health with sufficient information to identify the manufacturer of the product.

(2) The place and month and year of manufacture:

(i) The place of manufacture may be expressed in code provided the manufacturer has previously supplied the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health with the key to such code.

(ii) The month and year of manufacture shall be provided clearly and legibly, without abbreviation, and with the year shown as a four-digit number as follows:

MANUFACTURED: (INSERT MONTH AND YEAR OF MANUFACTURE.)

(b) In the case of products for which it is not feasible to affix identification labeling in accordance with paragraph (a) of this section, upon application by the manufacturer, the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health may approve an alternate means by which such identification may be provided.

(c) Every manufacturer of an electronic product to which a standard under this subchapter is applicable shall provide to the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health a list identifying each brand name which is applied to the product together with the full name and address of the individual or company for whom each product so branded is manufactured.

[40 FR 32257, July 31, 1975, as amended at 42 FR 18063, Apr. 5, 1977; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1010.4 Variances.

(a) *Criteria for variances.* (1) Upon application by a manufacturer (including an assembler), the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, may grant a variance from one or more provisions of any performance standard under Subchapter J of this chapter for an electronic product subject to such standard when the Director determines that granting such a variance is in keeping with the purposes of the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968, and:

(i) The scope of the requested variance is so limited in its applicability as not to justify an amendment to the standard, or

(ii) There is not sufficient time for the promulgation of an amendment to the standard.

(2) The issuance of the variance shall be based upon a determination that:

(i) The product utilizes an alternate means for providing radiation safety or protection equal to or greater than that provided by products meeting all requirements of the applicable standard, or

(ii) The product performs a function or is intended for a purpose which could not be performed or accomplished if required to meet the applicable standards, and suitable means for assuring radiation safety or protection are provided, or

(iii) One or more requirements of the applicable standard are not appropriate, and suitable means for assuring radiation safety or protection are provided.

(b) *Applications for variances.* Applications for variances or for amendments or extensions thereof shall be submitted in an original and two copies to the Dockets Management Branch (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, Rm 4-62, Parklawn Building, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(1) The application for variance shall include the following information:

(i) A description of the product and its intended use.

(ii) An explanation of how compliance with the applicable standard would restrict or be inappropriate for this intended use.

(iii) A description of the manner in which it is proposed to deviate from the requirements of the applicable standard.

(iv) A description of the advantages to be derived from such deviation.

(v) An explanation of how alternate or suitable means of radiation protection will be provided.

(vi) The period of time it is desired that the variance be in effect, and, if appropriate, the number of units the applicant wishes to manufacture.

(vii) In the case of prototype or experimental equipment, the proposed location of each unit.

(viii) Such other information required by regulation or by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health to evaluate and act on the application.

(ix) With respect to each nonclinical laboratory study contained in the application, either a statement that the study was conducted in compliance with the good laboratory practice regulations set forth in Part 58 of this chapter, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(x) [Reserved]

(xi) If the electronic product is used in a clinical investigation involving human subjects, is subject to the requirements for institutional review set forth in Part 56 of this chapter, and is subject to the requirements for informed consent set forth in Part 50 of this chapter, the investigation shall be conducted in compliance with such requirements.

(2) The application for amendment or extension of a variance shall include the following information:

(i) The variance number and expiration date.

(ii) The amendment or extension requested and basis for the amendment or extension.

(iii) A description of the effect of the amendment or extension on protection from radiation produced by the product.

(iv) An explanation of how alternate or suitable means of protection will be provided.

(c) *Ruling on applications.* (1) The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health may approve or deny, in whole or in part, a requested variance or any amendment or extension thereof, and the director shall inform the applicant in writing of this action on a requested variance or amendment or extension. The written notice will state the manner in which the variance differs from the standard, the effective date and the termination date of the variance, a summary of the requirements and conditions attached to the variance, any other information that may be relevant to the application or variance, and, if appropriate, the number of units or other similar limitations for which the variance is approved. Each variance will be assigned an identifying number.

(2) The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, shall amend or withdraw a variance whenever the Director determines that this action is necessary to protect the public health or otherwise is justified by this subchapter. Such action will become effective on the date specified in the written notice of the action sent to the applicant, except that it will become effective immediately upon notification to the applicant when the Director determines that such action is necessary to prevent an imminent health hazard.

(3) All applications for variances and for amendments and extensions thereof and all correspondence (including written notices of approval) on these applications will be available for public disclosure in the office of the Dockets Management Branch, except for information regarded as confidential under section 360A(e) of the act.

(d) *Certification of equipment covered by variance.* The manufacturer of any product for which a variance is granted shall modify the tag, label, or other certification required by § 1010.2 to state:

(1) That the product is in conformity with the applicable standard, except with respect to those characteristics covered by the variance;

(2) That the product is in conformity with the provisions of the variance; and

(3) The assigned number and effective date of the variance.

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 512-516, 518-520, 601, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat. 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 76 Stat. 794 as amended, 82 Stat. 343-351, 90 Stat. 539-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360b-360f, 360h-360i); secs. 215, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended; (42 U.S.C. 216, 262, 263b-263n) secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 513-516, 518-520, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 74 Stat. 399-407 as amended, 76 Stat. 794-795 as amended, 90 Stat. 540-560, 562-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360c-360f, 360h-360j, 371(a), 376 and 381); secs. 215, 301, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended (42 U.S.C. 216, 241, 262, 263b-263n))

[39 FR 13879, Apr. 18, 1974, as amended at 44 FR 48191, Aug. 17, 1979; 50 FR 7518, Feb. 22, 1985; 50 FR 13565, Apr. 5, 1985; 53 FR 52683, Dec. 29, 1988; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1010.5 Exemptions for products intended for United States Government use.

(a) *Criteria for exemption.* Upon application by a manufacturer (including assembler) or by a U.S. department or agency, the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, may grant an exemption from any performance standard under Subchapter J of this chapter for an electronic product, or class of products, otherwise subject to such standard when he determines that such electronic product or class is intended for use by departments or agencies of the United States and meets the criteria set forth in paragraph (a) (1) or (2) of this section.

(1) The procuring agency shall prescribe procurement specifications for the product or class of products governing emissions of electronic product radiation, and the product or class shall be of a type used solely or predominantly by a department or agency of the United States.

(2) The product or class of products is intended for research, investigations, studies, demonstration, or training, or for reasons of national security.

(b) *Consultation between the procuring agency and the Food and Drug Administration.* The United States department or agency that intends to procure or manufacture a product or class of products subject to electronic product radiation safety standards contained in this subchapter should consult with the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, whenever it is anticipated that the specifications for the product or class must deviate from, or be in conflict with, such applicable standards. Such consultation should occur as early as possible during development of such specifications. The department or agency should include in the specifications all requirements of such standards that are not in conflict with, or are not inappropriate for, the special or unique uses for which the product is intended. The procuring agency should indicate to the Bureau of Radiological Health if it desires to be notified of the approval, amendment, or withdrawal of the exemption.

(c) *Application for exemption.* An original and two copies of any application for exemption, or for amendment or extension thereof, shall be submitted to the Dockets Management Branch (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, Rm. 4-62, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. For an exemption pursuant to the criteria prescribed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, the application shall include the information prescribed in paragraphs (c)(1) through (13) of this section. For an exemption pursuant to the criteria prescribed in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, the application shall include the information prescribed in paragraphs (c)(3) through (13) of this section. An application for exemption, or for amendment or extension thereof, and correspondence relating to such application shall be made available for public disclosure in the Dockets Management Branch except for confidential or proprietary information submitted in accordance with Part 20 of this chapter. Information classified for reasons of national security shall not be included in the application. Except as indicated above, the application for exemption shall include the following:

(1) The procurement specifications for the product or class of products that govern emissions of electronic product radiation.

(2) Evidence that the product or class of products is of a type used solely or predominantly by departments or agencies of the United States.

(3) Evidence that such product or class of products is intended for use by a department or agency of the United States.

(4) A description of the product or class of products and its intended use.

(5) An explanation of how compliance with the applicable standard would restrict or be inappropriate for this intended use.

(6) A description of the manner in which it is proposed that the product or class of products shall deviate from the requirements of the applicable standard.

(7) An explanation of the advantages to be derived from such deviation.

(8) An explanation of how means of radiation protection will be provided where the product or class of products deviates from the requirements of the applicable standard.

(9) The period of time it is desired that the exemption be in effect, and, if appropriate, the number of units to be manufactured under the exemption.

(10) The name, address, and telephone number of the manufacturer or his agent.

(11) The name, address, and telephone number of the appropriate office of the United States department or agency purchasing the product or class of products.

(12) Such other information required by regulation or by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, to evaluate and act on the application. Where such information includes nonclinical laboratory studies, the information shall include, with respect to each nonclinical study, either a statement that each study was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 58 of this chapter, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a statement that describes in detail all differences between the practices used in the study and those required in the regulations. When such information includes clinical investigations involving human subjects, the information shall include, with respect to each clinical investigation, either a statement that each investigation was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 56 of this chapter, or a statement that the investigation is not subject to such requirements in accordance with § 56.104 or § 56.105 and a statement that each investigation was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 50 of this chapter.

(13) With respect to each nonclinical laboratory study contained in the application, either a statement that the study was conducted in compliance with the requirements set forth in Part 58 of this chapter, or, if the study was not conducted in compliance with such regulations, a brief statement of the reason for the noncompliance.

(d) *Amendment or extension of an exemption.* An exemption is granted on the basis of the information contained in the orginal applicaion. Therefore, if changes are needed in the radiation safety specifications for the product, or its use, or related radiation control procedures such that the information in the original application would no longer be correct with respect to radiation safety, the applicant shall submit in advance of such changes a request for an amendment to the exemption. He also shall submit a request for extension of the exemption, if needed, at least 60 days before the expiration date. The application for amendment or extension of an exemption shall include the following information:

(1) The exemption number and expiration date.

(2) The amendment or extension requested and basis for the amendment or extension.

(3) If the radiation safety specifications for the product or class of products or the product's or class of products' use or related radiation control procedures differ from the description provided in the original application, a description of such changes.

(e) *Ruling on an application.* (1) The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, may grant an exemption including in the written notice of exemption such conditions or terms as may be necessary to protect the public health and safety and shall notify the applicant in writing of his action. The conditions or terms of the exemption may include specifications concerning the manufacture, use, control, and disposal of the excess or surplus exempted product of class of products as provided in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 41, Subtitle C. Each exemption will be assigned an identifying number.

(2) The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, shall amend or withdraw an exemption whenever he determines that such action is necessary to protect the public health or otherwise is justified by provisions of the act or this subchapter. Such action shall become effective on the date specified in the written notice of the action sent to the applicant, except that it shall become effective immediately when the Director determines that it is necessary to prevent an imminent health hazard.

(f) *Identification of equipment covered by exemption.* The manufacturer of any product for which an exemption is granted shall provide the following identification in the form of a tag or label permanently affixed or inscribed on such product so as to be legible and readily accessible to view when the product is fully assembled for use or in such other manner as may be prescribed in the exemption:

CAUTION

This electronic product has been exempted from Food and Drug Administration radiation safety performance standards prescribed in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 21, Chapter I, Subchapter J, pursuant to Exemption No.———, granted on

(Secs. 406, 408, 409, 502, 503, 505, 506, 507, 510, 512-516, 518-520, 601, 701(a), 706, and 801, 52 Stat. 1049-1053 as amended, 1055, 1058 as amended, 55 Stat. 851 as amended, 59 Stat. 463 as amended, 68 Stat. 511-517 as amended, 72 Stat. 1785-1788 as amended, 76 Stat. 794 as amended, 82 Stat. 343-351, 90 Stat. 539-574 (21 U.S.C. 346, 346a, 348, 352, 353, 355, 356, 357, 360, 360b-360f, 360h-360i); Secs. 215, 351, 354-360F, 58 Stat. 690, 702 as amended, 82 Stat. 1173-1186 as amended; (42 U.S.C. 216, 262, 263b-263n))

42 FR 44229, Sept. 2, 1977; 42 FR 61257, Dec. 2, 1977, as amended at 44 FR 17657, Mar. 23, 1979; 46 FR 8460, 8958, Jan. 27, 981; 50 FR 7518, Feb. 22, 1985; 50 FR 13564, Apr. 5, 1985; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart B—Alternate Test Procedures

§ 1010.13 Special test procedures.

The Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, may, on the basis of a written application by a manufacturer, authorize test programs other than those set forth in the standards under this subchapter for an electronic product if he determines that such products are not susceptible to satisfactory testing by the procedures set forth in the standard and that the alternative test procedures assure compliance with the standard.

[40 FR 32257, July 31, 1975, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

Subpart C—Exportation of Electronic Products

§ 1010.20 Electronic products intended for export.

The performance standards prescribed in this subchapter shall not apply to any electronic product which is intended solely for export if:

(a) Such product and the outside of any shipping container used in the export of such product are labeled or tagged to show that such product is intended for export, and

(b) Such product meets all the applicable requirements of the country to which such product is intended for export.

[40 FR 32257, July 31, 1975]

PART 1020—PERFORMANCE STANDARDS FOR IONIZING RADIATION EMITTING PRODUCTS

Sec.

1020.10 Television receivers.
1020.20 Cold-cathode gas discharge tubes.
1020.30 Diagnostic x-ray systems and their major components.
1020.31 Radiographic equipment.
1020.32 Fluoroscopic equipment.
1020.33 Computed tomography (CT) equipment.
1020.40 Cabinet x-ray systems.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179; 42 U.S.C. 263f.

SOURCE: 38 FR 28632, Oct. 15, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

§ 1020.10 Television receivers.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions of this section are applicable to television receivers manufactured subsequent to January 15, 1970.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) "External surface" means the cabinet or enclosure provided by the manufacturer as part of the receiver. If a cabinet or enclosure is not provided as part of the receiver, the external surface shall be considered to be a hypothetical cabinet, the plane surfaces of which are located at those minimum distances from the chassis sufficient to enclose all components of the receiver except that portion of the neck and socket of the cathode-ray tube which normally extends beyond the plane surfaces of the enclosure.

(2) "Maximum test voltage" means 130 root mean square volts if the receiver is designed to operate from nominal 110 to 120 root mean square volt power sources. If the receiver is designed to operate from a power source having some voltage other than from nominal 110 to 120 root mean square volts, maximum test voltage means 110 percent of the nominal root mean square voltage specified by the manufacturer for the power source.

(3) "Service controls" means all of those controls on a television receiver provided by the manufacturer for purposes of adjustment which, under normal usage, are not accessible to the user.

(4) "Television receiver" means an electronic product designed to receive and display a television picture through broadcast, cable, or closed circuit television.

(5) "Usable picture" means a picture in synchronization and transmitting viewable intelligence.

(6) "User controls" means all of those controls on a television receiver, provided by the manufacturer for purposes of adjustment, which on a fully assembled receiver under normal usage, are accessible to the user.

(c) *Requirements*—(1)*Exposure rate limit.* Radiation exposure rates produced by a television receiver shall not exceed 0.5 milliroentgens per hour at a distance of five (5) centimeters from any point on the external surface of the receiver, as measured in accordance with this section.

(2) *Measurements.* Compliance with the exposure rate limit defined in paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall be determined by measurements made with an instrument, the radiation sensitive volume of which shall have a cross section parallel to the external surface of the receiver with an area of ten (10) square centimeters and no dimension larger than five (5) centimeters. Measurements made with instruments having other areas must be corrected for spatial nonuniformity of the radiation field to obtain the exposure rate average over a ten (10) square centimeter area.

(3) *Test conditions.* All measurements shall be made with the receiver displaying a usable picture and with the power source operated at supply voltages up to the maximum test voltage of the receiver and, as applicable, under the following specific conditions:

(i) On television receivers manufactured subsequent to January 15, 1970, measurements shall be made with all user controls adjusted so as to produce maximum x-radiation emissions from the receiver.

(ii) On television receivers manufactured subsequent to June 1, 1970, measurements shall be made with all user controls and all service controls adjusted to combinations which result in the production of maximum x-radiation emissions.

(iii) On television receivers manufactured subsequent to June 1, 1971, measurements shall be made under the conditions described in paragraph (c)(3) (ii) of this section, together with conditions identical to those which result from that component or circuit failure which maximizes x-radiation emissions.

(4) *Critical component warning.* The manufacturer shall permanently affix or inscribe a warning label, clearly legible under conditions of service, on all television receivers which could produce radiation exposure rates in excess of the requirements of this section as a result of failure or improper adjustment or improper replacement

of a circuit or shield component. The warning label shall include the specification of operating high voltage and an instruction for adjusting the high voltage to the specified value.

§ 1020.20 Cold-cathode gas discharge tubes.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions of this section are applicable to cold-cathode gas discharge tubes designed to demonstrate the effects of a flow of electrons or the production of x-radiation as specified herein.

(b) *Definitions.* "Beam blocking device" means a movable or removable portion of any enclosure around a cold-cathode gas discharge tube, which may be opened or closed to permit or prevent the emergence of an exit beam.

"Cold-cathode gas discharge tube" means an electronic device in which electron flow is produced and sustained by ionization of contained gas atoms and ion bombardment of the cathode.

"Exit beam" means that portion of the radiation which passes through the aperture resulting from the opening of the beam blocking device.

"Exposure" means the sum of the electrical charges on all of the ions of one sign produced in air when all electrons liberated by photons in a volume element of air are completely stopped in air divided by the mass of the air in the volume element. The special unit of exposure is the roentgen. One (1) roentgen equals 2.58×10^{-4} coulombs/kilogram.

(c) *Requirements*—(1) *Exposure rate limit.* (i) Radiation exposure rates produced by cold-cathode gas discharge tubes shall not exceed 10 mR./hr. at a distance of thirty (30) centimeters from any point on the external surface of the tube, as measured in accordance with this section.

(ii) The divergence of the exit beam from tubes designed primarily to demonstrate the effects of x radiation, with the beam blocking device in the open position, shall not exceed (Pi) steradians.

(2) *Measurements.* (i) Compliance with the exposure rate limit defined in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section shall be determined by measurements averaged over an area of one hundred (100) square centimeters with no linear dimension greater than twenty (20) centimeters.

(ii) Measurements of exposure rates from tubes in enclosures from which the tubes cannot be removed without destroying the function of the tube may be made at a distance of thirty (30) centimeters from any point on the external surface of the enclosure, provided:

(*a*) In the case of enclosures containing tubes designed primarily to demonstrate the production of x radiation, measurements shall be made with any beam blocking device in the beam blocking position, or

(*b*) In the case of enclosures containing tubes designed primarily to demonstrate the effects of a flow of electrons, measurements shall be made with all movable or removable parts of such enclosure in the position which would maximize external exposure levels.

(3) *Test conditions.* (i) Measurements shall be made under the conditions of use specified in instructions provided by the manufacturer.

(ii) Measurements shall be made with the tube operated under forward and reverse polarity.

(4) *Instructions, labels, and warnings.* (i) Manufacturers shall provide, or cause to be provided, with each tube to which this section is applicable, appropriate safety instructions, together with instructions for the use of such tube, including the specification of a power source for use with the tube.

(ii) Each enclosure or tube shall have inscribed on or permanently affixed to it, tags or labels, which identify the intended polarity of the terminals and:

(*a*) In the case of tubes designed primarily to demonstrate the heat effect, fluorescence effect, or magnetic effect, a warning that application of power in excess of that specified may result in the production of x-rays in excess of allowable limits; and (*b*) in the case of tubes designed primarily to demonstrate the production of x-radiation, a warning that this device produces x-rays when energized.

(iii) The tag or label required by this paragraph shall be located on the tube or enclosure so as to be readily visible and legible when the product is fully assembled for use.

§ 1020.30 Diagnostic x-ray systems and their major components.

(a) *Applicability.* (1) The provisions of this section are applicable to:

(i) The following components of diagnostic x-ray systems:

(*a*) Tube housing assemblies, x-ray controls, x-ray high-voltage generators, tables, cradles, film changers, vertical cassette holders mounted in a fixed location and cassette holders with front panels, and beam-limiting devices manufactured after August 1, 1974.

(*b*) Fluoroscopic imaging assemblies manufactured after August 1, 1974 and before April 26, 1977.

(*c*) Spot-film devices and image intensifiers manufactured after April 26, 1977.

(*d*) Cephalometric devices manufactured after February 25, 1978.

(*e*) Image receptor support devices for mammographic x-ray systems manufactured after September 5, 1978.

(ii) Diagnostic x-ray systems, except computed tomography x-ray systems, incorporating one or more of such components; however, such x-ray systems shall be required to comply only with those provisions of this section and §§ 1020.31 and 1020.32 which relate to the components certified in accordance with paragraph (c) of this section and installed into the systems.

(iii) Computed tomography x-rays systems manufactured before November 29, 1984.

(2) The following provisions of this section and § 1020.33 are applicable to computed tomography x-ray systems manufactured or remanufactured on and after November 29, 1984:

(i) Section 1020.30(a);

(ii) Section 1020.30(b)(36) (iii)-(v);

(iii) Section 1020.30(b) (58)-(62);

(iv) Section 1020.30(h)(3) (vi)-(viii);

(v) Section 1020.30(n);

(vi) Section 1020.33 (a) and (b);

(vii) Section 1020.33(c)(1) as it affects § 1020.33(c)(2); and

(viii) Section 1020.33(c)(2).

(3) The provisions of this section and § 1020.33 in its entirety, including those provisions in paragraph (a)(2) of this section, are applicable to computed tomography x-ray systems manufactured or remanufactured on and after September 3, 1985.

(b) *Definitions.* As used in this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32, and 1020.33, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Accessible surface" means the external surface of the enclosure or housing provided by the manufacturer.

(2) "Aluminum equivalent" means the thickness of aluminum (type 1100 alloy)[1] affording the same attenuation, under specified conditions, as the material in question.

(3) "Assembler" means any person engaged in the business of assembling, replacing, or installing one or more components into a diagnostic x-ray system or subsystem. The term includes the owner of an x-ray system or his or her employee or agent who assembles components into an x-ray system that is subsequently used to provide professional or commercial services.

(4) "Attenuation block" means a block or stack, having dimensions 20 centimeters by 20 centimeters by 3.8 centimeters, of type 1100 aluminum alloy or aluminum alloy having equivalent attenuation.

(5) "Automatic exposure control" means a device which automatically controls one or more technique factors in order to obtain at a preselected location(s) a required quantity of radiation.

(6) "Beam axis" means a line from the source through the centers of the x-ray fields.

(7) "Beam-limiting device" means a device which provides a means to restrict the dimensions of the x-ray field.

(8) "Coefficient of variation" means the ratio of the standard deviation to

---

[1] The nominal chemical composition of type 1100 aluminum alloy is 99.00 percent minimum aluminum, 0.12 percent copper, as given in "Aluminum Standards and Data" (1969). Copies may be otained from: The Aluminum Association, New York, NY.

the mean value of a population of observations. It is estimated using the following equation:

$$C=\frac{s}{\overline{X}}=\frac{1}{\overline{X}}\left[\sum_{i=1}^{n}\frac{(X_i-\overline{X})^2}{n-1}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

where

s = Estimated standard deviation of the population.
$\overline{X}$ = Mean value of observations in sample.
X_i = ith observation sampled.
n = Number of observations sampled.

(9) "Control panel" means that part of the x-ray control upon which are mounted the switches, knobs, pushbuttons, and other hardware necessary for manually setting the technique factors.

(10) "Cooling curve" means the graphical relationship between heat units stored and cooling time.

(11) "Diagnostic source assembly" means the tube housing assembly with a beam-limiting device attached.

(12) "Diagnostic x-ray system" means an x-ray system designed for irradiation of any part of the human body for the purpose of diagnosis or visualization.

(13) "Equipment" means x-ray equipment.

(14) "Exposure" means the quotient of dQ by dm where dQ is the absolute value of the total charge of the ions of one sign produced in air when all the electrons (negatrons and positrons) liberated by photons in a volume element of air having mass dm are completely stopped in air.

(15) "Field emission equipment" means equipment which uses an x-ray tube in which electron emission from the cathode is due solely to the action of an electric field.

(16) "Fluoroscopic imaging assembly" means a subsystem in which x-ray photons produce a fluoroscopic image. It includes the image receptor(s) such as the image intensifier and spot-film device, electrical interlocks, if any, and structural material providing linkage between the image receptor and diagnostic source assembly.

(17) "General purpose radiographic x-ray system" means any radiographic x-ray system which, by design, is not limited to radiographic examination of specific anatomical regions.

(18) "Half-value layer, HVL" means the thickness of specified material which attenuates the beam of radiation to an extent such that the exposure rate is reduced to one-half of its original value. In this definition the contribution of all scattered radiation, other than any which might be present initially in the beam concerned, is deemed to be excluded.

(19) "Image receptor" means any device, such as a fluorescent screen or radiographic film, which transforms incident x-ray photons either into a visible image or into another form which can be made into a visible image by further transformations. In those cases where means are provided to preselect portions of the image receptor, the term "image receptor" shall mean the preselected portion of the device.

(20) "Leakage radiation" means radiation emanating from the diagnostic source assembly except for:

(i) The useful beam; and

(ii) Radiation produced when the exposure switch or timer is not activated.

(21) "Leakage technique factors" means the technique factors associated with the diagnostic source assembly which are used in measuring leakage radiation. They are defined as follows:

(i) For diagnostic source assemblies intended for capacitor energy storage equipment, the maximum-rated peak tube potential and the maximum-rated number of exposures in an hour for operation at the maximum-rated peak tube potential with the quantity of charge per exposure being 10 millicoulombs (mAs) or the minimum obtainable from the unit, whichever is larger.

(ii) For diagnostic source assemblies intended for field emission equipment rated for pulsed operation, the maximum-rated peak tube potential and the maximum-rated number of x-ray pulses in an hour for operation at the maximum-rated peak tube potential.

(iii) For all other diagnostic source assemblies, the maximum-rated peak tube potential and the maximum-rated continuous tube current for the maximum-rated peak tube potential.

(22) "Light field" means that area of the intersection of the light beam

from the beam-limiting device and one of the set of planes parallel to and including the plane of the image receptor, whose perimeter is the locus of points at which the illumination is one-fourth of the maximum in the intersection.

(23) "Line-voltage regulation" means the difference between the no-load and the load line potentials expressed as a percent of the load line potential; that is,

Percent line-voltage regulation

$$\frac{100(V_n - V_l)}{V_l}$$

where

V_n = No-load line potential and
V_l = Load line potential.

(24) "Maximum line current" means the rms current in the supply line of an x-ray machine operating at its maximum rating.

(25) "Peak tube potential" means the maximum value of the potential difference across the x-ray tube during an exposure.

(26) "Primary protective barrier" means the material, excluding filters, placed in the useful beam to reduce the radiation exposure for protection purposes.

(27) "Rated line voltage" means the range of potentials, in volts, of the supply line specified by the manufacturer at which the x-ray machine is designed to operate.

(28) "Rated output current" means the maximum allowable load current of the x-ray high-voltage generator.

(29) "Rated output voltage" means the allowable peak potential, in volts, at the output terminals of the x-ray high-voltage generator.

(30) "Rating" means the operating limits specified by the manufacturer.

(31) "Recording" means producing a permanent form of an image resulting from x-ray photons (e.g., film, video tape).

(32) "Response time" means the time required for an instrument system to reach 90 percent of its final reading when the radiation-sensitive volume of the instrument system is exposed to a step change in radiation flux from zero sufficient to provide a steady state midscale reading.

(33) "Source" means the focal spot of the x-ray tube.

(34) "Source-image receptor distance (SID)" means the distance from the source to the center of the input surface of the image receptor.

(35) "Stationary equipment" means equipment which is installed in a fixed location.

(36) "Technique factors" means the following conditions of operation:

(i) For capacitor energy storage equipment, peak tube potential in kV and quantity of charge in mAs.

(ii) For field emission equipment rated for pulsed operation, peak tube potential in kV and number of x-ray pulses.

(iii) For CT equipment designed for pulsed operation, peak tube potential in kV, scan time in seconds, and either tube current in mA, x-ray pulse width in seconds, and the number of x-ray pulses per scan, or the product of tube current, x-ray pulse width, and the number of x-ray pulses in mAs.

(iv) For CT equipment not designed for pulsed operation, peak tube potential in kV, and either tube current in mA and scan time in seconds, or the product of tube current and exposure time in mAs and the scan time when the scan time and exposure time are equivalent.

(v) For all other equipment, peak tube potential in kV, and either tube current in mA and exposure time in seconds, or the product of tube current and exposure time in mAs.

(37) "Tube" means an x-ray tube, unless otherwise specified.

(38) "Tube housing assembly" means the tube housing with tube installed. It includes high-voltage and/or filament transformers and other appropriate elements when they are contained within the tube housing.

(39) "Tube rating chart" means the set of curves which specify the rated limits of operation of the tube in terms of the technique factors.

(40) "Useful beam" means the radiation which passes through the tube housing port and the aperture of the beam-limiting device when the exposure switch or timer is activated.

(41) "Variable-aperture beam-limiting device" means a beam-limiting device which has capacity for stepless adjustment of the x-ray field size at a given SID.

(42) "Visible area" means that portion of the input surface of the image receptor over which incident x-ray photons are producing a visible image.

(43) "X-ray control" means a device which controls input power to the x-ray high-voltage generator and/or the x-ray tube. It includes equipment such as timers, phototimers, automatic brightness stabilizers, and similar devices, which control the technique factors of an x-ray exposure.

(44) "X-ray equipment" means an x-ray system, subsystem, or component thereof.

(45) "X-ray field" means that area of the intersection of the useful beam and any one of the set of planes parallel to and including the plane of the image receptor, whose perimeter is the locus of points at which the exposure rate is one-fourth of the maximum in the intersection.

(46) "X-ray high-voltage generator" means a device which transforms electrical energy from the potential supplied by the x-ray control to the tube operating potential. The device may also include means for transforming alternating current to direct current, filament transformers for the x-ray tube(s), high-voltage switches, electrical protective devices, and other appropriate elements.

(47) "X-ray system" means an assemblage of components for the controlled production of x-rays. It includes minimally an x-ray high-voltage generator, an x-ray control, a tube housing assembly, a beam-limiting device, and the necessary supporting structures. Additional components which function with the system are considered integral parts of the system.

(48) "X-ray subsystem" means any combination of two or more components of an x-ray system for which there are requirements specified in this section and §§ 1020.31 and 1020.32.

(49) "X-ray tube" means any electron tube which is designed for the conversion of electrical energy into x-ray energy.

(50) "Radiation therapy simulation system" means a radiographic or fluoroscopic x-ray system intended for localizing the volume to be exposed during radiation therapy and confirming the position and size of the therapeutic irradiation field.

(51) "Spot-film device" means a device intended to transport and/or position a radiographic image receptor between the x-ray source and fluoroscopic image receptor. It includes a device intended to hold a cassette over the input end of an image intensifier for the purpose of making a radiograph.

(52) "Image intensifier" means a device, installed in its housing, which instantaneously converts an x-ray pattern into a corresponding light image of higher energy density.

(53) "Cephalometric device" means a device intended for the radiographic visualization and measurement of the dimensions of the human head.

(54) "Image receptor support" means, for mammographic systems, that part of the system designed to support the image receptor in a horizontal plane during a mammographic examination.

(55) "Cassette holder" means a device, other than a spot-film device, that supports and/or fixes the position of an x-ray film cassette during an x-ray exposure.

(56) "Quick change x-ray tube" means an x-ray tube designed for use in its associated tube housing such that:

(i) The tube cannot be inserted in its housing in a manner that would result in noncompliance of the system with the requirements of paragraphs (k) and (m) of this section, and

(ii) The focal spot position will not cause noncompliance with the provisions of this section or § 1020.31 or § 1020.32, and

(iii) The shielding within the tube housing cannot be displaced, and

(iv) Any removal and subsequent replacement of a beam-limiting device during reloading of the tube in the tube housing will not result in noncompliance of the x-ray system with the applicable field limitation and alignment requirements of §§ 1020.31 and 1020.32.

(57) "Accessory component" means:

(i) A component used with diagnostic x-ray systems, such as a cradle or film changer, that is not necessary for the compliance of the system with applicable provisions of this subchapter but which requires an initial determination of compatibility with the system, or

(ii) A component necessary for compliance of the system with applicable provisions of this subchapter but which may be interchanged with similar compatible components without affecting the system's compliance, such as one of a set of interchangeable beam-limiting devices, or

(iii) A component compatible with all x-ray systems with which it may be used and that does not require compatibility or installation instructions, such as a tabletop cassette holder.

(58) "Computed tomography (CT)" means the production of a tomogram by the acquisition and computer processing of x-ray transmission data.

(59) "Scan" means the complete process of collecting x-ray transmission data for the production of a tomogram. Data may be collected simultaneously during a single scan for the production of one or more tomograms.

(60) "Scan time" means the period of time between the beginning and end of x-ray transmission data accumulation for a single scan.

(61) "Tomogram" means the depiction of the x-ray attenuation properties of a section through a body.

(62) "Dose" means the absorbed dose as defined by the International Commission on Radiation Units and Measurements. The absorbed dose, D, is the quotient of de by dm where de is the mean energy imparted by ionizing radiation to matter of mass dm.

(c) *Certification of components.* Each component subject to this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32, and 1020.33, shall be certified by the manufacturer thereof as a product which meets all applicable standards in accordance with the provisions of § 1010.2 of this chapter. Where a combination of two or more such components is manufactured, marketed, and delivered as a system or subsystem, its certification may be applicable to all components contained therein, if authorized in writing by the Director or Deputy Director of the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, or the Director, Office of Compliance of that Center upon application by the manufacturer. Certification that the product conforms to all applicable standards under this part shall be construed to mean that the component, system, or subsystem can meet the applicable provisions of this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32, and 1020.33, if installed in a diagnostic x-ray system in accordance with instructions.

(d) *Certification by assembler.* An assembler who installs one or more components certified as required by paragraph (c) of this section into an x-ray system shall install certified components that are of the type required by § 1020.31, § 1020.32 or § 1020.33, and, except as provided for in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, shall assemble, install, adjust, and test the certified components in accordance with the instructions of their respective manufacturers. All assemblers who install certified components shall file a report of such assembly as specified in paragraphs (d) (1), (2), and (3) of this section. The report will be construed as the assembler's certification and identification under §§ 1010.2 and 1010.3 of this chapter. All assembler reports must be on a form prescribed by and available from the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Completed reports must be submitted to the Director, the purchaser, and, where applicable, to the State agency responsible for radiation protection within 15 days following completion of the assembly.

(1) *Reporting compliance.* An assembler who installs one or more certified components into an x-ray system or subsystem, having properly followed the assembly instructions provided him by the component manufacturer, shall certify to this by filing a report containing the information prescribed on the form which shall include the following:

(i) The full name and address of the assembler and the date of assembly or installation.

(ii) The name and address of the purchaser and the location and specific identification of the x-ray system or subsystem.

(iii) An affirmation that all instruction manuals and other information as required by paragraph (h) of this section applicable to the newly installed x-ray equipment have been delivered to the purchaser.

(iv) A statement of the type and intended use of the x-ray system or subsystem into which the certified components were assembled or installed, such as "radiographic—stationary general purpose."

(v) A list of all certified components which were assembled or installed by him into the x-ray system or subsystem in accordance with the instructions of the component manufacturers, identifying the components by type, manufacturer, model number, and serial number.

(vi) An affirmation that the certified components listed pursuant to paragraph (d)(2)(v) of this section were assembled according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer(s) of such components.

(vii) An affirmation that all certified components installed in the x-ray system or subsystem were of the type required by § 1020.31, § 1020.32, or § 1020.33.

(viii) An affirmation that a copy of this report will be transmitted to the purchaser and, where applicable, to the State agency responsible for radiation protection, in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph.

(2) *Reporting noncompatibility.* An assembler who installs a certified component into an x-ray system shall file a report indicating noncompatibility if he is unable to follow the instructions of the manufacturer of such certified component, provided other component(s) of the system do not meet the manufacturer's specifications for compatibility as given by the certified component manufacturer pursuant to paragraph (g) of this section and provided there is no commercially available certified component of a similar type which is compatible with the x-ray system. In addition, the component(s) of the system not meeting the specification for compatibility must either be of a type listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section which does not bear a certification label due to date of manufacture, or if it is a component not of the type listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, it must have been purchased as new prior to August 1, 1974. No assembler shall perform any modification of a certified component which will adversely affect the performance of the certified component with respect to the requirements of this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32 and 1020.33. The assembler shall file a report indicating noncompatibility containing information prescribed on the form which shall include the following:

(i) The full name and address of the assembler and the date of assembly or installation.

(ii) The name and address of the purchaser and the location and specific identification of the x-ray system or subsystem.

(iii) An affirmation that all instruction manuals and other information as required by paragraph (h) of this section applicable to the newly installed x-ray equipment have been delivered to the purchaser.

(iv) A statement of the type or intended use of the x-ray system or subsystem into which the certified components were assembled or installed, such as "radiographic—stationary general purpose."

(v) A list of all certified component(s) which were assembled or installed by him into the x-ray system or subsystem and which could not be assembled, installed, adjusted, and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions due to reasons specified in this paragraph (this paragraph (d)(2)), identifying the components by type, manufacturer, model number, and serial number.

(vi) An affirmation that the certified component(s) listed pursuant to paragraph (d)(2)(v) of this section could not be assembled, installed, adjusted, and tested in accordance with the installation instructions of their respective manufacturers due to reasons specified in this paragraph (this paragraph (d)(2)), and that no certified component was modified so as to adversely affect its performance with respect to the requirements of this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32 and 1020.33.

(vii) For each certified component listed pursuant to paragraph (d)(2)(v) of this section, a full and complete explanation of why the manufacturer's installation instructions could not be followed in performing the assembly, including a listing by type, manufacturer, and model number of the incompatible component(s) already in the system, and either evidence of its date of purchase as new if it is not a type of component listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, or if it is a type of component listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section, a statement that it did not bear a certification label due to its date of manufacture.

(viii) An affirmation that all certified components installed in the x-ray system or subsystem were of the type required by § 1020.31, § 1020.32 or 1020.33.

(ix) An affirmation that a copy of this report will be transmitted to the purchaser and, where applicable, to the State agency responsible for radiation protection, in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph.

(3) *Accessory components.* The following requirements apply to the assembly of accessory certified components and x-ray systems that do not require assembly by the dealer or purchaser.

(i) The initial installation or assembly of interchangeable and removable accessory certified components within a diagnostic x-ray system following delivery at the user's facility shall be reported as required by paragraphs (d)(1) and (2) of this section. No report of assembly is required for subsequent use of such components.

(ii) Assembler certification as specified in paragraphs (d)(1) and (2) of this section is not required for certified components or systems that have been described by their manufacturer in the information furnished the user as not requiring assembler certification. Prior to stating that assembler certification is not required for a component or system, the manufacturer of the item must have reported to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, in the report required by § 1002.10 of this chapter, that compl ance with this section and §§ 1020.3 1020.32 and 1020.33 is assured by th existence of the following conditions:

(*a*) Certification of compliance b the manufacturer is not continger upon acts of assembly or installatio by the dealer or purchaser.

(*b*) Preparation for use by either th dealer or user does not require adher ence to the manufacturer's instruc tions to ensure compliance.

(*c*) Interconnection or use, or both of the component or systems does no require compatibility specifications.

(e) *Identification of x-ray compo nents.* In addition to the identificatior requirements specified in § 1010.3 o this chapter, manufacturers of compo nents subject to this section anc §§ 1020.31, 1020.32 and 1020.33, except high-voltage generators containec within tube housings and beam-limiting devices which are integral parts o tube housings, shall permanently inscribe or affix thereon the model number and serial number of the product, so as to be legible and accessible to view. Where the certification of a system or subsystem, consisting of two or more components, has been authorized pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section, a single inscription, tag, or label bearing such information may be used to identify the product.

(1) *Tube housing assemblies.* In a similar manner, manufacturers of tube housing assemblies shall also inscribe or affix thereon the name of the manufacturer, model number, and serial number of the x-ray tube which the tube housing assembly incorporates.

(2) *Replacement of tubes.* Except as specified in paragraph (e)(3) of this section, the replacement of an x-ray tube in a previously manufactured tube-housing assembly certified pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section constitutes manufacture of a new tube housing assembly, and the manufacturer is subject to the provisions of paragraph (e)(1) of this section. The manufacturer shall remove, cover, or deface any previously affixed inscriptions, tags, or labels that are no longer applicable.

(3) *Quick-change x-ray tubes.* The requirements of paragraph (e)(2) of this section shall not apply to tube-housing

assemblies designed and designated by their original manufacturer to contain quick-change x-ray tubes. The manufacturer of such x-ray tubes shall include with each replacement tube a label with the tube manufacturer's name, the model, and serial number of the x-ray tube. The manufacturer of the tube shall instruct the assembler who installs the new tube to attach the label to the tube-housing assembly and to remove the cover or deface the previously affixed inscriptions, tags, or labels that are described by the tube manufacturer as no longer applicable.

(f) *Limits of responsibility*—(1) *Manufacturer.* The manufacturer of a certified component installed or assembled into an x-ray system or subsystem by another person shall not be liable for the noncompliance of such component which is attributable solely to the improper installation or assembly of the component into the system, but shall be held responsible for noncompliance if improper assembly was a result of inadequate instructions provided by such component manufacturer.

(2) *Assembler.* The person who certified as to the assembly of an x-ray system or subsystem shall not be liable for noncompliance of a certified component if such assembly is in accordance with the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the component, but shall be held responsible for noncompliance of a component which is attributable solely to improper assembly or installation into the system or subsystem.

(g) *Information to be provided to assemblers.* Manufacturers of components listed in paragraph (a)(1) of this section shall provide to assemblers subject to paragraph (d) of this section and, upon request, to others at a cost not to exceed the cost of publication and distribution, instructions for assembly, installation, adjustment, and testing of such components adequate to assure that the products will comply with applicable provisions of this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32, and 1020.33, when assembled, installed, adjusted, and tested as directed. Such instructions shall include specifications of other components compatible with that to be installed when compliance of the system or subsystem depends on their compatibility. Such specifications may describe pertinent physical characteristics of the components and/or may list by manufacturer model number the components which are compatible.

(h) *Information to be provided for users.* Manufacturers of x-ray equipment shall provide for purchasers and, upon request, to others at a cost not to exceed the cost of publication and distribution, manuals or instruction sheets which shall include the following technical and safety information:

(1) *All x-ray equipment.* For x-ray equipment to which this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32, and 1020.33 are applicable, there shall be provided:

(i) Adequate instructions concerning any radiological safety procedures and precautions which may be necessary because of unique features of the equipment and

(ii) A schedule of the maintenance necessary to keep the equipment in compliance with this section and §§ 1020.31, 1020.32, and 1020.33.

(2) *Tube housing assemblies.* For each tube housing assembly, there shall be provided:

(i) Statements of the leakage technique factors for all combinations of tube housing assemblies and beam-limiting devices for which the tube housing assembly manufacturer states compatibility, the minimum filtration permanently in the useful beam expressed as millimeters of aluminum equivalent, and the peak tube potential at which the aluminum equivalent was obtained;

(ii) Cooling curves for the anode and tube housing; and

(iii) Tube rating charts.

If the tube is designed to operate from different types of x-ray high-voltage generators (such as single-phase self-rectified, single-phase half-wave rectified, single-phase full-wave rectified, three-phase six pulse, three-phase 12 pulse, constant potential, capacitor energy storage) or under modes of operation such as alternate focal spot sizes or speeds of anode rotation which affect its rating, specific identification of the difference in ratings shall be noted.

(3) *X-ray controls and generators.* For the x-ray control and associated x-ray high-voltage generator, there shall be provided:

(i) A statement of the rated line voltage and the range of line-voltage regulation for operation at maximum line current;

(ii) A statement of the maximum line current of the x-ray system based on the maximum input voltage and current characteristics of the tube housing assembly compatible with rated output voltage and rated output current characteristics of the x-ray control and associated high-voltage generator. If the rated input voltage and current characteristics of the tube housing assembly are not known by the manufacturer of the x-ray control and associated high-voltage generator, he shall provide necessary information to allow the purchaser to determine the maximum line current for his particular tube housing assembly(s);

(iii) A statement of the technique factors that constitute the maximum line current condition described in paragraph (h)(3)(ii) of this section;

(iv) In the case of battery-powered generators, a specification of the minimum state of charge necessary for proper operation;

(v) Generator rating and duty cycle;

(vi) A statement of the maximum deviation from the preindication given by labeled technique factor control settings or indicators during any radiographic or CT exposure where the equipment is connected to a power supply as described in accordance with this paragraph. In the case of fixed technique factors, the maximum deviation from the nominal fixed value of each factor shall be stated;

(vii) A statement of the maximum deviation from the continuous indication of x-ray tube potential and current during any fluoroscopic exposure when the equipment is connected to a power supply as described in accordance with this paragraph; and

(viii) A statement describing the measurement criteria for all technique factors used in paragraphs (h)(3) (iii), (vi), and (vii) of this section; for example, the beginning and end points of exposure time measured with respect
to a certain percentage of the volta
waveform.

(4) *Beam-limiting device.* For ea
variable-aperture beam-limiti
device, there shall be provided:

(i) Leakage technique factors for
combinations of tube housing asse
blies and beam-limiting devices f
which the beam-limiting device man
facturer states compatibility; and

(ii) A statement including the mi
mum aluminum equivalent of th
part of the device through which t
useful beam passes and including t
x-ray tube potential at which the al
minum equivalent was obtained. Wh
two or more filters are provided
part of the device, the statement sh
include the aluminum equivalent
each filter.

(i) [Reserved]

(j) *Warning label.* The control pan
containing the main power swit
shall bear the warning statement, le
ble and accessible to view: "WAR
ING: This x-ray unit may be dange
ous to patient and operator unless sa
exposure factors and operating i
structions are observed."

(k) *Leakage radiation from the dia
nostic source assembly.* The leaka
radiation from the diagnostic sour
assembly measured at a distance of
meter in any direction from the sour
shall not exceed 100 milliroentgens
1 hour when the x-ray tube is opera
ed at the leakage technique factors.
the maximum rated peak tube pote
tial of the tube housing assembly
greater than the maximum rated pea
tube potential for the diagnost
source assembly, positive means sha
be provided to limit the maximum
ray tube potential to that of the dia
nostic source assembly. Complian
shall be determined by measuremen
averaged over an area of 100 squa
centimeters with no linear dimensi
greater than 20 centimeters.

(l) *Radiation from components othe
than the diagnostic source assembl*
The radiation emitted by a componen
other than the diagnostic source a
sembly shall not exceed 2 milliroent
gens in 1 hour at 5 centimeters fro
any accessible surface of the compo
nent when it is operated in an assem
bled x-ray system under any cond
tions for which it was designed. Com

pliance shall be determined by measurements averaged over an area of 100 square centimeters with no linear dimension greater than 20 centimeters.

(m) *Beam quality*—(1) *Half-value layer.* The half-value layer (HVL) of the useful beam for a given x-ray tube potential shall not be less than the appropriate value shown in Table I under "Specified dental systems," for any dental x-ray system designed for use with intraoral image receptors and manufactured after December 1, 1980; and under "Other x-ray systems," for all other x-ray systems subject to this section. If it is necessary to determine such half-value layer at an x-ray tube potential which is not listed in Table I, linear interpolation or extrapolation may be made. Positive means [2] shall be provided to insure that at least the minimum filtration needed to achieve the above beam quality requirements is in the useful beam during each exposure.

TABLE I

X-ray tube voltage (kilovolt peak)		Minimum HVL (mm of Al)	
Designed operating range	Measured operating potential	Specified dental systems	Other X-ray systems
Below 50	30	1.5	0.3
	40	1.5	0.4
	49	1.5	0.5
50 to 70	50	1.5	1.2
	60	1.5	1.3
	70	1.5	1.5
Above 70	71	2.1	2.1
	80	2.3	2.3
	90	2.5	2.5
	100	2.7	2.7
	110	3.0	3.0
	120	3.2	3.2
	130	3.5	3.5
	140	3.8	3.8
	150	4.1	4.1

(2) *Measuring compliance.* For capacitor energy storage equipment, compliance shall be determined with the maximum quantity of charge per exposure.

(n) *Aluminum equivalent of material between patient and image receptor.* Except when used in a CT x-ray system, the aluminum equivalent of each of the items listed in Table II, which are used between the patient and image receptor may not exceed the indicated limits. Compliance shall be determined by x-ray measurements made at a potential of 100 kilovolts peak and with an x-ray beam that has a half-value layer of 2.7 millimeters of aluminum. This requirement applies to front panel(s) of cassette holders and film changers provided by the manufacturer for patient support or for prevention of foreign object intrusions. It does not apply to screens and their associated mechanical support panels or grids.

TABLE II

Item	Aluminum equivalent (millimeters)
Front panel(s) of cassette holder (total of all)	1.0
Front panel(s) of film changer (total of all)	1.0
Stationary tabletop	1.0
Movable tabletop (including stationary subtop)	1.5
Cradle	2.0
Radiation therapy simulator tabletop	5.0

(o) *Battery charge indicator.* On battery-powered generators, visual means shall be provided on the control panel to indicate whether the battery is in a state of charge adequate for proper operation.

(p) *Assembly and reassembly of diagnostic x-ray system.* The following provisions apply to the assembly and reassembly of diagnostic x-ray components specified in paragraph (a)(1) of this section into diagnostic x-ray systems.

(1) *Assembly after August 1, 1974.* Except as provided in paragraph (p)(2)of this section, specified components which are assembled after August 1, 1974 into those x-ray systems which contain, or will contain upon completion of the assembly, one or more components certified pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section, may only be those which have themselves been so certified. For example, after August 1, 1974:

(i) An assembler who installs a new, complete diagnostic x-ray system may not assemble a system consisting of both certified and uncertified components.

---

[2] In the case of a system which is to be operated with more than on thickness of filtration, this requirement can be met by a filter interlock with the kilovoltage selector which will prevent x-ray emission if the minimum required filtration is not in place.

(ii) An assembler who installs components into an existing diagnostic x-ray system containing one or more certified components prior to such installation may only install components which have been certified by the component manufacturer(s), regardless of whether certified components themselves are replaced.

(iii) An assembler who installs a group of components into an existing diagnostic x-ray system containing no certified components prior to the assembly may not install a combination of certified and uncertified components but must install either all uncertified components or all certified components into such a system.

(iv) An assembler may reassemble a previously existing (used) system for resale whether or not the system is composed of all uncertified or a combination of certified and uncertified components. However, any components added to or installed in place of original components in an existing system composed of one or more certified components must be certified.

(2) *Purchase prior to August 1, 1974.* The provisions of paragraph (p)(1) of this section do not apply to the assembly of specified components, provided:

(i) All of the specified components which are assembled into the x-ray system after August 1, 1974, were purchased prior to that date and

(ii) The report filed pursuant to paragraph (d) of this section includes adequate evidence that all the specified components assembled were purchased prior to August 1, 1974. A copy of a notarized bill of sale or other notarized contract for purchase clearly establishing the date of purchase of each of the specified components will be considered adequate evidence.

(3)-(4) [Reserved]

(5) *Repair of x-ray systems.* The following requirements govern the assembly and reassembly of diagnostic x-ray components during repair of diagnostic x-ray components and systems:

(i) The removal of a component, whether certified or uncertified, from an x-ray system for the purpose of repair and the subsequent reinstallation of the component into the sys
following repair are not prohibited
this section. Those performing re
of certified components are not
quired to recertify the repaired c
ponent under paragraph (c) of
section except for reloaded previou
certified x-ray tube housing ass
blies. A report pursuant to paragra
(d) of this section need not be file
report the reinstallation of a certi
component into an x-ray system
lowing repair of the component
system.

(ii) The installation into an x-
system of components specified
paragraph (a) of this section on an
change basis when an identical mo
is installed in place of a malfuncti
ing component shall not be subject
paragraph (p)(1) of this section
affect the status of the x-ray syst
under that paragraph. A report pur
ant to paragraph (d) of this secti
must be filed to report installation
certified components.

(iii) Components installed tempor
ily in an x-ray system in place of ce
fied components removed temporar
for repair must be certified. The te
porary installation of such certifi
components is not subject to
report required in paragraph (d)
this section, provided the temporar
installed component is identified b
tag or label bearing the informati
set forth in paragraph (p)(5)(iii) (*a*)
(*b*) of this section. The replacement
the temporarily installed compone
by a permanently installed certifi
component must be reported in
cordance with paragraph (d) of th
section.

(*a*) Temporarily installed compati
component. A temporarily install
compatible component must bear t
following statement and information

TEMPORARILY INSTALLED COMPATIBLE COMPONENT

This certified component has been asse
bled, installed, adjusted, and tested by
according to the instructions provided
the manufacturer.

Signature
Company Name
Street Address, P.O. Box
City, State, Zip Code
Date of Installation

(*b*) Temporarily installed noncompatible component. A temporarily installed noncompatible component must bear the following statement and information:

TEMPORARILY INSTALLED NONCOMPATIBLE COMPONENT

This certified component has been assembled or installed by me, but could not be assembled, installed, adjusted, and tested according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer because other already existing components of the system do not meet the compatibility specifications of the certified component being installed, and there are no commercially available certified components of a similar type that are compatible with the system.

Signature
Company Name
Street Address, P.O. Box
City, State, Zip Code
Date of Installation

(6) *Accessory components.* The use with an x-ray system of accessory components specified in paragraph (a) of this section that are not permanently installed in the x-ray system, which are not essential to the performance of the system in compliance with the requirements of this section and §§ 1020.31 1020.32, and 1020.33, and which are subject to the assembler reporting exceptions of paragraph (d)(3) of this section are not subject to paragraph (p)(1) of this section and do not affect the status of the x-ray system under that paragraph.

(q) *Modification of certified diagnostic x-ray components and systems.* (1) Diagnostic x-ray components and systems certified in accordance with § 1010.2 of this chapter shall not be modified such that the component or system fails to comply with any applicable provision of this chapter unless a variance in accordance with § 1010.4 of this chapter or an exemption under section 358(a)(5) or 360B(b) of the Public Health Service Act has been granted.

(2) The owner of a diagnostic x-ray system who uses the system in a professional or commercial capacity may modify the system, provided the modification does not result in the failure of the system or component to comply with the applicable requirements of this section or of § 1020.31 or § 1020.32, or § 1020.33. The owner who causes such modification need not submit the reports required by Subpart B of Part 1002 of this chapter, provided the owner records the date and the details of the modification, and provided the modification of the x-ray system does not result in a failure to comply with § 1020.31, § 1020.32, or § 1020.33.

[38 FR 28632, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 39 FR 13880, Apr. 18, 1974; 42 FR 10985, Feb. 25, 1977; 42 FR 44232, Sept. 2, 1977; 44 FR 29654, May 22, 1979; 44 FR 49671, Aug. 24, 1979; 44 FR 68824, Nov. 30, 1979; 45 FR 27928, Apr. 25, 1980; 47 FR 50215, Nov. 5, 1982; 49 FR 34711, Aug. 31, 1984; 50 FR 15544, Apr. 19, 1985; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1020.31 Radiographic equipment.

The provisions of this section apply to equipment for the recording of images, except equipment involving use of an image intensifier or computed tomography x-ray systems manufactured on or after November 29, 1984.

(a) *Control and indication of technique factors*—(1) *Visual indication.* The technique factors to be used during an exposure shall be indicated before the exposure begins, except when automatic exposure controls are used, in which case the technique factors which are set prior to the exposure shall be indicated. On equipment having fixed technique factors, this requirement may be met by permanent markings. Indication of technique factors shall be visible from the operator's position except in the case of spot films made by the fluoroscopist.

(2) *Timers.* Means shall be provided to terminate the exposure at a preset time interval, a preset product of current and time, a preset number of pulses, or a preset radiation exposure to the image receptor.

(i) Except during serial radiography, the operator shall be able to terminate the exposure at any time during an exposure of greater than one-half second. Termination of exposure shall cause automatic resetting of the timer to its initial setting or to zero. It shall not be possible to make an exposure when the timer is set to a zero or off position if either position is provided.

(ii) During serial radiography, the operator shall be able to terminate the x-ray exposure(s) at any time, but means may be provided to permit completion of any single exposure of the series in process.

(3) *Automatic exposure controls.* When an automatic exposure control is provided:

(i) Indication shall be made on the control panel when this mode of operation is selected;

(ii) When the x-ray tube potential is equal to or greater than 50 kVp, the minimum exposure time for field emission equipment rated for pulsed operation shall be equal to or less than a time interval equivalent to two pulses and the minimum exposure time for all other equipment shall be equal to or less than 1/60 second or a time interval required to deliver 5 mAs, whichever is greater;

(iii) Either the product of peak x-ray tube potential, current, and exposure time shall be limited to not more than 60 kWs per exposure or the product of x-ray tube current and exposure time shall be limited to not more than 600 mAs per exposure except when the x-ray tube potential is less than 50 kVp in which case the product of x-ray tube current and exposure time shall be limited to not more than 2000 mAs per exposure; and

(iv) A visible signal shall indicate when an exposure has been terminated at the limits described in paragraph (a)(3)(iii) of this section, and manual resetting shall be required before further automatically timed exposures can be made.

(4) *Accuracy.* Deviation of technique factors from indicated values shall not exceed the limits given in the information provided in accordance with § 1020.30(h)(3).

(b) *Reproducibility.* The following requirements shall apply when the equipment is operated on an adequate power supply as specified by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of § 1020.30(h)(3):

(1) *Coefficient of variation.* For any specific combination of selected technique factors, the estimated coefficient of variation of radiation exposures shall be no greater than 0.05.

(2) *Measuring compliance.* Determination of compliance shall be based o 10 consecutive measurements take within a time period of 1 hour. Equipment manufactured after Septembe 5, 1978 shall be subject to the additional requirement that all variabl controls for technique factors shall b adjusted to alternate settings an reset to the test setting after eac measurement. The percent line-voltage regulation shall be determined fo each measurement. All values for percent line-voltage regulation shall b within ±1 of the mean value for al measurements. For equipment having automatic exposure controls, compliance shall be determined with a sufficient thickness of attenuating material in the useful beam such that the technique factors can be adjusted to provide individual exposures of a minimum of 12 pulses on field emission equipment rated for pulsed operation or no less than one-tenth second per exposure on all other equipment.

(c) *Linearity.* The following requirement applies when the equipment allows a choice of x-ray tube current settings and is operated on a power supply as specified by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of § 1020.30(h)(3) for any fixed x-ray tube potential within the range of 40 percent to 100 percent of the maximum rated.

(1) *Average exposure ratios.* The average ratios of exposure to the indicated milliampere-seconds product (mR/mAs) obtained at any two consecutive tube current settings shall not differ by more than 0.10 times their sum. This is:

$X_1 - X_2 | \leqq 0.10 (X_1 + X_2)$; where X_1 and X_2 are the average mR/mAs values obtained at each of two consecutive tube current settings.

(2) *Measuring compliance.* Determination of compliance will be based on 10 exposures at each of two consecutive x-ray tube current settings made within 1 hour. The percent line-voltage regulation shall be determined for each measurement. All values for percent line-voltage regulation at any one combination of technique factors shall be within ±1 of the mean value for all measurements at these technique fac-

tors. Where tube current selection is continuous, X_1 and X_2 shall be obtained at current settings differing by no greater than a factor of 2.

(d) *Field limitation and alignment for mobile and stationary general purpose x-ray systems.* Except when spot-film devices or special attachments for mammography are in service, mobile and stationary general purpose radiographic x-ray systems shall meet the following requirements:

(1) *Variable x-ray field limitation.* There shall be provided a means for stepless adjustment of the size of the x-ray field. The minimum field size at an SID of 100 centimeters shall be equal to or less than 5 by 5 centimeters.

(2) *Visual definition.* (i) Means shall be provided for visually defining the perimeter of the x-ray field. The total misalignment of the edges of the visually defined field with the respective edges of the x-ray field along either the length or width of the visually defined field shall not exceed 2 percent of the distance from the source to the center of the visually defined field when the surface upon which it appears is perpendicular to the axis of the x-ray beam.

(ii) When a light localizer is used to define the x-ray field, it shall provide an average illumination of not less than 160 lux (15 footcandles) at 100 centimeters or at the maximum SID, whichever is less. The average illumination shall be based upon measurements made in the approximate center of each quadrant of the light field. Radiation therapy simulation systems are exempt from this requirement.

(iii) The edge of the light field at 100 centimeters or at the maximum SID, whichever is less, shall have a contrast ratio, corrected for ambient lighting, of not less than 4 in the case of beam-limiting devices designed for use on stationary equipment, and a contrast ratio of not less than 3 in the case of beam-limiting devices designed for use on mobile equipment. The contrast ratio is defined as I_1/I_2 where I_1 is the illumination 3 millimeters from the edge of the light field toward the center of the field; and I_2 is the illumination 3 millimeters from the edge of the light field away from the center of the field. Compliance shall be determined with a measuring aperture of 1 millimeter.

(e) *Field limitation and alignment on stationary general purpose x-ray equipment.* Except when spot-film devices or special attachments for mammography are in service, stationary general purpose x-ray systems shall meet the following requirements in addition to those prescribed in paragraph (d) of this section:

(1) *Field indication and alignment.* (i) Means shall be provided to indicate when the axis of the x-ray beam is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor, to align the center of the x-ray field with respect to the center of the image receptor to within 2 percent of the SID, and to indicate the SID to within 2 percent;

(ii) The beam-limiting device shall numerically indicate the field size in the plane of the image receptor to which it is adjusted;

(iii) Indication of field size dimensions and SID's shall be specified in inches and/or centimeters, and shall be such that aperture adjustments result in x-ray field dimensions in the plane of the image receptor which correspond to those indicated by the beam-limiting device to within 2 percent of the SID when the beam axis is indicated to be perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor; and

(iv) Compliance measurements will be made at discrete SID's and image receptor dimensions in common clinical use (such as SID's of 36, 40, 48, and 72 inches and nominal image receptor dimensions of 5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, and 17 inches) or at any other specific dimensions at which the beam-limiting device or its associated diagnostic x-ray system is uniquely designed to operate.

(2) *Positive beam limitation (PBL).* The requirements of this paragraph shall apply to stationary, general-purpose radiographic systems which contain a tube housing assembly, an x-ray control, and, for those systems so equipped, a table, all certified in accordance with § 1020.30(c). Means shall be provided for PBL such that x-ray production is prevented when:

(i) Either the length or width of the x-ray field in the plane of the image receptor differs from the corresponding image receptor dimension by more than 3 percent of the SID; or

(ii) The sum of the length and width differences as stated in paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section without regard to sign exceeds 4 percent of the SID.

(3) *Conditions for positive beam limitation.* PBL shall be provided whenever all the following conditions are met:

(i) The image receptor is inserted into a permanently mounted cassette holder;

(ii) The image receptor length and width are each less than 50 centimeters;

(iii) The x-ray beam axis is within ±3 degrees of vertical and the SID is 90 centimeters to 130 centimeters inclusive; or the x-ray beam axis is within ±3 degrees of horizontal and the SID is 90 centimeters to 205 centimeters inclusive;

(iv) The x-ray beam axis is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor to within ±3 degrees; and

(v) Neither tomographic nor stereoscopic radiography is being performed.

(4) *Measuring compliance.* Compliance with the requirements of paragraph (e)(2) of this section shall be determined when the equipment indicates that the beam axis is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor and the provisions of paragraph (e)(3) of this section are met. Compliance shall be determined no sooner than 5 seconds after insertion of the image receptor.

(5) *Operator initiated undersizing.* The PBL system shall be capable of operation, at the discretion of the operator, such that the size of the field may be made smaller than the size of the image receptor through stepless adjustment of the field size. The minimum field size at an SID of 100 centimeters shall be equal to or less than 5 by 5 centimeters. Return to PBL function as described in paragraph (e)(2) of this section shall occur automatically upon any change of image receptor size or SID.

(6) *Override of positive beam limitation.* A capability may be provided for overriding PBL in case of system failure and for servicing the system. This override may be for all SID's and image receptor sizes. A key shall be required for any override capability tha is accessible to the operator. It ma not be possible to remove the ke while the PBL is overridden. Eac such key switch or key shall be clearl and durably labeled as follows:

FOR X-RAY FIELD LIMITATION SYSTEM
FAILURE

The override capability is considere accessible to the operator if it is refe enced in the operator's manual or i other material intended for the oper tor or if its location is such that th operator would consider it part of th operational controls.

(f) *Field limitation on radiograph x-ray equipment other than gener purpose radiographic systems*—(*Equipment for use with intraor image receptors.* Radiographic equi ment designed for use with an i traoral image receptor shall be provi ed with means to limit the x-ray bea such that:

(i) If the minimum source-to-sk distance (SSD) is 18 centimeters more, the x-ray field at the minimu SSD shall be containable in a circ having a diameter of no more than centimeters; and

(ii) If the minimum SSD is less tha 18 centimeters, the x-ray field at t minimum SSD shall be containable a circle having a diameter of no mo than 6 centimeters.

(2) *X-ray systems designed for o image receptor size.* Radiograph equipment designed for only o image receptor size at a fixed S shall be provided with means to lim the field at the plane of the image ceptor to dimensions no greater th those of the image receptor, and align the center of the x-ray field wi the center of the image receptor within 2 percent of the SID or shall provided with means to both size a align the x-ray field such that the ray field at the plane of the image ceptor does not extend beyond a edge of the image receptor.

(3) *Systems designed for or provid with special attachments for mamm raphy.* Radiographic systems design only for mammography and gene purpose radiographic systems, wh

special attachments for mammography are in service, shall be provided with means to limit the useful beam such that the x-ray field at the plane of the image receptor does not extend beyond any edge of the image receptor at any designated SID except the edge of the image receptor designed to be adjacent to the chest wall where the x-ray field may not extend beyond this edge by more than 2 percent of the SID. This requirement can be met with a system which performs as prescribed in paragraphs (f)(4) (i), (ii), and (iii) of this section. When the beam-limiting device and image receptor support device are designed to be used to immoblize the breast during a mammographic procedure and the SID may vary, the SID indication specified in paragraphs (f)(4) (ii) and (iii) of this section shall be the maximum SID for which the beam-limiting device or aperture is designed. In addition, each image receptor support intended for installation on a system designed only for mammography shall have clear and permanent markings to indicate the maximum image receptor size for which it is designed.

(4) *Other x-ray systems.* Radiographic systems not specifically covered in paragraphs (d), (e), (f) (2) and (3), and (g) of this section and systems covered in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, which also are designed for use with extraoral image receptors and when used with an extraoral image receptor, shall be provided with means to limit the x-ray field in the plane of the image receptor so that such field does not exceed each dimension of the image receptor by more than 2 percent of the SID, when the axis of the x-ray beam is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor. In addition, means shall be provided to align the center of the x-ray field with the center of the image receptor to within 2 percent of the SID,or means shall be provided to both size and align the x-ray field such that the x-ray field at the plane of the image receptor does not extend beyond any edge of the image receptor. These requirements may be met with:

(i) A system which performs in accordance with paragraphs (d) and (e)(1) of this section; or, when alignment means are also provided, may be met with either:

(ii) An assortment of removable, fixed-aperture, beam-limiting devices sufficient to meet the requirement for each combination of image receptor size and SID for which the unit is designed. Each such device shall have clear and permanent markings to indicate the image receptor size and SID for which it is designed; or

(iii) A beam-limiting device having multiple fixed apertures sufficient to meet the requirement for each combination of image receptor size and SID for which the unit is designed. Permanent, clearly legible markings shall indicate the image receptor size and SID for which each aperture is designed and shall indicate which aperture is in position for use.

(g) *Field limitation and alignment for spot-film devices.* The following requirements shall apply to spot-film devices, except when the spot-film device is provided for use with a radiation therapy simulation system:

(1) Means shall be provided between the source and the patient for adjustment of the x-ray field size in the plane of the film to the size of that portion of the film which has been selected on the spot-film selector. Such adjustment shall be accomplished automatically when the x-ray field size in the plane of the film is greater than the selected portion of the film. If the x-ray field size is less than the size of the selected portion of the film, the means for adjustment of the field size shall be only at the operator's option.

(2) The total misalignment of the edges of the x-ray field with the respective edges of the selected portion of the image receptor along the length or width dimensions of the x-ray field in the plane of the image receptor shall not exceed 3 percent of the SID when adjusted for full coverage of the selected portion of the image receptor. The sum without regard to sign of the misalignment along any two orthogonal dimensions shall not exceed 4 percent of the SID. On spot-film devices manufactured after February 25, 1978, if the angle between the plane of the image receptor and beam axis is variable, means shall be provided to indicate when the axis of the x-ray beam

is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor, and compliance shall be determined with the beam axis indicated to be perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor.

(3) It shall be possible to adjust the x-ray field size in the plane of the film to a size smaller than the selected portion of the film. The minimum field size, at the greatest SID, shall be equal to or less than 5 by 5 centimeters.

(4) The center of the x-ray field in the plane of the film shall be aligned with the center of the selected portion of the film to within 2 percent of the SID.

(5) A capability may be provided for overriding the automatic x-ray field size adjustment in case of system failure. If it is so provided, a signal visible at the fluoroscopist's position shall indicate whenever the automatic x-ray field size adjustment override is engaged. Each such system failure override switch shall be clearly labeled as follows:

FOR X-RAY FIELD LIMITATION SYSTEM FAILURE

(h) *Source-skin distance.* (1) X-ray systems designed for use with an intraoral image receptor shall be provided with means to limit source-to-skin distance to not less than:

(i) Eighteen centimeters if operable above 50 kilovolts peak, or

(ii) Ten centimeters if not operable above 50 kilovolts peak.

(2) Mobile or portable x-ray systems other than dental shall be provided with means to limit source-to-skin distance to not less than 30 centimeters.

(i) *Beam-on indicators.* The x-ray control shall provide visual indication whenever x-rays are produced. In addition, a signal audible to the operator shall indicate that the exposure has terminated.

(j) *Multiple tubes.* Where two or more radiographic tubes are controlled by one exposure switch, the tube or tubes which have been selected shall be clearly indicated prior to initiation of the exposure. This indication shall be both on the x-ray control and at or near the tube housing assembly which has been selected.

(k) *Standby radiation from capacitor energy storage equipment.* Radiation emitted from the x-ray tube when the exposure switch or timer is not activated shall not exceed a rate of 2 milliroentgens per hour at 5 centimeters from any accessible surface of the diagnostic source assembly, with the beam-limiting device fully open. Compliance shall be determined by measurements averaged over an area of 100 square centimeters with no linear dimension greater than 20 centimeters. The response time of the (radiation measuring) instrument system shall be no less than 3 and no greater than 20 seconds.

(l) *Transmission limit for image receptor supporting devices used for mammography.* For x-ray systems manufactured after September 5, 1978 which are designed only for mammography, the transmission of the primary beam through any image receptor support provided with the system shall be limited such that the exposure 5 centimeters from any accessible surface beyond the plane of the image receptor supporting device does not exceed 0.1 milliroentgen for each activation of the tube. Exposure shall be measured with the system operated at the minimum SID for which it is designed. Compliance shall be determined at the maximum rated peak tube potential for the system and at the maximum rated product of the tube current and exposure time (mAs for that peak tube potential. Compliance shall be determined by measurements averaged over an area of 100 square centimeters with no linear dimension greater than 20 centimeters.

[38 FR 28632, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended a 39 FR 36008, Oct. 7, 1974; 42 FR 10986, Feb 25, 1977; 42 FR 44232, Sept. 2, 1977; 42 FR 58169, Nov. 8, 1977; 44 FR 29654, May 22 1979; 45 FR 27928, Apr. 25, 1980; 47 FR 50215, Nov. 5, 1982; 49 FR 34712, Aug. 31 1984]

§ 1020.32 Fluoroscopic equipment.

The provisions of this section apply to equipment for fluoroscopy and for the recording of images through an image intensifier except computed tomography x-ray systems manufactured on or after November 29, 1984.

(a) *Primary protective barrier*—(1) *Limitation of useful beam.* The fluoroscopic imaging assembly shall be provided with a primary protective barrier which intercepts the entire cross section of the useful beam at any SID. The x-ray tube used for fluoroscopy shall not produce x-rays unless the barrier is in position to intercept the entire useful beam. The exposure rate due to transmission through the barrier with the attenuation block in the useful beam combined with radiation form the image intensifier, if provided, shall not exceed 2 milliroentgens per hour at 10 centimeters from any accessible surface of the fluoroscopic imaging assembly beyond the plane of the image receptor for each roentgen per minute of entrance exposure rate. Radiation therapy simulation systems shall be exempt from this requirement provided the systems are intended only for remote control operation and the manufacturer sets forth instructions for assemblers with respect to control location as part of the information required in § 1020.30(g). Additionally, the manufacturer shall provide to users, pursuant to § 1020.30(h)(1)(i), precautions concerning the importance of remote control operation.

(2) *Measuring compliance.* The entrance exposure rate shall be measured in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section. The exposure rate due to transmission through the primary barrier combined with radiation from the image intensifier shall be determined by measurements averaged over an area of 100 square centimeters with no linear dimension greater than 20 centimeters. If the source is below the tabletop, the measurement shall be made with the input surface of the fluoroscopic imaging assembly positioned 30 centimeters above the tabletop. If the source is above the tabletop and the SID is variable, the measurement shall be made with the end of the beam-limiting device or spacer as close to the tabletop as it can be placed, provided that it shall not be closer than 30 centimeters. Movable grids and compression devices shall be removed from the useful beam during the measurement. For all measurements, the attenuation block shall be positioned in the useful beam 10 centimeters from the point of measurement of entrance exposure rate and between this point and the input surface of the fluoroscopic imaging assembly.

(b) *Field limitation*—(1) *Nonimage-intensified fluoroscopy.* (i) The x-ray field produced by nonimage-intensified fluoroscopic equipment shall not extend beyond the entire visible area of the image receptor. Means shall be provided for stepless adjustment of the field size. The minimum field size at the greatest SID shall be equal to or less than 5-by-5 centimeters.

(ii) For equipment manufactured after February 25, 1978, when the angle between the image receptor and the beam axis of the x-ray beam is variable, means shall be provided to indicate when the axis of the x-ray beam is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor. Compliance with § 1020.32 (b)(1)(i) shall be determined with the beam axis indicated to be perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor.

(2) *Image-intensified fluoroscopy.* (i) For image-intensified fluoroscopic equipment other than radiation therapy simulation systems, neither the length nor the width of the x-ray field in the plane of the image receptor shall exceed that of the visible area of the image receptor by more than 3 percent of the SID. The sum of the excess length and the excess width shall be no greater than 4 percent of the SID.

(ii) For rectangular x-ray fields used with circular image receptors, the error in alignment shall be determined along the length and width dimensions of the X-ray field which pass through the center of the visible area of the image receptor.

(iii) For equipment manufactured after February 25, 1978, when the angle between the image receptor and beam axis is variable, means shall be provided to indicate when the axis of the x-ray beam is perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor. Compliance with § 1020.32 (b)(2)(i) shall be determined with the beam axis indicated to be perpendicular to the plane of the image receptor.

(iv) Means shall be provided to permit further limitation of the field.

Beam-limiting devices manufactured after May 22, 1979, and incorporated in equipment with a variable SID and/or a visible area of greater than 300 square centimeters shall be provided with means for stepless adjustment of the x-ray field. Equipment with a fixed SID and a visible area of 300 square centimeters or less shall be provided with either stepless adjustment of the x-ray field or with means to further limit the x-ray field size at the plane of the image receptor to 125 square centimeters or less. Stepless adjustment shall, at the greatest SID, provide continuous field sizes from the maximum obtainable to a field size of 5-by-5 centimeters or less.

(3) If the fluoroscopic x-ray field size is adjusted automatically as the SID or image receptor size is changed, a capability may be provided for overriding the automatic adjustment in case of system failure. If it is so provided, a signal visible at the fluoroscopist's position shall indicate whenever the automatic field adjustment is overridden. Each such system failure override switch shall be clearly labeled as follows:

FOR X-RAY FIELD LIMITATION SYSTEM FAILURE

(c) *Activation of tube.* X-ray production in the fluoroscopic mode shall be controlled by a device which requires continuous pressure by the operator for the entire time of any exposure. When recording serial fluoroscopic images, the operator shall be able to terminate the x-ray exposure(s) at any time, but means may be provided to permit completion of any single exposure of the series in process.

(d) *Entrance exposure rate limits*—(1) *Equipment with automatic exposure rate control.* Fluoroscopic equipment which is provided with automatic exposure rate control shall not be operable at any combination of tube potential and current which will result in an exposure rate in excess of 10 roentgens per minute at the point where the center of the useful beam enters the patient, except:

(i) During recording of fluoroscopic images, or

(ii) When an optional high level control is provided. When so provided, the
equipment shall not be operable
any combination of tube potential
current which will result in an ex
sure rate in excess of 5 roentgens
minute at the point where the cen
of the useful beam enters the pati
unless the high level control is acti
ed. Special means of activation of h
level controls shall be required.
high level control shall only be ope
ble when continuous manual act
tion is provided by the operator
continuous signal audible to the flu
oscopist shall indicate that the h
level control is being employed.

(2) *Equipment without autom*
exposure rate control. Fluorosc
equipment which is not provided w
automatic exposure rate control s
not be operable at any combinatio
tube potential and current which
result in an exposure rate in exces
5 roentgens per minute at the p
where the center of the useful b
enters the patient, except:

(i) During recording of fluorosc
images, or

(ii) When an optional high level
trol is activated. Special means of
vation of high level controls shall
required. The high level control s
only be operable when continu
manual activation is provided by
operator. A continuous signal aud
to the fluoroscopist shall indicate
the high level control is being
ployed.

(3) *Measuring compliance.* Com
ance with this paragraph (d) shal
determined as follows:

(i) If the source is below the ta
exposure rate shall be measured 1
timeter above the tabletop or cradl

(ii) If the source is above the ta
the exposure rate shall be measure
30 centimeters above the tabletop
the end of the beam-limiting devic
spacer positioned as closely as poss
to the point of measurement.

(iii) In a C-arm type of fluorosc
the exposure rate shall be measu
30 centimeters from the input sur
of the fluoroscopic imaging assemb

(4) *Exemptions.* Fluoroscopic
ation therapy simulation systems
exempt from this requirement.

(e) *Indication of potential and*
rent. During fluoroscopy and
fluorography x-ray tube potential

current shall be continuously indicated. Deviation of x-ray tube potential and current from the indicated values shall not exceed the maximum deviation as stated by the manufacturer in accordance with § 1020.30(h)(3).

(f) *Source-skin distance.* Means shall be provided to limit the source-skin distance to not less than 38 centimeters on stationary fluoroscopes and to not less than 30 centimeters on mobile fluoroscopes. In addition, for image-intensified fluoroscopes intended for specific surgical application that would be prohibited at the source-skin distances specified in this paragraph, provisions may be made for operation at shorter source-skin distances but in no case less than 20 centimeters. When provided, the manufacturer must set forth precautions with respect to the optional means of spacing, in addition to other information as required in § 1020.30(h).

(g) *Fluoroscopic timer.* Means shall be provided to preset the cumulative on-time of the fluoroscopic tube. The maximum cumulative time of the timing device shall not exceed 5 minutes without resetting. A signal audible to the fluoroscopist shall indicate the completion of any preset cumulative on-time. Such signal shall continue to sound while x-rays are produced until the timing device is reset. As an alternative to the requirements of this paragraph, radiation therapy simulation systems may be provided with a means to indicate the total cumulative exposure time during which x-rays were produced, and which is capable of being reset between x-ray examinations.

(h) *Mobile fluoroscopes.* In addition to the foregoing requirements of this section, mobile fluoroscopes shall provide intensified imaging.

[38 FR 28632, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended at 39 FR 36008, Oct. 7, 1974; 42 FR 10986, Feb. 25, 1977; 44 FR 29654, May 22, 1979; 45 FR 27928, Apr. 25, 1980; 47 FR 50215, Nov. 5, 1982; 49 FR 34712, Aug. 31, 1984; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

§ 1020.33 Computed tomography (CT) equipment.

(a) *Applicability.* (1) The provisions of this section, except for paragraphs (b), (c)(1), and (c)(2) are applicable as specified herein to CT x-ray systems manufactured or remanufactured on or after September 3, 1985.

(2) The provisions of paragraphs (b), (c)(1), and (c)(2) are applicable to CT x-ray systems manufactured or remanufactured on or after November 29, 1984.

(b) *Definitions.* As used in this section, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Computed tomography dose index (CTDI)" means the integral of the dose profile along a line perpendicular to the tomographic plane divided by the product of the nominal tomographic section thickness and the number of tomograms produced in a single scan; that is:

$$\mathrm{CTDI} = 1/nT \int_{-7T}^{+7T} D(z)\,dz$$

Where:

z = position along a line perpendicular to the tomographic plane.

D(z) = Dose at position z.

T = Nominal tomographic section thickness.

n = Number of tomograms produced in a single scan.

This definition assumes that the dose profile is centered around z = 0 and that, for a multiple tomogram system, the scan increment between adjacent scans is nT.

(2) "Contrast scale" means the change in linear attenuation coefficient per CT number relative to water; that is:

$$\text{Contrast scale} = \frac{\mu_x - \mu_w}{(CT)_x - (CT)_w}$$

Where:

μ_w = Linear attenuation coefficient of water.

μ_x = Linear attenuation coefficient of material of interest.

$(CT)_w$ = CT number of water.

$(CT)_x$ = CT number of material of interest.

(3) "CT conditions of operation" means all selectable parameters governing the operation of a CT x-ray system including nominal tomographic section thickness, filtration, and the technique factors as defined in § 1020.30(b)(36).

(4) "CT number" means the number used to represent the x-ray attenuation associated with each elemental area of the CT image.

(5) [Reserved]

(6) "CT dosimetry phantom" means the phantom used for determination of the dose delivered by a CT x-ray system. The phantom shall be a right circular cylinder of polymethl-methacrylate of density 1.19±0.01 grams per cubic centimeter. The phantom shall be at least 14 centimeters in length and shall have diameters of 32.0 centimeters for testing any CT system designed to image any section of the body (whole body scanners) and 16.0 centimeters for any system designed to image the head (head scanners) or for any whole body scanner operated in the head scanning mode. The phantom shall provide means for the placement of a dosimeter(s) along its axis of rotation and along a line parallel to the axis of rotation 1.0 centimeter from the outer surface and within the phantom. Means for the placement of a dosimeter(s) or alignment device at other locations may be provided for convenience. The means used for placement of a dosimeter(s) (i.e., hole size) and the type of dosimeter(s) used is at the discretion of the manufacturer. Any effect on the doses measured due to the removal of phantom material to accommodate dosimeters shall be accounted for through appropriate corrections to the reported data or included in the statement of maximum deviation for the values obtained usi
the phantom.

(7) "Dose profile" means the dose
a function of position along a line.

(8) "Modulation transfer functio
means the modulus of the Fouri
transform of the impulse response
the system.

(9) "Multiple tomogram syste
means a CT x-ray system which o
tains x-ray transmission data simult
neously during a single scan
produce more than one tomogram.

(10) "Noise" means the standard d
viation of the fluctuations in
number expressed as a percent of t
attenuation coefficient of water. Its
timate (S_n) is calculated using the f
lowing expression:

$$S_n = \frac{100 \times CS \times s}{\mu_w}$$

Where:

CS = Contrast scale.

μ_w = Linear attenuation coefficient of wat

s = Estimated standard deviation of the
numbers of picture elements in a sp
fied area of the CT image.

(11) "Nominal tomographic secti
thickness" means the full-width
half-maximum of the sensitivity p
file taken at the center of the cro
sectional volume over which x-
transmission data are collected.

(12) "Picture element" means an e
mental area of a tomogram.

(13) "Remanufacturing" mea
modifying a CT system in such a w
that the resulting dose and imag
performance become substantia
equivalent to any CT x-ray syst
manufactured by the original ma
facturer on or after November
1984. Any reference in this section
"manufacture", "manufacturer",
"manufacturing" includes remanu
ture, remanufacturer, or remanu
turing, respectively.

(14) "Scan increment" means
amount of relative displacement of

best copy available

patient with respect to the CT x-ray system between successive scans measured along the direction of such displacement.

(15) "Scan sequence" means a preselected set of two or more scans performed consecutively under preselected CT conditions of operations.

(16) "Sensitivity profile" means the relative response of the CT x-ray system as a function of position along a line perpendicular to the tomographic plane.

(17) "Single tomogram system" means a CT x-ray system which obtains x-ray transmission data during a scan to produce a single tomogram.

(18) "Tomographic plane" means that geometric plane which the manufacturer identifies as corresponding to the output tomogram.

(19) "Tomographic section" means the volume of an object whose x-ray attenuation properties are imaged in a tomogram.

(c) *Information to be provided for users.* Each manufacturer of a CT x-ray system shall provide the following technical and safety information, in addition to that required under § 1020.30(h), to purchasers and, upon request, to others at a cost not to exceed the cost of publication and distribution of such information. This information shall be identified and provided in a separate section of the user's instruction manual or in a separate manual devoted only to this information.

(1) *Conditions of operation.* A statement of the CT conditions of operation used to provide the information required by paragraph (c) (2) and (3) of this section.

(2) *Dose information.* The following dose information obtained by using the CT dosimetry phantom. For any CT x-ray system designed to image both the head and body, separate dose information shall be provided for each application. All dose measurements shall be performed with the CT dosimetry phantom placed on the patient couch or support device without additional attenuating materials present.

(i) The CTDI at the following locations in the dosimetry phantom:

(*a*) Along the axis of rotation of the phantom.

(*b*) Along a line parallel to the axis of rotation and 1.0 centimeter interior to the surface of the phantom with the phantom positioned so that CTDI is the maximum obtainable at this depth.

(*c*) Along lines parallel to the axis of rotation and 1.0 centimeter interior to the surface of the phantom at positions 90, 180, and 270 degrees from the position in paragraph (c)(2)(i)(*b*) of this section. The CT conditions of operation shall be the typical values suggested by the manufacturer for CT of the head or body. The location of the position where the CTDI is maximum as specified in paragraph (c)(2)(i)(*b*) of this section shall be given by the manufacturer with respect to the housing of the scanning mechanism or other readily identifiable feature of the CT x-ray system in such a manner as to permit placement of the dosimetry phantom in this orientation.

(ii) The CTDI in the center location of the dosimetry phantom for each selectable CT condition of operation that varies either the rate or duration of x-ray exposure. This CTDI shall be presented as a value that is normalized to the CTDI in the center location of the dosimetry phantom from paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section, with the CTDI of paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section having a value of one. As each individual CT condition of operation is changed, all other independent CT conditions of operation shall be maintained at the typical values described in paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section. These data shall encompass the range of each CT condition of operation stated by the manufacturer as appropriate for CT of the head or body. When more than three selections of a CT condition of operation are available, the normalized CTDI shall be provided, at least, for the minimum, maximum, and mid-range value of the CT condition of operation.

(iii) The CTDI at the location coincident with the maximum CTDI at 1 centimeter interior to the surface of the dosimetry phantom for each selectable peak tube potential. When more than three selections of peak tube potential are available, the normalized CTDI shall be provided, at least, for the minimum, maximum, and a typical value of peak tube potential. The CTDI shall be presented as a value that is normalized to the maximum CTDI located at 1 centimeter interior to the surface of the dosimetry phantom from paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section, with the CTDI of paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section having a value of one.

(iv) The dose profile in the center location of the dosimetry phantom for each selectable nominal tomographic section thickness. When more than three selections of nominal tomographic section thicknesses are available, the information shall be provided, at least, for the minimum, maximum, and midrange value of nominal tomographic section thickness. The dose profile shall be presented on the same graph and to the same scale as the corresponding sensitivity profile required by paragraph (c)(3)(iv) of this section.

(v) A statement of the maximum deviation from the values given in the information provided according to paragraph (c)(2) (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this section. Deviation of actual values may not exceed these limits.

(3) *Imaging performance information.* The following performance data shall be provided for the CT conditions of operation used to provide the information required by paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section. All other aspects of data collection, including the x-ray attenuation properties of the material in the tomographic section, shall be similar to those used to provide the dose information required by paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section. For any CT x-ray system designed to image both the head and body, separate imaging performance information shall be provided for each application.

(i) A statement of the noise.

(ii) A graphical presentation of the modulation transfer function for the same image processing and display mode as that used in the statement of the noise.

(iii) A statement of the nominal tomographic section thickness(es).

(iv) A graphical presentation of the sensitivity profile, at the location corresponding to the center location of the dosimetry phantom, for each selectable nominal tomographic section thickness for which the dose profile is given according to paragraph (c)(2)(iv) of this section.

(v) A description of the phantom or device and test protocol or procedure used to determine the specifications and a statement of the maximum deviation from the specifications provided in accordance with paragraphs (c)(3) (i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) of this section. Deviation of actual values may not exceed these limits.

(d) *Quality assurance.* The manufacturer of any CT x-ray system shall provide the following with each system. All information required by this subsection shall be provided in a separate section of the user's instructional manual.

(1) A phantom(s) capable of providing an indication of contrast scale noise, nominal tomographic sectio thickness, the spatial resolution capability of the system for low and high contrast objects, and measuring the mean CT number of water or a reference material.

(2) Instructions on the use of the phantom(s) including a schedule o testing appropriate for the system, allowable variations for the indicate parameters, and a method to store a records, quality assurance data.

(3) Representative images obtaine with the phantom(s) using the sam processing mode and CT conditions o operation as in paragraph (c)(3) o this section for a properly functionin system of the same model. The representative images shall be of two form as follows:

(i) Photographic copies of th images obtained from the image display device.

(ii) Images stored in digital form o a storage medium compatible with th CT x-ray system. The CT x-ray syste shall be provided with the means t display these images on the image display device.

(e) [Reserved]

(f) *Control and indication of conditions of operation*—(1) *Visual indication.* The CT conditions of operatio to be used during a scan or a scan sequence shall be indicated prior to initiation of a scan or a scan sequence. O equipment having all or some of thes conditions of operation at fixed value this requirement may be met by permanent markings. Indication of the CT conditions of operation shall be visible from any position from which scan initiation is possible.

(2) *Timers.* (i) Means shall be provided to terminate the x-ray exposure automatically by either deenergizing the x-ray source or shuttering the x-ray beam in the event of equipment failure affecting data collection. Such termination shall occur within an interval that limits the total scan time to no more than 110 percent of its preset value through the use of either a backup timer or devices which monitor equipment function. A visible signal shall indicate when the x-ray exposure has been terminated through these means and manual resetting of the CT conditions of operation shall be required prior to the initiation of another scan.

(ii) Means shall be provided such that the exposure from the system does not exceed the radiation levels specified in § 1020.30(k) except when x-ray transmission data are being collected for use in image production or technique factor selection.

(iii) Means shall be provided so that the operator can terminate the x-ray exposure at any time during a scan, or series of scans under x-ray system control, of greater than one-half second duration. Termination of the x-ray exposure shall necessitate resetting of the CT conditions of operation prior to the initiation of another scan.

(g) *Tomographic plane indication and alignment.* (1) For any single tomogram system, means shall be provided to permit visual determination of the tomographic plane or a reference plane offset from the tomographic plane.

(2) For any multiple tomogram system, means shall be provided to permit visual determination of the location of a reference plane. The relationship of the reference plane to the planes of the tomograms shall be provided to the user in addition to other information provided according to § 1020.30(h). This reference plane can be offset from the location of the tomographic planes.

(3) The distance between the indicated location of the tomographic plane or reference plane and its actual location may not exceed 5 millimeters.

(4) For any offset alignment system, the manufacturer shall provide specific instructions with respect to the use of this system for patient positioning, in addition to other information provided according to § 1020.30(h).

(5) If a mechanism using a light source is used to satisfy the requirements of paragraphs (g) (1) and (2) of this section, the light source shall allow visual determination of the location of the tomographic plane or reference plane under ambient light conditions of up to 500 lux.

(h) *Beam-on and shutter status indicators.* (1) Means shall be provided on the control and on or near the housing of the scanning mechanism to provide visual indication when and only when x rays are produced and, if applicable, whether the shutter is open or closed. If the x-ray production period is less than one-half second, the indication of x-ray production shall be actuated for one-half second. Indicators at or near the housing of the scanning mechanism shall be discernible from any point external to the patient opening where insertion of any part of the human body into the primary beam is possible.

(2) For systems that allow high voltage to be applied to the x-ray tube continuously and that control the emission of x rays with a shutter, the radiation emitted may not exceed 100 milliroentgens (2.58×10^{-5} coulomb/kilogram) in 1 hour at any point 5 centimeters outside the external surface of the housing of the scanning mechanism when the shutter is closed. Compliance shall be determined by measurements averaged over an area of 100 square centimeters with no linear dimensions greater than 20 centimeters.

(i) *Scan increment accuracy.* The deviation of indicated scan increment from actual scan increment may not exceed 1 millimeter. Compliance shall be measured as follows: The determination of the deviation of indicated versus actual scan increment shall be based on measurements taken with a mass 100 kilograms or less, on the patient support device. The patient support device shall be incremented from a typical starting position to the maximum incrementation distance or 30 centimeters, whichever is less, and then returned to the starting position. Measurement of actual versus indicated scan increment may be taken anywhere along this travel.

(j) *CT number mean and standard deviation.* (1) A method shall be provided to calculate the mean and standard deviation of CT numbers for an array of picture elements about any location in the image. The number of elements in this array shall be under user control.

(2) The manufacturer shall provide specific instructions concerning the use of the method provided for calculation of CT number mean and standard deviation in addition to other information provided according to § 1020.30(h).

(The Information collection requirements in paragraphs (c), (d), (g), and (j) were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0910-0025)

(Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179 (42 U.S.C. 263f); secs. 201, 501, 502, 701, 52 Stat. 1040-1042 as amended, 1049-1051 as amended, 1055-1056 as amended (21 U.S.C. 321, 351, 352, 371))

[49 FR 34712, Aug. 31, 1984; 49 37381, Sept. 24, 1984, as amended at 49 FR 47388, Dec. 4, 1984]

§ 1020.40 Cabinet x-ray systems.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions of this section are applicable to cabinet x-ray systems manufactured or assembled on or after April 10, 1975, except that the provisions as applied to x-ray systems designed primarily for the inspection of carry-on baggage are applicable to such systems manufactured or assembled on or after April 25, 1974. The provisions of this section are not applicable to systems which are designed exclusively for microscopic examination of material, e.g., x-ray diffraction, spectroscopic, and electron microscope equipment or to systems for intentional exposure of humans to x-rays.

(b) *Definitions.* As used in this section the following definitions apply:

(1) "Access panel" means any barrier or panel which is designed to be removed or opened for maintenance or service purposes, requires tools to open, and permits access to the interior of the cabinet.

(2) "Aperture" means any opening i the outside surface of the cabinet other than a port, which remains ope during generation of x radiation.

(3) "Cabinet x-ray system" means a x-ray system with the x-ray tube installed in an enclosure (hereinafte termed "cabinet") which, independently of existing architectural structure except the floor on which it may b placed, is intended to contain at leas that portion of a material being irradiated, provide radiation attenuation and exclude personnel from its interior during generation of x radiation Included are all x-ray systems designed primarily for the inspection o carry-on baggage at airline, railroad and bus terminals, and in similar facilities. An x-ray tube used within shielded part of a building, or x-ray equipment which may temporarily o occasionally incorporate portable shielding is not considered a cabinet x-ray system.

(4) "Door" means any barrier which is designed to be movable or opened for routine operation purposes, does not generally require tools to open and permits access to the interior o the cabinet. For the purposes of paragraph (c)(4)(i) of this section, inflexible hardware rigidly affixed to the door shall be considered part of the door.

(5) "Exposure" means the quotient of dQ by dm where dQ is the absolute value of the total charge of the ions o one sign produced in air when all the electrons (negatrons and positrons) liberated by photons in a volume element of air having mass dm are completely stopped in air.

(6) "External surface" means the outside surface of the cabinet x-ray system, including the high-voltage generator, doors, access panels, latches, control knobs, and other permanently mounted hardware and including the plane across any aperture or port.

(7) "Floor" means the underside external surface of the cabinet.

(8) "Ground fault" means an accidental electrical grounding of an electrical conductor.

(9) "Port" means any opening in the outside surface of the cabinet which is designed to remain open, during generation of x-rays, for the purpose of conveying material to be irradiated into and out of the cabinet, or for partial insertion for irradiation of an object whose dimensions do not permit complete insertion into the cabinet.

(10) "Primary beam" means the x radiation emitted directly from the from the target and passing through the window of the x-ray tube.

(11) "Safety interlock" means a device which is intended to prevent the generation of x radiation when access by any part of the human body to the interior of the cabinet x-ray system through a door or access panel is possible.

(12) "X-ray system" means an assemblage of components for the controlled generation of x-rays.

(13) "X-ray tube" means any electron tube which is designed for the conversion of electrical energy into x-ray energy.

(c) *Requirements*—(1) *Emission limit.* (i) Radiation emitted from the cabinet x-ray system shall not exceed an exposure of 0.5 milliroentgen in one hour at any point five centimeters outside the external surface.

(ii) Compliance with the exposure limit in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section shall be determined by measurements averaged over a cross-sectional area of ten square centimeters with no linear dimension greater than 5 centimeters, with the cabinet x-ray system operated at those combinations of x-ray tube potential, current, beam orientation, and conditions of scatter radiation which produce the maximum x-ray exposure at the external surface, and with the door(s) and access panel(s) fully closed as well as fixed at any other position(s) which will allow the generation of x radiation.

(2) *Floors.* A cabinet x-ray system shall have a permanent floor. Any support surface to which a cabinet x-ray system is permanently affixed may be deemed the floor of the system.

(3) *Ports and apertures.* (i) The insertion of any part of the human body through any port into the primary beam shall not be possible.

(ii) The insertion of any part of the human body through any aperture shall not be possible.

(4) *Safety interlocks.* (i) Each door of a cabinet x-ray system shall have a minimum of two safety interlocks. One, but not both of the required interlocks shall be such that door opening results in physical disconnection of the energy supply circuit to the high-voltage generator, and such disconnection shall not be dependent upon any moving part other than the door.

(ii) Each access panel shall have at least one safety interlock.

(iii) Following interruption of x-ray generation by the functioning of any safety interlock, use of a control provided in accordance with paragraph (c)(6)(ii) of this section shall be necessary for resumption of x-ray generation.

(iv) Failure of any single component of the cabinet x-ray system shall not cause failure of more than one required safety interlock.

(5) *Ground fault.* A ground fault shall not result in the generation of x-rays.

(6) *Controls and indicators for all cabinet x-ray systems.* For all systems to which this section is applicable there shall be provided:

(i) A key-actuated control to insure that x-ray generation is not possible with the key removed.

(ii) A control or controls to initiate and terminate the generation of x-rays other than by functioning of a safety interlock or the main power control.

(iii) Two independent means which indicate when and only when x-rays are being generated, unless the x-ray generation period is less than one-half second, in which case the indicators shall be activated for one-half second, and which are discernible from any point at which initiation of x-ray generation is possible. Failure of a single component of the cabinet x-ray system shall not cause failure of both indicators to perform their intended function. One, but not both, of the indicators required by this subdivision may be a milliammeter labeled to indicate x-ray tube current. All other indicators shall be legibly labeled "X-RAY ON".

(iv) Additional means other than milliammeters which indicate when and only when x-rays are being generated, unless the x-ray generation period is less than one-half second in which case the indicators shall be activated for one-half second, as needed to insure that at least one indicator is visible from each door, access panel, and port, and is legibly labeled "X-RAY ON".

(7) *Additional controls and indicators for cabinet x-ray systems designed to admit humans.* For cabinet x-ray systems designed to admit humans there shall also be provided:

(i) A control within the cabinet for preventing and terminating x-ray generation, which cannot be reset, overridden or bypassed from the outside of the cabinet.

(ii) No means by which x-ray generation can be initiated from within the cabinet.

(iii) Audible and visible warning signals within the cabinet which are actuated for at least 10 seconds immediately prior to the first initiation of x-ray generation after closing any door designed to admit humans. Failure of any single component of the cabinet x-ray system shall not cause failure of both the audible and visible warning signals.

(iv) A visible warning signal within the cabinet which remains actuated when and only when x-rays are being generated, unless the x-ray generation period is less than one-half second in which case the indicators shall be activated for one-half second.

(v) Signs indicating the meaning of the warning signals provided pursuant to paragraphs (c)(7) (iii) and (iv) of this section and containing instructions for the use of the control provided pursuant to paragraph (c)(7)(i) of this section. These signs shall be legible, accessible to view, and illuminated when the main power control is in the "on" position.

(8) *Warning labels.* (i) There shall be permanently affixed or inscribed on the cabinet x-ray system at the location of any controls which can be used to initiate x-ray generation, a clearly legible and visible label bearing the statement:

CAUTION: X-RAYS PRODUCED WHEN ENERGIZED

(ii) There shall be permanently affixed or inscribed on the cabinet x-ray system adjacent to each port a clearly legible and visible label bearing the statement:

CAUTION: DO NOT INSERT ANY PART OF THE BODY WHEN SYSTEM IS ENERGIZED—X-RAY HAZARD

(9) *Instructions.* (i) Manufacturers of cabinet x-ray systems shall provide for purchasers, and to others upon request at a cost not to exceed the cost of preparation and distribution, manuals and instructions which shall include at least the following technical and safety information: Potential, current, and duty cycle ratings of the x-ray generation equipment; adequate instructions concerning any radiological safety procedures and precautions which may be necessary because of unique features of the system; and a schedule of maintenance necessary to keep the system in compliance with this section.

(ii) Manufacturers of cabinet x-ray systems which are intended to be assembled or installed by the purchaser shall provide instructions for assembly, installation, adjustment and testing of the cabinet x-ray system adequate to assure that the system is in compliance with applicable provisions of this section when assembled, installed, adjusted and tested as directed.

(10) *Additional requirements for x-ray baggage inspection systems.* X-ray systems designed primarily for the inspection of carry-on baggage at airline, railroad, and bus terminals, and at similar facilities, shall be provided with means, pursuant to paragraphs (c)(10) (i) and (ii) of this section, to insure operator presence at the control area in a position which permits surveillance of the ports and doors during generation of x-radiation.

(i) During an exposure or preset succession of exposures of one-half second or greater duration, the means provided shall enable the operator to terminate the exposure or preset succession of exposures at any time.

(ii) During an exposure or preset succession of exposures of less than one-half second duration, the means provided may allow completion of the exposure in progress but shall enable the operator to prevent additional exposures.

(d) *Modification of a certified system.* The modification of a cabinet x-ray system, previously certified pursuant to § 1010.2 by any person engaged in the business of manufacturing, assembling or modifying cabinet x-ray systems shall be construed as manufacturing under the act if the modification affects any aspect of the system's performance for which this section has an applicable requirement. The manufacturer who performs such modification shall recertify and reidentify the system in accordance with the provisions of §§ 1010.2 and 1010.3 of this chapter.

[39 FR 12986, Apr. 10, 1974]

PART 1030—PERFORMANCE STANDARDS FOR MICROWAVE AND RADIO FREQUENCY EMITTING PRODUCTS

AUTHORITY: Sec. 358 (42 U.S.C. 263f); sec. 701(a) (21 U.S.C. 371(a)).

§ 1030.10 Microwave ovens.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions of this standard are applicable to microwave ovens manufactured after October 6, 1971.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) "Microwave oven" means a device designed to heat, cook, or dry food through the application of electromagnetic energy at frequencies assigned by the Federal Communications Commission in the normal ISM heating bands ranging from 890 megahertz to 6,000 megahertz. As defined in this standard, "microwave ovens" are limited to those manufactured for use in homes, restaurants, food vending, or service establishments, on interstate carriers, and in similar facilities.

(2) "Cavity" means that portion of the microwave oven in which food may be heated, cooked, or dried.

(3) "Door" means the movable barrier which prevents access to the cavity during operation and whose function is to prevent emission of microwave energy from the passage or opening which provides access to the cavity.

(4) "Safety interlock" means a device or system of devices which is intended to prevent generation of microwave energy when access to the cavity is possible.

(5) "Service adjustments or service procedures" means those servicing methods prescribed by the manufacturer for a specific product model.

(6) "Stirrer" means that feature of a microwave oven which is intended to provide uniform heating of the load by constantly changing the standing wave pattern within the cavity or moving the load.

(7) "External surface" means the outside surface of the cabinet or enclosure provided by the manufacturer as part of the microwave oven, including doors, door handles, latches, and control knobs.

(8) "Equivalent plane-wave power density" means the square of the root-mean-square (rms) electric field strength divided by the impedance of free space (377 ohms).

(c) *Requirements*—(1) *Power density limit.* The equivalent plane-wave power density existing in the proximity of the external oven surface shall not exceed 1 milliwatt per square centimeter at any point 5 centimeters or more from the external surface of the oven, measured prior to acquisition by a purchaser, and, thereafter, 5 milliwatts per square centimeter at any such point.

(2) *Safety interlocks.* (i) Microwave ovens shall have a minimum of two operative safety interlocks. At least one operative safety interlock on a fully assembled microwave oven shall not be operable by any part of the human body, or any object with a straight insertable length of 10 centimeters. Such interlock must also be concealed, unless its actuation is prevented when access to the interlock is possible. Any visible actuator or device to prevent actuation of this safety interlock must not be removable without disassembly of the oven or its door. A magnetically operated interlock is considered to be concealed, or its actuation is considered to be prevented, only if a test

magnet held in place on the oven by gravity or its own attraction cannot operate the safety interlock. The test magnet shall be capable of lifting vertically at zero air gap at least 4.5 kilograms, and at 1 centimeter air gap at least 450 grams when the face of the magnet, which is toward the interlock when the magnet is in the test position, is pulling against one of the large faces of a mild steel armature having dimensions of 80 millimeters by 50 millimeters by 8 millimeters.

(ii) Failure of any single mechanical or electrical component of the microwave oven shall not cause all safety interlocks to be inoperative.

(iii) Service adjustments or service procedures on the microwave oven shall not cause the safety interlocks to become inoperative or the microwave radiation emission to exceed the power density limits of this section as a result of such service adjustments or procedures.

(iv) Microwave radiation emission in excess of the limits specified in paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall not be caused by insertion of an insulated wire through any opening in the external surfaces of a fully assembled oven into the cavity, waveguide, or other microwave-energy-containing spaces while the door is closed, provided the wire, when inserted, could consist of two straight segments forming an obtuse angle of not less than 170 degrees.

(v) One (the primary) required safety interlock shall prevent microwave radiation emission in excess of the requirement of paragraph (c)(1) of this section; the other (secondary) required safety interlock shall prevent microwave radiation emission in excess of 5 milliwatts per square centimeter at any point 5 centimeters or more from the external surface of the oven. The two required safety interlocks shall be designated as primary or secondary in the service instructions for the oven.

(vi) A means of monitoring one or both of the required safety interlocks shall be provided which shall cause the oven to become inoperable and remain so until repaired if the required safety interlock(s) should fail to perform required functions as specified in this section. Interlock failu
shall not disrupt the monitoring fu
tion.

(3) *Measurement and test conditio*
(i) Compliance with the power dens
limit in paragraph (c)(1) of this s
tion shall be determined by measu
ment of the equivalent plane-wa
power density made with an inst
ment which reaches 90 percent of
steady-state reading within 3 secon
when the system is subjected to a st
function input signal. Tests for co
pliance shall account for all measu
ment errors and uncertainties
ensure that the equivalent plane-wa
power density does not exceed
limit prescribed by paragraph (c)(1)
this section.

(ii) Microwave ovens shall be in co
pliance with the power density lim
if the maximum reading obtained
the location of greatest microwave
diation emission, taking into accou
all measurement errors and uncerta
ties, does not exceed the limit sp
fied in paragraph (c)(1) of this secti
when the emission is measu
through at least one stirrer cycle.
provided in § 1010.13 of this chapte
manufacturer may request alternat
test procedures if, as a result of
stirrer characteristics of a microw
oven, such oven is not susceptible
testing by the procedures described
this paragraph.

(iii) Measurements shall be m
with the microwave oven operating
its maximum output and containin
load of 275±15 milliliters of tap wa
initially at 20°±5° centigrade pla
within the cavity at the center of
load-carrying surface provided by
manufacturer. The water contai
shall be a low form 600-millili
beaker having an inside diameter
approximately 8.5 centimeters
made of an electrically nonconduct
material such as glass or plastic.

(iv) Measurements shall be m
with the door fully closed as well
with the door fixed in any other p
tion which allows the oven to opera

(4) *User instructions.* Manufactur
of microwave ovens to which this s
tion is applicable shall provide,
cause to be provided, with each ov
radiation safety instructions which:

(i) Occupy a separate section and are an integral part of the regularly supplied users' manual and cookbook, if supplied separately, and are located so as to elicit the attention of the reader.

(ii) Are as legible and durable as other instructions with the title emphasized to elicit the attention of the reader by such means as bold-faced type, contrasting color, a heavy-lined border, or by similar means.

(iii) Contain the following wording:

Precautions To Avoid Possible Exposure To Excessive Microwave Energy

(*a*) Do not attempt to operate this oven with the door open since open-door operation can result in harmful exposure to microwave energy. It is important not to defeat or tamper with the safety interlocks.

(*b*) Do not place any object between the oven front face and the door or allow soil or cleaner residue to accumulate on sealing surfaces.

(*c*) Do not operate the oven if it is damaged. It is particularly important that the oven door close properly and that there is no damage to the: (*1*) Door (bent), (*2*) hinges and latches (broken or loosened), (*3*) door seals and sealing surfaces.

(*d*) The oven should not be adjusted or repaired by anyone except properly qualified service personnel.

(iv) Include additional radiation safety precautions or instructions which may be necessary for particular oven designs or models, as determined by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health or the manufacturer.

(5) *Service instructions.* Manufacturers of microwave ovens to which this section is applicable shall provide or cause to be provided to servicing dealers and distributors and to others upon request, for each oven model, adequate instructions for service adjustments and service procedures, and, in addition, radiation safety instructions which:

(i) Occupy a separate section and are an integral part of the regularly supplied service manual and are located so as to elicit the attention of the reader.

(ii) Are as legible and durable as other instructions with the title emphasized so as to elicit the attention of the reader by such means as bold-faced type, contrasting color, a heavy-lined border, or by similar means.

(iii) Contain the following wording:

Precautions To Be Observed Before And During Servicing To Avoid Possible Exposure To Excessive Microwave Energy

(*a*) Do not operate or allow the oven to be operated with the door open.

(*b*) Make the following safety checks on all ovens to be serviced before activating the magnetron or other microwave source, and make repairs as necessary: (*1*) Interlock operation, (*2*) proper door closing, (*3*) seal and sealing surfaces (arcing, wear, and other damage), (*4*) damage to or loosening of hinges and latches, (*5*) evidence of dropping or abuse.

(*c*) Before turning on microwave power for any service test or inspection within the microwave generating compartments, check the magnetron, wave guide or transmission line, and cavity for proper alignment, integrity, and connections.

(*d*) Any defective or misadjusted components in the interlock, monitor, door seal, and microwave generation and transmission systems shall be repaired, replaced, or adjusted by procedures described in this manual before the oven is released to the owner.

(*e*) A Microwave leakage check to verify compliance with the Federal performance standard should be performed on each oven prior to release to the owner.

(iv) Include additional radiation safety precautions or instructions which may be necessary for particular oven designs or models, as determined by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health or the manufacturer.

(6) *Warning labels.* Except as provided in paragraph (c)(6)(iv) of this section, microwave ovens shall have the following warning labels:

(i) A label, permanently attached to or inscribed on the oven, which shall be legible and readily viewable during normal oven use, and which shall have the title emphasized and be so located as to elicit the attention of the user. The label shall bear the following warning statement:

Precautions For Safe Use To Avoid Possible Exposure To Excessive Microwave Energy

DO NOT Attempt to Operate This Oven With:

(*a*) Object Caught in Door.

(*b*) Door That Does Not Close Properly.

(c) Damaged Door, Hinge, Latch, or Sealing Surface.

(ii) A label, permanently attached to or inscribed on the external surface of the oven, which shall be legible and readily viewable during servicing, and which shall have the word "CAUTION" emphasized and be so located as to elicit the attention of service personnel. The label shall bear the following warning statement:

Caution: This Device is to be Serviced Only by Properly Qualified Service Personnel. Consult the Service Manual for Proper Service Procedures to Assure Continued Compliance with the Federal Performance Standard for Microwave Ovens and for Precautions to be Taken to Avoid Possible Exposure to Excessive Microwave Energy.

(iii) The labels provided in accordance with paragraphs (c)(6)(i) and (ii) of this section shall bear only the statements specified in that paragraph, except for additional radiation safety warnings or instructions which may be necessary for particular oven designs or models, as determined by the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health or the manufacturer.

(iv) Upon application by a manufacturer, the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Food and Drug Administration, may grant an exemption from one or more of the statements (radiation safety warnings) specified in paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section. Such exemption shall be based upon a determination by the Director that the microwave oven model for which the exemption is sought should continue to comply with paragraphs (c) (1), (2), and (3) of this section under the adverse condition of use addressed by such precautionary statement(s). An original and two copies of applications shall be submitted to the Dockets Management Branch (HFA-305), Food and Drug Administration, Rm. 4-62, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857. Copies of the written portion of the application, including supporting data and information, and the Director's action on the application will be maintained by the Branch for public review. The application shall include:

(*a*) The specific microwave ove
model(s) for which the exemption i
sought.

(*b*) The specific radiation safet
warning(s) from which exemption i
sought.

(*c*) Data and information whicl
clearly establish that one or more o
the radiation safety warnings in para
graph (c)(6)(i) of this section is no
necessary for the specified microwav
oven model(s).

(*d*) Such other information and
sample of the applicable product if re
quired by regulation or by the Direc
tor, Center for Devices and Radiologi
cal Health, to evaluate and act on th
application.

[38 FR 28640, Oct. 15, 1973, as amended a
40 FR 14752, Apr. 4, 1975; 40 FR 52007, No
7, 1975; 46 FR 8461, Jan. 27, 1981; 48 F
57482, Dec. 30, 1983; 50 FR 13566, Apr.
1985; 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

PART 1040—PERFORMANCE STAND ARDS FOR LIGHT-EMITTING PROD UCTS

Sec.

1040.10 Laser products.
1040.11 Specific purpose laser products.
1040.20 Sunlamp products and ultraviol
lamps intended for use in sunlamp pro
ucts.
1040.30 High-intensity mercury vapor di
charge lamps.

Authority: Secs. 358, 360A, 82 Stat. 117
1179, 1182 (42 U.S.C. 263f, 263i); 21 CF
5.10.

§ 1040.10 Laser products.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions
this section and § 1040.11, as amende
are applicable as specified to all las
products manufactured or assemble
after August 1, 1976, except when:

(1) Such a laser product is eith
sold to a manufacturer of an electro
ic product for use as a component (
replacement) in such electronic pro
uct, or

(2) Sold by or for a manufacturer
an electronic product for use as a co
ponent (or replacement) in such ele
tronic product, provided that su
laser product:

(i) Is accompanied by a gene
warning notice that adequate instr
tions for the safe installation of t

laser product are provided in servicing information available from the complete laser product manufacturer under paragraph (h)(2)(ii) of this section, and should be followed,

(ii) Is labeled with a statement that it is designated for use solely as a component of such electronic product and therefore does not comply with the appropriate requirements of this section and § 1040.11 for complete laser products, and

(iii) Is not a removable laser system as described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section; and

(3) The manufacturer of such a laser product, if manufactured after August 20, 1986:

(i) Registers, and provides a listing by type of such laser products manufactured that includes the product name, model number and laser medium or emitted wavelength(s). The registration and listing shall include the name and address of the manufacturer and shall be submitted to the Director, Office of Compliance (HFZ-300), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(ii) Maintains and allows access to any sales, shipping, or distribution records that identify the purchaser of such a laser product by name and address, the product by type, the number of units sold, and the date of sale (shipment). These records shall be maintained and made available as specified in § 1002.31.

(b) *Definitions.* As used in this section and § 1040.11, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Accessible emission level" means the magnitude of accessible laser or collateral radiation of a specific wavelength and emission duration at a particular point as measured according to paragraph (e) of this section. Accessible laser or collateral radiation is radiation to which human access is possible, as defined in paragraphs (b) (12), (15), and (22) of this section.

(2) "Accessible emission limit" means the maximum accessible emission level permitted within a particular class as set forth in paragraphs (c), (d), and (e) of this section.

(3) "Aperture" means any opening in the protective housing or other enclosure of a laser product through which laser or collateral radiation is emitted, thereby allowing human access to such radiation.

(4) "Aperture stop" means an opening serving to limit the size and to define the shape of the area over which radiation is measured.

(5) "Class I laser product" means any laser product that does not permit access during the operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table I of paragraph (d) of this section.[1]

(6) "Class IIa laser product" means any laser product that permits human access during operation to levels of visible laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table I, but does not permit human access during operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table II-A of paragraph (d) of this section.[2]

(7) "Class II laser product" means any laser product that permits human access during operation to levels of visible laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table II-A, but does not permit human access during operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table II of paragraph (d) of this section.[3]

(8) "Class IIIa laser product" means any laser product that permits human access during operation to levels of visible laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table II, but does not permit human access during operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table III-A of paragraph (d) of this section.[4]

---

[1] Class I levels of laser radiation are not considered to be hazardous.

[2] Class IIa levels of laser radiation are not considered to be hazardous if viewed for any period of time less than or equal to 1×10^3 seconds but are considered to be a chronic viewing hazard for any period of time greater than 1×10^3 seconds.

[3] Class II levels of laser radiation are considered to be a chronic viewing hazard.

[4] Class IIIa levels of laser radiation are considered to be, depending upon the irradiance, either an acute intrabeam viewing

Continued

(9) "Class IIIb laser product" means any laser product that permits human access during operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Table III-A, but does not permit human access during operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table III-B of paragraph (d) of this section.[5]

(10) "Class III laser product" means any Class IIIa or Class IIIb laser product.

(11) "Class IV laser product" means any laser that permits human access during operation to levels of laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits contained in Table III-B of paragraph (d) of this section.[6]

(12) "Collateral radiation" means any electronic product radiation, except laser radiation, emitted by a laser product as a result of the operation of the laser(s) or any component of the laser product that is physically necessary for the operation of the laser(s).

(13) "Demonstration laser product" means any laser product manufactured, designed, intended, or promoted for purposes of demonstration, entertainment, advertising display, or artistic composition. The term "demonstration laser product" does not apply to laser products which are not manufactured, designed, intended, or promoted for such purposes, even though they may be used for those purposes or are intended to demonstrate other applications.

(14) "Emission duration" means the temporal duration of a pulse, a series of pulses, or continuous operation, expressed in seconds, during which human access to laser or collateral radiation could be permitted as a result of operation, maintenance, or service of a laser product.

(15) "Human access" means the c
pacity to intercept laser or collater
radiation by any part of the huma
body. For laser products that conta
Class IIIb or IV levels of laser rad
ation, "human access" also mea
access to laser radiation that can
reflected directly by any single intr
duced flat surface from the interior
the product through any opening
the protective housing of the produc

(16) "Integrated radiance" means r
diant energy per unit area of a radia
ing surface per unit solid angle
emission, expressed in joules pe
square centimeter per steradian (Jcm
sr^{-1}).

(17) "Invisible radiation" mean
laser or collateral radiation havin
wavelengths of equal to or greate
than 180 nm but less than or equal t
400 nm or greater than 710 nm bu
less than or equal to 1.0 X 10^{6} nm (
millimeter).

(18) "Irradiance" means the time
averaged radiant power incident on a
element of a surface divided by th
area of that element, expressed i
watts per square centimeter (W cm^{-2})

(19) "Laser" means any device tha
can be made to produce or amplif
electromagnetic radiation at wave
lenghts greater than 250 nm but les
than or equal to 13,000 nm or, afte
August 20, 1986, at wavelengths equa
to or greater than 180 nm but les
than or equal to 1.0X10^{6} nm primaril
by the process of controlled stimulated emission.

(20) "Laser energy source" means
any device intended for use in conjunction with a laser to supply energy
for the operation of the laser. General
energy sources such as electrical
supply mains or batteries shall not be
considered to constitute laser energy
sources.

(21) "Laser product" means any
manufactured product or assemblage
of components which constitutes, incorporates, or is intended to incorporate a laser or laser system. A laser or
laser system that is intended for use as
a component of an electronic product
shall itself be considered a laser product.

(22) "Laser radiation" means all electromagnetic radiation emitted by a
laser product within the spectral

---

hazard or chronic viewing hazard, and an acute viewing hazard if viewed directly with optical instruments.

[5] Class IIIb levels of laser radiation are considered to be an acute hazard to the skin and eyes from direct radiation.

[6] Class IV levels of laser radiation are considered to be an acute hazard to the skin and eyes from direct and scattered radiation.

range specified in paragraph (b)(19) of this section that is produced as a result of controlled stimulated emission or that is detectable with radiation so produced through the appropriate aperture stop and within the appropriate solid angle of acceptance, as specified in paragraph (e) of this section.

(23) "Laser system" means a laser in combination with an appropriate laser energy source with or without additional incorporated components. See paragraph (c)(2) of this section for an explanation of the term "removable laser system."

(24) "Maintenance" means performance of those adjustments or procedures specified in user information provided by the manufacturer with the laser product which are to be performed by the user for the purpose of assuring the intended performance of the product. It does not include operation or service as defined in paragraph (b) (27) and (38) of this section.

(25) "Maximum output" means the maximum radiant power and, where applicable, the maximum radiant energy per pulse of accessible laser radiation emitted by a laser product during operation, as determined under paragraph (e) of this section.

(26) "Medical laser product" means any laser product which is a medical device as defined in 21 U.S.C. 321(h) and is manufactured, designed, intended or promoted for in vivo laser irradiation of any part of the human body for the purpose of: (i) Diagnosis, surgery, or therapy; or (ii) relative positioning of the human body.

(27) "Operation" means the performance of the laser product over the full range of its functions. It does not include maintenance or service as defined in paragraphs (b) (24) and (38) of this section.

(28) "Protective housing" means those portions of a laser product which are designed to prevent human access to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the prescribed accessible emission limits under conditions specified in this section and in § 1040.11.

(29) "Pulse duration" means the time increment measured between the half-peak-power points at the leading and trailing edges of a pulse.

(30) "Radiance" means time-averaged radiant power per unit area of a radiating surface per unit solid angle of emission, expressed in watts per square centimeter per steradian (W $cm^{-2}sr^{-1}$).

(31) "Radiant energy" means energy emitted, transferred or received in the form of radiation, expressed in joules (J).

(32) "Radiant exposure" means the radiant energy incident on an element of a surface divided by the area of the element, expressed in joules per square centimeter (Jcm^{-2})

(33) "Radiant power" means time-averaged power emitted, transferred or received in the form of radiation, expressed in watts (W).

(34) "Remote interlock connector" means an electrical connector which permits the connection of external remote interlocks.

(35) "Safety interlock" means a device associated with the protective housing of a laser product to prevent human access to excessive radiation in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.

(36) "Sampling interval" means the time interval during which the level of accessible laser or collateral radiation is sampled by a measurement process. The magnitude of the sampling interval in units of seconds is represented by the symbol (*t*).

(37) "Scanned laser radiation" means laser radiation having a time-varying direction, origin or pattern of propagation with respect to a stationary frame of reference.

(38) "Service" means the performance of those procedures or adjustments described in the manufacturer's service instructions which may affect any aspect of the product's performance for which this section and § 1040.11 have applicable requirements. It does not include maintenance or operation as defined in paragraphs (b) (24) and (27) of this section.

(39) "Surveying, leveling, or alignment laser product" means a laser product manufactured, designed, intended or promoted for one or more of the following uses:

(i) Determining and delineating the form, extent, or position of a point, body, or area by taking angular measurement.

(ii) Positioning or adjusting parts in proper relation to one another.

(iii) Defining a plane, level, elevation, or straight line.

(40) "Visible radiation" means laser or collateral radiation having wavelengths of greater than 400 nm but less than or equal to 710 nm.

(41) "Warning logotype" means a logotype as illustrated in either Figure 1 or Figure 2 of paragraph (g) of this section.

(42) "Wavelength" means the propagation wavelength in air of electromagnetic radiation.

(c) *Classification of laser products*—(1) *All laser products.* Each laser product shall be classified in Class I, IIa, II, IIIa, IIIb, or IV in accordance with definitions set forth in paragraphs (b)(5) through (11) of this section. The product classification shall be based on the highest accessible emission level(s) of laser radiation to which human access is possible during operation in accordance with paragraphs (d), (e), and (f)(1) of this section.

(2) *Removable laser systems.* Any laser system that is incorporated into a laser product subject to the requirements of this section and that is capable, without modification, of produ ing laser radiation when removed fro such laser product, shall itself be co sidered a laser product and shall separately subject to the applicable r quirements in this subchapter f laser products of its class. It shall classified on the basis of accessib emission of laser radiation when so r moved.

(d) *Accessible emission limits.* Acce sible emission limits for laser radiatio in each class are specified in Tables II-A, II, III-A, and III-B of this par graph. The factors, k_1 and k_2 vary wit wavelength and emission duratio These factors are given in Table IV this paragraph, with selected numer cal values in Table V of this par graph. Accessible emission limits fo collateral radiation are specified Table VI of this paragraph.

NOTES APPLICABLE TO TABLES I, II-A, II III-A AND III-B:

(1) The factors k_1 and k_2 are wave length-dependent correction factor determined from Table IV.

(2) The variable t in the expression of emission limits is the magnitude o the sampling interval in units of sec onds.

TABLE I

CLASS I ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS FOR LASER RADIATION

Wavelength (nanometers)	Emission duration (seconds)	Class I-Accessible emission limits		
		(value)	(unit)	(quantity)**
≥ 180 but ≤ 400	$\leq 3.0 \times 10^{4}$	$2.4 \times 10^{-5} k_1 k_2$*	Joules(J)*	radiant energy
	$>3.0 \times 10^{4}$	$8.0 \times 10^{-10} k_1 k_2$*	Watts(W)*	radiant power
>400 but ≤ 1400	$>1.0 \times 10^{-9}$ to 2.0×10^{-5}	$2.0 \times 10^{-7} k_1 k_2$	J	radiant energy
	$>2.0 \times 10^{-5}$ to 1.0×10^{1}	$7.0 \times 10^{-4} k_1 k_2 t^{3/4}$	J	radiant energy
	$>1.0 \times 10^{1}$ to 1.0×10^{4}	$3.9 \times 10^{-3} k_1 k_2$	J	radiant energy
	$>1.0 \times 10^{4}$	$3.9 \times 10^{-7} k_1 k_2$	W	radiant power
	and also (See paragraph (d)(4) of this section)			
	$>1.0 \times 10^{-9}$ to 1.0×10^{1}	$10 k_1 k_2 t^{1/3}$	$Jcm^{-2}sr^{-1}$	integrated radiance
	$>1.0 \times 10^{1}$ to 1.0×10^{4}	$20 k_1 k_2$	$Jcm^{-2}sr^{-1}$	integrated radiance
	$>1.0 \times 10^{4}$	$2.0 \times 10^{-3} k_1 k_2$	$Wcm^{-2}sr^{-1}$	radiance
>1400 but ≤ 2500	$>1.0 \times 10^{-9}$ to 1.0×10^{-7}	$7.9 \times 10^{-5} k_1 k_2$	J	radiant energy
	$>1.0 \times 10^{-7}$ to 1.0×10^{1}	$4.4 \times 10^{-3} k_1 k_2 t^{1/4}$	J	radiant energy
	$>1.0 \times 10^{1}$	$7.9 \times 10^{-4} k_1 k_2$	W	radiant power
>2500 but $\leq 1.0 \times 10^{6}$	$>1.0 \times 10^{-9}$ to 1.0×10^{-7}	$1.0 \times 10^{-2} k_1 k_2$	Jcm^{-2}	radiant exposure
	$>1.0 \times 10^{-7}$ to 1.0×10^{1}	$5.6 \times 10^{-1} k_1 k_2 t^{1/4}$	Jcm^{-2}	radiant exposure
	$>1.0 \times 10^{1}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-1} k_1 k_2 t$	Jcm^{-2}	radiant exposure

*Class I accessible emission limits for wavelengths equal to or greater than 180 nm but less than or equal to 400 nm shall not exceed the Class I accessible emission limits for the wavelengths greater than 1400 nm but less than or equal to 1.0×10^{6} nm with a k_1 and k_2 of 1.0 for comparable sampling intervals.

**Measurement parameters and test conditions shall be in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1), (2), (3), and (4), and (e) of this section.

TABLE II-A

CLASS IIa ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS FOR LASER RADIATION

CLASS IIa ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS ARE IDENTICAL TO CLASS I ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS EXCEPT WITHIN THE FOLLOWING RANGE OF WAVELENGTHS AND EMISSION DURATIONS:				
Wavelength	Emission duration	Class IIa-Accessible emission limits		
(nanometers)	(seconds)	(value)	(unit)	(quantity)*
>400 but $\leq$710	$>1.0 \times 10^{3}$	3.9×10^{-6}	W	radiant power

*Measurement parameters and test conditions shall be in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1), (2), (3), and (4), and (e) of this section.

TABLE II

CLASS II ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS FOR LASER RADIATION

CLASS II ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS ARE IDENTICAL TO CLASS I ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS EXCEPT WITHIN THE FOLLOWING RANGE OF WAVELENGTHS AND EMISSION DURATIONS:				
Wavelength	Emission duration	Class II-Accessible emission limits		
(nanometers)	(seconds)	(value)	(unit)	(quantity)*
>400 but $\leq$710	$>2.5 \times 10^{-1}$	1.0×10^{-3}	W	radiant power

TABLE III-A

CLASS IIIa ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS FOR LASER RADIATION

CLASS IIIa ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS ARE IDENTICAL TO CLASS I ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS EXCEPT WITHIN THE FOLLOWING RANGE OF WAVELENGTHS AND EMISSION DURATIONS:				
Wavelength	Emission duration	Class IIIa-Accessible emission limits		
(nanometers)	(seconds)	(value)	(unit)	(quantity)*
>400 but ≤710	>3.8 X 10^{-4}	5.0 X 10^{-3}	W	radiant power

*Measurement parameters and test conditions shall be in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1), (2), (3), and (4), and (e) of this section.

TABLE III-B

CLASS IIIb ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS FOR LASER RADIATION

Wavelength	Emission duration	Class IIIb-Accessible emission limits		
(nanometers)	(seconds)	(value)	(unit)	(quantity)*
≥180 but	≤2.5 X 10^{-1}	3.8 X $10^{-4}k_1k_2$	J	radiant energy
≤400	>2.5 X 10^{-1}	1.5 X $10^{-3}k_1k_2$	W	radiant power
>400	>1.0 X 10^{-9} to 2.5 X 10^{-1}	$10k_1k_2t^{1/3}$	Jcm^{-2}	radiant exposure
but		to a maximum value		
		of 10	Jcm^{-2}	radiant exposure
≤1400	>2.5 X 10^{-1}	5.0 X 10^{-1}	W	radiant power
>1400 but	>1.0 X 10^{-9} to 1.0 X 10^{1}	10	Jcm^{-2}	radiant exposure
≤1.0 X 10^{6}	>1.0 X 10^{1}	5.0 X 10^{-1}	W	radiant power

*Measurement parameter and test conditions shall be in accordance with paragraphs (d)(1), (2), (3), and (4), and (e) of this section.

TABLE IV

VALUES OF WAVELENGTH DEPENDENT CORRECTION FACTORS k_1 AND k_2

Wavelength (nanometers)	k_1	k_2		
180 to 302.4	1.0	1.0		
> 302.4 to 315	$10^{\left[\frac{\lambda - 302.4}{5}\right]}$	1.0		
> 315 to 400	330.0	1.0		
> 400 to 700	1.0	1.0		
> 700 to 800	$10^{\left[\frac{\lambda - 700}{515}\right]}$	if: $t \leq \frac{10100}{\lambda - 699}$ then: $k_2 = 1.0$	if: $\frac{10100}{\lambda - 699} < t \leq 10^4$ then: $k_2 = \frac{t(\lambda - 699)}{10100}$	if: $t > 10^4$ then: $k_2 = \frac{\lambda - 699}{1.01}$
> 800 to 1060	$10^{\left[\frac{\lambda - 700}{515}\right]}$	if: $t \leq 100$ then: $k_2 = 1.0$	if: $100 < t \leq 10^4$ then: $k_2 = \frac{t}{100}$	if: $t > 10^4$ then: $k_2 = 100$
> 1060 to 1400	5.0			
> 1400 to 1535	1.0	1.0		
> 1535 to 1545	$t \leq 10^{-7}$ $k_1 = 100.0$ $t > 10^{-7}$ $k_1 = 1.0$	1.0		
> 1545 to 1.0×10^6	1.0	1.0		

Note: The variables in the expressions are the magnitudes of the sampling interval(t), in

TABLE V

SELECTED NUMERICAL SOLUTIONS FOR k_1 AND k_2

Wavelength (nanometers)	k_1	k_2				
		$t \leq 100$	$t = 300$	$t = 1000$	$t = 3000$	$t \geq 10{,}000$
180	1.0	1.0				
300	1.0					
302	1.0					
303	1.32					
304	2.09					
305	3.31					
306	5.25					
307	8.32					
308	13.2					
309	20.9					
310	33.1					
311	52.5					
312	83.2					
313	132.0					
314	209.0					
315	330.0					
400	330.0					
401	1.0					
500	1.0					
600	1.0					
700	1.0					
710	1.05	1	1	1.1	3.3	11.0
720	1.09	1	1	2.1	6.3	21.0
730	1.14	1	1	3.1	9.3	31.0
740	1.20	1	1.2	4.1	12.0	41.0
750	1.25	1	1.5	5.0	15.0	50.0
760	1.31	1	1.8	6.0	18.0	60.0
770	1.37	1	2.1	7.0	21.0	70.0
780	1.43	1	2.4	8.0	24.0	80.0
790	1.50	1	2.7	9.0	27.0	90.0
800	1.56	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
850	1.95	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
900	2.44	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
950	3.05	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
1000	3.82	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
1050	4.78	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
1060	5.00	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
1100	5.00	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
1400	5.00	1	3.0	10.0	30.0	100.0
1500	1.0	1.0				
1540	100.0*					
1600	1.0					
1.0×10^6	1.0					

* The factor k_1 = 100.0 when $t \leq 10^{-7}$, and k_1 = 1.0 when $t > 10^{-7}$

Note: The variable (t) is the magnitude of the sampling interval in units of seconds.

TABLE VI

ACCESSIBLE EMISSION LIMITS FOR COLLATERAL

RADIATION FROM LASER PRODUCTS

1. Accessible emission limits for collateral radiation having wavelengths greater than 180 nanometers but less than or equal to 1.0 X 10^6 nanometers are identical to the accessible emission limits of Class I laser radiation, as determined from Tables I and IV in this paragraph.

i. In the wavelength range of less than or equal to 400 nanometers, for all emission durations;

ii. In the wavelength range of greater than 400 nanometers, for all emission durations less than or equal to 1 X 10^3 seconds and, when applicable under paragraph (f)(8) of this section, for all emission durations.

2. Accessible emission limit for collateral radiation within the x-ray range of wavelengths is 0.5 milliroentgen in an hour, averaged over a cross-section parallel to the external surface of the product, having an area of 10 square centimeters with no dimension greater than 5 centimeters.

(1) *Beam of a single wavelength.* Laser or collateral radiation of a single wavelength exceeds the accessible emission limits of a class if its accessible emission level is greater than the accessible emission limit of that class within any of the ranges of emission duration specified in Tables I, II-A, II, III-A, and III-B of this paragraph.

(2) *Beam of multiple wavelengths in same range.* Laser or collateral radiation having two or more wavelengths within any one of the wavelength ranges specified in Tables I, II-A, II, III-A, and III-B of this paragraph exceeds the accessible emission limits of a class if the sum of the ratios of the accessible emission level to the corresponding accessible emission limit at each such wavelength is greater than unity for that combination of emission duration and wavelength distribution which results in the maximum sum.

(3) *Beam with multiple wavelengths in different ranges.* Laser or collateral radiation having wavelengths within two or more of the wavelength ranges specified in Tables I, II-A, II, III-A, and III-B of this paragraph exceeds the accessible emission limits of a class if it exceeds the applicable limits within any one of those wavelength ranges. This determination is made for each wavelength range in accordance with paragraph (d) (1) or (2) of this section.

(4) *Class I dual limits.* Laser or collateral radiation in the wavelength range of greater than 400 nm but less than or equal to 1.400 nm exceeds the accessible emission limits of Class I if it exceeds both:

(i) The Class I accessible emission limits for radiant energy within any range of emission duration specified in Table I of this paragraph, and

(ii) The Class I accessible emission limits for integrated radiance within any range of emission duration specified in Table I of this paragraph.

(e) *Tests for determination of compliance*—(1) *Tests for certification.* Tests on which certification under § 1010.2 is based shall account for all errors and statistical uncertainties in the measurement process. Because compliance with the standard is required for the useful life of a product such tests shall also account for increases in emission and degradation in radiation safety with age.

(2) *Test conditions.* Except as provided in § 1010.13, tests for compliance with each of the applicable requirements of this section and § 1040.11 shall be made during operation, maintenance, or service as appropriate:

(i) Under those conditions and procedures which maximize the accessible emission levels, including start-up, stabilized emission, and shut-down of the laser product; and

(ii) With all controls and adjustments listed in the operation, maintenance, and service instructions adjusted in combination to result in the maximum accessible emission level of radiation; and

(iii) At points in space to which human access is possible in the product configuration which is necessary to determine compliance with each requirement, e.g., if operation may require removal of portions of the protective housing and defeat of safety interlocks, measurements shall be made at points accessible in that product configuration; and

(iv) With the measuring instrument detector so positioned and so oriented with respect to the laser product as to result in the maximum detection of radiation by the instrument; and

(v) For a laser product other than a laser system, with the laser coupled to that type of laser energy source which is specified as compatible by the laser product manufacturer and which produces the maximum emission level of accessible radiation from that product.

(3) *Measurement parameters.* Accessible emission levels of laser and collateral radiation shall be based upon the following measurements as appropriate, or their equivalent:

(i) For laser products intended to be used in a locale where the emitted laser radiation is unlikely to be viewed with optical instruments, the radiant power (W) or radiant energy (J) detectable through a circular aperture stop having a diameter of 7 millimeters and within a circular solid angle of acceptance of 1 X 10^{-3} steradian with collimating optics of 5 diopters or less. For scanned laser radiation, the direction of the solid angle of acceptance shall change as needed to maximize detectable radiation, with an angular speed of up to 5 radians/second. A 50 millimeter diameter aperture stop with the same collimating optics and acceptance angle stated above shall be used for all other laser products (except that a 7 millimeter diameter aperture stop shall be used in the measurement of scanned laser radiation emitted by laser products manufactured on or before August 20, 1986.

(ii) The irradiance (W cm^{-2}) or radiant exposure (J cm^{-2} equivalent to the radiant power (W) or radiant energy (J) detectable through a circular aperture stop having a diameter of 7 millimeters and, for irradiance, within a circular solid angle of acceptance of 1×10^{-3} steradian with collimating optics of 5 diopters or less, divided by the area of the aperture stop (cm^{-2}).

(iii) The radiance (W $\text{cm}^{-2}\,\text{sr}^{-1}$) or integrated radiance (J $\text{cm}^{-2}\,\text{sr}^{-1}$) equivalent to the radiant power (W) or radiant energy (J) detectable through a circular aperture stop having a diameter of 7 millimeters and within a circular solid angle of acceptance of 1×10^{-5} steradian with collimating optics of 5 diopters or less, divided by that solid angle (sr) and by the area of the aperture stop (cm^{-2}).

(f) *Performance requirements*—(1) *Protective housing.* Each laser product shall have a protective housing that prevents human access during operation to laser and collateral radiation that exceed the limits of Class I and Table VI, respectively, wherever and whenever such human access is not necessary for the product to perform its intended function. Wherever and whenever human access to laser radiation levels that exceed the limits of Class I is necessary, these levels shall not exceed the limits of the lowest class necessary to perform the intended function(s) of the product.

(2) *Safety interlocks.* (i) Each laser product, regardless of its class, shall be provided with at least one safety interlock for each portion of the protective housing which is designed to be removed or displaced during operation or maintenance, if removal or displacement of the protective housing could permit, in the absence of such interlock(s), human access to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limit applicab under paragraph (f)(1) of this sectio

(ii) Each required safety interloc unless defeated, shall prevent suc human access to laser and collater radiation upon removal or displac ment of such portion of the protecti housing

(iii) Either multiple safety interlock or a means to preclude removal or di placement of the interlocked portio of the protective housing shall be pr vided, if failure of a single interloc would allow;

(*a*) Human access to a level of las radiation in excess of the accessib emission limits of Class IIIa; or

(*b*) Laser radiation in excess of th accessible emission limits of Class II be emitted directly through the ope ing created by removal or displac ment of the interlocked portion of th protective housing.

(iv) Laser products that incorpora safety interlocks designed to allo safety interlock defeat shall incorp rate a means of visual or aural indic tion of interlock defeat. During inte lock defeat, such indication shall b visible or audible whenever the las product is energized, with and withou the associated portion of the prote tive housing removed or displaced.

(v) Replacement of a removed or di placed portion of the protective hou ing shall not be possible while r quired safety interlocks are defeated.

(3) *Remote interlock connector.* Eac laser system classified as a Class III or IV laser product shall incorporate readily available remote interlock co nector having an electrical potenti difference of no greater than 130 roo mean-square volts between terminal When the terminals of the connect are not electrically joined, huma access to all laser and collateral rad ation from the laser product in exce of the accessible emission limits Class I and Table VI shall be prevented.

(4) *Key control.* Each laser syste classified as a Class IIIb or IV las product shall incorporate a key-act ated master control. The key shall b removable and the laser shall not b operable when the key is removed.

(5) *Laser radiation emission indic tor.* (i) Each laser system classified

a Class II or IIIa laser product shall incorporate an emission indicator that provides a visible or audible signal during emission of accessible laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I.

(ii) Each laser system classified as a Class IIIb or IV laser product shall incorporate an emission indicator which provides a visible or audible signal during emission of accessible laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I, and sufficiently prior to emission of such radiation to allow appropriate action to avoid exposure to the laser radiation.

(iii) For laser systems manufactured on or before August 20, 1986, if the laser and laser energy source are housed separately and can be operated at a separation distance of greater than 2 meters, both laser and laser energy source shall incorporate an emission indicator as required in accordance with paragraph (f)(5) (i) or (ii) of this section. For laser systems manufactured after August 20, 1986, each separately housed laser and operation control of a laser system that regulates the laser or collateral radiation emitted by a product during operation shall incorporate an emission indicator as required in accordance with paragraph (f)(5) (i) or (ii) of this section, if the laser or operation control can be operated at a separation distance greater than 2 meters from any other separately housed portion of the laser product incorporating an emission indicator.

(iv) Any visible signal required by paragraph (f)(5) (i) or (ii) of this section shall be clearly visible through protective eyewear designed specifically for the wavelength(s) of the emitted laser radiation.

(v) Emission indicators required by paragraph (f)(5) (i) or (ii) of this section shall be located so that viewing does not require human exposure to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI.

(6) *Beam attenuator.* (i) Each laser system classified as a Class II, III, or IV laser product shall be provided with one or more permanently attached means, other than laser energy source switch(es), electrical supply main connectors, or the key-actuated master control, capable of preventing access by any part of the human body to all laser and collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI.

(ii) If the configuration, design, or function of the laser product would make unnecessary compliance with the requirement in paragraph (f)(6)(i) of this section, the Director, Office of Compliance (HFZ-300), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, may, upon written application by the manufacturer, approve alternate means to accomplish the radiation protection provided by the beam attenuator.

(7) *Location of controls.* Each Class IIa, II, III, or IV laser product shall have operational and adjustment controls located so that human exposure to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI is unnecessary for operation or adjustment of such controls.

(8) *Viewing optics.* All viewing optics, viewports, and display screens incorporated into a laser product, regardless of its class, shall limit the levels of laser and collateral radiation accessible to the human eye by means of such viewing optics, viewports, or display screens during operation or maintenance to less than the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI. For any shutter or variable attenuator incorporated into such viewing optics, viewports, or display screens, a means shall be provided:

(i) To prevent access by the human eye to laser and collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI whenever the shutter is opened or the attenuator varied.

(ii) To preclude, upon failure of such means as required in paragraph (f)(8)(i) of this section, opening the shutter or varying the attenuator when access by the human eye is possible to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI.

(9) *Scanning safeguard.* Laser products that emit accessible scanned laser radiation shall not, as a result of any failure causing a change in either scan

velocity or amplitude, permit human access to laser radiation in excess of:

(i) The accessible emission limits of the class of the product, or

(ii) The accessible emission limits of the class of the scanned laser radiation if the product is Class IIIb or IV and the accessible emission limits of Class IIIa would be exceeded solely as result of such failure.

(10) *Manual reset mechanism.* Each laser system manufactured after August 20, 1986, and classified as a Class IV laser product shall be provided with a manual reset to enable resumption of laser radiation emission after interruption of emission caused by the use of a remote interlock or after an interruption of emission in excess of 5 seconds duration due to the unexpected loss of main electrical power.

(g) *Labeling requirements.* In addition to the requirements of §§ 1010.2 and 1010.3, each laser product sh
subject to the applicable labelin
quirements of this paragraph.

(1) *Class IIa and II designation*
warnings. (i) Each Class IIa
product shall have affixed a
bearing the following wording: "
IIa Laser Product—Avoid Long-
Viewing of Direct Laser Radiation

(ii) Each Class II laser product
have affixed a label bearing the
ing logotype A (Figure 1 in this
graph) and including the follo
wording:

[Position I on the logotype]

"LASER RADIATION—DO N
STARE INTO BEAM"; and

[Position 3 on the logotype]

"CLASS II LASER PRODUCT

WARNING LOGOTYPE A

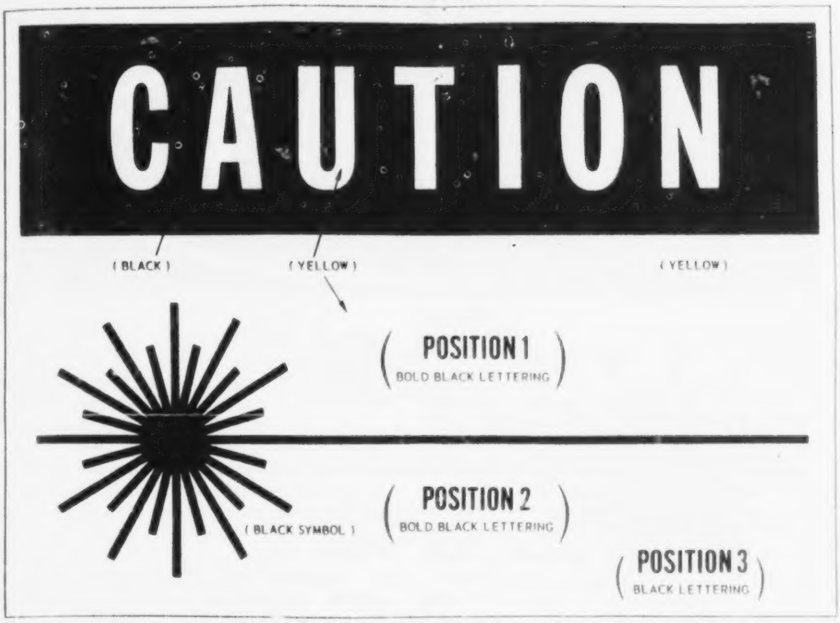

CAUTION
(BLACK)
(YELLOW)
(YELLOW)
POSITION 1
BOLD BLACK LETTERING
(BLACK SYMBOL)
POSITION 2
BOLD BLACK LETTERING
POSITION 3
BLACK LETTERING

FIGURE 1

(2) *Class IIIa and IIIb designations and warnings.* (i) Each Class IIIa laser product with an irradiance less than or equal to 2.5×10^{-3} W cm^{-2} shall have affixed a label bearing the warning logotype A (Figure 1 of paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of this section) and including the following wording:

[Position 1 on the logotype]

"LASER RADIATION—DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS"; and,

[Position 3 on the logotype]

"CLASS IIIa LASER PRODUCT".

(ii) Each Class IIIa laser product with an irradiance greater than 2.5×10^{-3} W cm^{-2} shall have affixed a label bearing the warning logotype B (Figure 2 in this paragraph) and including the following wording:

[Position 1 on the logotype]

"LASER RADIATION—AVOID DIRECT EYE EXPOSURE"; and,

[Position 3 on the logotype]

"CLASS IIIa LASER PRODUCT".

WARNING LOGOTYPE B

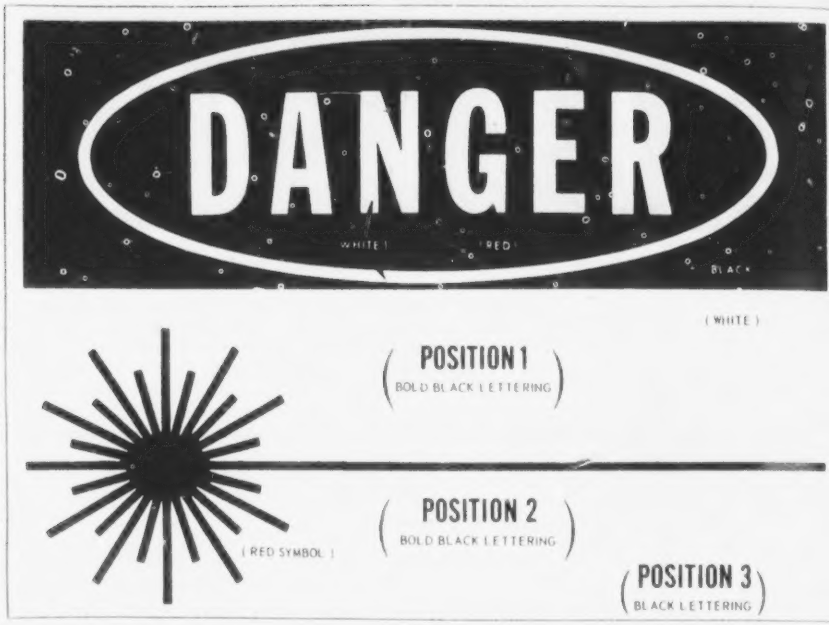

DANGER
(WHITE)
(RED)
BLACK
(WHITE)
POSITION 1
BOLD BLACK LETTERING
POSITION 2
BOLD BLACK LETTERING
(RED SYMBOL)
POSITION 3
BLACK LETTERING

FIGURE 2

(iii) Each Class IIIb laser product shall have affixed a label bearing the warning logotype B (Figure 2 of paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section) and including the following wording:

[Position 1 on the logotype]

"LASER RADIATION—AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM"; and,

[Position 3 on the logotype]

"CLASS IIIb LASER PRODUCT".

(3) *Class IV designation and warning.* Each Class IV laser product shall have affixed a label bearing the warning logotype B (Figure 2 of paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section), and including the following wording:

[Position 1 on the logotype]

"LASER RADIATION—AVOID EY
OR SKIN EXPOSURE TO DIREC
OR SCATTERED RADIATION
and,

[Position 3 on the logotype]

"CLASS IV LASER PRODUCT".

(4) *Radiation output information o warning logotype.* Each Class II, II and IV laser product shall state in ap propriate units, at position 2 on the re quired warning logotype, the maxi mum output of laser radiation, th pulse duration when appropriate, an the laser medium or emitte wavelength(s).

(5) *Aperture label.* Each laser prod uct, except medical laser products an Class IIa laser products, shall have af fixed, in close proximity to each aper

ture through which is emitted accessible laser or collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and Table VI of paragraph (d) of this section, a label(s) bearing the following wording as applicable.

(i) "AVOID EXPOSURE—Laser radiation is emitted from this aperture," if the radiation emitted through such aperture is laser radiation.

(ii) "AVOID EXPOSURE—Hazardous electromagnetic radiation is emitted from this aperture," if the radiation emitted through such aperture is collateral radiation described in Table VI, item 1.

(iii) "AVOID EXPOSURE—Hazardous x-rays are emitted from this aperture," if the radiation emitted through such aperture is collateral radiation described in Table VI, item 2.

(6) *Labels for noninterlocked protective housings.* For each laser product, labels shall be provided for each portion of the protective housing which has no safety interlock and which is designed to be displaced or removed during operation, maintenance, or service, and thereby could permit human access to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the limits of Class I and Table VI. Such labels shall be visible on the protective housing prior to displacement or removal of such portion of the protective housing and visible on the product in close proximity to the opening created by removal or displacement of such portion of the protective housing, and shall include the wording:

(i) "CAUTION—Laser radiation when open. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM." for Class II accessible laser radiation.

(ii) "CAUTION—Laser radiation when open. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS." for Class IIIa accessible laser radiation with an irradiance less than or equal to 2.5×10^{-3} W cm^{-2}.

(iii) "DANGER—Laser radiation when open. AVOID DIRECT EYE EXPOSURE." for Class IIIa accessible laser radiation with an irradiance greater than 2.5×10^{-3} W cm^{-2}.

(iv) "DANGER—Laser radiation when open. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM." for Class IIIb accessible laser radiation.

(v) "DANGER—Laser radiation when open. AVOID EYE OR SKIN EXPOSURE TO DIRECT OR SCATTERED RADIATION." for Class IV accessible laser radiation.

(vi) "CAUTION—Hazardous electromagnetic radiation when open." for collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits in Table VI, item 1 of paragraph (d) of this section.

(vii) "CAUTION—Hazardous x-rays when open." for collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits in Table VI, item 2 of paragraph (d) of this section.

(7) *Labels for defeatably interlocked protective housings.* For each laser product, labels shall be provided for each defeatably interlocked (as described in paragraph (f)(2)(iv) of this section) portion of the protective housing which is designed to be displaced or removed during operation, maintenance, or service, and which upon interlock defeat could permit human access to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the limits of Class I or Table VI. Such labels shall be visible on the product prior to and during interlock defeat and in close proximity to the opening created by the removal or displacement of such portion of the protective housing, and shall include the wording:

(i) "CAUTION—Laser radiation when open and interlock defeated. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM." for Class II accessible laser radiation.

(ii) "CAUTION—Laser radiation when open and interlock defeated. DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM OR VIEW DIRECTLY WITH OPTICAL INSTRUMENTS." for Class IIIa accessible laser radiation with an irradiance less than or equal to 2.5×10^{-3} W cm^{-2}.

(iii) "DANGER—Laser radiation when open and interlock defeated. AVOID DIRECT EYE EXPOSURE." for Class IIIa accessible laser radiation when an irradiance greater than 2.5×10^{-3} W cm^{-2}.

(iv) "DANGER—Laser radiation when open and interlock defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM." for Class IIIb accessible laser radiation.

(v) "DANGER—Laser radiation when open and interlock defeated. AVOID EYE OR SKIN EXPOSURE TO DIRECT OR SCATTERED RADIATION." for Clas IV accessible laser radiation.

(vi) "CAUTION—Hazardous electromagnetic radiation when open and interlock defeated." for collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits in Table VI. item 1 of paragraph (d) of this section.

(vii) "CAUTION—Hazardous x-rays when open and interlock defeated." for collateral radiation in excess of the accesible emission limits in Table VI. item 2 of paragraph (d) of this section.

(8) *Warning for visible and/or invisible radiation.* On the labels specified in this paragraph, if the laser or collateral radiation referred to is:

(i) Invisible radiation, the word "invisible" shall appropriately precede the word "radiation"; or

(ii) Visible and invisible radiation, the words "visible and invisible" or "visible and/or invisible" shall appropriately precede the word "radiation."

(iii) Visible laser radiation only, the phrase "laser light" may replace the phrase "laser radiation."

(9) *Positioning of labels.* All labels affixed to a laser product shall be positioned so as to make unnecessary, during reading, human exposure to laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I radiation or the limits of collateral radiation established to Table VI of paragraph (d) of this section.

(10) *Label specifications.* Labels required by this section and § 1040.11 shall be permanently affixed to, or inscribed on, the laser product, legible, and clearly visible during operation, maintenance, or service, as appropriate. If the size, configuration, design, or function of the laser product would preclude compliance with the requirements for any required label or would render the required wording of such label inappropriate or ineffective, the Director, Office of Compliance (HFZ-300), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, on the Director's own initiative or upon written application by the manufacturer, may approve alternate means of providing such label(s) or alternate wording for such label(s) as applicable.

(h) *Informational requirements*—(1) *User information.* Manufacturers of laser products shall provide as an integral part of any user instruction or operation manual which is regularly supplied with the product, or, if not so supplied, shall cause to be provided with each laser product:

(i) Adequate instructions for assembly, operation, and maintenance, including clear warnings concerning precautions to avoid possible exposure to laser and collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits in Tables I, II-A, II, III-A, III-B, and VI of paragraph (d) of this section, and a schedule of maintenance necessary to keep the product in compliance with this section and § 1040.11.

(ii) A statement of the magnitude, in appropriate units, of the pulse durations(s), maximum radiant power and, where applicable, the maximum radiant energy per pulse of the accessible laser radiation detectable in each direction in excess of the accessible emission limits in Table I of paragraph (d) of this section determined under paragraph (e) of this section.

(iii) Legible reproductions (color optional) of all labels and hazard warnings required by paragraph (g) of this section and § 1040.11 to be affixed to the laser product or provided with the laser product, including the information required for positions 1, 2, and 3 of the applicable logotype (Figure 1 of paragraph (g)(1)(ii) or Figure 2 or paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section). The corresponding position of each label affixed to the product shall be indicated or, if provided with the product, a statement that such labels could not be affixed to the product but were supplied with the product and a statement of the form and manner in which they were supplied shall be provided.

(iv) A listing of all controls, adjustments, and procedures for operation and maintenance, including the warning "Caution—use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure."

(v) In the case of laser products other than laser systems, a statment of the compatibility requirements for a laser energy source that will assure compliance of the laser product with this section and § 1040.11.

(vi) In the case of laser products classified with a 7 millimeter diameter aperture stop as provided in paragraph (e)(3)(i) of this section, if the use of a 50 millimeter diameter aperture stop would result in a higher clsssification of the product, the following warning shall be included in the user information: "CAUTION—The use of optical instruments with this product will increase eye hazard."

(2) *Purchasing and servicing information.* Manufacturers of laser products shall provide or cause to be provided:

(i) In all catalogs, specification sheets, and descriptive brochures pertaining to each laser product, a legible reproduction (color optional) of the class designation and warning required by paragraph (g) of this section to be affixed to that product, including the information required for positions 1, 2, and 3 of the applicable logotype (Figure 1 of paragraph (g)(1)(ii) or Figure 2 of paragraph (g)(2)(ii) of this section).

(ii) To servicing dealers and distributors and to others upon request at a cost not to exceed the cost of preparation and distribution, adequate instructions for service adjustments and service procedures for each laser product model, including clear warnings and precautions to be taken to avoid possible exposure to laser and collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits in Tables I, II-A, II, III-A, III-B, and VI of paragraph (d) of this section, and a schedule of maintenance necessary to keep the product in compliance with this section and § 1040.11; and in all such service instructions, a listing of those controls and procedures that could be utilized by persons other than the manufacturers or the manufacturer's agents to increase accessible emission levels of radiation and a clear description of the location of displaceable portions of the protective housing that could allow human access to laser or collateral radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits in Tables I, II-A, II, III-A, III-B, and VI of paragraph (d) of this section. The instructions shall include protective procedures for service personnel to avoid exposure to levels of laser and collateral radiation known to be hazardous for each procedure or sequence of procedures to be accomplished, and legible reproductions (color optional) of required labels and hazard warnings.

(i) *Modification of a certified product.* The modification of a laser product, previously certified under § 1010.2, by any person engaged in the business of manufacturing, assembling, or modifying laser products shall be construed as manufacturing under the act if the modification affects any aspect of the product's performance or intended function(s) for which this section and § 1040.11 have an applicable requirement. The manufacturer who performs such modification shall recertify and reidentify the product in accordance with the provisions of §§ 1010.2. and 1010.3.

(The information collection requirements contained in paragraph (a)(3)(ii) were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0910-0176)

[50 FR 33688, Aug. 20, 1985; 50 FR 42156, Oct. 18, 1985]

§ 1040.11 Specific purpose laser products.

(a) *Medical laser products.* Each medical laser product shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of § 1040.10 for laser products of its class. In addition, the manufacturer shall:

(1) Incorporate in each Class III or IV medical laser product a means for the measurement of the level of that laser radiation intended for irradiation of the human body. Such means may have an error in measurement of no more than 20 percent when calibrated in accordance with paragraph (a)(2) of this section. Indication of the measurement shall be in International System Units. The requirements of this paragraph do not apply to any laser radiation that is all of the following:

(i) Of a level less than the accessible limits of Class IIIa; and

(ii) Used for relative positioning of the human body; and

(iii) Not used for irradiation of the human eye for ophthalmic purposes.

(2) Supply with each Class III or IV medical laser product instructions specifying a procedure and schedule for calibration of the measurement system required by paragraph (a)(1) of this section.

(3) Affix to each medical laser product, in close proximity to each aperture through which is emitted accessible laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I, a label bearing the wording: "Laser aperture."

(b) *Surveying, leveling, and alignment laser products.* Each surveying, leveling, or alignment laser product shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of § 1040.10 for a Class I, IIa, II or IIIa laser product and shall not permit human access to laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class IIIa.

(c) *Demonstration laser products.* Each demonstration laser product shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of § 1040.10 for a Class I, IIa, II, or IIIa laser product and shall not permit human access to laser radiation in excess of the accessible emission limits of Class I and, if applicable, Class IIa, Class II, or Class IIIa.

[50 FR 33702, Aug. 20, 1985]

§ 1040.20 Sunlamp products and ultraviolet lamps intended for use in sunlamp products.

(a) *Applicability.* (1) The provisions of this section, as amended, are applicable as specified herein to the following products manufactured on or after September 8, 1986.

(i) Any sunlamp product.

(ii) Any ultraviolet lamp intended for use in any sunlamp product.

(2) Sunlamp products and ultraviolet lamps manufactured on or after May 7, 1980, but before September 8, 1986, are subject to the provisions of this section as published in the FEDERAL REGISTER of November 9, 1979 (44 FR 65357).

(b) *Definitions.* As used in this section the following definitions apply:

(1) "Exposure position" means any position, distance, orientation, or location relative to the radiating surfac of the sunlamp product at which th user is intended to be exposed to ultr violet radiation from the product, recommended by the manufacturer.

(2) "Intended" means the same "intended uses" in § 801.4.

(3) "Irradiance" means the radiar power incident on a surface at a spec fied location and orientation relati to the radiating surface divided by th area of the surface, as the area b comes vanishingly small, expressed i units of watts per square centimet (W/cm²).

(4) "Maximum exposure time means the greatest continuous exp sure time interval recommended b the manufacturer of the product.

(5) "Maximum timer interval means the greatest time interval se ting on the timer of a product.

(6) "Protective eyewear" means an device designed to be worn by users a product to reduce exposure of th eyes to radiation emitted by the product.

(7) "Spectral irradiance" means th irradiance resulting from radiatio within a wavelength range divided b the wavelength range as the range b comes vanishingly small, expressed i units of watts per square centimet per nanometer (W/(cm²/nm)).

(8) "Spectral transmittance" mean the spectral irradiance transmitte through protective eyewear divided b the spectral irradiance incident on th protective eyewear.

(9) "Sunlamp product" means an electronic product designed to incorp rate one or more ultraviolet lamps an intended for irradiation of any part o the living human body, by ultraviole radiation with wavelengths in air b tween 200 and 400 nanometers, t induce skin tanning.

(10) "Timer" means any device in corporated into a product that termi nates radiation emission after a prese time interval.

(11) "Ultraviolet lamp" means an lamp that produces ultraviolet radi ation in the wavelength interval of 20 to 400 nanometers in air and that is in tended for use in any sunlamp product.

(c) *Performance requirements*—(1 *Irradiance ratio limits.* For each sun lamp product and ultraviolet lamp, the ratio of the irradiance within the wavelength range of greater than 200 nanometers through 260 nanometers to the irradiance within the wavelength range of greater than 260 nanometers through 320 nanometers may not exceed 0.003 at any distance and direction from the product or lamp.

(2) *Timer system.* (i) Each sunlamp product shall incorporate a timer system with multiple timer settings adequate for the recommended exposure time intervals for different exposure positions and expected results of the products as specified in the label required by paragraph (d) of this section.

(ii) The maximum timer interval(s) may not exceed the manufacturer's recommended maximum exposure time(s) that is indicated on the label required by paragraph (d)(1)(iv) of this section.

(iii) No timer interval may have an error greater than 10 percent of the maximum timer interval of the product.

(iv) The timer may not automatically reset and cause radiation emission to resume for a period greater than the unused portion of the timer cycle, when emission from the sunlamp product has been terminated.

(v) The timer requirements do not preclude a product from allowing a user to reset the timer before the end of the preset time interval.

(3) *Control for termination of radiation emission.* Each sunlamp product shall incorporate a control on the product to enable the person being exposed to terminate manually radiation emission from the product at any time without disconnecting the electrical plug or removing the ultraviolet lamp.

(4) *Protective eyewear.* (i) Each sunlamp product shall be accompanied by the number of sets of protective eyewear that is equal to the maximum number of persons that the instructions provided under paragraph (e)(1)(ii) of this section recommend to be exposed simultaneously to radiation from such product.

(ii) The spectral transmittance to the eye of the protective eyewear required by paragraph (c)(4)(i) of this section shall not exceed a value of 0.001 over the wavelength range of greater than 200 nanometers 320 nanometers and an value of 0.01 over the wavelength range of greater than 320 nanometers through 400 nanometers, and shall be sufficient over the wavelength greater than 400 nanometers to enable the user to see clearly enough to reset the timer.

(5) *Compatibility of lamps.* An ultraviolet lamp may not be capable of insertion and operation in either the "single-contact medium screw" or the "double-contact medium screw" lampholders described in American National Standard C81.10-1976, Specifications for Electric Lamp Bases and Holders—Screw-Shell Types, which is incorporated by reference. Copies are available from the American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018, or available for inspection at the Office of the Federal Register, 1100 L St. NW., Washington, DC 20408.

(d) *Label requirements.* In addition to the labeling requirements in Part 801 and the certification and identification requirements of §§ 1010.2 and 1010.3, each sunlamp product and ultraviolet lamp shall be subject to the labeling requirements prescribed in this paragraph and paragraph (e) of this section.

(1) *Labels for sunlamp products.* Each sunlamp product shall have a label(s) which contains:

(i) A warning statement with the words "DANGER—Ultraviolet radiation. Follow instructions. Avoid overexposure. As with natural sunlight, overexposure can cause eye and skin injury and allergic reactions. Repeated exposure may cause premature aging of the skin and skin cancer. WEAR PROTECTIVE EYEWEAR; FAILURE TO MAY RESULT IN SEVERE BURNS OR LONG-TERM INJURY TO THE EYES. Medications or cosmetics may increase your sensitivity to the ultraviolet radiation. Consult physician before using sunlamp if you are using medications or have a history of skin problems or believe yourself especially sensitive to sunlight. If you do not tan in the sun, you are unlikely to tan from the use of this product."

(ii) Recommended exposure position(s). Any exposure position may be expressed either in terms of a distance specified both in meters and in feet (or in inches) or through the use of markings or other means to indicate clearly the recommended exposure position.

(iii) Directions for achieving the recommended exposure position(s) and a warning that the use of other positions may result in overexposure.

(iv) A recommended exposure schedule including duration and spacing of sequential exposures and maximum exposure time(s) in minutes.

(v) A statement of the time it may take before the expected results appear.

(vi) Designation of the ultraviolet lamp type to be used in the product.

(2) *Labels for ultraviolet lamps.* Each ultraviolet lamp shall have a label which contains:

(i) The words "Sunlamp—DANGER—Ultraviolet radiation. Follow instructions."

(ii) The model identification.

(iii) The words "Use ONLY in fixture equipped with a timer."

(3) *Label specifications.* (i) Any label prescribed in this paragraph for sunlamp products shall be permanently affixed or inscribed on an exterior surface of the product when fully assembled for use so as to be legible and readily accessible to view by the person being exposed immediately before the use of the product.

(ii) Any label prescribed in this paragraph for ultraviolet lamps shall be permanently affixed or inscribed on the product so as to be legible and readily accessible to view.

(iii) If the size, configuration, design, or function of the sunlamp product or ultraviolet lamp would preclude compliance with the requirements for any required label or would render the required wording of such label inappropriate or ineffective, or would render the required label unnecessary, the Director, Office of Compliance (HFZ-300), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, on the Center's own initiative or upon written application by the manufacturer, may approve alternate means of providing such label(s), alternate wording for such label(s), or deletion, as applicable.

(iv) In lieu of permanently affixing or inscribing tags or labels on the ultraviolet lamp as required by §§ 1010.2(b) and 1010.3(a), the manfacturer of the ultraviolet lamp may permanently affix or inscribe such required tags or labels on the lamp packaging uniquely associated with the lamp, if the name of the manufacturer and month and year of manufacture are permanently affixed or inscribed on the exterior surface of the ultraviolet lamp so as to be legible and readily accessible to view. The name of the manufacturer and month and year of manufacture affixed or inscribed on the exterior surface of the lamp may be expressed in code or symbols, if the manufacturer has previously supplied the Director, Office of Compliance (HFZ-300), Center for Devices and Radiological Health, with the key to such code or symbols and the location of the coded information or symbols on the ultraviolet lamp. The label or tag affixed or inscribed on the lamp packaging may provide either the month and year of manufacture without abbreviation, or information to allow the date to be readily decoded.

(v) A label may contain statements or illustrations in addition to those required by this paragraph if the additional statements are not false or misleading in any particular; e.g., if they do not diminish the impact of the required statements; and are not prohibited by this chapter.

(e) *Instructions to be provided to users.* Each manufacturer of a sunlamp product and ultraviolet lamp shall provide or cause to be provided to purchasers and, upon request, to others at a cost not to exceed the cost of publication and distribution, adequate instructions for use to avoid or to minimize potential injury to the user, including the following technical and safety information as applicable:

(1) *Sunlamp products.* The users' instructions for a sunlamp product shall contain:

(i) A reproduction of the label(s) required in paragraph (d)(1) of this section prominently displayed at the beginning of the instructions.

(ii) A statement of the maximum number of people who may be exposed to the product at the same time and a warning that only that number of protective eyewear has been provided.

(iii) Instructions for the proper operation of the product including the function, use, and setting of the timer and other controls, and the use of protective eyewear.

(iv) Instructions for determining the correct exposure time and schedule for persons according to skin type.

(v) Instructions for obtaining repairs and recommended replacement components and accessories which are compatible with the product, including compatible protective eyewear, ultraviolet lamps, timers, reflectors, and filters, and which will, if installed or used as instructed, result in continued compliance with the standard.

(2) *Ultraviolet lamps.* The users' instructions for an ultraviolet lamp not accompanying a sunlamp product shall contain:

(i) A reproduction of the label(s) required in paragraphs (d)(1)(i) and (2) of this section, prominently displayed at the beginning of the instructions.

(ii) A warning that the instructions accompanying the sunlamp product should always be followed to avoid or to minimize potential injury.

(iii) A clear identification by brand and model designation of all lamp models for which replacement lamps are promoted, if applicable.

(f) *Test for determination of compliance.* Tests on which certification pursuant to § 1010.2 is based shall account for all errors and statistical uncertainties in the process and, wherever applicable, for changes in radiation emission or degradation in radiation safety with age of the product. Measurements for certification purposes shall be made under those operational conditions, lamp voltage, current, and position as recommended by the manufacturer. For these measurements, the measuring instrument shall be positioned at the recommended exposure position and so oriented as to result in the maximum detection of the radiation by the instrument.

(The information collection requirements contained in paragraphs (d) and (e) were approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 0910-0195)

[50 FR 36550, Sept. 6, 1985]

§ 1040.30 High-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamps.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions of this section apply to any high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp that is designed, intended, or promoted for illumination purposes and is manufactured or assembled after March 7, 1980, except as described in paragraph (d)(1)(ii) of this section.

(b) *Definitions.* (1) "High-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp" means any lamp including any "mercury vapor" and "metal halide" lamp, with the exception of the tungsten filament self-ballasted mercury vapor lamp, incorporating a high-pressure arc discharge tube that has a fill consisting primarily of mercury and that is contained within an outer envelope.

(2) "Advertisement" means any catalog, specification sheet, price list, and any other descriptive or commercial brochure and literature, including videotape and film, pertaining to high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamps.

(3) "Packaging" means any lamp carton, outer wrapping, or other means of containment that is intended for the storage, shipment, or display of a high-intensity mercury vapor lamp and is intended to identify the contents or recommend its use.

(4) "Outer envelope" means the lamp element, usually glass, surrounding a high-pressure arc discharge tube, that, when intact, attenuates the emission of shortwave ultraviolet radiation.

(5) "Shortwave ultraviolet radiation" means ultraviolet radiation with wavelengths shorter than 320 nanometers.

(6) "Cumulative operating time" means the sum of the times during which electric current passes through the high-pressure arc discharge.

(7) "Self-extinguishing lamp" means a high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp that is intended to comply with the requirements of paragraph (d)(1) of this section as applicable.

(8) "Reference ballast" is an inductive reactor designed to have the operating characteristics as listed in Section 7 in the American National Standard Specifications for High-Intensity Discharge Lamp Reference

Ballasts (ANSI C82.5-1977)[1] or its equivalent.

(c) *General requirements for all lamps.* (1) Each high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp shall:

(i) Meet the requirements of either paragraph (d) or paragraph (e) of this section; and

(ii) Be permanently labeled or marked in such a manner that the name of the manufacturer and the month and year of manufacture of the lamp can be determined on an intact lamp and after the outer envelope of the lamp is broken or removed. The name of the manufacturer and month and year of manufacture may be expressed in code or symbols, provided the manufacturer has previously supplied the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, with the key to the code or symbols and the location of the coded information or symbols on the lamp.

(2) In lieu of permanently affixing or inscribing tags or labels on the product as required by §§ 1010.2(b) and 1010.3(a) of this chapter, the manufacturer of any high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp may permanently affix or inscribe such required tags or labels on the lamp packaging uniquely associated with the applicable lamp.

(d) *Requirements for self-extinguishing lamps*—(1) *Maximum cumulative operating time.* (i) Each self-extinguishing lamp manufactured after March 7, 1980 shall cease operation within a cumulative operating time not to exceed 15 minutes following complete breakage or removal of the outer envelope (with the exception of fragments extending 50 millimeters or less from the base shell); and

(ii) Each self-extinguishing lamp manufactured after September 7, 1981, shall cease operation within a cumulative operating time not to exceed 15 minutes following breakage or removal of at least 3 square centimeters of contiguous surface of the outer envelope.

(2) *Lamp labeling.* Each self-extinguishing lamp shall be clearly marked with the letter "T" on the outer envelope and on another part of the lamp in such a manner that it is visible after the outer envelope of the lamp is broken or removed.

(3) *Lamp packaging.* Lamp packaging for each self-extinguishing lamp shall clearly and prominently display:

(i) The letter "T"; and

(ii) The words "This lamp should self-extinguish within 15 minutes after the outer envelope is broken or punctured. If such damage occurs, TURN OFF AND REMOVE LAMP to avoid possible injury from hazardous shortwave ultraviolet radiation."

(e) *Requirements for lamps that are not self-extinguishing lamps*—(1) *Lamp labeling.* Any high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp that does not comply with paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall be clearly and legibly marked with the letter "R" on the outer envelope and on another part of the lamp in such a manner that it is visible after the outer envelope of the lamp is broken or removed.

(2) *Lamp packaging.* Lamp packaging for each high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp that does not comply with paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall clearly and prominently display:

(i) The letter "R"; and

(ii) The words "WARNING: This lamp can cause serious skin burn and eye inflammation from shortwave ultraviolet radiation if outer envelope of the lamp is broken or punctured. Do not use where people will remain for more than a few minutes unless adequate shielding or other safety precautions are used. Lamps that will automatically extinguish when the outer envelope is broken or punctured are commercially available."

(3) *Lamp advertisement.* Advertising for any high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp that does not comply with paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall prominently display the following wording: "WARNING: This lamp can cause serious skin burn and eye inflammation from shortwave ultraviolet radiation if outer envelope of the lamp is broken or punctured. Do not use where people will remain for more than a few minutes unless adequate shielding or other safety precautions are used. Lamps that will automatical-

---

[1] Copies are available from American National Standards Institute, 1430 Broadway, New York, NY 10018.

ly extinguish when the outer envelope is broken or punctured are commercially available."

(f) *Test conditions.* Any high-intensity mercury vapor discharge lamp under test for compliance with the requirements set forth in paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall be started and operated under the following conditions as applicable:

(1) Lamp voltage, current, and orientation shall be those indicated or recommended by the manufacturer for operation of the intact lamp.

(2) The lamp shall be operated on a reference ballast.

(3) The lamp shall be started in air that has a temperature of 25±5° C. Heating and movement of the air surrounding the lamp shall be that produced by the lamp and ballast alone.

(4) If any test is performed in an enclosure, the enclosure shall be not less than 0.227 cubic meter (8 cubic feet).

(5) Any lamp designed to be operated only in a specific fixture or luminaire that the lamp manufacturer supplies or specifies shall be tested in that fixture or luminaire. Any other lamp shall be tested with no reflector or other surrounding material.

(Sec. 358, 82 Stat. 1177-1179 (42 U.S.C. 263f))

[44 FR 52195, Sept. 7, 1979, as amended at 53 FR 11254, Apr. 6, 1988]

PART 1050—PERFORMANCE STANDARDS FOR SONIC, INFRASONIC, AND ULTRASONIC RADIATION-EMITTING PRODUCTS

AUTHORITY: Sec. 358 (42 U.S.C. 263f).

§ 1050.10 Ultrasonic therapy products.

(a) *Applicability.* The provisions of this section are applicable as specified herein to any ultrasonic therapy product for use in physical therapy manufactured on or after February 17, 1979.

(b) *Definitions.* The following definitions apply to words and phrases used in this section:

(1) "Amplitude modulated waveform" means a waveform in which the ratio of the temporal-maximum pressure amplitude spatially averaged over the effective radiating surface to the root-mean-square pressure amplitude spatially averaged over the effective radiating surface is greater than 1.05.

(2) "Applicator means that portion of a fully assembled ultrasonic therapy product that is designed to emit ultrasonic radiation and which includes one or more ultrasonic transducers and any associated housing.

(3) "Beam cross-section" means the surface in any plane consisting of the points at which the intensity is greater than 5 percent of the spatial-maximum intensity in that plane.

(4) "Beam nonuniformity ratio" means the ratio of the temporal-average spatial-maximum intensity to the temporal-average effective intensity.

(5) "Centroid of a surface" means the point whose coordinates are the mean values of the coordinates of the points of the surface.

(6) "Collimating applicator" means an applicator that does not meet the definition of a focusing applicator as specified in paragraph (b)(15) of this section and for which the ratio of the area of at least one beam cross-section, whose centroid is 12 centimeters from the centroid of the effective radiating surface, to the area of the effective radiating surface is less than two.

(7) "Continuous-wave waveform" means a waveform in which the ratio of the temporal-maximum pressure amplitude spatially averaged over the effective radiating surface to the root-mean-square pressure amplitude spatially averaged over the effective radiating surface is less than or equal to 1.05.

(8) "Diverging applicator" means an applicator that does not meet the definition of a collimating applicator or a focusing applicator as specified in paragraphs (b) (6) and (15) of this section.

(9) "Effective intensity" means the ratio of the ultrasonic power to the focal area for a focusing applicator. For all other applicators, the effective intensity is the ratio of the ultrasonic power to the effective radiating area. Effective intensity is expressed in watts per square centimeter ($W cm^{-2}$).

(10) "Effective radiating area" means the area consisting of all points of the effective radiating surface at which the intensity is 5 percent or more of the maximum intensity at the

effective radiating surface, expressed in square centimeters (cm^2).

(11) "Effective radiating surface" means the surface consisting of all points 5 millimeters from the applicator face.

(12) "Focal area" means the area of the focal surface, expressed in square centimeters (cm^2).

(13) "Focal length" means the distance between the centroids of the effective radiating surface and the focal surface, for a focusing applicator, expressed in centimeters (cm).

(14) "Focal surface" means the beam cross-section with smallest area of a focusing applicator.

(15) "Focusing applicator" means an applicator in which the ratio of the area of the beam cross-section with the smallest area to the effective radiating area is less than one-half.

(16) "Generator" means that portion of a fully assembled ultrasonic therapy product that supplies electrical energy to the applicator. The generator may include, but is not limited to, a power supply, ultrasonic frequency oscillator, service controls, operation controls, and a cabinet to house these components.

(17) "Maximum beam nonuniformity ratio" means the maximum value of the beam nonuniformity ratio characteristic of a model of an ultrasonic therapy product.

(18) "Operation control" means any control used during operation of an ultrasonic therapy product that affects the ultrasonic radiation emitted by the applicator.

(19) "Pressure amplitude" means the instantaneous value of the modulating waveform, and is $p_1(t)$ in the expression for a pressure wave, $p(t)=p_1(t)\ p_2(t)$, where $p(t)$ is the instantaneous pressure, $p_1(t)$ is the modulating envelope, and $p_2(t)$ is the relative amplitude of the carrier wave normalized to a peak height of one. All are periodic functions of time, t, at any point in space. The period of $p_1(t)$ is greater than the period of $p_2(t)$.

(20) "Pulse duration" means a time interval, expressed in seconds, beginning at the first time the pressure amplitude exceeds the minimum pressure amplitude plus 10 percent of the difference between the maximum and
minimum pressure amplitudes, ar
ending at the last time the pressu
amplitude returns to this value.

(21) "Pulse repetition rate" mea
the repetition frequency of the wav
form modulating the ultrasonic carri
wave expressed in pulses per seco
(pps).

(22) "Service control" means a
control provided for the purpose of a
justment that is not used during ope
ation and can affect the ultrasonic r
diation emitted by the applicator,
can alter the calibration or accura
of an indicator or operation control.

(23) "Ultrasonic frequency" mea
the frequency of the ultrasonic ra
ation carrier wave, expressed in He
(Hz), kilohertz (kHz), or megahe
(MHz).

(24) "Ultrasonic power" means t
total power emitted in the form of
trasonic radiation by the applicat
averaged over each cycle of the ult
sonic radiation carrier wave, express
in watts.

(25) "Ultrasonic therapy produc
means:

(i) Any device intended to genera
and emit ultrasonic radiation f
therapeutic purposes at ultrasonic f
quencies above 16 kilohertz (kHz); or

(ii) Any generator or applicator d
signed or specifically designated f
use in a device as specified in par
graph (b)(25)(i) of this section.

(26) "Ultrasonic transducer" mea
a device used to convert electric
energy of ultrasonic frequency into
trasonic radiation or vice versa.

(c) *Performance requirements.* T
requirements of this paragraph are a
plicable to each ultrasonic thera
product as defined in paragra
(b)(25) of this section when the gen
ator and applicator are designated
intended for use together, or to ea
generator when the applicator(s)
tended for use with the generator do
not contain controls that affect t
functioning of the generator.

(1) *Ultrasonic power and intensity*
(i) *Continuous-wave waveform ope*
ation. A means shall be incorporat
to indicate the magnitudes of the te
poral-average ultrasonic power a
the temporal-average effective inten
ty when emission is of continuo
wave waveform. The error in the in

cation of the temporal-average ultrasonic power shall not exceed ±20 percent for all emissions greater than 10 percent of the maximum emission.

(ii) *Amplitude-modulated waveform operation.* A means shall be incorporated to indicate the magnitudes of the temporal-maximum ultrasonic power and the temporal-maximum effective intensity when the emission is of amplitude-modulated waveform. The sum of the errors in the indications of the temporal-maximum ultrasonic power and the ratio of the temporal-maximum effective intensity to the temporal-average effective intensity specified in paragraph (d)(3)(ii) of this section shall not exceed ±20 percent for all emissions greater than 10 percent of the maximum emission.

(2) *Treatment time.* A means shall be incorporated to enable the duration of emission of ultrasonic radiation for treatment to be preset and such means shall terminate emission at the end of the preset time. Means shall also be incorporated to enable termination of emission at any time. Means shall be incorporated to indicate the magnitude of the duration of emission (expressed in minutes) to within 0.5 minute of the preset duration of emission for setting less than 5 minutes, to within 10 percent of the preset duration of emission for settings of from 5 minutes to 10 minutes, and to within 1 minute of the preset duration of emission for settings greater than 10 minutes.

(3) *Pulse duration and repetition rate.* A means shall be incorporated for indicating the magnitudes of pulse duration and pulse repetition rate of the emitted ultrasonic radiation, if there are operation controls for varying these quantities.

(4) *Ultrasonic frequency.* A means shall be incorporated for indicating the magnitude of the ultrasonic frequency of the emitted ultrasonic radiation, if there is an operation control for varying this quantity.

(5) *Visual indicator.* A means shall be incorporated to provide a clear, distinct, and readily understood visual indicator when and only when electrical energy of appropriate ultrasonic frequency is being applied to the ultrasonic transducer(s).

(d) *Labeling requirements.* In addition to the labeling requirements in Part 801 and the requirements of §§ 1010.2 and 1010.3 of this chapter, each ultrasonic therapy product shall be subject to the applicable labeling requirements of this paragraph.

(1) *Operation controls.* Each operation control shall be clearly labeled identifying the function controlled and, where appropriate, the units of measure of that function. If a separate control and indicator are associated with the same function, then labeling the appropriate units of measure of that function is required for the indicator but not for the control.

(2) *Service controls.* Each service control that is accessible without displacement or removal of any part of the ultrasonic therapy product shall be clearly labeled identifying the function controlled and shall include the phrase "for service adjustment only."

(3) *Generators.* (i) Each generator shall bear a label that states: The brand name, model designation, and unique serial number or other unique identification so that it is individually identifiable; ultrasonic frequency (unless there is an operation control for varying this quantity); and type of waveform (continuous wave or amplitude modulated).

(ii) Generators employing amplitude-modulated waveforms shall also bear a label that provides the following information: Pulse duration and pulse repetition rate (unless there are operation controls for varying these quantities), an illustration of the amplitude-modulated waveform, and the ratio of the temporal-maximum effective intensity to the temporal-average effective intensity. (If this ratio is a function of any operation control setting, then the range of the ratio shall be specified, and the waveform illustration shall be provided for the maximum value of this ratio.)

(4) *Applicators.* Each applicator shall bear a label that provides the following information:

(i) The brand name, model designation, and unique serial number or other unique identification so the applicator is individually identifiable;

(ii) A designation of the generator(s) for which the applicator is intended; and

(iii) The ultrasonic frequency, effective radiating area, maximum beam nonuniformity ratio, type of applicator (focusing, collimating, diverging), and for a focusing applicator the focal length and focal area.

(5) *Label specification.* Labels required by this paragraph shall be permanently affixed to or inscribed on the ultrasonic therapy product; they shall be legible and clearly visible. If the size, configuration, or design of the ultrasonic therapy product would preclude compliance with the requirements of this paragraph, the Director, Center for Devices and Radiological Health, may approve alternate means of providing such labels).

(e) *Tests for determination of compliance*—(1) *Tests for certification.* Tests on which certification pursuant to § 1010.2 of this chapter is based shall account for all measurement errors and uncertainties. Such tests shall also account for increases in emission and degradation in radiation safety that occur with age.

(2) *Test conditions.* Except as provided in § 1010.13 of this chapter, tests for compliance with each of the applicable requirements of this section shall be made:

(i) For all possible combinations of adjustments of the controls listed in the operation instructions.

(ii) With the ultrasonic radiation emitted into the equivalent of an infinite medium of distilled, degassed water at 30° C for measurements concerning the ultrasonic radiation.

(iii) With line voltage variations in the range of ±10 percent of the rated value specified by the manufacturer.

(3) *Measurement parameters.* Measurements for determination of the spatial distribution of the ultrasonic radiation field shall be made with a detector having dimensions of less than one wavelength in water or an equivalent measurement technique.

(f) *Informational requirements*—(1) *Servicing information.* The manufacturer of an ultrasonic therapy product shall provide or cause to be provided to servicing dealers and distributors, and to others upon request, at a cost not to exceed the cost of preparation and distribution adequate instructions for operations, service, and calibration, including a description of those controls and procedures that could be used to increase radiation emission levels, and a schedule of maintenance necessary to keep equipment in compliance with this section. The instructions shall include adequate safety precautions that may be necessary regarding ultrasonic radiation exposure.

(2) *User information.* The manufacturer of an ultrasonic therapy product shall provide as an integral part of any user instruction or operation manual that is regularly supplied with the product, or, if not so supplied, shall cause to be provided with each ultrasonic therapy product, and to others upon request, at a cost not to exceed the cost of preparation and distribution:

(i) Adequate instructions concerning assembly, operation, safe use, any safety procedures and precautions that may be necessary regarding the use of ultrasonic radiation, and a schedule of maintenance necessary to keep the equipment in compliance with this section. The operation instructions shall include a discussion of all operation controls, and shall describe the effect of each control.

(ii) Adequate description of the spatial distribution of the ultrasonic radiation field and the orientation of the field with respect to the applicator. This will include a textual discussion with diagrams, plots, or photographs representative of the beam pattern. If there is more than one ultrasonic transducer in an applicator and their positions are not fixed relative of each other, then the description must specify the spatial distribution of the ultrasonic radiation field emitted by each ultrasonic transducer and present adequate examples of the combination field of the ultrasonic tranducers with regard to safe use. The description of the ultrasonic radiation field shall state that such description applies under conditions specified in paragraph (e)(2)(ii) of this section.

(iii) Adequate description, as appropriate to the product, of the uncertainties in magnitude expressed in terms of percentage error, of the ultrasonic frequency effective radiating area, and, where applicable, the ratio of the temporal-maximum effective intensity to the temporal-average effective intensity, pulse duration, pulse repetition rate, focal area, and focal length. The errors in indications specified in paragraphs (c)(1) and (c)(2) of this section shall be stated in the instruction manual.

(iv) A listing of controls, adjustments, and procedures for operation and maintenance, including the warning "Caution—use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous exposure to ultrasonic energy."

[43 FR 7166, Feb. 17, 1978; 45 FR 16483, Mar. 14, 1980; 53 FR 11255, Apr. 6, 1988]

SUBCHAPTER K—[RESERVED]

SUBCHAPTER L—REGULATIONS UNDER CERTAIN OTHER ACT ADMINISTERED BY THE FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION

PART 1210—REGULATIONS UNDER THE FEDERAL IMPORT MILK ACT

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.

1210.1 Authority.
1210.2 Scope of act.
1210.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Inspection and Testing

1210.10 Availability for examination and inspection.
1210.11 Sanitary inspection of dairy farms.
1210.12 Physical examination of cows.
1210.13 Tuberculin test.
1210.14 Sanitary inspection of plants.
1210.15 Pasteurization; equipment and methods.
1210.16 Method of bacterial count.
1210.17 Authority to sample and inspect.
1210.18 Scoring.

Subpart C—Permit Control

1210.20 Application for permit.
1210.21 Permit number.
1210.22 Form of tag.
1210.23 Permits granted on certificates.
1210.24 Temporary permits.
1210.25 Permits for pasteurized milk or cream.
1210.26 Permits for raw milk or cream.
1210.27 Permits waiving clauses 2 and 5, section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act.
1210.28 Permits waiving clause 4, section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act.

Subpart D—Hearings

1210.30 Hearing procedure for permit denial, suspension, and revocation.
1210.31 Hearing before prosecution.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 2, 3, 44 Stat. 1101, 1102, as amended; 21 U.S.C. 142, 143.

SOURCE: 38 FR 32104, Nov. 20, 1973, unless otherwise noted.

CROSS REFERENCES: For Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service regulations concerning tubercular cattle, see 9 CFR Parts 50 and 77. For Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service regulations, see 9 CFR Chapter I. For customs regulations concerning importation of milk and cream, see 19 CFR 12.7. For regulations of the Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements and Orders) covering marketing ar for milk, see 7 CFR Chapter X.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1210.1 Authority.

For the purposes of the regulatio in this part the act (44 Stat. 1101; U.S.C. 141-149) "To regulate the i portation of milk and cream into t United States for the purpose of pr moting the dairy industry of t United States and protecting t public health" shall be known and ferred to as "the Federal Import M Act."

§ 1210.2 Scope of act.

The provisions of the act apply to milk and cream offered for import in the continental United States.

§ 1210.3 Definitions.

(a) *Secretary.* Secretary means t Secretary of Health and Human Se ices.

(b) *Commissioner.* Commission means the Commissioner of Food a Drugs.

(c) *Milk.* For the purposes of the a and of the regulations in this part:

Milk is the whole, fresh, clean, lact secretion obtained by the comple milking of one or more healthy co properly fed and kept, excluding th obtained within 15 days before and days after calving, or such long period as may be necessary to rend the milk practically colostrum free.

(d) *Condensed milk.* Condensed mi as the term is used in section 3, pa graph 2, of the Federal Import M Act, includes evaporated milk in t manufacture of which sterilization the milk and cream is a necessary a usual process; it includes sweeten condensed milk only if it is prepar by a process which insures sterili tion of the milk and cream. Conden milk, as the term is used in section paragraph 3, of the Federal Impo

Milk Act, means sweetened condensed milk.

(e) *Sweetened condensed milk.* Sweetened condensed milk conforms to the definition and standard of identity for such food as set out in § 131.120 of this chapter.

(f) *Evaporated milk.* Evaporated milk conforms to the definition and standard of identity for such food as set out in § 131.130 of this chapter.

(g) *Cream.* Cream is that portion of the milk, rich in milk fat, which rises to the surface of milk on standing or is separated from it by centrifugal force. (See §§ 131.150 through 131.157 of this chapter).

(h) *Pasteurization.* Pasteurization is the process of heating every particle of milk or cream to at least 143° F., and holding it at such temperature continuously for at least 30 minutes, or to at least 161° F., and holding it at such temperature continuously for at least 15 seconds.

(i) *Shipper.* A shipper is anyone, other than a common carrier, who ships, transports, or causes to be shipped or transported into the United States milk or cream owned by him.

[38 FR 32104, Nov. 20, 1973, as amended at 42 FR 14091, Mar. 15, 1977]

Subpart B—Inspection and Testing

§ 1210.10 Availability for examination and inspection.

Dairy farms and plants from which milk or cream is shipped or transported into the United States shall be open at all reasonable times to authorized agents for necessary examinations and inspections. Failure to permit such examinations and inspections may be considered cause for the suspension or revocation of the permit.

§ 1210.11 Sanitary inspection of dairy farms.

The sanitary conditions of any dairy farm producing milk or cream to be shipped or transported into the United States or to a plant from which milk or cream is to be shipped or transported into the United States must score at least 50 points out of 100 points, according to the methods for scoring as provided by the score card for sanitary inspection of dairy farms in the form prescribed by the Secretary.

§ 1210.12 Physical examination of cows.

(a) Physical examination of any and all cows in herds producing milk or cream which is to be shipped or transported into the United States shall be made by an authorized veterinarian of the United States or of any State or municipality thereof or of the country in which such milk or cream is produced to determine whether such cow or cows are in a healthy condition. Such examination shall be made as often as the Secretary may deem necessary and, in any event, shall have been made within one year previous to the time of the importation.

(b) The result of the physical examination shall be set forth in the form prescribed by the Secretary.

§ 1210.13 Tuberculin test.

(a) Except as provided in § 1210.27 any and all animals in herds producing milk or cream which is to be shipped or transported raw into the United States shall be free from tuberculosis, as determined by a tuberculin test applied by an official veterinarian of the United States or of any State or municipality thereof or of the country in which such milk or cream is produced. Such test shall be made as often as the Secretary may deem necessary and, in any event, shall have been made within 1 year previous to the time of the importation. All animals showing positive or suspicious reactions to the tuberculin test must be permanently removed from the herd.

(b) The results of the tuberculin test and all facts concerning the disposal of reacting or suspected animals shall be set forth in the form prescribed by the Secretary.

§ 1210.14 Sanitary inspection of plants.

The sanitary conditions of any plant handling milk or cream any part of which is to be shipped or transported into the United States shall score at least 50 points out of 100 points according to the methods for scoring as provided by the score card for sanitary inspection of such plants in the form prescribed by the Secretary.

§ 1210.15 Pasteurization; equipment and methods.

All dairy farms and plants at which any milk or cream is pasteurized for shipment or transportation into the United States shall employ adequate pasteurization machinery of a type easily cleaned and of sanitary construction capable of holding every portion of the milk or cream at the required temperature for the required time. Such pasteurizing machinery shall be properly equipped with accurate time and temperature recording devices, which shall be kept at all times in good working order. The temperature at the time of heating and holding must invariably be recorded on thermograph charts, initialed, numbered, and dated by the official having jurisdiction over such farms and plants. All thermograph charts shall be held for a period of 2 years unless within that period they have been examined and released by such authorized agents as are designated by the Secretary.

§ 1210.16 Method of bacterial count.

The bacterial count of milk and cream refers to the number of viable bacteria as determined by the standard plate method of the American Public Health Association in use at the time of the examination.

§ 1210.17 Authority to sample and inspect.

Inspectors engaged in the enforcement of the Federal Import Milk Act are empowered to test for temperature, to take samples of milk or cream, and to use such means as may be necessary for these purposes.

§ 1210.18 Scoring.

Scoring of sanitary conditions required by §§ 1210.11, 1210.14 shall be done by an official inspector of the United States or of any State or municipality thereof or of the country in which the dairy farm or plant is located.

Subpart C—Permit Control

§ 1210.20 Application for permit.

Application for a permit to ship or transport milk or cream into the United States shall be made by th actual shipper upon forms prescribe by the Secretary. The request fo forms of applications for permit should be addressed to Commissione of Food and Drugs, Food and Dru Administration, Department of Healt and Human Services, 5600 Fisher Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

§ 1210.21 Permit number.

Each permit issued under the Feder al Import Milk Act, including eac temporary permit, shall bear an indi vidual number. The right to the use o such number is restricted solely to th permittee.

§ 1210.22 Form of tag.

Each container of milk or crea shipped or transported into the Unite States by such permittee shall hav firmly attached thereto a tag in th following form, bearing the require information in clear and legible type:

Product ——————————
(State whether raw milk, pasteuriz
milk, raw cream, or pasteurized cream
Permit number ——————————
Federal Import Milk Act, Departme
of Health and Human Services.
Shipper ——————————
Address of shipper ——————————

Provided, That in case of unit shi ments consisting of milk only or crea only under one permit number, in lie of each container being so marked, t vehicle of transportation, if seale may be tagged with the above ta which should, in addition, show th number of containers and quantity contents of each.

§ 1210.23 Permits granted on certificates

In the discretion of the Secretary, permit may be granted on a duly cert fied statement signed by a duly accre ited official of an authorized depar ment of any foreign government or any State of the United States or ar municipality thereof. Such stateme shall be in the form of a certifica prescribed by the Secretary, and sha have attached thereto, as a part ther of, signed copies of reports prescrib by §§ 1210.12, 1230.13, and also §§ 1210.11, 1210.14, as applicable. T necessary inspections and examin tions upon which the reports are based shall be made by persons who are acting under the direct supervision of the certifying official.

§ 1210.24 Temporary permits.

A temporary permit will be granted only upon a satisfactory showing that the applicant therefor has been unable to obtain the necessary inspections required by the applicable provisions of section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act. Temporary permits shall be valid until the Secretary shall provide for inspection to ascertain that clauses 1, 2, and 3 of section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act have been complied with.

§ 1210.25 Permits for pasteurized milk or cream.

Permits to ship or transport pasteurized milk or cream into the United States will be granted only upon compliance with the requirements of clauses 1 and 3 of section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act, §§ 1210.11, 1210.12, 1210.14, as applicable.

§ 1210.26 Permits for raw milk or cream.

Except as provided in § 1210.27, permits to ship or transport raw milk or cream into the United States will be granted only when the milk or cream comes from dairy farms or plants where pasteurization is not carried on and then only upon compliance with the requirements of clauses 1, 2, and 3 of section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act, §§ 1210.11 to 1210.14 as applicable.

§ 1210.27 Permits waiving clauses 2 and 5, section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act.

A permit to ship or transport raw milk into the United States will contain a waiver of clauses 2 and 5 of section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act when the shipper is an operator of a creamery or condensery, or is a producer shipping or transporting to a creamery or condensery and the creamery or condensery is located in the United States within a radius of 20 miles of the point of production of such milk, and the milk, prior to its sale, use, or disposal, is pasteurized, condensed, or evaporated.

§ 1210.28 Permits waiving clause 4, section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act.

The Secretary, in his discretion, will issue to a shipper who is an operator of a condensery a permit waiving the requirements of clause 4, of section 2 of the Federal Import Milk Act and allowing milk and cream containing not to exceed 1,200,000 bacteria per cubic centimeter to be shipped or transported into the United States if the condensery is located within a radius of 15 miles of the point of production of the milk and cream and such milk and cream are to be sterilized in the manufacture of condensed milk.

Subpart D—Hearings

§ 1210.30 Hearing procedure for permit denial, suspension, and revocation.

Any person who contests denial, suspension, or revocation of a permit shall have an opportunity for a regulatory hearing before the Food and Drug Administration pursuant to Subpart F of Part 16 of this chapter.

[41 FR 48269, Nov. 2, 1976, as amended at 42 FR 15676, Mar. 22, 1977]

§ 1210.31 Hearing before prosecution.

Before violation of the act is referred to the Department of Justice for prosecution under section 5 of the Federal Import Milk Act, an opportunity to be heard will be given to the party against whom prosecution is under consideration. The hearing will be private and confined to questions of fact. The party notified may present evidence, either oral or written, in person or by attorney, to show cause why he should not be prosecuted. After a hearing is held, if it appears that the law has been violated, the facts will be reported to the Department of Justice.

[41 FR 48269, Nov. 2, 1976]

PART 1220—REGULATIONS UNDER THE TEA IMPORTATION ACT

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1220.5 Importation of inferior goods prohibited.

Sec.
1220.6 Importation without appraisement.
1220.7 Bonding of tea for consumption.
1220.8 Tea packages and contents shall constitute a unit.
1220.9 Duties of supervising tea examiner.

Subpart B—Shipment and Storage

1220.10 Teas destined for interior ports.
1220.15 Warehouses for storage of tea.
1220.16 Method of storing in warehouse.
1220.17 Removal of tea from warehouse.

Subpart C—Customs Requirements

1220.20 Examination of packages.
1220.21 Tea blended, mixed and repacked for export.
1220.22 Unclaimed teas.

Subpart D—Sampling Procedures

1220.30 Taking of samples at ports where tea examiner is stationed.
1220.31 Taking of samples at ports where there is no tea examiner.
1220.32 Result of examination; form of report.
1220.33 Chop list.
1220.34 Surplus samples.
1220.37 Exemption of sample packages from examination.
1220.38 Tea brought in by passengers.

Subpart E—Establishment of Standards

1220.40 Tea standards.
1220.41 Effective date of tea standards.
1220.42 To whom standards will be furnished.
1220.43 Disposition of obsolete standards.

Subpart F—Individual Standards

1220.50 Macao or Canton congou and brick tea standards.
1220.51 Teas imitating China green teas.
1220.52 Powchong Formosa oolong teas.

Subpart G—Inspection, Testing, and Grounds for Rejection

1220.60 Instructions to examiners.
1220.61 Testing of teas.
1220.62 Testing quality of infused leaf.
1220.63 Test for paraffin and similar substances.
1220.64 Tests for impurities.
1220.65 Tea dust.
1220.66 Tolerance for fine tea particles.
1220.67 Tea inferior to the standard in any requisite is justly rejected.

Sec.

Subpart H—Administrative Procedures Ba on Examination

1220.70 Action based on result of exam tion.
1220.71 Procedure for protest against ings.
1220.72 Procedure by importer for revi
1220.73 Rejected tea.
1220.74 Exportation of rejected tea.
1220.75 Reimportation of exported forbidden.
1220.76 Destruction of condemned tea.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 1, 10, 29 Stat. 604, 21 U.S.C. 41, 50.

SOURCE: 38 FR 32107, Nov. 20, 1973, u otherwise noted.

CROSS REFERENCE: For U.S. Customs ice regulations governing importation o see 19 CFR 12.33.

Subpart A—General Provision

§ 1220.5 Importation of inferior g prohibited.

The importation of any merchan as tea which is inferior in purity, q ity, and fitness for consumption to standards fixed and established by Secretary of Health and Human S ices, in accordance with section the Tea Importation Act (29 Stat. 21 U.S.C. 43), is prohibited.

§ 1220.6 Importation without appr ment.

Importations of tea may be ent for consumption, for transit to for countries, or for immediate trans tation without appraisement. All tries must be on the regular fo and the regular serial numbers, both bonds and entries should be u

§ 1220.7 Bonding of tea for consumpti

Tea entered for consumption be stored as provided in § 122 pending examination, and bond be taken by the District Directo Customs, as provided in section the Tea Importation Act (29 Stat. 21 U.S.C. 44), on Customs Form 7551 or 7553. This bond shall be celed upon the issuance of a permi release, as the consumption e bond includes provisions for the livery, the exportation, the dest tion, and the holding of the merchandise for customs examination.

§ 1220.8 Tea packages and contents shall constitute a unit.

Tea packages and contents shall be treated as a unit, and no separation of tea from its covering can be allowed, for either exportation or destruction, except under the two following conditions:

(a) In cases of importations of tea containing an excessive quantity of dust and siftings, the tea may be sifted and admitted to entry if found up to the standard, and the dust and siftings may also be admitted if found up to the standard or, if no standard exists, if found up to the respective leaf standard. If not up to the standard, or respective leaf standard when no standard exists, the dust and siftings must be exported or destroyed under Government supervision.

(b) If, by reason of damage, a tea otherwise equal in quality to the standard has been rejected, the damaged portion may be removed and exported or destroyed under custom's supervision, and the sound remainder resubmitted for examination and admitted to entry if found up to the standard.

§ 1220.9 Duties of supervising tea examiner.

(a) The supervising tea examiner is charged with the immediate supervision of all matters relating to the enforcement of the Tea Importation Act, and particularly the securing of uniformity in the treatment of imported teas at all the points of examination. He is also to perform such duties in connection with tea under the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act as may be assigned to him.

(b) For the purpose of securing uniformity in the treatment of teas each tea examiner will send to the supervising tea examiner one-half pound samples of the teas rejected by him, also such other samples of teas as the supervising tea examiner may direct. To each sample a label (T. I. S. Cat. No. 2) shall be affixed.

(c) The examiner of tea at each port where a qualified tea examiner is stationed shall prepare and forward to the supervising tea examiner and to the chairman of the United States Board of Tea Appeals, as soon as practicable after the close of each month, a report (T. I. S. Cat. No. 3), showing details as to every shipment of tea examined by the tea examiner. This information the tea examiner should compile from his report of "Teas Imported and Examined" (T. I. S. Cat. No. 4) which should always be kept up to date.

Subpart B—Shipment and Storage

§ 1220.10 Teas destined for interior ports.

Imported teas entered at an exterior port destined for immediate transportation to an interior port shall be forwarded without detention.

§ 1220.15 Warehouses for storage of tea.

(a) Warehouses for the storage of tea will be designated by the District Director of Customs and the proprietor thereof will be required to give a bond in the form prescribed (Customs Form No. 3581). Teas not stored in such designated warehouses will be placed in general order store or in public store pending examination and release on proper permit. In the absence of proper storage facilities at customhouses, teas may be retained in locked cars as constructive warehouses, under proper supervision, pending examination.

(b) The importer's premises may be designated as warehouses for the storage of tea on the filing of the bond provided for by the regulations in this part, but whenever, in the discretion of the District Director of Customs, it shall be considered desirable, a storekeeper shall be assigned to the supervision of such premises at the importer's expense while the teas shall remain under bond therein.

§ 1220.16 Method of storing in warehouse.

(a) When tea under examination is stored in any warehouse it must be so placed as to be separate from other merchandise and so as to allow convenient supervision by customs officers and officers of the Department of Health and Human Services. At ports where there are no bonded warehouses, class 2 or 3, the chief customs officer of the port will, when necessary, procure suitable premises for the temporary storage of any tea reaching his port. The repacking of tea in warehouse for export purposes is not allowed.

(b) All expenses of storage, cartage, and labor must be paid by the importer.

§ 1220.17 Removal of tea from warehouse.

No tea shall be delivered to the importer or removed from warehouse for any purpose before the examination required by the Tea Importation Act.

Subpart C—Customs Requirements

§ 1220.20 Examination of packages.

Chief officers of customs may order such an examination of packages containing tea as will satisfy them that no dutiable goods are packed therein. For this purpose the customary designation should be made of packages for examination in public store.

§ 1220.21 Tea blended, mixed and repacked for export.

Tea importers desiring to import teas into the United States to be blended, mixed, and repacked for export can do so by bonding a warehouse under the provisions of section 311 of the Tariff Act of 1930 (46 Stat. 691; 19 U.S.C. 1311), upon compliance with §§ 19.13 to 19.15, inclusive, of the Customs Regulation of 1943 (19 CFR 19.13-19.15), giving bond on Customs Form No. 3583. All teas placed in bonded manufacturing warehouses must be exported.

CROSS REFERENCE: For customs regulations governing manufacturing warehouses, see 19 CFR 19.13-19.16.

§ 1220.22 Unclaimed teas.

Unclaimed teas should be taken possession of by District Directors of Customs the same as other unclaimed goods and placed in "general order", but not sold at the expiration of the year unless declared fit for consumption by a designated tea examiner.

CROSS REFERENCE: For U.S. Customs Service regulations governing disposition of mer-
chandise unclaimed or in warehouse beyo
the time fixed by law, see 19 CFR Part 1

Subpart D—Sampling Procedures

§ 1220.30 Taking of samples at po
where tea examiner is stationed.

The examination of teas at por
where a duly qualified tea examiner
stationed shall be made by means
samples drawn by the sampler fro
packages designated by the tea exa
iner. The importer, when his teas a
ready for sampling, shall submit in d
plicate to the tea examiner a chop li
and release permit (T.I.S. Cat. No.
of the several lines included in the i
voice, and the tea examiner sh
select for examination packages repr
senting the different lines.

§ 1220.31 Taking of samples at po
where there is no tea examiner.

(a) In case an entry of imported t
shall be made at a port or subpo
where no tea examiner is stationed t
importer should prepare the chop li
and release permit (T. I. S. Cat. No.
in triplicate and forward them to t
chief officer of the customs at the po
of entry.

(b) Samples shall be obtained
such officers, together with the ori
nal and one copy of the chop list a
release permit (T. I. S. Cat. No. 1), a
shall be forwarded to the neare
qualified tea examiner for his repo
and return. Samples sent for the pu
pose of examination from ports of i
portation to ports where tea exami
ers are located shall be packed in cle
tin cans, free from odor, fitted wi
tight covers, and of a capacity to ho
about 4 ounces avoirdupois of te
Each can shall be properly labeled (
I. S. Cat. No. 5).

§ 1220.32 Result of examination; form
report.

(a) The examination and repo
upon such samples shall be made
accordance with the provisions of se
tion 7 of the Tea Importation Act (
Stat. 606; 21 U.S.C. 46), and the resu
of this examination shall be noted
the invoice by the tea examiner befo
he returns the invoice to the collect
of customs. The tea examiner at t

same time should make his returns on the original copy of the chop list and release permit (T. I. S. Cat. No. 1), which, after being duly signed by him, should be forwarded by him to the importer or consignee.

(b) In case the tea coverings are dutiable and appraised at a value or rate higher than the entered value or rate, the tea examiner shall follow the same procedure as above, except that the chop list and release permit shall be returned to the District Director of Customs for such action as he sees fit to take.

(c) In case a partial release is desired the importer shall furnish an additional chop list and release permit (T. I. S. Cat. No. 1) of the goods that he desires, the original chop list and release permit being retained by the tea examiner until action on all the teas in the entry has been taken.

§ 1220.33 Chop list.

(a) In all cases the importer shall indicate on the chop list and release permit where the goods are to be sampled, whether on the dock or in warehouse. If the consular invoice has not been received the importer may prepare an additional copy of the chop list and release permit as a pro forma invoice, marking across the face thereof "Pro Forma Invoice."

(b) Importers may print their chop list and release permit forms, provided they conform strictly with the official form (T.I.S. Cat. No. 1). Otherwise, they can be obtained free from the United States tea examiner at ports where tea examiners are stationed, or from the chief officer of customs at ports, or subports, where no tea examiners are stationed.

§ 1220.34 Surplus samples.

(a) Surplus samples drawn from importations for purposes of examination, and which represent pure tea as declared by the examiner, shall be returned to the importer after examination is completed, if so requested by the importer, but if no request is made for the return of samples they shall be disposed of as provided in § 1220.43 for unused standard samples.

(b) Surplus samples representing tea which has been finally rejected should be destroyed, or, after being denatured, should be sold for manufacturing purposes under the Tea Importation Act (35 Stat. 163; 21 U.S.C. 41).

§ 1220.37 Exemption of sample packages from examination.

Where tea is put up in packages of not over 2 pounds in weight, imported by mail, express, or otherwise from the country of production, and the fact is established that the packages are samples for distribution, or for use in soliciting orders and not for sale, no examination should be made under the Tea Importation Act (29 Stat. 604; 21 U.S.C. 41-50), and they may be delivered at once to the importer.

§ 1220.38 Tea brought in by passengers.

Packages of tea not exceeding 5 pounds in weight brought by passengers may be delivered without examination under the Tea Importation Act (29 Stat. 604; 21 U.S.C. 41-50).

Subpart E—Establishment of Standards

§ 1220.40 Tea standards.

(a) Samples for standards of the following teas, prepared, identified, and submitted by the Board of Tea Experts on March 1, 1983, are hereby fixed and established as the standards of purity, quality, and fitness for consumption under the Tea Importation Act for the year beginning May 1, 1983, and ending April 30, 1984:

(1) Formosa Oolong.

(2) Black Tea (for Argentina teas).

(3) Black Tea (for all teas except those from China, Formosa (Taiwan), Iran, Japan, Russia, Turkey, and Argentina).

(4) Black Tea (for teas from China, Formosa (Taiwan), Iran, Japan, Russia, and Turkey).

(5) Green Tea.

(6) Canton Oolong (for all Canton types from China to Formosa (Taiwan)).

(7) Scented Black Tea.

(8) Spiced Tea.

These standards apply to tea shipped from abroad on or after May 1, 1983. Tea shipped prior to May 1, 1983 will be governed by the standards that became effective May 1, 1982.

(b) The Board of Tea Experts shall prepare duplicate samples of the standards for teas.

(Secs. 3, 10, 29 Stat. 605, 607, 41 Stat. 712, 54 Stat. 1237, 67 Stat. 631 (21 U.S.C. 43, 50); secs. 3, 10, 29 Stat. 605, 607, 41 Stat. 712, 54 Stat. 1237, 67 Stat. 631 (21 U.S.C. 43, 50))

[38 FR 32107, Nov. 20, 1973, as amended at 48 FR 23814, May 27, 1983]

§ 1220.41 Effective date of tea standards.

The standards prepared and submitted to the Secretary of Health and Human Services by the Board of Tea Experts, appointed by him on or before February 15 of each year, shall be fixed and established as standards under the act and shall be in effect from the 1st day of May of each year until April 30, inclusive, of the following year, except that tea shipped from abroad prior to May 1 of any year shall be governed by the standards in effect at the time of shipment. Such standards for each year will be published in the FEDERAL REGISTER.

§ 1220.42 To whom standards will be furnished.

(a) A quantity of tea of the approved standards will be repacked in half-pound tin containers by competent tea packers under the constant supervision of an officer of the Food and Drug Administration and full sets will be furnished the Board of Tea Appeals, the supervising tea examiner, and the examiners of tea at all the tea examining stations.

(b) Standards will be furnished to actual importers and regular tea brokers on application to the supervising tea examiner, at the actual cost of the same.

§ 1220.43 Disposition of obsolete standards.

After standard samples have served their purpose and new season samples have been submitted, the old samples may be included in quarterly sales of unclaimed goods, and the proceeds paid into the Treasury, after deducting expenses of advertisement and sale, the designation on the packages showing such teas to have been used as Government standards to be obliterated before delivery to purchaser.

Subpart F—Individual Standards

§ 1220.50 Macao or Canton congou and brick tea standards.

Macao or Canton congou and brick tea should be compared with the standard for China congou. The mustiness or damaged flavor exhibited in certain Canton teas would be just cause for rejection.

§ 1220.51 Teas imitating China green teas.

Whenever Japans, Ceylons, Indias, or any other teas are made up to imitate the green teas of China, they are to be examined in comparison with the China green standards.

§ 1220.52 Powchong Formosa oolong teas.

All Powchong (scented) Formosa oolong teas should be examined in comparison with the Formosa standard.

Subpart G—Inspection, Testing, and Grounds for Rejection

§ 1220.60 Instructions to examiners.

(a) Examiners are instructed not to pass upon samples representing importations of tea imported separately from the importation; neither shall they give nonofficial opinions concerning samples.

(b) The examination of tea in comparison with the standards under this act shall be made according to the usages and customs of the tea trade, including the testing of an infusion in boiling water and, if necessary, chemical analysis; and examiners are advised, inasmuch as they must not under the law admit any tea inferior to the standards in purity, quality, and fitness for consumption, to employ the present methods of determining the presence of artificial coloring and other impurities. (See § 1220.64.)

§ 1220.61 Testing of teas.

(a) In comparing with standards, examiners are to test all the teas for quality, for impurity consisting of artificial coloring or facing matter, and other impurity, and for quality of infused leaf. Quality shall be ascertained by drawing, according to the custom of the tea trade, with the weight of a silver half dime to the cup. The quality must be equal to standard, but the flavor may be that of a different district, as long as it is equally fit for consumption. As an illustration, a Teenkai may be equal to a Moyune, but a distinctly smoky or rank Fychow or Wenchow of sour character is not considered equal to the first two mentioned.

(b) Tea dust, fannings, siftings, and offgrades, including broken tea (BT), broken mix (BM), and Bohea when so marked and for which there is no specific standard, should be tested for quality, purity, and fitness for consumption in comparison with their respective leaf standards.

§ 1220.62 Testing quality of infused leaf.

In order to test the quality of the infused leaf in comparison with the standard, a second drawing should be made of double weight. Before pouring off the water, examine for an excess of "floaters" (woody stems which remain floating after the leaf is thoroughly infused) to determine whether they are in sufficient quantity to reduce the quality of the infusion below that of the standard. After pouring off the water the infused leaf should be taken out so as to exhibit the lower side which rested against the cup. Should the mass show a larger quantity of exhausted or decayed leaf than the standard, it affords sufficient evidence to be judged inferior in quality and consequently to be rejected.

§ 1220.63 Test for paraffin and similar substances.

If the examiner suspects the presence of paraffin or any similar substance, he should make the following test in comparison with the standard: Spread the tea between two sheets of unglazed white paper. Place thereon a hot iron. The greasy substance, if any, will appear on the paper, and if not equal to the standard the tea would justly be rejected.

§ 1220.64 Tests for impurities.

(a) To examine for impurities the following tests may be used in comparison with the standard:

(1) Read test, with additions and modifications, and the cup test, doubleweight. Place 2 ounces of tea in a sieve 5 or 6 inches in diameter, having 60 meshes to the inch and provided with a top. Sift a small quantity of the dust onto a semiglazed white paper about 8 by 10 inches. The amount of dust placed on the paper should be approximately 1 grain. To get the requisite amount of dust it is sometimes necessary to rub the leaf gently against the bottom of the sieve, but this must not be done until the sieve has been well shaken over the test paper. Pour the dust thus collected from the paper into the scales, weigh out 1 grain, and return this quantity to the same paper, distributing it well over the surface of the paper. Then place the paper on a plain, firm surface, preferably glass or marble, and crush the dust by pushing over it, with considerable pressure, a flat steel spatula about 5 inches long. Do this repeatedly until the tea dust is ground almost to a powder and the particles of coloring matter or other impurities, if any, are spread or streaked on the paper, so as to become more apparent. Brush off the loose dust and examine the paper by means of a simple lens magnifying 7½ diameters. In distinguishing these particles and streaks bright light is essential.

(2) The crushed leaf in either black or green tea appears in such quantity that there is no chance of mistaking the leaf for artificial coloring, facing material, or other impurities.

(3) The test is performed in comparison with the standard, and, if the tea is clearly equal to the standard with respect to artificial coloring, facing matter, or other impurities, the operation need not be repeated. If particles of artificial coloring, facing, or other impurities are found in the sample under comparison with the standard repeat this operation a sufficient number of times to be sure whether or not the tea contains impurities in excess of the standard.

(4) Repeat the operation, using semiglazed black paper instead of the white paper. This black-paper test shows the presence of facing and other impurities, such as talc, gypsum, barium sulfate, clay, and kaolin.

(5) If the tea under examination is found, by the foregoing tests, to contain more impurities than the standard, draw samples from packages representing at least 5 percent of the line in question, and subject each sample to the tests to ascertain whether or not the majority contain impurities in excess of the standard.

(6) The foregoing tests may be applied to tea of all varieties.

(b) Should the examination of the sample by the cup test, double-weight, for scum, sediment, etc., or the Read test, or both, disclose the presence of more impurities than the standard, a pound sample should be sent to the nearest district of the Food and Drug Administration and an analysis made in comparison with the standard to determine whether it contains more impurities than the standard. If the tea in question is found to contain more impurities than the standard, it would properly be rejected as not being equal to the standard in purity.

(c) All extraneous substances are impurities, and the presence of any may be detected in any way found efficient.

§ 1220.65 Tea dust.

Tea dust or broken leaf mixed with other teas or separate, made to imitate gunpowder or other teas, with the use of paste or gum, or any other substance, would justly be rejected.

§ 1220.66 Tolerance for fine tea particles.

Except for teas listed under § 1220.61(b), the amount by weight of fine tea particles that will pass through a wire sieve having 30 openings per linear inch in either direction and made of wire with a diameter of 0.01 inch, must not exceed 4 percent. Before condemning any tea for fine particles in excess of 4 percent, examiners shall sieve at least 4 representative samples, each taken from a different package in a shipment containing four or more packages, or where a lesser number of packages is involved, examiners shall sieve a representative sample from each package.

§ 1220.67 Tea inferior to the standard in any requisite is justly rejected.

Should a tea prove on examination to be inferior to the standard in any one of the requisites—namely, quality, quality of infused leaf, or purity—it would justly be rejected, notwithstanding the fact that it may be superior to the standards in some of the qualifications. No consideration shall be given to the appearance or so-called style of the dry leaf.

Subpart H—Administrative Procedures Based on Examination

§ 1220.70 Action based on result of examination.

(a) If, after examination, the tea is found not be prohibited under the act, a release permit shall at once be granted to the importer, declaring that the tea is not within the prohibition of the Tea Importation Act; but if, on examination, such tea, or merchandise described as tea, is found in the opinion of the examiner, to come within the prohibitions of the law and of the regulations in this part, the importer shall be immediately notified (T.I.S. Cat. No. 6), and the tea, or merchandise described as tea, so returned, shall not be released by the customhouse authorities, unless on a re-examination called for by the importer the return of the examiner shall be found erroneous. Should a portion only of the invoice be passed by the examiner as correct, a permit of delivery shall be granted for that portion and the remainder held as provided in section 6 of the act (29 Stat. 606; 21 U.S.C. 47).

(b) In all cases of rejections by examiners, the importers should be notified of the reason for rejection; that is, whether it be on the ground of quality, character of infused leaf, dust, or admixture with foreign substance.

§ 1220.71 Procedure for protest against findings.

In case the collector of customs, importer, or consignee shall protest against the finding of the examiner, the matter in dispute shall be referred for decision to the United States Board of Tea Appeals, designated by the Secretary of Health and Human Services, and if such board shall, after due examination, find the tea in question to be equal in purity, quality, and fitness for consumption, as compared with the proper standards, a permit shall be issued by the District Director of Customs for its release and delivery to the importer; but if, upon such final re-examination by such board, the tea shall be found to be inferior in purity, quality, and fitness for consumption, as compared with the said standards, the importer or consignee shall give a bond, unless he has previously done so, with security satisfactory to the District Director of Customs, to export said tea out of the limits of the United States within a period of 6 months after such final re-examination; and if the same shall not have been exported within the time specified, the District Director of Customs, at the expiration of that time, shall cause the same to be destroyed.

§ 1220.72 Procedure by importer for review.

(a) If the importer desires teas rejected by the examiner to be reviewed by the United States Board of Tea Appeals, as provided in section 6 of the said act, he shall, within 30 days after he has been notified of such return, file a written application with the collector in the form T.I.S. Cat. No. 20. The District Director of Customs will thereupon forward such application to the United States Board of Tea Appeals, designated by the Secretary of Health and Human Services for review of the matter in dispute, and the proceedings shall be according to section 8 of the act.

(b) The re-examination of the tea samples must be restricted to the samples put up and sealed by the examiner at ports where qualified tea examiners are stationed, or by the chief officer of the customs, if there is no qualified tea examiner so stationed, in the presence of the importer or consignee, if he so desires. In either case the samples should be transmitted to the United States Board of Tea Appeals by the tea examiner, together with a copy of the finding of the examiner, setting forth the cause of condemnation.

(c) These samples for re-examination should weigh at least 1 pound, and should be put up in tins securely labeled (T.I.S. Cat. No. 21) and well wiped and seasoned. Half of such samples shall be utilized for the examination by the Board of Tea Appeals and for return to the port of entry with the decision, as heretofore, and the remaining half pound, if the tea be rejected by said board, shall be distributed among the various examiners for their information and guidance.

(d) Teas rejected by team examiners and rejections affirmed by the United States Board of Tea Appeals cannot be re-examined.

§ 1220.73 Rejected tea.

Rejected tea can only be released or withdrawn for exportation, for transportation and exportation, or for manufacturing purposes under the Tea Importation Act (35 Stat. 163; 21 U.S.C. 41), as the case may be.

§ 1220.74 Exportation of rejected teas.

(a) Teas to be exported for the reason that they are within the prohibition of the statute will be entered for exportation on Customs Form No. 7515, and bond on Customs Form No. 7557 shall be given for their exportation in a penal sum equal to double the value of the tea, provided consumption entry bond (Form No. 7551 or Form No. 7553) was not previously given.

(b) Whenever a bond is given to export any condemned tea in pursuance of the act, it will be canceled upon the filing of an outward bill of lading and a duly authenticated certificate of clearance from the customs officer supervising the lading thereof, as in the case of rejected foods and drugs (T.D. 28841), and all accrued charges must be paid before issuance of permit for exportation.

(c) At interior ports the export entry shall be made for transportation and immediate exportation in bond.

§ 1220.75 Reimportation of exported teas forbidden.

(a) No imported teas which have been rejected by an examiner, or by the United States Board of Tea Appeals, and exported under the provisions of this act, shall be reimported into the United States under the penalty of forfeiture for a violation of this prohibition.

(b) Customs officers will make seizure of any tea so imported.

§ 1220.76 Destruction of condemned tea.

Whenever condemned tea is to be destroyed it must be conveyed to some suitable place, and proper means, to be prescribed by the examiner, must be used for its effectual destruction, which shall be effected in the presence of an officer of customs, detailed by the District Director of Customs for the purpose. Before the tea is destroyed a particular description or statement of the same must be prepared containing the name of the importer or owner, the date of importation, the name of the vessel, and the place from which imported, with the character and quantity of the tea and the invoice value. The fact of its destruction must be certified on said statement by the officer detailed as aforesaid, which statement must be filed in the customhouse.

PART 1230—REGULATIONS UNDER THE FEDERAL CAUSTIC POISON ACT

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1230.2 Scope of the act.
1230.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Labeling

1230.10 Placement.
1230.11 Required wording.
1230.12 Manufacturer; distributor.
1230.13 Labeling of "poison".
1230.14 Directions for treatment.
1230.15 Responsibility for labeling directions for treatment.
1230.16 Exemption from labeling directions for treatment.

Subpart C—Guaranty

1230.20 General guaranty.
1230.21 Specific guaranty.

Sec.

Subpart D—Administrative Procedures

1230.30 Collection of samples.
1230.31 Where samples may be collected.
1230.32 Analyzing of samples.
1230.33 Investigations.
1230.34 Analysis.
1230.35 Hearings.
1230.36 Hearings; when not provided for.
1230.37 Publication.

Subpart E—Imports

1230.40 Required label information.
1230.41 Delivery of containers.
1230.42 Invoices.
1230.43 Enforcement.
1230.44 Samples.
1230.45 No violation; release.
1230.46 Violation.
1230.47 Rejected containers.
1230.48 Relabeling of containers.
1230.49 Penalties.

AUTHORITY: Sec. 9, 44 Stat. 1049, amended; 15 U.S.C. 409.

SOURCE: 38 FR 32110, Nov. 20, 1973, unle otherwise noted.

CROSS REFERENCES: For regulations rel ing to invoices, entry, and assessment duties, see 19 CFR Parts 141, 142, 143, 1 152. For regulations regarding the examin tion, classification, and disposition of foo drugs, devices, cosmetics, insecticides, fun cides, and caustic or corrosive substanc see 19 CFR Part 12. For regulations relati to consular invoices, and documentation merchandise, see 22 CFR Parts 91 and 92.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1230.2 Scope of the act.

The provisions of the act apply any container which has been shipp or delivered for shipment in intersta or foreign commerce, as defined in se tion 2(c) of the act (44 Stat. 1407; U.S.C. 402) or which has been receiv from shipment in such commerce f sale or exchange, or which is sold offered for sale or held for sale or e change in any Territory or possessic or in the District of Columbia.

§ 1230.3 Definitions.

(a) The word "container" as used the regulations in this part means retail parcel, package, or contain suitable for household use and en ployed exclusively to hold any dange ous caustic or corrosive substance defined in the act.

(b) The words "suitable for household use" mean and imply adaptability for ready or convenient handling in places where people dwell.

Subpart B—Labeling

§ 1230.10 Placement.

The label or sticker shall be so firmly attached to the container that it will remain thereon while the container is being used, and be so placed as readily to attract attention.

§ 1230.11 Required wording.

(a) The common name of the dangerous caustic or corrosive substance which shall appear on the label or sticker is the name given in section 2(a) of the act (44 Stat. 1406; 15 U.S.C. 402) or any other name commonly employed to designate and identify such substance.

(b) Preparations within the scope of the act bearing trade or fanciful names shall, in addition, be labeled with the common name of the danger ous caustic or corrosive substance contained therein and comply with all the other requirements of the act and of the regulations in this part.

§ 1230.12 Manufacturer; distributor.

If the name on the label or sticker is other than that of the manufacturer, it shall be qualified by such words as "packed for," "packed by," "sold by," or "distributed by," as the case may be, or by other appropriate expression.

§ 1230.13 Labeling of "poison".

The following are styles of uncondensed Gothic capital letters 24-point (type face) size:

POISON

POISON

When letters of not less than 24-point size are required on a label in stating the word "poison" they must not be smaller than those above set forth.

§ 1230.14 Directions for treatment.

Except as provided in § 1230.16, the container shall bear in all cases upon the label or sticker thereof, immediately following the word "Poison," directions for treatment in the case of internal personal injury; in addition, if the substance may cause external injury, directions for appropriate treatment shall be given. The directions shall prescribe such treatments for personal injury as are sanctioned by competent medical authority, and the materials called for by such directions shall be, whenever practicable, such as are usually available in the household.

§ 1230.15 Responsibility for labeling directions for treatment.

A person who receives from a manufacturer or wholesaler any container which under the conditions set forth in section 2(b)(4) of the act and § 1230.16 does not bear at the time of shipment directions for treatment in the case of personal injury must place such directions on the label or sticker if he offers such container for general sale or exchange.

§ 1230.16 Exemption from labeling directions for treatment.

Manufacturers and wholesalers only, at the time of shipment or delivery for shipment, are exempted from placing directions for treatment on the label or sticker of any container for other than household use, but in any event the information required by section 2(b) (1), (2), and (3) of the act (44 Stat. 1407; 15 U.S.C. 402) and the regulations in this part shall be given.

Subpart C—Guaranty

§ 1230.20 General guaranty.

In lieu of a particular guaranty for each lot of dangerous caustic or corrosive substances, a general continuing guaranty may be furnished by the guarantor to actual or prospective purchasers. The following are forms of continuing guaranties:

(a) Substances for both household use and other than household use:

The undersigned guarantees that the retail parcels, packages, or containers of the dangerous caustic or corrosive substance or substances to be sold to ———— are not misbranded within the meaning of the Federal Caustic Poison Act.

(Date)

(Signature and address of guarantor)

(b) Substances for other than household use (this form may be issued only by a manufacturer or wholesaler) (§§ 1230.15, 1230.16):

The dangerous caustic or corrosive substance or substances in retail parcels, packages, or containers suitable for household use to be sold to ———— are for other than household use, and guaranteed not to be misbranded within the meaning of the Federal Caustic Poison Act.

(Date)

(Signature and address of manufacturer or wholesaler)

§ 1230.21 Specific guaranty.

If a guaranty in respect to any specific lot of dangerous caustic or corrosive substances be given, it shall be incorporated in or attached to the bill of sale, invoice, or other schedule bearing the date and the name and quantity of the substance sold, and shall not appear on the label or package. The following are forms of specific guaranties:

(a) Substances for both household use and other than household use:

The undersigned guarantees that the retail parcels, packages, or containers of the dangerous caustic or corrosive substance or substances listed herein (or specifying the substances) are not misbranded within the meaning of the Federal Caustic Poison Act.

(Signature and address of guarantor)

(b) Substances for other than household use (this form may be issued only by a manufacturer or wholesaler (§§ 1230.15, 1230.16):

The dangerous caustic or corrosive substance or substances listed herein (or specifying the substances) in retail parcels, packages, or containers suitable for household use are for other than household use and are guaranteed not to be misbranded within the meaning of the Federal Caustic Poison Act.

(Name and address of manufacturer or wholesaler)

Subpart D—Administrative Procedures

§ 1230.30 Collection of samples.

Samples for examination by or under the direction and supervision of the Food and Drug Administration shall be collected by:

(a) An authorized agent in the employ of the Department of Health and Human Services;

(b) Any officer of any State, Territory, or possession, or of the District of Columbia, authorized by the Secretary of Health and Human Services.

§ 1230.31 Where samples may be collected.

Caustic or corrosive substances within the scope of this act (44 Stat. 1406; 15 U.S.C. 401-411) may be sampled wherever found.

§ 1230.32 Analyzing of samples.

Samples collected by an authorized agent shall be analyzed at the laboratory designated by the Food and Drug Administration. Only such samples as are collected in accordance with §§ 1230.30, 1230.31 may be analyzed by or under the direction and supervision of the Food and Drug Administration. Upon request one subdivision of the sample, if available, shall be delivered to the party or parties interested.

§ 1230.33 Investigations.

Authorized agents in the employ of the Department of Health and Human Services may make investigations, including the inspection of premises where dangerous caustic and corrosive substances subject to the act are manufactured, packed, stored, or held for sale or distribution, and make examinations of freight and other transportation records.

§ 1230.34 Analysis.

(a) The methods of examination or analysis employed shall be those prescribed by the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists, when applicable, provided, however, that any method of analysis or examination satisfactory to the Food and Drug Administration may be employed.

(b) All percentages stated in the definitions in section 2(a) of the Federal Caustic Poison Act shall be determined by weight.

§ 1230.35 Hearings.

Whenever it appears from the inspection, analysis, or test of any container that the provisions of section 3 or 6 of the Federal Caustic Poison Act (44 Stat. 1407, 1409; 15 U.S.C. 403, 406) have been violated and criminal proceedings are contemplated, notice shall be given to the party or parties against whom prosecution is under consideration and to other interested parties, and a date shall be fixed at which such party or parties may be heard. The hearing shall be held at the office of the Food and Drug Administration designated in the notice and shall be private and confined to questions of fact. The parties notified may present evidence, either oral or written, in person or by attorney, to show cause why the matter should not be referred for prosecution as a violation of the Federal Caustic Poison Act.

§ 1230.36 Hearings; when not provided for.

No hearing is provided for when the health, medical, or drug officer or agent of any State, Territory, or possession, or of the District of Columbia, acts under the authority contained in section 8 of the Federal Caustic Poison Act (44 Stat. 1409; 15 U.S.C. 408) in reporting a violation direct to the United States attorney.

§ 1230.37 Publication.

(a) After judgment of the court in any proceeding under the Federal Caustic Poison Act, notice shall be given by publication. Such notice shall include the findings of the court and may include the findings of the analyst and such explanatory statements of fact as the Secretary of Health and Human Services may deem appropriate.

(b) This publication may be made in the form of a circular, notice, or bulletin, as the Secretary of Health and Human Services may direct.

(c) If an appeal be taken from the judgment of the court before such publication, that fact shall appear.

Subpart E—Imports

§ 1230.40 Required label information.

Containers which are offered for import shall in all cases bear labels or stickers having thereon the information required by section 2(b) (1), (2), and (3) of the Federal Caustic Poison Act and the directions for treatment in the case of personal injury, except such directions need not appear on the label or sticker at the time of shipment by a wholesaler or manufacturer for other than household use.

§ 1230.41 Delivery of containers.

Containers shall not be delivered to the consignee prior to report of examination, unless a bond has been given on the appropriate form for the amount of the full invoice value of such containers, together with the duty thereon, and the refusal of the consignee to return such containers for any cause to the custody of the District Director of Customs when demanded, for the purpose of excluding them from the country or for any other purpose, the consignee shall pay an amount equal to the sum named in the bond, and such part of the duty, if any, as may be payable, as liquidated damages for failure to return to the District Director of Customs on demand all containers covered by the bond.

§ 1230.42 Invoices.

As soon as the importer makes entry, the invoices covering containers and the public stores packages shall be made available, with the least possible delay, for inspection by the representative of the district. When no sample is desired the invoice shall be stamped by the district "No sample desired, Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services, per (initials of inspecting officer)."

§ 1230.43 Enforcement.

(a) *Enforcement agency.* The Federal Caustic Poison Act shall be enforced by the Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services.

(b) *Enforcement of provisions.* The enforcement of the provisions of the Federal Caustic Poison Act as they relate to imported dangerous caustic or corrosive substances, will, as a general rule, be under the direction of the chief of the local inspection district of the Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services, and District Directors of Customs acting as administrative officers in carrying out directions relative to the detention, exportation, and sale, or other disposition of such substances and action under the bond in case of noncompliance with the provisions of the Federal Caustic Poison Act.

(c) *Chief of district as customs officer.* The chief of district shall be deemed a customs officer in enforcing import regulations.

(d) *Nonlaboratory ports.* (1) At the ports of entry where there is no district of the Food and Drug Administration, the District Director of Customs or deputy, on the day when the first notice of expected shipment of containers is received, either by invoice or entry, shall notify the chief of district in whose territory the port is located.

(2) On the day of receipt of such notice the chief of district shall mail to the District Director of Customs appropriate notice, if no sample is desired. This notice serves as an equivalent to stamping the invoices at district ports with the legend "No sample desired. Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services, per (initials of inspecting officer)."

(3) If samples are desired, the Chief of district shall immediately notify the District Director of Customs.

(4) The District Director of Customs at once shall forward samples, accompanied by description of shipment.

(5) When samples are desired from each shipment of containers, the chief of district shall furnish to District Director of Customs and deputies at ports within the district's territory a list of such containers, indicating the size of sample necessary. Samples should then be sent promptly on arrival of containers without awaiting special request.

(6) In all other particulars the procedure shall be the same at nonlaboratory ports as at laboratory ports, except that the time consumed in delivery of notices by mail shall be allowed for.

§ 1230.44 Samples.

On the same day that samples are requested by the district, the District Director of Customs or appraiser shall notify the importer that samples will be taken, that the containers must be held intact pending a notice of the result of inspection and analysis, and that in case the containers do not comply with the requirements of the Federal Caustic Poison Act, they must be returned to the District Director of Customs for disposition. This notification may be given by the District Director of Customs or appraiser through individual notices to the importer or by suitable bulletin notices posted daily in the customhouse.

§ 1230.45 No violation; release.

As soon as examination of the samples is completed, if no violation of the act is detected, the chief of the district shall send a notice of release to the importer and a copy of this notice to the District Director of Customs for his information.

§ 1230.46 Violation.

(a) If a violation of the Federal Caustic Poison Act is disclosed, the chief of the district shall send to the importer due notice of the nature of the violation and of the time and place where evidence may be presented, showing that the containers should not be refused admission. At the same time similar notice regarding detention of the containers shall be sent to the District Director of Customs, requesting him to refuse delivery thereof or to require their return to customs custody if by any chance the containers were released without the bond referred to in § 1230.41. The time allowed the importer for representations regarding the shipment may be extended at his request for a reasonable period to permit him to secure such evidence.

(b) If the importer does not reply to the notice of hearing in person or by letter within the time allowed on the notice, a second notice, marked "second and last notice," shall be sent at once by the chief of the district, advising him that failure to reply will cause definite recommendation to the District Director of Customs that the containers be refused admission and that the containers be exported within 3 months under customs supervision.

§ 1230.47 Rejected containers.

(a) In all cases where the containers are to be refused admission, the chief of the district within 1 day after hearing, or, if the importer does not appear or reply within 3 days after second notice, shall notify the District Director of Customs in duplicate accordingly.

(b) Not later than 1 day after receipt of this notice the District Director of Customs shall sign and transmit to the importer one of the copies, which shall serve as notification to the importer that the containers must be exported under customs supervision within 3 months from such date, as provided by law; the other notice shall be retained as office record and later returned as a report to the chief of the district. In all cases the importer shall return his notice to the District Director of Customs, properly certified as to the information required, as the form provides.

§ 1230.48 Relabeling of containers.

(a) If containers are to be released after relabeling, a notice shall be sent by the chief of district direct to the importer, a carbon copy being sent to the District Director of Customs. This notice must state specifically the conditions to be performed, so as to bring the performance thereof under the provisions of the customs bonds on consumption and warehouse entries, these bonds including provisions requiring compliance with all of the requirements of the Federal Caustic Poison Act and all regulations and instructions issued thereunder. The notice will also state the officer to be notified by the importer when the containers are ready for inspection.

(b) The importer must return the notice to the District Director of Customs or chief of district, as designated, with the certificate thereon filled out, stating that he has complied with the prescribed conditions and that the containers are ready for inspection at the place named.

(c) This notice will be delivered to the inspection officer, who, after inspection, will endorse the result thereof on the back of the notice and return the same to the District Director of Customs or to the chief of district, as the case may be.

(d) When the conditions to be complied with are under the supervision of the chief of district, and these conditions have been fully met, he shall release the containers to the importer, sending a copy of the notice of release to the District Director of Customs for his information. If the containers have not been properly relabeled within the period allowed, the chief of district shall immediately give notice in duplicate to the District Director of Customs of the results of inspection. The District Director of Customs shall sign and immediately transmit one copy of the notice to the importer and proceed in the usual manner.

(e) If the containers are detained subject to relabeling to be performed under the supervision of the District Director of Customs, the District Director of Customs, as soon as relabeling is accomplished, will notify the importer that the containers are released.

(f) If the containers have not been properly relabeled within the period allowed, their sale after labeling as required by the act or other disposition must be effected by the District Director of Customs.

(g) When the final action has been taken on containers which have been refused admission, sold, or otherwise disposed of as provided for by the act or which have been relabeled under the supervision of the District Director of Customs, he shall send to the chief of district a notice of such final action, giving the date and disposition.

(h) When relabeling is allowed the importer must furnish satisfactory evidence as to the identity of the containers before release is given. The relabeling must be done at a stated place and apart from other containers of a similar nature.

(i) When containers are shipped to another port for relabeling or exportation, they must be shipped under customs carrier's manifest, in the same manner as shipments in bond.

(j) District Directors of Customs will perform the inspection service whenever containers are to be exported, sold, or otherwise disposed of, and in other cases when there is no officer of the district available.

(k) District Directors of Customs and representatives of the district will confer and arrange the apportionment of the inspection service according to local conditions. Officers of the district will, whenever feasible, perform the inspection service in connection with relabeling.

§ 1230.49 Penalties.

(a) In case of failure to comply with the instructions or recommendations of the chief of district as to conditions under which containers may be disposed of, the District Director of Customs shall notify the chief of district in all cases coming to his attention within 3 days after inspection or after the expiration of the 3 months allowed by law if no action is taken.

(b) The chief of district, upon receipt of the above-described notice, and in all cases of failure to meet the conditions imposed in order to comply with the provisions of the Federal Caustic Poison Act coming directly under his supervision, shall transmit to the District Director of Customs such evidence as he may have at hand tending to indicate the importer's liability and make a recommendation accordingly.

(c) The District Director of Customs, within 3 days of the receipt of this recommendation, whether favorable or otherwise, shall notify the importer that, the legal period of 3 months for exportation or relabeling having expired, action will be taken within 30 days to enforce the terms of the bond.

PART 1240—CONTROL OF COMMUNICABLE DISEASES

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1240.3 General definitions.
1240.10 Effective bactericidal treatment

Subpart B—Administrative Procedures

1240.20 Issuance and posting of certificates following inspections.
1240.30 Measures in the event of inadequate local control.

Subpart C—Restrictions on Travel of Persons

1240.40 All communicable diseases.
1240.45 Report of disease.
1240.50 Certain communicable diseases; special requirements.
1240.54 Apprehension and detention of persons with specific diseases.
1240.55 Responsibility with respect to minors, wards, and patients.
1240.57 Members of military and naval forces.

Subpart D—Specific Administrative Decisions Regarding Interstate Shipments

1240.60 Shellfish.
1240.61 Mandatory pasteurization for all milk and milk products in final package form intended for direct human consumption.
1240.62 Turtles intrastate and interstate requirements.
1240.65 Psittacine birds.
1240.70 Lather brushes.
1240.75 Garbage.

Subpart E—Source and Use of Potable Water

1240.80 General requirements for water for drinking and culinary purposes.
1240.83 Approval of watering points.
1240.86 Protection of pier water system.
1240.90 Approval of treatment aboard conveyances.
1240.95 Sanitation of water boats.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 215, 311, 361, 368, 58 Stat. 690, 693, 703 as amended, 706 (42 U.S.C. 216, 243, 264, 271); 21 CFR 5.10, 5.11.

SOURCE: 40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

CROSS-REFERENCES: For Department of Health and Human Services regulations relating to foreign quarantine, sanitation measures, and control of communicable diseases, see Centers for Disease Control's requirements as set forth in 42 CFR Parts 71 and 72, and within that Part 71 under § 71.602, the standards and source approval requirements cited under Part 72 are no longer codified thereunder as the applicable requirements of 42 CFR Part 72 having been recodified to 21 CFR Parts 1240 and 1250 in FR Doc. 75-3395 in the FEDERAL REGISTER of February 6, 1975 (40 FR 5620). Additionally, Food and Drug Administration regulations relating to interstate conveyance sanitation are prescribed in Part 1250 of this chapter.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1240.3 General definitions.

As used in this part, terms shall have the following meaning:

(a) *Bactericidal treatment.* The application of a method or substance for the destruction of pathogens and other organisms as set forth in § 1240.10.

(b) *Communicable diseases.* Illnesses due to infectious agents or their toxic products, which may be transmitted from a reservoir to a susceptible host either directly as from an infected person or animal or indirectly through the agency of an intermediate plant or animal host, vector, or the inanimate environment.

(c) *Communicable period.* The period or periods during which the etiologic agent may be transferred directly or indirectly from the body of the infected person or animal to the body of another.

(d) *Contamination.* The presence of a certain amount of undesirable substance or material, which may contain pathogenic microorganisms.

(e) *Conveyance.* Conveyance means any land or air carrier, or any vessel as defined in paragraph (n) of this section.

(f) *Garbage.* (1) The solid animal and vegetable waste, together with the natural moisture content, resulting from the handling, preparation, or consumption of foods in houses, restaurants, hotels, kitchens, and similar establishments, or (2) any other food waste containing pork.

(g) *Incubation period.* The period between the implanting of disease organisms in a susceptible person and the appearance of clinical manifestation of the disease.

(h) *Interstate traffic.* (1) The movement of any conveyance or the transportation of persons or property, including any portion of such movement or transportation which is entirely within a State or possession.

(i) From a point of origin in any State or possession to a point of destination in any other State or possession, or

(ii) Between a point of origin and a point of destination in the same State or possession but through any other State, possession, or contiguous foreign country.

(2) Interstate traffic does not include the following:

(i) The movement of any conveyance which is solely for the purpose of unloading persons or property transported from a foreign country, or loading persons or property for transportation to a foreign country.

(ii) The movement of any conveyance which is solely for the purpose of effecting its repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation, or storage.

(i) *Minimum heat treatment.* The causing of all particles in garbage to be heated to a boiling temperature and held at that temperature for a period of not less than 30 minutes.

(j) *Possession.* Any of the possessions of the United States, including Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.

(k) *Potable water.* Water which meets the standards prescribed in the Environmental Protection Agency's Primary Drinking Water Regulations as set forth in 40 CFR Part 141 and the Food and Drug Administration's sanitation requirements as set forth in this part and Part 1250 of this chapter.

(l) *State.* Any State, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.

(m) *Utensil.* Includes any kitchenware, tableware, glassware, cutlery, containers, or equipment with which food or drink comes in contact during storage, preparation, or serving.

(n) *Vessel.* Any passenger-carrying, cargo, or towing vessel exclusive of:

(1) Fishing boats including those used for shell-fishing;

(2) Tugs which operate only locally in specific harbors and adjacent waters;

(3) Barges without means of self-propulsion;

(4) Construction-equipment boats and dredges; and

(5) Sand and gravel dredging and handling boats.

(o) *Watering point.* The specific place or water boat from which potable water is loaded on a conveyance.

(p) *Shellfish.* Any fresh, frozen, or incompletely cooked oysters, clams, or mussels, either shucked or in the shell, and any fresh, frozen, or incompletely cooked edible products thereof.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1240.10 Effective bactericidal treatment.

Whenever, under the provisions of this part, bactericidal treatment is required, it shall be accomplished by one or more of the following methods:

(a) By immersion of the utensil or equipment for at least 2 minutes in clean hot water at a temperature of at least 170° F or for one-half minute in boiling water;

(b) By immersion of the utensil or equipment for at least 2 minutes in a lukewarm chlorine bath containing at least 50 ppm of available chlorine if hypochlorites are used or a concentration of equal bactericidal strength if chloramines are used;

(c) By exposure of the utensil or equipment in a steam cabinet at a temperature of at least 170° F for at least 15 minutes or at a temperature of 200° F for at least 5 minutes;

(d) By exposure of the utensil or equipment in an oven or hot air cabinet at a temperature of at least 180° F for at least 20 minutes;

(e) In the case of utensils or equipment so designed or installed as to make immersion or exposure impractical, the equipment may be treated for the prescribed periods of time either at the temperatures or with chlorine solutions as specified above, (1) with live steam from a hose if the steam can be confined, (2) with boiling rinse water, or (3) by spraying or swabbing with chlorine solution;

(f) Any other method determined by the Surgeon General, upon application of an owner or operator of a conveyance, to be effective to prevent the spread of communicable disease.

Subpart B—Administrative Procedures

§ 1240.20 Issuance and posting of cer
cates following inspections.

The Commissioner of Food
Drugs may issue certificates ba
upon inspections provided for in t
part and Part 1250. Such certifica
shall be prominently posted on c
veyances.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended a
FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1240.30 Measures in the event of in
equate local control.

Whenever the Commissioner
Food and Drugs determines that
measures taken by health authorit
of any State or possession (includ
political subdivisions thereof) are
sufficient to prevent the spread of
of the communicable diseases fr
such State or possession to any ot
State or possession, he may take su
measures to prevent such spread
the diseases as he deems reasona
necessary, including inspection, fu
gation, disinfection, sanitation, p
extermination, and destruction of a
nials or articles believed to be sour
of infection.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at
FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

Subpart C—Restrictions on Travel
Persons

§ 1240.40 All communicable diseases.

A person who has a communica
disease in the communicable per
shall not travel from one State or p
session to another without a per
from the health officer of the Sta
possession, or locality of destination
such permit is required under the l
applicable to the place of destinati
Stop-overs other than those necess
for transportation connections sh
be considered as places of destinati

§ 1240.45 Report of disease.

The master of any vessel or pers
in charge of any conveyance enga
in interstate traffic, on which a case
suspected case of a communicable
ease develops shall, as soon as pra

cable, notify the local health authority at the next port of call, station, or stop, and shall take such measures to prevent the spread of the disease as the local health authority directs.

§ 1240.50 Certain communicable diseases; special requirements.

The following provisions are applicable with respect to any person who is in the communicable period of cholera, plague, smallpox, typhus or yellow fever, or who, having been exposed to any such disease, is in the incubation period thereof:

(a) *Requirements relating to travelers.* (1) No such person shall travel from one State or possession to another, or on a conveyance engaged in interstate traffic, without a written permit of the Surgeon General or his authorized representative.

(2) Application for a permit may be made directly to the Surgeon General or to his representative authorized to issue permits.

(3) Upon receipt of an application, the Surgeon General or his authorized representative shall, taking into consideration the risk of introduction, transmission, or spread of the disease from one State or possession to another, reject it, or issue a permit which may be conditioned upon compliance with such precautionary measures as he shall prescribe.

(4) A person to whom a permit has been issued shall retain it in his possession throughout the course of his authorized travel and comply with all conditions prescribed therein, including presentation of the permit to the operators of conveyances as required by its terms.

(b) *Requirements relating to operation of conveyances.* (1) The operator of any conveyance engaged in interstate traffic shall not knowingly (i) accept for transportation any person who fails to present a permit as required by paragraph (a) of this section, or (ii) transport any person in violation of conditions prescribed in his permit.

(2) Whenever a person subject to the provisions of this section is transported on a conveyance engaged in interstate traffic, the operator thereof shall take such measures to prevent the spread of the disease, including submission of the conveyance to inspection, disinfection and the like, as an officer of the Public Health Service designated by the Surgeon General for such purposes deems reasonably necessary and directs.

§ 1240.54 Apprehension and detention of persons with specific diseases.

Regulations prescribed in Parts 1240 and 1250 are not applicable to the apprehension, detention, or conditional release of individuals except for the purpose of preventing the introduction, transmission, or spread of the following diseases: Anthrax, chancroid, cholera, dengue, diphtheria, granuloma inguinale, infectious encephalitis, favus, gonorrhea, leprosy, lymphogranuloma venereum, meningococcus meningitis, plague, poliomyelitis, psittacosis, relapsing fever, ringworm of the scalp, scarlet fever, streptococcic sore throat, smallpox, syphilis, trachoma, tuberculosis, typhoid fever, typhus, and yellow fever.

§ 1240.55 Responsibility with respect to minors, wards, and patients.

A parent, guardian, physican, nurse, or other such person shall not transport, or procure or furnish transportation for any minor child or ward, patient or other such person who is in the communicable period of a communicable disease, except in accordance with provisions of this subpart.

§ 1240.57 Members of military and naval forces.

The provisions of §§ 1240.40, 1240.45, 1240.50, 1240.55 and 1240.57 shall not apply to members of the military or naval forces, and medical care or hospital beneficiaries of the Army, Navy, Veterans' Administration, or Public Health Service, when traveling under competent orders: *Provided,* That in the case of persons otherwise subject to the provisions of § 1240.50 the authority authorizing the travel requires precautions to prevent the possible transmission of infection to others during the travel period.

Subpart D—Specific Administrative Decisions Regarding Interstate Shipments

§ 1240.60 Shellfish.

A person shall not offer for transportation, or transport, in interstate traffic any shellfish handled or stored in such an insanitary manner, or grown in an area so contaminated, as to render such shellfish likely to become agents in, and their transportation likely to contribute to the spread of communicable disease from one State or possession to another.

§ 1240.61 Mandatory pasteurization for all milk and milk products in final package form intended for direct human consumption.

(a) No person shall cause to be delivered into interstate commerce or shall sell, otherwise distribute, or hold for sale or other distribution after shipment in interstate commerce any milk or milk product in final package form for direct human consumption that has not been pasteurized except where alternative procedures are provided by regulation, such as Part 133 of this chapter for curing of certain cheese varieties.

(b) Except as provided in paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section, the terms "pasteurization," "pasteurized," and similar terms shall mean the process of heating every particle of milk and milk product in properly designed and operated equipment to one of the temperatures given in the following table and held continuously at or above that temperature for at least the corresponding specified time:

Temperature	Time
145 °F (63 °C)[1]	30 minutes.
161 °F (72 °C)[1]	15 seconds.
191 °F (89 °C)	1 second.

[1] If the fat content of the milk product is 10 percent or more, or if it contains added sweeteners, the specified temperature shall be increased by 5 °F (3 °C).

Temperature	Time
194°F (90 °C)	0.5 second.
201°F (94 °C)	0.1 second.
204°F (96 °C)	0.05 second.
212°F (100 °C)	0.01 second.

(c) Eggnog shall be heated to at le
the following temperature and ti
specification:

Temperature	Time
155°F (69 °C)	30 minutes.
175°F (80 °C)	25 seconds.
180°F (83 °C)	15 seconds.

(d) Neither paragraph (b) nor (c)
this section shall be construed as b
ring any other pasteurization proc
that has been recognized by the Fo
and Drug Administration to be equa
efficient in the destruction of micro
al organisms of public health sign
cance.

[52 FR 29514, Aug. 10, 1987]

§ 1240.62 Turtles intrastate and interst requirements.

(a) *Definition.* As used in this s
tion the term "turtles" includes
animals commonly known as turt
tortoises, terrapins, and all other a
mals of the order Testudinata, cl
Reptilia, except marine species (fa
lies Dermachelidae and Chelonidae)

(b) *Sales; general prohibiti*
Except as otherwise provided in t
section, viable turtle eggs and live t
tles with a carapace length of l
than 4 inches shall not be sold, h
for sale, or offered for any other t
of commercial or public distribution

(c) *Destruction of turtles or tu*
eggs; criminal penalties. (1) Any via
turtle eggs or live turtles with a ca
pace length of less than 4 inc
which are held for sale or offered
any other type of commercial
public distribution shall be subject
destruction in a humane manner by
under the supervision of an officer
employee of the Food and Drug
ministration in accordance with
following procedures:

(i) Any District Office of the Fo
and Drug Administration, upon dete
ing viable turtle eggs or live turt
with a carapace length of less tha
inches which are held for sale or

fered for any other type of commercial or public distribution, shall serve upon the person in whose possession such turtles or turtle eggs are found a written demand that such turtles or turtle eggs be destroyed in a humane manner under the supervision of said District Office, within 10 working days from the date of promulgation of the demand. The demand shall recite with particularity the facts which justify the demand. After service of the demand, the person in possession of the turtles or turtle eggs shall not sell, distribute, or otherwise dispose of any of the turtles or turtle eggs except to destroy them under the supervision of the District Office, unless and until the Director of the Bureau of Foods withdraws the demand for destruction after an appeal pursuant to paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section.

(ii) The person on whom the demand for destruction is served may either comply with the demand or, within 10 working days from the date of its promulgation, appeal the demand for destruction to the Director of the Bureau of Foods, Food and Drug Administration, 200 C St. SW., Washington, DC 20204. The demand for destruction may also be appealed within the same period of 10 working days by any other person having a pecuniary interest in such turtles or turtle eggs. In the event of such an appeal, the Bureau Director shall provide an opportunity for hearing by written notice to the appellant(s) specifying a time and place for the hearing, to be held within 14 days from the date of the notice but not within less than 7 days unless by agreement with the appellant(s).

(iii) Appearance by any appellant at the hearing may be by mail or in person, with or without counsel. The hearing shall be conducted by the Bureau Director or his designee, and a written summary of the proceedings shall be prepared by the person presiding. Any appellant shall have the right to hear and to question the evidence on which the demand for destruction is based, including the right to cross-examine witnesses, and he may present oral or written evidence in response to the demand.

(iv) If, based on the evidence presented at the hearing, the Bureau Director finds that the turtles or turtle eggs were held for sale or offered for any other type of commercial or public distribution in violation of this section, he shall affirm the demand that they be destroyed under the supervision of an officer or employee of the Food and Drug Administration; otherwise, the Bureau Director shall issue a written notice that the prior demand by the District Office is withdrawn. If the Bureau Director affirms the demand for destruction he shall order that the destruction be accomplished in a humane manner within 10 working days from the date of the promulgation of his decision. The Bureau Director's decision shall be accompanied by a statement of the reasons for the decision. The decision of the Bureau Director shall constitute final agency action, reviewable in the courts.

(v) If there is no appeal to the Director of the Bureau of Foods from the demand by the Food and Drug Administration District Office and the person in possession of the turtles or turtle eggs fails to destroy them within 10 working days, or if the demand is affirmed by the Director of the Bureau of Foods after an appeal and the person in possession of the turtles or turtle eggs fails to destroy them within 10 working days, the District Office shall designate an officer or employee to destroy the turtles or turtle eggs. It shall be unlawful to prevent or to attempt to prevent such destruction of turtles or turtle eggs by the officer or employee designated by the District Office. Such destruction will be stayed if so ordered by a court pursuant to an action for review in the courts as provided in paragraph (c)(1)(iv) of this section.

(2) Any person who violates any provision of this section, including but not limited to any person who sells, offers for sale, or offers for any other type of commercial or public distribution viable turtle eggs or live turtles with a carapace length of less than 4 inches, or who refuses to comply with a valid final demand for destruction of turtles or turtle eggs (either an unappealed demand by an FDA District Office or

a demand which has been affirmed by the Director of the Bureau of Foods pursuant to appeal), or who fails to comply with the requirement in such a demand that the manner of destruction be humane, shall be subject to a fine of not more than $1,000 or imprisonment for not more than 1 year, or both, for each violation, in accordance with section 368 of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 271).

(d) *Exceptions.* The provisions of this section are not applicable to:

(1) The sale, holding for sale, and distribution of live turtles and viable turtle eggs for bona fide scientific, educational, or exhibitional purposes, other than use as pets.

(2) The sale, holding for sale, and distribution of live turtles and viable turtle eggs not in connection with a business.

(3) The sale, holding for sale, and distribution of live turtles and viable turtle eggs intended for export only, provided that the outside of the shipping package is conspicuously labeled "For Export Only."

(4) Marine turtles excluded from this regulation under the provisions of paragraph (a) of this section and eggs of such turtles.

(e) *Petitions.* The Commissioner of Food and Drugs, either on his own initiative or on behalf of any interested person who has submitted a petition, may publish a proposal to amend this regulation. Any such petition shall include an adequate factual basis to support the petition, and will be published for comment if it contains reasonable grounds for the proposed regulation. A petition requesting such a regulation, which would amend this regulation, shall be submitted to the Dockets Management Branch, Food and Drug Administration, Room 4-62, Parklawn Building, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

[40 FR 22545, May 23, 1975, as amended at 46 FR 8461, Jan. 27, 1981; 48 FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1240.65 Psittacine birds.

(a) The term psittacine birds shall include all birds commonly known as parrots, Amazons, Mexican double heads, African grays, cocatoos, macaws, parakeets, love birds, lories,
lorikeets, and all other birds of
psittacine family.

(b) No person shall transport
offer for transportation, in inters
traffic any psittacine bird unless
shipment is accompanied by a pe
from the State health departmen
the State of destination where
quired by such department.

(c) Whenever the Surgeon Gen
finds that psittacine birds or hu
beings in any area are infected
psittacosis and there is such dange
transmission of psittacosis from
area as to endanger the public he
he may declare it an area of infec
No person shall thereafter trans
or offer for transportation, in i
state traffic any psittacine bird
such area, except shipments aut
ized by the Surgeon General for
poses of medical research and ac
panied by a permit issued by
until the Surgeon General finds
there is no longer any danger of t
mission of psittacosis from such
As used in this paragraph, the
"area" includes, but is not limite
specific premises or buildings.

§ 1240.70 Lather brushes.

(a) *General requirements.* A pe
shall not transport, or offer for t
portation by the owner or operat
a conveyance, nor shall the owne
operator of a conveyance know
transport for another person, in i
state traffic lather brushes made
animal hair or bristles unless:

(1) Such brushes have been im
ed in compliance with the provis
of 42 CFR 71.151; or

(2) Such brushes have been m
factured in the United States, its
tories, or possessions in compli
with the provisions of paragraphs
(c), (d), (e), and (f) of this section.

(b) *Treatment.* The hair or bri
used in such brushes, if other
badger hair, shall be subjected to s
lization or to a treatment found by
Surgeon General, upon applicatio
an interested person and the sub
sion by such person of suppor
data, to be effective to destroy
thrax spores in the hair or bristl
be treated. Badger hair shall be
ject to the requirement of steriliza

or other treatment only if the Surgeon General finds, and so notifies the manufacturer, that the hair was secured from areas, or has been stored or handled under circumstances, likely to render it an agent in the spread of communicable diseases from one State or possession to another.

(c) *Sterilization.* Sterilization shall consist of:

(1) Exposure to steam under pressure in an autoclave at a minimum temperature of 120° C (248° F) for 15 minutes for bristles and 20 minutes for hair; or

(2) Exposure to streaming steam in an autoclave (not under pressure) at 100° C (212° F) for 30 minutes for bristles and 40 minutes for hair.

In either case, the steam temperature shall be measured in the exhaust line at its exit from the autoclave by an indicating thermometer found by the Surgeon General to give reasonable assurance of accuracy, and by a recording thermometer adjusted to read no higher at any time than the indicating thermometer. The time of exposure shall be measured from the moment at which the indicating thermometer reaches the specified sterilization temperature. Recording thermometer charts for each sterilization shall be kept readily available. The hair or bristles shall be sterilized in tied or wrapped bundles not exceeding 2½ inches in diameter and 5 inches in length, or in untied and unwrapped lots not exceeding 2½ inches in depth. The bundle or lots shall be placed on racks or trays in single layers, with the racks or trays separated from each other sufficiently to assure free circulation of the steam and the exposure of all the hair or bristles to such steam. If the hair or bristles are placed in the autoclave in wrapped bundles, the ends of the bundles shall be left open.

(d) *Handling and storage.* Hair or bristles which have been treated, by sterilization or otherwise, shall be marked with the date of treatment, the method used, and name and location of the establishment at which treatment occurred, and shall be so handled and stored as to prevent their contamination or recontamination with anthrax spores.

(e) *Identifying marks.* Lather brushes shall be marked permanently with the name of the manufacturer or with an identifying mark of the manufacturer registered with the Surgeon General.

(f) *Inspection.* Persons engaged in processing or other handling of hair or bristles for use in lather brushes manufactured for transportation in interstate traffic and persons engaged in manufacturing such lather brushes from hair or bristles shall permit authorized representatives of the Surgeon General to make at any reasonable time such inspection of the plants or other places, including the equipment, operations, and products thereof, at which such manufacturing, processing or handling is carried on as may be necessary in the judgment of such representatives to determine compliance with the provisions of this section.

§ 1240.75 Garbage.

(a) A person shall not transport, receive, or cause to be transported or received, garbage in interstate traffic and feed such garbage to swine unless, prior to the feeding, such garbage has received minimum heat treatment.

(b) A person transporting garbage in interstate traffic shall not make, or agree to make, delivery thereof to any person with knowledge of the intent or customary practice of such person to feed to swine garbage which has not been subjected to minimum heat treatment.

Subpart E—Source and Use of Potable Water

§ 1240.80 General requirements for water for drinking and culinary purposes.

Only potable water shall be provided for drinking and culinary purposes by any operator of a conveyance engaged in interstate traffic, except as provided in § 1250.84(b) of this chapter. Such water shall either have been obtained from watering points approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, or, if treated aboard a conveyance, shall have been subjected to treatment approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1240.83 Approval of watering points.

(a) The Commissioner of Food and Drugs shall approve any watering point if (1) the water supply thereat meets the standards prescribed in the Environmental Protection Agency's Primary Drinking Water Regulations as set forth in 40 CFR Part 141, and (2) the methods of and facilities for delivery of such water to the conveyance and the sanitary conditions surrounding such delivery prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases.

(b) The Commissioner of Food and Drugs may base his approval or disapproval of a watering point upon investigations made by representatives of State departments of health or of the health authorities of contiguous foreign nations.

(c) If a watering point has not been approved, the Commissioner of Food and Drugs may permit its temporary use under such conditions as, in his judgment, are necessary to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases.

(d) Upon request of the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, operators of conveyances shall provide information as to watering points used by them.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983; 48 FR 13978, Apr. 1, 1983]

§ 1240.86 Protection of pier water system.

No vessel engaged in interstate traffic shall make a connection between its nonpotable water system and any pier potable water system unless provisions are made to prevent backflow from the vessel to the pier.

§ 1240.90 Approval of treatment aboard conveyances.

(a) The treatment of water aboard conveyances shall be approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs if the apparatus used is of such design and is so operated as to be capable of producing and in fact does produce, potable water.

(b) The Commissioner of Food and Drugs may base his approval or disapproval of the treatment of water upon investigations made by representatives of State departments of health or of the health authorities of contiguous foreign nations.

(c) Overboard water treated on vessels shall be from areas relatively free of contamination and pollution.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1240.95 Sanitation of water boats.

No vessel engaged in interstate traffic shall obtain water for drinking and culinary purposes from any water boat unless the tanks, piping, and other appurtenances used by the water boat in the loading, transportation, and delivery of such drinking and culinary water, have been approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.

[40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11431, Mar. 18, 1983]

PART 1250—INTERSTATE CONVEYANCE SANITATION

Subpart A—General Provisions

Sec.
1250.3 Definitions.

Subpart B—Food Service Sanitation on Land and Air Conveyances, and Vessels

1250.20 Applicability.
1250.21 Inspection.
1250.22 General requirements.
1250.25 Source identification and inspection of food and drink.
1250.26 Special food requirements.
1250.27 Storage of perishables.
1250.28 Source and handling of ice.
1250.30 Construction, maintenance and use of places where food is prepared, served, or stored.
1250.32 Food-handling operations.
1250.33 Utensils and equipment.
1250.34 Refrigeration equipment.
1250.35 Health of persons handling food.
1250.38 Toilet and lavatory facilities for use of food-handling employees.
1250.39 Garbage equipment and disposition.

Subpart C—Equipment and Operation of Land and Air Conveyances

1250.40 Applicability.
1250.41 Submittal of construction plans.
1250.42 Water systems; constant temperature bottles.

Sec.
1250.43 Ice.
1250.44 Drinking utensils and toilet articles.
1250.45 Food handling facilities on railroad conveyances.
1250.49 Cleanliness of conveyances.
1250.50 Toilet and lavatory facilities.
1250.51 Railroad conveyances; discharge of wastes.
1250.52 Discharge of wastes on highway conveyances.
1250.53 Discharge of wastes on air conveyances.

Subpart D—Servicing Areas for Land and Air Conveyances

1250.60 Applicability.
1250.61 Inspection and approval.
1250.62 Submittal of construction plans.
1250.63 General requirements.
1250.65 Drainage.
1250.67 Watering equipment.
1250.70 Employee conveniences.
1250.75 Disposal of human wastes.
1250.79 Garbage disposal.

Subpart E—Sanitation Facilities and Conditions on Vessels

1250.80 Applicability.
1250.81 Inspection.
1250.82 Potable water systems.
1250.83 Storage of water prior to treatment.
1250.84 Water in galleys and medical care spaces.
1250.85 Drinking fountains and coolers; ice; constant temperature bottles.
1250.86 Water for making ice.
1250.87 Wash water.
1250.89 Swimming pools.
1250.90 Toilets and lavatories.
1250.93 Discharge of wastes.
1250.95 Insect control.
1250.96 Rodent control.

AUTHORITY: Secs. 215, 311, 361, 368, 58 Stat. 690, 693, 703, as amended, 706 (42 U.S.C. 216, 243, 264, 271).

SOURCE: 40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, unless otherwise noted.

CROSS-REFERENCES: For Department of Health and Human Services regulations relating to foreign quarantine and control of communicable diseases, see Centers for Disease Control's requirements as set forth in 42 CFR Parts 71 and 72; and within that Part 71 under § 71.602, the standards and source approval requirements cited under Part 72 are no longer codified thereunder as the applicable requirements of 42 CFR Part 72 having been recodified to 21 CFR Parts 1240 and 1250 in FR Doc. 75-3395 in the FEDERAL REGISTER of February 6, 1975 (40 FR 5620). Additionally, Food and Drug Administration regulations relating to interstate conveyance sanitation are prescribed in Part 1250 of this chapter.

Subpart A—General Provisions

§ 1250.3 Definitions.

As used in this part, terms shall have the following meaning:

(a) *Bactericidal treatment.* The application of a method or substance for the destruction of pathogens and other organisms as set forth in § 1240.10 of this chapter.

(b) *Communicable diseases.* Illnesses due to infectious agents or their toxic products, which may be transmitted from a reservoir to a susceptible host either directly as from an infected person or animal or indirectly through the agency of an intermediate plant or animal host, vector, or the inanimate environment.

(c) *Communicable period.* The period or periods during which the etiologic agent may be transferred directly or indirectly from the body of the infected person or animal to the body of another.

(d) *Contamination.* The presence of a certain amount of undesirable substance or material, which may contain pathogenic microorganisms.

(e) *Conveyance.* Conveyance means any land or air carrier, or any vessel as defined in paragraph (m) of this section.

(f) *Existing vessel.* Any vessel the construction of which was started prior to the effective date of the regulations in this part.

(g) *Garbage.* (1) The solid animal and vegetable waste, together with the natural moisture content, resulting from the handling, preparation, or consumption of foods in houses, restaurants, hotels, kitchens, and similar establishments, or (2) any other food waste containing pork.

(h) *Interstate traffic.* (1) The movement of any conveyance or the transportation of persons or property, including any portion of such movement or transportation which is entirely within a State or possession, (i) from a point of origin in any State or possession to a point of destination in any other State or possession, or (ii) between a point of origin and a point of destination in the same State or possession but through any other State, possession, or contiguous foreign country.

(2) Interstate traffic does not include the following:

(i) The movement of any conveyance which is solely for the purpose of unloading persons or property transported from a foreign country, or loading persons or property for transportation to a foreign country.

(ii) The movement of any conveyance which is solely for the purpose of effecting its repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation, or storage.

(i) *Possession.* Any of the possessions of the United States, including Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.

(j) *Potable water.* Water which meets the standards prescribed in the Environmental Protection Agency's Primary Drinking Water Regulations as set forth in 40 CFR Part 141 and the Food and Drug Administration's sanitation regulations as set forth in this part and Part 1240 of this chapter.

(k) *State.* Any State, the District of Columbia, Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands.

(l) *Utensil.* Includes any kitchenware, tableware, glassware, cutlery, containers, or equipment with which food or drink comes in contact during storage, preparation, or serving.

(m) *Vessel.* Any passenger-carrying, cargo, or towing vessel exclusive of:

(1) Fishing boats including those used for shell-fishing;

(2) Tugs which operate only locally in specific harbors and adjacent waters;

(3) Barges without means of self-propulsion;

(4) Construction-equipment boats and dredges; and

(5) Sand and gravel dredging and handling boats.

(n) *Wash water.* Water suitable for domestic uses other than for drinking and culinary purposes, and medical care purposes excluding hydrotherapy.

(o) *Shellfish.* Any fresh, frozen, or incompletely cooked oysters, clams, or mussels, either shucked or in the shell, and any fresh, frozen, or incompletely cooked edible products thereof.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

Subpart B—Food Service Sanitation on Land and Air Conveyances, and Vessels

§ 1250.20 Applicability.

All conveyances engaged in interstate traffic shall comply with the requirements prescribed in this subpart and § 1240.20 of this chapter.

§ 1250.21 Inspection.

The Commissioner of Food and Drugs may inspect such conveyance to determine compliance with the requirements of this subpart and § 1240.20 of this chapter.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.22 General requirements.

All food and drink served on conveyances shall be clean, wholesome, and free from spoilage, and shall be prepared, stored, handled, and served in accordance with the requirements prescribed in this subpart and § 1240.20 of this chapter.

§ 1250.25 Source identification and inspection of food and drink.

(a) Operators of conveyances shall identify, when requested by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs, the vendors, distributors or dealers from whom they have acquired or are acquiring their food supply, including milk, fluid milk products, ice cream and other frozen desserts, butter, cheese, bottled water, sandwiches and box lunches.

(b) The Commissioner of Food and Drugs may inspect any source of such food supply in order to determine whether the requirements of the regulations in this subpart and in § 1240.20 of this chapter are being met, and may utilize the results of inspections of such sources made by representatives of State health departments or of the health authorities of contiguous foreign nations.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.26 Special fo[illegible]uirements.

Milk, fluid milk products, ice cream and other frozen desserts, butter, cheese, and shellfish served or sold on conveyances shall conform to the following requirements:

(a) Milk and fluid milk products, including cream, buttermilk, skim milk, milk beverages, and reconstituted milk, shall be pasteurized and obtained from a source of supply approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs. The Commissioner of Food and Drugs shall approve any source of supply at or from which milk or fluid milk products are produced, processed, and distributed so as to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases. If a source of supply of milk or fluid milk products has not been approved, the Commissioner of Food and Drugs may permit its temporary use under such conditions as, in his judgment, are necessary to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases. Containers of milk and fluid milk products shall be plainly labeled to show the contents, the word "pasteurized", and the identity of the plant at which the contents were packaged by name and address, provided that a code may be used in lieu of address.

(b) Ice cream, other frozen desserts, and butter shall be manufactured from milk or milk products that have been pasteurized or subjected to equivalent heat treatment.

(c) Cheese shall be (1) pasteurized or subjected to equivalent heat treatment, (2) made from pasteurized milk products or from milk products which have been subjected to equivalent heat treatment, or (3) cured for not less than 60 days at a temperature not less than 35° F.

(d) Milk, buttermilk, and milk beverages shall be served in or from the original individual containers in which received from the distributor, or from a bulk container equipped with a dispensing device so designed, constructed, installed, and maintained as to prevent the transmission of communicable diseases.

(e) Shellfish purchased for consumption on any conveyance shall originate from a dealer currently listed by the Public Health Service as holding an unexpired and unrevoked certificate issued by a State authority.

(f) Shucked shellfish shall be purchased in the containers in which they are placed at the shucking plant and shall be kept therein until used. The State abbreviation and the certificate number of the packers shall be permanently recorded on the container.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.27 Storage of perishables.

All perishable food or drink shall be kept at or below 50° F, except when being prepared or kept hot for serving.

§ 1250.28 Source and handling of ice.

Ice coming in contact with food or drink and not manufactured on the conveyance shall be obtained from sources approved by competent health authorities. All ice coming in contact with food or drink shall be stored and handled in such manner as to avoid contamination.

§ 1250.30 Construction, maintenance and use of places where food is prepared, served, or stored.

(a) All kitchens, galleys, pantries, and other places where food is prepared, served, or stored shall be adequately lighted and ventilated: *Provided, however,* That ventilation of cold storage rooms shall not be required. All such places where food is prepared, served, or stored shall be so constructed and maintained as to be clean and free from flies, rodents, and other vermin.

(b) Such places shall not be used for sleeping or living quarters.

(c) Water of satisfactory sanitary quality, under head or pressure, and adequate in amount and temperature, shall be easily accessible to all rooms in which food is prepared and utensils are cleaned.

(d) All plumbing shall be so designed, installed, and maintained as to prevent contamination of the water supply, food, and food utensils.

§ 1250.32 Food-handling operations.

(a) All food-handling operations shall be accomplished so as to minimize the possibility of contaminating food, drink, or utensils.

(b) The hands of all persons shall be kept clean while engaged in handling food, drink, utensils, or equipment.

§ 1250.33 Utensils and equipment.

(a) All utensils and working surfaces used in connection with the preparation, storage, and serving of food or beverages, and the cleaning of food utensils, shall be so constructed as to be easily cleaned and self-draining and shall be maintained in good repair. Adequate facilities shall be provided for the cleaning and bactericidal treatment of all multiuse eating and drinking utensils and equipment used in the preparation of food and beverages. An indicating thermometer, suitably located, shall be provided to permit the determination of the hot water temperature when and where hot water is used as the bactericidal agent.

(b) All multiuse eating and drinking utensils shall be thoroughly cleaned in warm water and subjected to an effective bactericidal treatment after each use. All other utensils that come in contact with food and drink shall be similarly treated immediately following the day's operation. All equipment shall be kept clean.

(c) After bactericidal treatment, utensils shall be stored and handled in such manner as to prevent contamination before reuse.

§ 1250.34 Refrigeration equipment.

Each refrigerator shall be equipped with a thermometer located in the warmest portion thereof. Waste water drains from ice boxes, refrigerating equipment, and refrigerated spaces shall be so installed as to prevent backflow of contaminating liquids.

§ 1250.35 Health of persons handling food.

(a) Any person who is known or suspected to be in a communicable period or a carrier of any communicable disease shall not be permitted to engage in the preparation, handling, or serving of water, other beverages, or food.

(b) Any person known or suspected to be suffering from gastrointestinal disturbance or who has on the exposed portion of the body an open lesion or an infected wound shall not be permitted to engage in the preparation, handling, or serving of food or beverages.

§ 1250.38 Toilet and lavatory facilities for use of food-handling employees.

(a) Toilet and lavatory facilities of suitable design and construction shall be provided for use of food-handling employees. Railroad dining car crew lavatory facilities are regulated under § 1250.45.

(b) Signs directing food-handling employees to wash their hands after each use of toilet facilities shall be posted so as to be readily observable by such employees. Hand washing facilities shall include soap, sanitary towels and hot and cold running water or warm running water in lieu of hot and cold running water.

(c) All toilet rooms shall be maintained in a clean condition.

§ 1250.39 Garbage equipment and disposition.

Watertight, readily cleanable nonabsorbent containers with close-fitting covers shall be used to receive and store garbage. Garbage and refuse shall be disposed of as frequently as is necessary and practicable.

Subpart C—Equipment and Operation of Land and Air Conveyances

§ 1250.40 Applicability.

The sanitary equipment and facilities on land and air conveyances engaged in interstate traffic and the use of such equipment and facilities shall comply with the requirements prescribed in this subpart.

§ 1250.41 Submittal of construction plans.

Plans for the construction or major reconstruction of sanitary equipment or facilities for such conveyances shall be submitted to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for review of the conformity of such plans with the requirements of this subpart, except that submittal of plans shall not be required for any conveyance under reconstruction if the owner or operator thereof has made arrangements satisfactory to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for inspections of such conveyances while under reconstruction for the purpose of determining conformity with those requirements.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.42 Water systems; constant temperature bottles.

(a) The water system, whether of the pressure or gravity type, shall be complete and closed from the filling ends to the discharge taps, except for protected vent openings. The water system shall be protected against backflow.

(b) Filling pipes or connections through which water tanks are supplied shall be provided on both sides of all new railway conveyances and on existing conveyances when they undergo heavy repairs. All filling connections shall be easily cleanable and so located and protected as to minimize the hazard of contamination of the water supply.

(c) On all new or reconstructed conveyances, water coolers shall be an integral part of the closed system.

(d) Water filters if used on dining cars and other conveyances will be permitted only if they are so operated and maintained at all times as to prevent contamination of the water.

(e) Constant temperature bottles and other containers used for storing or dispensing potable water shall be kept clean at all times and shall be subjected to effective bactericidal treatment as often as may be necessary to prevent the contamination of water so stored and dispensed.

§ 1250.43 Ice.

Ice shall not be permitted to come in contact with water in coolers or constant temperature bottles.

§ 1250.44 Drinking utensils and toilet articles.

(a) No cup, glass, or other drinking utensil which may be used by more than one person shall be provided on any conveyance unless such cup, glass, or drinking utensil shall have been thoroughly cleaned and subjected to effective bactericidal treatment after each individual use.

(b) Towels, combs, or brushes for common use shall not be provided.

§ 1250.45 Food handling facilities on railroad conveyances.

(a) Both kitchens and pantries of cars hereafter constructed or reconstructed shall be equipped with double sinks, one of which shall be of sufficient size and depth to permit complete immersion of a basket of dishes during bactericidal treatment; in the pantry a dishwashing machine may be substituted for the double sinks. If chemicals are used for bactericidal treatment, 3-compartment sinks shall be provided.

(b) A sink shall be provided for washing and handling cracked ice used in food or drink and shall be used for no other purpose.

(c) Lavatory facilities for the use of the dining car crew shall be provided on each dining car. Such facilities shall be conveniently located and used for hand and face washing only: *Provided, however,* That where the kitchen and pantry on a dining car hereafter constructed or reconstructed are so partitioned or separated as to impede free passage between them lavatory facilities shall be provided in both the kitchen and the pantry.

(d) Wherever toilet and lavatory facilities required by paragraph (c) of this section are not on the dining car, a lavatory shall be provided on the dining car for the use of employees. The lavatory shall be conveniently located and used only for the purpose for which it is installed.

§ 1250.49 Cleanliness of conveyances.

Conveyances while in transit shall be kept clean and free of flies and mosquitoes. A conveyance which becomes infected with vermin shall be placed out of service until such time as it shall have been effectively treated for the destruction of the vermin.

§ 1250.50 Toilet and lavatory facilities.

Where toilet and lavatory facilities are provided on conveyances they shall be so designed as to permit ready cleaning. On conveyances not equipped with retention facilities, toilet hoppers shall be of such design and so located as to prevent spattering of water filling pipes or hydrants.

§ 1250.51 Railroad conveyances; discharge of wastes.

(a) *New railroad conveyances.* Human wastes, garbage, waste water, or other polluting materials shall not be discharged from any new railroad conveyance except at servicing areas approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs. In lieu of retention pending discharge at approved servicing areas, human wastes, garbage, waste water, or other polluting materials that have been suitably treated to prevent the spread of communicable diseases may be discharged from such conveyances, except at stations. For the purposes of this section, "new railroad conveyance" means any such conveyance placed into service for the first time after July 1, 1972, and the terms "waste water or other polluting materials" do not include drainage of drinking water taps or lavatory facilities.

(b) *Nonnew railroad conveyances.* Human wastes, garbage, waste water, or other polluting materials shall not be discharged from any railroad conveyance, other than passenger conveyances for which an extension has been granted pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, after December 31, 1977, except at servicing areas approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs. In lieu of retention pending discharge at approved servicing areas, human wastes, garbage, waste water, or other polluting materials that have been suitably treated to prevent the spread of communicable diseases may be discharged from such conveyances, except at stations. The terms "waste water or other polluting materials" do not include drainage of drinking water taps or lavatory facilities.

(c) *Toilets.* When railroad conveyances, occupied or open to occupancy by travelers, are at a station or servicing area, toilets shall be kept locked unless means are provided to prevent contamination of the area or station.

(d) *Submission of annual report.* Each railroad company shall submit to the Food and Drug Administration, Bureau of Foods, Sub-Program Manager, Interstate Travel Sanitation, HFF-312, 200 C St. SW., Washington, DC 20204, an annual report of accomplishments made in modifying conveyances to achieve compliance with paragraph (b) of this section. Annual reports shall be required until a report is submitted showing that 100 percent of the company's conveyances can comply with the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section; annual reports shall be required subsequent to such report if conveyances not capable of complying with the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section are acquired. Every railroad company shall have not less than 10 percent of its nonpassenger conveyances that are in operation capable of complying with the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section by December 31, 1974, not less than 40 percent by December 31, 1975, and not less than 70 percent by December 31, 1976. All conveyances, other than passenger conveyances for which an extension has been granted pursuant to paragraph (f) of this section, in operation after December 31, 1977, shall be capable of complying with paragraph (b) of this section.

(e) *Requirements of annual report.* Annual reports required by paragraph (d) of this section shall be submitted within 60 days of the end of each calendar year. Each report shall contain at least the following information:

(1) Company name and address.

(2) Name, title, and address of the company's chief operating official.

(3) Name, title, address, and telephone number of the person designated by the company to be directly responsible for compliance with this section.

(4) A statement that all new railroad conveyances placed into service after July 1, 1972 meet the requirements of this section.

(5) A complete, factual, narrative statement explaining why retrofitting of noncomplying nonnew conveyances is incomplete, if it is incomplete.

(6) A statement of the percentage of conveyances retrofitted with waste discharge facilities in compliance with this section as of the reporting date and the percentage expected to be completed by December 31st of the following year.

(7) A tabular report with the following vertical columns: equipment type, e.g., locomotive, caboose, passenger car, and any others having toilets;

number of toilets per conveyance; number of each equipment type in operation; and number of each to be retrofitted by December 31st of each year until 100 percent compliance with this section is achieved.

(f) *Variances and extensions*—(1) *Variances.* Upon application by a railroad company, the Director, Bureau of Foods, may grant a variance from the compliance schedule prescribed in paragraph (d) of this section for nonpassenger conveyances when the requested variance is required to prevent substantial disruption of the railroad company's operations. Such variance shall not affect the final deadline of compliance established in paragraph (d) of this section.

(2) *Extensions.* Upon application by a railroad company, the Director, Bureau of Foods, may grant an extension of time for compliance with the requirements of paragraph (b) of this section beyond December 31, 1977, for passenger conveyances operated by railroad companies when compliance cannot be achieved without substantial disruption of the railroad company's operations.

(3) *Application for variance or extension.* Application for variances or extensions shall be submitted to the Food and Drug Administration, Bureau of Foods, Sub-Program Managers, Interstate Travel Sanitation, HFF-312, 200 C St., SW., Washington, DC 20204, and shall include the following information:

(i) A detailed description of the proposed deviation from the requirements of paragraphs (b) or (d) of this section.

(ii) A report, current to the date of the request for a variance or extension, containing the information required by paragraph (e) of this section.

(4) *Administration of variances and extensions.* (i) Written notification of the granting or refusal of a variance or extension will be provided to the applying railroad company by the Director, Bureau of Foods. The notification of a granted variance will state the approved deviation from the compliance schedule provided for in paragraph (d) of this section. The notification of a granted extension will state the final date for compliance with the provisions of paragraph (b) of this section.

(ii) A public file of requested variances and extensions, their disposition, and information relating to pending actions will be maintained in the Dockets Management Branch, Room 4-62, Parklawn Building, 5600 Fishers Lane, Rockville, MD 20857.

(iii) After notice to the railroad company and opportunity for hearing in accordance with Subpart F of Part 2 of this chapter, a variance or extension may be withdrawn prior to its scheduled termination if the Director, Bureau of Foods, determines that such withdrawal is necessary to protect the public health.

CROSS-REFERENCE: For statutory exemptions for "intercity rail passenger service," see section 306(i) of 45 U.S.C. 546(i).

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 40 FR 30110, July 17, 1975; 46 FR 8461, Jan. 27, 1981; 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

EFFECTIVE DATE NOTE: For a document staying the effectiveness of § 1250.51 (b) and (d), see 42 FR 57122, Nov. 1, 1977.

§ 1250.52 Discharge of wastes on highway conveyances.

There shall be no discharge of excrement, garbage, or waste water from a highway conveyance except at servicing areas approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.53 Discharge of wastes on air conveyances.

There shall be no discharge of excrement or garbage from any air conveyance except at servicing areas approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

Subpart D—Servicing Areas for Land and Air Conveyances

§ 1250.60 Applicability.

Land and air conveyances engaged in interstate traffic shall use only such servicing areas within the United States as have been approved by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs as being in compliance with the requirements prescribed in this subpart.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.61 Inspection and approval.

The Commissioner of Food and Drugs may inspect any such areas to determine whether they shall be approved. He may base his approval or disapproval on investigations made by representatives of State departments of health.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.62 Submittal of construction plans.

Plans for construction or major reconstruction of sanitation facilities at servicing areas shall be submitted to the Commissioner of Food and Drugs for review of the conformity of the proposed facilities with the requirements of this subpart.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.63 General requirements.

Servicing areas shall be provided with all necessary sanitary facilities so operated and maintained as to prevent the spread of communicable diseases.

§ 1250.65 Drainage.

All platforms and other places at which water or food supplies are loaded onto or removed from conveyances shall be adequately drained so as to prevent pooling.

§ 1250.67 Watering equipment.

(a) *General requirements.* All servicing area piping systems, hydrants, taps, faucets, hoses, buckets, and other appurtenances necessary for delivery of drinking and culinary water to a conveyance shall be designed, constructed, maintained and operated in such a manner as to prevent contamination of the water.

(b) *Outlets for nonpotable water.* Outlets for nonpotable water shall be provided with fittings different from those provided for outlets for potable water and each nonpotable water outlet shall be posted with permanent signs warning that the water is unfit for drinking.

(c) *Ice.* If bulk ice is used for the cooling of drinking water or other beverages, or for food preservation purposes, equipment constructed so as not to become a factor in the transmission of communicable diseases shall be provided for the storage, washing, handling, and delivery to conveyances of such bulk ice, and such equipment shall be used for no other purposes.

§ 1250.70 Employee conveniences.

(a) There shall be adequate toilet, washroom, locker, and other essential sanitary facilities readily accessible for use of employees adjacent to places or areas where land and air conveyances are serviced, maintained, and cleaned. These facilities shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition at all times.

(b) In the case of diners not in a train but with a crew on board, adequate toilet facilities shall be available to the crew within a reasonable distance but not exceeding 500 feet of such diners.

(c) Drinking fountains and coolers shall be constructed of impervious, nonoxidizing material, and shall be so designed and constructed as to be easily cleaned. The jet of a drinking fountain shall be slanting and the orifice of the jet shall be protected by a guard in such a manner as to prevent contamination thereof by droppings from the mouth. The orifice of such a jet shall be located a sufficient distance above the rim of the basin to prevent backflow.

§ 1250.75 Disposal of human wastes.

(a) At servicing areas and at stations where land and air conveyances are occupied by passengers the operations shall be so conducted as to avoid contamination of such areas and stations by human wastes.

(b) Toilet wastes shall be disposed of through sanitary sewers or by other methods assuring sanitary disposal of such wastes. All soil cans and removable containers shall be thoroughly cleaned before being returned to use. Equipment for cleaning such containers and for flushing nonremovable containers and waste carts shall be so designed as to prevent backflow into the water line, and such equipment shall be used for no purpose connected with the handling of food, water or ice.

(c) All persons who have handled soil cans or other containers which have come in contact with human wastes shall be required to wash their hands thoroughly with soap and warm water and to remove any garments which have become soiled with such wastes before engaging in any work connected with the loading, unloading, transporting or other handling of food, water or ice.

§ 1250.79 Garbage disposal.

(a) Water-tight, readily cleanable, nonabsorbent containers with close-fitting covers shall be used to receive and store garbage.

(b) Can washing and draining facilities shall be provided.

(c) Garbage cans shall be emptied daily and shall be thoroughly washed before being returned for use.

Subpart E—Sanitation Facilities and Conditions on Vessels

§ 1250.80 Applicability.

The sanitation facilities and the sanitary conditions on vessels engaged in interstate traffic shall comply with the requirements prescribed in this subpart, provided that no major structural change will be required on existing vessels.

§ 1250.81 Inspection.

The Commissioner of Food and Drugs may inspect such vessels to determine compliance with the requirements of this subpart.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.82 Potable water systems.

The following conditions must be met by vessel water systems used for the storage and distribution of water which has met the requirements of § 1240.80 of this chapter.

(a) The potable water system, including filling hose and lines, pumps, tanks, and distributing pipes, shall be separate and distinct from other water systems and shall be used for no other purposes.

(b) All potable water tanks shall be independent of any tanks holding nonpotable water or other liquid. All potable water tanks shall be independent of the shell of the ship unless (1) the bottom of the tank is at least 2 feet above the maximum load water line, (2) the seams in the shell are continuously welded, and (3) there are no rivets in that part of the shell which forms a side of a tank. A deck may be used as the top of a tank provided there are no access or inspection openings or rivets therein, and the seams are continuously welded. No toilet or urinal shall be installed immediately above that part of the deck which forms the top of a tank. All potable water tanks shall be located at a sufficient height above the bilge to allow for draining and to prevent submergence in bilge water.

(c) Each potable water tank shall be provided with a means of drainage and, if it is equipped with a manhole, overflow, vent, or a device for measuring depth of water, provision shall be made to prevent entrance into the tank of any contaminating substance. No deck or sanitary drain or pipe carrying any nonpotable water or liquid shall be permitted to pass through the tank.

(d) Tanks and piping shall bear clear marks of identification.

(e) There shall be no backflow or cross connection between potable water systems and any other systems. Pipes and fittings conveying potable water to any fixture, apparatus, or equipment shall be installed in such way that backflow will be prevented. Waste pipes from any part of the potable water system, including treatment devices, discharging to a drain, shall be suitably protected against backflow.

(f) Water systems shall be cleaned, disinfected, and flushed whenever the Commissioner of Food and Drugs shall find such treatment necessary to prevent the introduction, transmission, or spread of communicable diseases.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.83 Storage of water prior to treatment.

The following requirements with respect to the storage of water on vessels prior to treatment must be met in order to obtain approval of treatment facilities under § 1240.90 of this chapter.

(a) The tank, whether independent or formed by the skin of the ship, deck, tank top, or partitions common with other tanks, shall be free of apparent leakage.

(b) No sanitary drain shall pass through the tank.

(c) The tank shall be adequately protected against both the backflow and discharge into it of bilge or highly contaminated water.

§ 1250.84 Water in galleys and medical care spaces.

(a) Potable water, hot and cold, shall be available in the galley and pantry except that, when potable water storage is inadequate, nonpotable water may be piped to the galley for deck washing and in connection with garbage disposal. Any tap discharging nonpotable water which is installed for deck washing purposes shall not be more than 18 inches above the deck and shall be distinctly marked "For deck washing only".

(b) In the case of existing vessels on which heat treated wash water has been used for the washing of utensils prior to the effective date of the regulations in this part, such water may continue to be so used provided controls are employed to insure the heating of all water to at least 170° F before discharge from the heater.

(c) Potable water, hot and cold, shall be available in medical care spaces for hand-washing and for medical care purposes excluding hydrotherapy.

§ 1250.85 Drinking fountains and coolers; ice; constant temperature bottles.

(a) Drinking fountains and coolers shall be constructed of impervious, nonoxidizing material, and shall be so designed and constructed as to be easily cleaned. The jet of a drinking fountain shall be slanting and the orifice of the jet shall be protected by a guard in such a manner as to prevent contamination thereof by droppings from the mouth. The orifice of such a jet shall be located a sufficient distance above the rim of the basin to prevent backflow.

(b) Ice shall not be permitted to come in contact with water in coolers or constant temperature bottles.

(c) Constant temperature bottles and other containers used for storing or dispensing potable water shall be kept clean at all times and shall be subjected to effective bactericidal treatment after each occupancy of the space served and at intervals not exceeding one week.

§ 1250.86 Water for making ice.

Only potable water shall be piped into a freezer for making ice for drinking and culinary purposes.

§ 1250.87 Wash water.

Where systems installed on vessels for wash water, as defined in § 1250.3(n), do not comply with the requirements of a potable water system, prescribed in § 1250.82, they shall be constructed so as to minimize the possibility of the water therein being contaminated. The storage tanks shall comply with the requirements of § 1250.83, and the distribution system shall not be cross connected to a system carrying water of a lower sanitary quality. All faucets shall be labeled "Unfit for drinking".

§ 1250.89 Swimming pools.

(a) Fill and draw swimming pools shall not be installed or used.

(b) Swimming pools of the recirculation type shall be equipped so as to provide complete circulation, replacement, and filtration of the water in the pool every six hours or less. Suitable means of chlorination and, if necessary, other treatment of the water shall be provided to maintain the residual chlorine in the pool water at not less than 0.4 part per million and the pH (a measure of the hydrogen ion concentration) not less than 7.0.

(c) Flowing-through types of salt water pools shall be so operated that complete circulation and replacement of the water in the pool will be effected every 6 hours or less. The water delivery pipe to the pool shall be independent of all other pipes and shall originate at a point where maximum flushing of the pump and pipe line is effected after leaving polluted waters.

§ 1250.90 Toilets and lavatories.

Toilet and lavatory equipment and spaces shall be maintained in a clean condition.

§ 1250.93 Discharge of wastes.

Vessels operating on fresh water lakes or rivers shall not discharge sewage, or ballast or bilge water, within such areas adjacent to domestic water intakes as are designated by the Commissioner of Food and Drugs.

Cross-Reference: For Environmental Protection Agency's regulations for vessel sanitary discharges as related to authority under the Federal Water Pollution Control Act, as amended (33 U.S.C. 1314 et seq.), see 40 CFR Part 140.

[40 FR 5624, Feb. 6, 1975, as amended at 48 FR 11432, Mar. 18, 1983]

§ 1250.95 Insect control.

Vessels shall be maintained free of infestation by flies, mosquitoes, fleas, lice, and other insects known to be vectors in the transmission of communicable diseases, through the use of screening, insecticides, and other generally accepted methods of insect control.

§ 1250.96 Rodent control.

Vessels shall be maintained free of rodent infestation through the use of traps, poisons, and other generally accepted methods of rodent control.

PARTS 1251-1299—[RESERVED]

FINDING AIDS

A list of CFR titles, subtitles, chapters, subchapters and parts and an alphabetical list of agencies publishing in the CFR are included in the CFR Index and Finding Aids volume to the Code of Federal Regulations which is published separately and revised annually.

Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference
Table of CFR Titles and Chapters
Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR
Redesignation Tables
List of CFR Sections Affected

Material Approved for Incorporation by Reference

(Revised as of March 31, 1989)

The Director of the Federal Register has approved under 5 U.S.C. 552(a) and 1 CFR Part 51 the incorporation by reference of the following publications. This list contains only those incorporations by reference effective as of the revision date of this volume. Incorporations by reference found within a regulation are effective upon the effective date of that regulation. For more information on incorporation by reference, see the preliminary pages of this volume.

21 CFR CHAPTER I (PARTS 800 TO 1299)
FOOD AND DRUG ADMINISTRATION, DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES

	21 CFR
American Society for Testing and Materials 1916 Race St. Philadelphia, PA 19103	
ASTM D 412–68 Standard Method of Tension Testing of Vulcanized Rubber.	801.410
ASTM D 1415–68 Test for International Hardness of Vulcanized Rubber.	801.410
American National Standards Institute 1430 Broadway, NY, NY 10018	
ANSI C81.10–1976 Specifications for Electric Lamp Bases and Holders-Screw Shall Types.	1040.20(c)
ANSI S3.22–1982 Specification of Hearing Aid Characteristics	801.420(c)(4)

Table of CFR Titles and Chapters

(Revised as of September 27, 1988)

Title 1—General Provisions

I	Administrative Committee of the Federal Register (Parts 1—49)
II	Office of the Federal Register (Parts 50—299)
III	Administrative Conference of the United States (Parts 300—399)
IV	Miscellaneous Agencies (Parts 400—499)

Title 2—[Reserved]

Title 3—The President

I	Executive Office of the President (Parts 100—199)

Title 4—Accounts

I	General Accounting Office (Parts 1—99)
II	Federal Claims Collection Standards (General Accounting Office—Department of Justice) (Parts 100—299)
III	General Accounting Office (CASB) (Parts 300—499)

Title 5—Administrative Personnel

I	Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1—1199)
II	Merit Systems Protection Board (Parts 1200—1299)
III	Office of Management and Budget (Parts 1300—1399)
IV	Advisory Committee on Federal Pay (Parts 1400—1499)
V	The International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board (Parts 1500—1599)
VI	Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board (Parts 1600—1699)
VII	Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations (Parts 1700—1799)
IX	Appalachian Regional Commission (Parts 1900—1999)
XI	United States Soldiers' and Airmen's Home (Parts 2100—2199)
XIV	Federal Labor Relations Authority, General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority and Federal Service Impasses Panel (Parts 2400—2499)
XV	Office of Administration, Executive Office of the President (Parts 2500—2599)

Title 6—[Reserved]

Title 7—Agriculture

Chap.	
	SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Agriculture (Parts 0—26)
	SUBTITLE B—Regulations of the Department of Agriculture
I	Agricultural Marketing Service (Standards, Inspections, Marketing Practices), Department of Agriculture (Parts 27—209
II	Food and Nutrition Service, Department of Agriculture (Part 210—299)
III	Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department o Agriculture (Parts 300—399)
IV	Federal Crop Insurance Corporation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)
V	Agricultural Research Service, Department of Agricultur (Parts 500—599)
VI	Soil Conservation Service, Department of Agriculture (Part 600—699)
VII	Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service (Agricultural Adjustment), Department of Agriculture (Parts 700—799)
VIII	Federal Grain Inspection Service, Department of Agricultur (Parts 800—899)
IX	Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements an Orders; Fruits, Vegetables, Nuts), Department of Agricultur (Parts 900—999)
X	Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements an Orders; Milk), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1000—1199
XI	Agricultural Marketing Service (Marketing Agreements an Orders; Miscellaneous Commodities), Department of Agriculture (Parts 1200—1299)
XIV	Commodity Credit Corporation, Department of Agricultur (Parts 1400—1499)
XV	Foreign Agricultural Service, Department of Agriculture (Part 1500—1599)
XVI	Rural Telephone Bank, Department of Agriculture (Part 1600—1699)
XVII	Rural Electrification Administration, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII	Farmers Home Administration, Department of Agricultur (Parts 1800—2099)
XXI	Foreign Economic Development Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2100—2199)
XXII	Office of International Cooperation and Development, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2200—2299)
XXIV	Board of Contract Appeals, Department of Agriculture (Part 2400—2499)
XXV	Office of the General Sales Manager, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2500—2599)
XXVI	Office of Inspector General, Department of Agriculture (Part 2600—2699)

Title 7—Agriculture—Continued

Chap.	
XXVII	Office of Information Resources Management, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2700—2799)
XXIX	Office of Energy, Department of Agriculture (Parts 2900—2999)
XXX	Office of Operations and Finance, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3000—3099)
XXXI	Office of Environmental Quality, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3100—3199)
XXXII	Office of Grants and Program Systems, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3200—3299)
XXXIII	Office of Transportation, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3300—3399)
XXXIV	Cooperative State Research Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3400—3499)
XXXVI	National Agricultural Statistics Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3600—3699)
XXXVII	Economic Research Service, Department of Agricuture (Parts 3700—3799)
XXXVIII	World Agricultural Outlook Board, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3800—3899)
XXXIX	Economic Analysis Staff, Department of Agriculture (Parts 3900—3999)
XL	Economics Management Staff, Department of Agriculture (Parts 4000—4099)
XLI	National Agricultural Library, Department of Agriculture (Part 4100)

Title 8—Aliens and Nationality

I	Immigration and Naturalization Service, Department of Justice (Parts 1—499)

Title 9—Animals and Animal Products

I	Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 1—199)
II	Packers and Stockyards Administration, Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)
III	Food Safety and Inspection Service, Meat and Poultry Inspection, Department of Agriculture (Parts 300—399)

Title 10—Energy

I	Nuclear Regulatory Commission (Parts 0—199)
II	Department of Energy (Parts 200—699)
III	Department of Energy (Parts 700—999)
X	Department of Energy (General Provisions) (Parts 1000—1099)
XV	Office of the Federal Inspector for the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System (Parts 1500—1599)

Title 11—Federal Elections

Chap.	
I	Federal Election Commission (Parts 1—9099)

Title 12—Banks and Banking

I	Comptroller of the Currency, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
II	Federal Reserve System (Parts 200—299)
III	Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (Parts 300—399)
IV	Export-Import Bank of the United States (Parts 400—499)
V	Federal Home Loan Bank Board (Parts 500—599)
VI	Farm Credit Administration (Parts 600—699)
VII	National Credit Union Administration (Parts 700—799)
VIII	Federal Financing Bank (Parts 800—899)
XI	Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council (Parts 1100—1199)

Title 13—Business Credit and Assistance

I	Small Business Administration (Parts 1—199)
III	Economic Development Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
V	Regional Action Planning Commissions (Parts 500—599)

Title 14—Aeronautics and Space

I	Federal Aviation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II	Office of the Secretary, Department of Transportation (Aviation Proceedings) (Parts 200—399)
III	Office of Commercial Space Transportation, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
V	National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade

	SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Commerce (Parts 0—29)
	SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Commerce and Foreign Trade
I	Bureau of the Census, Department of Commerce (Parts 30—199)
II	National Bureau of Standards, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)
III	International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)
IV	Foreign-Trade Zones Board (Parts 400—499)
VI	Bureau of Industrial Economics, Department of Commerce (Parts 600—699)
VII	Bureau of Export Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 700—799)

Title 15—Commerce and Foreign Trade—Continued

Chap.	
VIII	Bureau of Economic Analysis, Department of Commerce (Parts 800—899)
IX	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 900—999)
XII	United States Travel Service, Department of Commerce (Parts 1200—1299)
XIII	East-West Foreign Trade Board (Parts 1300—1399)
XIV	Minority Business Development Agency (Parts 1400—1499)
	SUBTITLE C—Regulations Relating to Foreign Trade Agreements
XX	Office of the United States Trade Representative (Parts 2000—2099)
	SUBTITLE D—Regulations Relating to Telecommunications and Information
XXIII	National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 2300—2399)

Title 16—Commercial Practices

I	Federal Trade Commission (Parts 0—999)
II	Consumer Product Safety Commission (Parts 1000—1799)

Title 17—Commodity and Securities Exchanges

I	Commodity Futures Trading Commission (Parts 1—199)
II	Securities and Exchange Commission (Parts 200—399)
IV	Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)

Title 18—Conservation of Power and Water Resources

I	Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, Department of Energy (Parts 1—399)
III	Delaware River Basin Commission (Parts 400—499)
VI	Water Resources Council (Parts 700—799)
VIII	Susquehanna River Basin Commission (Parts 800—899)
XIII	Tennessee Valley Authority (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 19—Customs Duties

I	United States Customs Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—199)
II	United States International Trade Commission (Parts 200—299)
III	International Trade Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 20—Employees' Benefits

I	Office of Workers' Compensation Programs, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)
II	Railroad Retirement Board (Parts 200—399)

Title 20—Employees' Benefits—Continued

Chap.	
III	Social Security Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
IV	Employees' Compensation Appeals Board, Department of Labor (Parts 500—599)
V	Employment and Training Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 600—699)
VI	Employment Standards Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 700—799)
VII	Benefits Review Board, Department of Labor (Parts 800—899)
VIII	Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries (Parts 900—999)

Title 21—Food and Drugs

I	Food and Drug Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—1299)
II	Drug Enforcement Administration, Department of Justice (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 22—Foreign Relations

I	Department of State (Parts 1—199)
II	Agency for International Development, International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 200—299)
III	Peace Corps (Parts 300—399)
IV	International Joint Commission, United States and Canada (Parts 400—499)
V	United States Information Agency (Parts 500—599)
VI	United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency (Parts 600—699)
VII	Overseas Private Investment Corporation, International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 700—799)
IX	Foreign Service Grievance Board Regulations (Parts 900—999)
X	Inter-American Foundation (Parts 1000—1099)
XI	International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico, United States Section (Parts 1100—1199)
XII	United States International Development Cooperation Agency (Parts 1200—1299)
XIII	Board for International Broadcasting (Parts 1300—1399)
XIV	Foreign Service Labor Relations Board; Federal Labor Relations Authority; General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority; and the Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel (Parts 1400—1499)
XV	African Development Foundation (Parts 1500—1599)
XVI	Japan-United States Friendship Commission (Parts 1600—1699)

Title 23—Highways

I	Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—999)

Title 23—Highways—Continued

Chap.	
II	National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)
III	National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 1300—1399)

Title 24—Housing and Urban Development

	SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 0—99)
	SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Housing and Urban Development
I	Office of Assistant Secretary for Equal Opportunity, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 100—199)
II	Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing-Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 200—299)
III	Government National Mortgage Association, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 300—399)
V	Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 500—599)
VI	Office of Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 600—699)
VII	Office of the Secretary, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Section 8 Housing Assistance Programs and Public and Indian Housing Programs) (Parts 700—799)
VIII	Office of the Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Section 8 Housing Assistance Programs and Section 202 Direct Loan Program) (Parts 800—899)
IX	Office of Assistant Secretary for Public and Indian Housing, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 900—999)
X	Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Interstate Land Sales Registration Program) (Parts 1700—1799)
XI	Solar Energy and Energy Conservation Bank, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 1800—1899)
XII	Office of Inspector General, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2000—2099)
XV	Mortgage Insurance and Loan Programs under the Emergency Homeowners' Relief Act, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2700—2799)
XX	Office of Assistant Secretary for Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 3200—3699)
XXV	Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation (Parts 4100—4199)

Title 25—Indians

Chap.	
I	Bureau of Indian Affairs, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—299)
II	Indian Arts and Crafts Board, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
IV	Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation Commission (Parts 700—799)

Title 26—Internal Revenue

I	Internal Revenue Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—699)

Title 27—Alcohol, Tobacco Products and Firearms

I	Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Department of the Treasury (Parts 1—299)

Title 28—Judicial Administration

I	Department of Justice (Parts 0—199)
III	Federal Prison Industries, Department of Justice (Parts 300—399)
V	Bureau of Prisons, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI	Offices of Independent Counsel, Department of Justice (Parts 600—699)
VII	Office of Independent Counsel (Parts 700—799)

Title 29—Labor

	SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Labor (Parts 0—99)
	SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Labor
I	National Labor Relations Board (Parts 100—199)
II	Bureau of Labor-Management Relations and Cooperative Programs, Department of Labor (Parts 200—299)
III	National Railroad Adjustment Board (Parts 300—399)
IV	Office of Labor-Management Standards, Department of Labor (Parts 400—499)
V	Wage and Hour Division, Department of Labor (Parts 500—899)
IX	Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission (Parts 900—999)
X	National Mediation Board (Parts 1200-1299)
XII	Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service (Parts 1400-1499)
XIV	Equal Employment Opportunity Commission (Parts 1600-1699)
XVII	Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1900—1999)
XX	Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2200—2499)
XXV	Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 2500—2599)
XXVI	Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation (Parts 2600—2699)

Title 29—Labor—Continued

Chap.	
XXVII	Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission (Parts 2700—2799)

Title 30—Mineral Resources

I	Mine Safety and Health Administration, Department of Labor (Parts 1—199)
II	Minerals Management Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—299)
III	Board of Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Department of the Interior (Parts 300—399)
IV	Geological Survey, Department of the Interior (Parts 400—499)
VI	Bureau of Mines, Department of the Interior (Parts 600—699)
VII	Office of Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Department of the Interior (Parts 700—999)

Title 31—Money and Finance: Treasury

	SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of the Treasury (Parts 0—50)
	SUBTITLE B—Regulations Relating to Money and Finance
I	Monetary Offices, Department of the Treasury (Parts 51—199)
II	Fiscal Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 200—399)
IV	Secret Service, Department of the Treasury (Parts 400—499)
V	Office of Foreign Assets Control, Department of the Treasury (Parts 500—599)
VI	Bureau of Engraving and Printing, Department of the Treasury (Parts 600—699)
VII	Federal Law Enforcement Training Center, Department of the Treasury (Parts 700—799)

Title 32—National Defense

	SUBTITLE A—Department of Defense
I	Office of the Secretary of Defense (Parts 1—399)
V	Department of the Army (Parts 400—699)
VI	Department of the Navy (Parts 700—799)
VII	Department of the Air Force (Parts 800—1099)
	SUBTITLE B—Other Regulations Relating to National Defense
XII	Defense Logistics Agency (Parts 1200-1299)
XVI	Selective Service System (Parts 1600-1699)
XIX	Central Intelligence Agency (Parts 1900—1999)
XX	Information Security Oversight Office (Parts 2000—2099)
XXI	National Security Council (Parts 2100—2199)
XXIV	Office of Science and Technology Policy (Parts 2400—2499)
XXVII	Office for Micronesian Status Negotiations (Parts 2700—2799)
XXVIII	Office of the Vice President of the United States (Parts 2800—2899)

Title 33—Navigation and Navigable Waters

Chap.

I Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)

II Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 200—399)

IV Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 34—Education

Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary, Department of Education (Parts 1—99)

Subtitle B—Regulations of the Offices of the Department of Education

I Office for Civil Rights, Department of Education (Parts 100—199)

II Office of Elementary and Secondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 200—299)

III Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Department of Education (Parts 300—399)

IV Office of Vocational and Adult Education, Department of Education (Parts 400—499)

V Office of Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Department of Education (Parts 500—599)

VI Office of Postsecondary Education, Department of Education (Parts 600—699)

VII Office of Educational Research and Improvement, Department of Education (Parts 700—799)

Title 35—Panama Canal

I Panama Canal Regulations (Parts 1—299)

Title 36—Parks, Forests, and Public Property

I National Park Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)

II Forest Service, Department of Agriculture (Parts 200—299)

III Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army (Parts 300—399)

IV American Battle Monuments Commission (Parts 400—499)

V Smithsonian Institution (Parts 500—599)

VII Library of Congress (Parts 700—799)

VIII Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (Parts 800—899)

IX Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation (Parts 900-999)

XI Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (Parts 1100—1199)

XII National Archives and Records Administration (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights

I Patent and Trademark Office, Department of Commerce (Parts 1—199)

Title 37—Patents, Trademarks, and Copyrights—Continued

Chap.

II Copyright Office, Library of Congress (Parts 200—299)

III Copyright Royalty Tribunal (Parts 300—399)

IV Assistant Secretary for Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Department of Commerce (Parts 400-499)

Title 38—Pensions, Bonuses, and Veterans' Relief

I Veterans Administration (Parts 0—99)

Title 39—Postal Service

I United States Postal Service (Parts 1—999)

III Postal Rate Commission (Parts 3000—3099)

Title 40—Protection of Environment

I Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1—799)

V Council on Environmental Quality (Parts 1500-1599)

Title 41—Public Contracts and Property Management

SUBTITLE B—Other Provisions Relating to Public Contracts

50 Public Contracts, Department of Labor (Parts 50-1—50-999)

51 Committee for Purchase from the Blind and Other Severely Handicapped (Parts 51-1—51-99)

60 Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Equal Employment Opportunity, Department of Labor (Parts 60-1—60-999)

61 Office of the Assistant Secretary for Veterans Employment and Training, Department of Labor (Parts 61-1—61-999)

SUBTITLE C—Federal Property Management Regulations System

101 Federal Property Management Regulations (Parts 101-1—101-99)

105 General Services Administration (Parts 105-1—105-999)

109 Department of Energy Property Management Regulations (Parts 109-1—109-99)

114 Department of the Interior (Parts 114-1—114-99)

115 Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 115-1—115-99)

128 Department of Justice (Parts 128-1—128-99)

SUBTITLE D—Other Provisions Relating to Property Management (Reserved)

SUBTITLE E—Federal Information Resources Management Regulations System

201 Federal Information Resources Management Regulation (Parts 201-1—201-99)

Title 42—Public Health

Chap.	
I	Public Health Service, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1—199)
III	Saint Elizabeths Hospital, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
IV	Health Care Financing Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V	Office of Inspector General-Health Care, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1999)

Title 43—Public Lands: Interior

	Subtitle A—Office of the Secretary of the Interior (Parts 1—199)
	Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Public Lands
I	Bureau of Reclamation, Department of the Interior (Parts 200—499)
II	Bureau of Land Management, Department of the Interior (Parts 1000—9999)

Title 44—Emergency Management and Assistance

I	Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 0—399)
IV	Department of Commerce and Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

Title 45—Public Welfare

	Subtitle A—Department of Health and Human Services, General Administration (Parts 1—199)
	Subtitle B—Regulations Relating to Public Welfare
II	Office of Family Assistance (Assistance Programs), Family Support Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 200—299)
III	Office of Child Support Enforcement (Child Support Enforcement Program), Family Support Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
IV	Office of Refugee Resettlement, Family Support Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 400—499)
V	Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States, Department of Justice (Parts 500—599)
VI	National Science Foundation (Parts 600—699)
VII	Commission on Civil Rights (Parts 700—799)
VIII	Office of Personnel Management (Parts 800—899)
X	Office of Community Services, Family Support Administration, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1000—1099)
XI	National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities (Parts 1100—1199)
XII	ACTION (Parts 1200—1299)

Title 45—Public Welfare—Continued

Chap.	
XIII	Office of Human Development Services, Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 1300—1399)
XVI	Legal Services Corporation (Parts 1600—1699)
XVII	National Commission on Libraries and Information Science (Parts 1700—1799)
XVIII	Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation (Parts 1800—1899)
XX	Commission on the Bicentennial of the United States Constitution (Parts 2000—2099)
XXI	Commission on Fine Arts (Parts 2100—2199)
XXII	Christopher Columbus Quincentenary Jubilee Commission (2200—2299)

Title 46—Shipping

I	Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 1—199)
II	Maritime Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—399)
III	Coast Guard (Great Lakes Pilotage), Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)
IV	Federal Maritime Commission (Parts 500—599)

Title 47—Telecommunication

I	Federal Communications Commission (Parts 0—199)
II	Office of Science and Technology Policy and National Security Council (Parts 200—299)
III	National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 300—399)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System

1	Federal Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1—99)
2	Department of Defense (Parts 200—299)
3	Department of Health and Human Services (Parts 300—399)
4	Department of Agriculture (Parts 400—499)
5	General Services Administration (Parts 500—599)
6	Department of State (Parts 600—699)
7	Agency for International Development (Parts 700—799)
8	Veterans Administration (Parts 800—899)
9	Department of Energy (Parts 900—999)
10	Department of the Treasury (Parts 1000—1099)
12	Department of Transportation (Parts 1200—1299)
13	Department of Commerce (Parts 1300—1399)
14	Department of the Interior (Parts 1400—1499)
15	Environmental Protection Agency (Parts 1500—1599)
16	Office of Personnel Management Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation (Parts 1600—1699)
17	Office of Personnel Management (Parts 1700—1799)

Title 48—Federal Acquisition Regulations System—Continued

Chap.

18 National Aeronautics and Space Administration (Parts 1800—1899)

19 United States Information Agency (Parts 1900—1999)

22 Small Business Administration (Parts 2200—2299)

24 Department of Housing and Urban Development (Parts 2400—2499)

25 National Science Foundation (Parts 2500—2599)

28 Department of Justice (Parts 2800—2899)

29 Department of Labor (Parts 2900—2999)

34 Department of Education Acquisition Regulation

44 Federal Emergency Management Agency (Parts 4400—4499)

52 Department of the Navy acquisition regulations (Parts 5200—5299)

53 Department of the Air Force Federal acquisition regulation supplement (Parts 5300—5399)

57 African Development Foundation (Parts 5700—5799)

61 General Services Administration Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6100—6199)

63 Department of Transportation Board of Contract Appeals (Parts 6300-6399)

Title 49—Transportation

SUBTITLE A—Office of the Secretary of Transportation (Parts 1—99)

SUBTITLE B—Other Regulations Relating to Transportation

I Research and Special Programs Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 100—199)

II Federal Railroad Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 200—299)

III Federal Highway Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 300—399)

IV Coast Guard, Department of Transportation (Parts 400—499)

V National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 500—599)

VI Urban Mass Transportation Administration, Department of Transportation (Parts 600—699)

VII National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK) (Parts 700—799)

VIII National Transportation Safety Board (Parts 800—899)

X Interstate Commerce Commission (Parts 1000—1399)

Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries

I United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior (Parts 1—199)

II National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 200—299)

best copy available

Title 50—Wildlife and Fisheries—Continued

Chap.

III International Regulatory Agencies (Fishing and Whaling) (Parts 300—399)

IV Joint Regulations (United States Fish and Wildlife Service, Department of the Interior and National Marine Fisheries Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce); Endangered Species Committee Regulations (Parts 400—499)

V Marine Mammal Commission (Parts 500—599)

VI Fishery Conservation and Management, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Department of Commerce (Parts 600—699)

CFR Index and Finding Aids

Subject/Agency Index

List of Agency Prepared Indexes

Parallel Tables of Statutory Authorities and Rules

Acts Requiring Publication in the Federal Register

List of CFR Titles, Chapters, Subchapters, and Parts

Alphabetical List of Agencies Appearing in the CFR

(As of September 27, 1988)

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
ACTION	45, XII
Administrative Committee of the Federal Register	1, I
Administrative Conference of the United States	1, III
Advisory Commission on Intergovernmental Relations	5, VII
Advisory Committee on Federal Pay	5, IV
Advisory Council on Historic Preservation	36, VIII
African Development Foundation	22, XV; 48, 57
Agency for International Development	22, II; 48, 7
Agricultural Marketing Service	7, I, IX, X, XI
Agricultural Research Service	7, V
Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service	7, VII
Agriculture Department	
Agricultural Marketing Service	7, I, IX, X, XI
Agricultural Research Service	7, V
Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service	7, VII
Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service	7, III; 9, I
Commodity Credit Corporation	7, XIV
Contract Appeals, Board of	7, XXIV
Cooperative State Research Service	7, XXXIV
Economic Analysis Staff	7, XXXIX
Economics Management Staff	7, XL
Economic Research Service	7, XXXVII
Energy, Office of	7, XXIX
Environmental Quality, Office of	7, XXXI
Farmers Home Administration	7, XVIII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 4
Federal Crop Insurance Corporation	7, IV
Federal Grain Inspection Service	7, VIII
Food and Nutrition Service	7, II
Food Safety and Inspection Service	9, III
Foreign Agricultural Service	7, XV
Foreign Economic Development Service	7, XXI
Forest Service	36, II
General Sales Manager, Office of	7, XXV
Grants and Program Systems, Office of	7, XXXII
Information Resources Management, Office of	7, XXVII
Inspector General, Office of	7, XXVI
International Cooperation and Development Office	7, XXII
National Agricultural Library	7, XLI
National Agricultural Statistics Service	7, XXXVI
Operations and Finance, Office of	7, XXX
Packers and Stockyards Administration	9, II
Rural Electrification Administration	7, XVII
Rural Telephone Bank	7, XVI
Secretary of Agriculture, Office of	7, Subtitle A
Soil Conservation Service	7, VI
Transportation, Office of	7, XXXIII
World Agriculture Outlook Board	7, XXXVIII
Air Force Department	32, VII
Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement	48, 53

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System, Office of the Federal Inspector	10, XV
Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of	27, I
AMTRAK	49, VII
American Battle Monuments Commission	36, IV
Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service	7, III; 9, I
Appalachian Regional Commission	5, IX
Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board	36, XI
Arms Control and Disarmament Agency, U.S.	22, VI
Army Department	32, V
Engineers, Corps of	33, II; 36, III
Benefits Review Board	20, VII
Bicentennial of the United States Constitution, Commission on the	45, XX
Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of	34, V
Blind and Other Severely Handicapped, Committee for Purchase from	41, 51
Board for International Broadcasting	22, XIII
Budget, Office of Management and	5, III
Census Bureau	15, I
Central Intelligence Agency	32, XIX
Child Support Enforcement, Office of	45, III
Christopher Columbus Quincentenary Jubilee Commission	45, XXII
Civil Rights Commission	45, VII
Civil Rights, Office for (Education Department)	34, I
Claims Collection Standards, Federal	4, II
Coast Guard	33, I; 46, I, III; 49, IV
Commerce Department	44, IV
Census Bureau	15, I
Economic Analysis, Bureau of	15, VIII
Economic Development Administration	13, III
Endangered Species Committee	50, IV
Export Administration, Bureau of	15, VII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 13
Fishery Conservation and Management	50, VI
Industrial Economics, Bureau of	15, VI
International Trade Administration	15, III; 19, III
National Bureau of Standards	15, II
National Marine Fisheries Service	50, II, IV
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration	15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI
National Telecommunications and Information Administration	15, XXIII; 47, III
Patent and Trademark Office	37, I
Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant Secretary for	37, IV
Secretary of Commerce, Office of	15, Subtitle A
United States Travel Service	15, XII
Commercial Space Transportation, Office of, Department of Transportation	14, III
Commission on the Bicentennial of the United States Constitution	45, XX
Committee for Purchase from the Blind and Other Severely Handicapped	41, 51
Commodity Credit Corporation	7, XIV
Commodity Futures Trading Commission	17, I
Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, V, VI
Community Services, Office of	45, X
Comptroller of the Currency	12, I
Construction Industry Collective Bargaining Commission	29, IX
Consumer Product Safety Commission	16, II
Contract Appeals, Board of	7, XXIV
Cooperative State Research Service	7, XXXIV

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Copyright Office	37, II
Copyright Royalty Tribunal	37, III
Council on Environmental Quality	40, V
Customs Service, United States	19, I
Defense Department	32, Subtitle A
Air Force Department	32, VII
Army Department	32, V; 33, II; 36, III
Engineers, Corps of	33, II; 36, III
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 2
Navy Department	32, VI; 48, 52
Secretary of Defense, Office of	32, I
Defense Logistics Agency	32, XII
Delaware River Basin Commission	18, III
Drug Enforcement Administration	21, II
East-West Foreign Trade Board	15, XIII
Economic Analysis, Bureau of	15, VIII
Economic Analysis Staff, Department of Agriculture	7, XXXIX
Economic Development Administration	13, III
Economics Management Staff	7, XL
Economic Research Service	7, XXXVII
Education, Department of	
Bilingual Education and Minority Languages Affairs, Office of	34, V
Civil Rights, Office for	34, I
Educational Research and Improvement, Office of	34, VII
Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of	34, II
Federal Acquistion Regulation	48, 34
Postsecondary Education, Office of	34, VI
Secretary of Education, Office of	34, Subtitle A
Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of	34, III
Vocational and Adult Education, Office of	34, IV
Educational Research and Improvement, Office of	34, VII
Elementary and Secondary Education, Office of	34, II
Employees' Compensation Appeals Board	20, IV
Employees Loyalty Board, International Organizations	5, V
Employment and Training Administration	20, V
Employment Standards Administration	20, VI
Endangered Species Committee	50, IV
Energy, Department of	10, II, III, X; 41, 109
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 9
Federal Energy Regulatory Commission	18, I
Energy, Office of, Department of Agriculture	7, XXIX
Engineers, Corps of	33, II; 36, III
Engraving and Printing, Bureau of	31, VI
Environmental Protection Agency	40, I; 41, 115; 48, 15
Environmental Quality, Office of (Agriculture Department)	7, XXXI
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission	29, XIV
Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, I
Executive Office of the President	3, I
Administration, Office of	5, XV
Export-Import Bank of the United States	12, IV
Family Assistance, Office of	45, II
Family Support Administration	45, II, III, IV, X
Farm Credit Administration	12, VI
Farmers Home Administration	7, XVIII
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 1
Federal Aviation Administration	14, I
Federal Claims Collection Standards	4, II
Federal Communications Commission	47, I
Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of	41, 60
Federal Crop Insurance Corporation	7, IV
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation	12, III
Federal Election Commission	11, I
Federal Emergency Management Agency	44, I; 48, 44
Federal Energy Regulatory Commission	18, I
Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council	12, XI

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Federal Financing Bank	12, VIII
Federal Grain Inspection Service	7, VIII
Federal Highway Administration	23, I, II; 49, III
Federal Home Loan Bank Board	12, V
Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation	1, IV
Federal Information Resources Management Regulations	41, Subtitle E, Ch. 201
Federal Inspector for the Alaska Natural Gas Transportation System, Office of	10, XV
Federal Labor Relations Authority, and General Counsel of the Federal Labor Relations Authority	5, XIV; 22, XIV
Federal Law Enforcement Training Center	31, VII
Federal Maritime Commission	46, IV
Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service	29, XII
Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission	29, XXVII
Federal Pay, Advisory Committee on	5, IV
Federal Prison Industries	28, III
Federal Property Management Regulations	41, 101
Federal Property Management Regulations System	41, Subtitle C
Federal Railroad Administration	49, II
Federal Register, Administrative Committee of	1, I
Federal Register, Office of	1, II
Federal Reserve System	12, II
Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board	5, VI
Federal Service Impasses Panel	5, XIV
Federal Trade Commission	16, I
Fine Arts Commission	45, XXI
Fiscal Service	31, II
Fish and Wildlife Service, United States	50, I, IV
Fishery Conservation and Management	50, VI
Fishing and Whaling, International Regulatory Agencies	50, III
Food and Drug Administration	21, I
Food and Nutrition Service	7, II
Food Safety and Inspection Service	9, III
Foreign Agricultural Service	7, XV
Foreign Assets Control, Office of	31, V
Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of United States	45, V
Foreign Economic Development Service	7, XXI
Foreign Service Grievance Board	22, IX
Foreign Service Impasse Disputes Panel	22, XIV
Foreign Service Labor Relations Board	22, XIV
Foreign-Trade Zones Board	15, IV
Forest Service	36, II
General Accounting Office	4, I, II, II
General Sales Manager, Office of	7, XXV
General Services Administration	
Contract Appeals Board	48, 61
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 5
Federal Information Resources Management Regulations	41, Subtile E, Ch. 201
Federal Property Management Regulations System	41, 101, 105
Geological Survey	30, IV
Government National Mortgage Association	24, III
Grants and Program Systems, Office of	7, XXXI
Great Lakes Pilotage	46, III
Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation	45, XVIII
Health and Human Services, Department of	45, Subtitle A
Child Support Enforcement, Office of	45, III
Community Services, Office of	45, X
Family Assistance, Office of	45, II
Family Support Administration	45, II, II, IV, X
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 3
Food and Drug Administration	21, I
Health Care Financing Administration	42, IV
Human Development Services Office	45, XIII
Inspector General, Office of	42, V
Public Health Service	42, I
Refugee Resettlement, Office of	45, IV

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
St. Elizabeths Hospital	42, III
Social Security Administration	20, III; 45, IV
Health Care Financing Administration	42, IV
Housing and Urban Development, Department of	
Community Planning and Development, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, V, VI
Equal Opportunity, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 24
Government National Mortgage Association	24, III
Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, II, VIII, X, XX
Inspector General, Office of	24, XII
Mortgage Insurance and Loan Programs Under Emergency Homeowners' Relief Act	24, XV
Public and Indian Housing, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, IX
Secretary, Office of	24, Subtitle A, VII
Solar Energy and Energy Conservation Bank	24, XI
Housing—Federal Housing Commissioner, Office of Assistant Secretary for	24, II, VIII, X, XX
Human Development Services Office	45, XIII
Immigration and Naturalization Service	8, I
Indian Affairs, Bureau of	25, I
Indian Arts and Crafts Board	25, II
Industrial Economics, Bureau of, Commerce Department	15, VI
Information Agency, United States	22, V; 48, 19
Information Resources Management, Office of, Agriculture Department	7, XXVII
Information Security Oversight Office	32, XX
Inspector General, Office of, Agriculture Department	7, XXVI
Inspector General, Office of, Health and Human Services Department	42, V
Inspector General, Office of, Housing and Urban Development Department	24, XII
Inter-American Foundation	22, X
Intergovernmental Relations, Advisory Commission on	5, VII
Interior Department	
Endangered Species Committee	50, IV
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 14
Federal Property Management Regulations System	41, 114
Fish and Wildlife Service, United States	50, I, IV
Geological Survey	30, IV
Indian Affairs, Bureau of	25, I
Indian Arts and Crafts Board	25, II
Land Management Bureau	43, II
Minerals Management Service	30, II
Mines, Bureau of	30, VI
National Park Service	36, I
Reclamation Bureau	43, I
Secretary of the interior, Office of	43, Subtitle A
Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of	30, III
Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement, Office of	30, VII
United States Fish and Wildlife Service	50, I, IV
Internal Revenue Service	26, I
International Boundary and Water Commission, United States and Mexico	22, XI
International Cooperation and Development Office, Department of Agriculture	7, XXII
International Development, Agency for	22, II
International Development Cooperation Agency	22, XII
International Development, Agency for	22, II
Overseas Private Investment Corporation	22, VII
International Joint Commission, United States and Canada	22, IV
International Organizations Employees Loyalty Board	5, V
International Regulatory Agencies (Fishing and Whaling)	50, III
International Trade Administration	15, III; 19, III

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
International Trade Commission, United States	19, II
Interstate Commerce Commission	49, X
Japan-United States Friendship Commission	22, XVI
Joint Board for the Enrollment of Actuaries	20, VIII
Justice Department	28, I; 41, 128
Drug Enforcement Administration	21, II
Federal Acquistion Regulation	48, 28
Federal Claims Collection Standards	4, II
Federal Prison Industries	28, III
Foreign Claims Settlement Commission of the United States	45, V
Immigration and Naturalization Service	8, I
Offices of Independent Counsel	28, VI
Prisons, Bureau of	28, V
Labor Department	
Benefits Review Board	20, VII
Employees' Compensation Appeals Board	20, IV
Employment and Training Administration	20, V
Employment Standards Administration	20, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 29
Federal Contract Compliance Programs, Office of	41, 60
Federal Procurement Regulations System	41, 50
Labor-Management Relations and Cooperative Programs, Bureau of	29, II
Labor-Management Standards, Office of	29, IV
Mine Safety and Health Administration	30, I
Occupational Safety and Health Administration	29, XVII
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration	29, XXV
Public Contracts	41, 50
Secretary of Labor, Office of	29, Subtitle A
Veterans Employment and Training, Office of the Assistant Secretary for	41, 61
Wage and Hour Division	29, V
Workers' Compensation Programs, Office of	20, I
Labor-Management Relations and Cooperative Programs, Bureau of	29, II
Labor-Management Standards, Office of	29, IV
Land Management, Bureau of	43, II
Legal Services Corporation	45, XVI
Library of Congress	36, VII
Copyright Office	37, II
Management and Budget, Office of	5, III
Marine Mammal Commission	50, V
Maritime Administration	46, II
Merit Systems Protection Board	5, II
Micronesian Status Negotiations, Office for	32, XXVII
Mine Safety and Health Administration	30, I
Minerals Management Service	30, II
Mines, Bureau of	30, VI
Minority Business Development Agency	15, XIV
Miscellaneous Agencies	1, IV
Monetary Offices	31, I
Mortgage Insurance and Loan Programs Under the Emergency Homeowners' Relief Act, Department of Housing and Urban Development	24, XV
National Aeronautics and Space Administration	14, V; 48, 18
National Agricultural Library	7, XLI
National Agricultural Statistics Service	7, XXXVI
National Archives and Records Administration	36, XII
National Bureau of Standards	15, II
National Capital Planning Commission	1, IV
National Commission on Libraries and Information Science	45, XVII
National Credit Union Administration	12, VII
National Foundation on the Arts and the Humanities	45, XI
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration	23, II, III; 49, V
National Labor Relations Board	29, I

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
National Marine Fisheries Service	50, II, IV
National Mediation Board	29, X
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration	15, IX; 50, II, III, IV, VI
National Park Service	36, I
National Railroad Adjustment Board	29, III
National Railroad Passenger Corporation (AMTRAK)	49, VII
National Science Foundation	45, VI; 48,25
National Security Council	32, XXI
National Security Council and Office of Science and Technology Policy	47, II
National Telecommunications and Information Administration	15, XXIII
National Transportation Safety Board	49, VIII
Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation Commission	25, IV
Navy Department	32, VI; 48, 52
Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation	24, XXV
Nuclear Regulatory Commission	10, I
Occupational Safety and Health Administration	29, XVII
Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission	29, XX
Office of Independent Counsel	28, VII
Offices of Independent Counsel, Department of Justice	28, VI
Overseas Private Investment Corporation	22, VII
Packers and Stockyards Administration	9, II
Panama Canal Regulations	35, I
Patent and Trademark Office	37, I
Peace Corps	22, III
Pennsylvania Avenue Development Corporation	36, IX
Pension and Welfare Benefits Administration, Department of Labor	29, XXV
Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation	29, XXVI
Personnel Management, Office of	5, I; 45, VIII; 48, 17
Federal Employees Health Benefits Acquisition Regulation	48, 16
Postal Rate Commission	39, III
Postal Service, United States	39, I
Postsecondary Education, Office of	34, VI
President's Commission on White House Fellowships	1, IV
Presidential Documents	3
Prisons, Bureau of	28, V
Productivity, Technology and Innovation, Assistant Secretary (Commerce)	37, IV
Property Management Regulations System, Federal	41, Subtitle C
Public Contracts, Department of Labor	41, 50
Public Health Service	42, I
Railroad Retirement Board	20, II
Reclamation Bureau	43, I
Refugee Resettlement, Office of	45, IV
Regional Action Planning Commissions	13, V
Research and Special Programs Administration	49, I
Rural Electrification Administration	7, XVII
Rural Telephone Bank	7, XVI
Saint Elizabeths Hospital	42, III
Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation	33, IV
Science and Technology Policy, Office of	32, XXIV
Science and Technology Policy, Office of, and National Security Council	47, II
Secret Service	31, IV
Securities and Exchange Commission	17, II
Selective Service System	32, XVI
Small Business Administration	13, I; 48, 22
Smithsonian Institution	36, V
Social Security Administration	20, III; 45, IV
Soil Conservation Service	7, VI
Solar Energy and Energy Conservation Bank, Department of Housing and Urban Development	24, XI
Soldiers' and Airmen's Home, United States	5, XI

Agency	CFR Title, Subtitle or Chapter
Special Education and Rehabilitative Services, Office of	34, III
State Department	22, I
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 6
Surface Mining and Reclamation Appeals, Board of	30,III
Susquehanna River Basin Commission	18, VIII
Tennessee Valley Authority	18, XIII
Trade Representative, United States, Office of	15, XX
Transportation, Department of	44, IV
Coast Guard	33, I; 46, I, III; 49, IV
Commercial Space Transportation, Office of	14, III
Contract Appeals Board	48, 63
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 12
Federal Aviation Administration	14, I
Federal Highway Administration	23, I, II; 49, III
Federal Railroad Administration	49, II
Maritime Administration	46, II
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration	23, II, III; 49, V
Research and Special Programs Administration	49, I
Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation	33, IV
Secretary of Transportation, Office of	14, II; 49, Subtitle A
Urban Mass Transportation Administration	49, VI
Transportation, Office of, Department of Agriculture	7, XXXIII
Travel Service, United States	15, XII
Treasury Department	17, IV
Alcohol, Tobacco and Firearms, Bureau of	27, I
Comptroller of the Currency	12, I
Customs Service, United States	19, I
Engraving and Printing, Bureau of	31, VI
Federal Acquisition Regulation	48, 10
Federal Law Enforcement Training Center	31, VII
Fiscal Service	31, II
Foreign Assets Control, Office of	31, V
Internal Revenue Service	26, I
Monetary Offices	31, I
Secret Service	31, IV
Secretary of the Treasury, Office of	31, Subtitle A
United States Customs Service	19, I
Truman, Harry S. Scholarship Foundation	45, XVIII
United States and Canada, International Joint Commission	22, IV
United States Arms Control and Disarmament Agency	22, VI
United States Customs Service	19, I
United States Fish and Wildlife Service	50, I, IV
United States Information Agency	22, V; 48, 19
United States International Development Cooperation Agency	22, XII
United States International Trade Commission	19, II
United States Postal Service	39, I
United States Soldiers' and Airmen's Home	5, XI
United States Trade Representative, Office of	15, XX
United States Travel Service	15, XII
Urban Mass Transportation Administration	49, VI
Veterans Administration	38, I; 48, 8
Veterans Employment and Training, Office of the Assistant Secretary for	41, 61
Vice President of the United States, Office of	32, XXVIII
Vocational and Adult Education, Office of	34, IV
Wage and Hour Division	29, V
Water Resources Council	18, VI
Workers' Compensation Programs, Office of	20, I
World Agriculture Outlook Board	7, XXXVIII

Redesignation Table No. 1

At 38 FR 32104, Nov. 20, 1973, Parts 281, 285, and 290 of Subchapter F were transferred and redesignated as Parts 1220, 1230, and 1210 respectively into a new Subchapter L.

The following table shows the relationship of the regulations in former Subchapter F to the redesignated parts in the new Subchapter L.

Old part	New part
281	1220
285	1230
290	1210

Redesignation Table No. 2

At 40 FR 5620, Feb. 6, 1975, certain sections of Part 72 of Title 42 were transferred and redesignated as Parts 1240 and 1250 in Title 21, Subchapter L.

The following table shows the relationship of the regulations under their assigned section numbers in 42 CFR Part 72 prior to this republication, and their redesignations reflected in 21 CFR Parts 1240 and 1250.

Old section	New section
7.2 (extracted)	1240.3, 1250.3
72.2	1240.54
72.3	1240.30
72.4	1240.10
72.11	1240.40
72.12	1240.50
72.13	1240.55
72.14	1240.57
72.15	1240.45
72.21	1240.70
72.22	1240.65
72.23	1240.75
72.24	1240.60
72.26	1240.62
72.101	1240.80
72.102	1240.83
72.103	1240.90
72.104	1240.95
72.105	1240.86
72.111	1250.80
72.112	1250.81
72.113	1250.82
72.114	1250.83
72.115	1250.84
72.116	1250.86
72.117	1250.85
72.118	1250.87
72.119	1250.89
72.120	1250.90
72.121	1250.93
72.122	1250.95
72.123	1250.96
72.131	1250.60
72.132	1250.61
72.133	1250.62
72.134	1250.63
72.135	1250.65
72.136	1250.67(a)
72.137	1250.67(b)
72.139	1250.67(c)
72.140	1250.70
72.141	1250.75
72.142	1250.79
72.146	1250.40
72.147	1250.41
72.148	1250.42
72.149	1250.44
72.150	1250.50
72.151	1250.45
72.152	1250.49
72.153	1250.43
72.154	1250.51
72.155	1250.53
72.156	1250.52
72.161	1250.20
72.162	1250.21
72.163	1250.22
72.164	1250.25
72.165	1250.26
72.166	1250.27
72.167	1250.28
72.168	1250.30
72.169	1250.33
72.170	1250.34
72.171	1250.39
72.172	1250.38
72.173	1250.32
72.174	1250.35
72.181	1240.20

Redesignation Table No. 3

At 41 FR 6896, Feb. 13, 1976, the medical device regulations formerly found under Subchapters A, C, and D of Chapter I, Title 21, were centralized under a new Subchapter H.

Sections dealing exclusively with medical devices are transferred from Parts 3 (§§ 3.49, 3.96), 201 (§§ 201.109, 201.405, 201.410), 328 (§§ 328.3 through 328.35), and 369 (§ 369.30) to Subchapter H. There were some sections under Part 201 (indicated with an asterisk in the conversion table below) that combined medical device regulations with drug regulations. Portions applicable to devices in these sections are recodified under Part 801, and the language in these sections applicable to drugs remains in the existing locations as set out in the cross-referencing document published at 41 FR 6907, Feb. 13, 1976.

The following table shows the relationship of the former CFR section numbers under Subchapters A, C and D to their redesignation reflected in Parts 801 and 809:

Old section	New section
3.49	801.408
3.96	801.415
201.1*	801.1
201.5*	801.5
201.6*	801.6
201.15*	801.15
201.16*	801.16
201.60*	801.60
201.61*	801.61
201.62*	801.62
201.109	801.109
201.110*	801.110
201.116*	801.116
201.119*	801.119
201.122*	801.122

Old part	New part
201.125*	801.125
201.127*	801.127
201.128*	801.4
201.150*	801.150
201.405	801.405
201.410	801.410
328.3	809.3
328.4	809.4
328.10	809.10
328.20	809.20
328.30	809.30
328.34	809.34
328.35	809.35
369.30	801.403

List of CFR Sections Affected

All changes in this volume of the Code of Federal Regulations which were made by documents published in the FEDERAL REGISTER since October 15, 1973, are enumerated in the following list. Entries indicate the nature of the changes effected. Page numbers refer to FEDERAL REGISTER pages. The user should consult the entries for chapters and parts as well as sections for revisions.

1973

21 CFR

38 FR Page

Chapter I
Subchapter J Added (Parts 1000-1030); provisions derived from Part 278 28624
1000 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28624
1002 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28625
1002.1 Revised....31828
1003 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28628
1004 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28629
1005 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28630
1010 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28631
1020 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28632
1030 Added; provisions derived from Part 278....28640
1030.10 (b)(3) and (c)(2) and (3) effective 8-7-74....21262, 31006
1210—1230 Subchapter L heading added....32104
1210 Added; provisions recodified from Part 290....32104
1220 Added; provisions recodified from Part 281....32107
1230 Added; provisions recodified from Part 285....32110

1974

21 CFR

39 FR Page

Chapter I
Technical correction....38644
1000.16 Added....27433

21 CFR—Continued

39 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued
(a)(4) corrected....33510
1002.10 (b) revised....16228
1010.3 (a)(2) revised....16228
1010.4 Added....13879
1020 Technical correction....38370
1020.30 (i) removed....13380
(b)(50) added....36008
1020.31 (g) introductory text revised....36008
1020.32 (a)(1), (b)(2), and (g) revised....36008
1020.40 Added....12986
1220.40 (a) revised....9945, 24890

1975

21 CFR

40 FR Page

Chapter I
1002 Technical correction. 12073
1002.10 Introductory text revised....10175
Report date extended....26053
1002.61 (a)(5) added....10175
Report date extended....26053
1003 Comment time extended....26027
1003.11 (a) amended (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23045
(a) effective date stayed....31606
1003.31 (d) added (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23045
(d) effective date stayed....31606
1004.6 Amended (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23045
Comment time extended....26027
Effective date stayed....31606

21 CFR—Continued

40 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1010.1 Revised; eff. 8-2-76....32257

1010.2 (a), (c), and (d) revised; eff. 8-2-76....32257

1010.3 Revised; eff. 8-2-76....32257

1010.13 Revised; eff. 8-2-76....32257

1010.20 Revised; eff. 8-2-76....32257

1030.10 (c)(4) revised; (c) (5) and (6) added....14752

Effective date corrected....16663

(c)(2) (i) and (iv) revised; eff. 11-7-76....52007

1040 Added; eff. 11-2-76....32257

1040.10 (g)(2) corrected....40800

1210 Comment time extended....26027

Certain sections (p. 23046) effective date stayed....31606

1210.30—1210.33 (Subpart D) Heading revised (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1210.30 Revised (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1210.31 Revised; new provisions redesignated from 1210.63 (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1210.32—1210.33 Removed (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1210.40—1210.44 (Subpart E) Removed (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1210.50—1210.62 (Subparts F and G) Removed (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1210.63 Redesignated as 1210.31 (Restored to prior status September 3, 1975 (40 FR 40520))....23046

1220.40 (a) revised....26508

1240 Added (redesignated from Title 42 Part 72)....5620

1240.62 Revised....22545

1250 Added (redesignated from Title 42 Part 72)....5624

1250.51 Heading, (b) and (d) revised; (e) and (f) added....30110

1976

21 CFR

41 FR Page

Chapter I

Subchapter H (Parts 801, 809) established....6896

801 Added (provisions transferred from certain sections of Parts 3, 201, 369; see redesignation table)....6896

809 Added (provisions transferred from Part 328; see redesignation table)....6896, 6903

1000.50 (Subpart C) Added....30328

(a)(2) corrected....31812

1002.61 (a)(1) removed; (a)(2)-(a)(5) redesignated as (a)(1)-(a)(4) and revised; (c)(1) revised....27316

1003.11 Undesignated paragraph following (a) added....48269

1003.31 (d) added....48269

1004.6 Amended....48269

1210.30—1210.33 (Subpart D) Heading revised....48269

Revised....48269

1210.31 Removed; new 1210.31 redesignated from 1210.63 and revised....48269

1210.32 Removed....48269

1210.33 Removed....48269

1210.40—1210.44 (Subpart E) Removed....48269

1210.50—1210.59 (Subpart F) Removed....48269

1210.60—1210.62 (Subpart G) Removed....48269

1210.63 Redesignated as 1210.31 and revised....48269

1220.40 (a) revised; eff. 5-1-76....27317

1977

21 CFR

42 FR Page

Chapter I

Technical correction....31449

801.420 Added; eff. 8-15-77....9294

Effective date stayed until 8-25-77....40215

801.421 Added; eff. 8-15-77....9296

Effective date stayed until 8-25-77....40215

801.425 Added....22034

Technical correction....31449

801.427 Added....23780

Correctly designated....35155

21 CFR—Continued

42 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued
807 Added....42526
Technical correction....46516
809.4 (a) amended....15676
809.20 (a) removed....42530
Technical correction....46516
809.30 (a) revised....4719
Amended....15676
813 Added....58889
1002.7 Added....18062
1002.40 Heading and (a) revised; (c) added....18063
1002.41 Heading, (a)(2) and (b) revised....18063
1003.11 (a) amended....15676
1003.31 Amended....15676
1004.6 Amended....15676
1005.24 (c) revised....55207
(c) table corrected....62130
1010.2 (b) revised....18063
1010.3 (a) introductory text revised....18063
1010.5 Added....44229
(c) and (e) corrected....61257
1020.30 (a) introductory text; (a)(1), (b)(16), (21)(i), (ii), and (iii), (42) and (43), (c) and (e) introductory text revised; (b) (51), (52), and (53) added; eff. 2-25-77, 4-26-77, and 2-25-78 in part....10985
(a)(1)(v) and (b)(54) added....44232
1020.31 (e)(1)(iii) and (g)(2) revised....10986
(b)(2), (d) and (e) introductory texts, and (f)(2) revised; (f)(3) redesignated as (f)(4) and revised; new (f)(3) and (l) added....44232
Effective 11-1-77 except (b)(2) and (l) effective 9-8-78....44233
(e)(2) introductory text added....58169
(b)(2) and (l) effective date corrected to 9-5-78....61257
(e)(2) introductory text, technical correction....64623
1020.32 (a)(1), (b) and (d)(1)(ii) and (2)(ii) revised....10986
1210.3 (e), (f) and (g) amended....14091
1210.30—1210.33 Amended....15676
1220.40 (a) revised....36996
1250.51 (b) and (d) effective date stayed temporarily....57122

1978

21 CFR

43 FR Page

Chapter I
801.417 Added; eff. 12-15-78 and 4-15-79 in part....11318
807 Heading revised....37997
807.3 (i) through (m) added....37997
807.20 Heading, (a) introductory text and (2), and (b) revised....37997
807.21 Revised....37997
807.22 Revised....37997
807.25 Heading revised; (f) added....37998
807.30 Added....37998
807.31 Added....37999
807.35 (c) revised....37999
807.37 Revised....37999
307.40 Revised....37999
808 Added....18665
808.20 (a) corrected....22010
809.20 (b) revised....31527
Technical correction....52701
813.25 (a)(6) corrected....1940
813.35 (b) corrected....1940
813.39 (b)(2) correctly designated....1940
813.150 (a) corrected....1940
813.153 Technical correction....6216, 12311
813.155 (c) corrected....1940
820 Added....31508
Technical correction....52701
860 Added....32993
1003.31 (b) revised; eff. 6-20-79....60024
1010.4 (b)(1)(ix) added; eff. 6-20-79....60024
1010.5 (c)(12) revised; eff. 6-20-79....60025
1040.10 (b)(1), (6)(i), (9), (12), and (18), (e)(3)(i), (ii), and (iii), and (4), (f)(3), (5)(i), (6), and (8) revised; (d) tables I-B and III amended....55390
(g)(1) amended; (g)(2)(i), (4) introductory text, (6)(i)(*a*) (ii)(*b*), (iii)(*b*), (7)(i)(*a*), (ii)(*b*), (iii)(*b*), (8)(i), (ii), and (10), (h)(2)(i) and (ii) revised....55392
1040.11 (b)(1) revised....55393
1050 Added; eff. 2-17-79....7166
1220.40 (a) revised....46301

1979

21 CFR

44 FR Page

Chapter I

800 Added; eff. 4-9-79 ... 13239
801.410 (b), (c), (d), and (f) revised ... 20678
820.1 (d) amended ... 75628
882 Added ... 51730-51778
895 Added ... 29221
1000.16 (c) and (d) suspended ... 44844
Redesignated as 1020.30(p) and revised ... 49670
1000.55 Added ... 71737
1002.61 (a)(4) revised; compliance 5-7-80 ... 65357
Technical correction ... 67655
1010.4 (c) revised ... 48191
1010.5 (c) introductory text correctly revised; (c)(12 restored to prior status; (c)(13) correctly added ... 17657
1020.30 (a)(1)(i), (h)(2)(i), (h)(4) introductory text and (i), and (k) revised; (b)(21) amended; (b)(55) added ... 29654
(b)(3), (d) introductory text, and (e)(2) revised; (p) redesignated from 1000.16 and revised; (b)(56) and (57), (d)(3), (e)(3), and (q) added ... 49671
(m)(1) revised; compliance 12-1-80 ... 68824
1020.31 (g)(1) revised ... 29654
1020.32 (b)(2)(iv) revised ... 29654
1040.20 Added; compliance 5-7-80 ... 65357
Technical correction ... 67655
1040.30 Added; compliance in part 9-7-81 ... 52195
1220.40 (a) revised ... 30335

1980

21 CFR

45 FR Page

Chapter I

Cross reference to 9 CFR 309.16 (a) and (c) ... 26949, 26955
Chapter heading revised and nomenclature change ... 40976
Cross reference to DEA rules ... 42264
Cross reference corrected ... 43389
Mandatory compliance date 7-1-83 ... 72111
808.1 (f) added ... 67336
808.53 Added ... 67336
808.55 Added ... 67336

21 CFR—Continued

45 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

Revised ... 67324
808.57 Added ... 67336
808.59 Added ... 67336
808.67 Added ... 67336
808.69 Added ... 67336
808.71 Added ... 67326
808.73 Added ... 67336
808.74 Added ... 67336
808.77 Added ... 67336
808.80 Added ... 67337
808.81 Added ... 67337
808.82 Added ... 67337
808.85 Added ... 67337
808.87 Added ... 67337
808.88 Added ... 67337
808.89 Added ... 67326
808.93 Added ... 67337
808.97 Added ... 67337
808.98 Added ... 67337
808.101 Added ... 67337
809.3 (a) revised; (c) removed; eff. 7-30-80 pending OMB review ... 7484
809.4 Revised; eff. 7-30-80 pending OMB review ... 7484
809.10 (c) revised; eff. 7-16-80 pending OMB review ... 3750
(c) introductory text revised; eff. 7-30-80 pending OMB review ... 7484
809.30—809.35 (Subpart D) Removed; eff. 7-30-80 pending OMB review ... 7484
812 Added; eff. 7-16-80 pending OMB review ... 3751
Technical correction ... 67338
812.5 (a) revised ... 58842
812.20 (a) (3) revised ... 58842
812.30 (b)(4) and (5) revised ... 58842
812.140 (b) (4) (v) revised ... 58843
812.150 (b) (5) revised ... 58843
861 Added; eff. 7-30-80 pending OMB review ... 7484
861.1 (c) corrected ... 23686
864 Added ... 60582-60651
870 Added ... 7907-7971
880 Added ... 69682-69737
884 Added ... 12684-12720
884.5425 Heading and (a) revised ... 51185
Technical correction ... 51186
884.5460 Heading and (a) revised; technical correction ... 51186
1000.60 Added ... 40978
1002.61 (c) (3) revised ... 47615

21 CFR—Continued

45 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued
1005.1 (a) revised....81739
1020.30 (b) (50) and (n) revised...27928
1020.31 (d) (2) (ii) revised....27928
1020.32 (d) (4) added....27928
1030.10 (b) (8) added; (c) (1), (3)(i), and (ii) revised; eff. 11-30-81....70931
(b) (8), (c) (1) and (3)(i) and (ii) effective date correctly confirmed as 11-30-81....80501
1050.10 Authority citation corrected....16483
1220.40 (a) revised....44265

1981

21 CFR

46 FR Page

Chapter I
Nomenclature change....8454
Technical correction....14340
Incorporation by reference approvals....19961
808.20 (b) revised....8460
808.101 Correctly revised....59236
809.3 (a) revision and (c) removal effective date confirmed.....22359
809.4 Revision effective date confirmed....22359
809.10 (c) introductory text effective date confirmed....22359
809.30—809.35 (Subpart D) Removal effective date confirmed....22359
812.2 (b) (1) (iii) revised; eff. 7-27-81....8956
Designation corrected....14340
812.3 (f) revised; eff. 7-27-81....8956
812.20 (a) (2) removed; (a) (3) redesignated as (a) (2) and revised; (a) (4) redesignated as (a) (3); eff. 7-27-81....8956
812.35 Revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
(b) heading corrected....14340
812.42 Added; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.60—812.70 (Subpart D) Heading revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.60 Revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.62 Revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.64 Added; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.65 Correctly removed....21360
812.66 Added; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.70 Correctly removed....21360
812.100 Amended; eff. 7-27-81......8957

21 CFR—Continued

46 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued
812.120—812.130 (Subpart F) Removed; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.140 (c), (d), and (e) revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
812.150 (a) (4) revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
(a) (4) corrected....14340
813.120—813.130 (Subpart F) Removed; eff. 7-27-81....8957
861 Addition effective date confirmed....22359
864.7375 Technical correction....14890
864.7695 (a) corrected....14890
864.9125 Technical correction....14890
880.2440 (a) corrected....21364
1003.31 (b) revised; eff. 7-27-81....8957
(b) corrected....14340
1010.4 (b) introductory text revised....8460
(b) (1) (xi) added; eff. 7-27-81......8957
1010.5 (c) introductory text revised....8460
(c) (12) revised; eff. 7-27-81....8958
1030.10 (c) (6) (iv) introductory text revised....8461
(c) (1) corrected; effective date correctly confirmed as 11-30-81....10465
(b)(8); (c) (1), (3) (i) and (ii) effective date stayed....23233
1050.10 Authority citation corrected....16483
1240.62 (e) revised....8461
1250.51 (f) (4) (ii) revised....8461

1982

21 CFR

47 FR Page

Chapter I
Chapter I Mandatory compliance date 7-1-85....35185
800.10—800.12 (Subpart B) Added; eff. 2-7-83, 5-5-83, and 2-6-84....50455
801 Incorporation by reference approvals....13670
801.410 (d) (2) amended....9397
801.420 (c) (4) amended....9398
801.430 Added....26989
809.5 Added....39160
809.6 Added....39160
809.10 (a)(5) corrected....41107

21 CFR—Continued

Chapter I—Continued	47 FR Page
(b)(5)(iv) and (d)(1)(v) corrected	51109
813.5 Footnote removed; (c)(4) revised	46079
813.20 Footnote removed; (b)(8) and (11) revised	46079
813.43 Footnote removed; (b)(2) revised	46079
813.66 (a)(6) and (f)(3) revised	46080
813.155 Footnote removed; (d)(2) revised	46080
866 Added	50823
866.3220 (b) corrected	56846
866.5360 (a) corrected	56846
866.5640 Correctly designated	56846
868 Added	31142
868.1 (d) correctly designated	40410
868.1150 Heading corrected	40410
868.1200 Heading corrected	40410
868.5460 (a) corrected	40410
868.5530 Added	41107
868.5540 Added	41107
868.5550 Added	41107
868.5560 Added	41107
880.2440 Removed	39816
884.1040 Added	14706
884.5310 Added	49022
1020.30 (b)(19) revised; eff. 12-1-83	50215
1020.31 (e)(2) revised; (e)(3) through (6) and (g)(5) added; eff. 12-1-83	50215
1020.32 (b)(3) added; eff. 12-1-83	50215

1983

21 CFR

Chapter I	48 FR Page
800 Authority citation corrected	1706
800.12 (a), (b), (c), (e), (f) introductory text, (1)(i) and (ii), (2), and (3) corrected	1706
(a), (b), and (c) revised	16666
(c) revision effective date deferred; (f)(2) revised	37625
(f)(3) addition effective date deferred	41579
Technical correction	43679, 46979, 50077
809.10 (c)(2)(iii) removed	34470
812.3 (i) revised	15622
812.35 Revised	15622
812.150 (a)(4) revised	15622

21 CFR—Continued

Chapter I—Continued	48 FR Page
864.8165 Reclassification request opportunity	31387
866.1620 Reclassification request opportunity	31390
866.3780 Reclassification request opportunity	31388
866.5510 Reclassification request opportunity	31391
866.5775 Reclassification request opportunity	31389
868.2375 Reclassification request opportunity	31392
868.5895 Reclassification request opportunity	27723
Reclassification request opportunity corrected	31388
868.5975 Reclassification request opportunity	31393
870 Technical correction	36101
870.2300 Reclassification request opportunity	31394
870.3460 Reclassification request opportunity	31395
876 Added	53023
882.5550 Reclassification request opportunity	31396
890 Added	53047
895.101 (Subpart B) Added (immediately effective proposed rule)	25136
Technical correction	27724
Hearing opportunity	25137
1003.31 (b) corrected	11430
Technical correction	13978
1030.10 (b)(8), (c)(1), and (3)(i) and (ii) effective date deferred terminated; (b)(8), (c)(1), and (3)(i) and (ii) revised; eff. 7-2-84	57482
1220.40 (a) revised	23814
1240 Authority citation revised; cross reference added	11431
1240.3 (k) amended	11431
1240.20 Amended	11431
1240.30 Amended	11431
1240.62 Heading revised; (c)(1)(ii) amended; authority citation removed	11431
1240.80 Amended	11431
1240.83 (a)(1) revised; (b) through (d) amended	11431
(a)(1) corrected	13978
1240.90 (a) and (b) amended	11431
1240.95 Amended	11431

21 CFR—Continued

48 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1250 Authority citation revised; cross reference added............11431
1250.3 (j) amended............11432
1250.21 Amended............11432
1250.25 (a) and (b) amended............11432
1250.26 (a) amended............11432
1250.41 Amended............11432
1250.51 (d) and (f)(3) amended; authority citation removed; cross reference added............11432
1250.52 Amended............11432
1250.53 Amended............11432
1250.60 Amended............11432
1250.61 Amended............11432
1250.62 Amended............11432
1250.81 Amended............11432
1250.82 (f) amended............11432
1250.93 Amended; cross reference added............11432

1984

21 CFR

49 FR Page

Chapter I

Mandatory compliance date 7-1-87............41019
800.55 (g)(3)(i), (ii), (iii), and (iv) and (4) amended............3174
803 Added; OMB no. pending............36348
Effective date corrected............36644
803.24 (f) added; OMB number............48273
803.31 OMB number............48273
808.20 (b) revised............3646
860.123 (b)(4) revised............14505
866.3780 Reclassification request denied............40380
876 Authority citation corrected............1053
876.5980 Revised............573
882.5820 (c) added............26574
1002.20 (c) added............36351
(c) effective date corrected............36644
1003.10 (c) added............36351
(c) effective date corrected............36644
890 Technical correction............1053
895.101 (Subpart B) Addition effective date confirmed............1177
1020.30 (a), (b)(36) introductory text, and (h)(3)(vi) and (vii) revised; (b)(36)(iii) redesignated as (b)(36)(v); new (b)(36)(iii) and (iv), (58) through (62) and (h)(3)(viii) added; eff. in part 9-3-85............34711

21 CFR—Continued

49 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

(b) introductory text, (c), (d) introductory text, (1)(vii), and (2) introductory text, (vi) and (viii), (3)(ii), (e) introductory text, (g), (h)(1) introductory text and (ii), (n), (p)(6), and (q)(2) amended; eff. in part 9-3-85............34711
1020.31 Introductory text revised............34712
1020.32 Introductory text revised............34712
1020.33 Added; eff. in part 9-3-85 (OMB no. pending)............34712
(b)(1) corrected............37381
OMB number............47388
1240 Hearing............31065
Hearing rescheduled............36644

1985

21 CFR

50 FR Page

Chapter I

801 Authority citation revised............30154
801.420 (c)(4) amended............30154
808 Authority citation revised............30699
808.61 Added............30699
(a) and (b) corrected............32694
812 Authority citation revised............25909
812.20 (b)(9) revised............16669
Technical correction............32693
812.27 (b)(3) revised, eff. 5-23-85............7518
812.35 Revised............25909
(b) corrected............28932
813.20 (b)(17) revised............16669
Technical correction............32693
861.26 (a)(4) removed............16669
Technical correction............32693
864.8165 Request reclassification denied............5352, 5358
Technical correction............8729
866.1620 Reclassification request denied............20360
866.5510 Reclassification requests denied............414
866.5775 Reclassification request denied............20366
1000 Authority citation revised............33688
1000.1 Added............33688
1003.31 (b) revised, eff. 5-23-85............7518

21 CFR—Continued

50 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1010.4 (b)(1)(ix) revised, eff. 5-23-85 7518
(b) introductory text revised 13565
1010.5 (c)(13) revised, eff. 5-23-85 7518
(c) amended 13564
1020.30 (q)(2) corrected 15544
1030.10 (c)(6)(iv) amended 13566
1040 Authority citation added 33688
1040.10 Revised; eff. in part 8-26-85 33688
(e)(3)(iii), (f)(5)(iii) and (10), (g)(10), and (h)(1)(i) corrected 42156
1040.11 Revised 33702
1040.20 Revised 36550

1986

21 CFR

51 FR Page

Chapter I

Mandatory compliance date 1-1-89 34085
807 Authority citation revised 33032
807.31 (c) revised 33033
814 Added 26364
Technical correction 34589
Authority citation revised 43344
814.15 (b) heading correctly revised 40415
Amended (OMB number) 43344
814.20 (b)(3)(v) introductory text corrected 40415
Amended (OMB number) 43344
814.39 Amended (OMB number) 43344
814.82 Amended (OMB number) 43344
814.84 Amended (OMB number) 43344
868 Authority citation revised 40388
868.5795 Added 40388
868.5800 Added 40389
874 Added 40389
882 Authority citation revised 12101
882.5830 (c) added 12101
Technical correction 15883
884 Authority citation revised 16649, 39845
884.1600 (c) added 39845
884.5360 (d) added 16649

1987

21 CFR

52 FR Page

Chapter I

805 Added 27763
862 Added 16122
862.1385 (a) corrected 29468
862.3750 (b) corrected 48623
864 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed 17732
864.1 Revised 17732
864.3 Added 17732
864.5220 (c) added 17733
864.5680 (c) added 17733
864.7250 (c) added 17733
864.7300 (c) added 17733
864.9205 (c) added 17733
864.9245 (c) added 17733
866 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed 17733
866.1 Revised 17733
866.3 Added 17733
(b) and (c) corrected 22577
866.2420 (c) added 17734
866.3290 (c) added 17734
866.3305 (c) added 17734
866.3510 (c) added 17734
866.6010 (c) added 17734
868 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed 17734
868.1 Revised 17734
868.3 Added 17734
868.1120 (c) added 17735
(c) corrected 22577
868.1150 (c) added 17735
868.1170 (c) added 17735
868.1200 (c) added 17735
868.2450 (c) added 17735
868.2500 (c) added 17735
868.5400 (c) added 17735
868.5610 (c) added 17735
870 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed 17735
870.1 Revised 17735
870.3 Added 17735
870.1025 (c) added 17736
870.1350 (c) added 17736
870.1360 (c) added 17736
870.3300 (c) added 17736
870.3375 (c) added 17736
870.3450 (c) added 17736
870.3535 (c) added 17736
870.3545 (c) added 17736

21 CFR—Continued

52 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

870.3600 (c) added..........17736
870.3610 (c) added..........17736
870.3620 (c) added..........17736
870.3680 (c) added..........17736
870.3700 (c) added..........17736
870.3710 (c) added..........17736
870.3800 (c) added..........17736
870.3850 (c) added..........17736
870.3925 (c) added..........17737
(c) revised; eff. 12-9-87..........18163
(c) corrected..........23137
870.4230 (c) added..........17737
870.4260 (c) added..........17737
870.4320 (c) added..........17737
870.4350 (c) added..........17737
870.4360 (c) added..........17737
870.5200 (c) added..........17737
870.5225 (c) added..........17737
870.5300 (c) added..........17737
870.5550 (c) added..........17737
872 Added..........30097
872.3680 (a) corrected..........34456
872.6080 (a), (b), and (c) corrected..........49250
874.9 Added..........32111
874.1100 Correctly designated..........18495
(b) revised..........32111
874.3540 (b) revised..........32111
874.4420 (b) revised..........32111
874.5800 (b) revised..........32111
876 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed..........17737
876.1 Revised..........17737
(d) corrected..........22577
876.3 Added..........17737
876.3350 (c) added..........17738
876.3630 (c) added..........17738
876.3750 (c) added..........17738
876.4480 (c) added..........17738
876.5220 (c) added..........17738
876.5270 (c) added..........17738
876.5280 (c) added..........17738
876.5540 (c) added..........17738
876.5860 (c) added..........17738
876.5870 (c) added..........17738
876.5955 (c) added..........17738
880 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed..........17738
880.1 Revised..........17738
880.3 Added..........17738
880.5130 (c) added..........17739
880.5760 (c) added..........17739

21 CFR—Continued

52 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

882 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed..........17739
882.1 Revised..........17739
882.3 Added..........17739
882.1790 (c) added..........17739
882.1825 (c) added..........17740
882.5150 (c) added..........17740
882.5800 (c) added..........17740
882.5840 (c) added..........17740
882.5850 (c) added..........17740
882.5860 (c) added..........17740
882.5940 (c) added..........17740
882.5950 (c) added..........17740
884 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed..........17740
884.1 Revised..........17740
884.3 Added..........17740
884.1060 (c) added..........17741
884.1100 (c) added..........17741
884.1185 (c) added..........17741
884.2050 (c) added..........17741
884.2620 (c) added..........17741
884.2685 (c) added..........17741
884.4100 (c) added..........17741
884.4150 (c) added..........17741
884.4250 (c) added..........17741
884.4270 (c) added..........17741
884.5050 (c) added..........17741
884.5225 (c) added..........17741
884.5380 (c) added..........17741
(c) revised..........36883
Technical correction..........38171
884.5940 (c) added..........17741
886 Added..........33355
888 Added..........33702
Technical correction..........36863
890 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed..........17741
890.1 Revised..........17741
890.3 Added..........17741
890.3610 (c) added..........17742
890.3890 (c) added..........17742
(c) corrected..........22577
890.5275 (c) added..........17742
890.5290 (c) added..........17742
890.5300 (c) added..........17742
890.5525 (c) added..........17742
890.5860 (c) added..........17742
1240 Authority citation revised..........29514
1240.61 Added..........29514

1988

21 CFR

	53 FR Page
Chapter I	
Uniform compliance date 1-1-91	44861
800 Authority citation revised; section authority citations removed	11252
800.12 Second (c) removed	11252
803.33 (b) amended	11252
807.22 (a) amended	11252
807.35 (b) amended	11252
807.37 (a) and (b)(2) amended	11252
807.90 (a) amended	11252
807.95 (c)(1) amended	11252
808.87 (a) amended	11252
808.98 (a) revised	35314
809.5 (a) (1), (2), (3), and (4) and (b) amended	11252
812.2 (e) amended	11252
812.19 Amended	11252
812.20 (b)(9) and (d) amended	11252
812.38 (d) amended	11253
813.20 (a) amended	11253
813.38 (b) and (c) amended	11253
813.119 (e)(2) amended	11253
813.160 (a) introductory text amended	11253
820.1 (d) amended	11253
820.3 (f) amended	11253
860.7 (g)(4) amended	11253
860.123 (b)(1) amended	11253
861.32 (b) and (c)(5) amended	11253
862.9 Added	21448
862.1190 (b) corrected	11645
(b) revised	21449
862.1210 (b) revised	21449
862.1255 (b) revised	21449
862.1290 (b) revised	21449
862.1295 (b) corrected	11645
862.1305 (b) revised	21449
862.1320 (b) revised	21449
862.1365 (b) revised	21449
862.1380 (b) revised	21449
862.1420 (b) revised	21449
862.1470 (b) revised	21449
862.1490 (b) revised	21449
862.1515 (b) revised	21449
862.1565 (b) revised	21449
862.1575 (b) revised	21449
862.1640 (b) revised	21449
862.1670 (b) revised	21449
862.1680 (b) corrected	11645
862.1695 Redundant printing correctly removed	11645
862.1700 Redundant printing correctly removed	11645

21 CFR—Continued

	53 FR Page
Chapter I—Continued	
862.1705 Redundant printing correctly removed	11645
862.1720 (b) corrected	11645
(b) revised	21449
862.1815 (b) revised	21449
862.2100 (b) revised	21449
862.3750 (b) revised	21450
862.3850 (b) revised	21450
Technical correction	25050
864.9050 (a) amended	11253
864.9160 (a) amended	11253
866 Technical correction	16837
866.5240 (a) amended	11253
866.5890 (a) amended	11253
876 Technical correction	16837
876.5830 (a) amended	11253
878 Added	23872
882.5840 (c) revised	48621
884.2980 Added	1566
Technical correction	5080
884.2982 Added	1566
Technical correction	5080
886.9 Added	35603
886.1040 (b) revised	35603
886.1140 (b) revised	35603
886.1150 (b) revised	35603
(b) corrected	40825
886.1170 (b) revised	35603
886.1190 (b) revised	35603
886.1200 (b) revised	35604
886.1270 (b) revised	35604
886.1320 (b) revised	35604
886.1330 (b) revised	35604
886.1350 (b) revised	35604
886.1375 (b) revised	35604
886.1380 (b) revised	35604
886.1390 (b) revised	35604
886.1395 (b) revised	35604
886.1400 (b) revised	35604
886.1410 (b) revised	35604
886.1415 (b) revised	35604
886.1420 (b) revised	35604
886.1460 (b) revised	35605
886.1500 (b) revised	35605
886.1605 (b) revised	35605
886.1650 (b) revised	35605
886.1655 (b) revised	35605
886.1660 (b) revised	35605
886.1665 (b) revised	35605
886.1700 (b) revised	35605
886.1770 (b) revised	35605
886.1790 (b) revised	35605
(b) corrected	40825
886.1800 (b) revised	35605
886.1810 (b) revised	35605

21 CFR—Continued

53 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

886.1840 (b) revised.......35605
Heading corrected.......40825
886.1860 (b) revised.......35606
886.1870 (b) revised.......35606
886.1880 (b) revised.......35606
886.1905 (b) revised.......35606
886.1910 (b) revised.......35606
886.4230 (b) revised.......35606
886.4335 (b) revised.......35606
886.4350 (b) revised.......35606
886.4360 (b) revised.......35606
886.4392 Added.......38947
886.4445 (b) revised.......35606
886.4570 (b) revised.......35606
886.4770 (b) revised.......35606
886.4855 (b) revised.......35606
886.5120 (b) revised.......35607
886.5420 (b) revised.......35607
886.5540 (b) revised.......35607
886.5600 (b) revised.......35607
886.5800 (b) revised.......35607
886.5810 (b) revised.......35607
886.5840 (b) revised.......35607
886.5844 (b) revised.......35607
886.5870 (b) revised.......35607
886.5910 (b) revised.......35607
886.5915 (b) revised.......35607
888.9 Added.......52953
888.4200 (b) revised.......52953
888.4210 (b) revised.......52953
888.4220 (b) revised.......52954
888.4230 (b) revised.......52954
888.5890 (b) revised.......52954
888.5940 (b) revised.......52954
888.5980 (b) revised.......52954
892 Added.......1567
Technical correction.......5080
895 Technical correction.......16837
895.21 (d)(1) amended.......11254
1002 Technical correction.......16837
1002.7 Nomenclature change.......11254
1002.10 Introductory text amended.......11254
1002.20 (a) and (b) introductory text and (5) amended.......11254
1002.31 (c) amended.......11254
1002.41 (a)(1) amended.......11254

21 CFR—Continued

53 FR Page

Chapter I—Continued

1002.50 (a) introductory text and (b) amended.......11254
1002.51 Amended.......11254
1005.11 Amended.......11254
1005.25 (b) and (c) amended.......11254
1010 Authority citation revised.......52683
1010.2 (c) and (d) amended.......11254
1010.3 (a)(1) and (2)(i), (b), and (c) amended.......11254
1010.4 (a) introductory text, (b)(1)(viii), (c) (1) and (3) amended.......11254
(a) revised; (c)(2) removed; (c) (3) and (4) redesignated as (c) (2) and (3).......52683
1010.5 (a) introductory text, (b), (c)(12), and (e) (1) and (2) amended.......11254
1010.13 Amended.......11254
1020.30 (c) and (d) introductory text and (3)(ii) amended.......11254
1020.32 (a)(1) amended.......11254
1030 Authority citation revised.......11254
1030.10 (c)(4)(iv), (5)(iv), and (6) (iii), (iv) introductory text and (*d*) amended.......11254
1040.30 (c)(1)(ii) amended.......11254
1050 Authority citation revised.......11255
1050.10 (d)(5) amended.......11255

1989

(Regulations published from January 1, 1989 through March 31, 1989)

21 CFR

54 FR Page

Chapter I

880.6250 (b) revised; eff. 4-13-89.......1604
Technical correction.......6804
892 Authority citation corrected.......6804
892.1000 Added.......5078